GNU Astronomy Utilities

Astronomical data manipulation and analysis programs and libraries
for version 0.23.84-726fd, 1 July 2025

Important note:
This is an **under-development** Gnuastro release (bleeding-edge!).
It is not yet officially released.
The source tarball corresponding to this version is (temporarily) available at this URL:
`http://akhlaghi.org/src/gnuastro-0.23.84-726fd.tar.lz`
(the tarball link above will not be available after the next official release)
The most recent under-development source and its corresponding book are available at:
`http://akhlaghi.org/gnuastro.pdf`
`http://akhlaghi.org/gnuastro-latest.tar.lz`
To stay up to date with Gnuastro's official releases, please subscribe to this mailing list:
`https://lists.gnu.org/mailman/listinfo/info-gnuastro`

Mohammad Akhlaghi

This book documents version 0.23.84-726fd of the GNU Astronomy Utilities (Gnuastro). Gnuastro provides various programs and libraries for astronomical data manipulation and analysis.

Gnuastro (source code, book and web page) authors (sorted by number of commits):

Mohammad Akhlaghi (mohammad@akhlaghi.org, 2337)
Raul Infante-Sainz (infantesainz@gmail.com, 164)
Sepideh Eskandarlou (sepideh.eskandarlou@gmail.com, 91)
Pedram Ashofteh-Ardakani (pedramardakani@pm.me, 75)
Faezeh Bidjarchian (fbidjarchian@gmail.com, 29)
Mosè Giordano (mose@gnu.org, 29)
Elham Saremi (saremi_elham@yahoo.com, 21)
Vladimir Markelov (vmatroskin@gmail.com, 20)
Sachin Kumar Singh (sachinkumarsingh092@gmail.com, 18)
Zahra Sharbaf (zahra.sharbaf2@gmail.com, 13)
Boud Roukema (boud@cosmo.torun.pl, 12)
Giacomo Lorenzetti (glorenzetti@cefca.es, 11)
Natáli D. Anzanello (natali.anzanello@ufrgs.br, 8)
Jash Shah (jash28582@gmail.com, 5)
Samane Raji (samaneraji@gmail.com, 5)
Thorsten Alteholz (thorsten@alteholz.dev, 4)
Carlos Morales-Socorro (cmorsoc@gmail.com, 3)
Marjan Akbari (mrjakbari@gmail.com, 3)
Thérèse Godefroy (godef.th@free.fr, 3)
Zohreh Ghaffari (zoh.ghaffari@gmail.com, 3)
Fathma Mehnoor (fathmamehnoor@gmail.com, 2)
Haleh Mesgari (haleh.mesgari@gmail.com, 2)
Joseph Putko (josephputko@gmail.com, 2)
S. Zahra Hosseini Shahisavandi (2hs.zahra@gmail.com, 2)
Alexey Dokuchaev (danfe@freebsd.org, 1)
Andreas Stieger (astieger@suse.com, 1)
Bharat Bhandari (bharatbhandari1024@gmail.com, 1)
François Ochsenbein (francois.ochsenbein@gmail.com, 1)
Giulia Golini (giulia.golini@gmail.com, 1)
Ignacio Ruiz Cejudo (alu0101597638@ull.edu.es, 1)
Kartik Ohri (kartikohri13@gmail.com, 1)
Labeeb Asari (asari.r.labeeb7@gmail.com, 1)
Leindert Boogaard (leindertboogaard@gmail.com, 1)
Lucas MacQuarrie (macquarrielucas@gmail.com, 1)
Madhav Bansal (madhavbansal.cse18@itbhu.ac.in, 1)
Miguel de Val-Borro (miguel.deval@gmail.com, 1)
Nafise Sedighi (sedighinafise94@gmail.com, 1)
Rahna Payyasseri (rpayyasseri@cefca.es, 1)
Rashid Yaaqib (r.yaaqib@gmail.com, 1)

For myself, I am interested in science and in philosophy only because I want to learn something about the riddle of the world in which we live, and the riddle of man's knowledge of that world. And I believe that only a revival of interest in these riddles can save the sciences and philosophy from narrow specialization and from an obscurantist faith in the expert's special skill, and in his personal knowledge and authority; a faith that so well fits our 'post-rationalist' and 'post-critical' age, proudly dedicated to the destruction of the tradition of rational philosophy, and of rational thought itself.

—*Karl Popper. The logic of scientific discovery. 1959.*

Short Contents

1 Introduction 1
2 Tutorials 21
3 Installation 212
4 Common program behavior 249
5 Data containers 297
6 Data manipulation 389
7 Data analysis 517
8 Data modeling 652
9 High-level calculations 677
10 Installed scripts 690
11 Makefile extensions (for GNU Make) 742
12 Library 752
13 Developing 958
A Other useful software 989
B GNU Free Doc. License 993
C GNU Gen. Pub. License v3 1001
Index: Macros, structures and functions 1012
Index 1022

Table of Contents

1 Introduction 1

1.1 Quick start 1
1.2 Gnuastro programs list 2
1.3 Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools 6
1.4 Your rights 10
1.5 Logo of Gnuastro 10
1.6 Naming convention 11
1.7 Version numbering 11
1.7.1 GNU Astronomy Utilities 1.0 12
1.8 New to GNU/Linux? 12
1.8.1 Command-line interface 13
1.9 Report a bug 15
1.10 Suggest new feature 17
1.11 Announcements 18
1.12 Conventions 18
1.13 Acknowledgments 19

2 Tutorials 21

2.1 General program usage tutorial 22
2.1.1 Calling Gnuastro's programs 23
2.1.2 Accessing documentation 23
2.1.3 Setup and data download 25
2.1.4 Dataset inspection and cropping 25
2.1.5 Angular coverage on the sky 28
2.1.6 Cosmological coverage and visualizing tables 30
2.1.7 Building custom programs with the library 33
2.1.8 Option management and configuration files 35
2.1.9 Warping to a new pixel grid 37
2.1.10 NoiseChisel and Multi-Extension FITS files 38
2.1.11 NoiseChisel optimization for detection 41
2.1.12 NoiseChisel optimization for storage 46
2.1.13 Segmentation and making a catalog 47
2.1.14 Measuring the dataset limits 49
2.1.15 Working with catalogs (estimating colors) 54
2.1.16 Column statistics (color-magnitude diagram) 59
2.1.17 Aperture photometry 61
2.1.18 Matching catalogs 62
2.1.19 Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization 63
2.1.20 FITS images in a publication 65
2.1.21 Marking objects for publication 69
2.1.22 Writing scripts to automate the steps 73
2.1.23 Citing and acknowledging Gnuastro 80
2.2 Detecting large extended targets 80

2.2.1 Downloading and validating input data 81
2.2.2 NoiseChisel optimization 82
2.2.3 Skewness caused by signal and its measurement 88
2.2.4 Image surface brightness limit 92
2.2.5 Achieved surface brightness level 97
2.2.6 Extract clumps and objects (Segmentation) 99
2.3 Building the extended PSF 102
2.3.1 Preparing input for extended PSF 102
2.3.2 Saturated pixels and Segment's clumps 103
2.3.3 One object for the whole detection 107
2.3.4 Building outer part of PSF 110
2.3.5 Inner part of the PSF 113
2.3.6 Uniting the different PSF components 114
2.3.7 Subtracting the PSF 118
2.4 Sufi simulates a detection 123
2.5 Detecting lines and extracting spectra in 3D data 134
2.5.1 Viewing spectra and redshifted lines 135
2.5.2 Sky lines in optical IFUs 138
2.5.3 Continuum subtraction 139
2.5.4 3D detection with NoiseChisel 141
2.5.5 3D measurements and spectra 143
2.5.6 Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it 147
2.5.7 Cubes with logarithmic third dimension 148
2.5.8 Synthetic narrow-band images 149
2.6 Color images with full dynamic range 152
2.6.1 Color channels in same pixel grid 152
2.6.2 Color image using linear transformation 154
2.6.3 Color for bright regions and grayscale for faint 157
2.6.4 Manually setting color-black-gray regions 162
2.6.5 Weights, contrast, markers and other customizations 163
2.7 Zero point of an image 166
2.7.1 Zero point tutorial with reference image 167
2.7.2 Zero point tutorial with reference catalog 175
2.8 Pointing pattern design 177
2.8.1 Preparing input and generating exposure map 177
2.8.2 Area of non-blank pixels on sky 181
2.8.3 Script with pointing simulation steps so far 182
2.8.4 Larger steps sizes for better calibration 184
2.8.5 Pointings that account for sky curvature 186
2.8.6 Accounting for non-exposed pixels 189
2.9 Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction 191
2.10 Clipping outliers 196
2.10.1 Building inputs and analysis without clipping 196
2.10.2 Sigma clipping 200
2.10.3 MAD clipping 206
2.10.4 Contiguous outliers 209

3 Installation ... 212
3.1 Dependencies ... 212
3.1.1 Mandatory dependencies ... 213
3.1.1.1 GNU Scientific Library ... 213
3.1.1.2 CFITSIO ... 213
3.1.1.3 WCSLIB ... 214
3.1.2 Optional dependencies ... 215
3.1.3 Bootstrapping dependencies ... 218
3.1.4 Dependencies from package managers ... 222
3.2 Downloading the source ... 227
3.2.1 Release tarball ... 227
3.2.2 Version controlled source ... 228
3.2.2.1 Bootstrapping ... 229
3.2.2.2 Synchronizing ... 231
3.3 Build and install ... 232
3.3.1 Configuring ... 232
3.3.1.1 Gnuastro configure options ... 233
3.3.1.2 Installation directory ... 235
3.3.1.3 Executable names ... 240
3.3.1.4 Configure and build in RAM ... 241
3.3.2 Separate build and source directories ... 242
3.3.3 Tests ... 245
3.3.4 A4 print book ... 245
3.3.5 Known issues ... 246

4 Common program behavior ... 249
4.1 Command-line ... 249
4.1.1 Arguments and options ... 250
4.1.1.1 Arguments ... 251
4.1.1.2 Options ... 251
4.1.2 Common options ... 253
4.1.2.1 Input/Output options ... 254
4.1.2.2 Processing options ... 257
4.1.2.3 Operating mode options ... 259
4.1.3 Shell TAB completion (highly customized) ... 264
4.1.4 Standard input ... 266
4.1.5 Shell tips ... 267
4.1.5.1 Separate shell variables for multiple outputs ... 267
4.1.5.2 Truncating start of long string FITS keyword values ... 269
4.2 Configuration files ... 270
4.2.1 Configuration file format ... 270
4.2.2 Configuration file precedence ... 271
4.2.3 Current directory and User wide ... 272
4.2.4 System wide ... 272
4.3 Getting help ... 273
4.3.1 `--usage` ... 273

4.3.2 `--help` ... 274
4.3.3 Man pages ... 275
4.3.4 Info ... 275
4.3.5 help-gnuastro mailing list ... 276
4.4 Multi-threaded operations ... 276
4.4.1 A note on threads ... 277
4.4.2 How to run simultaneous operations ... 278
4.5 Numeric data types ... 279
4.6 Memory management ... 281
4.7 Tables ... 284
4.7.1 Recognized table formats ... 285
4.7.2 Gnuastro text table format ... 287
4.7.3 Selecting table columns ... 289
4.8 Tessellation ... 290
4.9 Automatic output ... 292
4.10 Output FITS files ... 293
4.11 Numeric locale ... 295

5 Data containers ... 297

5.1 Fits ... 297
5.1.1 Invoking Fits ... 299
5.1.1.1 HDU information and manipulation ... 301
5.1.1.2 Keyword inspection and manipulation ... 304
5.1.1.3 Pixel information images ... 315
5.2 ConvertType ... 316
5.2.1 Raster and Vector graphics ... 316
5.2.2 Recognized file formats ... 317
5.2.3 Color ... 320
5.2.3.1 Pixel colors ... 320
5.2.3.2 Colormaps for single-channel pixels ... 321
5.2.3.3 Vector graphics colors ... 322
5.2.4 Annotations for figure in paper ... 322
5.2.4.1 Full script of annotations on figure ... 329
5.2.5 Invoking ConvertType ... 332
5.2.5.1 ConvertType input and output ... 332
5.2.5.2 Pixel visualization ... 334
5.2.5.3 Drawing with vector graphics ... 338
5.3 Table ... 344
5.3.1 Printing floating point numbers ... 345
5.3.2 Vector columns ... 346
5.3.3 Column arithmetic ... 350
5.3.4 Operation precedence in Table ... 357
5.3.5 Invoking Table ... 362
5.4 Query ... 378
5.4.1 Available databases ... 379
5.4.2 Invoking Query ... 382

6 Data manipulation 389
6.1 Crop 389
6.1.1 Crop modes 389
6.1.2 Crop section syntax 392
6.1.3 Blank pixels 392
6.1.4 Invoking Crop 393
6.1.4.1 Crop options 394
6.1.4.2 Crop output 399
6.1.4.3 Crop known issues 403
6.2 Arithmetic 403
6.2.1 Reverse polish notation 404
6.2.2 Integer benefits and pitfalls 406
6.2.3 Noise basics 407
6.2.3.1 Photon counting noise 408
6.2.3.2 Instrumental noise 410
6.2.3.3 Final noised pixel value 410
6.2.3.4 Generating random numbers 410
6.2.4 Arithmetic operators 412
6.2.4.1 Basic mathematical operators 413
6.2.4.2 Trigonometric and hyperbolic operators 416
6.2.4.3 Constants 416
6.2.4.4 Coordinate conversion operators 417
6.2.4.5 Unit conversion operators 420
6.2.4.6 Statistical operators 426
6.2.4.7 Coadding operators 428
6.2.4.8 Filtering (smoothing) operators 432
6.2.4.9 Pooling operators 434
6.2.4.10 Interpolation operators 437
6.2.4.11 Dimensionality changing operators 439
6.2.4.12 Conditional operators 445
6.2.4.13 Mathematical morphology operators 448
6.2.4.14 Bitwise operators 450
6.2.4.15 Numerical type conversion operators 452
6.2.4.16 Random number generators 453
6.2.4.17 Coordinate and border operators 462
6.2.4.18 Loading external columns 465
6.2.4.19 Size and position operators 466
6.2.4.20 New operands 470
6.2.4.21 Operand storage in memory or a file 471
6.2.5 Invoking Arithmetic 473
6.3 Convolve 479
6.3.1 Spatial domain convolution 480
6.3.1.1 Convolution process 480
6.3.1.2 Edges in the spatial domain 481
6.3.2 Frequency domain and Fourier operations 482
6.3.2.1 Fourier series historical background 482

6.3.2.2 Circles and the complex plane 484
6.3.2.3 Fourier series 485
6.3.2.4 Fourier transform 487
6.3.2.5 Dirac delta and comb 488
6.3.2.6 Convolution theorem 489
6.3.2.7 Sampling theorem 491
6.3.2.8 Discrete Fourier transform 493
6.3.2.9 Fourier operations in two dimensions 495
6.3.2.10 Edges in the frequency domain 496
6.3.3 Spatial vs. Frequency domain 497
6.3.4 Convolution kernel 497
6.3.5 Invoking Convolve 498
6.4 Warp 501
6.4.1 Linear warping basics 502
6.4.2 Merging multiple warpings 504
6.4.3 Resampling 505
6.4.4 Invoking Warp 506
6.4.4.1 Align pixels with WCS considering distortions 508
6.4.4.2 Linear warps to be called explicitly 514

7 Data analysis 517

7.1 Statistics 517
7.1.1 Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot 517
7.1.2 2D Histograms 518
7.1.2.1 2D histogram as a table for plotting 519
7.1.2.2 2D histogram as an image 521
7.1.3 Least squares fitting 523
7.1.4 Sky value 528
7.1.4.1 Sky value definition 529
7.1.4.2 Sky value misconceptions 530
7.1.4.3 Quantifying signal in a tile 531
7.1.5 Invoking Statistics 534
7.1.5.1 Input to Statistics 536
7.1.5.2 Single value measurements 537
7.1.5.3 Generating histograms and cumulative freq. 541
7.1.5.4 Fitting options 546
7.1.5.5 Contour options 549
7.1.5.6 Statistics on tiles 549
7.2 NoiseChisel 552
7.2.1 NoiseChisel changes after publication 554
7.2.2 Invoking NoiseChisel 555
7.2.2.1 NoiseChisel input 557
7.2.2.2 Detection options 560
7.2.2.3 NoiseChisel output 569
7.3 Segment 571
7.3.1 Invoking Segment 573

7.3.1.1 Segment input . . . 574
7.3.1.2 Segmentation options . . . 577
7.3.1.3 Segment output . . . 580
7.4 MakeCatalog . . . 582
7.4.1 Detection and catalog production . . . 584
7.4.2 Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness . . . 585
7.4.3 Standard deviation vs Standard error . . . 590
7.4.4 MakeCatalog measurements on each label . . . 594
7.4.4.1 Identifier columns . . . 595
7.4.4.2 Position measurements in pixels . . . 595
7.4.4.3 Position measurements in WCS . . . 597
7.4.4.4 Brightness measurements . . . 599
7.4.4.5 Surface brightness measurements . . . 602
7.4.4.6 Upper limit measurements . . . 605
7.4.4.7 Morphology measurements (non-parametric) . . . 607
7.4.4.8 Morphology measurements (elliptical) . . . 610
7.4.4.9 Measurements per slice (spectra) . . . 613
7.4.5 Metameasurements on full input . . . 615
7.4.5.1 Surface brightness limit of image . . . 615
7.4.5.2 Noise based magnitude limit of image . . . 618
7.4.5.3 Confusion limit of image . . . 619
7.4.6 Manual metameasurements . . . 620
7.4.6.1 Expected surface brightness limit . . . 620
7.4.6.2 Upper limit surface brightness of image . . . 621
7.4.6.3 Magnitude limit for certain objects . . . 622
7.4.6.4 Completeness limit for certain objects . . . 622
7.4.7 Adding new columns to MakeCatalog . . . 623
7.4.8 Invoking MakeCatalog . . . 624
7.4.8.1 MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings . . . 625
7.4.8.2 Upper-limit settings . . . 629
7.4.8.3 MakeCatalog output HDUs . . . 632
7.4.8.4 MakeCatalog output keywords . . . 633
7.5 Match . . . 637
7.5.1 Arranging match output . . . 637
7.5.2 Matching algorithms . . . 642
7.5.3 Invoking Match . . . 644

8 Data modeling . . . 652

8.1 MakeProfiles . . . 652
8.1.1 Modeling basics . . . 652
8.1.1.1 Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid . . . 652
8.1.1.2 Point spread function . . . 654
8.1.1.3 Stars . . . 656
8.1.1.4 Galaxies . . . 656
8.1.1.5 Sampling from a function . . . 656
8.1.1.6 Oversampling . . . 657

8.1.2 If convolving afterwards ... 658
8.1.3 Profile magnitude ... 658
8.1.4 Invoking MakeProfiles ... 659
8.1.4.1 MakeProfiles catalog ... 660
8.1.4.2 MakeProfiles profile settings ... 664
8.1.4.3 MakeProfiles output dataset ... 671
8.1.4.4 MakeProfiles log file ... 675

9 High-level calculations ... 677
9.1 CosmicCalculator ... 677
9.1.1 Distance on a 2D curved space ... 677
9.1.2 Extending distance concepts to 3D ... 682
9.1.3 Invoking CosmicCalculator ... 682
9.1.3.1 CosmicCalculator input options ... 683
9.1.3.2 CosmicCalculator basic cosmology calculations ... 684
9.1.3.3 CosmicCalculator spectral line calculations ... 688

10 Installed scripts ... 690
10.1 Sort FITS files by night ... 691
10.1.1 Invoking astscript-sort-by-night ... 692
10.2 Generate radial profile ... 694
10.2.1 Invoking astscript-radial-profile ... 694
10.3 SAO DS9 region files from table ... 702
10.3.1 Invoking astscript-ds9-region ... 703
10.4 Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT ... 705
10.4.1 Invoking astscript-fits-view ... 706
10.5 Zero point estimation ... 709
10.5.1 Invoking astscript-zeropoint ... 710
10.5.1.1 astscript-zeropoint output ... 711
10.5.1.2 astscript-zeropoint options ... 712
10.6 Pointing pattern simulation ... 715
10.6.1 Invoking astscript-pointing-simulate ... 716
10.7 Color images with gray faint regions ... 720
10.7.1 Invoking astscript-color-faint-gray ... 720
10.8 PSF construction and subtraction ... 725
10.8.1 Overview of the PSF scripts ... 726
10.8.2 Invoking astscript-psf-select-stars ... 727
10.8.3 Invoking astscript-psf-stamp ... 730
10.8.4 Invoking astscript-psf-unite ... 734
10.8.5 Invoking astscript-psf-scale-factor ... 736
10.8.6 Invoking astscript-psf-subtract ... 739

11 Makefile extensions (for GNU Make) 742
11.1 Loading the Gnuastro Make functions 742
11.2 Makefile functions of Gnuastro 743
11.2.1 Text functions for Makefiles 743
11.2.2 Astronomy functions for Makefiles 749

12 Library 752
12.1 Review of library fundamentals 752
12.1.1 Headers 753
12.1.2 Linking 756
12.1.3 Summary and example on libraries 759
12.2 BuildProgram 760
12.2.1 Invoking BuildProgram 761
12.3 Gnuastro library 764
12.3.1 Configuration information (`config.h`) 765
12.3.2 Multithreaded programming (`threads.h`) 767
12.3.2.1 Implementation of `pthread_barrier` 768
12.3.2.2 Gnuastro's thread related functions 768
12.3.3 Library data types (`type.h`) 771
12.3.4 Pointers (`pointer.h`) 777
12.3.5 Library blank values (`blank.h`) 779
12.3.6 Data container (`data.h`) 783
12.3.6.1 Generic data container (`gal_data_t`) 784
12.3.6.2 Dataset allocation 788
12.3.6.3 Arrays of datasets 789
12.3.6.4 Copying datasets 790
12.3.7 Dimensions (`dimension.h`) 792
12.3.8 Linked lists (`list.h`) 800
12.3.8.1 List of strings 801
12.3.8.2 List of `int32_t` 803
12.3.8.3 List of `size_t` 804
12.3.8.4 List of `float` 806
12.3.8.5 List of `double` 807
12.3.8.6 List of `void *` 809
12.3.8.7 Ordered list of `size_t` 810
12.3.8.8 Doubly linked ordered list of `size_t` 811
12.3.8.9 List of `gal_data_t` 812
12.3.9 Array input output 814
12.3.10 Table input output (`table.h`) 816
12.3.11 FITS files (`fits.h`) 821
12.3.11.1 FITS Macros, errors and filenames 822
12.3.11.2 CFITSIO and Gnuastro types 823
12.3.11.3 FITS HDUs 823
12.3.11.4 FITS header keywords 825
12.3.11.5 FITS arrays (images) 833
12.3.11.6 FITS tables 835

12.3.12 File input output ... 837
12.3.12.1 Text files (txt.h) ... 837
12.3.12.2 TIFF files (tiff.h) ... 841
12.3.12.3 JPEG files (jpeg.h) ... 842
12.3.12.4 EPS files (eps.h) ... 842
12.3.12.5 PDF files (pdf.h) ... 845
12.3.13 World Coordinate System (wcs.h) ... 846
12.3.14 Arithmetic on datasets (arithmetic.h) ... 856
12.3.15 Tessellation library (tile.h) ... 867
12.3.15.1 Independent tiles ... 868
12.3.15.2 Tile grid ... 874
12.3.16 Bounding box (box.h) ... 878
12.3.17 Polygons (polygon.h) ... 880
12.3.18 Qsort functions (qsort.h) ... 884
12.3.19 K-d tree (kdtree.h) ... 886
12.3.20 Permutations (permutation.h) ... 891
12.3.21 Matching (match.h) ... 892
12.3.22 Statistical operations (statistics.h) ... 894
12.3.23 Fitting functions (fit.h) ... 904
12.3.24 Binary datasets (binary.h) ... 908
12.3.25 Labeled datasets (label.h) ... 912
12.3.26 Convolution functions (convolve.h) ... 916
12.3.27 Pooling functions (pool.h) ... 917
12.3.28 Interpolation (interpolate.h) ... 918
12.3.29 Warp library (warp.h) ... 923
12.3.30 Color functions (color.h) ... 927
12.3.31 Git wrappers (git.h) ... 927
12.3.32 Python interface (python.h) ... 928
12.3.33 Unit conversion library (units.h) ... 929
12.3.34 Spectral lines library (speclines.h) ... 932
12.3.35 Cosmology library (cosmology.h) ... 938
12.3.36 SAO DS9 library (ds9.h) ... 940
12.4 Library demo programs ... 940
12.4.1 Library demo - reading a FITS image ... 941
12.4.2 Library demo - inspecting neighbors ... 942
12.4.3 Library demo - multi-threaded operation ... 944
12.4.4 Library demo - reading and writing table columns ... 948
12.4.5 Library demo - Warp to another image ... 951
12.4.6 Library demo - Warp to new grid ... 954

13 Developing ... 958
13.1 Why C programming language? ... 958
13.2 Program design philosophy ... 960
13.3 Coding conventions ... 961
13.4 Program source ... 965
13.4.1 Mandatory source code files ... 965

13.4.2 The TEMPLATE program ... 968
13.5 Documentation ... 970
13.6 Building and debugging ... 971
13.7 Test scripts ... 972
13.8 Bash programmable completion ... 973
13.8.1 Bash TAB completion tutorial ... 973
13.8.2 Implementing TAB completion in Gnuastro ... 977
13.9 Developer's checklist ... 978
13.10 Gnuastro project webpage ... 979
13.11 Developing mailing lists ... 980
13.12 Contributing to Gnuastro ... 981
13.12.1 Copyright assignment ... 981
13.12.2 Commit guidelines ... 982
13.12.3 Production workflow ... 984
13.12.4 Forking tutorial ... 985

Appendix A Other useful software ... 989
A.1 SAO DS9 ... 989
A.2 TOPCAT ... 990
A.3 PGPLOT ... 991

Appendix B GNU Free Doc. License ... 993

Appendix C GNU Gen. Pub. License v3 ... 1001

Index: Macros, structures and functions ... 1012

Index ... 1022

1 Introduction

GNU Astronomy Utilities (Gnuastro) is an official GNU package consisting of separate programs and libraries for the manipulation and analysis of astronomical data. All the programs share the same basic command-line user interface for the comfort of both the users and developers. Gnuastro is written to comply fully with the GNU coding standards so it integrates finely with the GNU/Linux operating system. This also enables astronomers to expect a fully familiar experience in the source code, building, installing and command-line user interaction that they have seen in all the other GNU software that they use. The official and always up to date version of this book (or manual) is freely available under Appendix B [GNU Free Doc. License], page 993, in various formats (PDF, HTML, plain text, info, and as its Texinfo source) at `http://www.gnu.org/software/gnuastro/manual/`.

For users who are new to the GNU/Linux environment, unless otherwise specified most of the topics in Chapter 3 [Installation], page 212, and Chapter 4 [Common program behavior], page 249, are common to all GNU software, for example, installation, managing command-line options or getting help (also see Section 1.8 [New to GNU/Linux?], page 12). So if you are new to this empowering environment, we encourage you to go through these chapters carefully. They can be a starting point from which you can continue to learn more from each program's own manual and fully benefit from and enjoy this wonderful environment. Gnuastro also comes with a large set of libraries, so you can write your own programs using Gnuastro's building blocks, see Section 12.1 [Review of library fundamentals], page 752, for an introduction.

In Gnuastro, no change to any program or library will be committed to its history, before it has been fully documented here first. As discussed in Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6, this is a founding principle of the Gnuastro.

1.1 Quick start

The latest official release tarball is always available as `gnuastro-latest.tar.lz` (`http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gnuastro/gnuastro-latest.tar.lz`). The Lzip (`http://www.nongnu.org/lzip/lzip.html`) format is used for better compression (smaller output size, thus faster download), and robust archival features and standards. For historical reasons (those users that do not yet have Lzip), the Gzip'd tarball[1] is available at the same URL (just change the `.lz` suffix above to `.gz`; however, the Lzip'd file is recommended). See Section 3.2.1 [Release tarball], page 227, for more details on the tarball release.

Let's assume the downloaded tarball is in the `TOPGNUASTRO` directory. You can follow the commands below to download and un-compress the Gnuastro source. You need to have the `lzip` program for the decompression (see Section 3.1.4 [Dependencies from package managers], page 222) If your Tar implementation does not recognize Lzip (the third command fails), run the fourth command. Note that lines starting with `##` do not need to be typed (they are only a description of the following command):

```
## Go into the download directory.
$ cd TOPGNUASTRO
```

[1] The Gzip library and program are commonly available on most systems. However, Gnuastro recommends Lzip as described above and the beta-releases are also only distributed in `tar.lz`.

```
## If you do not already have the tarball, you can download it:
$ wget http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gnuastro/gnuastro-latest.tar.lz

## If this fails, run the next command.
$ tar -xf gnuastro-latest.tar.lz

## Only when the previous command fails.
$ lzip -cd gnuastro-latest.tar.lz | tar -xf -
```

Gnuastro has three mandatory dependencies and some optional dependencies for extra functionality, see Section 3.1 [Dependencies], page 212, for the full list. In Section 3.1.4 [Dependencies from package managers], page 222, we have prepared the command to easily install Gnuastro's dependencies using the package manager of some operating systems. When the mandatory dependencies are ready, you can configure, compile, check and install Gnuastro on your system with the following commands. See Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246, if you confront any complications and if you plan to install without root permissions (such that you will not need `sudo` in the last command below) see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

```
$ cd gnuastro-X.X                 # Replace X.X with version number.
$ ./configure
$ make -j8                        # Replace 8 with no. CPU threads.
$ make check -j8                  # Replace 8 with no. CPU threads.
$ sudo make install
```

For each program there is an 'Invoke ProgramName' sub-section in this book which explains how the programs should be run on the command-line (for example, see Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362).

In Chapter 2 [Tutorials], page 21, we have prepared some complete tutorials with common Gnuastro usage scenarios in astronomical research. They even contain links to download the necessary data, and thoroughly describe every step of the process (the science, statistics and optimal usage of the command-line). We therefore recommend to read (an run the commands in) the tutorials before starting to use Gnuastro.

1.2 Gnuastro programs list

One of the most common ways to operate Gnuastro is through its command-line programs. For some tutorials on several real-world usage scenarios, see Chapter 2 [Tutorials], page 21. The list here is just provided as a general summary for those who are new to Gnuastro.

GNU Astronomy Utilities 0.23.84-726fd, contains the following programs. They are sorted in alphabetical order and a short description is provided for each program. The description starts with the executable names in `thisfont` followed by a pointer to the respective section in parenthesis. Throughout this book, they are ordered based on their context, please see the top-level contents for contextual ordering (based on what they do).

Arithmetic

(`astarithmetic`, see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403) For arithmetic operations on multiple (theoretically unlimited) number of datasets (images). It has a large and growing set of arithmetic, mathematical, and even statistical opera-

tors (for example, `+`, `-`, `*`, `/`, `sqrt`, `log`, `min`, `average`, `median`, see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412).

BuildProgram
: (`astbuildprog`, see Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760) Compile, link and run custom C programs that depend on the Gnuastro library (see Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764). This program will automatically link with the libraries that Gnuastro depends on, so there is no need to explicitly mention them every time you are compiling a Gnuastro library dependent program.

ConvertType
: (`astconvertt`, see Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316) Convert astronomical data files (FITS or IMH) to and from several other standard image and data formats, for example, TXT, JPEG, EPS or PDF. Optionally, it is also possible to add vector graphics markers over the output image (for example, circles from catalogs containing RA or Dec).

Convolve
: (`astconvolve`, see Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479) Convolve (blur or smooth) data with a given kernel in spatial and frequency domain on multiple threads. Convolve can also do deconvolution to find the appropriate kernel to PSF-match two images.

CosmicCalculator
: (`astcosmiccal`, see Section 9.1 [CosmicCalculator], page 677) Do cosmological calculations, for example, the luminosity distance, distance modulus, comoving volume and many more.

Crop
: (`astcrop`, see Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389) Crop region(s) from one or many image(s) and stitch several images if necessary. Input coordinates can be in pixel coordinates or world coordinates.

Fits
: (`astfits`, see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297) View and manipulate FITS file extensions and header keywords.

MakeCatalog
: (`astmkcatalog`, see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582) Make catalog of labeled image (output of NoiseChisel). The catalogs are highly customizable and adding new calculations/columns is very straightforward, see Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1611.06387`).

MakeProfiles
: (`astmkprof`, see Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652) Make mock 2D profiles in an image. The central regions of radial profiles are made with a configurable 2D Monte Carlo integration. It can also build the profiles on an over-sampled image.

Match
: (`astmatch`, see Section 7.5 [Match], page 637) Given two input catalogs, find the rows that match with each other within a given aperture (may be an ellipse).

NoiseChisel
: (`astnoisechisel`, see Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552) Detect signal in noise. It uses a technique to detect very faint and diffuse, irregularly shaped

signal in noise (galaxies in the sky), using thresholds that are below the Sky value, see Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`http://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) and Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`).

Query (`astquery`, see Section 5.4 [Query], page 378) High-level interface to query pre-defined remote, or external databases, and directly download the required sub-tables on the command-line.

Segment (`astsegment`, see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571) Segment detected regions based on the structure of signal and the input dataset's noise properties.

Statistics (`aststatistics`, see Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517) Statistical calculations on the input dataset (column in a table, image or data cube). This includes man operations such as generating histogram, sigma clipping, and least squares fitting.

Table (`asttable`, Section 5.3 [Table], page 344) Convert FITS binary and ASCII tables into other such tables, print them on the command-line, save them in a plain text file, do arithmetic on the columns or get the FITS table information. For a full list of operations, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

Warp (`astwarp`, see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501) Warp image to new pixel grid. By default it will align the pixel and WCS coordinates, removing any non-linear WCS distortions. Any linear warp (projective transformation or Homography) can also be applied to the input images by explicitly calling the respective operation.

The programs listed above are designed to be highly modular and generic. Hence, they are naturally for lower-level operations. In Gnuastro, higher-level operations (combining multiple programs, or running a program in a special way), are done with installed Bash scripts (all prefixed with `astscript-`). They can be run just like a program and behave very similarly (with minor differences, see Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690).

`astscript-ds9-region`
(See Section 10.3 [SAO DS9 region files from table], page 702) Given a table (either as a file or from standard input), create an SAO DS9 region file from the requested positional columns (WCS or image coordinates).

`astscript-fits-view`
(see Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705) Given any number of FITS files, this script will either open SAO DS9 (for images or cubes) or TOPCAT (for tables) to view them in a graphic user interface (GUI).

`astscript-pointing-simulate`
(See Section 10.6 [Pointing pattern simulation], page 715) Given a table of pointings on the sky, create and a reference image that contains your camera's distortions and properties, generate a coadded exposure map. This is very useful in testing the coverage of dither patterns when designing your observing strategy and it is highly customizable. See Akhlaghi 2023 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2310.15006`), or the dedicated tutorial in Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177.

`astscript-radial-profile`
: (See Section 10.2 [Generate radial profile], page 694) Calculate the 1D radial profile or 2D polar plot of an object within an image. The object can be at any location in the image, using various measures (median, sigma-clipped mean, etc.), and the radial distance can also be measured on any general ellipse. See Infante-Sainz et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.05303`) and/or Eskandarlou and Akhlaghi 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2406.14619`).

`astscript-color-faint-gray`
: (see Section 10.7 [Color images with gray faint regions], page 720) Given three images for the Red-Green-Blue (RGB) channels, this script will use the bright pixels for color and will show the faint/diffuse regions in grayscale. This greatly helps in visualizing the full dynamic range of astronomical data. See Infante-Sainz et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.03814`) or a dedicated tutorial in Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152.

`astscript-sort-by-night`
: (See Section 10.1 [Sort FITS files by night], page 691) Given a list of FITS files, and a HDU and keyword name (for a date), this script separates the files in the same night (possibly over two calendar days).

`astscript-zeropoint`
: (see Section 10.5 [Zero point estimation], page 709) Estimate the zero point (to calibrate pixel values) of an input image using a reference image or a reference catalog. This is necessary to produce measurements with physical units from new images. See Eskandarlou et al. 2023 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2312.04263`), or a dedicated tutorial in Section 2.7 [Zero point of an image], page 166.

`astscript-psf-*`
: The following scripts are used to estimate the extended PSF estimation and subtraction as described in the tutorial Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102:

  `astscript-psf-select-stars`
  : (see Section 10.8.2 [Invoking astscript-psf-select-stars], page 727) Find all the stars within an image that are suitable for constructing an extended PSF. If the image has WCS, this script can automatically query Gaia to find the good stars.

  `astscript-psf-stamp`
  : (see Section 10.8.3 [Invoking astscript-psf-stamp], page 730) build a crop (stamp) of a certain width around a star at a certain coordinate in a larger image. This script will do sub-pixel re-positioning to make sure the star is centered and can optionally mask all other background sources).

  `astscript-psf-scale-factor`
  : (see Section 10.8.5 [Invoking astscript-psf-scale-factor], page 736) Given a PSF model, and the central coordinates of a star in an

image, find the scale factor that has to be multiplied by the PSF to scale it to that star.

`astscript-psf-unite`
(see Section 10.8.4 [Invoking astscript-psf-unite], page 734) Unite the various components of a PSF into one. Because of saturation and non-linearity, to get a good estimate of the extended PSF, it is necessary to construct various parts from different magnitude ranges.

`astscript-psf-subtract`
(see Section 10.8.6 [Invoking astscript-psf-subtract], page 739) Given the model of a PSF and the central coordinates of a star in the image, do sub-pixel re-positioning of the PSF, scale it to the star and subtract it from the image.

1.3 Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools

History of science indicates that there are always inevitably unseen faults, hidden assumptions, simplifications and approximations in all our theoretical models, data acquisition and analysis techniques. It is precisely these that will ultimately allow future generations to advance the existing experimental and theoretical knowledge through their new solutions and corrections.

In the past, scientists would gather data and process them individually to achieve an analysis thus having a much more intricate knowledge of the data and analysis. The theoretical models also required little (if any) simulations to compare with the data. Today both methods are becoming increasingly more dependent on pre-written software. Scientists are dissociating themselves from the intricacies of reducing raw observational data in experimentation or from bringing the theoretical models to life in simulations. These 'intricacies' are precisely those unseen faults, hidden assumptions, simplifications and approximations that define scientific progress.

> Unfortunately, most persons who have recourse to a computer for statistical analysis of data are not much interested either in computer programming or in statistical method, being primarily concerned with their own proper business. Hence the common use of library programs and various statistical packages. ... It's time that was changed.
>
> —*F.J. Anscombe. The American Statistician, Vol. 27, No. 1. 1973*

Anscombe's quartet (`http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anscombe%27s_quartet`) demonstrates how four data sets with widely different shapes (when plotted) give nearly identical output from standard regression techniques. Anscombe uses this (now famous) quartet, which was introduced in the paper quoted above, to argue that "*Good statistical analysis is not a purely routine matter, and generally calls for more than one pass through the computer*". Echoing Anscombe's concern after 44 years, some of the highly recognized statisticians of our time (Leek, McShane, Gelman, Colquhoun, Nuijten and Goodman), wrote in Nature that:

> We need to appreciate that data analysis is not purely computational and algorithmic – it is a human behavior....Researchers who hunt hard enough will

> turn up a result that fits statistical criteria – but their discovery will probably be a false positive.
>
> —*Five ways to fix statistics, Nature, 551, Nov 2017.*

Users of statistical (scientific) methods (software) are therefore not passive (objective) agents in their results. It is necessary to actually understand the method, not just use it as a black box. The subjective experience gained by frequently using a method/software is not sufficient to claim an understanding of how the tool/method works and how relevant it is to the data and analysis. This kind of subjective experience is prone to serious misunderstandings about the data, what the software/statistical-method really does (especially as it gets more complicated), and thus the scientific interpretation of the result. This attitude is further encouraged through non-free software[2], poorly written (or non-existent) scientific software manuals, and non-reproducible papers[3]. This approach to scientific software and methods only helps in producing dogmas and an "*obscurantist faith in the expert's special skill, and in his personal knowledge and authority*"[4].

> Program or be programmed. Choose the former, and you gain access to the control panel of civilization. Choose the latter, and it could be the last real choice you get to make.
>
> —*Douglas Rushkoff. Program or be programmed, O/R Books (2010).*

It is obviously impractical for any one human being to gain the intricate knowledge explained above for every step of an analysis. On the other hand, scientific data can be large and numerous, for example, images produced by telescopes in astronomy. This requires efficient algorithms. To make things worse, natural scientists have generally not been trained in the advanced software techniques, paradigms and architecture that are taught in computer science or engineering courses and thus used in most software. The GNU Astronomy Utilities are an effort to tackle this issue.

Gnuastro is not just a software, this book is as important to the idea behind Gnuastro as the source code (software). This book has tried to learn from the success of the "Numerical Recipes" book in educating those who are not software engineers and computer scientists but still heavy users of computational algorithms, like astronomers. There are two major differences.

The first difference is that Gnuastro's code and the background information are segregated: the code is moved within the actual Gnuastro software source code and the underlying explanations are given here in this book. In the source code, every non-trivial step is heavily commented and correlated with this book, it follows the same logic of this book, and all the programs follow a similar internal data, function and file structure, see Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965. Complementing the code, this book focuses on thoroughly explaining the concepts behind those codes (history, mathematics, science, software and usage advice when necessary) along with detailed instructions on how to run the programs.

---

[2] `https://www.gnu.org/philosophy/free-sw.html`

[3] Where the authors omit many of the analysis/processing "details" from the paper by arguing that they would make the paper too long/unreadable. However, software engineers have been dealing with such issues for a long time. There are thus software management solutions that allow us to supplement papers with all the details necessary to exactly reproduce the result. For example, see Akhlaghi et al. 2021 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.03018`).

[4] Karl Popper. The logic of scientific discovery. 1959. Larger quote is given at the start of the PDF (for print) version of this book.

At the expense of frustrating "professionals" or "experts", this book and the comments in the code also intentionally avoid jargon and abbreviations. The source code and this book are thus intimately linked, and when considered as a single entity can be thought of as a real (an actual software accompanying the algorithms) "Numerical Recipes" for astronomy.

The second major, and arguably more important, difference is that "Numerical Recipes" does not allow you to distribute any code that you have learned from it. In other words, it does not allow you to release your software's source code if you have used their codes, you can only publicly release binaries (a black box) to the community. Therefore, while it empowers the privileged individual who has access to it, it exacerbates social ignorance. Exactly at the opposite end of the spectrum, Gnuastro's source code is released under the GNU general public license (GPL) and this book is released under the GNU free documentation license. You are therefore free to distribute any software you create using parts of Gnuastro's source code or text, or figures from this book, see Section 1.4 [Your rights], page 10.

With these principles in mind, Gnuastro's developers aim to impose the minimum requirements on you (in computer science, engineering and even the mathematics behind the tools) to understand and modify any step of Gnuastro if you feel the need to do so, see Section 13.1 [Why C programming language?], page 958, and Section 13.2 [Program design philosophy], page 960.

Without prior familiarity and experience with optics, it is hard to imagine how, Galileo could have come up with the idea of modifying the Dutch military telescope optics to use in astronomy. Astronomical objects could not be seen with the Dutch military design of the telescope. In other words, it is unlikely that Galileo could have asked a random optician to make modifications (not understood by Galileo) to the Dutch design, to do something no astronomer of the time took seriously. In the paradigm of the day, what could be the purpose of enlarging geometric spheres (planets) or points (stars)? In that paradigm only the position and movement of the heavenly bodies was important, and that had already been accurately studied (recently by Tycho Brahe).

In the beginning of his "The Sidereal Messenger" (published in 1610) he cautions the readers on this issue and *before* describing his results/observations, Galileo instructs us on how to build a suitable instrument. Without a detailed description of *how* he made his tools and done his observations, no reasonable person would believe his results. Before he actually saw the moons of Jupiter, the mountains on the Moon or the crescent of Venus, Galileo was "evasive"[5] to Kepler. Science is defined by its tools/methods, *not* its raw results[6].

The same is true today: science cannot progress with a black box, or poorly released code. The source code of a research is the new (abstractified) communication language in science, understandable by humans *and* computers. Source code (in any programming language) is a language/notation designed to express all the details that would be too tedious/long/frustrating to report in spoken languages like English, similar to mathematic notation.

[5] Galileo G. (Translated by Maurice A. Finocchiaro). *The essential Galileo*.Hackett publishing company, first edition, 2008.

[6] For example, take the following two results on the age of the universe: roughly 14 billion years (suggested by the current consensus of the standard model of cosmology) and less than 10,000 years (suggested from some interpretations of the Bible). Both these numbers are *results*. What distinguishes these two results, is the tools/methods that were used to derive them. Therefore, as the term "Scientific method" also signifies, a scientific statement it defined by its *method*, not its result.

> An article about computational science [almost all sciences today] ... is not the scholarship itself, it is merely advertising of the scholarship. The Actual Scholarship is the complete software development environment and the complete set of instructions which generated the figures.
>
> —*Buckheit & Donoho, Lecture Notes in Statistics, Vol 103, 1996*

Today, the quality of the source code that goes into a scientific result (and the distribution of that code) is as critical to scientific vitality and integrity, as the quality of its written language/English used in publishing/distributing its paper. A scientific paper will not even be reviewed by any respectable journal if its written in a poor language/English. A similar level of quality assessment is thus increasingly becoming necessary regarding the codes/methods used to derive the results of a scientific paper. For more on this, please see Akhlaghi et al. 2021 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.03018`)).

Bjarne Stroustrup (creator of the C++ language) says: "*Without understanding software, you are reduced to believing in magic*". Ken Thomson (the designer of the Unix operating system) says "*I abhor a system designed for the 'user' if that word is a coded pejorative meaning 'stupid and unsophisticated'.*" Certainly no scientist (user of a scientific software) would want to be considered a believer in magic, or stupid and unsophisticated.

This can happen when scientists get too distant from the raw data and methods, and are mainly discussing results. In other words, when they feel they have tamed Nature into their own high-level (abstract) models (creations), and are mainly concerned with scaling up, or industrializing those results. Roughly five years before special relativity, and about two decades before quantum mechanics fundamentally changed Physics, Lord Kelvin is quoted as saying:

> There is nothing new to be discovered in physics now. All that remains is more and more precise measurement.
>
> —*William Thomson (Lord Kelvin), 1900*

A few years earlier Albert. A. Michelson made the following statement:

> The more important fundamental laws and facts of physical science have all been discovered, and these are now so firmly established that the possibility of their ever being supplanted in consequence of new discoveries is exceedingly remote.... Our future discoveries must be looked for in the sixth place of decimals.
>
> —*Albert. A. Michelson, dedication of Ryerson Physics Lab, U. Chicago 1894*

If scientists are considered to be more than mere puzzle solvers[7] (simply adding to the decimals of existing values or observing a feature in 10, 100, or 100000 more galaxies or stars, as Kelvin and Michelson clearly believed), they cannot just passively sit back and uncritically repeat the previous (observational or theoretical) methods/tools on new data. Today there is a wealth of raw telescope images ready (mostly for free) at the finger tips of anyone who is interested with a fast enough internet connection to download them. The only thing lacking is new ways to analyze this data and dig out the treasure that is lying hidden in them to existing methods and techniques.

> New data that we insist on analyzing in terms of old ideas (that is, old models which are not questioned) cannot lead us out of the old ideas. However many data we record and analyze, we may just keep repeating the same old errors,

[7] Thomas S. Kuhn. *The Structure of Scientific Revolutions*, University of Chicago Press, 1962.

> missing the same crucially important things that the experiment was competent to find.
>
> —*Jaynes, Probability theory, the logic of science. Cambridge U. Press (2003).*

1.4 Your rights

The paragraphs below, in this section, belong to the GNU Texinfo[8] manual and are not written by us! The name "Texinfo" is just changed to "GNU Astronomy Utilities" or "Gnuastro" because they are released under the same licenses and it is beautifully written to inform you of your rights.

GNU Astronomy Utilities is "free software"; this means that everyone is free to use it and free to redistribute it on certain conditions. Gnuastro is not in the public domain; it is copyrighted and there are restrictions on its distribution, but these restrictions are designed to permit everything that a good cooperating citizen would want to do. What is not allowed is to try to prevent others from further sharing any version of Gnuastro that they might get from you.

Specifically, we want to make sure that you have the right to give away copies of the programs that relate to Gnuastro, that you receive the source code or else can get it if you want it, that you can change these programs or use pieces of them in new free programs, and that you know you can do these things.

To make sure that everyone has such rights, we have to forbid you to deprive anyone else of these rights. For example, if you distribute copies of the Gnuastro related programs, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must tell them their rights.

Also, for our own protection, we must make certain that everyone finds out that there is no warranty for the programs that relate to Gnuastro. If these programs are modified by someone else and passed on, we want their recipients to know that what they have is not what we distributed, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on our reputation.

The full text of the licenses for the Gnuastro book and software can be respectively found in Appendix C [GNU Gen. Pub. License v3], page 1001[9] and Appendix B [GNU Free Doc. License], page 993[10].

1.5 Logo of Gnuastro

Gnuastro's logo is an abstract image of a barred spiral galaxy (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Barred_spiral_galaxy`). The galaxy is vertically cut in half: on the left side, the beauty of a contiguous galaxy image is visible. But on the right, the image gets pixelated, and we only see the parts that are within the pixels. The pixels that are more near to the center of the galaxy (which is brighter) are also larger. But as we follow the spiral arms (and get more distant from the center), the pixels get smaller (signifying less signal).

This sharp distinction between the contiguous and pixelated view of the galaxy signifies the main struggle in science: in the "real" world, objects are not pixelated or discrete and

[8] Texinfo is the GNU documentation system. It is used to create this book in all the various formats.

[9] Also available in `http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/gpl.html`

[10] Also available in `http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/fdl.html`

have no noise. However, when we observe nature, we are confined and constrained by the resolution of our data collection (CCD imager in this case).

On the other hand, we read English text from the left and progress towards the right. This defines the positioning of the "real" and observed halves of the galaxy: the no-noised and contiguous half (on the left) passes through our observing tools and becomes pixelated and noisy half (on the right). It is the job of scientific software like Gnuastro to help interpret the underlying mechanisms of the "real" universe from the pixelated and noisy data.

Gnuastro's logo was designed by Marjan Akbari. The concept behind it was created after several design iterations with Mohammad Akhlaghi.

1.6 Naming convention

Gnuastro is a package of independent programs and a collection of libraries, here we are mainly concerned with the programs. Each program has an official name which consists of one or two words, describing what they do. The latter are printed with no space, for example, NoiseChisel or Crop. On the command-line, you can run them with their executable names which start with an `ast` and might be an abbreviation of the official name, for example, `astnoisechisel` or `astcrop`, see Section 3.3.1.3 [Executable names], page 240.

We will use "ProgramName" for a generic official program name and `astprogname` for a generic executable name. In this book, the programs are classified based on what they do and thoroughly explained. An alphabetical list of the programs that are installed on your system with this installation are given in Section 1.2 [Gnuastro programs list], page 2. That list also contains the executable names and version numbers along with a one line description.

1.7 Version numbering

Gnuastro can have two formats of version numbers, for official and unofficial releases. Official Gnuastro releases are announced on the `info-gnuastro` mailing list, they have a version control tag in Gnuastro's development history, and their version numbers are formatted like "`A.B`". `A` is a major version number, marking a significant planned achievement (for example, see Section 1.7.1 [GNU Astronomy Utilities 1.0], page 12), while `B` is a minor version number, see below for more on the distinction. Note that the numbers are not decimals, so version 2.34 is much more recent than version 2.5, which is not equal to 2.50.

Gnuastro also allows a unique version number for unofficial releases. Unofficial releases can mark any point in Gnuastro's development history. This is done to allow astronomers to easily use any point in the version controlled history for their data-analysis and research publication. See Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228, for a complete introduction. This section is not just for developers and is intended to straightforward and easy to read, so please have a look if you are interested in the cutting-edge. This unofficial version number is a meaningful and easy to read string of characters, unique to that particular point of history. With this feature, users can easily stay up to date with the most recent bug fixes and additions that are committed between official releases.

The unofficial version number is formatted like: `A.B.C-D`. `A` and `B` are the most recent official version number. `C` is the number of commits that have been made after version `A.B`.

`D` is the first 4 or 5 characters of the commit hash number[11]. Therefore, the unofficial version number '`3.92.8-29c8`', corresponds to the 8th commit after the official version `3.92` and its commit hash begins with `29c8`. The unofficial version number is sort-able (unlike the raw hash) and as shown above is descriptive of the state of the unofficial release. Of course an official release is preferred for publication (since its tarballs are easily available and it has gone through more tests, making it more stable), so if an official release is announced prior to your publication's final review, please consider updating to the official release.

The major version number is set by a major goal which is defined by the developers and user community beforehand, for example, see Section 1.7.1 [GNU Astronomy Utilities 1.0], page 12. The incremental work done in minor releases are commonly small steps in achieving the major goal. Therefore, there is no limit on the number of minor releases and the difference between the (hypothetical) versions 2.927 and 3.0 can be a small (negligible to the user) improvement that finalizes the defined goals.

1.7.1 GNU Astronomy Utilities 1.0

Like all software, version 1.0 is a unique milestone: a point where the developers feel it is complete to a minimal level. In Gnuastro, the goal to achieve for version 1.0 is to have all the necessary tools for optical imaging data reduction: starting from raw images of individual exposures to the final deep image ready for high-level science.

While various software did already exist and were commonly used when Gnuastro was first released in 2016. The existing software are mostly written without following any robust, or even common, coding and usage standards or up-to-date and well-maintained documentation. This makes it very hard to reduce astronomical data without learning those software's peculiarities through trial and error.

1.8 New to GNU/Linux?

Some astronomers initially install and use a GNU/Linux operating system because their necessary tools can only be installed in this environment. However, the transition is not necessarily easy. To encourage you in investing the patience and time to make this transition, and actually enjoy it, we will first start with a basic introduction to GNU/Linux operating systems. Afterwards, in Section 1.8.1 [Command-line interface], page 13, we will discuss the wonderful benefits of the command-line interface, how it beautifully complements the graphic user interface, and why it is worth the (apparently steep) learning curve. Finally a complete chapter (Chapter 2 [Tutorials], page 21) is devoted to real world scenarios of using Gnuastro (on the command-line). Therefore if you do not yet feel comfortable with the command-line we strongly recommend going through that chapter after finishing this section.

You might have already noticed that we are not using the name "Linux", but "GNU/Linux". Please take the time to have a look at the following essays and FAQs for a complete understanding of this very important distinction.

- `https://gnu.org/philosophy`
- `https://www.gnu.org/gnu/the-gnu-project.html`

[11] Each point in Gnuastro's history is uniquely identified with a 40 character long hash which is created from its contents and previous history for example: `5b17501d8f29ba3cd610673261e6e2229c846d35`. So the string `D` in the version for this commit could be `5b17`, or `5b175`.

- https://www.gnu.org/gnu/gnu-users-never-heard-of-gnu.html
- https://www.gnu.org/gnu/linux-and-gnu.html
- https://www.gnu.org/gnu/why-gnu-linux.html
- https://www.gnu.org/gnu/gnu-linux-faq.html
- Recorded talk: https://peertube.stream/w/ddeSSm33R1eFWKJVqpcthN (first 20 min is about the history of Unix-like operating systems).

In short, the Linux kernel[12] is built using the GNU C library (glibc) and GNU compiler collection (gcc). The Linux kernel software alone is just a means for other software to access the hardware resources, it is useless alone! A normal astronomer (or scientist) will never interact with the kernel directly! For example, the command-line environment that you interact with is usually GNU Bash. It is GNU Bash that then talks to kernel.

To better clarify, let's use this analogy inspired from one of the links above[13]: saying that you are "running Linux" is like saying you are "driving your engine". The car's engine is the main source of power in the car, no one doubts that. But you do not "drive" the engine, you drive the "car". The engine alone is useless for transportation without the radiator, battery, transmission, wheels, chassis, seats, wind-shield, etc.

To have an operating system, you need lower-level tools (to build the kernel), and higher-level (to use it) software packages. For the Linux kernel, both the lower-level and higher-level tools are GNU. In other words,"the whole system is basically GNU with Linux loaded".

You can replace the Linux kernel and still have the GNU shell and higher-level utilities. For example, using the "Windows Subsystem for Linux", you can use almost all GNU tools without the original Linux kernel, but using the host Windows operating system, as in https://ubuntu.com/wsl. Alternatively, you can build a fully functional GNU-based working environment on a macOS or BSD-based operating system (using the host's kernel and C compiler), for example, through projects like Maneage, see Akhlaghi et al. 2021 (https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.03018), in particular Appendix C with all the GNU software tools that is exactly reproducible on a macOS also.

Therefore to acknowledge GNU's instrumental role in the creation and usage of the Linux kernel and the operating systems that use it, we should call these operating systems "GNU/Linux".

1.8.1 Command-line interface

One aspect of Gnuastro that might be a little troubling to new GNU/Linux users is that (at least for the time being) it only has a command-line user interface (CLI). This might be contrary to the mostly graphical user interface (GUI) experience with proprietary operating systems. Since the various actions available are not always on the screen, the command-line interface can be complicated, intimidating, and frustrating for a first-time user. This is understandable and also experienced by anyone who started using the computer (from childhood) in a graphical user interface (this includes most of Gnuastro's authors). Here we hope to convince you of the unique benefits of this interface which can greatly enhance your productivity while complementing your GUI experience.

[12] In Unix-like operating systems, the kernel connects software and hardware worlds.

[13] https://www.gnu.org/gnu/gnu-users-never-heard-of-gnu.html

Through GNOME 3[14], most GNU/Linux based operating systems now have an advanced and useful GUI. Since the GUI was created long after the command-line, some wrongly consider the command-line to be obsolete. Both interfaces are useful for different tasks. For example, you cannot view an image, video, PDF document or web page on the command-line. On the other hand you cannot reproduce your results easily in the GUI. Therefore they should not be regarded as rivals but as complementary user interfaces, here we will outline how the CLI can be useful in scientific programs.

You can think of the GUI as a veneer over the CLI to facilitate a small subset of all the possible CLI operations. Each click you do on the GUI, can be thought of as internally running a different CLI command. So asymptotically (if a good designer can design a GUI which is able to show you all the possibilities to click on) the GUI is only as powerful as the command-line. In practice, such graphical designers are very hard to find for every program, so the GUI operations are always a subset of the internal CLI commands. For programs that are only made for the GUI, this results in not including lots of potentially useful operations. It also results in 'interface design' to be a crucially important part of any GUI program. Scientists do not usually have enough resources to hire a graphical designer, also the complexity of the GUI code is far more than CLI code, which is harmful for a scientific software, see Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6.

For programs that have a GUI, one action on the GUI (moving and clicking a mouse, or tapping a touchscreen) might be more efficient and easier than its CLI counterpart (typing the program name and your desired configuration). However, if you have to repeat that same action more than once, the GUI will soon become frustrating and prone to errors. Unless the designers of a particular program decided to design such a system for a particular GUI action, there is no general way to run any possible series of actions automatically on the GUI.

On the command-line, you can run any series of actions which can come from various CLI capable programs you have decided yourself in any possible permutation with one command[15]. This allows for much more creativity and exact reproducibility that is not possible to a GUI user. For technical and scientific operations, where the same operation (using various programs) has to be done on a large set of data files, this is crucially important. It also allows exact reproducibility which is a foundation principle for scientific results. The most common CLI (which is also known as a shell) in GNU/Linux is GNU Bash, we strongly encourage you to put aside several hours and go through this beautifully explained web page: `https://flossmanuals.net/command-line/`. You do not need to read or even fully understand the whole thing, only a general knowledge of the first few chapters are enough to get you going.

Since the operations in the GUI are limited and they are visible, reading a manual is not that important in the GUI (most programs do not even have any!). However, to give you the creative power explained above, with a CLI program, it is best if you first read the manual of any program you are using. You do not need to memorize any details, only an understanding of the generalities is needed. Once you start working, there are more easier ways to remember a particular option or operation detail, see Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273.

[14] `http://www.gnome.org/`

[15] By writing a shell script and running it, for example, see the tutorials in Chapter 2 [Tutorials], page 21.

To experience the command-line in its full glory and not in the GUI terminal emulator, press the following keys together: `CTRL+ALT+F4`[16] to access the virtual console. To return back to your GUI, press the same keys above replacing `F4` with `F7` (or `F1`, or `F2`, depending on your GNU/Linux distribution). In the virtual console, the GUI, with all its distracting colors and information, is gone. Enabling you to focus entirely on your actual work.

For operations that use a lot of your system's resources (processing a large number of large astronomical images for example), the virtual console is the place to run them. This is because the GUI is not competing with your research work for your system's RAM and CPU. Since the virtual consoles are completely independent, you can even log out of your GUI environment to give even more of your hardware resources to the programs you are running and thus reduce the operating time.

Since it uses far less system resources, the CLI is also convenient for remote access to your computer. Using secure shell (SSH) you can log in securely to your system (similar to the virtual console) from anywhere even if the connection speeds are low. There are apps for smart phones and tablets which allow you to do this.

1.9 Report a bug

According to Wikipedia "a software bug is an error, flaw, failure, or fault in a computer program or system that causes it to produce an incorrect or unexpected result, or to behave in unintended ways". So when you see that a program is crashing, not reading your input correctly, giving the wrong results, or not writing your output correctly, you have found a bug. In such cases, it is best if you report the bug to the developers. The programs will also inform you if known impossible situations occur (which are caused by something unexpected) and will ask the users to report the bug issue.

Prior to actually filing a bug report, it is best to search previous reports. The issue might have already been found and even solved. The best place to check if your bug has already been discussed is the bugs tracker on Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979, at `https://savannah.gnu.org/bugs/?group=gnuastro`. In the top search fields (under "Display Criteria") set the "Open/Closed" drop-down menu to "Any" and choose the respective program or general category of the bug in "Category" and click the "Apply" button. The results colored green have already been solved and the status of those colored in red is shown in the table.

Recently corrected bugs are probably not yet publicly released because they are scheduled for the next Gnuastro stable release. If the bug is solved but not yet released and it is an urgent issue for you, you can get the version controlled source and compile that, see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228.

To solve the issue as readily as possible, please follow the following to guidelines in your bug report. The How to Report Bugs Effectively (`http://www.chiark.greenend.org.uk/~sgtatham/bugs.html`) and How To Ask Questions The Smart Way (`http://catb.org/~esr/faqs/smart-questions.html`) essays also provide some good generic advice for all software (do not contact their authors for Gnuastro's problems). Mastering the art of giving good bug reports (like asking good questions) can greatly enhance your experience with

[16] Instead of `F4`, you can use any of the keys from `F1` to `F6` for different virtual consoles depending on your GNU/Linux distribution, try them all out. You can also run a separate GUI from within this console if you want to.

any free and open source software. So investing the time to read through these essays will greatly reduce your frustration after you see something does not work the way you feel it is supposed to for a large range of software, not just Gnuastro.

Be descriptive

Please provide as many details as possible and be very descriptive. Explain what you expected and what the output was: it might be that your expectation was wrong. Also please clearly state which sections of the Gnuastro book (this book), or other references you have studied to understand the problem. This can be useful in correcting the book (adding links to likely places where users will check). But more importantly, it will be encouraging for the developers, since you are showing how serious you are about the problem and that you have actually put some thought into it. "To be able to ask a question clearly is two-thirds of the way to getting it answered." – John Ruskin (1819-1900).

Individual and independent bug reports

If you have found multiple bugs, please send them as separate (and independent) bugs (as much as possible). This will significantly help us in managing and resolving them sooner.

Reproducible bug reports

If we cannot exactly reproduce your bug, then it is very hard to resolve it. So please send us a Minimal working example[17] along with the description. For example, in running a program, please send us the full command-line text and the output with the `-P` option, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259. If it is caused only for a certain input, also send us that input file. In case the input FITS is large, please use Crop to only crop the problematic section and make it as small as possible so it can easily be uploaded and downloaded and not waste the archive's storage, see Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389.

There are generally two ways to inform us of bugs:

- Send a mail to `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`. Any mail you send to this address will be distributed through the bug-gnuastro mailing list[18]. This is the simplest way to send us bug reports. The developers will then register the bug into the project web page (next choice) for you.
- Use the Gnuastro project web page at `https://savannah.gnu.org/projects/gnuastro/`: There are two ways to get to the submission page as listed below. Fill in the form as described below and submit it (see Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979, for more on the project web page).
  - Using the top horizontal menu items, immediately under the top page title. Hovering your mouse on "Support" will open a drop-down list. Select "Submit new". Also if you have an account in Savannah, you can choose "Bugs" in the menu items and then select "Submit new".
  - In the main body of the page, under the "Communication tools" section, click on "Submit new item".

[17] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Minimal_Working_Example`

[18] `https://lists.gnu.org/mailman/listinfo/bug-gnuastro`

Once the items have been registered in the mailing list or web page, the developers will add it to either the "Bug Tracker" or "Task Manager" trackers of the Gnuastro project web page. These two trackers can only be edited by the Gnuastro project developers, but they can be browsed by anyone, so you can follow the progress on your bug. You are most welcome to join us in developing Gnuastro and fixing the bug you have found maybe a good starting point. Gnuastro is designed to be easy for anyone to develop (see Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6) and there is a full chapter devoted to developing it: Chapter 13 [Developing], page 958.

Savannah's Markup: When posting to Savannah, it helps to have the code displayed in mono-space font and a different background, you may also want to make a list of items or make some words bold. For features like these, you should use Savannah's "Markup" guide at `https://savannah.gnu.org/markup-test.php`. You can access this page by clicking on the "Full Markup" link that is just beside the "Preview" button, near the box that you write your comments. As you see there, for example when you want to high-light code, you should put it within a "+verbatim+" and "-verbatim-" environment like below:

```
+verbatim+
astarithmetic image.fits image_arith.fits -h1 isblank nan where
-verbatim-
```

Unfortunately, Savannah doesn't have a way to edit submitted comments. Therefore be sure to press the "Preview" button and check your report's final format before the final submission.

1.10 Suggest new feature

We would always be happy to hear of suggested new features. For every program, there are already lists of features that we are planning to add. You can see the current list of plans from the Gnuastro project web page at `https://savannah.gnu.org/projects/gnuastro/` and following "Tasks"→"Browse" on the horizontal menu at the top of the page immediately under the title, see Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979. If you want to request a feature to an existing program, click on the "Display Criteria" above the list and under "Category", choose that particular program. Under "Category" you can also see the existing suggestions for new programs or other cases like installation, documentation or libraries. Also, be sure to set the "Open/Closed" value to "Any".

If the feature you want to suggest is not already listed in the task manager, then follow the steps that are fully described in Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15. Please have in mind that the developers are all busy with their own astronomical research, and implementing existing "task"s to add or resolve bugs. Gnuastro is a volunteer effort and none of the developers are paid for their hard work. So, although we will try our best, please do not expect for your suggested feature to be immediately included (for the next release of Gnuastro).

The best person to apply the exciting new feature you have in mind is you, since you have the motivation and need. In fact, Gnuastro is designed for making it as easy as possible for you to hack into it (add new features, change existing ones and so on), see Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6. Please have a look at the chapter

devoted to developing (Chapter 13 [Developing], page 958) and start applying your desired feature. Once you have added it, you can use it for your own work and if you feel you want others to benefit from your work, you can request for it to become part of Gnuastro. You can then join the developers and start maintaining your own part of Gnuastro. If you choose to take this path of action please contact us beforehand (Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15) so we can avoid possible duplicate activities and get interested people in contact.

Gnuastro is a collection of low level programs: As described in Section 13.2 [Program design philosophy], page 960, a founding principle of Gnuastro is that each library or program should be basic and low-level. High level jobs should be done by running the separate programs or using separate functions in succession through a shell script or calling the libraries by higher level functions, see the examples in Chapter 2 [Tutorials], page 21. So when making the suggestions please consider how your desired job can best be broken into separate steps and modularized.

1.11 Announcements

Gnuastro has a dedicated mailing list for making announcements (`info-gnuastro`). Anyone can subscribe to this mailing list. Anytime there is a new stable or test release, an email will be circulated there. The email contains a summary of the overall changes along with a detailed list (from the `NEWS` file). This mailing list is thus the best way to stay up to date with new releases, easily learn about the updated/new features, or dependencies (see Section 3.1 [Dependencies], page 212).

To subscribe to this list, please visit `https://lists.gnu.org/mailman/listinfo/info-gnuastro`. Traffic (number of mails per unit time) in this list is designed to be low: only a handful of mails per year. Previous announcements are available on its archive (`http://lists.gnu.org/archive/html/info-gnuastro/`).

1.12 Conventions

In this book we have the following conventions:

- All commands that are to be run on the shell (command-line) prompt as the user start with a `$`. In case they must be run as a superuser or system administrator, they will start with a single `#`. If the command is in a separate line and next line `is also in the code type face`, but does not have any of the `$` or `#` signs, then it is the output of the command after it is run. As a user, you do not need to type those lines. A line that starts with `##` is just a comment for explaining the command to a human reader and must not be typed.
- If the command becomes larger than the page width a \ is inserted in the code. If you are typing the code by hand on the command-line, you do not need to use multiple lines or add the extra space characters, so you can omit them. If you want to copy and paste these examples (highly discouraged!) then the \ should stay.

  The \ character is a shell escape character which is used commonly to make characters which have special meaning for the shell, lose that special meaning (the shell will not treat them especially if there is a \ behind them). When \ is the last visible character in a line (the next character is a new-line character) the new-line character loses its

meaning. Therefore, the shell sees it as a simple white-space character not the end of a command! This enables you to use multiple lines to write your commands.

This is not a convention, but a bi-product of the PDF building process of the manual: In the PDF version of this manual, a single quote (or apostrophe) character in the commands or codes is shown like this: '. Single quotes are sometimes necessary in combination with commands like `awk` or `sed`, or when using Column arithmetic in Gnuastro's own Table (see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350). Therefore when typing (recommended) or copy-pasting (not recommended) the commands that have a ', please correct it to the single-quote (or apostrophe) character, otherwise the command will fail.

1.13 Acknowledgments

Gnuastro would not have been possible without scholarships and grants from several funding institutions. We thus ask that if you used Gnuastro in any of your papers/reports, please add the proper citation and acknowledge the funding agencies/projects. For details of which papers to cite (may be different for different programs) and get the acknowledgment statement to include in your paper, please run the relevant programs with the common `--cite` option like the example commands below (for more on `--cite`, please see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259).

```
$ astnoisechisel --cite
$ astmkcatalog --cite
```

Here, we will acknowledge all the institutions (and their grants) along with the people who helped make Gnuastro possible. The full list of Gnuastro authors is available at the start of this book and the `AUTHORS` file in the source code (both are generated automatically from the version controlled history). The plain text file `THANKS`, which is also distributed along with the source code, contains the list of people and institutions who played an indirect role in Gnuastro (not committed any code in the Gnuastro version controlled history).

The Japanese Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science, and Technology (MEXT) scholarship for Mohammad Akhlaghi's Masters and PhD degree in Tohoku University Astronomical Institute had an instrumental role in the long term learning and planning that made the idea of Gnuastro possible. The very critical view points of Professor Takashi Ichikawa (Mohammad's adviser) were also instrumental in the initial ideas and creation of Gnuastro. Afterwards, the European Research Council (ERC) advanced grant 339659-MUSICOS (Principal investigator: Roland Bacon) was vital in the growth and expansion of Gnuastro. Working with Roland at the Centre de Recherche Astrophysique de Lyon (CRAL), enabled a thorough re-write of the core functionality of all libraries and programs, turning Gnuastro into the large collection of generic programs and libraries it is today. At the Instituto de Astrofisica de Canarias (IAC, and in particular in collaboration with Johan Knapen and Ignacio Trujillo), Gnuastro matured and its user base significantly grew. Work on improving Gnuastro is now continuing primarily in the Centro de Estudios de Física del Cosmos de Aragón (CEFCA), located in Teruel, Spain.

In general, we would like to gratefully thank the following people for their useful and constructive comments and suggestions (in alphabetical order by family name): Valentina Abril-melgarejo, Marjan Akbari, Carlos Allende Prieto, Hamed Altafi, Roland Bacon, Roberto Baena Gallé, Zahra Bagheri, Karl Berry, Faezeh Bidjarchian, Leindert Boogaard, Nicolas

Bouché, Stefan Brüns, Fernando Buitrago Alonso, Adrian Bunk, Rosa Calvi, Mark Calabretta, Juan Castillo Ramírez, Nushkia Chamba, Sergio Chueca Urzay, Tamara Civera Lorenzo, Benjamin Clement, Nima Dehdilani, Andrés Del Pino Molina, Antonio Diaz Diaz, Paola Dimauro, Alexey Dokuchaev, Pierre-Alain Duc, Alessandro Ederoclite, Elham Eftekhari, Paul Eggert, Sepideh Eskandarlou, Sílvia Farras, Juan Antonio Fernández Ontiveros, Gaspar Galaz, Andrés García-Serra Romero, Zohre Ghaffari, Thérèse Godefroy, Giulia Golini, Craig Gordon, Martin Guerrero Roncel, Madusha Gunawardhana, Bruno Haible, Stephen Hamer, Siyang He, Zahra Hosseini, Leslie Hunt, Takashi Ichikawa, Raúl Infante Sainz, Brandon Invergo, Oryna Ivashtenko, Aurélien Jarno, Ooldooz Kabood, Lee Kelvin, Brandon Kelly, Mohammad-Reza Khellat, Johan Knapen, Geoffry Krouchi, Martin Kuemmel, Teet Kuutma, Clotilde Laigle, Floriane Leclercq, Alan Lefor, Javier Licandro, Jeremy Lim, Giacomo Lorenzetti, Alejandro Lumbreras Calle, Sebastián Luna Valero, Alberto Madrigal, Guillaume Mahler, Juan Miro, Alireza Molaeinezhad, Javier Moldon, Juan Molina Tobar, Francesco Montanari, Raphael Morales, Carlos Morales Socorro, Sylvain Mottet, Dmitrii Oparin, François Ochsenbein, Bertrand Pain, Rahna Payyasseri Thanduparackal, William Pence, Irene Pintos Castro, Mamta Pommier, Marcel Popescu, Bob Proulx, Joseph Putko, Samane Raji, Ignacio Ruiz Cejudo, Teymoor Saifollahi, Joanna Sakowska, Elham Saremi, Nafise Sedighi, Markus Schaney, Yahya Sefidbakht, Alejandro Serrano Borlaff, Zahra Sharbaf, David Shupe, Leigh Smith, Jenny Sorce, Manuel Sánchez-Benavente, Lee Spitler, Richard Stallman, Michael Stein, Ole Streicher, Alfred M. Szmidt, Michel Tallon, Juan C. Tello, Vincenzo Testa, Éric Thiébaut, Ignacio Trujillo, Peter Teuben, Mathias Urbano, David Valls-Gabaud, Jesús Varela, Jesús Vega, Aaron Watkins, Richard Wilbur, Phil Wyett, Dennis Williamson, Michael H.F. Wilkinson, Christopher Willmer, Greg Wooledge, Xiuqin Wu, Sara Yousefi Taemeh, Johannes Zabl. The GNU French Translation Team is also managing the French version of the top Gnuastro web page which we highly appreciate. Finally, we should thank all the (sometimes anonymous) people in various online forums who patiently answered all our small (but important) technical questions.

All work on Gnuastro has been voluntary, but the authors are most grateful to the following institutions (in chronological order) for hosting/supporting us in our research. Where necessary, these institutions have disclaimed any ownership of the parts of Gnuastro that were developed there, thus insuring the freedom of Gnuastro for the future (see Section 13.12.1 [Copyright assignment], page 981). We highly appreciate their support for free software, and thus free science, and therefore a free society.

Tohoku University Astronomical Institute, Sendai, Japan.
University of Salento, Lecce, Italy.
Centre de Recherche Astrophysique de Lyon (CRAL), Lyon, France.
Instituto de Astrofisica de Canarias (IAC), Tenerife, Spain.
Centro de Estudios de Física del Cosmos de Aragón (CEFCA), Teruel, Spain.
Google Summer of Code 2020, 2021 and 2022

2 Tutorials

To help new users have a smooth and easy start with Gnuastro, in this chapter several thoroughly elaborated tutorials, or cookbooks, are provided. These tutorials demonstrate the capabilities of different Gnuastro programs and libraries, along with tips and guidelines for the best practices of using them in various realistic situations.

We strongly recommend going through these tutorials to get a good feeling of how the programs are related (built in a modular design to be used together in a pipeline), very similar to the core Unix-based programs that they were modeled on. Therefore these tutorials will help in optimally using Gnuastro's programs (and generally, the Unix-like command-line environment) effectively for your research.

The first three tutorials (Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, and Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80, and Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102) use real input datasets from some of the deep Hubble Space Telescope (HST) images, the Sloan Digital Sky Survey (SDSS) and the Javalambre Photometric Local Universe Survey (J-PLUS) respectively. Their aim is to demonstrate some real-world problems that many astronomers often face and how they can be solved with Gnuastro's programs. The fourth tutorial (Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123) focuses on simulating astronomical images, which is another critical aspect of any analysis!

The ultimate aim of Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, is to detect galaxies in a deep HST image, measure their positions, magnitude and select those with the strongest colors. In the process, it takes many detours to introduce you to the useful capabilities of many of the programs. So please be patient in reading it. If you do not have much time and can only try one of the tutorials, we recommend this one.

Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80, deals with a major problem in astronomy: effectively detecting the faint outer wings of bright (and large) nearby galaxies to extremely low surface brightness levels (roughly one quarter of the local noise level in the example discussed). Besides the interesting scientific questions in these low-surface brightness features, failure to properly detect them will bias the measurements of the background objects and the survey's noise estimates. This is an important issue, especially in wide surveys. Because bright/large galaxies and stars[1], cover a significant fraction of the survey area.

Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102, tackles an important problem in astronomy: how the extract the PSF of an image, to the largest possible extent, without assuming any functional form. In Gnuastro we have multiple installed scripts for this job. Their usage and logic behind best tuning them for the particular step, is fully described in this tutorial, on a real dataset. The tutorial concludes with subtracting that extended PSF from the science image; thus giving you a cleaner image (with no scattered light of the brighter stars) for your higher-level analysis.

Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123, has a fictional[2] setting! Showing how Abd al-rahman Sufi (903 – 986 A.D., the first recorded description of "nebulous" objects

[1] Stars also have similarly large and extended wings due to the point spread function, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654.

[2] The two historically motivated tutorials (Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123, is not intended to be a historical reference (the historical facts of this fictional tutorial used Wikipedia as a reference).) This form of presenting a tutorial was influenced by the PGF/TikZ and Beamer manuals. They are both

in the heavens is attributed to him) could have used some of Gnuastro's programs for a realistic simulation of his observations and see if his detection of nebulous objects was trustable. Because all conditions are under control in a simulated/mock environment/dataset, mock datasets can be a valuable tool to inspect the limitations of your data analysis and processing. But they need to be as realistic as possible, so this tutorial is dedicated to this important step of an analysis (simulations).

There are other tutorials also, on things that are commonly necessary in astronomical research: In Section 2.5 [Detecting lines and extracting spectra in 3D data], page 134, we use MUSE cubes (an IFU dataset) to show how you can subtract the continuum, detect emission-line features, extract spectra and build synthetic narrow-band images. In Section 2.6.1 [Color channels in same pixel grid], page 152, we demonstrate how you can warp multiple images into a single pixel grid (often necessary with multi-wavelength data), and build a single color image. In Section 2.9 [Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction], page 191, we show how you can avoid the unwanted Moiré pattern which happens when warping separate exposures to build a coadded deeper image. In Section 2.7 [Zero point of an image], page 166, we review the process of estimating the zero point of an image using a reference image or catalog. Finally, in Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177, we show the process by which you can simulate a dither pattern to find the best observing strategy for your next exciting scientific project.

In these tutorials, we have intentionally avoided too many cross references to make it more easy to read. For more information about a particular program, you can visit the section with the same name as the program in this book. Each program section in the subsequent chapters starts by explaining the general concepts behind what it does, for example, see Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479. If you only want practical information on running a program, for example, its options/configuration, input(s) and output(s), please consult the subsection titled "Invoking ProgramName", for example, see Section 7.2.2 [Invoking NoiseChisel], page 555. For an explanation of the conventions we use in the example codes through the book, please see Section 1.12 [Conventions], page 18.

2.1 General program usage tutorial

Measuring colors of astronomical objects in broad-band or narrow-band images is one of the most basic and common steps in astronomical analysis. Here, we will use Gnuastro's programs to get a physical scale (area at certain redshifts) of the field we are studying, detect objects in a Hubble Space Telescope (HST) image, measure their colors and identify the ones with the strongest colors, do a visual inspection of these objects and inspect spatial position in the image. After this tutorial, you can also try the Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80, tutorial which goes into a little more detail on detecting very low surface brightness signal.

During the tutorial, we will take many detours to explain, and practically demonstrate, the many capabilities of Gnuastro's programs. In the end you will see that the things you learned during this tutorial are much more generic than this particular problem and can be

packages in TEX and LATEX, the first is a high-level vector graphic programming environment, while with the second you can make presentation slides. On a similar topic, there are also some nice words of wisdom for Unix-like systems called Rootless Root (`http://catb.org/esr/writings/unix-koans`). These also have a similar style but they use a mythical figure named Master Foo. If you already have some experience in Unix-like systems, you will definitely find these Unix Koans entertaining/educative.

used in solving a wide variety of problems involving the analysis of data (images or tables). So please do not rush, and go through the steps patiently to optimally master Gnuastro.

In this tutorial, we will use the HSTeXtreme Deep Field (`https://archive.stsci.edu/prepds/xdf`) dataset. Like almost all astronomical surveys, this dataset is free for download and usable by the public. You will need the following tools in this tutorial: Gnuastro, SAO DS9[3], GNU Wget[4], and AWK (most common implementation is GNU AWK[5]).

This tutorial was first prepared for the "Exploring the Ultra-Low Surface Brightness Universe" workshop (November 2017) at the ISSI in Bern, Switzerland. It was further extended in the "4th Indo-French Astronomy School" (July 2018) organized by LIO, CRAL CNRS UMR5574, UCBL, and IUCAA in Lyon, France. We are very grateful to the organizers of these workshops and the attendees for the very fruitful discussions and suggestions that made this tutorial possible.

Write the example commands manually: Try to type the example commands on your terminal manually and use the history feature of your command-line (by pressing the "up" button to retrieve previous commands). Do not simply copy and paste the commands shown here. This will help simulate future situations when you are processing your own datasets.

2.1.1 Calling Gnuastro's programs

A handy feature of Gnuastro is that all program names start with `ast`. This will allow your command-line processor to easily list and auto-complete Gnuastro's programs for you. Try typing the following command (press `TAB` key when you see `<TAB>`) to see the list:

```
$ ast<TAB><TAB>
```

Any program that starts with `ast` (including all Gnuastro programs) will be shown. By choosing the subsequent characters of your desired program and pressing `<TAB><TAB>` again, the list will narrow down and the program name will auto-complete once your input characters are unambiguous. In short, you often do not need to type the full name of the program you want to run.

2.1.2 Accessing documentation

Gnuastro contains a large number of programs and it is natural to forget the details of each program's options or inputs and outputs. Therefore, before starting the analysis steps of this tutorial, let's review how you can access this book to refresh your memory any time you want, without having to take your hands off the keyboard.

When you install Gnuastro, this book is also installed on your system along with all the programs and libraries, so you do not need an internet connection to access/read it. Also, by accessing this book as described below, you can be sure that it corresponds to your installed version of Gnuastro.

[3] See Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989, available at `http://ds9.si.edu/site/Home.html`

[4] `https://www.gnu.org/software/wget`

[5] `https://www.gnu.org/software/gawk`

GNU Info[6] is the program in charge of displaying the manual on the command-line (for more, see Section 4.3.4 [Info], page 275). To see this whole book on your command-line, please run the following command and press subsequent keys. Info has its own mini-environment, therefore we will show the keys that must be pressed in the mini-environment after a `->` sign. You can also ignore anything after the `#` sign in the middle of the line, they are only for your information.

```
$ info gnuastro                 # Open the top of the manual.
-> <SPACE>                      # All the book chapters.
-> <SPACE>                      # Continue down: show sections.
-> <SPACE> ...                  # Keep pressing space to go down.
-> q                            # Quit Info, return to the command-line.
```

The thing that greatly simplifies navigation in Info is the links (regions with an underline). You can immediately go to the next link in the page with the `<TAB>` key and press `<ENTER>` on it to go into that part of the manual. Try the commands above again, but this time also use `<TAB>` to go to the links and press `<ENTER>` on them to go to the respective section of the book. Then follow a few more links and go deeper into the book. To return to the previous page, press `l` (small L). If you are searching for a specific phrase in the whole book (for example, an option name), press `s` and type your search phrase and end it with an `<ENTER>`. Finally, you can return to the command line and quit Info by pressing the `q` key.

You do not need to start from the top of the manual every time. For example, to get to Section 7.2.2 [Invoking NoiseChisel], page 555, run the following command. In general, all programs have such an "Invoking ProgramName" section in this book. These sections are specifically for the description of inputs, outputs and configuration options of each program. You can access them directly for each program by giving its executable name to Info.

```
$ info astnoisechisel
```

The other sections do not have such shortcuts. To directly access them from the command-line, you need to tell Info to look into Gnuastro's manual, then look for the specific section (an unambiguous title is necessary). For example, if you only want to review/remember NoiseChisel's Section 7.2.2.2 [Detection options], page 560), just run the following command. Note how case is irrelevant for Info when calling a title in this manner.

```
$ info gnuastro "Detection options"
```

In general, Info is a powerful and convenient way to access this whole book with detailed information about the programs you are running. If you are not already familiar with it, please run the following command and just read along and do what it says to learn it. Do not stop until you feel sufficiently fluent in it. Please invest the half an hour's time necessary to start using Info comfortably. It will greatly improve your productivity and you will start reaping the rewards of this investment very soon.

```
$ info info
```

As a good scientist you need to feel comfortable to play with the features/options and avoid (be critical to) using default values as much as possible. On the other hand, our human memory is limited, so it is important to be able to easily access any part of this book fast and remember the option names, what they do and their acceptable values.

[6] GNU Info is already available on almost all Unix-like operating systems.

If you just want the option names and a short description, calling the program with the `--help` option might also be a good solution like the first example below. If you know a few characters of the option name, you can feed the printed output to `grep` like the second or third example commands.

```
$ astnoisechisel --help
$ astnoisechisel --help | grep quant
$ astnoisechisel --help | grep check
```

2.1.3 Setup and data download

The first step in the analysis of the tutorial is to download the necessary input datasets. First, to keep things clean, let's create a `gnuastro-tutorial` directory and continue all future steps in it:

```
$ mkdir gnuastro-tutorial
$ cd gnuastro-tutorial
```

We will be using the near infra-red Wide Field Camera (`http://www.stsci.edu/hst/wfc3`) dataset. If you already have them in another directory (for example, `XDFDIR`, with the same FITS file names), you can set the `download` directory to be a symbolic link to `XDFDIR` with a command like this:

```
$ ln -s XDFDIR download
```

Otherwise, when the following images are not already present on your system, you can make a `download` directory and download them there.

```
$ mkdir download
$ cd download
$ xdfurl=http://archive.stsci.edu/pub/hlsp/xdf
$ wget $xdfurl/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f105w_v1_sci.fits
$ wget $xdfurl/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f125w_v1_sci.fits
$ wget $xdfurl/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f160w_v1_sci.fits
$ cd ..
```

In this tutorial, we will just use these three filters. Later, you may need to download more filters. To do that, you can use the shell's `for` loop to download them all in series (one after the other[7]) with one command like the one below for the WFC3 filters. Put this command instead of the three `wget` commands above. Recall that all the extra spaces, backslashes (\), and new lines can be ignored if you are typing on the lines on the terminal.

```
$ for f in f105w f125w f140w f160w; do \
    wget $xdfurl/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_"$f"_v1_sci.fits; \
  done
```

2.1.4 Dataset inspection and cropping

First, let's visually inspect the datasets we downloaded in Section 2.1.3 [Setup and data download], page 25. Let's take F160W image as an example. One of the most common programs for viewing FITS images is SAO DS9, which is usually called through the `ds9`

[7] Note that you only have one port to the internet, so downloading in parallel will actually be slower than downloading in series.

command-line program, like the command below. If you do not already have DS9 on your computer and the command below fails, please see Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989.

```
$ ds9 download/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f160w_v1_sci.fits
```

By default, DS9 open a relatively small window (for modern browsers) and its default scale and color bar make it very hard to see any structure in the image: everything will look black. Also, by default, it zooms into the center of the image and you need to scroll to zoom-out and see the whole thing. To avoid these problems, Gnuastro has the `astscript-fits-view` script:

```
$ astscript-fits-view \
          download/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f160w_v1_sci.fits
```

After running this command, you will see that the DS9 window fully covers the height of your monitor, it is showing the whole image, using a more clear color-map, and many more useful things. In fact, you see the DS9 command that is used in your terminal[8]. On GNU/Linux operating systems (like Ubuntu, and Fedora), you can also set your graphics user interface to use this script for opening FITS files when you click on them. For more, see the instructions in the checklist at the start of Section 10.4.1 [Invoking astscript-fits-view], page 706.

As you hover your mouse over the image, notice how the "Value" and positional fields on the top of the ds9 window get updated. The first thing you might notice is that when you hover the mouse over the regions with no data, they have a value of zero. The next thing might be that the dataset has a shallower and deeper component (see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615). Recall that this is a combined/reduced image of many exposures, and the parts that have more exposures are deeper. In particular, the exposure time of the deep inner region is more than 4 times the exposure time of the outer (more shallower) parts.

To simplify the analysis in this tutorial, we will only be working on the deep field, so let's crop it out of the full dataset. Fortunately the XDF survey web page (above) contains the vertices of the deep flat WFC3-IR field[9]. With Gnuastro's Crop program, you can use those vertices to cutout this deep region from the larger image (to learn more about the Crop program see Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389). But before that, to keep things organized, let's make a directory called `flat-ir` and keep the flat (single-depth) regions in that directory (with a '`xdf-`' prefix for a shorter and easier filename).

```
$ mkdir flat-ir
$ astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=flat-ir/xdf-f105w.fits \
          --polygon="53.187414,-27.779152 : 53.159507,-27.759633 : \
                     53.134517,-27.787144 : 53.161906,-27.807208" \
          download/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f105w_v1_sci.fits

$ astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=flat-ir/xdf-f125w.fits \
          --polygon="53.187414,-27.779152 : 53.159507,-27.759633 : \
                     53.134517,-27.787144 : 53.161906,-27.807208" \
```

[8] When comparing DS9's command-line options to Gnuastro's, you will notice how SAO DS9 does not follow the GNU style of options where "long" and "short" options are preceded by `--` and `-` respectively (for example, `--width` and `-w`, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251).

[9] `https://archive.stsci.edu/prepds/xdf/#dataproducts`

```
          download/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f125w_v1_sci.fits

$ astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits \
          --polygon="53.187414,-27.779152 : 53.159507,-27.759633 : \
                     53.134517,-27.787144 : 53.161906,-27.807208" \
          download/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_f160w_v1_sci.fits
```

Run the command below to have a look at the cropped images:

```
$ astscript-fits-view flat-ir/*.fits
```

You only see the deep region now, does not the noise look much cleaner? An important result of this crop is that regions with no data now have a NaN (Not-a-Number, or a blank value) value. Any self-respecting statistical program will ignore NaN values, so they will not affect your outputs. For example, notice how changing the DS9 color bar will not affect the NaN pixels (their colors will not change).

However, do you remember that in the downloaded files, such regions had a value of zero? That is a big problem! Because zero is a number, and is thus meaningful, especially when you later want to NoiseChisel to detect[10] all the signal from the deep universe in this image. Generally, when you want to ignore some pixels in a dataset, and avoid higher-level ambiguities or complications, it is always best to give them blank values (not zero, or some other absurdly large or small number). Gnuastro has the Arithmetic program for such cases, and we will introduce it later in this tutorial.

In the example above, the polygon vertices are in degrees, but you can also replace them with sexagesimal[11] coordinates (for example, using `03h32m44.9794` or `03:32:44.9794` instead of `53.187414`, the first RA, and `-27d46m44.9472` or `-27:46:44.9472` instead of `-27.779152`, the first Dec). To further simplify things, you can even define your polygon visually as a DS9 "region", save it as a "region file" and give that file to crop. But we need to continue, so if you are interested to learn more, see Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389.

Before closing this section, let's just take a look at the three cropping commands we ran above. The only thing varying in the three commands the filter name! Note how everything else is the same! In such cases, you should generally avoid repeating a command manually, it is prone to *many* bugs, and as you see, it is very hard to read (did not you suddenly write a `7` as an `8`?).

To simplify the command, and allow you to work on more filters, we can use the shell's `for` loop as shown below. Notice how the place where the filter names (`f105w`, `f125w` and `f160w`) are used above, have been replaced with `$f` (the shell variable that `for` will update in every loop) below.

```
$ rm flat-ir/*.fits
$ for f in f105w f125w f160w; do \
    astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=flat-ir/xdf-$f.fits \
            --polygon="53.187414,-27.779152 : 53.159507,-27.759633 : \
```

[10] As you will see below, unlike most other detection algorithms, NoiseChisel detects the objects from their faintest parts, it does not start with their high signal-to-noise ratio peaks. Since the Sky is already subtracted in many images and noise fluctuates around zero, zero is commonly higher than the initial threshold applied. Therefore keeping zero-valued pixels in this image will cause them to identified as part of the detections!

[11] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sexagesimal`

```
                              53.134517,-27.787144 : 53.161906,-27.807208" \
                    download/hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_"$f"_v1_sci.fits; \
    done
```

2.1.5 Angular coverage on the sky

The cropped images in Section 2.1.4 [Dataset inspection and cropping], page 25, are the deepest images we currently have of the sky. The first thing that comes to mind may be this: "How large is this field on the sky?".

More accurate method: the steps mentioned in this section are primarily designed to help you get familiar with the FITS WCS standard and some shells scripting. The accuracy of this method will decrease as your image becomes large (on the scale of degrees). For an accurate method, see Section 2.8.2 [Area of non-blank pixels on sky], page 181.

You can get a fast and crude answer with Gnuastro's Fits program, using this command:

```
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --skycoverage
```

It will print the sky coverage in two formats (all numbers are in units of degrees for this image): 1) the image's central RA and Dec and full width around that center, 2) the range of RA and Dec covered by this image. You can use these values in various online query systems. You can also use this option to automatically calculate the area covered by this image. With the `--quiet` option, the printed output of `--skycoverage` will not contain human-readable text, making it easier for automatic (computer) processing:

```
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --skycoverage --quiet
```

The second row is the coverage range along RA and Dec (compare with the outputs before using `--quiet`). We can thus simply subtract the second from the first column and multiply it with the difference of the fourth and third columns to calculate the image area. We will also multiply each by 60 to have the area in arc-minutes squared.

```
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --skycoverage --quiet \
        | awk 'NR==2{print ($2-$1)*60*($4-$3)*60}'
```

The returned value is 9.06711 arcmin^2. **However, this method ignores the fact that many of the image pixels are blank!** In other words, the image does cover this area, but there is no data in more than half of the pixels. So let's calculate the area coverage over-which we actually have data.

The FITS world coordinate system (WCS) metadata standard contains the key to answering this question. Run the following command to see all the FITS keywords (metadata) for one of the images (almost identical with the other images because they are scaled to the same region of Sky):

```
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -h1
```

Look into the keywords grouped under the '`World Coordinate System (WCS)`' title. These keywords define how the image relates to the outside world. In particular, the `CDELT*` keywords (or `CDELT1` and `CDELT2` in this 2D image) contain the "Coordinate DELTa" (or change in coordinate units) with a change in one pixel. But what is the units of each "world" coordinate? The `CUNIT*` keywords (for "Coordinate UNIT") have the answer. In this case,

both CUNIT1 and CUNIT1 have a value of deg, so both "world" coordinates are in units of degrees. We can thus conclude that the value of CDELT* is in units of degrees-per-pixel[12].

With the commands below, we will use CDELT (along with the number of non-blank pixels) to find the answer of our initial question: "how much of the sky does this image cover?". The lines starting with ## are just comments for you to read and understand each command. Do not type them on the terminal (no problem if you do, they will just not have any effect). The commands are intentionally repetitive in some places to better understand each step and also to demonstrate the beauty of command-line features like history, variables, pipes and loops (which you will commonly use as you become more proficient on the command-line).

Use shell history: Do not forget to make effective use of your shell's history: you do not have to re-type previous command to add something to them (like the examples below). This is especially convenient when you just want to make a small change to your previous command. Press the "up" key on your keyboard (possibly multiple times) to see your previous command(s) and modify them accordingly.

Your locale does not use '.' as decimal separator: on systems that do not use an English language environment, the dates, numbers, etc., can be printed in different formats (for example, '0.5' can be written as '0,5': with a comma). With the LC_NUMERIC line at the start of the script below, we are ensuring a unified format in the output of seq. For more, please see Section 4.11 [Numeric locale], page 295.

```
## Make sure that the decimal separator is a point in any environment.
$ export LC_NUMERIC=C

## See the general statistics of non-blank pixel values.
$ aststatistics flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits

## We only want the number of non-blank pixels (add '--number').
$ aststatistics flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --number

## Keep the result of the command above in the shell variable `n'.
$ n=$(aststatistics flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --number)

## See what is stored the shell variable `n'.
$ echo $n
```

[12] With the FITS CDELT convention, rotation (PC or CD keywords) and scales (CDELT) are separated. In the FITS standard the CDELT keywords are optional. When CDELT keywords are not present, the PC matrix is assumed to contain *both* the coordinate rotation and scales. Note that not all FITS writers use the CDELT convention. So you might not find the CDELT keywords in the WCS metadata of some FITS files. However, all Gnuastro programs (which use the default FITS keyword writing format of WCSLIB) write their output WCS with the CDELT convention, even if the input does not have it. If your dataset does not use the CDELT convention, you can feed it to any (simple) Gnuastro program (for example, Arithmetic) and the output will have the CDELT keyword. See Section 8 of the FITS standard (https://fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/standard40/fits_standard40aa-le.pdf) for more

```
## Show all the FITS keywords of this image.
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -h1

## The resolution (in degrees/pixel) is in the `CDELT' keywords.
## Only show lines that contain these characters, by feeding
## the output of the previous command to the `grep' program.
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -h1 | grep CDELT

## Since the resolution of both dimensions is (approximately) equal,
## we will only read the value of one (CDELT1) with '--keyvalue'.
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -h1 --keyvalue=CDELT1

## We do not need the file name in the output (add '--quiet').
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -h1 --keyvalue=CDELT1 --quiet

## Save it as the shell variable `r'.
$ r=$(astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -h1 --keyvalue=CDELT1 --quiet)

## Print the values of `n' and `r'.
$ echo $n $r

## Use the number of pixels (first number passed to AWK) and
## length of each pixel's edge (second number passed to AWK)
## to estimate the area of the field in arc-minutes squared.
$ echo $n $r | awk '{print $1 * ($2*60)^2}'
```

The output of the last command (area of this field) is 4.03817 (or approximately 4.04) arc-minutes squared. Just for comparison, this is roughly 175 times smaller than the average moon's angular area (with a diameter of 30 arc-minutes or half a degree).

Some FITS writers do not use the `CDELT` convention, making it hard to use the steps above. In such cases, you can extract the pixel scale with the `--pixelscale` option of Gnuastro's Fits program like the command below. Similar to the `--skycoverage` option above, you can also use the `--quiet` option to allow easy usage of the values in scripts.

```
$ astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --pixelscale
```

AWK for table/value processing: As you saw above AWK is a powerful and simple tool for text processing. You will see it often in shell scripts. GNU AWK (the most common implementation) comes with a free and wonderful book (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gawk/manual/`) in the same format as this book which will allow you to master it nicely. Just like this manual, you can also access GNU AWK's manual on the command-line whenever necessary without taking your hands off the keyboard. Just run `info awk`.

2.1.6 Cosmological coverage and visualizing tables

Having found the angular coverage of the dataset in Section 2.1.5 [Angular coverage on the sky], page 28, we can now use Gnuastro to answer a more physically motivated question:

"How large is this area at different redshifts?". To get a feeling of the tangential area that this field covers at redshift 2, you can use Gnuastro's CosmicCalcular program (Section 9.1 [CosmicCalculator], page 677). In particular, you need the tangential distance covered by 1 arc-second as raw output. Combined with the field's area that was measured before, we can calculate the tangential distance in Mega Parsecs squared (Mpc^2).

```
## If your system language uses ',' (not '.') as decimal separator.
$ export LC_NUMERIC=C

## Print general cosmological properties at redshift 2 (for example).
$ astcosmiccal -z2

## When given a "Specific calculation" option, CosmicCalculator
## will just print that particular calculation. To see all such
## calculations, add a `--help' token to the previous command
## (under the same title). Note that with `--help', no processing
## is done, so you can always simply append it to remember
## something without modifying the command you want to run.
$ astcosmiccal -z2 --help

## Only print the "Tangential dist. for 1arcsec at z (physical kpc)".
## in units of kpc/arc-seconds.
$ astcosmiccal -z2 --arcsectandist

## It is easier to use the short (single character) version of
## this option when typing (but this is hard to read, so use
## the long version in scripts or notes you plan to archive).
$ astcosmiccal -z2 -s

## Short options can be merged (they are only a single character!)
$ astcosmiccal -sz2

## Convert this distance to kpc^2/arcmin^2 and save in `k'.
$ k=$(astcosmiccal -sz2 | awk '{print ($1*60)^2}')

## Calculate the area of the dataset in arcmin^2.
$ n=$(aststatistics flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --number)
$ r=$(astfits flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -h1 --keyvalue=CDELT1 -q)
$ a=$(echo $n $r | awk '{print $1 * ($2*60)^2 }')

## Multiply `k' and `a' and divide by 10^6 for value in Mpc^2.
$ echo $k $a | awk '{print $1 * $2 / 1e6}'
```

At redshift 2, this field therefore covers approximately 1.07 Mpc^2. If you would like to see how this tangential area changes with redshift, you can use a shell loop like below.

```
$ for z in 0.5 1.0 1.5 2.0 2.5 3.0 3.5 4.0 4.5 5.0; do        \
    k=$(astcosmiccal -sz$z);                                  \
    echo $z $k $a | awk '{print $1, ($2*60)^2 * $3 / 1e6}';   \
```

```
  done
```

Fortunately, the shell has a useful tool/program to print a sequence of numbers that is nicely called `seq` (short for "sequence"). You can use it instead of typing all the different redshifts in the loop above. For example, the loop below will calculate and print the tangential coverage of this field across a larger range of redshifts (0.1 to 5) and with finer increments of 0.1. For more on the `LC_NUMERIC` command, see Section 4.11 [Numeric locale], page 295.

```
## If your system language uses ',' (not '.') as decimal separator.
$ export LC_NUMERIC=C

## The loop over the redshifts
$ for z in $(seq 0.1 0.1 5); do                                  \
    k=$(astcosmiccal -z$z --arcsectandist);                      \
    echo $z $k $a | awk '{print $1, ($2*60)^2 * $3 / 1e6}';   \
  done
```

Have a look at the two printed columns. The first is the redshift, and the second is the area of this image at that redshift (in mega-parsecs squared). Redshift (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Redshift`) (z) is often used as a proxy for distance in galaxy evolution and cosmology: a higher redshift corresponds to larger line-of-sight comoving distance.

Now, have a look at the first few values. At $z = 0.1$ and $z = 0.5$, this image covers $0.05 Mpc^2$ and $0.57 Mpc^2$ respectively. This increase of coverage with redshift is expected because a fixed angle will cover a larger tangential area at larger distances. However, as you come down the list (to higher redshifts) you will notice that this relation does not hold! The largest coverage is at $z = 1.6$: at higher redshifts, the area decreases, and continues decreasing!!! In flat FLRW cosmology (including ΛCDM), the only factor contributing to this is the $(1 + z)$$ factor from the expansion of the universe, see the Wikipedia page (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angular_diameter_distance#Angular_diameter_turnover_point`), with no curvature effect.

In case you have TOPCAT, you can visualize this as a plot (if you do not have TOPCAT, see Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990). To do so, first you need to save the output of the loop above into a FITS table by piping the output to Gnuastro's Table program and giving an output name:

```
$ for z in $(seq 0.1 0.1 5); do                                  \
    k=$(astcosmiccal -z$z --arcsectandist);                      \
    echo $z $k $a | awk '{print $1, ($2*60)^2 * $3 / 1e6}';   \
  done | asttable --output=z-vs-tandist.fits
```

You can now use Gnuastro's `astscript-fits-view` to open this table in TOPCAT with the command below. Do you remember this script from Section 2.1.4 [Dataset inspection and cropping], page 25? There, we used it to view a FITS image with DS9! This script will see if the first dataset in the image is a table or an image and will call TOPCAT or DS9 accordingly: making it a very convenient tool to inspect the contents of all types of FITS data.

```
$ astscript-fits-view z-vs-tandist.fits
```

After TOPCAT opens, you will see the name of the table `z-vs-tandist.fits` in the left panel. On the top menu bar, select the "Graphics" menu, then select "Plane plot" to

visualize the two columns printed above as a plot and get a better impression of the turn over point of the image cosmological coverage.

2.1.7 Building custom programs with the library

In Section 2.1.6 [Cosmological coverage and visualizing tables], page 30, we repeated a certain calculation/output of a program multiple times using the shell's `for` loop. This simple way of repeating a calculation is great when it is only necessary once. However, if you commonly need this calculation and possibly for a larger number of redshifts at higher precision, the command above can be slow. Please try it out by changing the sequence command in the previous section to '`seq 0.1 0.01 10`'. It will take about 11 seconds[13]! This can be improved by *hundreds* of times! This section will show you how.

Generally, repeated calls to a generic program (like CosmicCalculator) are slow, because a generic program can have a lot of overhead on each call. To be generic and easy to operate, CosmicCalculator has to parse the command-line and all configuration files (see Section 2.1.8 [Option management and configuration files], page 35) which contain human-readable characters and need a lot of pre-processing to be ready for processing by the computer. Afterwards, CosmicCalculator has to check the sanity of its inputs and check which of its many options you have asked for. All the this pre-processing takes as much time as the high-level calculation you are requesting, and it has to re-do all of these for every redshift in your loop.

To greatly speed up the processing, you can directly access the core work-horse of CosmicCalculator without all that overhead by designing your custom program for this job. Using Gnuastro's library, you can write your own tiny program particularly designed for this exact calculation (and nothing else!). To do that, copy and paste the following C program in a file called `myprogram.c`.

```
#include <math.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <gnuastro/cosmology.h>

int
main(void)
{
  double area=4.03817;          /* Area of field (arcmin^2). */
  double z, adist, tandist;     /* Temporary variables.      */

  /* Constants from Plank 2018 (arXiv:1807.06209, Table 2) */
  double H0=67.66, olambda=0.6889, omatter=0.3111, oradiation=0;

  /* Do the same thing for all redshifts (z) between 0.1 and 10. */
  for(z=0.1; z<10; z+=0.01)
    {
```

[13] To measure how much time the loop of Section 2.1.6 [Cosmological coverage and visualizing tables], page 30, takes on your system, you can use the `time` command. First put the whole loop (and pipe) into a plain-text file (to be loaded as a shell script) called `z-vs-tandist.sh`. Then run this command: `time -p bash z-vs-tandist.sh`. The relevant time (in seconds) is shown after `real`.

```
      /* Calculate the angular diameter distance. */
      adist=gal_cosmology_angular_distance(z, H0, olambda,
                                           omatter, oradiation);

      /* Calculate the tangential distance of one arcsecond. */
      tandist = adist * 1000 * M_PI / 3600 / 180;

      /* Print the redshift and area. */
      printf("%-5.2f %g\n", z, pow(tandist * 60,2) * area / 1e6);
    }

  /* Tell the system that everything finished successfully. */
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

Then run the following command to compile your program and run it.

```
$ astbuildprog myprogram.c
```

In the command above, you used Gnuastro's BuildProgram program. Its job is to simplify the compilation, linking and running of simple C programs that use Gnuastro's library (like this one). BuildProgram is designed to manage Gnuastro's dependencies, compile and link your custom program and then run it.

Did you notice how your custom program created the table almost instantaneously? Technically, it only took about 0.03 seconds! Recall that the `for` loop of Section 2.1.6 [Cosmological coverage and visualizing tables], page 30, took more than 11 seconds (or ~ 367 times slower!).

Please run the `ls` command to see a listing of the files in the current directory. You will notice that a new file called `myprogram` has been created. This is the compiled program that was created and run by the command above (its in binary machine code format, not human-readable any more). You can run it again to get the same results by executing it:

```
$ ./myprogram
```

The efficiency of your custom `myprogram` compared to repeated calls to CosmicCalculator is because in the latter, the requested processing is comparable to the necessary overheads. For other programs that take large input datasets and do complicated processing on them, the overhead is usually negligible compared to the processing. In such cases, the libraries are only useful if you want a different/new processing compared to the functionalities in Gnuastro's existing programs.

Gnuastro has a large library which is used extensively by all the programs. In other words, the library is like the skeleton of Gnuastro. For the full list of available functions classified by context, please see Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764. Gnuastro's library and BuildProgram are created to make it easy for you to use these powerful features as you like. This gives you a high level of creativity, while also providing efficiency and robustness. Several other complete working examples (involving images and tables) of Gnuastro's libraries can be see in Section 12.4 [Library demo programs], page 940.

But for this tutorial, let's stop discussing the libraries here and get back to Gnuastro's already built programs (which do not need C programming). But before continuing, let's clean up the files we do not need any more:

```
$ rm myprogram* z-vs-tandist*
```

2.1.8 Option management and configuration files

In the previous section (Section 2.1.6 [Cosmological coverage and visualizing tables], page 30), when you ran CosmicCalculator, you only specified the redshfit with `-z2` option. You did not specify the cosmological parameters that are necessary for the calculations! Parameters like the Hubble constant (H_0) and the matter density. In spite of this, CosmicCalculator done its processing and printed results.

None of Gnuastro's programs keep a default value internally within their code (they are all set by the user)! So where did the necessary cosmological parameters that are necessary for its calculations come from? What were the values to those parameters? In short, they come from a configuration file (see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271), and the final used values can be checked/edited on the command-line. In this section we will review this important aspect of all the programs in Gnuastro.

Configuration files are an important part of all Gnuastro's programs, especially the ones with a large number of options, so it is important to understand this part well. Once you get comfortable with configuration files, you can make good use of them in all Gnuastro programs (for example, NoiseChisel). For example, to do optimal detection on various datasets, you can have configuration files for different noise properties. The configuration of each program (besides its version) is vital for the reproducibility of your results, so it is important to manage them properly.

As we saw above, the full list of the options in all Gnuastro programs can be seen with the `--help` option. Try calling it with CosmicCalculator as shown below. Note how options are grouped by context to make it easier to find your desired option. However, in each group, options are ordered alphabetically.

```
$ astcosmiccal --help
```

After running the command above, please scroll to the line that you ran this command and read through the output (its the same format for all the programs). All options have a long format (starting with `--` and a multi-character name) and some have a short format (starting with `-` and a single character), for more see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251. The options that expect a value, have an `=` sign after their long version. The format of their expected value is also shown as `FLT`, `INT` or `STR` for floating point numbers, integer numbers, and strings (filenames for example) respectively.

You can see the values of all options that need one with the `--printparams` option (or its short format: `-P`). `--printparams` is common to all programs (see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253). You can see the default cosmological parameters, from the Plank collaboration 2020 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1807.06209`), under the `# Input:` title:

```
$ astcosmiccal -P

# Input:
 H0          67.66    # Current expansion rate (Hubble constant).
 olambda     0.6889   # Current cosmological cst. dens. per crit. dens.
 omatter     0.3111   # Current matter density per critical density.
 oradiation  0        # Current radiation density per critical density.
```

Let's say you want to do the calculation in the previous section using $H_0 = 70$ km/s/Mpc. To do this, just add `--H0=70` after the command above (while keeping the `-P`). In the output, you can see that the used Hubble constant has also changed.

```
$ astcosmiccal -P --H0=70
```

Afterwards, delete the `-P` and add a `-z2` to see the calculations with the new cosmology (or configuration).

```
$ astcosmiccal --H0=70 -z2
```

From the output of the `--help` option, note how the option for Hubble constant has both short (`-H`) and long (`--H0`) formats. One final note is that the equal (`=`) sign is not mandatory. In the short format, the value can stick to the actual option (the short option name is just one character after-all, thus easily identifiable) and in the long format, a white-space character is also enough.

```
$ astcosmiccal -H70    -z2
$ astcosmiccal --H0 70 -z2 --arcsectandist
```

When an option does not need a value, and has a short format (like `--arcsectandist`), you can easily append it *before* other short options. So the last command above can also be written as:

```
$ astcosmiccal --H0 70 -sz2
```

Let's assume that in one project, you want to only use rounded cosmological parameters (H_0 of 70km/s/Mpc and matter density of 0.3). You should therefore run CosmicCalculator like this:

```
$ astcosmiccal --H0=70 --olambda=0.7 --omatter=0.3 -z2
```

But having to type these extra options every time you run CosmicCalculator will be prone to errors (typos in particular), frustrating and slow. Therefore in Gnuastro, you can put all the options and their values in a "Configuration file" and tell the programs to read the option values from there.

Let's create a configuration file... With your favorite text editor, make a file named `my-cosmology.conf` (or `my-cosmology.txt`, the suffix does not matter for Gnuastro, but a more descriptive suffix like `.conf` is recommended for humans reading your code and seeing your files: this includes you, looking into your own project, in a couple of months that you have forgot the details!). Then put the following lines inside of the plain-text file. One space between the option value and name is enough, the values are just under each other to help in readability. Also note that you should only use *long option names* in configuration files.

```
H0       70
olambda  0.7
omatter  0.3
```

You can now tell CosmicCalculator to read this file for option values immediately using the `--config` option as shown below. Do you see how the output of the following command corresponds to the option values in `my-cosmology.conf`, and is therefore identical to the previous command?

```
$ astcosmiccal --config=my-cosmology.conf -z2
```

But still, having to type `--config=my-cosmology.conf` every time is annoying, is not it? If you need this cosmology every time you are working in a specific directory, you can use Gnuastro's default configuration file names and avoid having to type it manually.

The default configuration files (that are checked if they exist) must be placed in the hidden `.gnuastro` sub-directory (in the same directory you are running the program). Their file name (within `.gnuastro`) must also be the same as the program's executable name. So in the case of CosmicCalculator, the default configuration file in a given directory is `.gnuastro/astcosmiccal.conf`.

Let's do this. We will first make a directory for our custom cosmology, then build a `.gnuastro` within it. Finally, we will copy the custom configuration file there:

```
$ mkdir my-cosmology
$ mkdir my-cosmology/.gnuastro
$ mv my-cosmology.conf my-cosmology/.gnuastro/astcosmiccal.conf
```

Once you run CosmicCalculator within `my-cosmology` (as shown below), you will see how your custom cosmology has been implemented without having to type anything extra on the command-line.

```
$ cd my-cosmology
$ astcosmiccal -P       # Your custom cosmology is printed.
$ cd ..
$ astcosmiccal -P       # The default cosmology is printed.
```

To further simplify the process, you can use the `--setdirconf` option. If you are already in your desired working directory, calling this option with the others will automatically write the final values (along with descriptions) in `.gnuastro/astcosmiccal.conf`. For example, try the commands below:

```
$ mkdir my-cosmology2
$ cd my-cosmology2
$ astcosmiccal -P
$ astcosmiccal --H0 70 --olambda=0.7 --omatter=0.3 --setdirconf
$ astcosmiccal -P
$ cd ..
```

Gnuastro's programs also have default configuration files for a specific user (when run in any directory). This allows you to set a special behavior every time a program is run by a specific user. Only the directory and filename differ from the above, the rest of the process is similar to before. Finally, there are also system-wide configuration files that can be used to define the option values for all users on a system. See Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271, for a more detailed discussion.

We will stop the discussion on configuration files here, but you can always read about them in Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. Before continuing the tutorial, let's delete the two extra directories that we do not need any more:

```
$ rm -rf my-cosmology*
```

2.1.9 Warping to a new pixel grid

We are now ready to start processing the deep HST images that were prepared in Section 2.1.4 [Dataset inspection and cropping], page 25. One of the most important points

while using several images for data processing is that those images must have the same pixel grid. The process of changing the pixel grid is named 'warp'. Fortunately, Gnuastro has Warp program for warping the pixel grid (see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501).

Warping to a different/matched pixel grid is commonly needed before higher-level analysis especially when you are using datasets from different instruments. The XDF datasets we are using here are already aligned to the same pixel grid. But let's have a look at some of Gnuastro's linear warping features here. For example, try rotating one of the images by 20 degrees with the first command below. With the second command, open the output and input to see how it is rotated.

```
$ astwarp flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --rotate=20

$ astscript-fits-view flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits xdf-f160w_rotated.fits
```

Warp can generally be used for many kinds of pixel grid manipulation (warping), not just rotations. For example, the outputs of the commands below will have larger pixels respectively (new resolution being one quarter the original resolution), get shifted by 2.8 (by sub-pixel), get a shear of 0.2, and be tilted (projected). Run each of them and open the output file to see the effect, they will become handy for you in the future.

```
$ astwarp flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --scale=0.25
$ astwarp flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --translate=2.8
$ astwarp flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --shear=0.2
$ astwarp flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --project=0.001,0.0005
$ astscript-fits-view flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits *.fits
```

If you need to do multiple warps, you can combine them in one call to Warp. For example, to first rotate the image, then scale it, run this command:

```
$ astwarp flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --rotate=20 --scale=0.25
```

If you have multiple warps, do them all in one command. Do not warp them in separate commands because the correlated noise will become too strong. As you see in the matrix that is printed when you run Warp, it merges all the warps into a single warping matrix (see Section 6.4.2 [Merging multiple warpings], page 504) and simply applies that (mixes the pixel values) just once. However, if you run Warp multiple times, the pixels will be mixed multiple times, creating a strong artificial blur/smoothing, or stronger correlated noise.

Recall that the merging of multiple warps is done through matrix multiplication, therefore order matters in the separate operations. At a lower level, through Warp's `--matrix` option, you can directly request your desired final warp and do not have to break it up into different warps like above (see Section 6.4.4 [Invoking Warp], page 506).

Fortunately these datasets are already aligned to the same pixel grid, so you do not actually need the files that were just generated. You can safely delete them all with the following command. Here, you see why we put the processed outputs that we need later into a separate directory. In this way, the top directory can be used for temporary files for testing that you can simply delete with a generic command like below.

```
$ rm *.fits
```

2.1.10 NoiseChisel and Multi-Extension FITS files

In the previous sections, we completed a review of the basics of Gnuastro's programs. We are now ready to do some more serious analysis on the downloaded images: extract

the pixels containing signal from the image, find sub-structure of the extracted signal, do measurements over the extracted objects and analyze them (finding certain objects of interest in the image).

The first step is to separate the signal (galaxies or stars) from the background noise in the image. We will be using the results of Section 2.1.4 [Dataset inspection and cropping], page 25, so be sure you already have them. Gnuastro has NoiseChisel for this job. But NoiseChisel's output is a multi-extension FITS file, therefore to better understand how to use NoiseChisel, let's take a look at multi-extension FITS files and how you can interact with them.

In the FITS format, each extension contains a separate dataset (image in this case). You can get basic information about the extensions in a FITS file with Gnuastro's Fits program (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297). To start with, let's run NoiseChisel without any options, then use Gnuastro's Fits program to inspect the number of extensions in this file.

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detected.fits
```

From the output list, we see that NoiseChisel's output contains 5 extensions. The zero-th (counting from zero, with name `NOISECHISEL-CONFIG`) is empty: it has value of `0` in the fourth column (which shows its size in pixels). Like NoiseChisel, in all of Gnuastro's programs, the first (or zero-th) extension of the output only contains meta-data: data about/describing the datasets within (all) the output's extensions. This is recommended by the FITS standard, see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, for more. In the case of Gnuastro's programs, this generic zero-th/meta-data extension (for the whole file) contains all the configuration options of the program that created the file.

Metadata regarding how the analysis was done (or a dataset was created) is very important for higher-level analysis and reproducibility. Therefore, Let's first take a closer look at the `NOISECHISEL-CONFIG` extension. If you specify a special header in the FITS file, Gnuastro's Fits program will print the header keywords (metadata) of that extension. You can either specify the HDU/extension counter (starting from 0), or name. Therefore, the two commands below are identical for this file. We are usually tempted to use the first (shorter format), but when putting your commands into a script, please use the second format which is more human-friendly and understandable for readers of your code who may not know what is in the 0-th extension (this includes yourself in a few months!):

```
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detected.fits -h0
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detected.fits -hNOISECHISEL-CONFIG
```

The first group of FITS header keywords you see (containing the `SIMPLE` and `BITPIX` keywords; before the first empty line) are standard keywords. They are required by the FITS standard and must be present in any FITS extension. The second group starts with the input file name (value to the `INPUT` keyword). The rest of the keywords you see afterwards have the same name as NoiseChisel's options, and the value used by NoiseChisel in this run is shown after the `=` sign. Finally, the last group (starting with `DATE`) contains the date and version information of Gnuastro and its dependencies that were used to generate this file. Besides the option values, these are also critical for future reproducibility of the result (you may update Gnuastro or its dependencies, and they may behave differently afterwards). The "versions and date" group of keywords are present in all Gnuastro's FITS extension outputs, for more see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

Note that if a keyword name is larger than 8 characters, it is preceded by a `HIERARCH` keyword and that all keyword names are in capital letters. These are all part of the FITS standard and originate from its history. But in short, both can be ignored! For example, with the commands below, let's see at first what the default values are, and then just check the value of `--detgrowquant` option (using the `-P` option described in Section 2.1.8 [Option management and configuration files], page 35).

```
$ astnoisechisle -P
$ astnoisechisel -P | grep detgrowquant
```

To confirm that NoiseChisel used this value when we ran it above, let's use `grep` to extract the keyword line with `detgrowquant` from the metadata extension. However, as you saw above, keyword names in the header is in all caps. So we need to ask `grep` to ignore case with the `-i` option.

```
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detected.fits -h0 | grep -i detgrowquant
```

In the output of the above command, you see `HIERARCH` at the start of the line. According to the FITS standard, `HIERARCH` is placed at the start of all keywords that have a name that is more than 8 characters long. Both the all-caps and the `HIERARCH` keyword can be annoying when you want to read/check the value. Therefore, the best solution is to use the `--keyvalue` option of Gnuastro's `astfits` program as shown below. With it, you do not have to worry about `HIERARCH` or the case of the name (FITS keyword names are not case-sensitive).

```
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detected.fits -h0 --keyvalue=detgrowquant -q
```

The metadata (that is stored in the output) can later be used to exactly reproduce/understand your result, even if you have lost/forgot the command you used to create the file. This feature is present in all of Gnuastro's programs, not just NoiseChisel.

The rest of the HDUs in NoiseChisel have data. So let's open them in a DS9 window and then describe each:

```
$ astscript-fits-view xdf-f160w_detected.fits
```

A "cube" window opens along with DS9's main window. The buttons and horizontal scroll bar in this small new window can be used to navigate between the extensions. In this mode, all DS9's settings (for example, zoom or color-bar) will be identical between the extensions. Try zooming into one part and flipping through the extensions to see how the galaxies were detected along with the Sky and Sky standard deviation values for that region. Just have in mind that NoiseChisel's job is *only* detection (separating signal from noise). We will do segmentation on this result later to find the individual galaxies/peaks over the detected pixels.

The second extension of NoiseChisel's output (numbered 1, named `INPUT-NO-SKY`) is the Sky-subtracted input that you provided. The third (`DETECTIONS`) is NoiseChisel's main output which is a binary image with only two possible values for all pixels: 0 for noise and 1 for signal. Since it only has two values, to avoid taking too much space on your computer, its numeric datatype an unsigned 8-bit integer (or `uint8`)[14]. The fourth and fifth (`SKY` and `SKY_STD`) extensions, have the Sky and its standard deviation values for the input on a tile grid and were calculated over the undetected regions (for more on the importance of the Sky value, see Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528).

[14] To learn more about numeric data types see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

Each HDU/extension in a FITS file is an independent dataset (image or table) which you can delete from the FITS file, or copy/cut to another file. For example, with the command below, you can copy NoiseChisel's `DETECTIONS` HDU/extension to another file:

```
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detected.fits --copy=DETECTIONS -odetections.fits
```

There are similar options to conveniently cut (`--cut`, copy, then remove from the input) or delete (`--remove`) HDUs from a FITS file also. See Section 5.1.1.1 [HDU information and manipulation], page 301, for more.

2.1.11 NoiseChisel optimization for detection

In Section 2.1.10 [NoiseChisel and Multi-Extension FITS files], page 38, we ran NoiseChisel and reviewed NoiseChisel's output format. Now that you have a better feeling for multi-extension FITS files, let's optimize NoiseChisel for this particular dataset.

One good way to see if you have missed any signal (small galaxies, or the wings of brighter galaxies) is to mask all the detected pixels and inspect the noise pixels. For this, you can use Gnuastro's Arithmetic program (in particular its `where` operator, see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412). The command below will produce `mask-det.fits`. In it, all the pixels in the `INPUT-NO-SKY` extension that are flagged 1 in the `DETECTIONS` extension (dominated by signal, not noise) will be set to NaN.

Since the various extensions are in the same file, for each dataset we need the file and extension name. To make the command easier to read/write/understand, let's use shell variables: '`in`' will be used for the Sky-subtracted input image and '`det`' will be used for the detection map. Recall that a shell variable's value can be retrieved by adding a `$` before its name, also note that the double quotations are necessary when we have white-space characters in a variable value (like this case).

```
$ in="xdf-f160w_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY"
$ det="xdf-f160w_detected.fits -hDETECTIONS"
$ astarithmetic $in $det nan where --output=mask-det.fits
```

To invert the result (only keep the detected pixels), you can flip the detection map (from 0 to 1 and vice-versa) by adding a '`not`' after the second `$det`:

```
$ astarithmetic $in $det not nan where --output=mask-sky.fits
```

Look again at the `DETECTIONS` extension, in particular the long worm-like structure around[15] pixel 1650 (X) and 1470 (Y). These types of long wiggly structures show that we have dug too deep into the noise, and are a signature of correlated noise. Correlated noise is created when we warp (for example, rotate) individual exposures (that are each slightly offset compared to each other) into the same pixel grid before adding them into one deeper image. During the warping, nearby pixels are mixed and the effect of this mixing on the noise (which is in every pixel) is called "correlated noise". Correlated noise is a form of convolution and it slightly smooths the image.

[15] To find a particular coordiante easily in DS9, you can do this: Click on the "Edit" menu, and select "Region". Then click on any random part of the image to see a circle show up in that location (this is the "region"). Double-click on the region and a "Circle" window will open. If you have celestial coordinates, keep the default "fk5" in the scroll-down menu after the "Center". But if you have pixel/image coordinates, click on the "fk5" and select "Image". Now you can set the "Center" coordinates of the region (`1650` and `1470` in this case) by manually typing them in the two boxes in front of "Center". Finally, when everything is ready, click on the "Apply" button and your region will go over your requested coordinates. You can zoom out (to see the whole image) and visually find it.

In terms of the number of exposures (and thus correlated noise), the XDF dataset is by no means an ordinary dataset. Therefore the default parameters need to be slightly customized. It is the result of warping and adding roughly 80 separate exposures which can create strong correlated noise/smoothing. In common surveys the number of exposures is usually 10 or less. See Figure 2 of Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`) and the discussion on `--detgrowquant` there for more on how NoiseChisel "grow"s the detected objects and the patterns caused by correlated noise.

Let's tweak NoiseChisel's configuration a little to get a better result on this dataset. Do not forget that "*Good statistical analysis is not a purely routine matter, and generally calls for more than one pass through the computer*" (Anscombe 1973, see Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6). A good scientist must have a good understanding of her tools to make a meaningful analysis. So do not hesitate in playing with the default configuration and reviewing the manual when you have a new dataset (from a new instrument) in front of you. Robust data analysis is an art, therefore a good scientist must first be a good artist. Once you have found the good configuration for that particular noise pattern (instrument) you can safely use it for all new data that have a similar noise pattern.

NoiseChisel can produce "Check images" to help you visualize and inspect how each step is done. You can see all the check images it can produce with this command.

```
$ astnoisechisel --help | grep check
```

Let's check the overall detection process to get a better feeling of what NoiseChisel is doing with the following command. To learn the details of NoiseChisel in more detail, please see Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) and Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`).

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --checkdetection
```

The check images/tables are also multi-extension FITS files. As you saw from the command above, when check datasets are requested, NoiseChisel will not go to the end. It will abort as soon as all the extensions of the check image are ready. Please list the extensions of the output with `astfits` and then opening it with `ds9` as we done above. If you have read the paper, you will see why there are so many extensions in the check image.

```
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detcheck.fits
$ astscript-fits-view xdf-f160w_detcheck.fits
```

In order to understand the parameters and their biases (especially as you are starting to use Gnuastro, or running it a new dataset), it is *strongly* encouraged to play with the different parameters and use the respective check images to see which step is affected by your changes and how, for example, see Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80.

Let's focus on one step: the `OPENED_AND_LABELED` extension shows the initial detection step of NoiseChisel. We see the seeds of that correlated noise structure with many small detections (a relatively early stage in the processing). Such connections at the lowest surface brightness limits usually occur when the dataset is too smoothed, the threshold is too low, or the final "growth" is too much.

As you see from the 2nd (`CONVOLVED`) extension, the first operation that NoiseChisel does on the data is to slightly smooth it. However, the natural correlated noise of this dataset is already one level of artificial smoothing, so further smoothing it with the default kernel may be the culprit. To see the effect, let's use a sharper kernel as a first step to convolve/smooth the input.

By default NoiseChisel uses a Gaussian with full-width-half-maximum (FWHM) of 2 pixels. We can use Gnuastro's MakeProfiles to build a kernel with FWHM of 1.5 pixel (truncated at 5 times the FWHM, like the default) using the following command. MakeProfiles is a powerful tool to build any number of mock profiles on one image or independently, to learn more of its features and capabilities, see Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652.

```
$ astmkprof --kernel=gaussian,1.5,5 --oversample=1
```

Please open the output `kernel.fits` and have a look (it is very small and sharp). We can now tell NoiseChisel to use this instead of the default kernel with the following command (we will keep the `--checkdetection` to continue checking the detection steps)

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --kernel=kernel.fits  \
                 --checkdetection
```

Open the output `xdf-f160w_detcheck.fits` as a multi-extension FITS file and go to the last extension (`DETECTIONS-FINAL`, it is the same pixels as the final NoiseChisel output without `--checkdetections`). Look again at that position mentioned above (1650,1470), you see that the long wiggly structure is gone. This shows we are making progress :-).

Looking at the new `OPENED_AND_LABELED` extension, we see that the thin connections between smaller peaks has now significantly decreased. Going two extensions/steps ahead (in the first `HOLES-FILLED`), you can see that during the process of finding false pseudo-detections, too many holes have been filled: do you see how the many of the brighter galaxies are connected? At this stage all holes are filled, irrespective of their size.

Try looking two extensions ahead (in the first `PSEUDOS-FOR-SN`), you can see that there are not too many pseudo-detections because of all those extended filled holes. If you look closely, you can see the number of pseudo-detections in the printed outputs of NoiseChisel (around 6400). This is another side-effect of correlated noise. To address it, we should slightly increase the pseudo-detection threshold (before changing `--dthresh`, run with `-P` to see the default value):

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --kernel=kernel.fits \
                 --dthresh=0.1 --checkdetection
```

Before visually inspecting the check image, you can already see the effect of this small change in NoiseChisel's command-line output: notice how the number of pseudo-detections has increased to more than 7100! Open the check image now and have a look, you can see how the pseudo-detections are distributed much more evenly in the blank sky regions of the `PSEUDOS-FOR-SN` extension.

Maximize the number of pseudo-detections: When using NoiseChisel on datasets with a new noise-pattern (for example, going to a Radio astronomy image, or a shallow ground-based image), play with `--dthresh` until you get a maximal number of pseudo-detections: the total number of pseudo-detections is printed on the command-line when you run NoiseChisel, you do not even need to open a FITS viewer.

In this particular case, try `--dthresh=0.2` and you will see that the total printed number decreases to around 6700 (recall that with `--dthresh=0.1`, it was roughly 7100). So for this type of very deep HST images, we should set `--dthresh=0.1`.

As discussed in Section 3.1.5 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`), the signal-to-noise ratio of pseudo-detections are critical to identify-

ing/removing false detections. For an optimal detection they are very important to get right (where you want to detect the faintest and smallest objects in the image successfully). Let's have a look at their signal-to-noise distribution with `--checksn`.

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --kernel=kernel.fits  \
                 --dthresh=0.1 --checkdetection --checksn
```

The output (`xdf-f160w_detsn.fits`) contains two extensions for the pseudo-detections containing two-column tables over the undetected (`SKY_PSEUDODET_SN`) regions and those over detections (`DET_PSEUDODET_SN`). With the first command below you can see the HDUs of this file, and with the second you can see the information of the table in the first HDU (which is the default when you do not use `--hdu`):

```
$ astfits xdf-f160w_detsn.fits
$ asttable xdf-f160w_detsn.fits -i
```

You can see the table columns with the first command below and get a feeling of the signal-to-noise value distribution with the second command (the two Table and Statistics programs will be discussed later in the tutorial):

```
$ asttable xdf-f160w_detsn.fits -hSKY_PSEUDODET_SN
$ aststatistics xdf-f160w_detsn.fits -hSKY_PSEUDODET_SN -c2
... [output truncated] ...
Histogram:
 |           *
 |          ***
 |         ******
 |        *********
 |        **********
 |       *************
 |      *****************
 |     ********************
 |    *************************
 |   *******************************
 |*****************************************************   * **       *
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

The correlated noise is again visible in the signal-to-noise distribution of sky pseudo-detections! Do you see how skewed this distribution is? In an image with less correlated noise, this distribution would be much more symmetric. A small change in the quantile will translate into a big change in the S/N value. For example, see the difference between the three 0.99, 0.95 and 0.90 quantiles with this command:

```
$ aststatistics xdf-f160w_detsn.fits -hSKY_PSEUDODET_SN -c2      \
                --quantile=0.99 --quantile=0.95 --quantile=0.90
```

We get a change of almost 2 units (which is very significant). If you run NoiseChisel with `-P`, you'll see the default signal-to-noise quantile `--snquant` is 0.99. In effect with this option you specify the purity level you want (contamination by false detections). With the `aststatistics` command above, you see that a small number of extra false detections (impurity) in the final result causes a big change in completeness (you can detect more lower signal-to-noise true detections). So let's loosen-up our desired purity level, remove

the check-image options, and then mask the detected pixels like before to see if we have missed anything.

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --kernel=kernel.fits  \
                 --dthresh=0.1 --snquant=0.95
$ in="xdf-f160w_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY"
$ det="xdf-f160w_detected.fits -hDETECTIONS"
$ astarithmetic $in $det nan where --output=mask-det.fits
```

Overall it seems good, but if you play a little with the color-bar and look closer in the noise, you'll see a few very sharp, but faint, objects that have not been detected. For example, the object around pixel (456, 1662). Despite its high valued pixels, this object was lost because erosion ignores the precise pixel values. Losing small/sharp objects like this only happens for under-sampled datasets like HST (where the pixel size is larger than the point spread function FWHM). So this will not happen on ground-based images.

To address this problem of sharp objects, we can use NoiseChisel's `--noerodequant` option. All pixels above this quantile will not be eroded, thus allowing us to preserve small/sharp objects (that cover a small area, but have a lot of signal in it). Check its default value, then run NoiseChisel like below and make the mask again.

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --kernel=kernel.fits     \
                 --noerodequant=0.95 --dthresh=0.1 --snquant=0.95
```

This seems to be fine and the object above is now detected. We will stop editing the configuration of NoiseChisel here, but please feel free to keep looking into the data to see if you can improve it even more.

Once you have found the proper configuration for the type of images you will be using you do not need to change them any more. The same configuration can be used for any dataset that has been similarly produced (and has a similar noise pattern). But entering all these options on every call to NoiseChisel is annoying and prone to bugs (mistakenly typing the wrong value for example). To simplify things, we will make a configuration file in a visible `config` directory. Then we will define the hidden `.gnuastro` directory (that all Gnuastro's programs will look into for configuration files) as a symbolic link to the `config` directory. Finally, we will write the finalized values of the options into NoiseChisel's standard configuration file within that directory. We will also put the kernel in a separate directory to keep the top directory clean of any files we later need.

```
$ mkdir kernel config
$ ln -s config/ .gnuastro
$ mv kernel.fits kernel/noisechisel.fits
$ echo "kernel kernel/noisechisel.fits" > config/astnoisechisel.conf
$ echo "noerodequant 0.95"             >> config/astnoisechisel.conf
$ echo "dthresh      0.1"              >> config/astnoisechisel.conf
$ echo "snquant      0.95"             >> config/astnoisechisel.conf
```

We are now ready to finally run NoiseChisel on the three filters and keep the output in a dedicated directory (which we will call `nc` for simplicity).

```
$ rm *.fits
$ mkdir nc
$ for f in f105w f125w f160w; do \
    astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-$f.fits --output=nc/xdf-$f.fits; \
```

```
done
```

2.1.12 NoiseChisel optimization for storage

As we showed before (in Section 2.1.10 [NoiseChisel and Multi-Extension FITS files], page 38), NoiseChisel's output is a multi-extension FITS file with several images the same size as the input. As the input datasets get larger this output can become hard to manage and waste a lot of storage space. Fortunately there is a solution to this problem (which is also useful for Segment's outputs).

In this small section we will take a short detour to show this feature. Please note that the outputs generated here are not needed for the rest of the tutorial. But first, let's have a look at the contents/HDUs and volume of NoiseChisel's output from Section 2.1.11 [NoiseChisel optimization for detection], page 41, (fast answer, it is larger than 100 mega-bytes):

```
$ astfits nc/xdf-f160w.fits
$ ls -lh nc/xdf-f160w.fits
```

Two options can drastically decrease NoiseChisel's output file size: 1) With the `--rawoutput` option, NoiseChisel will not create a Sky-subtracted output. After all, it is redundant: you can always generate it by subtracting the `SKY` extension from the input image (which you have in your database) using the Arithmetic program. 2) With the `--oneelempertile`, you can tell NoiseChisel to store its Sky and Sky standard deviation results with one pixel per tile (instead of many pixels per tile). So let's run NoiseChisel with these options, then have another look at the HDUs and the over-all file size:

```
$ astnoisechisel flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --oneelempertile --rawoutput \
                 --output=nc-for-storage.fits
$ astfits nc-for-storage.fits
$ ls -lh nc-for-storage.fits
```

See how `nc-for-storage.fits` has four HDUs, while `nc/xdf-f160w.fits` had five HDUs? As explained above, the missing extension is `INPUT-NO-SKY`. Also, look at the sizes of the `SKY` and `SKY_STD` HDUs, unlike before, they are not the same size as `DETECTIONS`, they only have one pixel for each tile (group of pixels in raw input). Finally, you see that `nc-for-storage.fits` is just under 8 mega bytes (while `nc/xdf-f160w.fits` was 100 mega bytes)!

But we are not yet finished! You can even be more efficient in storage, archival or transferring NoiseChisel's output by compressing this file. Try the command below to see how NoiseChisel's output has now shrunk to about 250 kilo-byes while keeping all the necessary information as the original 100 mega-byte output.

```
$ gzip --best nc-for-storage.fits
$ ls -lh nc-for-storage.fits.gz
```

We can get this wonderful level of compression because NoiseChisel's output is binary with only two values: 0 and 1. Compression algorithms are highly optimized in such scenarios.

You can open `nc-for-storage.fits.gz` directly in SAO DS9 or feed it to any of Gnuastro's programs without having to decompress it. Higher-level programs that take NoiseChisel's output (for example, Segment or MakeCatalog) can also deal with this compressed image where the Sky and its Standard deviation are one pixel-per-tile. You just

have to give the "values" image as a separate option, for more, see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, and Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582.

Segment (the program we will introduce in the next section for identifying sub-structure), also has similar features to optimize its output for storage. Since this file was only created for a fast detour demonstration, let's keep our top directory clean and move to the next step:

```
rm nc-for-storage.fits.gz
```

2.1.13 Segmentation and making a catalog

The main output of NoiseChisel is the binary detection map (`DETECTIONS` extension, see Section 2.1.11 [NoiseChisel optimization for detection], page 41). It only has two values: 1 or 0. This is useful when studying the noise or background properties, but hardly of any use when you actually want to study the targets/galaxies in the image, especially in such a deep field where almost everything is connected. To find the galaxies over the detections, we will use Gnuastro's Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, program:

```
$ mkdir seg
$ astsegment nc/xdf-f160w.fits -oseg/xdf-f160w.fits
$ astsegment nc/xdf-f125w.fits -oseg/xdf-f125w.fits
$ astsegment nc/xdf-f105w.fits -oseg/xdf-f105w.fits
```

Segment's operation is very much like NoiseChisel (in fact, prior to version 0.6, it was part of NoiseChisel). For example, the output is a multi-extension FITS file (previously discussed in Section 2.1.10 [NoiseChisel and Multi-Extension FITS files], page 38), it has check images and uses the undetected regions as a reference (previously discussed in Section 2.1.11 [NoiseChisel optimization for detection], page 41). Please have a look at Segment's multi-extension output to get a good feeling of what it has done. Do not forget to flip through the extensions in the "Cube" window.

```
$ astscript-fits-view seg/xdf-f160w.fits
```

Like NoiseChisel, the first extension is the input. The `CLUMPS` extension shows the true "clumps" with values that are ≥ 1, and the diffuse regions labeled as -1. Please flip between the first extension and the clumps extension and zoom-in on some of the clumps to get a feeling of what they are. In the `OBJECTS` extension, we see that the large detections of NoiseChisel (that may have contained many galaxies) are now broken up into separate labels. Play with the color-bar and hover your mouse of the various detections to see their different labels.

The clumps are not affected by the hard-to-deblend and low signal-to-noise diffuse regions, they are more robust for calculating the colors (compared to objects). From this step onward, we will continue with clumps.

Having localized the regions of interest in the dataset, we are ready to do measurements on them with Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582. MakeCatalog is specialized and optimized for doing measurements over labeled regions of an image. In other words, through MakeCatalog, you can "reduce" an image to a table (catalog of certain properties of objects in the image). Each requested measurement (over each label) will be given a column in the output table. To see the full set of available measurements run it with `--help` like below (and scroll up), note that measurements are classified by context.

```
$ astmkcatalog --help
```

So let's select the properties we want to measure in this tutorial. First of all, we need to know which measurement belongs to which object or clump, so we will start with the `--ids` (read as: IDs[16]). We also want to measure (in this order) the Right Ascension (with `--ra`), Declination (`--dec`), magnitude (`--magnitude`), and signal-to-noise ratio (`--sn`) of the objects and clumps. Furthermore, as mentioned above, we also want measurements on clumps, so we also need to call `--clumpscat`. The following command will make these measurements on Segment's F160W output and write them in a catalog for each object and clump in a FITS table. For more on the zero point, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

```
$ mkdir cat
$ astmkcatalog seg/xdf-f160w.fits --ids --ra --dec --magnitude --sn \
               --zeropoint=25.94 --clumpscat --output=cat/xdf-f160w.fits
```

From the printed statements on the command-line, you see that MakeCatalog read all the extensions in Segment's output for the various measurements it needed. Let's look at the output of the command above:

```
$ astfits cat/xdf-f160w.fits
```

You will see that the output of the MakeCatalog has two extensions. The first extension shows the measurements over the `OBJECTS`, and the second extension shows the measurements over the clumps `CLUMPS`.

To calculate colors, we also need magnitude measurements on the other filters. So let's repeat the command above on them, just changing the file names and zero point (which we got from the XDF survey web page):

```
$ astmkcatalog seg/xdf-f125w.fits --ids --ra --dec --magnitude --sn \
               --zeropoint=26.23 --clumpscat --output=cat/xdf-f125w.fits

$ astmkcatalog seg/xdf-f105w.fits --ids --ra --dec --magnitude --sn \
               --zeropoint=26.27 --clumpscat --output=cat/xdf-f105w.fits
```

However, the galaxy properties might differ between the filters (which is the whole purpose behind observing in different filters!). Also, the noise properties and depth of the datasets differ. You can see the effect of these factors in the resulting clump catalogs, with Gnuastro's Table program. We will go deep into working with tables in the next section, but in summary: the `-i` option will print information about the columns and number of rows. To see the column values, just remove the `-i` option. In the output of each command below, look at the `Number of rows:`, and note that they are different.

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f105w.fits -hCLUMPS -i
$ asttable cat/xdf-f125w.fits -hCLUMPS -i
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS -i
```

Matching the catalogs is possible (for example, with Section 7.5 [Match], page 637). However, the measurements of each column are also done on different pixels: the clump labels can/will differ from one filter to another for one object. Please open them and focus on one object to see for yourself. This can bias the result, if you match catalogs.

[16] This option is plural because we need two ID columns for identifying "clumps" in the clumps catalog/table: the first column will be the ID of the host "object", and the second one will be the ID of the clump within that object. In the "objects" catalog/table, only a single column will be returned for this option.

An accurate color calculation can only be done when magnitudes are measured from the same pixels on all images and this can be done easily with MakeCatalog. In fact this is one of the reasons that NoiseChisel or Segment do not generate a catalog like most other detection/segmentation software. This gives you the freedom of selecting the pixels for measurement in any way you like (from other filters, other software, manually, etc.). Fortunately in these images, the Point spread function (PSF) is very similar, allowing us to use a single labeled image output for all filters[17].

The F160W image is deeper, thus providing better detection/segmentation, and redder, thus observing smaller/older stars and representing more of the mass in the galaxies. We will thus use the F160W filter as a reference and use its segment labels to identify which pixels to use for which objects/clumps. But we will do the measurements on the sky-subtracted F105W and F125W images (using MakeCatalog's `--valuesfile` option) as shown below: Notice that the only difference between these calls and the call to generate the raw F160W catalog (excluding the zero point and the output name) is the `--valuesfile`.

```
$ astmkcatalog seg/xdf-f160w.fits --ids --ra --dec --magnitude --sn \
               --valuesfile=nc/xdf-f125w.fits --zeropoint=26.23 \
               --clumpscat --output=cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits

$ astmkcatalog seg/xdf-f160w.fits --ids --ra --dec --magnitude --sn \
               --valuesfile=nc/xdf-f105w.fits --zeropoint=26.27 \
               --clumpscat --output=cat/xdf-f105w-on-f160w-lab.fits
```

After running the commands above, look into what MakeCatalog printed on the command-line. You can see that (as requested) the object and clump pixel labels in both were taken from the respective extensions in `seg/xdf-f160w.fits`. However, the pixel values and pixel Sky standard deviation were respectively taken from `nc/xdf-f105w.fits` and `nc/xdf-f125w.fits`. Since we used the same labeled image on all filters, the number of rows in both catalogs are now identical. Let's have a look:

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f105w-on-f160w-lab.fits -hCLUMPS -i
$ asttable cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits -hCLUMPS -i
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS -i
```

Finally, MakeCatalog also does basic calculations on the full dataset (independent of each labeled region but related to whole data), for example, pixel area or per-pixel surface brightness limit. They are stored as keywords in the FITS headers (or lines starting with `#` in plain text). This (and other ways to measure the limits of your dataset) are discussed in the next section: Section 2.1.14 [Measuring the dataset limits], page 49.

2.1.14 Measuring the dataset limits

In Section 2.1.13 [Segmentation and making a catalog], page 47, we created a catalog of the different objects with the image. Before measuring colors, or doing any other kind of analysis on the catalogs (and detected objects), it is very important to understand the limitations of the dataset. Without understanding the limitations of your dataset, you cannot make any physical interpretation of your results. The theory behind the calculations discussed here is thoroughly introduced in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615.

[17] When the PSFs between two images differ largely, you would have to PSF-match the images before using the same pixels for measurements.

For example, with the command below, let's sort all the detected clumps in the image by magnitude (with `--sort=magnitude`) and and print the magnitude and signal-to-noise ratio (S/N; with `-cmagnitude,sn`):

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cmagnitude,sn \
           --sort=magnitude --noblank=magnitude
```

As you see, we have clumps with a total magnitude of almost 32! This is *extremely faint*! Are these things trustable? Let's have a look at all of those with a magnitude between 31 and 32 with the command below. We are first using Table to only keep the relevant columns rows, and using Gnuastro's DS9 region file creation script (`astscript-ds9-region`) to generate DS9 region files, and open DS9:

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cra,dec \
           --range=magnitude,31:32  \
      | astscript-ds9-region -c1,2 --radius=0.5 \
           --command="ds9 -mecube seg/xdf-f160w.fits -zscale"
```

Zoom-out a little and you will see some green circles (DS9 region files) in some regions of the image. There actually does seem to be a true peak under the selected regions, but as you see, they are very small, diffuse and noisy. How reliable are the measured magnitudes? Using the S/N column from the first command above, you can see that such objects only have a signal to noise of about 2.6 (which is indeed too low for most analysis purposes)

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -csn \
           --range=magnitude,31:32 | aststatistics
```

This brings us to the first method of quantifying your dataset's *magnitude limit*, which is also sometimes called *detection limit* (see Section 7.4.5.2 [Noise based magnitude limit of image], page 618). To estimate the 5σ detection limit of your dataset, you simply report the median magnitude of the objects that have a signal to noise of (approximately) five. This is very easy to calculate with the command below:

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps --range=sn,4.8:5.2 -cmagnitude \
           | aststatistics --median
29.9949
```

Let's have a look at these objects, to get a feeling of what these clump looks like:

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps --range=sn,4.8:5.2 \
           -cra,dec,magnitude \
           | astscript-ds9-region -c1,2 --namecol=3 \
                     --width=2 --radius=0.5 \
                     --command="ds9 -mecube seg/xdf-f160w.fits -zscale"
```

The number you see on top of each region is the clump's magnitude. Please go over the objects and have a close look at them! It is very important to have a feeling of what your dataset looks like, and how to interpret the numbers to associate an image with them.

Generally, they look very small with different levels of diffuse-ness! Those that are sharper make more visual sense (to be 5σ detections), but the more diffuse ones extend over a larger area. Furthermore, the noise is measured on individual pixel measurements. However, during the reduction many exposures are co-added, mixing the pixels like a small convolution (creating "correlated noise"). Therefore you clearly see two main issues with the detection limit as defined above: it depends on the morphology, and it does not take into account the correlated noise.

A more realistic way to estimate the significance of the detection is to take its footprint, randomly place it in thousands of undetected regions of the image and use that distribution as a reference. This is technically known as upper-limit measurements. For a full discussion, see Section 7.4.4.6 [Upper limit measurements], page 605).

Since it is for each separate object, the upper-limit measurements should be requested as extra columns in MakeCatalog's output. For example, with the command below, let's generate a new catalog of the F160W filter, but with two extra columns compared to the one in `cat/`: the upper-limit magnitude and the upper-limit multiple of sigma.

```
$ astmkcatalog seg/xdf-f160w.fits --ids --ra --dec --magnitude --sn \
               --zeropoint=25.94 --clumpscat --upnsigma=3 \
               --upperlimit-mag --upperlimit-sigma \
               --output=xdf-f160w.fits
```

Let's compare the upper-limit magnitude with the measured magnitude of each clump:

```
$ asttable xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cmagnitude,upperlimit_mag
```

As you see, in almost all of the cases, the measured magnitude is sufficiently higher than the upper-limit magnitude. Let's subtract the latter from the former to better see this difference in a third column:

```
$ asttable xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cmagnitude,upperlimit_mag \
          -c'arith upperlimit_mag magnitude -'
```

The ones with a positive third column (difference) show that the clump has sufficiently higher brightness than the noisy background to be usable. Let's use Table's Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, to find only those that have a negative difference:

```
$ asttable xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cra,dec --noblankend=3 \
      -c'arith upperlimit_mag magnitude - set-d d d 0 gt nan where'
```

From more than 3500 clumps, this command only gave $\sim$ 150 rows (this number may slightly change on different runs due to the random nature of the upper-limit sampling[18])! Let's have a look at them:

```
$ asttable xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cra,dec --noblankend=3 \
      -c'arith upperlimit_mag magnitude - set-d d d 0 gt nan where' \
      | astscript-ds9-region -c1,2 --namecol=3 --width=2 \
                  --radius=0.5 \
                  --command="ds9 -mecube seg/xdf-f160w.fits -zscale"
```

You see that they are all extremely faint and diffuse/small peaks. Therefore, if an object's magnitude is fainter than its upper-limit magnitude, you should not use the magnitude: it is not accurate! You should use the upper-limit magnitude instead (with an arrow in your plots to mark which ones are upper-limits).

But the main point (in relation to the magnitude limit) with the upper-limit, is the `UPPERLIMIT_SIGMA` column. you can think of this as a *realistic* S/N for extremely faint/diffuse/small objects). The raw S/N column is simply calculated on a pixel-by-pixel basis, however, the upper-limit sigma is produced by actually taking the label's footprint, and randomly placing it thousands of time over undetected parts of the image and measuring the brightness of the sky. The clump's brightness is then divided by the

[18] You can fix the random number generator seed, so you always get the same sampling, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

standard deviation of the resulting distribution to give you exactly how significant it is (accounting for inter-pixel issues like correlated noise, which are strong in this dataset). You can actually compare the two values with the command below:

```
$ asttable xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -csn,upperlimit_sigma
```

As you see, the second column (upper-limit sigma) is almost always less than the S/N. This clearly shows the effect of correlated noise! If you now use this column as the reference for deriving the magnitude limit, you will see that it will shift by almost 0.5 magnitudes brighter and is now more reasonable:

```
$ asttable xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps --range=upperlimit_sigma,4.8:5.2 \
          -cmagnitude | aststatistics --median
29.6257
```

We see that the 5σ detection limit is $\sim$ 29.6! This is extremely deep! For example, in the Legacy Survey[19], the 5σ detection limit for *point sources* is approximately 24.5 (5 magnitudes, or 100 times, shallower than this image).

As mentioned above, an important caveat in this simple calculation is that we should only be looking at point-like objects, not simply everything. This is because the shape or radial slope of the profile has an important effect on this measurement: at the same total magnitude, a sharper object will have a higher S/N. To be more precise, we should first perform star-galaxy separation, then do this only for the objects that are classified as stars. A crude, first-order, method is to use the `--axis-ratio` option so MakeCatalog also measures the axis ratio, then call Table with `--range=upperlimit_sigma,,4.8:5.2` and `--range=axis_ratio,0.95:1` (in one command). Please do this for yourself as an exercise to see the difference with the result above.

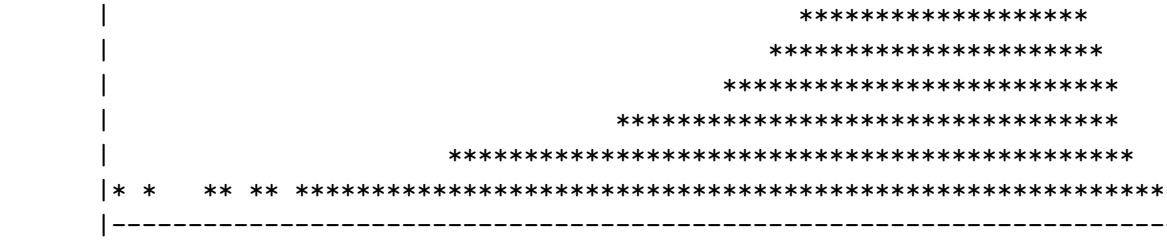
Before continuing, let's remove this temporarily produced catalog:

```
$ rm xdf-f160w.fits
```

Another measure of the dataset's limit is the completeness limit. This is necessary when you are looking at populations of objects over the image. You want to know until what magnitude you can be sure that you have detected an object (if it was present). Due to the different morphologies of the sources the completeness limit is different from one type of object to another (for example sharper objects are easier to detect/segment). Therefore, the best way to measure the completeness limit is with mock images: to artificially insert your desired object in random undetected areas of the image many times and see how many times they are detected (for more, see Section 7.4.6.4 [Completeness limit for certain objects], page 622). But a crude, zero-th order result (for the average object in the image) can be obtained from the actual image: by simply plotting the histogram of the magnitudes:

```
$ aststatistics cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cmagnitude
...
Histogram:
 |                                                                  *
 |                                                               ** ****
 |                                                             ***********
 |                                                           ************
 |                                                         ***************
```

[19] https://www.legacysurvey.org/dr9/description



This plot (the histogram of magnitudes; where fainter magnitudes are towards the right) is technically called the dataset's *number count* plot. You see that the number of objects increases with magnitude as the magnitudes get fainter (to the right). However, beyond a certain magnitude, you see it becomes flat, and soon afterwards, the numbers suddenly drop.

Once you have your catalog, you can easily find this point with the two commands below. First we generate a histogram with fewer bins (to have more numbers in each bin). We then use AWK to find the magnitude bin where the number of points decrease compared to the previous bin. But we only do this for bins that have more than 50 items (to avoid scatter in the bright end). Finally, in Statistics, we have manually set the magnitude range and number of bins so each bin is roughly 0.5 magnitudes thick (with `--greaterequal=20`, `--lessthan=32` and `--numbins=24`)

```
$ aststatistics cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hclumps -cmagnitude --histogram \
                --greaterequal=20 --lessthan=32 --numbins=24 \
                --output=f160w-hist.txt
$ asttable f160w-hist.txt \
           | awk '$2>50 && $2<prev{print prevbin; exit} \
                  {prev=$2; prevbin=$1}'
28.932122667631
```

Therefore, to first order (and very crudely!) we can say that if an object is in our field of view and has a magnitude of ~ 29 or brighter, we can be highly confident that we have detected it. But before continuing, let's clean up behind ourselves:

```
$ rm f160w-hist.txt
```

Another important limiting parameter in a processed dataset is the surface brightness limit (Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615). The surface brightness limit of a dataset is an important measure for extended structures (for example, when you want to look at the outskirts of galaxies). In the next tutorial, we have thoroughly described the derivation of the surface brightness limit of a dataset. So we will just show the final result here, and encourage you to follow up with that tutorial after finishing this tutorial (see Section 2.2.4 [Image surface brightness limit], page 92)

By default, MakeCatalog will estimate the surface brightness limit of a given dataset, and put it in the keywords of the output (all keywords starting with `SBL`, which is short for surface brightness limit):

```
$ astfits cat/xdf-f160w.fits -h1 | grep SBL
```

As you see, the only one with a unit of `mag/arcsec^2` is `SBL`. It contains the surface brightness limit of the input dataset over `SBLAREA` arcsec^2 with `SBLNSIG` multiples of σ. In the current version of Gnuastro, `SBLAREA=100` and `SBLNSIG=3`, so the surface brightness limit of this image is 32.66 mag/arcsec^2 (3σ, over 100 arcsec^2). Therefore, if this default area

and multiple of sigma are fine for you[20] (these are the most commonly used values), you can simply read the image surface brightness limit from the catalogs produced by MakeCatalog with this command:

```
$ astfits cat/*.fits -h1 --keyvalue=SBL
```

2.1.15 Working with catalogs (estimating colors)

In the previous step we generated catalogs of objects and clumps over our dataset (see Section 2.1.13 [Segmentation and making a catalog], page 47). The catalogs are available in the two extensions of the single FITS file[21]. Let's see the extensions and their basic properties with the Fits program:

```
$ astfits  cat/xdf-f160w.fits              # Extension information
```

Let's inspect the table in each extension with Gnuastro's Table program (see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344). We should have used `-hOBJECTS` and `-hCLUMPS` instead of `-h1` and `-h2` respectively. The numbers are just used here to convey that both names or numbers are possible, in the next commands, we will just use names.

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -h1 --info   # Objects catalog info.
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -h1          # Objects catalog columns.
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -h2 -i       # Clumps catalog info.
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -h2          # Clumps catalog columns.
```

As you see above, when given a specific table (file name and extension), Table will print the full contents of all the columns. To see the basic metadata about each column (for example, name, units and comments), simply append a `--info` (or `-i`) to the command.

To print the contents of special column(s), just give the column number(s) (counting from `1`) or the column name(s) (if they have one) to the `--column` (or `-c`) option. For example, if you just want the magnitude and signal-to-noise ratio of the clumps (in the clumps catalog), you can get it with any of the following commands

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS --column=5,6
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS -c5,SN
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS -c5         -c6
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS -cMAGNITUDE -cSN
```

Similar to HDUs, when the columns have names, always use the name: it is so common to mis-write numbers or forget the order later! Using column names instead of numbers has many advantages:

1. You do not have to worry about the order of columns in the table.
2. It acts as a documentation in the script.
3. Column meta-data (including a name) are not just limited to FITS tables and can also be used in plain text tables, see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

Table also has tools to limit the displayed rows. For example, with the first command below only rows with a magnitude in the range of 29 to 30 will be shown. With the second

[20] You can change these values with the `--sbl-area` and `--sbl-sigma`

[21] MakeCatalog can also output plain text tables. However, in the plain text format you can only have one table per file. Therefore, if you also request measurements on clumps, two plain text tables will be created (suffixed with `_o.txt` and `_c.txt`).

command, you can further limit the displayed rows to rows with an S/N larger than 10 (a range between 10 to infinity). You can further sort the output rows, only show the top (or bottom) N rows, etc., see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344, for more.

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS --range=MAGNITUDE,28:29
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS \
           --range=MAGNITUDE,28:29 --range=SN,10:inf
```

Now that you are comfortable in viewing table columns and rows, let's look into merging columns of multiple tables into one table (which is necessary for measuring the color of the clumps). Since `cat/xdf-f160w.fits` and `cat/xdf-f105w-on-f160w-lab.fits` have exactly the same number of rows and the rows correspond to the same clump, let's merge them to have one table with magnitudes in both filters.

We can merge columns with the `--catcolumnfile` option like below. You give this option a file name (which is assumed to be a table that has the same number of rows as the main input), and all the table's columns will be concatenated/appended to the main table. Now, try it out with the commands below. We will first look at the metadata of the first table (only the `CLUMPS` extension). With the second command, we will concatenate the two tables and write them in, `two-in-one.fits` and finally, we will check the new catalog's metadata.

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -i -hCLUMPS
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS --output=two-in-one.fits \
           --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
           --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS
$ asttable two-in-one.fits -i
```

By comparing the two metadata, we see that both tables have the same number of rows. But what might have attracted your attention more, is that `two-in-one.fits` has double the number of columns (as expected, after all, you merged both tables into one file, and did not ask for any specific column). In fact you can concatenate any number of other tables in one command, for example:

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS --output=three-in-one.fits \
           --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
           --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f105w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
           --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS
$ asttable three-in-one.fits -i
```

As you see, to avoid confusion in column names, Table has intentionally appended a `-1` to the column names of the first concatenated table if the column names are already present in the original table. For example, we have the original `RA` column, and another one called `RA-1`). Similarly a `-2` has been added for the columns of the second concatenated table.

However, this example clearly shows a problem with this full concatenation: some columns are identical (for example, `HOST_OBJ_ID` and `HOST_OBJ_ID-1`), or not needed (for example, `RA-1` and `DEC-1` which are not necessary here). In such cases, you can use `--catcolumns` to only concatenate certain columns, not the whole table. For example, this command:

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS --output=two-in-one-2.fits \
           --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
           --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS --catcolumns=MAGNITUDE
```

```
$ asttable two-in-one-2.fits -i
```

You see that we have now only appended the `MAGNITUDE` column of `cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits`. This is what we needed to be able to later subtract the magnitudes. Let's go ahead and add the F105W magnitudes also with the command below. Note how we need to call `--catcolumnhdu` once for every table that should be appended, but we only call `--catcolumn` once (assuming all the tables that should be appended have this column).

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS --output=three-in-one-2.fits \
           --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
           --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f105w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
           --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS \
           --catcolumns=MAGNITUDE
$ asttable three-in-one-2.fits -i
```

But we are not finished yet! There is a very big problem: it is not immediately clear which one of `MAGNITUDE`, `MAGNITUDE-1` or `MAGNITUDE-2` columns belong to which filter! Right now, you know this because you just ran this command. But in one hour, you'll start doubting yourself and will be forced to go through your command history, trying to figure out if you added F105W first, or F125W. You should never torture your future-self (or your colleagues) like this! So, let's rename these confusing columns in the matched catalog.

Fortunately, with the `--colmetadata` option, you can correct the column metadata of the final table (just before it is written). It takes four values: 1) the original column name or number, 2) the new column name, 3) the column unit and 4) the column comments. Since the comments are usually human-friendly sentences and contain space characters, you should put them in double quotations like below. For example, by adding three calls of this option to the previous command, we write the filter name in the magnitude column name and description.

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS --output=three-in-one-3.fits \
        --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f125w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
        --catcolumnfile=cat/xdf-f105w-on-f160w-lab.fits \
        --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS --catcolumnhdu=CLUMPS \
        --catcolumns=MAGNITUDE \
        --colmetadata=MAGNITUDE,MAG-F160W,log,"Magnitude in F160W." \
        --colmetadata=MAGNITUDE-1,MAG-F125W,log,"Magnitude in F125W." \
        --colmetadata=MAGNITUDE-2,MAG-F105W,log,"Magnitude in F105W."
$ asttable three-in-one-3.fits -i
```

We now have all three magnitudes in one table and can start doing arithmetic on them (to estimate colors, which are just a subtraction of magnitudes). To use column arithmetic, simply call the column selection option (`--column` or `-c`), put the value in single quotations and start the value with `arith` (followed by a space) like the example below. Column arithmetic uses the same "reverse polish notation" as the Arithmetic program (see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404), with almost all the same operators (see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412), and some column-specific operators (that are not available for images). In column-arithmetic, you can identify columns by number (prefixed with a `$`) or name, for more see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350.

So let's estimate one color from `three-in-one-3.fits` using column arithmetic. All the commands below will produce the same output, try them each and focus on the differences.

Note that column arithmetic can be mixed with other ways to choose output columns (the `-c` option).

```
$ asttable three-in-one-3.fits -ocolor-cat.fits \
           -c1,2,3,4,'arith $5 $7 -'

$ asttable three-in-one-3.fits -ocolor-cat.fits \
           -c1,2,RA,DEC,'arith MAG-F125W MAG-F160W -'

$ asttable three-in-one-3.fits -ocolor-cat.fits -c1,2 \
           -cRA,DEC --column='arith MAG-F105W MAG-F160W -'
```

This example again highlights the important point on using column names: if you do not know the commands before, you have no way of making sense of the first command: what is in column 5 and 7? why not subtract columns 3 and 4 from each other? Do you see how cryptic the first one is? Then look at the last one: even if you have no idea how this table was created, you immediately understand the desired operation. **When you have column names, please use them.** If your table does not have column names, give them names with the `--colmetadata` (described above) as you are creating them. But how about the metadata for the column you just created with column arithmetic? Have a look at the column metadata of the table produced above:

```
$ asttable color-cat.fits -i
```

The name of the column produced by arithmetic column is `ARITH_1`! This is natural: Arithmetic has no idea what the modified column is! You could have multiplied two columns, or done much more complex transformations with many columns. *Metadata cannot be set automatically, your (the human) input is necessary.* To add metadata, you can use `--colmetadata` like before:

```
$ asttable three-in-one-3.fits -ocolor-cat.fits -c1,2,RA,DEC \
         --column='arith MAG-F105W MAG-F160W -' \
         --colmetadata=ARITH_1,F105W-F160W,log,"Magnitude difference"
$ asttable color-cat.fits -i
```

Sometimes, because of a particular way of storing data, you might need to take all input columns. If there are many columns (for example hundreds!), listing them (like above) will become annoying, buggy and time-consuming. In such cases, you can give `-c_all`. Upon execution, `_all` will be replaced with a comma-separated list of all the input columns. This allows you to add new columns easily, without having to worry about the number of input columns that you want anyway. A lower-level but more customizable method is to use the `seq` (sequence) command with the `-s` (separator) option set to `','`). For example, if you have 216 columns and only want to return columns 1 and 2 as well as all the columns between 12 to 58 (inclusive), you can use the command below:

```
$ asttable table.fits -c1,2,$(seq -s',' 12 58)
```

We are now ready to make our final table. We want it to have the magnitudes in all three filters, as well as the three possible colors. Recall that by convention in astronomy colors are defined by subtracting the bluer magnitude from the redder magnitude. In this way a larger color value corresponds to a redder object. So from the three magnitudes, we can produce three colors (as shown below). Also, because this is the final table we are creating here and want to use it later, we will store it in `cat/` and we will also give it a

clear name and use the `--range` option to only print columns with a signal-to-noise ratio (`SN` column, from the F160W filter) above 5.

```
$ asttable three-in-one-3.fits --range=SN,5,inf -c1,2,RA,DEC,SN \
          -cMAG-F160W,MAG-F125W,MAG-F105W \
          -c'arith MAG-F125W MAG-F160W -' \
          -c'arith MAG-F105W MAG-F125W -' \
          -c'arith MAG-F105W MAG-F160W -' \
          --colmetadata=SN,SN-F160W,ratio,"F160W signal to noise ratio" \
          --colmetadata=ARITH_1,F125W-F160W,log,"Color F125W-F160W." \
          --colmetadata=ARITH_2,F105W-F125W,log,"Color F105W-F125W." \
          --colmetadata=ARITH_3,F105W-F160W,log,"Color F105W-F160W." \
          --output=cat/mags-with-color.fits
$ asttable cat/mags-with-color.fits -i
```

The table now has all the columns we need and it has the proper metadata to let us safely use it later (without frustrating over column orders!) or passing it to colleagues.

Let's finish this section of the tutorial with a useful tip on modifying column metadata. Above, updating/changing column metadata was done with the `--colmetadata` in the same command that produced the newly created Table file. But in many situations, the table is already made and you just want to update the metadata of one column. In such cases using `--colmetadata` is over-kill (wasting CPU/RAM energy or time if the table is large) because it will load the full table data and metadata into memory, just change the metadata and write it back into a file.

In scenarios when the table's data does not need to be changed and you just want to set or update the metadata, it is much more efficient to use basic FITS keyword editing. For example, in the FITS standard, column names are stored in the `TTYPE` header keywords, so let's have a look:

```
$ asttable two-in-one.fits -i
$ astfits two-in-one.fits -h1 | grep TTYPE
```

Changing/updating the column names is as easy as updating the values to these keywords. You do not need to touch the actual data! With the command below, we will just update the `MAGNITUDE` and `MAGNITUDE-1` columns (which are respectively stored in the `TTYPE5` and `TTYPE11` keywords) by modifying the keyword values and checking the effect by listing the column metadata again:

```
$ astfits two-in-one.fits -h1 \
          --update=TTYPE5,MAG-F160W \
          --update=TTYPE11,MAG-F125W
$ asttable two-in-one.fits -i
```

You can see that the column names have indeed been changed without touching any of the data. You can do the same for the column units or comments by modifying the keywords starting with `TUNIT` or `TCOMM`.

Generally, Gnuastro's table is a very useful program in data analysis and what you have seen so far is just the tip of the iceberg. But to avoid making the tutorial even longer, we will stop reviewing the features here, for more, please see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344. Before continuing, let's just delete all the temporary FITS tables we placed in the top project directory:

```
rm *.fits
```

2.1.16 Column statistics (color-magnitude diagram)

In Section 2.1.15 [Working with catalogs (estimating colors)], page 54, we created a single catalog containing the magnitudes of our desired clumps in all three filters, and their colors. To start with, let's inspect the distribution of three colors with the Statistics program.

```
$ aststatistics cat/mags-with-color.fits -cF105W-F125W
$ aststatistics cat/mags-with-color.fits -cF105W-F160W
$ aststatistics cat/mags-with-color.fits -cF125W-F160W
```

This tiny and cute ASCII histogram (and the general information printed above it) gives you a crude (but very useful and fast) feeling on the distribution. You can later use Gnuastro's Statistics program with the `--histogram` option to build a much more fine-grained histogram as a table to feed into your favorite plotting program for a much more accurate/appealing plot (for example, with PGFPlots in LaTeX). If you just want a specific measure, for example, the mean, median and standard deviation, you can ask for them specifically, like below:

```
$ aststatistics cat/mags-with-color.fits -cF105W-F160W \
                --mean --median --std
```

The basic statistics we measured above were just on one column. In many scenarios this is fine, but things get much more exciting if you look at the correlation of two columns with each other. For example, let's create the color-magnitude diagram for our measured targets.

In many papers, the color-magnitude diagram is usually plotted as a scatter plot. However, scatter plots have a major limitation when there are a lot of points and they cluster together in one region of the plot: the possible correlation in that dense region is lost (because the points fall over each other). In such cases, it is much better to use a 2D histogram. In a 2D histogram, the full range in both columns is divided into discrete 2D bins (or pixels!) and we count how many objects fall in that 2D bin.

Since a 2D histogram is a pixelated space, we can simply save it as a FITS image and view it in a FITS viewer. Let's do this in the command below. As is common with color-magnitude plots, we will put the redder magnitude on the horizontal axis and the color on the vertical axis. We will set both dimensions to have 100 bins (with `--numbins` for the horizontal and `--numbins2` for the vertical). Also, to avoid strong outliers in any of the dimensions, we will manually set the range of each dimension with the `--greaterequal`, `--greaterequal2`, `--lessthan` and `--lessthan2` options.

```
$ aststatistics cat/mags-with-color.fits -cMAG-F160W,F105W-F160W \
                --histogram2d=image --manualbinrange \
                --numbins=100  --greaterequal=22  --lessthan=30 \
                --numbins2=100 --greaterequal2=-1 --lessthan2=3 \
                --manualbinrange --output=cmd.fits
```

You can now open this FITS file as a normal FITS image, for example, with the command below. Try hovering/zooming over the pixels: not only will you see the number of objects in catalog that fall in each bin/pixel, but you also see the `F160W` magnitude and color of that pixel also (in the same place you usually see RA and Dec when hovering over an astronomical image).

```
$ astscript-fits-view cmd.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

Having a 2D histogram as a FITS image with WCS has many great advantages. For example, just like FITS images of the night sky, you can "match" many 2D histograms that were created independently. You can add two histograms with each other, or you can use advanced features of FITS viewers to find structure in the correlation of your columns.

With the first command below, you can activate the grid feature of DS9 to actually see the coordinate grid, as well as values on each line. With the second command, DS9 will even read the labels of the axes and use them to generate an almost publication-ready plot.

```
$ astscript-fits-view cmd.fits --ds9scale=minmax --ds9extra="-grid yes"
$ astscript-fits-view cmd.fits --ds9scale=minmax \
           --ds9extra="-grid yes -grid type publication"
```

If you are happy with the grid and coloring and the rest, you can also use ds9 to save this as a JPEG image to directly use in your documents/slides with these extra DS9 options (DS9 will write the image to `cmd-2d.jpeg` and quit immediately afterwards):

```
$ astscript-fits-view cmd.fits --ds9scale=minmax \
           --ds9extra="-grid yes -grid type publication" \
           --ds9extra="-saveimage cmd-2d.jpeg -quit"
```

This is good for a fast progress update. But for your paper or more official report, you want to show something with higher quality. For that, you can use the PGFPlots package in LaTeX to add axes in the same font as your text, sharp grids and many other elegant/powerful features (like over-plotting interesting points and lines). But to load the 2D histogram into PGFPlots first you need to convert the FITS image into a more standard format, for example, PDF. We will use Gnuastro's Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316, for this, and use the `sls-inverse` color map (which will map the pixels with a value of zero to white):

```
$ astconvertt cmd.fits --colormap=sls-inverse --borderwidth=0 -ocmd.pdf
```

Open the resulting `cmd.pdf` and see the PDF. Below you can see a minimally working example of how to add axis numbers, labels and a grid to the PDF generated above. First, let's create a new `report` directory to keep the LaTeX outputs, then put the minimal report's source in a file called `report.tex`. Notice the `xmin`, `xmax`, `ymin`, `ymax` values and how they are the same as the range specified above.

```
$ mkdir report-cmd
$ mv cmd.pdf report-cmd/
$ cat report-cmd/report.tex
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pgfplots}
\dimendef\prevdepth=0
\begin{document}

You can write all you want here...

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{axis}[
      enlargelimits=false,
      grid,
```

```
        axis on top,
        width=\linewidth,
        height=\linewidth,
        xlabel={Magnitude (F160W)},
        ylabel={Color (F105W-F160W)}]

      \addplot graphics[xmin=22, xmax=30, ymin=-1, ymax=3] {cmd.pdf};
    \end{axis}
  \end{tikzpicture}
  \end{document}
```

Run this command to build your PDF (assuming you have LaTeX and PGFPlots).

```
$ cd report-cmd
$ pdflatex report.tex
```

Open the newly created `report.pdf` and enjoy the exquisite quality. The improved quality, blending in with the text, vector-graphics resolution and other features make this plot pleasing to the eye, and let your readers focus on the main point of your scientific argument. PGFPlots can also built the PDF of the plot separately from the rest of the paper/report, see Section 7.1.2.1 [2D histogram as a table for plotting], page 519, for the necessary changes in the preamble.

We will not go much deeper into the Statistics program here, but there is so much more you can do with it. After finishing the tutorial, see Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517.

2.1.17 Aperture photometry

The colors we calculated in Section 2.1.15 [Working with catalogs (estimating colors)], page 54, used a different segmentation map for each object. This might not satisfy some science cases that need the flux within a fixed area/aperture. Fortunately Gnuastro's modular programs make it very easy do this type of measurement (photometry). To do this, we can ignore the labeled images of NoiseChisel of Segment, we can just built our own labeled image! That labeled image can then be given to MakeCatalog

To generate the apertures catalog we will use Gnuastro's MakeProfiles (see Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652). But first we need a list of positions (aperture photometry needs a-priori knowledge of your target positions). So we will first read the clump positions from the F160W catalog, then use AWK to set the other parameters of each profile to be a fixed circle of radius 5 pixels (recall that we want all apertures to have an identical size/area in this scenario).

```
$ rm *.fits *.txt
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS -cRA,DEC \
           | awk '!/^#/{print NR, $1, $2, 5, 5, 0, 0, 1, NR, 1}' \
           > apertures.txt
$ cat apertures.txt
```

We can now feed this catalog into MakeProfiles using the command below to build the apertures over the image. The most important option for this particular job is `--mforflatpix`, it tells MakeProfiles that the values in the magnitude column should be used for each pixel of a flat profile. Without it, MakeProfiles would build the profiles such that the *sum* of the pixels of each profile would have a *magnitude* (in log-scale) of the value

given in that column (what you would expect when simulating a galaxy for example). See Section 8.1.4 [Invoking MakeProfiles], page 659, for details on the options.

```
$ astmkprof apertures.txt --background=flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits \
           --clearcanvas --replace --type=int16 --mforflatpix \
           --mode=wcs --output=apertures.fits
```

Open `apertures.fits` with a FITS image viewer (like SAO DS9) and look around at the circles placed over the targets. Also open the input image and Segment's clumps image and compare them with the positions of these circles. Where the apertures overlap, you will notice that one label has replaced the other (because of the `--replace` option). In the future, MakeCatalog will be able to work with overlapping labels, but currently it does not. If you are interested, please join us in completing Gnuastro with added improvements like this (see task 14750[22]).

We can now feed the `apertures.fits` labeled image into MakeCatalog instead of Segment's output as shown below. In comparison with the previous MakeCatalog call, you will notice that there is no more `--clumpscat` option, since there is no more separate "clump" image now, each aperture is treated as a separate "object".

```
$ astmkcatalog apertures.fits -h1 --zeropoint=26.27 \
               --valuesfile=nc/xdf-f105w.fits \
               --ids --ra --dec --magnitude --sn \
               --output=cat/xdf-f105w-aper.fits
```

This catalog has the same number of rows as the catalog produced from clumps in Section 2.1.15 [Working with catalogs (estimating colors)], page 54. Therefore similar to how we found colors, you can compare the aperture and clump magnitudes for example.

You can also change the filter name and zero point magnitudes and run this command again to have the fixed aperture magnitude in the F160W filter and measure colors on apertures.

2.1.18 Matching catalogs

In the example above, we had the luxury to generate the catalogs ourselves, and where thus able to generate them in a way that the rows match. But this is not generally the case. In many situations, you need to use catalogs from many different telescopes, or catalogs with high-level calculations that you cannot simply regenerate with the same pixels without spending a lot of time or using heavy computation. In such cases, when each catalog has the coordinates of its own objects, you can use the coordinates to match the rows with Gnuastro's Match program (see Section 7.5 [Match], page 637).

As the name suggests, Gnuastro's Match program will match rows based on distance (or aperture in 2D) in one, two, or three columns. For this tutorial, let's try matching the two catalogs that were not created from the same labeled images, recall how each has a different number of rows:

```
$ asttable cat/xdf-f105w.fits -hCLUMPS -i
$ asttable cat/xdf-f160w.fits -hCLUMPS -i
```

You give Match two catalogs (from the two different filters we derived above) as argument, and the HDUs containing them (if they are FITS files) with the `--hdu` and `--hdu2`

[22] `https://savannah.gnu.org/task/index.php?14750`

options. The `--ccol1` and `--ccol2` options specify the coordinate-columns which should be matched with which in the two catalogs. With `--aperture` you specify the acceptable error (radius in 2D), in the same units as the columns.

```
$ astmatch cat/xdf-f160w.fits           cat/xdf-f105w.fits \
           --hdu=CLUMPS                 --hdu2=CLUMPS \
           --ccol1=RA,DEC               --ccol2=RA,DEC \
           --aperture=0.5/3600 \
           --output=matched.fits
$ astfits matched.fits
```

From the second command, you see that the output has two extensions and that both have the same number of rows. The rows in each extension are the matched rows of the respective input table: those in the first HDU come from the first input and those in the second HDU come from the second. However, their order may be different from the input tables because the rows match: the first row in the first HDU matches with the first row in the second HDU, etc. You can also see which objects did not match with the `--notmatched`, like below. Note how each extension of now has a different number of rows.

```
$ astmatch cat/xdf-f160w.fits           cat/xdf-f105w.fits \
           --hdu=CLUMPS                 --hdu2=CLUMPS \
           --ccol1=RA,DEC               --ccol2=RA,DEC \
           --aperture=0.5/3600 \
           --output=not-matched.fits    --notmatched
$ astfits not-matched.fits
```

The `--outcols` of Match is a very convenient feature: you can use it to specify which columns from the two catalogs you want in the output (merge two input catalogs into one). If the first character is an '`a`', the respective matched column (number or name, similar to Table above) in the first catalog will be written in the output table. When the first character is a '`b`', the respective column from the second catalog will be written in the output. Also, if the first character is followed by `_all`, then all the columns from the respective catalog will be put in the output.

```
$ astmatch cat/xdf-f160w.fits           cat/xdf-f105w.fits \
           --hdu=CLUMPS                 --hdu2=CLUMPS \
           --ccol1=RA,DEC               --ccol2=RA,DEC \
           --aperture=0.35/3600 \
           --outcols=a_all,bMAGNITUDE,bSN \
           --output=matched.fits
$ astfits matched.fits
```

2.1.19 Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization

As a final step, let's go back to the original clumps-based color measurement we generated in Section 2.1.15 [Working with catalogs (estimating colors)], page 54. We will find the objects with the strongest color and make a cutout to inspect them visually and finally, we will see how they are located on the image. With the command below, we will select the reddest objects (those with a color larger than 1.5):

```
$ asttable cat/mags-with-color.fits --range=F105W-F160W,1.5,inf
```

You can see how many they are by piping it to `wc -l`:

```
$ asttable cat/mags-with-color.fits --range=F105W-F160W,1.5,inf | wc -l
```

Let's crop the F160W image around each of these objects, but we first need a unique identifier for them. We will define this identifier using the object and clump labels (with an underscore between them) and feed the output of the command above to AWK to generate a catalog. Note that since we are making a plain text table, we will define the necessary (for the string-type first column) metadata manually (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287).

```
$ echo "# Column 1: ID [name, str10] Object ID" > cat/reddest.txt
$ asttable cat/mags-with-color.fits --range=F105W-F160W,1.5,inf \
           | awk '{printf("%d_%-10d %f %f\n", $1, $2, $3, $4)}' \
           >> cat/reddest.txt
```

Let's see how these objects are positioned over the dataset. DS9 has the "Region"s concept for this purpose. And you build such regions easily from a table using Gnuastro's `astscript-ds9-region` installed script, using the command below:

```
$ astscript-ds9-region cat/reddest.txt -c2,3 --mode=wcs \
           --command="ds9 flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -zscale"
```

We can now feed `cat/reddest.txt` into Gnuastro's Crop program to get separate postage stamps for each object. To keep things clean, we will make a directory called `crop-red` and ask Crop to save the crops in this directory. We will also add a `-f160w.fits` suffix to the crops (to remind us which filter they came from). The width of the crops will be 15 arc-seconds (or 15/3600 degrees, which is the units of the WCS).

```
$ mkdir crop-red
$ astcrop flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits --mode=wcs --namecol=ID \
          --catalog=cat/reddest.txt --width=15/3600,15/3600  \
          --suffix=-f160w.fits --output=crop-red
```

Like the MakeProfiles command in Section 2.1.17 [Aperture photometry], page 61, if you look at the order of the crops, you will notice that the crops are not made in order! This is because each crop is independent of the rest, therefore crops are done in parallel, and parallel operations are asynchronous. So the order can differ in each run, but the final output is the same! In the command above, you can change `f160w` to `f105w` to make the crops in both filters. You can see all the cropped FITS files in the `crop-red` directory with this command:

```
$ astscript-fits-view crop-red/*.fits
```

To view the crops more easily (not having to open ds9 for each image), you can convert the FITS crops into the JPEG format with a shell loop like below.

```
$ cd crop-red
$ for f in *.fits; do \
    astconvertt $f --fluxlow=-0.001 --fluxhigh=0.005 --invert -ojpg; \
  done
$ cd ..
$ ls crop-red/
```

You can now use your general graphic user interface image viewer to flip through the images more easily, or import them into your papers/reports.

The `for` loop above to convert the images will do the job in series: each file is converted only after the previous one is complete. But like the crops, each JPEG image is

independent, so let's parallelize it. In other words, we want to run more than one instance of the command at any moment. To do that, we will use Make (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Make_(software)`). Make is a very wonderful pipeline management system, and the most common and powerful implementation is GNU Make (`https://www.gnu.org/software/make`), which has a complete manual just like this one. We cannot go into the details of Make here, for a hands-on video tutorial, see this video introduction (`https://peertube.stream/w/iJitjS3r232Z8UPMxKo6jq`). To do the process above in Make, please copy the contents below into a plain-text file called `Makefile`. Just replace the `__[TAB]__` part at the start of the line with a single '`TAB`' button on your keyboard.

```
jpgs=$(subst .fits,.jpg,$(wildcard *.fits))
all: $(jpgs)
$(jpgs): %.jpg: %.fits
__[TAB]__astconvertt $< --fluxlow=-0.001 --fluxhigh=0.005 \
__[TAB]__            --invert -o$
```

Now that the `Makefile` is ready, you can run Make on 12 threads using the commands below. Feel free to replace the 12 with any number of threads you have on your system (you can find out by running the `nproc` command on GNU/Linux operating systems):

```
$ make -j12
```

Did you notice how much faster this one was? When possible, it is always very helpful to do your analysis in parallel. You can build very complex workflows with Make, for example, see Akhlaghi 2021 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.03018`) so it is worth spending some time to master.

2.1.20 FITS images in a publication

In the previous section (Section 2.1.19 [Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization], page 63), we visually inspected the positions of the reddest objects using DS9. That is very good for an interactive inspection of the objects: you can zoom-in and out, you can do measurements, etc. Once the experimentation phase of your project is complete, you want to show these objects over the whole image in a report, paper or slides.

One solution is to use DS9 itself! For example, run the `astscript-fits-view` command of the previous section to open DS9 with the regions over-plotted. Click on the "File" menu and select "Save Image". In the side-menu that opens, you have multiple formats to select from. Usually for publications, we want to show the regions and text (in the colorbar) in vector graphics, so it is best to export to EPS. Once you have made the EPS, you can then convert it to PDF with the `epspdf` command.

Another solution is to use Gnuastro's ConvertType program. The main difference is that DS9 is a Graphic User Interface (GUI) program, so it takes relatively long (about a second) to load, and it requires many dependencies. This will slow-down automatic conversion of many files, and will make your code hard to move to another operating system. DS9 does have a command-line interface that you can use to automate the creation of each file, however, it has a very peculiar command-line interface and formats (like the "region" files). However, in ConvertType, there is no graphic interface, so it has very few dependencies, it is fast, and finally, it takes normal tables (in plain-text or FITS) as input. So in this concluding step of the analysis, let's build a nice publication-ready plot, showing the positions of the reddest objects in the image for our paper.

In Section 2.1.19 [Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization], page 63, we already used ConvertType to make JPEG postage stamps. Here, we will use it to make a PDF image of the whole deep region. To start, let's simply run ConvertType on the F160W image:

```
$ astconvertt flat-ir/xdf-f160w.fits -oxdf.pdf
```

Open the output in a PDF viewer. You see that it is almost fully black! Let's see why this happens! First, with the two commands below, let's calculate the maximum value, and the standard deviation of the sky in this image (using NoiseChisel's output, which we found at the end of Section 2.1.11 [NoiseChisel optimization for detection], page 41). Note that NoiseChisel writes the median sky standard deviation *before* interpolation in the `MEDSTD` keyword of the `SKY_STD` HDU. This is more robust than the median of the Sky standard deviation image (which has gone through interpolation).

```
$ max=$(aststatistics nc/xdf-f160w.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY --maximum)
$ skystd=$(astfits nc/xdf-f160w.fits -hSKY_STD --keyvalue=MEDSTD -q)

$ echo $max $skystd
58.8292 0.000410282

$ echo $max $skystd | awk '{print $1/$2}'
143387
```

In the last command above, we divided the maximum by the sky standard deviation. You see that the maximum value is more than 140000 times larger than the noise level! On the other hand common monitors or printers, usually have a maximum dynamic range of 8-bits, only allowing for $2^8 = 256$ layers. This is therefore the maximum number of "layers" you can have in a common display formats like JPEG, PDF or PNG! Dividing the result above by 256, we get a layer spacing of

```
$ echo $max $skystd | awk '{print $1/$2/256}'
560.106
```

In other words, the first layer (which is black) will contain all the pixel values below ~ 560! So all pixels with a signal-to-noise ratio lower than ~ 560 will have a black color since they fall in the first layer of an 8-bit PDF (or JPEG) image. This happens because by default we are assuming a linear mapping from floating point to 8-bit integers.

To fix this, we should move to a different mapping. A good, physically motivated, mapping is Surface Brightness (which is in log-scale, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585). Fortunately this is very easy to do with Gnuastro's Arithmetic program, as shown in the commands below (using the known zero point[23], and after calculating the pixel area in units of arcsec^2):

```
$ zeropoint=25.94
$ pixarcsec2=$(astfits nc/xdf-f160w.fits --pixelareaarcsec2)
$ astarithmetic nc/xdf-f160w.fits $zeropoint $pixarcsec2 counts-to-sb \
                --output=xdf-f160w-sb.fits
```

With the two commands below, first, let's look at the dynamic range of the image now (dividing the maximum by the minimum), and then let's open the image and have a look at it:

[23] `https://archive.stsci.edu/prepds/xdf/#science-images`

```
$ aststatistics xdf-f160w-sb.fits --minimum --maximum
$ astscript-fits-view xdf-f160w-sb.fits
```

The good news is that the dynamic range has now decreased to about 2! In other words, we can distribute the 256 layers of an 8-bit display over a much smaller range of values, and therefore better visualize the data. However, there are two important points to consider from the output of the first command and a visual inspection of the second.

- The largest pixel value (faintest surface brightness level) in the image is ~ 43! This is far too low to be realistic, and is just due to noise. As discussed in Section 2.1.14 [Measuring the dataset limits], page 49, the 3σ surface brightness limit of this image, over 100 arcsec^2 is roughly 32.66 mag/arcsec^2.
- You see many NaN pixels in between the galaxies! These are due to the fact that the magnitude is defined on a logarithmic scale and the logarithm of a negative number is not defined.

In other words, we should replace all NaN pixels, and pixels with a surface brightness value fainter than the image surface brightness limit to this limit. With the first command below, we will first extract the surface brightness limit from the catalog headers that we calculated before, and then call Arithmetic to use this limit.

```
$ sblimit=$(astfits cat/xdf-f160w.fits --keyvalue=SBL -q)
$ astarithmetic nc/xdf-f160w.fits $zeropoint $pixarcsec2 \
                counts-to-sb set-sb \
                sb sb $sblimit gt sb isblank or $sblimit where \
                --output=xdf-f160w-sb.fits
```

Let's convert this image into a PDF with the command below:

```
$ astconvertt xdf-f160w-sb.fits --output=xdf-f160w-sb.pdf
```

It is much better now and we can visualize many features of the FITS file (from the central structures of the galaxies and stars, to a little into the noise and their low surface brightness features. However, the image generally looks a little too gray! This is because of that bright star in the bottom half of the image! Stars are very sharp! So let's manually tell ConvertType to set any pixel with a value less than (brighter than) 20 to black (and not use the minimum). We do this with the `--fluxlow` option:

```
$ astconvertt xdf-f160w-sb.fits --output=xdf-f160w-sb.pdf --fluxlow=20
```

We are still missing some of the diffuse flux in this PDF. This is because of those negative pixels that were set to NaN. To better show these structures, we should warp the image to larger pixels. So let's warp it to a pixel grid where the new pixels are 4×4 larger than the original pixels. But be careful that warping should be done on the original image, not on the surface brightness image. We should re-calculate the surface brightness image after the warping is one. This is because $log(a + b) \neq log(a) + log(b)$. Recall that surface brightness calculation involves a logarithm, and warping involves addition of pixel values.

```
$ astwarp nc/xdf-f160w.fits --scale=1/4 --centeroncorner \
          --output=xdf-f160w-warped.fits

$ pixarcsec2=$(astfits xdf-f160w-warped.fits --pixelareaarcsec2)

$ astarithmetic xdf-f160w-warped.fits $zeropoint $pixarcsec2 \
```

```
                counts-to-sb set-sb \
                sb sb $sblimit gt sb isblank or $sblimit where \
                --output=xdf-f160w-sb.fits

$ astconvertt xdf-f160w-sb.fits --output=xdf-f160w-sb.pdf --fluxlow=20
```

Above, we needed to re-calculate the pixel area of the warpped image, but we did not need to re-calculate the surface brightness limit! The reason is that the surface brightness limit is independent of the pixel area (in its derivation, the pixel area has been accounted for). As a side-effect of the warping, the number of pixels in the image also dramatically decreased, therefore the volume of the output PDF (in bytes) is also smaller, making your paper/report easier to upload/download or send by email. This visual resolution is still more than enough for including on top of a column in your paper!

I do not have the zero point of my image: The absolute value of the zero point is irrelevant for the finally produced PDF. We used it here because it was available and makes the numbers physically understandable. If you do not have the zero point, just set it to zero (which is also the default zero point used by MakeCatalog when it estimates the surface brightness limit). For the value to `--fluxlow` above, you can simply subtract ~ 10 from the surface brightness limit.

To summarize, and to keep the image for the next section in a separate directory, here are the necessary commands:

```
$ zeropoint=25.94
$ mkdir report-image
$ cd report-image
$ sblimit=$(astfits cat/xdf-f160w.fits --keyvalue=SBL -q)
$ astwarp nc/xdf-f160w.fits --scale=1/4 --centeroncorner \
          --output=warped.fits
$ pixarcsec2=$(astfits warped.fits --pixelareaarcsec2)
$ astarithmetic warped.fits $zeropoint $pixarcsec2 \
                counts-to-sb set-sb \
                sb sb $sblimit gt sb isblank or $sblimit where \
                --output=sb.fits
$ astconvertt sb.fits --output=sb.pdf --fluxlow=20
```

Finally, let's remove all the temporary files we built in the top-level tutorial directory:

```
$ rm *.fits *.pdf
```

Color images: In this tutorial we just used one of the filters and showed the surface brightness image of that single filter as a grayscale image. But the image can also be in color (using three filters) to better convey the physical properties of the objects in your image. To create an image that shows the full dynamic range of your data, see this dedicated tutorial Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152.

2.1.21 Marking objects for publication

In Section 2.1.20 [FITS images in a publication], page 65, we created a ready-to-print visualization of the FITS image used in this tutorial. However, you rarely want to show a naked image like that! You usually want to highlight some objects (that are the target of your science) over the image and show different marks for the various types of objects you are studying. In this tutorial, we will do just that: select a sub-set of the full catalog of clumps, and show them with different marks shapes and colors, while also adding some text under each mark. To add coordinates on the edges of the figure in your paper, see Section 5.2.4 [Annotations for figure in paper], page 322.

To start with, let's put a red plus sign over the sub-sample of reddest clumps similar to Section 2.1.19 [Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization], page 63. First, we will need to make the table of marks. We will choose those with a color stronger than 1.5 magnitudes and a signal-to-noise ratio (in F160W) larger than 5. We also only need the RA, Dec, color and magnitude (in F160W) columns (recall that at the end of the previous section we were already in the `report-image/` directory):

```
$ asttable cat/mags-with-color.fits --range=F105W-F160W,1.5:inf \
           --range=sn-f160w,5:inf -cRA,DEC,MAG-F160w,F105W-F160W \
           --output=reddest-cat.fits
```

Gnuastro's ConvertType program also has features to add marks over the finally produced PDF. Below, we will start with the same `astconvertt` command of the previous section. The positions of the marks should be given as a table to the `--marks` option. Two other options are also mandatory: `--markcoords` identifies the columns that contain the coordinates of each mark and `--mode` specifies if the coordinates are in image or WCS coordinates.

```
$ astconvertt sb.fits --output=reddest.pdf --fluxlow=20 \
              --marks=reddest-cat.fits --mode=wcs \
              --markcoords=RA,DEC
```

Open the output `reddest.pdf` and see the result. You will see relatively thick red circles placed over the given coordinates. In your PDF browser, zoom-in to one of the regions, you will see that while the pixels of the background image become larger, the lines of these regions do not degrade! This is the concept/power of Vector Graphics: ideal for publication! For more on raster (pixelated) and vector (infinite-resolution) graphics, see Section 5.2.1 [Raster and Vector graphics], page 316.

We had planned to put a plus-sign on each object. However, because we did not explicitly ask for a certain shape, ConvertType put a circle. Each mark can have its own separate shape. Shapes can be given by a name or a code. The full list of available shapes names and codes is given in the description of `--markshape` option of Section 5.2.5.3 [Drawing with vector graphics], page 338.

To use a different shape, we need to add a new column to the base table, containing the identifier of the desired shape for each mark. For example, the code for the plus sign is `2`. With the commands below, we will add a new column with this fixed value. With the first AWK command we will make a single-column file, where all the rows have the same value. We pipe our base table into AWK, so it has the same number of rows. With the second command, we concatenate (or append) the new column with Table, and give this new column the name `SHAPE` (to easily refer to it later and not have to count). With

the third command, we clean-up behind our selves (deleting the extra `params.txt` file). Finally, we use the `--markshape` option to tell ConvertType which column to use for the shape identifier.

```
$ asttable reddest-cat.fits | awk '{print 2}' > params.txt

$ asttable reddest-cat.fits --catcolumnfile=params.txt \
           --colmetadata=5,SHAPE,id,"Shape of mark" \
           --output=reddest-marks.fits
$ rm params.txt

$ astconvertt sb.fits --output=reddest.pdf --fluxlow=20 \
              --marks=reddest-marks.fits --mode=wcs \
              --markcoords=RA,DEC --markshape=SHAPE
```

Open the PDF and have a look! You do see red signs over the coordinates, but the thick plus-signs only become visible after you zoom-in multiple times! To make them larger, you can give another column to specify the size of each mark. Let's set the full width of the plus sign to extend 3 arcseconds. The commands are similar to above, try to follow the difference (in particular, how we use `--sizeinarcsec`).

```
$ asttable reddest-cat.fits | awk '{print 2, 3}' > params.txt

$ asttable reddest-cat.fits --catcolumnfile=params.txt \
           --colmetadata=5,SHAPE,id,"Shape of mark" \
           --colmetadata=6,SIZE,arcsec,"Size in arcseconds" \
           --output=reddest-marks.fits
$ rm params.txt

$ astconvertt sb.fits --output=reddest.pdf --fluxlow=20 \
              --marks=reddest-marks.fits --mode=wcs \
              --markcoords=RA,DEC --markshape=SHAPE \
              --marksize=SIZE --sizeinarcsec
```

The power of this methodology is that each mark can be completely different! For example, let's show the objects with a color less than 2 magnitudes with a circle, and those with a stronger color with a plus (recall that the code for a circle was `1` and that of a plus was `2`). You only need to replace the first command above with the one below. Afterwards, run the rest of the commands in the last code-block.

```
$ asttable reddest-cat.fits -cF105W-F160W \
           | awk '{if($1<2) shape=1; else shape=2; print shape, 3}' \
           > params.txt
```

Have a look at the resulting `reddest.pdf`. You see that the circles are much larger than the plus signs. This is because the "size" of a cross is defined to be its full width, but for a circle, the value in the size column is the radius. The way each shape interprets the value of the size column is fully described under `--markshape` of Section 5.2.5.3 [Drawing with vector graphics], page 338. To make them more comparable, let's set the circle sizes to be half of the cross sizes.

```
$ asttable reddest-cat.fits -cF105W-F160W \
```

```
            | awk '{if($1<2) {shape=1; size=1.5} \
                    else     {shape=2; size=3} \
                    print shape, size}' \
            > params.txt
```

Let's make things a little more complex (and show more information in the visualization) by using color. Gnuastro recognizes the full extended web colors (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_colors#Extended_colors`), for their full list (containing names and codes) see Section 5.2.3.3 [Vector graphics colors], page 322. But like everything else, an even easier way to view and select the color for your figure is on the command-line! If your terminal supports 24-bit true-color, you can see all the colors by running this command (supported on modern GNU/Linux distributions):

```
$ astconvertt --listcolors
```

we will give a "Sienna" color for the objects that are fainter than 29th magnitude and a "deeppink" color to the brighter ones (while keeping the same shapes definition as before) Since there are many colors, using their codes can make the table hard to read by a human! So let's use the color names instead of the color codes in the example below (this is useful in other columns require strings-only, like the font name).

The only intricacy is in the making of `params.txt`. Recall that string columns need column metadata (Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287). In this particular case, since the string column is the last one, we can safely use AWK's `print` command. But if you have multiple string columns, to be safe it is better to use AWK's `printf` and explicitly specify the number of characters in the string columns.

```
$ asttable reddest-cat.fits -cF105W-F160W,MAG-F160W \
           | awk 'BEGIN{print "# Column 3: COLOR [name, str8]"}\
                  {if($1<2)  {shape=1; size=1.5} \
                   else      {shape=2; size=3} \
                   if($2>29) {color="sienna"} \
                   else      {color="deeppink"} \
                   print shape, size, color}' \
           > params.txt

$ asttable reddest-cat.fits --catcolumnfile=params.txt \
           --colmetadata=5,SHAPE,id,"Shape of mark" \
           --colmetadata=6,SIZE,arcsec,"Size in arcseconds" \
           --output=reddest-marks.fits
$ rm params.txt

$ astconvertt sb.fits --output=reddest.pdf --fluxlow=20 \
              --marks=reddest-marks.fits --mode=wcs \
              --markcoords=RA,DEC --markshape=SHAPE \
              --marksize=SIZE --sizeinarcsec --markcolor=COLOR
```

As one final example, let's write the magnitude of each object under it. Since the magnitude is already in the `marks.fits` that we produced above, it is very easy to add it (just add `--marktext` option to ConvertType):

```
$ astconvertt sb.fits --output=reddest.pdf --fluxlow=20 \
```

```
--marks=reddest-marks.fits --mode=wcs \
--markcoords=RA,DEC --markshape=SHAPE \
--marksize=SIZE --sizeinarcsec \
--markcolor=COLOR --marktext=MAG-F160W
```

Open the final PDF (`reddest.pdf`) and you will see the magnitudes written under each mark in the same color. In the case of magnitudes (where the magnitude error is usually much larger than 0.01 magnitudes, four decimals is not too meaningful. By default, for printing floating point columns, we use the compiler's default precision (which is about 4 digits for 32-bit floating point numbers). But you can over-write this (to only show two digits after the decimal point) with the `--marktextprecision=2` option.

You can customize the written text by specifying a different line-width (for the text, different from the main mark), or even specifying a different font for each mark! You can see the full list of available fonts for the text under a mark with the first command below and with the second, you can actually see them in a custom PDF (to only show the fonts).

```
$ astconvertt --listfonts
$ astconvertt --showfonts
```

As you see, there are many ways you can customize each mark! The above examples were just the tip of the iceburg! But this section has already become long so we will stop it here (see the box at the end of this section for yet another useful example). Like above, each feature of a mark can be controlled with a column in the table of mark information. Please see in Section 5.2.5.3 [Drawing with vector graphics], page 338, for the full list of columns/features that you can use.

Drawing ellipses: With the commands below, you can measure the elliptical properties of the objects and visualized them in a ready-to-publish PDF (we will only show the ellipses of the largest clumps):

```
$ astmkcatalog ../seg/xdf-f160w.fits --ra --dec --semi-major \
               --axis-ratio --position-angle --clumpscat \
               --output=ellipseinfo.fits
$ asttable ellipseinfo.fits -hCLUMPS | awk '{print 4}' > params.txt
$ asttable ellipseinfo.fits -hCLUMPS --catcolumnfile=params.txt \
           --range=SEMI_MAJOR,10,inf -oellipse-marks.fits \
           --colmetadata=6,SHAPE,id,"Shape of mark"
$ astconvertt sb.fits --output=ellipse.pdf --fluxlow=20 \
              --marks=ellipse-marks.fits --mode=wcs \
              --markcoords=RA,DEC --markshape=SHAPE \
              --marksize=SEMI_MAJOR,AXIS_RATIO --sizeinpix \
              --markrotate=POSITION_ANGLE
```

To conclude this section, let us highlight an important factor to consider in vector graphics. In ConvertType, things like line width or font size are defined in units of *points*. In vector graphics standards, 72 points correspond to one inch. Therefore, one way you can change these factors for all the objects is to assign a larger or smaller print size to the image. The print size is just a meta-data entry, and will not affect the file's volume in bytes!

You can do this with the `--widthincm` option. Try adding this option and giving it very different values like `5` or `30`.

2.1.22 Writing scripts to automate the steps

In the previous sub-sections, we went through a series of steps like downloading the necessary datasets (in Section 2.1.3 [Setup and data download], page 25), detecting the objects in the image, and finally selecting a particular subset of them to inspect visually (in Section 2.1.19 [Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization], page 63). To benefit most effectively from this subsection, please go through the previous sub-sections, and if you have not actually done them, we recommended to do/run them before continuing here.

Each sub-section/step of the sub-sections above involved several commands on the command-line. Therefore, if you want to reproduce the previous results (for example, to only change one part, and see its effect), you'll have to go through all the sections above and read through them again. If you have ran the commands recently, you may also have them in the history of your shell (command-line environment). You can see many of your previous commands on the shell (even if you have closed the terminal) with the `history` command, like this:

```
$ history
```

Try it in your teminal to see for yourself. By default in GNU Bash, it shows the last 500 commands. You can also save this "history" of previous commands to a file using shell redirection (to have it after your next 500 commands), with this command

```
$ history > my-previous-commands.txt
```

This is a good way to temporarily keep track of every single command you ran. But in the middle of all the useful commands, you will have many extra commands, like tests that you did before/after the good output of a step (that you decided to continue working on), or an unrelated job you had to do in the middle of this project. Because of these impurities, after a few days (that you have forgot the context: tests you did not end-up using, or unrelated jobs) reading this full history will be very frustrating.

Keeping the final commands that were used in each step of an analysis is a common problem for anyone who is doing something serious with the computer. But simply keeping the most important commands in a text file is not enough, the small steps in the middle (like making a directory to keep the outputs of one step) are also important. In other words, the only way you can be sure that you are under control of your processing (and actually understand how you produced your final result) is to run the commands automatically.

Fortunately, typing commands interactively with your fingers is not the only way to operate the shell. The shell can also take its orders/commands from a plain-text file, which is called a *script*. When given a script, the shell will read it line-by-line as if you have actually typed it manually.

Let's continue with an example: try typing the commands below in your shell. With these commands we are making a text file (`a.txt`) containing a simple 3×3 matrix, converting it to a FITS image and computing its basic statistics. After the first three commands open `a.txt` with a text editor to actually see the values we wrote in it, and after the fourth, open the FITS file to see the matrix as an image. `a.txt` is created through the shell's redirection feature: '`>`' overwrites the existing contents of a file, and '`>>`' appends the new contents after the old contents.

```
$ echo "1 1 1" > a.txt
$ echo "1 2 1" >> a.txt
$ echo "1 1 1" >> a.txt
$ astconvertt a.txt --output=a.fits
$ aststatistics a.fits
```

To automate these series of commands, you should put them in a text file. But that text file must have two special features: 1) It should tell the shell what program should interpret the script. 2) The operating system should know that the file can be directly executed.

For the first, Unix-like operating systems define the *shebang* concept (also known as *sha-bang* or *hashbang*). In the shebang convention, the first two characters of a file should be '`#!`'. When confronted with these characters, the script will be interpreted with the program that follows them. In this case, we want to write a shell script and the most common shell program is GNU Bash which is installed in `/bin/bash`. So the first line of your script should be '`#!/bin/bash`'[24].

It may happen (rarely) that GNU Bash is in another location on your system. In other cases, you may prefer to use a non-standard version of Bash installed in another location (that has higher priority in your `PATH`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235). In such cases, you can use the '`#!/usr/bin/env bash`' shebang instead. Through the `env` program, this shebang will look in your `PATH` and use the first `bash` it finds to run your script. But for simplicity in the rest of the tutorial, we will continue with the '`#!/bin/bash`' shebang.

Using your favorite text editor, make a new empty file, let's call it `my-first-script.sh`. Write the GNU Bash shebang (above) as its first line. After the shebang, copy the series of commands we ran above. Just note that the '`$`' sign at the start of every line above is the prompt of the interactive shell (you never actually typed it, remember?). Therefore, commands in a shell script should not start with a '`$`'. Once you add the commands, close the text editor and run the `cat` command to confirm its contents. It should look like the example below. Recall that you should only type the line that starts with a '`$`', the lines without a '`$`', are printed automatically on the command-line (they are the contents of your script).

```
$ cat my-first-script.sh
#!/bin/bash
echo "1 1 1" > a.txt
echo "1 2 1" >> a.txt
echo "1 1 1" >> a.txt
astconvertt a.txt --output=a.fits
aststatistics a.fits
```

The script contents are now ready, but to run it, you should activate the script file's *executable flag*. In Unix-like operating systems, every file has three types of flags: *read* (or `r`), *write* (or `w`) and *execute* (or `x`). To toggle a file's flags, you should use the `chmod` (for "change mode") command. To activate a flag, you put a '`+`' before the flag character (for

[24] When the script is to be run by the same shell that is calling it (like this script), the shebang is optional. But it is still recommended, because it ensures that even if the user is not using GNU Bash, the script will be run in GNU Bash: given the differences between various shells, writing truly portable shell scripts, that can be run by many shell programs/implementations, is not easy (sometimes not possible!).

example, `+x`). To deactivate it, you put a '`-`' (for example, `-x`). In this case, you want to activate the script's executable flag, so you should run

```
$ chmod +x my-first-script.sh
```

Your script is now ready to run/execute the series of commands. To run it, you should call it while specifying its location in the file system. Since you are currently in the same directory as the script, it is easiest to use relative addressing like below (where '`./`' means the current directory). But before running your script, first delete the two `a.txt` and `a.fits` files that were created when you interactively ran the commands.

```
$ rm a.txt a.fits
$ ls
$ ./my-first-script.sh
$ ls
```

The script immediately prints the statistics while doing all the previous steps in the background. With the last `ls`, you see that it automatically re-built the `a.txt` and `a.fits` files, open them and have a look at their contents.

An extremely useful feature of shell scripts is that the shell will ignore anything after a '`#`' character. You can thus add descriptions/comments to the commands and make them much more useful for the future. For example, after adding comments, your script might look like this:

```
$ cat my-first-script.sh
#!/bin/bash

# This script is my first attempt at learning to write shell scripts.
# As a simple series of commands, I am just building a small FITS
# image, and calculating its basic statistics.

# Write the matrix into a file.
echo "1 1 1" > a.txt
echo "1 2 1" >> a.txt
echo "1 1 1" >> a.txt

# Convert the matrix to a FITS image.
astconvertt a.txt --output=a.fits

# Calculate the statistics of the FITS image.
aststatistics a.fits
```

Is Not this much more easier to read now? Comments help to provide human-friendly context to the raw commands. At the time you make a script, comments may seem like an extra effort and slow you down. But in one year, you will forget almost everything about your script and you will appreciate the effort so much! Think of the comments as an email to your future-self and always put a well-written description of the context/purpose (most importantly, things that are not directly clear by reading the commands) in your scripts.

The example above was very basic and mostly redundant series of commands, to show the basic concepts behind scripts. You can put any (arbitrarily long and complex) series of commands in a script by following the two rules: 1) add a shebang, and 2) enable the

executable flag. In fact, as you continue your own research projects, you will find that any time you are dealing with more than two or three commands, keeping them in a script (and modifying that script, and running it) is much more easier, and future-proof, then typing the commands directly on the command-line and relying on things like `history`. Here are some tips that will come in handy when you are writing your scripts:

As a more realistic example, let's have a look at a script that will do the steps of Section 2.1.3 [Setup and data download], page 25, and Section 2.1.4 [Dataset inspection and cropping], page 25. In particular note how often we are using variables to avoid repeating fixed strings of characters (usually file/directory names). This greatly helps in scaling up your project, and avoiding hard-to-find bugs that are caused by typos in those fixed strings.

```
$ cat gnuastro-tutorial-1.sh
#!/bin/bash


# Download the input datasets
# ---------------------------
#
# The default file names have this format (where `FILTER' differs for
# each filter):
#   hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_FILTER_v1_sci.fits
# To make the script easier to read, a prefix and suffix variable are
# used to sandwich the filter name into one short line.
dldir=download
xdfsuffix=_v1_sci.fits
xdfprefix=hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_
xdfurl=http://archive.stsci.edu/pub/hlsp/xdf

# The file name and full URLs of the input data.
f105w_in=$xdfprefix"f105w"$xdfsuffix
f160w_in=$xdfprefix"f160w"$xdfsuffix
f105w_url=$xdfurl/$f105w_in
f160w_url=$xdfurl/$f160w_in

# Go into the download directory and download the images there,
# then come back up to the top running directory.
mkdir $dldir
cd $dldir
wget $f105w_url
wget $f160w_url
cd ..


# Only work on the deep region
# ----------------------------
#
# To help in readability, each vertice of the deep/flat field is stored
```

```
# as a separate variable. They are then merged into one variable to
# define the polygon.
flatdir=flat-ir
vertice1="53.187414,-27.779152"
vertice2="53.159507,-27.759633"
vertice3="53.134517,-27.787144"
vertice4="53.161906,-27.807208"
f105w_flat=$flatdir/xdf-f105w.fits
f160w_flat=$flatdir/xdf-f160w.fits
deep_polygon="$vertice1:$vertice2:$vertice3:$vertice4"

mkdir $flatdir
astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=$f105w_flat \
        --polygon=$deep_polygon $dldir/$f105w_in
astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=$f160w_flat \
        --polygon=$deep_polygon $dldirdir/$f160w_in
```

The first thing you may notice is that even if you already have the downloaded input images, this script will always try to re-download them. Also, if you re-run the script, you will notice that `mkdir` prints an error message that the download directory already exists. Therefore, the script above is not too useful and some modifications are necessary to make it more generally useful. Here are some general tips that are often very useful when writing scripts:

Stop script if a command crashes

By default, if a command in a script crashes (aborts and fails to do what it was meant to do), the script will continue onto the next command. In GNU Bash, you can tell the shell to stop a script in the case of a crash by adding this line at the start of your script:

```
set -e
```

Check if a file/directory exists to avoid re-creating it

Conditionals are a very useful feature in scripts. One common conditional is to check if a file exists or not. Assuming the file's name is `FILENAME`, you can check its existance (to avoid re-doing the commands that build it) like this:

```
if [ -f FILENAME ]; then
  echo "FILENAME exists"
else
  # Some commands to generate the file
  echo "done" > FILENAME
fi
```

To check the existance of a directory instead of a file, use `-d` instead of `-f`. To negate a conditional, use '`!`' and note that conditionals can be written in one line also (useful for when it is short).

One common scenario that you'll need to check the existance of directories is when you are making them: the default `mkdir` command will crash if the desired directory already exists. On some systems (including GNU/Linux dis-

tributions), `mkdir` has options to deal with such cases. But if you want your script to be portable, it is best to check yourself like below:

```
if ! [ -d DIRNAME ]; then mkdir DIRNAME; fi
```

Avoid changing directories (with 'cd') within the script

You can directly read and write files within other directories. Therefore using `cd` to enter a directory (like what we did above, around the `wget` commands), running command there and coming out is extra, and not good practice. This is because the running directory is part of the environment of a command. You can simply give the directory name before the input and output file names to use them from anywhere on the file system. See the same `wget` commands below for an example.

Copyright notice: A very important thing to put *at the top* of your script is a one-line description of what it does and its copyright information (see the example below). Here, we specify who is the author(s) of this script, in which years, and under what license others are allowed to use this file. Without it, your script does not credibility or identity, and others cannot trust, use or acknowledge your work on it. Since Gnuastro is itself licensed under a copyleft (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Copyleft`) license (see Section 1.4 [Your rights], page 10, and Appendix C [GNU Gen. Pub. License v3], page 1001, or GNU GPL, the license finishes with a template on how to add it), any script that uses Gnuastro should also have a copyleft license: we recommend the same GNU GPL v3+ like below.

Taking the above points into consideration, we can write a better version of the script above. Please compare this script with the previous one carefully to spot the differences. These are very important points that you will definitely encouter during your own research, and knowing them can greatly help your productiveity, so pay close attention (even in the comments).

```
#!/bin/bash
# Script to download and keep the deep region of the XDF survey.
#
# Copyright (C) 2025      Your Name <yourname@email.company>
# Copyright (C) 2021-2025 Initial Author <incase@there-is.any>
#
# This script is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
# it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
# the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
# (at your option) any later version.
#
# This script is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
# WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
# MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.  See the GNU
# General Public License for more details.
#
# You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
# along with Gnuastro. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
```

```
# Abort the script in case of an error.
set -e


# Download the input datasets
# ---------------------------
#
# The default file names have this format (where `FILTER' differs for
# each filter):
#   hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_FILTER_v1_sci.fits
# To make the script easier to read, a prefix and suffix variable are
# used to sandwich the filter name into one short line.
dldir=download
xdfsuffix=_v1_sci.fits
xdfprefix=hlsp_xdf_hst_wfc3ir-60mas_hudf_
xdfurl=http://archive.stsci.edu/pub/hlsp/xdf

# The file name and full URLs of the input data.
f105w_in=$xdfprefix"f105w"$xdfsuffix
f160w_in=$xdfprefix"f160w"$xdfsuffix
f105w_url=$xdfurl/$f105w_in
f160w_url=$xdfurl/$f160w_in

# Make sure the download directory exists, and download the images.
if ! [ -d $dldir    ]; then mkdir $dldir; fi
if ! [ -f $f105w_in ]; then wget $f105w_url -O $dldir/$f105w_in; fi
if ! [ -f $f160w_in ]; then wget $f160w_url -O $dldir/$f160w_in; fi


# Crop out the deep region
# ------------------------
#
# To help in readability, each vertice of the deep/flat field is stored
# as a separate variable. They are then merged into one variable to
# define the polygon.
flatdir=flat-ir
vertice1="53.187414,-27.779152"
vertice2="53.159507,-27.759633"
vertice3="53.134517,-27.787144"
vertice4="53.161906,-27.807208"
f105w_flat=$flatdir/xdf-f105w.fits
f160w_flat=$flatdir/xdf-f160w.fits
deep_polygon="$vertice1:$vertice2:$vertice3:$vertice4"

if ! [ -d $flatdir ]; then mkdir $flatdir; fi
```

```
if ! [ -f $f105w_flat ]; then
    astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=$f105w_flat \
            --polygon=$deep_polygon $dldir/$f105w_in
fi
if ! [ -f $f160w_flat ]; then
    astcrop --mode=wcs -h0 --output=$f160w_flat \
            --polygon=$deep_polygon $dldir/$f160w_in
fi
```

2.1.23 Citing and acknowledging Gnuastro

In conclusion, we hope this extended tutorial has been a good starting point to help in your exciting research. If this book or any of the programs in Gnuastro have been useful for your research, please cite the respective papers, and acknowledge the funding agencies that made all of this possible. Without citations, we will not be able to secure future funding to continue working on Gnuastro or improving it, so please take software citation seriously (for all the scientific software you use, not just Gnuastro).

To help you in this, all Gnuastro programs have a `--cite` option to facilitate the citation and acknowledgment. Just note that it may be necessary to cite additional papers for different programs, so please try it out on all the programs that you used, for example:

```
$ astmkcatalog --cite
$ astnoisechisel --cite
```

2.2 Detecting large extended targets

The outer wings of large and extended objects can sink into the noise very gradually and can have a large variety of shapes (for example, due to tidal interactions). Therefore separating the outer boundaries of the galaxies from the noise can be particularly tricky. Besides causing an under-estimation in the total estimated brightness of the target, failure to detect such faint wings will also cause a bias in the noise measurements, thereby hampering the accuracy of any measurement on the dataset. Therefore even if they do not constitute a significant fraction of the target's light, or are not your primary target, these regions must not be ignored. In this tutorial, we will walk you through the strategy of detecting such targets using Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552.

Do not start with this tutorial: If you have not already completed Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, we strongly recommend going through that tutorial before starting this one. Basic features like access to this book on the command-line, the configuration files of Gnuastro's programs, benefiting from the modular nature of the programs, viewing multi-extension FITS files, or using NoiseChisel's outputs are discussed in more detail there.

We will try to detect the faint tidal wings of the beautiful M51 group[25] in this tutorial. We will use a dataset/image from the public Sloan Digital Sky Survey (`http://www.sdss.org/`), or SDSS. Due to its more peculiar low surface brightness structure/features, we will focus on the dwarf companion galaxy of the group (or NGC 5195).

[25] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/M51_Group`

2.2.1 Downloading and validating input data

To get the image, you can use the Imaging search (`https://skyserver.sdss.org/dr18/SearchTools/IQS`) tool of SDSS. As long as it is covered by the SDSS, you can find an image containing your desired target either by providing a standard name (if it has one), or its coordinates. To access the dataset we will use here, under "position constraints" section, select "cone". Fill the declination (47.194444) and right ascention (202.467917) of NGC5195 in the respective box and click on "Submit".

Type the example commands: Try to type the example commands on your terminal and use the history feature of your command-line (by pressing the "up" button to retrieve previous commands). Do not simply copy and paste the commands shown here. This will help simulate future situations when you are processing your own datasets.

You can see the list of available filters by clicking on the "Get Wget" file button at the bottom of the page. For this demonstration, we will use the r-band filter image.

The original version of this tutorial was written for the previous (DR12) version of SDSS's interface. Fortuantely while their web interface has changed, the data sets from DR12 have not been deleted/removed. To ensure reproducibility, let's use the same data set that this tutorial was initially written. You can do that by running the following command to download it with GNU Wget[26]. To keep things clean, let's also put it in a directory called `ngc5195`. With the `-O` option, we are asking Wget to save the downloaded file with a more manageable name: `r.fits.bz2` (this is an r-band image of NGC 5195, which was the directory name).

```
$ mkdir ngc5195
$ cd ngc5195
$ topurl=https://dr12.sdss.org/sas/dr12/boss/photoObj/frames
$ wget $topurl/301/3716/6/frame-r-003716-6-0117.fits.bz2 -Or.fits.bz2
```

When you want to reproduce a previous result (a known analysis, on a known dataset, to get a known result: like the case here!) it is important to verify that the file is correct: that the input file has not changed (on the remote server, or in your own archive), or there was no downloading problem. Otherwise, if the data have changed in your server/archive, and you use the same script, you will get a different result, causing a lot of confusion!

One good way to verify the contents of a file is to store its *Checksum* in your analysis script and check it before any other operation. The *Checksum* algorithms look into the contents of a file and calculate a fixed-length string from them. If any change (even in a bit or byte) is made within the file, the resulting string will change, for more see Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Checksum`). There are many common algorithms, but a simple one is the SHA-1 algorithm (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SHA-1`) (Secure Hash Algorithm 1) that you can calculate easily with the command below (the second line is the output, and the checksum is the first/long string: it is independent of the file name)

```
$ sha1sum r.fits.bz2
5fb06a572c6107c72cbc5eb8a9329f536c7e7f65  r.fits.bz2
```

[26] To make the command easier to view on screen or in a page, we have defined the top URL of the image as the `topurl` shell variable. You can just replace the value of this variable with `$topurl` in the `wget` command.

If the checksum on your computer is different from this, either the file has been incorrectly downloaded (most probable), or it has changed on SDSS servers (very unlikely[27]). To get a better feeling of checksums open your favorite text editor and make a test file by writing something in it. Save it and calculate the text file's SHA-1 checksum with `sha1sum`. Try renaming that file, and you'll see the checksum has not changed (checksums only look into the contents, not the name/location of the file). Then open the file with your text editor again, make a change and re-calculate its checksum, you'll see the checksum string has changed.

Its always good to keep this short checksum string with your project's scripts and validate your input data before using them. You can do this with a shell conditional like this:

```
filename=r.fits.bz2
expected=5fb06a572c6107c72cbc5eb8a9329f536c7e7f65
sum=$(sha1sum $filename | awk '{print $1}')
if [ $sum = $expected ]; then
  echo "$filename: validated"
else
  echo "$filename: wrong checksum!"
  exit 1
fi
```

Now that we know you have the same data that we wrote this tutorial with, let's continue. The SDSS server keeps the files in a Bzip2 compressed file format (that have a `.bz2` suffix). So we will first decompress it with the following command to use it as a normal FITS file. By convention, compression programs delete the original file (compressed when uncompressing, or uncompressed when compressing). To keep the original file, you can use the `--keep` or `-k` option which is available in most compression programs for this job. Here, we do not need the compressed file any more, so we will just let `bunzip` delete it for us and keep the directory clean.

```
$ bunzip2 r.fits.bz2
```

2.2.2 NoiseChisel optimization

In Section 2.2.1 [Downloading and validating input data], page 81, we downloaded the single exposure SDSS image. Let's see how NoiseChisel operates on it with its default parameters:

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0
```

As described in Section 2.1.10 [NoiseChisel and Multi-Extension FITS files], page 38, NoiseChisel's default output is a multi-extension FITS file. Open the output `r_detected.fits` file and have a look at the extensions, the 0-th extension is only meta-data and contains NoiseChisel's configuration parameters. The rest are the Sky-subtracted input, the detection map, Sky values and Sky standard deviation.

```
$ ds9 -mecube r_detected.fits -zscale -zoom to fit
```

Flipping through the extensions in a FITS viewer, you will see that the first image (Sky-subtracted image) looks reasonable: there are no major artifacts due to bad Sky subtraction

[27] If your checksum is different, try uncompressing the file with the `bunzip2` command after this, and open the resulting FITS file. If it opens and you see the image of M51 and NGC5195, then there was no download problem, and the file has indeed changed on the SDSS servers! In this case, please contact us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`.

compared to the input. The second extension also seems reasonable with a large detection map that covers the whole of NGC5195, but also extends towards the bottom of the image where we actually see faint and diffuse signal in the input image.

Now try flipping between the `DETECTIONS` and `SKY` extensions. In the `SKY` extension, you'll notice that there is still significant signal beyond the detected pixels. You can tell that this signal belongs to the galaxy because the far-right side of the image (away from M51) is dark (has lower values) and the brighter parts in the Sky image (with larger values) are just under the detections and follow a similar pattern.

The fact that signal from the galaxy remains in the `SKY` HDU shows that NoiseChisel can be optimized for a much better result. The `SKY` extension must not contain any light around the galaxy. Generally, any time your target is much larger than the tile size and the signal is very diffuse and extended at low signal-to-noise values (like this case), this *will* happen. Therefore, when there are large objects in the dataset, **the best place** to check the accuracy of your detection is the estimated Sky image.

When dominated by the background, noise has a symmetric distribution. However, signal is not symmetric (we do not have negative signal). Therefore when non-constant[28] signal is present in a noisy dataset, the distribution will be positively skewed. For a demonstration, see Figure 1 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). This skewness is a good measure of how much faint signal we have in the distribution. The skewness can be accurately measured by the difference in the mean and median (assuming no strong outliers): the more distant they are, the more skewed the dataset is. This important concept will be discussed more extensively in the next section (Section 2.2.3 [Skewness caused by signal and its measurement], page 88).

However, skewness is only a proxy for signal when the signal has structure (varies per pixel). Therefore, when it is approximately constant over a whole tile, or sub-set of the image, the constant signal's effect is just to shift the symmetric center of the noise distribution to the positive and there will not be any skewness (major difference between the mean and median). This positive[29] shift that preserves the symmetric distribution is the Sky value. When there is a gradient over the dataset, different tiles will have different constant shifts/Sky-values, for example, see Figure 11 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

To make this very large diffuse/flat signal detectable, you will therefore need a larger tile to contain a larger change in the values within it (and improve number statistics, for less scatter when measuring the mean and median). So let's play with the tessellation a little to see how it affects the result. In Gnuastro, you can see the option values (`--tilesize` in this case) by adding the `-P` option to your last command. Try running NoiseChisel with `-P` to see its default tile size.

You can clearly see that the default tile size is indeed much smaller than this (huge) galaxy and its tidal features. As a result, NoiseChisel was unable to identify the skewness within the tiles under the outer parts of M51 and NGC 5159 and the threshold has been over-estimated on those tiles. To see which tiles were used for estimating the quantile threshold (no skewness was measured), you can use NoiseChisel's `--checkqthresh` option:

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --checkqthresh
```

[28] by constant, we mean that it has a single value in the region we are measuring.

[29] In processed images, where the Sky value can be over-estimated, this constant shift can be negative.

Did you see how NoiseChisel aborted after finding and applying the quantile thresholds? When you call any of NoiseChisel's `--check*` options, by default, it will abort as soon as all the check steps have been written in the check file (a multi-extension FITS file). This allows you to focus on the problem you wanted to check as soon as possible (you can disable this feature with the `--continueaftercheck` option).

To optimize the threshold-related settings for this image, let's play with this quantile threshold check image a little. Do not forget that "*Good statistical analysis is not a purely routine matter, and generally calls for more than one pass through the computer*" (Anscombe 1973, see Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6). A good scientist must have a good understanding of her tools to make a meaningful analysis. So do not hesitate in playing with the default configuration and reviewing the manual when you have a new dataset (from a new instrument) in front of you. Robust data analysis is an art, therefore a good scientist must first be a good artist. So let's open the check image as a multi-extension cube:

```
$ ds9 -mecube r_qthresh.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

The first extension (called `CONVOLVED`) of `r_qthresh.fits` is the convolved input image where the threshold(s) is(are) defined (and later applied to). For more on the effect of convolution and thresholding, see Sections 3.1.1 and 3.1.2 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). The second extension (`QTHRESH_ERODE`) has a blank/white value for all the pixels of any tile that was identified as having significant signal. The other tiles have the measured threshold over them. The next two extensions (`QTHRESH_NOERODE` and `QTHRESH_EXPAND`) are the other two quantile thresholds that are necessary in NoiseChisel's later steps. Every step in this file is repeated on the three thresholds.

Play a little with the color bar of the `QTHRESH_ERODE` extension, you clearly see how the non-blank tiles around NGC 5195 have a gradient. As one line of attack against discarding too much signal below the threshold, NoiseChisel rejects outlier tiles. Go forward by three extensions to `VALUE1_NO_OUTLIER` and you will see that many of the tiles over the galaxy have been removed in this step. For more on the outlier rejection algorithm, see the latter half of Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

Even though much of the galaxy's footprint has been rejected as outliers, there are still tiles with signal remaining: play with the DS9 color-bar and you still see a gradient near the outer tidal feature of the galaxy. Before trying to correct this, let's look at the other extensions of this check image. We will use a `*` as a wild-card that can be 1, 2 or 3. In the `THRESH*_INTERP` extensions, you see that all the blank tiles have been interpolated using their nearest neighbors (the relevant option here is `--interpnumngb`). In the following `THRESH*_SMOOTH` extensions, you can see the tile values after smoothing (configured with `--smoothwidth` option). Finally, in `QTHRESH-APPLIED`, you see the thresholded image: pixels with a value of 1 will be eroded later, but pixels with a value of 2 will pass the erosion step un-touched.

Let's get back to the problem of optimizing the result. You have two strategies for detecting the outskirts of the merging galaxies: 1) Increase the tile size to get more accurate measurements of skewness. 2) Strengthen the outlier rejection parameters to discard more of the tiles with signal (primarily by increasing `--outliernumngb`). Fortunately in this image we have a sufficiently large region on the right side of the image that the galaxy does

not extend to. So we can use the more robust first solution. In situations where this does not happen (for example, if the field of view in this image was shifted to the left to have more of M51 and less sky) you are limited to a combination of the two solutions or just to the second solution.

Skipping convolution for faster tests: The slowest step of NoiseChisel is the convolution of the input dataset. Therefore when your dataset is large (unlike the one in this test), and you are not changing the input dataset or kernel in multiple runs (as in the tests of this tutorial), it is faster to do the convolution separately once (using Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479) and use NoiseChisel's `--convolved` option to directly feed the convolved image and avoid convolution. For more on `--convolved`, see Section 7.2.2.1 [NoiseChisel input], page 557.

To better identify the skewness caused by the flat NGC 5195 and M51 tidal features on the tiles under it, we have to choose a larger tile size. Let's try a tile size of 100 by 100 pixels and inspect the check image.

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100 --checkqthresh
$ ds9 -mecube r_qthresh.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

You can clearly see the effect of this increased tile size: the tiles are much larger and when you look into `VALUE1_NO_OUTLIER`, you see that all the tiles are nicely grouped on the right side of the image (the farthest from M51, where we do not see a gradient in `QTHRESH_ERODE`). Things look good now, so let's remove `--checkqthresh` and let NoiseChisel proceed with its detection.

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100
$ ds9 -mecube r_detected.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

The detected pixels of the `DETECTIONS` extension have expanded a little, but not as much. Also, the gradient in the `SKY` image is almost fully removed (and does not fall over M51 anymore). However, on the bottom-right of the m51 detection, we see many holes gradually increasing in size. This hints that there is still signal out there. Let's check the next series of detection steps by adding the `--checkdetection` option this time:

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100 --checkdetection
$ ds9 -mecube r_detcheck.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

The output now has 16 extensions, showing every step that is taken by NoiseChisel. The first and second (`INPUT` and `CONVOLVED`) are clear from their names. The third (`THRESHOLDED`) is the thresholded image after finding the quantile threshold (last extension of the output of `--checkqthresh`). The fourth HDU (`ERODED`) is new: it is the name-stake of NoiseChisel, or eroding pixels that are above the threshold. By erosion, we mean that all pixels with a value of `1` (above the threshold) that are touching a pixel with a value of `0` (below the threshold) will be flipped to zero (or "carved" out)[30]. You can see its effect directly by going back and forth between the `THRESHOLDED` and `ERODED` extensions.

In the fifth extension (`OPENED-AND-LABELED`) the image is "opened", which is a name for eroding once, then dilating (dilation is the inverse of erosion). This is good to remove

[30] Pixels with a value of `2` are very high signal-to-noise pixels, they are not eroded, to preserve sharp and bright sources.

thin connections that are only due to noise. Each separate connected group of pixels is also given its unique label here. Do you see how just beyond the large M51 detection, there are many smaller detections that get smaller as you go more distant? This hints at the solution: the default number of erosions is too much. Let's see how many erosions take place by default (by adding `-P | grep erode` to the previous command)

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100 -P | grep erode
```

We see that the value of `erode` is `2`. The default NoiseChisel parameters are primarily targeted to processed images (where there is correlated noise due to all the processing that has gone into the warping and coadding of raw images, see Section 2.1.11 [NoiseChisel optimization for detection], page 41). In those scenarios 2 erosions are commonly necessary. But here, we have a single-exposure image where there is no correlated noise (the pixels are not mixed). So let's see how things change with only one erosion:

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100 --erode=1 \
                 --checkdetection
$ ds9 -mecube r_detcheck.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

Looking at the `OPENED-AND-LABELED` extension again, we see that the main/large detection is now much larger than before. While the immediately-outer connected regions are still present, they have decreased dramatically, so we can pass this step.

After the `OPENED-AND-LABELED` extension, NoiseChisel goes onto finding false detections using the undetected pixels. The process is fully described in Section 3.1.5. (Defining and Removing False Detections) of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/pdf/1505.01664.pdf`). Please compare the extensions to what you read there and things will be very clear. In the last HDU (`DETECTION-FINAL`), we have the final detected pixels that will be used to estimate the Sky and its Standard deviation. We see that the main detection has indeed been detected very far out, so let's see how the full NoiseChisel will estimate the Sky and its standard deviation (by removing `--checkdetection`):

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100 --erode=1
$ ds9 -mecube r_detected.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

The `DETECTIONS` extension of `r_detected.fits` closely follows what the `DETECTION-FINAL` of the check image (looks good!). If you go ahead to the `SKY` extension, things still look good. But it can still be improved.

Look at the `DETECTIONS` again, you will see the right-ward edges of M51's detected pixels have many "holes" that are fully surrounded by signal (value of `1`) and the signal stretches out in the noise very thinly (the size of the holes increases as we go out). This suggests that there is still undetected signal and that we can still dig deeper into the noise.

With the `--detgrowquant` option, NoiseChisel will "grow" the detections in to the noise. Its value is the ultimate limit of the growth in units of quantile (between 0 and 1). Therefore `--detgrowquant=1` means no growth and `--detgrowquant=0.5` means an ultimate limit of the Sky level (which is usually too much and will cover the whole image!). See Figure 2 of Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/pdf/1909.11230.pdf`) for more on this option. Try running the previous command with various values (from 0.6 to higher values) to see this option's effect on this dataset. For this particularly huge galaxy (with signal that extends very gradually into the noise), we will set it to `0.75`:

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100 --erode=1 \
                 --detgrowquant=0.75
```

```
$ ds9 -mecube r_detected.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

Beyond this level (smaller `--detgrowquant` values), you see many of the smaller background galaxies (towards the right side of the image) starting to create thin spider-leg-like features, showing that we are following correlated noise for too much. Please try it for yourself by changing it to `0.6` for example.

When you look at the `DETECTIONS` extension of the command shown above, you see the wings of the galaxy being detected much farther out, But you also see many holes which are clearly just caused by noise. After growing the objects, NoiseChisel also allows you to fill such holes when they are smaller than a certain size through the `--detgrowmaxholesize` option. In this case, a maximum area/size of 10,000 pixels seems to be good:

```
$ astnoisechisel r.fits -h0 --tilesize=100,100 --erode=1 \
                 --detgrowquant=0.75 --detgrowmaxholesize=10000
$ ds9 -mecube r_detected.fits -zscale -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

When looking at the raw input image (which is very "shallow": less than a minute exposure!), you do not see anything so far out of the galaxy. You might just think to yourself that "this is all noise, I have just dug too deep and I'm following systematics"! If you feel like this, have a look at the deep images of this system in Watkins 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1501.04599`), or a 12 hour deep image of this system (with a 12-inch telescope): `https://i.redd.it/jfqgpqg0hfk11.jpg`[31]. In these deeper images you clearly see how the outer edges of the M51 group follow this exact structure, below in Section 2.2.5 [Achieved surface brightness level], page 97, we will measure the exact level.

As the gradient in the `SKY` extension shows, and the deep images cited above confirm, the galaxy's signal extends even beyond this. But this is already far deeper than what most (if not all) other tools can detect. Therefore, we will stop configuring NoiseChisel at this point in the tutorial and let you play with the other options a little more, while reading more about it in the papers: Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) and 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`) and Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552. When you do find a better configuration feel free to contact us for feedback. Do not forget that good data analysis is an art, so like a sculptor, master your chisel for a good result.

To avoid typing all these options every time you run NoiseChisel on this image, you can use Gnuastro's configuration files, see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. For an applied example of setting/using them, see Section 2.1.8 [Option management and configuration files], page 35.

[31] The image is taken from this Reddit discussion: `https://www.reddit.com/r/Astronomy/comments/9d6x0q/12_hours_of_exposure_on_the_whirlpool_galaxy/`

This NoiseChisel configuration is NOT GENERIC: Do not use the configuration derived above, on another instrument's image *blindly*. If you are unsure, just use the default values. As you saw above, the reason we chose this particular configuration for NoiseChisel to detect the wings of the M51 group was strongly influenced by the noise properties of this particular image. Remember Section 2.1.11 [NoiseChisel optimization for detection], page 41, where we looked into the very deep XDF image which had strong correlated noise?

As long as your other images have similar noise properties (from the same data-reduction step of the same instrument), you can use your configuration on any of them. But for images from other instruments, please follow a similar logic to what was presented in these tutorials to find the optimal configuration.

Smart NoiseChisel: As you saw during this section, there is a clear logic behind the optimal parameter value for each dataset. Therefore, we plan to add capabilities to (optionally) automate some of the choices made here based on the actual dataset, please join us in doing this if you are interested. However, given the many problems in existing "smart" solutions, such automatic changing of the configuration may cause more problems than they solve. So even when they are implemented, we would strongly recommend quality checks for a robust analysis.

2.2.3 Skewness caused by signal and its measurement

In the previous section (Section 2.2.2 [NoiseChisel optimization], page 82) we showed how to customize NoiseChisel for a single-exposure SDSS image of the M51 group. During the customization, we also discussed the skewness caused by signal. In the next section (Section 2.2.4 [Image surface brightness limit], page 92), we will use this to measure the surface brightness limit of the image. However, to better understand NoiseChisel and also, the image surface brightness limit, understanding the skewness caused by signal, and how to measure it properly are very important. Therefore now that we have separated signal from noise, let's pause for a moment and look into skewness, how signal creates it, and find the best way to measure it.

Let's start masking all the detected pixels found at the end of the previous section (Section 2.2.2 [NoiseChisel optimization], page 82) and having a look at the noise distribution with Gnuastro's Arithmetic and Statistics programs as shown below (while visually inspecting the masked image with DS9 in the middle).

```
$ astarithmetic r_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY set-in \
                r_detected.fits -hDETECTIONS set-det \
                in det nan where -odet-masked.fits
$ ds9 det-masked.fits
$ aststatistics det-masked.fits
```

You will see that Gnuastro's Statistics program prints an ASCII histogram when no option is given (it is shown below). This is done to give you a fast and easy view of the distribution of values in the dataset (pixels in an image, or rows in a table's column).

```
-------
Input: det-masked.fits (hdu: 1)
-------
  Number of elements:                     903920
  Minimum:                                -0.113543
  Maximum:                                0.130339
  Median:                                 -0.00216306
  Mean:                                   -0.0001893073877
  Standard deviation:                     0.02569057188
-------
Histogram:
 |                              ** *
 |                            * ** *  *
 |                           ** ** *  *
 |                         * ** ** ** *
 |                        ** ** ** ** * **
 |                        ** ** ** ** * ** *
 |                      * ** ** ** ** * ** **
 |                     ** ** ** ** **** ** ** *
 |                  ** ** ** ** ** **** ** ** ** *
 |               ** ** ** ** ** ** ******* ** ** ** *
 |*********** ** ** ** ****************** ** ** ** ** ***** ** ***** **
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

This histogram shows a roughly symmetric noise distribution, so let's have a look at its skewness. The most commonly used definition of skewness is known as the "Pearson's first skewness coefficient". It measures the difference between the mean and median, in units of the standard deviation (STD):

$$\text{Skewness} \equiv \frac{(\text{mean} - \text{median})}{\text{STD}}$$

The logic behind this definition is simple: as more signal is added to the same pixels that originally only have raw noise (skewness is increased), the mean shifts to the positive faster than the median, so the distance between the mean and median should increase. Let's measure the skewness (as defined above) over the image without any signal. Its very easy with Gnuastro's Statistics program (and piping the output to AWK):

```
$ aststatistics det-masked.fits --mean --median --std \
               | awk '{print ($1-$2)/$3}'
0.0768279
```

We see that the mean and median are only 0.08σ (rounded) away from each other (which is very close)! All pixels with significant signal are masked, so this is expected, and everything is fine. Now, let's check the pixel distribution of the sky-subtracted input (where pixels with significant signal remain, and are not masked):

```
$ ds9 r_detected.fits
$ aststatistics r_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY
-------
```

```
Input: r_detected.fits (hdu: INPUT-NO-SKY)
Unit: nanomaggy
-------
  Number of elements:                     3049472
  Minimum:                                -0.113543
  Maximum:                                159.25
  Median:                                 0.0241158
  Mean:                                   0.1057885317
  Standard deviation:                     0.698167489
-------
Histogram:
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |****************************************** ***  ** ****  * *   *  * *
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Comparing the distributions above, you can see that the *minimum* value of the image has not changed because we have not masked the minimum values. However, as expected, the *maximum* value of the image has changed (from 0.13 to 159.25). This is clearly evident from the ASCII histogram: the distribution is very elongated because the galaxy inside the image is extremely bright.

Now, let's limit the displayed information with the `--lessthan=0.13` option of Statistics as shown below (to only use values less than 0.13; the maximum of the image where all signal is masked).

```
$ aststatistics r_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY --lessthan=0.13
-------
Input: r_detected.fits (hdu: INPUT-NO-SKY)
Range: up to (exclusive) 0.13.
Unit: nanomaggy
-------
  Number of elements:                     2531949
  Minimum:                                -0.113543
  Maximum:                                0.126233
  Median:                                 0.0137138
  Mean:                                   0.01735551527
  Standard deviation:                     0.03590550597
-------
Histogram:
 |                                  *
```

```
|                              * ** **
|                            *  * ** ** **
|                            *  * ** ** ** *
|                          * ** * ** ** ** *
|                         ** ** * ** ** ** *  *
|                       * ** ** * ** ** ** *  *
|                      ** ** ** * ** ** ** ** * ** *
|                    * ** ** **** ** ** ** **** ** ** **
|                  * ** ** ** **** ** ** ** ******* ** ** ** * ** ** **
|***** ** ********** ** ** ********** ** ********** ** ************ **
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

The improvement is obvious: the ASCII histogram better shows the pixel values near the noise level. We can now compare with the distribution of `det-masked.fits` that we found earlier. The ASCII histogram of `det-masked.fits` was approximately symmetric, while this is asymmetric in this range, especially in outer (to the right, or positive) direction. The heavier right-side tail is a clear visual demonstration of skewness that is caused by the signal in the un-masked image.

Having visually confirmed the skewness, let's quantify it with Pearson's first skewness coefficient. Like before, we can simply use Gnuastro's Statistics and AWK for the measurement and calculation:

```
$ aststatistics r_detected.fits --mean --median --std \
                | awk '{print ($1-$2)/$3}'
0.116982
```

The difference between the mean and median is now approximately 0.12σ. This is larger than the skewness of the masked image (which was approximately 0.08σ). At a glance (only looking at the numbers), it seems that there is not much difference between the two distributions. However, visually looking at the non-masked image, or the ASCII histogram, you would expect the quantified skewness to be much larger than that of the masked image, but that has not happened! Why is that?

The reason is that the presence of signal does not only shift the mean and median, it *also* increases the standard deviation! To see this for yourself, compare the standard deviation of `det-masked.fits` (which was approximately 0.025) to `r_detected.fits` (without `--lessthan`; which was approximately 0.699). The latter is almost 28 times larger!

This happens because the standard deviation is defined only in a symmetric (and Gaussian) distribution. In a non-Gaussian distribution, the standard deviation is poorly defined and is not a good measure of "width". Since Pearson's first skewness coefficient is defined in units of the standard deviation, this very large increase in the standard deviation has hidden the much increased distance between the mean and median after adding signal.

We therefore need a better unit or scale to quantify the distance between the mean and median. A unit that is less affected by skewness or outliers. One solution that we have found to be very useful is the quantile units or quantile scale. The quantile scale is defined by first sorting the dataset (which has N elements). If we want the quantile of a value V in a distribution, we first find the nearest data element to V in the sorted dataset. Let's assume the nearest element is the i-th element, counting from 0, after sorting. The quantile

of V in that distribution is then defined as $i/(N-1)$ (which will have a value between 0 and 1).

The quantile of the median is obvious from its definition: 0.5. This is because the median is defined to be the middle element of the distribution after sorting. We can therefore define skewness as the quantile of the mean (q_m). If $q_m \sim 0.5$ (the median), then the distribution (of signal blended in noise) is symmetric (possibly Gaussian, but the functional form is irrelevant here). A larger value for $|q_m - 0.5|$ quantifies a more skewed the distribution. Furthermore, a $q_m > 0.5$ signifies a positive skewness, while $q_m < 0.5$ signifies a negative skewness.

Let's put this definition to a test on the same two images we have already created. Fortunately Gnuastro's Statistics program has the `--quantofmean` option to easily calculate q_m for you. So testing is easy:

```
$ aststatistics det-masked.fits --quantofmean
0.51295636

$ aststatistics r_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY --quantofmean
0.8105163158
```

The two quantiles of mean are now very distinctly different (0.51 and 0.81): differing by about 0.3 (on a scale of 0 to 1)! Recall that when defining skewness with Pearson's first skewness coefficient, their difference was negligible (0.04σ)! You can now better appreciate why we discussed quantile so extensively in Section 2.2.2 [NoiseChisel optimization], page 82. In case you would like to know more about the usage of the quantile of the mean in Gnuastro, please see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531, or watch this video demonstration: `https://peertube.stream/w/35b7c398-9fd7-4bcf-8911-1e01c5124585`.

2.2.4 Image surface brightness limit

When your science is related to extended emission (like the example here) and you are presenting your results in a scientific conference, usually the first thing that someone will ask (if you do not explicitly say it!), is the dataset's *surface brightness limit* (a standard measure of the noise level), and your target's surface brightness (a measure of the signal, either in the center or outskirts, depending on context). For more on the basics of these important concepts please see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615. So in this section of the tutorial, we will measure these values for the single-exposure SDSS image of the M51 group that we downloaded in Section 2.2.1 [Downloading and validating input data], page 81.

Before measuring the surface brightness limit, let's see how reliable our detection was. In other words, let's see how "clean" our noise is (after masking all detections, as described previously in Section 2.2.3 [Skewness caused by signal and its measurement], page 88):

```
$ aststatistics det-masked.fits --quantofmean
0.5111848629
```

Showing that the mean is indeed very close to the median, although just about 1 quantile larger. As we saw in Section 2.2.2 [NoiseChisel optimization], page 82, a very small residual signal still remains in the undetected regions and this very small difference is a quantitative measure of that undetected signal. It was up to you as an exercise to improve it, so we will continue with this dataset.

The surface brightness limit of the image can be measured from the masked image and the equation in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615. Let's do it for a 3σ surface brightness limit over an area of 25arcsec^2:

```
$ nsigma=3
$ zeropoint=22.5
$ areaarcsec2=25
$ std=$(aststatistics det-masked.fits --sigclip-std)
$ pixarcsec2=$(astfits det-masked.fits --pixelscale --quiet \
                       | awk '{print $3*3600*3600}')
$ astarithmetic --quiet $nsigma $std x \
                $areaarcsec2 $pixarcsec2 x \
                sqrt / $zeropoint counts-to-mag
26.0241
```

The customizable steps above are good for any type of mask. For example, your field of view may contain a very deep part so you need to mask all the shallow parts *as well as* the detections before these steps. But when your image is flat (like this), there is a much simpler method to obtain the same value through MakeCatalog (when the standard deviation image is made by NoiseChisel). NoiseChisel has already calculated the minimum (`MINSTD`), maximum (`MAXSTD`) and median (`MEDSTD`) standard deviation within the tiles during its processing and has stored them as FITS keywords within the `SKY_STD` HDU. You can see them by piping all the keywords in this HDU into `grep`. In Grep, each '`.`' represents one character that can be anything so `M..STD` will match all three keywords mentioned above.

```
$ astfits r_detected.fits --hdu=SKY_STD | grep 'M..STD'
```

The `MEDSTD` value is very similar to the standard deviation derived above, so we can safely use it instead of having to mask and run Statistics.

> `MEDSTD` **is more reliable than the standard deviation of masked pixels:** it may happen that differences between these two become more significant than the experiment above. In such cases, the `MEDSTD` is more reliable because NoiseChisel estimates it within the tiles and after several steps of outlier rejection (for example due to undetected signal) and before interpolation. Whereas the standard deviation of the masked image is calculated based on the final detection, does no higher-level outlier rejection and is based on the interpolated image. Therefore, it can be easily biased by signal or artifacts in the image and besides being easier to measure, `MEDSTD` is also more statistically robust.

Fortunately, MakeCatalog will use this keyword and will report the dataset's $n\sigma$ surface brightness limit as keywords in the output (not as measurement columns, since it is related to the noise, not labeled signal) as described below.

```
$ astmkcatalog r_detected.fits -hDETECTIONS --output=sbl.fits \
               --forcereadstd --ids
```

Before looking into the measured surface brightness limits, let's review some important points about this call to MakeCatalog first:

- We are only concerned with the noise (not the signal), so we do not ask for any further measurements, because they can un-necessarily slow it down. However, MakeCatalog

requires at least one column, so we will only ask for the `--ids` column (which does not need any measurement!). The output catalog will therefore have a single row and a single column, with 1 as its value[32].

- If we do not ask for any noise-related column (for example, the signal-to-noise ratio column with `--sn`, among other noise-related columns), MakeCatalog is not going to read the noise standard deviation image (again, to speed up its operation when it is redundant). We are thus using the `--forcereadstd` option (short for "force read standard deviation image") here so it is ready for the surface brightness limit measurements that are written as keywords.

With the command below you can see all the keywords that were measured with the table. Notice the group of keywords that are under the "Surface brightness limit (SBL)" title.

```
$ astfits sbl.fits -h1
```

Since all the keywords of interest here start with `SBL`, we can get a more cleaner view with this command.

```
$ astfits sbl.fits -h1 | grep ^SBL
```

Notice how the `SBLSTD` has the same value as NoiseChisel's `MEDSTD` above. Using `SBLSTD`, MakeCatalog has determined the $n\sigma$ surface brightness limiting magnitude in these header keywords. The multiple of σ, or n, is the value of the `SBLNSIG` keyword which you can change with the `--sbl-sigma`. The surface brightness limiting magnitude within a pixel (`SBLNSIG`) and within a pixel-agnostic area of `SBLAREA` arcsec^2 are stored in `SBL`.

You will notice that the two surface brightness limiting magnitudes above have values around 3 and 4 (which is not correct!). This is because we have not given a zero point magnitude to MakeCatalog, so it uses the default value of `0`. SDSS image pixel values are calibrated in units of "nanomaggy" which are defined to have a zero point magnitude of 22.5[33]. So with the first command below we give the zero point value and with the second we can see the surface brightness limiting magnitudes with the correct values (around 25 and 26)

```
$ astmkcatalog r_detected.fits -hDETECTIONS --zeropoint=22.5 \
               --output=sbl.fits --forcereadstd --ids
$ astfits sbl.fits -h1 | grep ^SBL
```

As you see from `SBLNSIG` and `SBLAREA`, the default multiple of sigma is 1 and the default area is 1 arcsec^2. Usually higher values are used for these two parameters. Following the manual example we did above, you can ask for the multiple of sigma to be 3 and the area to be 25 arcsec^2:

```
$ astmkcatalog r_detected.fits -hDETECTIONS --zeropoint=22.5 \
               --output=sbl.fits --sbl-area=25 --sbl-sigma=3 \
               --forcereadstd --ids
$ astfits sbl.fits -h1 | awk '/^SBL /{print $3}'
26.02296
```

[32] Recall that NoiseChisel's output is a binary image: 0-valued pixels are noise and 1-valued pixel are signal. NoiseChisel does not identify sub-structure over the signal, this is the job of Segment, see Section 2.2.6 [Extract clumps and objects (Segmentation)], page 99.

[33] From `https://www.sdss.org/dr12/algorithms/magnitudes`

You see that the value is identical to the custom surface brightness limiting magnitude we measured above (a difference of 0.00114 magnitudes is negligible and hundreds of times larger than the typical errors in the zero point magnitude or magnitude measurements). But it is much more easier to have MakeCatalog do this measurement, because these values will be appended (as keywords) into your final catalog of objects within that image.

Custom STD for MakeCatalog's Surface brightness limit: You can manually change/set the value of the `MEDSTD` keyword in your input STD image with Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297:

```
$ std=$(aststatistics masked.fits --sigclip-std)
$ astfits noisechisel.fits -hSKY_STD --update=MEDSTD,$std
```

With this change, MakeCatalog will use your custom standard deviation for the surface brightness limit. This is necessary in scenarios where your image has multiple depths and during your masking, you also mask the shallow regions (as well as the detections of course).

We have successfully measured the image's 3σ surface brightness limiting magnitude over 25 arcsec^2. However, as discussed in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615, this value is just an extrapolation of the per-pixel standard deviation. Issues like correlated noise will cause the real noise over a large area to be different. So for a more robust measurement, let's use the upper-limit magnitude of similarly sized region. For more on the upper-limit magnitude, see the respective item in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615.

In summary, the upper-limit measurements involve randomly placing the footprint of an object in undetected parts of the image many times. This results in a random distribution of brightness measurements, the standard deviation of that distribution is then converted into magnitudes. To be comparable with the results above, let's make a circular aperture that has an area of 25 arcsec^2 (thus with a radius of 2.82095 arcsec).

```
zeropoint=22.5
r_arcsec=2.82095

## Convert the radius (in arcseconds) to pixels.
r_pixel=$(astfits r_detected.fits --pixelscale -q \
                  | awk '{print '$r_arcsec'/($1*3600)}')

## Make circular aperture at pixel (100,100) position is irrelevant.
echo "1 100 100 5 $r_pixel 0 0 1 1 1" \
     | astmkprof --background=r_detected.fits \
                 --clearcanvas --mforflatpix --type=uint8 \
                 --output=lab.fits

## Do the upper-limit measurement, ignoring all NoiseChisel's
## detections as a mask for the upper-limit measurements.
astmkcatalog lab.fits -h1 --zeropoint=$zeropoint -osbl.fits \
             --sbl-area=25 --sbl-sigma=3 --forcereadstd \
             --valuesfile=r_detected.fits --valueshdu=INPUT-NO-SKY \
```

```
            --upmaskfile=r_detected.fits --upmaskhdu=DETECTIONS \
            --upnsigma=3 --checkuplim=1 --upnum=1000 \
            --ids --upperlimit-sb
```

The `sbl.fits` catalog now contains the upper-limit surface brightness for a circle with an area of 25 arcsec^2. You can check the value with the command below, but the great thing is that now you have both of the surface brightness limiting magnitude in the headers discussed above, and the upper-limit surface brightness within the table. You can also add more profiles with different shapes and sizes if necessary. Of course, you can also use `--upperlimit-sb` in your actual science objects and clumps to get an object-specific or clump-specific value.

```
$ asttable sbl.fits -cUPPERLIMIT_SB
25.9119
```

You will get a slightly different value from the command above. In fact, if you run the MakeCatalog command again and look at the measured upper-limit surface brightness, it will be slightly different with your first trial! Please try exactly the same MakeCatalog command above a few times to see how it changes.

This is because of the *random* factor in the upper-limit measurements: every time you run it, different random points will be checked, resulting in a slightly different distribution. You can decrease the random scatter by increasing the number of random checks (for example, setting `--upnum=100000`, compared to 1000 in the command above). But this will be slower and the results will not be exactly reproducible. The only way to ensure you get an identical result later is to fix the random number generator function and seed like the command below[34]. This is a very important point regarding any statistical process involving random numbers, please see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

```
export GSL_RNG_TYPE=ranlxs1
export GSL_RNG_SEED=1616493518
astmkcatalog lab.fits -h1 --zeropoint=$zeropoint -osbl.fits \
             --sbl-area=25 --sbl-sigma=3 --forcereadstd \
             --valuesfile=r_detected.fits --valueshdu=INPUT-NO-SKY \
             --upmaskfile=r_detected.fits --upmaskhdu=DETECTIONS \
             --upnsigma=3 --checkuplim=1 --upnum=1000 \
             --ids --upperlimit-sb --envseed
```

But where do all the random apertures of the upper-limit measurement fall on the image? It is good to actually inspect their location to get a better understanding for the process and also detect possible bugs/biases. When MakeCatalog is run with the `--checkuplim` option, it will print all the random locations and their measured brightness as a table in a file with the suffix `_upcheck.fits`. With the first command below you can use Gnuastro's `asttable` and `astscript-ds9-region` to convert the successful aperture locations into a DS9 region file, and with the second can load the region file into the detections and sky-subtracted image to visually see where they are.

```
## Create a DS9 region file from the check table (activated
## with '--checkuplim')
asttable sbl_upcheck.fits --noblank=RANDOM_SUM \
```

[34] You can use any integer for the seed. One recommendation is to run MakeCatalog without `--envseed` once and use the randomly generated seed that is printed on the terminal.

```
        | astscript-ds9-region -c1,2 --mode=img \
                               --radius=$r_pixel

## Have a look at the regions in relation with NoiseChisel's
## detections.
ds9 r_detected.fits[INPUT-NO-SKY] -regions load ds9.reg
ds9 r_detected.fits[DETECTIONS]   -regions load ds9.reg
```

In this example, we were looking at a single-exposure image that has no correlated noise. Because of this, the surface brightness limit and the upper-limit surface brightness are very close. They will have a bigger difference on deep datasets with stronger correlated noise (that are the result of coadding many individual exposures). As an exercise, please try measuring the upper-limit surface brightness level and surface brightness limit for the deep HST data that we used in the previous tutorial (Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22).

2.2.5 Achieved surface brightness level

In Section 2.2.2 [NoiseChisel optimization], page 82, we customized NoiseChisel for a single-exposure SDSS image of the M51 group and in Section 2.2.4 [Image surface brightness limit], page 92, we measured the surface brightness limit and the upper-limit surface brightness level (which are both measures of the noise level). In this section, let's do some measurements on the outer-most edges of the M51 group to see how they relate to the noise measurements found in the previous section.

For this measurement, we will need to estimate the average flux on the outer edges of the detection. Fortunately all this can be done with a few simple commands using Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403, and Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582. First, let's separate each detected region, or give a unique label/counter to all the connected pixels of NoiseChisel's detection map with the command below. Recall that with the `set-` operator, the popped operand will be given a name (`det` in this case) for easy usage later.

```
$ astarithmetic r_detected.fits -hDETECTIONS set-det \
                det 2 connected-components -olabeled.fits
```

You can find the label of the main galaxy visually (by opening the image and hovering your mouse over the M51 group's label). But to have a little more fun, let's do this automatically (which is necessary in a general scenario). The M51 group detection is by far the largest detection in this image, this allows us to find its ID/label easily. We will first run MakeCatalog to find the area of all the labels, then we will use Table to find the ID of the largest object and keep it as a shell variable (`id`):

```
# Run MakeCatalog to find the area of each label.
$ astmkcatalog labeled.fits --ids --geo-area -h1 -ocat.fits

## Sort the table by the area column.
$ asttable cat.fits --sort=AREA_FULL

## The largest object, is the last one, so we will use '--tail'.
$ asttable cat.fits --sort=AREA_FULL --tail=1

## We only want the ID, so let's only ask for that column:
```

```
$ asttable cat.fits --sort=AREA_FULL --tail=1 --column=OBJ_ID

## Now, let's put this result in a variable (instead of printing)
$ id=$(asttable cat.fits --sort=AREA_FULL --tail=1 --column=OBJ_ID)

## Just to confirm everything is fine.
$ echo $id
```

We can now use the `id` variable to reject all other detections:

```
$ astarithmetic labeled.fits $id eq -oonly-m51.fits
```

Open the image and have a look. To separate the outer edges of the detections, we will need to "erode" the M51 group detection. So in the same Arithmetic command as above, we will erode three times (to have more pixels and thus less scatter), using a maximum connectivity of 2 (8-connected neighbors). We will then save the output in `eroded.fits`.

```
$ astarithmetic labeled.fits $id eq 2 erode 2 erode 2 erode \
                -oeroded.fits
```

In `labeled.fits`, we can now set all the 1-valued pixels of `eroded.fits` to 0 using Arithmetic's `where` operator added to the previous command. We will need the pixels of the M51 group in `labeled.fits` two times: once to do the erosion, another time to find the outer pixel layer. To do this (and be efficient and more readable) we will use the `set-i` operator (to give this image the name '`i`'). In this way we can use it any number of times afterwards, while only reading it from disk and finding M51's pixels once.

```
$ astarithmetic labeled.fits $id eq set-i i \
                i 2 erode 2 erode 2 erode 0 where -oedge.fits
```

Open the image and have a look. You'll see that the detected edge of the M51 group is now clearly visible. You can use `edge.fits` to mark (set to blank) this boundary on the input image and get a visual feeling of how far it extends:

```
$ astarithmetic r.fits -h0 edge.fits nan where -oedge-masked.fits
```

To quantify how deep we have detected the low-surface brightness regions (in units of signal to-noise ratio), we will use the command below. In short it just divides all the non-zero pixels of `edge.fits` in the Sky subtracted input (first extension of NoiseChisel's output) by the pixel standard deviation of the same pixel. This will give us a signal-to-noise ratio image. The mean value of this image shows the level of surface brightness that we have achieved. You can also break the command below into multiple calls to Arithmetic and create temporary files to understand it better. However, if you have a look at Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404, and Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412, you should be able to easily understand what your computer does when you run this command[35].

```
$ astarithmetic edge.fits -h1                    set-edge \
```

[35] `edge.fits` (extension `1`) is a binary (0 or 1 valued) image. Applying the `not` operator on it, just flips all its pixels (from `0` to `1` and vice-versa). Using the `where` operator, we are then setting all the newly 1-valued pixels (pixels that are not on the edge) to NaN/blank in the sky-subtracted input image (`r_detected.fits`, extension `INPUT-NO-SKY`, which we call `skysub`). We are then dividing all the non-blank pixels (only those on the edge) by the sky standard deviation (`r_detected.fits`, extension `SKY_STD`, which we called `skystd`). This gives the signal-to-noise ratio (S/N) for each of the pixels on the boundary. Finally, with the `meanvalue` operator, we are taking the mean value of all the non-blank pixels and reporting that as a single number.

```
                r_detected.fits -hSKY_STD      set-skystd \
                r_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY set-skysub \
                skysub skystd / edge not nan where meanvalue --quiet
```

We have thus detected the wings of the M51 group down to roughly 1/3rd of the noise level in this image which is a very good achievement! But the per-pixel S/N is a relative measurement. Let's also measure the depth of our detection in absolute surface brightness units; or magnitudes per square arc-seconds (see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585). We will also ask for the S/N and magnitude of the full edge we have defined. Fortunately doing this is very easy with Gnuastro's MakeCatalog:

```
$ astmkcatalog edge.fits -h1 --valuesfile=r_detected.fits \
               --zeropoint=22.5 --ids --sb --sn --magnitude
$ asttable edge_cat.fits
1      25.6971       55.2406       15.8994
```

We have thus reached an outer surface brightness of 25.70 magnitudes/arcsec^2 (second column in `edge_cat.fits`) on this single exposure SDSS image! This is very similar to the surface brightness limit measured in Section 2.2.4 [Image surface brightness limit], page 92, (which is a big achievement!). But another point in the result above is very interesting: the total S/N of the edge is 55.24 with a total edge magnitude[36] of 15.90!!! This is very large for such a faint signal (recall that the mean S/N per pixel was 0.32) and shows a very important point in the study of galaxies: While the per-pixel signal in their outer edges may be very faint (and invisible to the eye in noise), a lot of signal hides deeply buried in the noise.

In interpreting this value, you should just have in mind that NoiseChisel works based on the contiguity of signal in the pixels. Therefore the larger the object, the deeper NoiseChisel can carve it out of the noise (for the same outer surface brightness). In other words, this reported depth, is the depth we have reached for this object in this dataset, processed with this particular NoiseChisel configuration. If the M51 group in this image was larger/smaller than this (the field of view was smaller/larger), or if the image was from a different instrument, or if we had used a different configuration, we would go deeper/shallower.

2.2.6 Extract clumps and objects (Segmentation)

In Section 2.2.2 [NoiseChisel optimization], page 82, we found a good detection map over the image, so pixels harboring signal have been differentiated from those that do not. For noise-related measurements like the surface brightness limit, this is fine. However, after finding the pixels with signal, you are most likely interested in knowing the sub-structure within them. For example, how many star forming regions (those bright dots along the spiral arms) of M51 are within this image? What are the colors of each of these star forming regions? In the outer most wings of M51, which pixels belong to background galaxies and foreground stars? And many more similar questions. To address these questions, you can use Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, to identify all the "clumps" and "objects" over the detection.

```
$ astsegment r_detected.fits --output=r_segmented.fits
$ ds9 -mecube r_segmented.fits -cmap sls -zoom to fit -scale limits 0 2
```

[36] You can run MakeCatalog on `only-m51.fits` instead of `edge.fits` to see the full magnitude of the M51 group in this image.

Open the output `r_segmented.fits` as a multi-extension data cube with the second command above and flip through the first and second extensions, zoom-in to the spiral arms of M51 and see the detected clumps (all pixels with a value larger than 1 in the second extension). To optimize the parameters and make sure you have detected what you wanted, we recommend to visually inspect the detected clumps on the input image.

For visual inspection, you can make a simple shell script like below. It will first call MakeCatalog to estimate the positions of the clumps, then make an SAO DS9 region file and open ds9 with the image and region file. Recall that in a shell script, the numeric variables (like `$1`, `$2`, and `$3` in the example below) represent the arguments given to the script. But when used in the AWK arguments, they refer to column numbers.

To create the shell script, using your favorite text editor, put the contents below into a file called `check-clumps.sh`. Recall that everything after a `#` is just comments to help you understand the command (so read them!). Also note that if you are copying from the PDF version of this book, fix the single quotes in the AWK command.

```
#! /bin/bash
set -e     # Stop execution when there is an error.
set -u     # Stop execution when a variable is not initialized.

# Run MakeCatalog to write the coordinates into a FITS table.
# Default output is `$1_cat.fits'.
astmkcatalog $1.fits --clumpscat --ids --ra --dec

# Use Gnuastro's Table and astscript-ds9-region to build the DS9
# region file (a circle of radius 1 arcseconds on each point).
asttable $1"_cat.fits" -hCLUMPS -cRA,DEC \
         | astscript-ds9-region -c1,2 --mode=wcs --radius=1 \
                                --output=$1.reg

# Show the image (with the requested color scale) and the region file.
ds9 -geometry 1800x3000 -mecube $1.fits -zoom to fit                  \
    -scale limits $2 $3 -regions load all $1.reg

# Clean up (delete intermediate files).
rm $1"_cat.fits" $1.reg
```

Finally, you just have to activate the script's executable flag with the command below. This will enable you to directly/easily call the script as a command.

```
$ chmod +x check-clumps.sh
```

This script does not expect the `.fits` suffix of the input's filename as the first argument. Because the script produces intermediate files (a catalog and DS9 region file, which are later deleted). However, we do not want multiple instances of the script (on different files in the same directory) to collide (read/write to the same intermediate files). Therefore, we have used suffixes added to the input's name to identify the intermediate files. Note how all the `$1` instances in the commands (not within the AWK command[37]) are followed by a suffix. If you want to keep the intermediate files, put a `#` at the start of the last line.

[37] In AWK, `$1` refers to the first column, while in the shell script, it refers to the first argument.

The few, but high-valued, bright pixels in the central parts of the galaxies can hinder easy visual inspection of the fainter parts of the image. With the second and third arguments to this script, you can set the numerical values of the color map (first is minimum/black, second is maximum/white). You can call this script with any[38] output of Segment (when `--rawoutput` is *not* used) with a command like this:

```
$ ./check-clumps.sh r_segmented -0.1 2
```

Go ahead and run this command. You will see the intermediate processing being done and finally it opens SAO DS9 for you with the regions superimposed on all the extensions of Segment's output. The script will only finish (and give you control of the command-line) when you close DS9. If you need your access to the command-line before closing DS9, add a `&` after the end of the command above.

While DS9 is open, slide the dynamic range (values for black and white, or minimum/maximum values in different color schemes) and zoom into various regions of the M51 group to see if you are satisfied with the detected clumps. Do not forget that through the "Cube" window that is opened along with DS9, you can flip through the extensions and see the actual clumps also. The questions you should be asking yourself are these: 1) Which real clumps (as you visually *feel*) have been missed? In other words, is the *completeness* good? 2) Are there any clumps which you *feel* are false? In other words, is the *purity* good?

Note that completeness and purity are not independent of each other, they are anti-correlated: the higher your purity, the lower your completeness and vice-versa. You can see this by playing with the purity level using the `--snquant` option. Run Segment as shown above again with `-P` and see its default value. Then increase/decrease it for higher/lower purity and check the result as before. You will see that if you want the best purity, you have to sacrifice completeness and vice versa.

One interesting region to inspect in this image is the many bright peaks around the central parts of M51. Zoom into that region and inspect how many of them have actually been detected as true clumps. Do you have a good balance between completeness and purity? Also look out far into the wings of the group and inspect the completeness and purity there.

An easier way to inspect completeness (and only completeness) is to mask all the pixels detected as clumps and visually inspecting the rest of the pixels. You can do this using Arithmetic in a command like below. For easy reading of the command, we will define the shell variable `i` for the image name and save the output in `masked.fits`.

```
$ in="r_segmented.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY"
$ clumps="r_segmented.fits -hCLUMPS"
$ astarithmetic $in $clumps 0 gt nan where -oclumps-masked.fits
```

Inspecting `clumps-masked.fits`, you can see some very diffuse peaks that have been missed, especially as you go farther away from the group center and into the diffuse wings. This is due to the fact that with this configuration, we have focused more on the sharper clumps. To put the focus more on diffuse clumps, you can use a wider convolution kernel.

[38] Some modifications are necessary based on the input dataset: depending on the dynamic range, you have to adjust the second and third arguments. But more importantly, depending on the dataset's world coordinate system, you have to change the region `width`, in the AWK command. Otherwise the circle regions can be too small/large.

Using a larger kernel can also help in detecting the existing clumps to fainter levels (thus better separating them from the surrounding diffuse signal).

You can make any kernel easily using the `--kernel` option in Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652. But note that a larger kernel is also going to wash-out many of the sharp/small clumps close to the center of M51 and also some smaller peaks on the wings. Please continue playing with Segment's configuration to obtain a more complete result (while keeping reasonable purity). We will finish the discussion on finding true clumps at this point.

The properties of the clumps within M51, or the background objects can then easily be measured using Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582. To measure the properties of the background objects (detected as clumps over the diffuse region), you should not mask the diffuse region. When measuring clump properties with Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, and using the `--clumpscat`, the ambient flux (from the diffuse region) is calculated and subtracted. If the diffuse region is masked, its effect on the clump brightness cannot be calculated and subtracted.

To keep this tutorial short, we will stop here. See Section 2.1.13 [Segmentation and making a catalog], page 47, and Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, for more on using Segment, producing catalogs with MakeCatalog and using those catalogs.

2.3 Building the extended PSF

Deriving the extended PSF of an image is very important in many aspects of the analysis of the objects within it. Gnuastro has a set of installed scripts, designed to simplify the process following the recipe of Infante-Sainz et al. 2020 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1911.01430`); for more, see Section 10.8 [PSF construction and subtraction], page 725. An overview of the process is given in Section 10.8.1 [Overview of the PSF scripts], page 726.

2.3.1 Preparing input for extended PSF

We will use an image of the M51 galaxy group in the r (SDSS) band of the Javalambre Photometric Local Universe Survey (J-PLUS) to extract its extended PSF. For more information on J-PLUS, and its unique features visit: `http://www.j-plus.es`.

First, let's download the image from the J-PLUS web page using `wget`. But to have a generalize-able, and easy to read command, we will define some base variables (in all-caps) first. After the download is complete, open the image with SAO DS9 (or any other FITS viewer you prefer!) to have a feeling of the data (and of course, enjoy the beauty of M51 in such a wide field of view):

```
$ urlend="jplus-dr2/get_fits?id=67510"
$ urlbase="http://archive.cefca.es/catalogues/vo/siap/"
$ mkdir jplus-dr2
$ wget $urlbase$urlend -O jplus-dr2/67510.fits.fz
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-dr2/67510.fits.fz
```

After enjoying the large field of view, have a closer look at the edges of the image. Please zoom in to the corners. You will see that on the edges, the pixel values are either zero or with significantly different values than the main body of the image. This is due to the

dithering pattern that was used to make this image and happens in all imaging surveys[39]. To avoid potential issues or problems that these regions may cause, we will first crop out the main body of the image with the command below. To keep the top-level directory clean, let's also put the crop in a directory called `flat`.

```
$ mkdir flat
$ astcrop jplus-dr2/67510.fits.fz --section=225:9275,150:9350 \
          --mode=img -oflat/67510.fits
$ astscript-fits-view flat/67510.fits
```

Please zoom into the edges again, you will see that they now have the same noise-level as the rest of the image (the problematic parts are now gone).

2.3.2 Saturated pixels and Segment's clumps

A constant-depth (flat) image was created in the previous section (Section 2.3.1 [Preparing input for extended PSF], page 102). As explained in Section 10.8.1 [Overview of the PSF scripts], page 726, an important step when building the PSF is to mask other sources in the image. Therefore, before going onto selecting stars, let's detect all significant signal, and identify the clumps of background objects over the wings of the extended PSF.

There is a problem however: the saturated pixels of the bright stars are going to cause problems in the segmentation phase. To see this problem, let's make a 1000×1000 crop around a bright star to speed up the test (and its solution). Afterwards we will apply the solution to the whole image.

```
$ astcrop flat/67510.fits --mode=wcs --widthinpix --width=1000 \
          --center=203.3916736,46.7968652 --output=saturated.fits
$ astnoisechisel saturated.fits --output=sat-nc.fits
$ astsegment sat-nc.fits --output=sat-seg.fits
$ astscript-fits-view sat-seg.fits
```

Have a look at the `CLUMPS` extension. You will see that instead of a single clump at the center of the bright star, we have many clumps! This has happened because of the saturated pixels! When saturation occurs, the sharp peak of the profile is lost (like cutting off the tip of a mountain to build a telescope!) and all saturated pixels get a noisy value close to the saturation level. To see this saturation noise run the last command again and in SAO DS9, set the "Scale" to "min max" and zoom into the center. You will see the noisy saturation pixels at the center of the star in red.

This noise-at-the-peak disrupts Segment's assumption to expand clumps from a local maxima: each noisy peak is being treated as a separate local maxima and thus a separate clump. For more on how Segment defines clumps, see Section 3.2.1 and Figure 8 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). To have the center identified as a single clump, we should mask these saturated pixels in a way that suites Segment's non-parametric methodology.

First we need to find the saturation level! The saturation level is usually fixed for any survey or input data that you receive from a certain database, so you will usually have to do this only once (the first time you get data from that database). Let's make a smaller crop of 50×50 pixels around the star with the first command below. With the next command,

[39] Recall the cropping in a previous tutorial for a similar reason (varying "depth" across the image): Section 2.1.4 [Dataset inspection and cropping], page 25.

please look at the crop with DS9 to visually understand the problem. You will see the saturated pixels as the noisy red pixels in the center of the image. A non-saturated star will have a single pixel as the maximum and will not have such a large area covered by a noisy constant value (find a few stars in the image and see for yourself). Visual and qualitative inspection of the process is very important for understanding the solution.

```
$ astcrop saturated.fits --mode=wcs --widthinpix --width=50 \
          --center=203.3916736,46.7968652 --output=sat-center.fits
$ astscript-fits-view sat-center.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

To quantitatively identify the saturation level in this image, let's have a look at the distribution of pixels with a value larger than 100 (above the noise level):

```
$ aststatistics sat-center.fits --greaterequal=100
Histogram:
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*                                                                  *
 |**                                                                 *
 |***                                                               **
 |****                                                              **
 |******                                                            ****
 |********** *    *   *                                            ******
 |************************ ************ * ***  ******* *** ************
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

The peak you see in the right end (larger values) of the histogram shows the saturated pixels (a constant level, with some scatter due to the large Poisson noise). If there was no saturation, the number of pixels should have decreased at increasing values; until reaching the maximum value of the profile in one pixel. But that is not the case here. Please try this experiment on a non-saturated (fainter) star to see what we mean.

If you still have not experimented on a non-saturated star, please stop reading this tutorial! Please open `flat/67510.fits` in DS9, select a fainter/smaller star and repeat the last three commands (with a different center). After you have confirmed the point above (visually, and with the histogram), please continue with the rest of this tutorial.

Finding the saturation level is easy with Statistics (by using the `--lessthan` option until the histogram becomes as expected: only decreasing). First, let's try `--lessthan=3000`:

```
$ aststatistics sat-center.fits --greaterequal=100 --lessthan=3000
-------
Histogram:
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |*
 |**
 |***                                                                *
```

```
 |****                                                                  *
 |*******                                                              **
 |********** * *   *   *   *                              *  *       ****
 |************************ *  ***** *******  *****  ** ***** * ********
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

We still see an increase in the histogram around 3000. Let's try a threshold of 2500:

```
$ aststatistics sat-center.fits --greaterequal=100 --lessthan=2500
-------
Histogram:
 |*
 |*
 |**
 |**
 |**
 |**
 |****
 |*****
 |*********
 |*************  *   *  *   *
 |*********************************   ** ** ** *** **  * ****   ** *****
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

The peak at the large end of the histogram has gone! But let's have a closer look at the values (the resolution of an ASCII histogram is limited!). To do this, we will ask Statistics to save the histogram into a table with the `--histogram` option, then look at the last 20 rows:

```
$ aststatistics sat-center.fits --greaterequal=100 --lessthan=2500 \
                --histogram --output=sat-center-hist.fits
$ asttable sat-center-hist.fits --tail=20
2021.1849112701    1
2045.0495397186    0
2068.9141681671    1
2092.7787966156    1
2116.6434250641    0
2140.5080535126    0
2164.3726819611    0
2188.2373104095    0
2212.101938858     1
2235.9665673065    1
2259.831195755     2
2283.6958242035    0
2307.560452652     0
2331.4250811005    1
2355.289709549     1
2379.1543379974    1
2403.0189664459    2
2426.8835948944    1
```

```
2450.7482233429    2
2474.6128517914    2
```

Since the number of points at the extreme end are increasing (from 1 to 2), We therefore see that a value 2500 is still above the saturation level (the number of pixels has started to increase)! A more reasonable saturation level for this image would be 2200! As an exercise, you can try automating this selection with AWK.

Therefore, we can set the saturation level in this image[40] to be 2200. Let's mask all such pixels with the command below:

```
$ astarithmetic saturated.fits set-i i i 2200 gt nan where \
                --output=sat-masked.fits
$ astscript-fits-view sat-masked.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

Please see the peaks of several bright stars, not just the central very bright star. Zoom into each of the peaks you see. Besides the central very bright one that we were looking at closely until now, only one other star is saturated (its center is NaN, or Not-a-Number). Try to find it.

But we are not done yet! Please zoom-in to that central bright star and have another look on the edges of the vertical "bleeding" saturated pixels, there are strong positive/negative values touching it (almost like "waves"). These will also cause problems and have to be masked! So with a small addition to the previous command, let's dilate the saturated regions (with 2-connectivity, or 8-connected neighbors) four times and have another look:

```
$ astarithmetic saturated.fits set-i i i 2200 gt \
                2 dilate 2 dilate 2 dilate 2 dilate \
                nan where --output=sat-masked.fits
$ astscript-fits-view sat-masked.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

Now that saturated pixels (and their problematic neighbors) have been masked, we can convolve the image (recall that Segment will use the convolved image for identifying clumps) with the command below. However, we will use the Spatial Domain convolution which can account for blank pixels (for more on the pros and cons of spatial and frequency domain convolution, see Section 6.3.3 [Spatial vs. Frequency domain], page 497). We will also create a Gaussian kernel with FWHM = 2 pixels, truncated at $5 \times$ FWHM.

```
$ astmkprof --kernel=gaussian,2,5 --oversample=1 -okernel.fits
$ astconvolve sat-masked.fits --kernel=kernel.fits --domain=spatial \
              --output=sat-masked-conv.fits
$ astscript-fits-view sat-masked-conv.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

Please zoom-in to the star and look closely to see how after spatial-domain convolution, the problematic pixels are still NaN. But Segment requires the profile to start with a maximum value and decrease. So before feeding into Segment, let's fill the blank values with the maximum value of the neighboring pixels in both the input and convolved images (see Section 6.2.4.10 [Interpolation operators], page 437):

```
$ astarithmetic sat-masked.fits 2 2 interpolate-maxofregion \
                --output=sat-fill.fits
```

[40] In raw exposures, this value is usually around 65000 (close to 2^{16}, since most CCDs have 16-bit pixels; see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). But that is not the case here, because this is a processed/coadded image that has been calibrated.

```
$ astarithmetic sat-masked-conv.fits 2 2 interpolate-maxofregion \
                --output=sat-fill-conv.fits
$ astscript-fits-view sat-fill* --ds9scale=minmax
```

Have a closer look at the opened images. Please zoom-in (you will notice that they are already matched and locked, so they will both zoom-in together). Go to the centers of the saturated stars and confirm how they are filled with the largest non-blank pixel. We can now feed this image to NoiseChisel and Segment as the convolved image:

```
$ astnoisechisel sat-fill.fits --convolved=sat-fill-conv.fits \
                 --output=sat-nc.fits
$ astsegment sat-nc.fits --convolved=sat-fill-conv.fits \
             --output=sat-seg.fits --rawoutput
$ ds9 -mecube sat-seg.fits -zoom to fit -scale limits -1 1
```

See the `CLUMPS` extension. Do you see how the whole center of the star has indeed been identified as a single clump? We thus achieved our aim and did not let the saturated pixels harm the identification of the center!

If the issue was only clumps (like in a normal deep image processing), this was the end of Segment's special considerations. However, in the scenario here, with the very extended wings of the bright stars, it usually happens that background objects become "clumps" in the outskirts and will rip the bright star outskirts into separate "objects". In the next section (Section 2.3.3 [One object for the whole detection], page 107), we will describe how you can modify Segment to avoid this issue.

2.3.3 One object for the whole detection

In Section 2.3.2 [Saturated pixels and Segment's clumps], page 103, we described how you can run Segment such that saturated pixels do not interfere with its clumps. However, due to the very extended wings of the PSF, the default definition of "objects" should also be modified for the scenario here. To better see the problem, let's inspect now the `OBJECTS` extension, focusing on those objects with a label between 50 to 150 (which include the main star):

```
$ astscript-fits-view sat-seg.fits -hOBJECTS --ds9scale="limits 50 150"
```

We can see that the detection corresponding to the star has been broken into different objects. This is not a good object segmentation image for our scenario here. Since those objects in the outer wings of the bright star's detection harbor a lot of the extended PSF. We want to keep them with the same "object" label as the star (we only need to mask the "clumps" of the background sources). To do this, we will make the following changes to Segment's options (see Section 7.3.1.2 [Segmentation options], page 577, for more on this options):

- Since we want the extended diffuse flux of the PSF to be taken as a single object, we want all the grown clumps to touch. Therefore, it is necessary to decrease `--gthresh` to very low values, like -10. Recall that its value is in units of the input standard deviation, so `--gthresh=-10` corresponds to -10σ. The default value is not for such extended sources that dominate all background sources.
- Since we want all connected grown clumps to be counted as a single object in any case, we will set `--objbordersn=0` (its smallest possible value).

Let's make these changes and check if the star has been kept as a single object in the `OBJECTS` extension or not:

```
$ astsegment sat-nc.fits --convolved=sat-fill-conv.fits \
             --gthresh=-10 --objbordersn=0 \
             --output=sat-seg.fits --rawoutput
$ astscript-fits-view sat-seg.fits -hOBJECTS --ds9scale="limits 50 150"
```

Now we can extend these same steps to the whole image. To detect signal, we can run NoiseChisel using the command below. We modified the default value to two of the options, below you can see the reason for these changes. See Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80, for more on optimizing NoiseChisel.

- Since the image is so large, we have increased `--outliernumngb` to get better outlier statistics on the tiles. The default value is primarily for small images, so this is usually the first thing you should do when running NoiseChisel on a real/large image.
- Since the image is not too deep (made from few exposures), it does not have strong correlated noise, so we will decrease `--detgrowquant` and increase `--detgrowmaxholesize` to better extract signal.

Furthermore, since both NoiseChisel and Segment need a convolved image, we will do the convolution before and feed it to both (to save running time). But in the first command below, let's delete all the temporary files we made above.

Since the image is large (+300 MB), to avoid wasting storage, any temporary file that is no longer necessary for later processing is deleted after it is used. You can visually check each of them with DS9 before deleting them (or not delete them at all!). Generally, within a pipeline it is best to remove such large temporary files, because space runs out much faster than you think (for example, once you get good results and want to use more fields).

```
$ rm *.fits
$ mkdir label
$ astmkprof --kernel=gaussian,2,5 --oversample=1 \
            -olabel/kernel.fits
$ astarithmetic flat/67510.fits set-i i i 2200 gt \
                2 dilate 2 dilate 2 dilate 2 dilate nan where \
                --output=label/67510-masked-sat.fits
$ astconvolve label/67510-masked-sat.fits --kernel=label/kernel.fits \
              --domain=spatial --output=label/67510-masked-conv.fits
$ rm label/kernel.fits
$ astarithmetic label/67510-masked-sat.fits 2 2 interpolate-maxofregion \
                --output=label/67510-fill.fits
$ astarithmetic label/67510-masked-conv.fits 2 2 interpolate-maxofregion \
                --output=label/67510-fill-conv.fits
$ rm label/67510-masked-conv.fits
$ astnoisechisel label/67510-fill.fits --outliernumngb=100 \
                 --detgrowquant=0.8 --detgrowmaxholesize=100000 \
                 --convolved=label/67510-fill-conv.fits \
                 --output=label/67510-nc.fits
$ rm label/67510-fill.fits
$ astsegment label/67510-nc.fits --output=label/67510-seg-raw.fits \
```

```
              --convolved=label/67510-fill-conv.fits --rawoutput \
              --gthresh=-10 --objbordersn=0
$ rm label/67510-fill-conv.fits
$ astscript-fits-view label/67510-seg-raw.fits
```

We see that the saturated pixels have not caused any problem and the central clumps/objects of bright stars are now a single clump/object. We can now proceed to estimating the outer PSF. But before that, let's make a "standard" segment output: one that can safely be fed into MakeCatalog for measurements and can contain all necessary outputs of this whole process in a single file (as multiple extensions).

The main problem is again the saturated pixels: we interpolated them to be the maximum of their nearby pixels. But this will cause problems in any measurement that is done over those regions. To let MakeCatalog know that those pixels should not be used, the first extension of the file given to MakeCatalog should have blank values on those pixels. We will do this with the commands below:

```
## First HDU of Segment (Sky-subtracted input)
$ astarithmetic label/67510-nc.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY \
                label/67510-masked-sat.fits isblank nan where \
                --output=label/67510-seg.fits
$ astfits label/67510-seg.fits --update=EXTNAME,INPUT-NO-SKY

## Second and third HDUs: CLUMPS and OBJECTS
$ astfits label/67510-seg-raw.fits --copy=CLUMPS --copy=OBJECTS \
          --output=label/67510-seg.fits

## Fourth HDU: Sky standard deviation (from NoiseChisel):
$ astfits label/67510-nc.fits --copy=SKY_STD \
          --output=label/67510-seg.fits

## Clean up all the un-necessary files:
$ rm label/67510-masked-sat.fits label/67510-nc.fits \
     label/67510-seg-raw.fits
```

You can now simply run MakeCatalog on this image and be sure that saturated pixels will not affect the measurements. As one example, you can use MakeCatalog to find the clumps containing saturated pixels: recall that the `--area` column only calculates the area of non-blank pixels, while `--geo-area` calculates the area of the label (independent of their blank-ness in the values image):

```
$ astmkcatalog label/67510-seg.fits --ids --ra --dec --area \
               --geo-area --clumpscat --output=cat.fits
```

The information of the clumps that have been affected by saturation can easily be found by selecting those with a differing value in the `AREA` and `AREA_FULL` columns:

```
## With AWK (second command, counts the number of rows)
$ asttable cat.fits -hCLUMPS | awk '$5!=$6'
$ asttable cat.fits -hCLUMPS | awk '$5!=$6' | wc -l

## Using Table arithmetic (compared to AWK, you can use column
```

```
## names, save as FITS, and be faster):
$ asttable cat.fits -hCLUMPS -cRA,DEC --noblankend=3 \
         -c'arith AREA AREA AREA_FULL eq nan where'

## Remove the table (which was just for a demo)
$ rm cat.fits
```

We are now ready to start building the outer parts of the PSF in Section 2.3.4 [Building outer part of PSF], page 110.

2.3.4 Building outer part of PSF

In Section 2.3.2 [Saturated pixels and Segment's clumps], page 103, and Section 2.3.3 [One object for the whole detection], page 107, we described how to create a Segment clump and object map, while accounting for saturated stars and not having over-fragmentation of objects in the outskirts of stars. We are now ready to start building the extended PSF.

First we will build the outer parts of the PSF, so we want the brightest stars. You will see we have several bright stars in this very large field of view, but we do not yet have a feeling how many they are, and at what magnitudes. So let's use Gnuastro's Query program to find the magnitudes of the brightest stars (those brighter than g-magnitude 10 in Gaia data release 3, or DR3). For more on Query, see Section 5.4 [Query], page 378.

```
$ astquery gaia --dataset=dr3 --overlapwith=flat/67510.fits \
           --range=phot_g_mean_mag,-inf,10 \
           --output=flat/67510-bright.fits
```

Now, we can easily visualize the magnitude and positions of these stars using `astscript-ds9-region` and the command below (for more on this script, see Section 10.3 [SAO DS9 region files from table], page 702)

```
$ astscript-ds9-region flat/67510-bright.fits -cra,dec \
           --namecol=phot_g_mean_mag \
           --command="ds9 flat/67510.fits -zoom to fit -zscale"
```

You can see that we have several stars between magnitudes 6 to 10. Let's use `astscript-psf-select-stars` in the command below to select the relevant stars in the image (the brightest; with a magnitude between 6 to 10). The advantage of using this script (instead of a simple `--range` in Table), is that it will also check distances to nearby stars and reject those that are too close (and not good for constructing the PSF). Since we have very bright stars in this very wide-field image, we will also increase the distance to nearby neighbors with brighter or similar magnitudes (the default value is 1 arcmin). To do this, we will set `--mindistdeg=0.02`, which corresponds to 1.2 arcmin. The details of the options for this script are discussed in Section 10.8.2 [Invoking astscript-psf-select-stars], page 727.

```
$ mkdir outer
$ astscript-psf-select-stars flat/67510.fits \
           --magnituderange=6,10 --mindistdeg=0.02 \
           --output=outer/67510-6-10.fits
```

Let's have a look at the selected stars in the image (it is very important to visually check every step when you are first discovering a new dataset).

```
$ astscript-ds9-region outer/67510-6-10.fits -cra,dec \
           --namecol=phot_g_mean_mag \
```

```
            --command="ds9 flat/67510.fits -zoom to fit -zscale"
```

Now that the catalog of good stars is ready, it is time to construct the individual stamps from the catalog above. To create stamps, first, we need to crop a fixed-size box around each isolated star in the catalog. The contaminant objects in the crop should be masked and finally, the fluxes in these cropped images should be normalized. To do these, we will use `astscript-psf-stamp` (for more on this script see Section 10.8.3 [Invoking astscript-psf-stamp], page 730).

One of the most important parameters for this script is the normalization radii `--normradii`. This parameter defines a ring for the flux normalization of each star stamp. The normalization of the flux is necessary because each star has a different brightness, and consequently, it is crucial for having all the stamps with the same flux level in the same region. Otherwise the final coadd of the different stamps would have no sense. Depending on the PSF shape, internal reflections, ghosts, saturated pixels, and other systematics, it would be necessary to choose the `--normradii` appropriately.

The selection of the normalization radii is something that requires a good understanding of the data. To do that, let's use two useful parameters that will help us in the checking of the data: `--tmpdir` and `--keeptmp`;

- With `--tmpdir=checking-normradii` all temporary files, including the radial profiles, will be save in that directory (instead of an internally-created name).
- With `--keeptmp` we will not remove the temporal files, so it is possible to have a look at them (by default the temporary directory gets deleted at the end). It is necessary to specify the `--normradii` even if we do not know yet the final values. Otherwise the script will not generate the radial profile.

As a consequence, in this step we put the normalization radii equal to the size of the stamps. By doing this, the script will generate the radial profile of the entire stamp. In this particular step we set it to `--normradii=500,510`. We also use the `--nocentering` option to disable sub-pixel warping in this phase (it is only relevant for the central part of the PSF). Furthermore, since there are several stars, we iterate over each row of the catalog using a while loop.

```
$ counter=1
$ mkdir finding-normradii
$ asttable outer/67510-6-10.fits \
           | while read -r ra dec mag; do
               astscript-psf-stamp label/67510-seg.fits \
                    --mode=wcs \
                    --nocentering \
                    --center=$ra,$dec \
                    --normradii=500,510 \
                    --widthinpix=1000,1000 \
                    --segment=label/67510-seg.fits \
                    --output=finding-normradii/$counter.fits \
                    --tmpdir=finding-normradii --keeptmp; \
               counter=$((counter+1)); \
             done
```

First let's have a look at all the masked postage stamps of the cropped stars. Once they all open, feel free to zoom-in, they are all matched and locked. It is always good to check the different stamps to ensure the quality and possible two dimensional features that are difficult to detect from the radial profiles (such as ghosts and internal reflections).

```
$ astscript-fits-view finding-normradii/cropped-masked*.fits
```

If everything looks good in the image, let's open all the radial profiles and visually check those with the command below. Note that `astscript-fits-view` calls the `topcat` graphic user interface (GUI) program to visually inspect (plot) tables. If you do not already have it, see Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990.

```
$ astscript-fits-view finding-normradii/rprofile*.fits
```

After some study of this data, we could say that a good normalization ring is those pixels between R=20 and R=30 pixels. Such a ring ensures having a high number of pixels so the estimation of the flux normalization will be robust. Also, at such distance from the center the signal to noise is high and there are not obvious features that can affect the normalization. Note that the profiles are different because we are considering a wide range of magnitudes, so the fainter stars are much more noisy. However, in this tutorial we will keep these stars in order to have a higher number of stars for the outer part. In a real case scenario, we should look for stars with a much more similar brightness (smaller range of magnitudes) to not lose signal to noise as a consequence of the inclusion of fainter stars.

```
$ rm -r finding-normradii
$ counter=1
$ mkdir outer/stamps
$ asttable outer/67510-6-10.fits \
           | while read -r ra dec mag; do
               astscript-psf-stamp label/67510-seg.fits \
                    --mode=wcs \
                    --nocentering \
                    --center=$ra,$dec \
                    --normradii=20,30 \
                    --widthinpix=1000,1000 \
                    --segment=label/67510-seg.fits \
                    --output=outer/stamps/67510-$counter.fits; \
               counter=$((counter+1)); \
             done
```

After the stamps are created, we need to coadd them together with a simple Arithmetic command (see Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428). The coadd is done using the sigma-clipped mean operator that will preserve more of the signal, while rejecting outliers (more than 3σ with a tolerance of 0.2, for more on sigma-clipping see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200). Just recall that we need to specify the number of inputs into the coadding operators, so we are reading the list of images and counting them as separate variables before calling Arithmetic.

```
$ numimgs=$(echo outer/stamps/*.fits | wc -w)
$ astarithmetic outer/stamps/*.fits $numimgs 3 0.2 sigclip-mean \
                -g1 --output=outer/coadd.fits --wcsfile=none \
                --writeall
```

Did you notice the `--wcsfile=none` option above? With it, the coadded image no longer has any WCS information. This is natural, because the coadded image does not correspond to any specific region of the sky any more. Also note the `--writeall` option: it is necessary because `sigclip-mean` will return two datasets: the actual coadded image and an image showing how many images were ultimately used for each pixel. Because of this, the output has two HDUs, containing both these images respectiely. This is a good check to help improve/debug your results.

Let's compare this coadded PSF with the images of the individual stars that were used to create it. You can clearly see that the number of masked pixels is significantly decreased and the PSF is much more "cleaner".

```
$ astscript-fits-view outer/coadd.fits outer/stamps/*.fits
```

However, the saturation in the center still remains. Also, because we did not have too many images, some regions still are very noisy. If we had more bright stars in our selected magnitude range, we could have filled those outer remaining patches. In a large survey like J-PLUS (that we are using here), you can simply look into other fields that were observed soon before/after the image ID 67510 that we used here (to have a similar PSF) and get more stars in those images to add to these. In fact, the J-PLUS DR2 image ID of the field above was intentionally preserved during the steps above to show how easy it is to use images from other fields and blend them all into the output PSF.

2.3.5 Inner part of the PSF

In Section 2.3.4 [Building outer part of PSF], page 110, we were able to create a coadd of the outer-most behavior of the PSF in a J-PLUS survey image. But the central part that was affected by saturation and non-linearity is still remaining, and we still do not have a "complete" PSF! In this section, we will use the same steps before to make coadds of more inner regions of the PSF to ultimately unite them all into a single PSF in Section 2.3.6 [Uniting the different PSF components], page 114.

For the outer PSF, we selected stars in the magnitude range of 6 to 10. So let's have a look and see how many stars we have in the magnitude range of 12 to 13 with a more relaxed condition on the minimum distance for neighbors, `--mindistdeg=0.01` (36 arcsec, since these stars are fainter), and use the ds9 region script to visually inspect them:

```
$ mkdir inner
$ astscript-psf-select-stars flat/67510.fits \
           --magnituderange=12,13 --mindistdeg=0.01 \
           --output=inner/67510-12-13.fits

$ astscript-ds9-region inner/67510-12-13.fits -cra,dec \
           --namecol=phot_g_mean_mag \
           --command="ds9 flat/67510.fits -zoom to fit -zscale"
```

We have 41 stars, but if you zoom into their centers, you will see that they do not have any major bleeding-vertical saturation any more. Only the very central core of some of the stars is saturated. We can therefore use these stars to fill the strong bleeding footprints that were present in the outer coadd of `outer/coadd.fits`. Similar to before, let's build ready-to-coadd crops of these stars. To get a better feeling of the normalization radii, follow the same steps of Section 2.3.4 [Building outer part of PSF], page 110, (setting `--tmpdir`

and `--keeptmp`). In this case, since the stars are fainter, we can set a smaller size for the individual stamps, `--widthinpix=500,500`, to speed up the calculations:

```
$ counter=1
$ mkdir inner/stamps
$ asttable inner/67510-12-13.fits \
           | while read -r ra dec mag; do
               astscript-psf-stamp label/67510-seg.fits \
                    --mode=wcs \
                    --normradii=5,10 \
                    --center=$ra,$dec \
                    --widthinpix=500,500 \
                    --segment=label/67510-seg.fits \
                    --output=inner/stamps/67510-$counter.fits; \
               counter=$((counter+1)); \
             done

$ numimgs=$(echo inner/stamps/*.fits | wc -w)
$ astarithmetic inner/stamps/*.fits $numimgs 3 0.2 sigclip-mean \
                -g1 --output=inner/coadd.fits --wcsfile=none \
                --writeall
$ astscript-fits-view inner/coadd.fits inner/stamps/*.fits
```

We are now ready to unite the two coadds we have constructed: the outer and the inner parts.

2.3.6 Uniting the different PSF components

In Section 2.3.4 [Building outer part of PSF], page 110, we built the outer part of the extended PSF and the inner part was built in Section 2.3.5 [Inner part of the PSF], page 113. The outer part was built with very bright stars, and the inner part using fainter stars to not have saturation in the core of the PSF. The next step is to join these two parts in order to have a single PSF. First of all, let's have a look at the two coadds and also to their radial profiles to have a good feeling of the task. Note that you will need to have TOPCAT to run the last command and plot the radial profile (see Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990).

```
$ astscript-fits-view outer/coadd.fits inner/coadd.fits
$ astscript-radial-profile outer/coadd.fits -o outer/profile.fits
$ astscript-radial-profile inner/coadd.fits -o inner/profile.fits
$ astscript-fits-view outer/profile.fits inner/profile.fits
```

From the visual inspection of the images and the radial profiles, it is clear that we have saturation in the center for the outer part. Note that the absolute flux values of the PSFs are meaningless since they depend on the normalization radii we used to obtain them. The uniting step consists in scaling up (or down) the inner part of the PSF to have the same flux at the junction radius, and then, use that flux-scaled inner part to fill the center of the outer PSF. To get a feeling of the process, first, let's open the two radial profiles and find the factor manually first:

1. Run this command to open the two tables in Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990:

```
$ astscript-fits-view outer/profile.fits inner/profile.fits
```

2. On the left side of the screen, under "Table List", you will see the two imported tables. Click on the first one (profile of the outer part) so it is shown first.
3. Under the "Graphics" menu item, click on "Plane plot". A new window will open with the plot of the first two columns: `RADIUS` on the horizontal axis and `MEAN` on the vertical. The rest of the steps are done in this window.
4. In the bottom settings, within the left panel, click on the "Axes" item. This will allow customization of the plot axes.
5. In the bottom-right panel, click on the box in front of "Y Log" to make the vertical axis logarithmic-scaled.
6. On the "Layers" menu, select "Add Position Control" to allow adding the profile of the inner region. After it, you will see that a new red-blue scatter plot icon opened on the bottom-left menu (with a title of `<no table>`).
7. On the bottom-right panel, in the drop-down menu in front of `Table:`, select `2: profile.fits`. Afterwards, you will see the radial profile of the inner coadd as the newly added blue plot. Our goal here is to find the factor that is necessary to multiply with the inner profile so it matches the outer one.
8. On the bottom-right panel, in front of `Y:`, you will see `MEAN`. Click in the white-space after it, and type this: `*100`. This will display the `MEAN` column of the inner profile, after multiplying it by 100. Afterwards, you will see that the inner profile (blue) matches more cleanly with the outer (red); especially in the smaller radii. At larger radii, it does not drop like the red plot. This is because of the extremely low signal-to-noise ratio at those regions in the fainter stars used to make this coadd.
9. Take your mouse cursor over the profile, in particular over the bump around a radius of 100 pixels. Scroll your mouse down-ward to zoom-in to the profile and up-ward to zoom-out. You can click-and-hold any part of the profile and if you move your cursor (while still holding the mouse-button) to look at different parts of the profile. This is particular helpful when you have zoomed-in to the profile.
10. Zoom-in to the bump around a radius of 100 pixels until the horizontal axis range becomes around 50 to 130 pixels.
11. You clearly see that the inner coadd (blue) is much more noisy than the outer (red) coadd. By "noisy", we mean that the scatter of the points is much larger. If you further zoom-out, you will see that the shallow slope at the larger radii of the inner (blue) profile has also affected the height of this bump in the inner profile. This is a *very important* point: this clearly shows that the inner profile is too noisy at these radii.
12. Click-and-hold your mouse to see the inner parts of the two profiles (in the range 0 to 80). You will see that for radii less than 40 pixels, the inner profile (blue) points loose their scatter (and thus have a good signal-to-noise ratio).
13. Zoom-in to the plot and follow the profiles until smaller radii (for example, 10 pixels). You see that for each radius, the inner (blue) points are consistently above the outer (red) points. This shows that the $\times 100$ factor we selected above was too much.
14. In the bottom-right panel, change the `100` to `80` and zoom-in to the same region. At each radius, the blue points are now below the red points, so the scale-factor 80 is not enough. So let's increase it and try `90`. After zooming-in, you will notice that in the

inner-radii (less than 30 pixels), they are now very similar. The ultimate aim of the steps below is to find this factor automatically.

15. But before continuing, let's focus on another important point about the central regions: non-linearity and saturation. While you are zoomed-in (from the step above), follow (click-and-drag) the profile towards smaller radii. You will see that smaller than a radius of 10, they start to diverge. But this time, the outer (red) profile is getting a shallower slope and diverges significantly from about the radius of 8. We had masked all saturated pixels before, so this divergence for radii smaller than 10 shows the effect of the CCD's non-linearity (where the number of electrons will not be linearly correlated with the number of incident photons). This is present in all CCDs and pixels beyond this level should not be used in measurements (or properly corrected).

The items above were only listed so you get a good mental/visual understanding of the logic behind the operation of the next script (and to learn how to tune its parameters where necessary): `astscript-psf-scale-factor`. This script is more general than this particular problem, but can be used for this special case also. Its job is to take a model of an object (PSF, or inner coadd in this case) and the position of an instance of that model (a star, or the outer coadd in this case) in a larger image.

Instead of dealing with radial profiles (that enforce a certain shape), this script will put the centers of the inner and outer PSFs over each other and divide the outer by the inner. Let's have a look with the command below. Just note that we are running it with `--keeptmp` so the temporary directory with all the intermediate files remain for further clarification:

```
$ astscript-psf-scale-factor outer/coadd.fits \
          --psf=inner/coadd.fits --center=501,501 \
          --mode=img --normradii=10,15 --keeptmp
$ astscript-fits-view coadd_psfmodelscalefactor/cropped-*.fits \
                      coadd_psfmodelscalefactor/for-factor-*.fits
```

With the second command, you see the four steps of the process: the first two images show the cropped outer and inner coadds (to same width image). The third shows the radial position of each pixel (which is used to only keep the pixels within the desired radial range). The fourth shows the per-pixel division of the outer by the inner within the requested radii. The sigma-clipped median and standard deviation of these pixels is finally reported. The standard deviation is useful, for example, if you consider different center positions (with small offsets) and consider that one that provides the lowest standard deviation value. Unlike the radial profile method (which averages over a circular/elliptical annulus for each radius), this method imposes no a-priori shape on the PSF. This makes it very useful for complex PSFs (like the case here).

To continue, let's remove the temporary directory and re-run the script but with `--quiet` mode so we can put the outputs in a shell variable.

```
$ rm -r coadd_psfmodelscalefactor
$ values=$(astscript-psf-scale-factor outer/coadd.fits \
                    --psf=inner/coadd.fits --center=501,501 \
                    --mode=img --normradii=10,15 --quiet)

$ scale=$(echo $values | awk '{print $1}')
$ stdval=$(echo $values | awk '{print $2}')
```

```
$ echo "$scale $stdval"
```

Now that we know the scaling factor, we are ready to unite the outer and the inner part of the PSF. To do that, we will use the script `astscript-psf-unite` with the command below (for more on this script, see Section 10.8.4 [Invoking astscript-psf-unite], page 734). The basic parameters are the inner part of the PSF (given to `--inner`), the inner part's scale factor (`--scale`), and the junction radius (`--radius`). The inner part is first scaled, and all the pixels of the outer image within the given radius are replaced with the pixels of the inner image. Since the flux factor was computed for a ring of pixels between 10 and 15 pixels, let's set the junction radius to be 12 pixels (roughly in between 10 and 15):

```
$ astscript-psf-unite outer/coadd.fits \
          --inner=inner/coadd.fits --radius=12 \
          --scale=$scale --output=psf.fits
```

Let's have a look at the outer coadd and the final PSF with the command below. Since we want several other DS9 settings to help you directly see the main point, we are using `--ds9extra`. After DS9 is opened, you can see that the center of the PSF has now been nicely filled. You can click on the "Edit" button and then the "Colorbar" and hold your cursor over the image and move it. You can see that besides filling the inner regions nicely, there is also no major discontinuity in the 2D image around the union radius of 12 pixels around the center.

```
$ astscript-fits-view outer/coadd.fits psf.fits --ds9scale=minmax \
          --ds9extra="-scale limits 0 22000 -match scale" \
          --ds9extra="-lock scale yes -zoom 4 -scale log"
```

Nothing demonstrates the effect of a bad analysis than actually seeing a bad result! So let's choose a bad normalization radial range (50 to 60 pixels) and unite the inner and outer parts based on that. The last command will open the two PSFs together in DS9, you should be able to immediately see the discontinuity in the union radius.

```
$ values=$(astscript-psf-scale-factor outer/coadd.fits \
                  --psf=inner/coadd.fits --center=501,501 \
                  --mode=img --normradii=50,60 --quiet)

$ scale=$(echo $values | awk '{print $1}')

$ astscript-psf-unite outer/coadd.fits \
          --inner=inner/coadd.fits --radius=55 \
          --scale=$scale --output=psf-bad.fits

$ astscript-fits-view psf-bad.fits psf.fits --ds9scale=minmax \
          --ds9extra="-scale limits 0 50 -match scale" \
          --ds9extra="-lock scale yes -zoom 4 -scale log"
```

As you see, the selection of the normalization radii and the unite radius are very important. The first time you are trying to build the PSF of a new dataset, it has to be explored with a visual inspection of the images and radial profiles. Once you have found a good normalization radius for a certain part of the PSF in a survey, you can generally use it comfortably without change. But for a new survey, or a different part of the PSF, be sure

to repeat the visual checks above to choose the best radii. As a summary, a good junction radius is one that:

- Is large enough to not let saturation and non-linearity (from the outer profile) into the inner region.
- Is small enough to have a sufficiently high signal to noise ratio (from the inner profile) to avoid adding noise in the union radius.

Now that the complete PSF has been obtained, let's remove that bad-looking PSF, and stick with the nice and clean PSF for the next step in Section 2.3.7 [Subtracting the PSF], page 118.

```
$ rm -rf psf-bad.fits
```

2.3.7 Subtracting the PSF

Previously (in Section 2.3.6 [Uniting the different PSF components], page 114) we constructed a full PSF, from the central pixel to a radius of 500 pixels. Now, let's use the PSF to subtract the scattered light from each individual star in the image.

By construction, the pixel values of the PSF came from the normalization of the individual stamps (that were created for stars of different magnitudes). As a consequence, it is necessary to compute a scale factor to fit that PSF image to each star. This is done with the same `astscript-psf-scale-factor` command that we used previously in Section 2.3.6 [Uniting the different PSF components], page 114. The difference is that now we are not aiming to join two different PSF parts but looking for the necessary scale factor to match the star with the PSF. Afterwards, we will use `astscript-psf-subtract` for placing the PSF image at the desired coordinates within the same pixel grid as the image. Finally, once the stars have been modeled by the PSF, we will subtract it.

First, let's start with a single star. Later, when the basic idea has been explained, we will generalize the method for any number of stars. With the following command we obtain the coordinates (RA and DEC) and magnitude of the brightest star in the image (which is on the top edge of the image):

```
$ mkdir single-star
$ center=$(asttable flat/67510-bright.fits --sort phot_g_mean_mag \
                    --column=ra,dec --head 1 \
                    | awk '{printf "%s,%s", $1, $2}')
$ echo $center
```

With the center position of that star, let's obtain the flux factor using the same normalization ring we used for the creation of the outer part of the PSF. Remember that two values are computed: the median and the standard deviation values, see Section 10.8.5 [Invoking astscript-psf-scale-factor], page 736.

```
$ values=$(astscript-psf-scale-factor label/67510-seg.fits \
                    --mode=wcs --quiet \
                    --psf=psf.fits \
                    --center=$center \
                    --normradii=10,15 \
                    --segment=label/67510-seg.fits)
```

```
$ scale=$(echo $values | awk '{print $1}')
```

Now we have all the information necessary to model the star using the PSF: the position on the sky and the flux factor. Let's use this data with the script `astscript-psf-subtract` for modeling this star and have a look with DS9.

```
$ astscript-psf-subtract label/67510-seg.fits \
           --mode=wcs \
           --psf=psf.fits \
           --scale=$scale \
           --center=$center \
           --output=single-star/subtracted.fits

$ astscript-fits-view label/67510-seg.fits single-star/subtracted.fits \
           --ds9center=$center --ds9mode=wcs --ds9extra="-zoom 4"
```

You will notice that there is something wrong with this "subtraction"! The box of the extended PSF is clearly visible! The sky noise under the box is clearly larger than the rest of the noise in the image. Before reading on, please try to think about the cause of this yourself.

To understand the cause, let's look at the scale factor, the number of stamps used to build the outer part (and its square root):

```
$ echo $scale
$ ls outer/stamps/*.fits | wc -l
$ ls outer/stamps/*.fits | wc -l | awk '{print sqrt($1)}'
```

You see that the scale is almost 19! As a result, the PSF has been multiplied by 19 before being subtracted. However, the outer part of the PSF was created with only a handful of star stamps. When you coadd N images, the coadd's signal-to-noise ratio (S/N) improves by $\sqrt{N}$. We had 8 images for the outer part, so the S/N has only improved by a factor of just under 3! When we multiply the final coadded PSF with 19, we are also scaling up the noise by that same factor (most importantly: in the outer most regions where there is almost no signal). So the coadded image's noise-level is $19/3 = 6.3$ times larger than the noise of the input image. This terrible noise-level is what you clearly see as the footprint of the PSF.

To confirm this, let's use the commands below to subtract the faintest of the bright-stars catalog (note the use of `--tail` when finding the central position). You will notice that the scale factor (~ 1.3) is now smaller than 3. So when we multiply the PSF with this factor, the PSF's noise level is lower than our input image and we should not see any footprint like before. Note also that we are using a larger zoom factor, because this star is smaller in the image.

```
$ center=$(asttable flat/67510-bright.fits --sort phot_g_mean_mag \
                    --column=ra,dec --tail 1 \
                    | awk '{printf "%s,%s", $1, $2}')

$ values=$(astscript-psf-scale-factor label/67510-seg.fits \
                   --mode=wcs --quiet \
                   --psf=psf.fits \
                   --center=$center \
```

```
                    --normradii=10,15 \
                    --segment=label/67510-seg.fits)

$ scale=$(echo $values | awk '{print $1}')
$ echo $scale

$ astscript-psf-subtract label/67510-seg.fits \
           --mode=wcs \
           --psf=psf.fits \
           --scale=$scale \
           --center=$center \
           --output=single-star/subtracted.fits

$ astscript-fits-view label/67510-seg.fits single-star/subtracted.fits \
           --ds9center=$center --ds9mode=wcs --ds9extra="-zoom 10"
```

In a large survey like J-PLUS, it is easy to use more and more bright stars from different pointings (ideally with similar FWHM and similar telescope properties[41]) to improve the S/N of the PSF. As explained before, we designed the output files of this tutorial with the `67510` (which is this image's pointing label in J-PLUS) where necessary so you see how easy it is to add more pointings to use in the creation of the PSF.

Let's consider now more than one single star. We should have two things in mind:

- The brightest (subtract-able, see the point below) star should be the first star to be subtracted. This is because of its extended wings which may affect the scale factor of nearby stars. So we should sort the catalog by magnitude and come down from the brightest.
- We should only subtract stars where the scale factor is less than the S/N of the PSF (in relation to the data).

Since it can get a little complex, it is easier to implement this step as a script (that is heavily commented for you to easily understand every step; especially if you put it in a good text editor with color-coding!). You will notice that script also creates a `.log` file, which shows which star was subtracted and which one was not (this is important, and will be used below!).

```
#!/bin/bash

# Abort the script on first error.
set -e

# ID of image to subtract stars from.
imageid=67510

# Get S/N level of the final PSF in relation to the actual data:
snlevel=$(ls outer/stamps/*.fits | wc -l | awk '{print sqrt($1)}')
```

[41] For example, in J-PLUS, the baffle of the secondary mirror was adjusted in 2017 because it produced extra spikes in the PSF. So all images after that date have a PSF with 4 spikes (like this one), while those before it have many more spikes.

```
# Put a copy of the image we want to subtract the PSF from in the
# final file (this will be over-written after each subtraction).
subtracted=subtracted/$imageid.fits
cp label/$imageid-seg.fits $subtracted

# Name of log-file to keep status of the subtraction of each star.
logname=subtracted/$imageid.log
echo "# Column 1: RA   [deg, f64] Right ascension of star." >  $logname
echo "# Column 2: Dec  [deg, f64] Declination of star."     >> $logname
echo "# Column 3: Stat [deg, f64] Status (1: subtracted)"   >> $logname

# Go over each item in the bright star catalog:
asttable flat/67510-bright.fits -cra,dec --sort phot_g_mean_mag  \
    | while read -r ra dec; do

    # Put a comma between the RA/Dec to pass to options.
    center=$(echo $ra $dec | awk '{printf "%s,%s", $1, $2}')

    # Calculate the scale value
    values=$(astscript-psf-scale-factor label/67510-seg.fits \
                  --mode=wcs --quiet\
                  --psf=psf.fits \
                  --center=$center \
                  --normradii=10,15 \
                  --segment=label/67510-seg.fits)

    scale=$(echo $values | awk '{print $1}')

    # Subtract this star if the scale factor is less than the S/N
    # level calculated above.
    check=$(echo $snlevel $scale \
                | awk '{if($1>$2) c="good"; else c="bad"; print c}')
    if [ $check = good ]; then

        # A temporary file to subtract this star.
        subtmp=subtracted/$imageid-tmp.fits

        # Subtract this star from the image where all previous stars
        # were subtracted.
        astscript-psf-subtract $subtracted \
                 --mode=wcs \
                 --psf=psf.fits \
                 --scale=$scale \
                 --center=$center \
                 --output=$subtmp
```

```
        # Rename the temporary subtracted file to the final one:
        mv $subtmp $subtracted

        # Keep the status for this star.
        status=1
    else
        # Let the user know this star did not work, and keep the status
        # for this star.
        echo "$center: $scale is larger than $snlevel"
        status=0
    fi

    # Keep the status in a log file.
    echo "$ra $dec $status" >> $logname
done
```

Copy the contents above into a file called `subtract-psf-from-cat.sh` and run the following commands. Just note that in the script above, we assumed the output is written in the `subtracted/`, directory, so we will first make that.

```
$ mkdir subtracted
$ chmod +x subtract-psf-from-cat.sh
$ ./subtract-psf-from-cat.sh

$ astscript-fits-view label/67510-seg.fits subtracted/67510.fits
```

Can you visually find the stars that have been subtracted? Its a little hard, is not it? This shows that you done a good job this time (the sky-noise is not significantly affected)! So let's subtract the actual image from the PSF-subtracted image to see the scattered light field of the subtracted stars. With the second command below we will zoom into the brightest subtracted star, but of course feel free to zoom-out and inspect the others also.

```
$ astarithmetic label/67510-seg.fits subtracted/67510.fits - \
                --output=scattered-light.fits -g1

$ center=$(asttable subtracted/67510.log --equal=Stat,1 --head=1 \
                    -cra,dec | awk '{printf "%s,%s", $1, $2}')

$ astscript-fits-view label/67510-seg.fits subtracted/67510.fits \
                      scattered-light.fits \
                      --ds9center=$center --ds9mode=wcs \
                      --ds9extra="-scale limits -0.5 1.5 -match scale" \
                      --ds9extra="-lock scale yes -zoom 10" \
                      --ds9extra="-tile mode column"

## We can always make it easily, so let's remove this.
$ rm scattered-light.fits
```

You will probably have noticed that in the scattered light field there are some patches that correspond to the saturation of the stars. Since we obtained the scattered light field by subtracting PSF-subtracted image from the original image, it is natural that we have

such saturated regions. To solve such inconvenience, this script also has an option to not make the subtraction of the PSF but to give as output the modeled star. For doing that, it is necessary to run the script with the option `--modelonly`. We encourage the reader to obtain such scattered light field model. In some scenarios it could be interesting having such way of correcting the PSF. For example, if there are many faint stars that can be modeled at the same time because their flux do not affect each other. In such situation, the task could be easily parallelized without having to wait to model the brighter stars before the fainter ones. At the end, once all stars have been modeled, a simple Arithmetic command could be used to sum the different modeled-PSF stamps to obtain the entire scattered light field.

In general you see that the subtraction has been done nicely and almost all the extended wings of the PSF have been subtracted. The central regions of the stars are not perfectly subtracted:

- Some may get too dark at the center. This may be due to the non-linearity of the CCD counting (as discussed previously in Section 2.3.6 [Uniting the different PSF components], page 114).
- Others may have a strong gradient: one side is too positive and one side is too negative (only in the very central few pixels). This is due to the non-accurate positioning: most probably this happens because of imperfect astrometry.

Note also that during this process we assumed that the PSF does not vary with the CCD position or any other parameter. In other words, we are obtaining an averaged PSF model from a few star stamps that are naturally different, and this also explains the residuals on each subtracted star.

We let as an interesting exercise the modeling and subtraction of other stars, for example, the non saturated stars of the image. By doing this, you will notice that in the core region the residuals are different compared to the residuals of brighter stars that we have obtained.

In general, in this tutorial we have showed how to deal with the most important challenges for constructing an extended PSF. Each image or dataset will have its own particularities that you will have to take into account when constructing the PSF.

2.4 Sufi simulates a detection

It is the year 953 A.D. and Abd al-rahman Sufi (903 – 986 A.D.)[42] is in Shiraz as a guest astronomer. He had come there to use the advanced 123 centimeter astrolabe for his studies on the ecliptic. However, something was bothering him for a long time. While mapping the constellations, there were several non-stellar objects that he had detected in the sky, one of them was in the Andromeda constellation. During a trip he had to Yemen, Sufi had seen another such object in the southern skies looking over the Indian ocean. He was not sure if such cloud-like non-stellar objects (which he was the first to call 'Sahābi' in Arabic or 'nebulous') were real astronomical objects or if they were only the result of some bias in his observations. Could such diffuse objects actually be detected at all with his detection technique?

[42] In Latin Sufi is known as Azophi. He was an Iranian astronomer. His manuscript "Book of fixed stars" contains the first recorded observations of the Andromeda galaxy, the Large Magellanic Cloud and seven other non-stellar or 'nebulous' objects.

He still had a few hours left until nightfall (when he would continue his studies on the ecliptic) so he decided to find an answer to this question. He had thoroughly studied Claudius Ptolemy's (90 – 168 A.D) Almagest and had made lots of corrections to it, in particular in measuring the brightness. Using his same experience, he was able to measure a magnitude for the objects and wanted to simulate his observation to see if a simulated object with the same brightness and size could be detected in simulated noise with the same detection technique. The general outline of the steps he wants to take are:

1. Make some mock profiles in an over-sampled image. The initial mock image has to be over-sampled prior to convolution or other forms of transformation in the image. Through his experiences, Sufi knew that this is because the image of heavenly bodies is actually transformed by the atmosphere or other sources outside the atmosphere (for example, gravitational lenses) prior to being sampled on an image. Since that transformation occurs on a continuous grid, to best approximate it, he should do all the work on a finer pixel grid. In the end he can resample the result to the initially desired grid size.
2. Convolve the image with a point spread function (PSF, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654) that is over-sampled to the same resolution as the mock image. Since he wants to finish in a reasonable time and the PSF kernel will be very large due to oversampling, he has to use frequency domain convolution which has the side effect of dimming the edges of the image. So in the first step above he also has to build the image to be larger by at least half the width of the PSF convolution kernel on each edge.
3. With all the transformations complete, the image should be resampled to the same size of the pixels in his detector.
4. He should remove those extra pixels on all edges to remove frequency domain convolution artifacts in the final product.
5. He should add noise to the (until now, noise-less) mock image. After all, all observations have noise associated with them.

Fortunately Sufi had heard of GNU Astronomy Utilities from a colleague in Isfahan (where he worked) and had installed it on his computer a year before. It had tools to do all the steps above. He had used MakeProfiles before, but was not sure which columns he had chosen in his user or system-wide configuration files for which parameters, see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. So to start his simulation, Sufi runs MakeProfiles with the `-P` option to make sure what columns in a catalog MakeProfiles currently recognizes, and confirm the output image parameters. In particular, Sufi is interested in the recognized columns (shown below).

```
$ astmkprof -P

[[[ ... Truncated lines ... ]]]

# Output:
 type         float32     # Type of output: e.g., int16, float32, etc.
 mergedsize   1000,1000   # Number of pixels along first FITS axis.
 oversample   5           # Scale of oversampling (>0 and odd).
```

```
[[[ ... Truncated lines ... ]]]

# Columns, by info (see `--searchin'), or number (starting from 1):
 ccol         2           # Coord. columns (one call for each dim.).
 ccol         3           # Coord. columns (one call for each dim.).
 fcol         4           # sersic (1), moffat (2), gaussian (3), point
                          # (4), flat (5), circumference (6), distance
                          # (7), custom-prof (8), azimuth (9),
                          # custom-img (10).
 rcol         5           # Effective radius or FWHM in pixels.
 ncol         6           # Sersic index or Moffat beta.
 pcol         7           # Position angle.
 qcol         8           # Axis ratio.
 mcol         9           # Magnitude.
 tcol         10          # Truncation in units of radius or pixels.

[[[ ... Truncated lines ... ]]]
```

In Gnuastro, column counting starts from 1, so the columns are ordered such that the first column (number 1) can be an ID he specifies for each object (and MakeProfiles ignores), each subsequent column is used for another property of the profile. It is also possible to use column names for the values of these options and change these defaults, but Sufi preferred to stick to the defaults. Fortunately MakeProfiles has the capability to also make the PSF which is to be used on the mock image and using the `--prepforconv` option, he can also make the mock image to be larger by the correct amount and all the sources to be shifted by the correct amount.

For his initial check he decides to simulate the nebula in the Andromeda constellation. The night he was observing, the PSF had roughly a FWHM of about 5 pixels, so as the first row (profile) in the table below, he defines the PSF parameters. Sufi sets the radius column (`rcol` above, fifth column) to `5.000`, he also chooses a Moffat function for its functional form. Remembering how diffuse the nebula in the Andromeda constellation was, he decides to simulate it with a mock Sérsic index 1.0 profile. He wants the output to be 499 pixels by 499 pixels, so he can put the center of the mock profile in the central pixel of the image which is the 250th pixel along both dimensions (note that an even number does not have a "central" pixel).

Looking at his drawings of it, he decides a reasonable effective radius for it would be 40 pixels on this image pixel scale (second row, 5th column below). He also sets the axis ratio (0.4) and position angle (-25 degrees) to approximately correct values too, and finally he sets the total magnitude of the profile to 3.44 which he had measured. Sufi also decides to truncate both the mock profile and PSF at 5 times the respective radius parameters. In the end he decides to put four stars on the four corners of the image at very low magnitudes as a visual scale. While he was preparing the catalog, one of his students approached him and was also following the steps.

As described above, the catalog of profiles to build will be a table (multiple columns of numbers) like below:

```
0  0.000   0.000  2  5   4.7  0.0  1.0  30.0  5.0
```

```
1  250.0   250.0  1  40  1.0  -25  0.4  3.44  5.0
2  50.00   50.00  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  6.00  0.0
3  450.0   50.00  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  6.50  0.0
4  50.00   450.0  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  7.00  0.0
5  450.0   450.0  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  7.50  0.0
```

This contains all the "data" to build the profile, and you can easily pass it to Gnuastro's MakeProfiles: since Sufi already knows the columns and expected values very good, he has placed the information in the proper columns. However, when the student sees this, he just sees a mumble-jumble of numbers! Generally, Sufi explains to the student that even if you know the number positions and values very nicely today, in a couple of months you will forget! It will then be very hard for you to interpret the numbers properly. So you should never use naked data (or data without any extra information).

Data (or information) that describes other data is called "metadata"! One common example is column names (the name of a column is itself a data element, but data that describes the lower-level data within that column: how to interpret the numbers within it). Sufi explains to his student that Gnuastro has a convention for adding metadata within a plain-text file; and guides him to Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287. Because we do not want metadata to be confused with the actual data, in a plain-text file, we start lines containing metadata with a '`#`'. For example, see the same data above, but this time with metadata for every column:

```
# Column 1:  ID      [counter, u8] Identifier
# Column 2:  X       [pix,    f32] Horizontal position
# Column 3:  Y       [pix,    f32] Vertical position
# Column 4:  PROFILE [name,    u8] Radial profile function
# Column 5:  R       [pix,    f32] Effective radius
# Column 6:  N       [n/a,    f32] Sersic index
# Column 7:  PA      [deg,    f32] Position angle
# Column 8:  Q       [n/a,    f32] Axis ratio
# Column 9:  MAG     [log,    f32] Magnitude
# Column 10: TRUNC   [n/a,    f32] Truncation (multiple of R)
0  0.000   0.000  2  5   4.7  0.0  1.0  30.0  5.0
1  250.0   250.0  1  40  1.0  -25  0.4  3.44  5.0
2  50.00   50.00  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  6.00  0.0
3  450.0   50.00  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  6.50  0.0
4  50.00   450.0  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  7.00  0.0
5  450.0   450.0  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  7.50  0.0
```

The numbers now make much more sense for the student! Before continuing, Sufi reminded the student that even though metadata may not be strictly/technically necessary (for the computer programs), metadata are critical for human readers! Therefore, a good scientist should never forget to keep metadata with any data that they create, use or archive.

To start simulating the nebula, Sufi creates a directory named `simulationtest` in his home directory. Note that the `pwd` command will print the "parent working directory" of the current directory (its a good way to confirm/check your current location in the full file system: it always starts from the root, or '`/`').

```
$ mkdir ~/simulationtest
```

```
$ cd ~/simulationtest
$ pwd
/home/rahman/simulationtest
```

It is possible to use a plain-text editor to manually put the catalog contents above into a plain-text file. But to easily automate catalog production (in later trials), Sufi decides to fill the input catalog with the redirection features of the command-line (or shell). Sufi's student was not familiar with this feature of the shell! So Sufi decided to do a fast demo; giving the following explanations while running the commands:

Shell redirection allows you to "re-direct" the "standard output" of a program (which is usually printed by the program on the command-line during its execution; like the output of `pwd` above) into a file. For example, let's simply "echo" (or print to standard output) the line "This is a test.":

```
$ echo "This is a test."
This is a test.
```

As you see, our statement was simply "echo"-ed to the standard output! To redirect this sentence into a file (instead of simply printing it on the standard output), we can simply use the `>` character, followed by the name of the file we want it to be dumped in.

```
$ echo "This is a test." > test.txt
```

This time, the `echo` command did not print anything in the terminal. Instead, the shell (command-line environment) took the output, and "re-directed" it into a file called `test.txt`. Let's confirm this with the `ls` command (`ls` is short for "list" and will list all the files in the current directory):

```
$ ls
test.txt
```

Now that you confirm the existence of `test.txt`, you can see its contents with the `cat` command (short for "concatenation"; because it can also merge multiple files together):

```
$ cat test.txt
This is a test.
```

Now that we have written our first line in `test.txt`, let's try adding a second line (do not forget that our final catalog of objects to simulate will have multiple lines):

```
$ echo "This is my second line." > test.txt
$ cat test.txt
This is my second line.
```

As you see, the first line that you put in the file is no longer present! This happens because '`>`' always starts dumping content to a file from the start of the file. In effect, this means that any possibly pre-existing content is over-written by the new content! To append new lines (or dumping new content at the end of existing content), you can use '`>>`'. for example, with the commands below, first we will write the first sentence (using '`>`'), then use '`>>`' to add the second and third sentences. Finally, we will print the contents of `test.txt` to confirm that all three lines are preserved.

```
$ echo "My first sentence."   > test.txt
$ echo "My second sentence." >> test.txt
$ echo "My third sentence."  >> test.txt
$ cat test.txt
```

```
My first sentence.
My second sentence.
My third sentence.
```

The student thanked Sufi for this explanation and now feels more comfortable with redirection. Therefore Sufi continues with the main project. But before that, he deletes the temporary test file:

```
$ rm test.txt
```

To put the catalog of profile data and their metadata (that was described above) into a file, Sufi uses the commands below. While Sufi was writing these commands, the student complained that "I could have done in this in a text editor". Sufi reminded the student that it is indeed possible; but it requires manual intervention. The advantage of a solution like below is that it can be automated (for example, adding more rows; for more profiles in the final image).

```
$ echo "# Column 1:  ID    [counter, u8] Identifier" > cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 2:  X     [pix,    f32] Horizontal position" >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 3:  Y     [pix,    f32] Vertical position" >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 4:  PROF  [name,    u8] Radial profile function" \
       >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 5:  R     [pix,    f32] Effective radius" >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 6:  N     [n/a,    f32] Sersic index" >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 7:  PA    [deg,    f32] Position angle" >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 8:  Q     [n/a,    f32] Axis ratio" >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 9:  MAG   [log,    f32] Magnitude" >> cat.txt
$ echo "# Column 10: TRUNC [n/a,    f32] Truncation (multiple of R)" \
       >> cat.txt
$ echo "0  0.000   0.000  2  5   4.7  0.0  1.0  30.0  5.0" >> cat.txt
$ echo "1  250.0   250.0  1  40  1.0  -25  0.4  3.44  5.0" >> cat.txt
$ echo "2  50.00   50.00  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  6.00  0.0" >> cat.txt
$ echo "3  450.0   50.00  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  6.50  0.0" >> cat.txt
$ echo "4  50.00   450.0  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  7.00  0.0" >> cat.txt
$ echo "5  450.0   450.0  4  0   0.0  0.0  0.0  7.50  0.0" >> cat.txt
```

To make sure if the catalog's content is correct (and there was no typo for example!), Sufi runs '`cat cat.txt`', and confirms that it is correct.

Now that the catalog is created, Sufi is ready to call MakeProfiles to build the image containing these objects. He looks into his records and finds that the zero point magnitude for that night, and that particular detector, was 18 magnitudes. The student was a little confused on the concept of zero point, so Sufi pointed him to Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, which the student can study in detail later. Sufi therefore runs MakeProfiles with the command below:

```
$ astmkprof --prepforconv --mergedsize=499,499 --zeropoint=18.0 cat.txt
MakeProfiles 0.23.84-726fd started on Sat Oct  6 16:26:56 953
  - 6 profiles read from cat.txt
  - Random number generator (RNG) type: ranlxs1
  - Basic RNG seed: 1652884540
  - Using 12 threads.
```

```
  ---- row 3 complete, 5 left to go
  ---- row 4 complete, 4 left to go
  ---- row 6 complete, 3 left to go
  ---- row 5 complete, 2 left to go
  ---- ./0_cat_profiles.fits created.
  ---- row 1 complete, 1 left to go
  ---- row 2 complete, 0 left to go
  - ./cat_profiles.fits created.                    0.092573 seconds
  -- Output: ./cat_profiles.fits
MakeProfiles finished in 0.293644 seconds
```

Sufi encourages the student to read through the printed output. As the statements say, two FITS files should have been created in the running directory. So Sufi ran the command below to confirm:

```
$ ls
0_cat_profiles.fits  cat_profiles.fits  cat.txt
```

The file `0_cat_profiles.fits` is the PSF Sufi had asked for, and `cat_profiles.fits` is the image containing the main objects in the catalog. Sufi opened the main image with the command below (using SAO DS9):

```
$ astscript-fits-view cat_profiles.fits --ds9scale=95
```

The student could clearly see the main elliptical structure in the center. However, the size of `cat_profiles.fits` was surprising for the student, instead of 499 by 499 (as we had requested), it was 2615 by 2615 pixels (from the command below):

```
$ astfits cat_profiles.fits
Fits (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
Run on Sat Oct  6 16:26:58 953
-----
HDU (extension) information: 'cat_profiles.fits'.
 Column 1: Index (counting from 0, usable with '--hdu').
 Column 2: Name ('EXTNAME' in FITS standard, usable with '--hdu').
 Column 3: Image data type or 'table' format (ASCII or binary).
 Column 4: Size of data in HDU.
-----
0      MKPROF-CONFIG   no-data         0
1      Mock profiles   float32         2615x2615
```

So Sufi explained why oversampling is important in modeling, especially for parts of the image where the flux change is significant over a pixel. Recall that when you oversample the model (for example, by 5 times), for every desired pixel, you get 25 pixels (5×5). Sufi then explained that after convolving (next step below) we will down-sample the image to get our originally desired size/resolution.

After seeing the image, the student complained that only the large elliptical model for the Andromeda nebula can be seen in the center. He could not see the four stars that we had also requested in the catalog. So Sufi had to explain that the stars are there in the image, but the reason that they are not visible when looking at the whole image at once, is that they only cover a single pixel! To prove it, he centered the image around the coordinates 2308 and 2308, where one of the stars is located in the over-sampled image [you can do this

in `ds9` by selecting "Pan" in the "Edit" menu, then clicking around that position]. Sufi then zoomed in to that region and soon, the star's non-zero pixel could be clearly seen.

Sufi explained that the stars will take the shape of the PSF (cover an area of more than one pixel) after convolution. If we did not have an atmosphere and we did not need an aperture, then stars would only cover a single pixel with normal CCD resolutions. So Sufi convolved the image with this command:

```
$ astconvolve --kernel=0_cat_profiles.fits cat_profiles.fits \
              --output=cat_convolved.fits
Convolve started on Sat Oct  6 16:35:32 953
  - Using 8 CPU threads.
  - Input: cat_profiles.fits (hdu: 1)
  - Kernel: 0_cat_profiles.fits (hdu: 1)
  - Input and Kernel images padded.                    0.075541 seconds
  - Images converted to frequency domain.              6.728407 seconds
  - Multiplied in the frequency domain.                0.040659 seconds
  - Converted back to the spatial domain.              3.465344 seconds
  - Padded parts removed.                              0.016767 seconds
  - Output: cat_convolved.fits
Convolve finished in:  10.422161 seconds
```

When convolution finished, Sufi opened `cat_convolved.fits` and the four stars could be easily seen now:

```
$ astscript-fits-view cat_convolved.fits --ds9scale=95
```

It was interesting for the student that all the flux in that single pixel is now distributed over so many pixels (the sum of all the pixels in each convolved star is actually equal to the value of the single pixel before convolution). Sufi explained how a PSF with a larger FWHM would make the points even wider than this (distributing their flux in a larger area). With the convolved image ready, they were prepared to resample it to the original pixel scale Sufi had planned [from the `$ astmkprof -P` command above, recall that MakeProfiles had over-sampled the image by 5 times]. Sufi explained the basic concepts of warping the image to his student and ran Warp with the following command:

```
$ astwarp --scale=1/5 --centeroncorner cat_convolved.fits
Warp started on Sat Oct  6 16:51:59 953
 Using 8 CPU threads.
 Input: cat_convolved.fits (hdu: 1)
 matrix:
        0.2000   0.0000   0.4000
        0.0000   0.2000   0.4000
        0.0000   0.0000   1.0000

$ astfits cat_convolved_scaled.fits --quiet
0      WARP-CONFIG     no-data         0
1      Warped          float32         523x523
```

`cat_convolved_scaled.fits` now has the correct pixel scale. However, the image is still larger than what we had wanted, it is 523×523 pixels (not our desired 499×499). The student is slightly confused, so Sufi also resamples the PSF with the same scale by running

```
$ astwarp --scale=1/5 --centeroncorner 0_cat_profiles.fits
$ astfits 0_cat_profiles_scaled.fits --quiet
0      WARP-CONFIG     no-data         0
1      Warped          float32         25x25
```

Sufi notes that $25 = 12 + 12 + 1$ and that $523 = 499 + 12 + 12$. He goes on to explain that frequency space convolution will dim the edges and that is why he added the `--prepforconv` option to MakeProfiles above. Now that convolution is done, Sufi can remove those extra pixels using Crop with the command below. Crop's `--section` option accepts coordinates inclusively and counting from 1 (according to the FITS standard), so the crop region's first pixel has to be 13, not 12.

```
$ astcrop cat_convolved_scaled.fits --section=13:*-12,13:*-12    \
          --mode=img --zeroisnotblank
Crop started on Sat Oct  6 17:03:24 953
  - Read metadata of 1 image.                          0.001304 seconds
  ---- ...nvolved_scaled_cropped.fits created: 1 input.
Crop finished in:  0.027204 seconds
```

To fully convince the student, Sufi checks the size of the output of the crop command above:

```
$ astfits cat_convolved_scaled_cropped.fits --quiet
0      n/a             no-data         0
1      n/a             float32         499x499
```

Finally, `cat_convolved_scaled_cropped.fits` is 499×499 pixels and the mock Andromeda galaxy is centered on the central pixel. This is the same dimensions as Sufi had desired in the beginning. All this trouble was certainly worth it because now there is no dimming on the edges of the image and the profile centers are more accurately sampled.

The final step to simulate a real observation would be to add noise to the image. Sufi set the zero point magnitude to the same value that he set when making the mock profiles and looking again at his observation log, he had measured the background flux near the nebula had a *per-pixel* magnitude of 7 that night. For more on how the background value determines the noise, see Section 6.2.3 [Noise basics], page 407. So using these values he ran Arithmetic's `mknoise-sigma-from-mean` operator, and with the second command, he visually inspected the image. The `mknoise-sigma-from-mean` operator takes the noise standard deviation in linear units, not magnitudes (which are logarithmic). Therefore within the same Arithmetic command, he has converted the sky background magnitude to counts using Arithmetic's `counts-to-mag` operator.

```
$ astarithmetic cat_convolved_scaled_cropped.fits \
                7 18 mag-to-counts mknoise-sigma-from-mean \
                --output=out.fits

$ astscript-fits-view out.fits
```

The `out.fits` file now contains the noised image of the mock catalog Sufi had asked for. The student had not observed the nebula in the sky, so when he saw the mock image in SAO DS9 (with the second command above), he understood why Sufi was dubious: it was very diffuse!

Seeing how the `--output` option allows the user to specify the name of the output file, the student was confused and wanted to know why Sufi had not used it more regularly

before? Sufi explained that for intermediate steps, you can rely on the automatic output of the programs (see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292). Doing so will give all the intermediate files a similar basic name structure, so in the end you can simply remove them all with the Shell's capabilities, and it will be familiar for other users. So Sufi decided to show this to the student by making a shell script from the commands he had used before.

The command-line shell has the capability to read all the separate input commands from a file. This is useful when you want to do the same thing multiple times, with only the names of the files or minor parameters changing between the different instances. Using the shell's history (by pressing the up keyboard key) Sufi reviewed all the commands and then he retrieved the last 5 commands with the `$ history 5` command. He selected all those lines he had input and put them in a text file named `mymock.sh`. Then he defined the `edge` and `base` shell variables for easier customization later, and before every command, he added some comments (lines starting with `#`) for future readability. Finally, Sufi pointed the student to Gnuastro's Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, which has a full section on Section 2.1.22 [Writing scripts to automate the steps], page 73.

```
#!/bin/bash

edge=12
base=cat

# Stop running next commands if one fails.
set -e

# Remove any (possibly) existing output (from previous runs)
# before starting.
rm -f out.fits

# Run MakeProfiles to create an oversampled FITS image.
astmkprof --prepforconv --mergedsize=499,499 --zeropoint=18.0 \
          "$base".txt

# Convolve the created image with the kernel.
astconvolve "$base"_profiles.fits \
            --kernel=0_"$base"_profiles.fits \
            --output="$base"_convolved.fits

# Scale the image back to the intended resolution.
astwarp --scale=1/5 --centeroncorner "$base"_convolved.fits

# Crop the edges out (dimmed during convolution). '--section'
# accepts inclusive coordinates, so the start of the section
# must be one pixel larger than its end.
st_edge=$(( edge + 1 ))
astcrop "$base"_convolved_scaled.fits --zeroisnotblank \
        --mode=img --section=$st_edge:*-$edge,$st_edge:*-$edge
```

```
# Add noise to the image.
astarithmetic "$base"_convolved_scaled_cropped.fits \
               7 18 mag-to-counts mknoise-sigma-from-mean \
               --output=out.fits

# Remove all the temporary files.
rm 0*.fits "$base"*.fits
```

He used this chance to remind the student of the importance of comments in code or shell scripts! Just like metadata in a dataset, when writing the code, you have a good mental picture of what you are doing, so writing comments might seem superfluous and excessive. However, in one month when you want to re-use the script, you have lost that mental picture and remembering it can be time-consuming and frustrating. The importance of comments is further amplified when you want to share the script with a friend/colleague. So it is good to accompany any step of a script, or code, with useful comments while you are writing it (create a good mental picture of why you are doing something: do not just describe the command, but its purpose).

Sufi then explained to the eager student that you define a variable by giving it a name, followed by an `=` sign and the value you want. Then you can reference that variable from anywhere in the script by calling its name with a `$` prefix. So in the script whenever you see `$base`, the value we defined for it above is used. If you use advanced editors like GNU Emacs or even simpler ones like Gedit (part of the GNOME graphical user interface) the variables will become a different color which can really help in understanding the script. We have put all the `$base` variables in double quotation marks (`"`) so the variable name and the following text do not get mixed, the shell is going to ignore the `"` after replacing the variable value. To make the script executable, Sufi ran the following command:

```
$ chmod +x mymock.sh
```

Then finally, Sufi ran the script, simply by calling its file name:

```
$ ./mymock.sh
```

After the script finished, the only file remaining is the `out.fits` file that Sufi had wanted in the beginning. Sufi then explained to the student how he could run this script anywhere that he has a catalog if the script is in the same directory. The only thing the student had to modify in the script was the name of the catalog (the value of the `base` variable in the start of the script) and the value to the `edge` variable if he changed the PSF size. The student was also happy to hear that he will not need to make it executable again when he makes changes later, it will remain executable unless he explicitly changes the executable flag with `chmod`.

The student was really excited, since now, through simple shell scripting, he could really speed up his work and run any command in any fashion he likes allowing him to be much more creative in his works. Until now he was using the graphical user interface which does not have such a facility and doing repetitive things on it was really frustrating and some times he would make mistakes. So he left to go and try scripting on his own computer. He later reminded Sufi that the second tutorial in the Gnuastro book as more complex commands in data analysis, and a more advanced introduction to scripting (see Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22).

Sufi could now get back to his own work and see if the simulated nebula which resembled the one in the Andromeda constellation could be detected or not. Although it was extremely faint[43]. Therefore, Sufi ran Gnuastro's detection software (Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552) to see if this object is detectable or not. NoiseChisel's output (`out_detected.fits`) is a multi-extension FITS file, so he used Gnuastro's `astscript-fits-view` program in the second command to see the output:

```
$ astnoisechisel out.fits

$ astscript-fits-view out_detected.fits
```

In the "Cube" window (that was opened with DS9), if Sufi clicked on the "Next" button to see the pixels that were detected to contain significant signal. Fortunately the nebula's shape was detectable and he could finally confirm that the nebula he kept in his notebook was actually observable. He wrote this result in the draft manuscript that would later become "Book of fixed stars"[44].

He still had to check the other nebula he saw from Yemen and several other such objects, but they could wait until tomorrow (thanks to the shell script, he only has to define a new catalog). It was nearly sunset and they had to begin preparing for the night's measurements on the ecliptic.

2.5 Detecting lines and extracting spectra in 3D data

3D data cubes are an increasingly common format of data products in observational astronomy. As opposed to 2D images (where each 2D "picture element" or "pixel" covers an infinitesimal area on the surface of the sky), 3D data cubes contain "volume elements" or "voxels" that are also connected in a third dimension.

The most common case of 3D data in observational astrophysics is when the first two dimensions are spatial (RA and Dec on the sky), and the third dimension is wavelength. This type of data is generically (also outside of astronomy) known as Hyperspectral imaging[45]. For example high-level data products of Integral Field Units (IFUs) like MUSE[46] in the optical, ACIS[47] in the X-ray, or in the radio where most data are 3D cubes.

In this tutorial, we'll use a small crop of a reduced deep MUSE cube centered on the Abell 370 (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abell_370`) galaxy cluster from the Pilot-WINGS survey; see Lagattuta et al. 2022 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2202.04663`). Abell 370 has a spiral galaxy in its background that is stretched due to the cluster's gravitational potential to create a beautiful arch. If you haven't seen it yet, have a look at some of its images in the Wikipedia link above before continuing.

---

[43] The brightness of a diffuse object is added over all its pixels to give its final magnitude, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585. So although the magnitude 3.44 (of the mock nebula) is orders of magnitude brighter than 6 (of the stars), the central galaxy is much fainter. Put another way, the brightness is distributed over a large area in the case of a nebula.

[44] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Book_of_Fixed_Stars`

[45] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hyperspectral_imaging`

[46] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Multi-unit_spectroscopic_explorer`

[47] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Advanced_CCD_Imaging_Spectrometer`

The Pilot-WINGS survey data are available in its webpage[48]. The cube of the *core* region is 10.2GBs. This can be prohibitively large to download (and later process) on many networks and smaller computers. Therefore, in this demonstration we won't be using the full cube. We have prepared a small crop[49] of the full cube that you can download with the first command below. The randomly selected crop is centered on (RA,Dec) of (39.96769,-1.58930), with a width of about 27 arcseconds.

```
$ mkdir tutorial-3d
$ cd tutorial-3d
$ wget http://akhlaghi.org/data/a370-crop.fits    # Downloads 287 MB
```

In the sections below, we will first review how you can visually inspect a 3D data cube in DS9 and interactively see the spectra of any region. We will then subtract the continuum emission, detect the emission-lines within this cube and extract their spectra. We will finish with creating synthetic narrow-band images optimized for some of the emission lines.

2.5.1 Viewing spectra and redshifted lines

In Section 2.5 [Detecting lines and extracting spectra in 3D data], page 134, we downloaded a small crop from the Pilot-WINGS survey of Abell 370 cluster; observed with MUSE. In this section, we will review how you can visualize/inspect a data cube using that example. With the first command below, we'll open DS9 such that each 2D slice of the cube (at a fixed wavelength) is seen as a single image. If you move the slider in the "Cube" window (that also opens), you can view the same field at different wavelengths. We are ending the first command with a '`&`' so you can continue viewing DS9 while using the command-line (press one extra `ENTER` to see the prompt). With the second command, you can see that the spacing between each slice is 1.25×10^{-10} meters (or 1.25 Angstroms).

```
$ astscript-fits-view a370-crop.fits -h1 --ds9scale="limits -5 20" &

$ astfits a370-crop.fits --pixelscale
Basic info. for --pixelscale (remove info with '--quiet' or '-q')
  Input: a370-crop.fits (hdu 1) has 3 dimensions.
  Pixel scale in each FITS dimension:
    1: 5.55556e-05 (deg/pixel) = 0.2 (arcsec/pixel)
    2: 5.55556e-05 (deg/pixel) = 0.2 (arcsec/pixel)
    3: 1.25e-10 (m/slice)
  Pixel area (on each 2D slice) :
    3.08642e-09 (deg^2) = 0.04 (arcsec^2)
  Voxel volume:
```

[48] `https://astro.dur.ac.uk/~hbpn39/pilot-wings.html`

[49] You can download the full cube and create the crop your self with the commands below. Due to the decompression of the +10GB file that is necessary for the compressed downloaded file (note that its suffix is `.fits.gz`), the Crop command will take a little long.

```
$ wget https://astro.dur.ac.uk/~hbpn39/pilotWINGS/A370_PilotWINGS_CORE.fits.gz
$ astcrop A370_PilotWINGS_CORE.fits.gz -hDATA --mode=img \
          --section=200:300,100:200 -oa370-crop.fits --metaname=DATA
$ astcrop A370_PilotWINGS_CORE.fits.gz -hSTAT --mode=img --append \
          --section=200:300,100:200 -oa370-crop.fits --metaname=STAT
```

```
3.85802e-19 (deg^2*m) = 5e-12 (arcsec^2*m) = 0.05 (arcsec^2*A)
```

In the DS9 "Cube" window, you will see two numbers on the two sides of the scroller. The left number is the wavelength in meters (WCS coordinate in 3rd dimension) and the right number is the slice number (slice number or array coordinates in 3rd dimension). You can manually edit any of these numbers and press ENTER to go to that slice in any coordinate system. If you want to go one-by-one, simply press the "Next" button. The first few slides are very noisy, but in the rest the noise level decreases and the galaxies are more obvious.

As you slide between the different wavelengths, you see that the noise-level is not constant and in some slices, the sky noise is very strong (for example, go to slice 3201 and press the "Next" button). We will discuss these issues below (in Section 2.5.2 [Sky lines in optical IFUs], page 138). To view the spectra of a region in DS9 take the following steps:

1. Click somewhere on the image (to make sure DS9 receives your keyboard inputs), then press `Ctrl+R` to activate regions and click on the brightest galaxy of this cube (center-right, at RA, Dec of 39.9659175 and -1.5893075).
2. A thin green circle will show up; this is called a "region" in DS9.
3. Double-click on the region, and you will see a "Circle" window.
4. Within the "Circle" window, click on the "Analysis" menu and select "Plot 3D".
5. A second "Circle" window will open that shows the spectra within your selected region. This is just the sum of values on each slice within the region.
6. Don't close the second "circle" window (that shows the spectrum). Click and hold the region in DS9, and move it to other objects within the cube. You will see that the spectrum changes as you move the region, and you can see that different objects have very different spectra. You can even see the spectra of only one part of a galaxy, not the whole galaxy.
7. Take the region back to the first (brightest) galaxy that we originally started with.
8. Slide over different wavelengths in the "Cube" window, you will see the light-blue line moving through the spectrum as you slide to different wavelengths. This line shows the wavelength of the displayed image in the main window over the spectra.
9. The strongest emission line in this galaxy appears to be around 8500 Angstroms or 8.5×10^{-7} meters. From the position of the Balmer break (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Balmer_jump`) (blue-ward of 5000 Angstroms for this galaxy), the strong seems to be H-alpha.
10. To confirm that this is H-alpha, you can select the "Edit" menu in the spectrum window and select "Zoom".
11. Double-click and hold (for next step also) somewhere before the strongest line and slightly above the continuum (for example at `8E-07` in the horizontal and 50×10^{-20}erg/Angstrom/cm^2/s on the vertical). As you move your cursor (while holding), you will see a rectangular box getting created.
12. Move the bottom-left corner of the box to somewhere after the strongest line and below the continuum. For example at `9E-07` and 20×10^{-20}erg/Angstrom/cm^2/s.
13. Once you remove your finger from the mouse/touchpad, it will zoom-in to that part of the spectrum.

14. To zoom out to the full spectrum, just press the right mouse button over the spectra (or tap with two fingers on a touchpad).
15. Select that zoom-box again to see the brightest line much more clearly. You can also see the two lines of the Nitrogen II doublet that sandwich H-alpha. Beside its relative position to the Balmer break, this is further evidence that the strongest line is H-alpha.
16. Let's have a look at the galaxy in its best glory: right over the H-alpha line: Move the wavelength slider accurately (by pressing the "Previous" or "Next" buttons) such that the blue line falls in the middle of the H-alpha line. We see that the wavelength at this slice is `8.56593e-07` meters or 8565.93 Angstroms. Please compare the image of the galaxy at this wavelength with the wavelengths before (by pressing "Next" or "Previous"). You will also see that it is much more extended and brighter than other wavelengths! H-alpha shows the un-obscured star formation of the galaxy!

Automaticly going to next slice: When you want to get a general feeling of the cube, pressing the "Next" button many times is annoying and slow. To automatically shift between the slices, you can press the "Play" button in the DS9 "Cube" window. You can adjust the time it stays on each slice by clicking on the "Interval" menu and selecting lower values.

Knowing that this is H-alpha at 8565.93 Angstroms, you can get the redshift of the galaxy with the first command below and the location of all other expected lines in Gnuastro's spectral line database with the second command. Because there are many lines in the second command (more than 200!), with the third command, we'll only limit it to the Balmer series (that start with `H-`) using `grep`. The output of the second command prints the metadata on the top (that is not shown any more in the third command due to the `grep` call). To be complete, the first column is the observed wavelength of the given line in the given redshift and the second column is the name of the line.

```
# Redshift where H-alpha falls on 8565.93.
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=H-alpha,8565.93 --usedredshift
0.305221

# Wavelength of all lines in Gnuastro's database at this redshift
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=H-alpha,8565.93 --listlinesatz

# Only the Balmer series (Lines starting with 'H-'; given to Grep).
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=H-alpha,8565.93 --listlinesatz | grep H-
4812.13             H-19
4818.29             H-18
4825.61             H-17
4834.36             H-16
4844.95             H-15
4857.96             H-14
4874.18             H-13
4894.79             H-12
4921.52             H-11
4957.1              H-10
```

```
5006.03             H-9
5076.09             H-8
5181.83             H-epsilon
5353.68             H-delta
5665.27             H-gamma
6345.11             H-beta
8565.93             H-alpha
4758.84             H-limit
```

Zoom-out to the full spectrum and move the displayed slice to the location of the first emission line that is blue-ward (at shorter wavelengths) of H-alpha (at around 6300 Angstroms) and follow the previous steps to confirm that you are on its center. You will see that it falls exactly on 6.34468×10^{-7} m or 6344.68 Angstroms. Now, have a look at the Balmer lines above. You have found the H-beta line!

The rest of the Balmer series (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Balmer_series`) that you see in the list above (like H-gamma, H-delta and H-epsilon) are visible only as absorption lines. Please check their location by moving the blue line on the wavelengths above and confirm the spectral absorption lines with the ones above. The Balmer break is caused by the fact that these stronger Balmer absorption lines become too close to each other.

Looking back at the full spectrum, you can also confirm that the only other relatively strong emission line in this galaxy, that is on the blue side of the spectrum is the weakest OII line that is approximately located at 4864 Angstroms in the observed spectra of this galaxy. The numbers after the various OII emission lines show their rest-frame wavelengths ("OII" can correspond to many electron transitions, so we should be clear about which one we are talking about).

```
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=H-alpha,8565.93 --listlinesatz | grep O-II-
4863.3              O-II-3726
4866.93             O-II-3728
5634.82             O-II-4317
5762.42             O-II-4414
9554.21             O-II-7319
9568.22             O-II-7330
```

Please stop here and spend some time on doing the exercise above on other galaxies in the this cube to get a feeling of types of galaxy spectral features (and later on the full/large cube). You will notice that only star-forming galaxies have such strong emission lines! If you enjoy it, go get the full non-cropped cube and investigate the spectra, redshifts and emission/absorption lines of many more galaxies.

But going into those higher-level details of the physical meaning of the spectra (as intriguing as they are!) is beyond the scope of this tutorial. So we have to stop at this stage unfortunately. Now that you have a relatively good feeling of this small cube, let's start doing some analysis to extract the spectra of the objects in this cube.

2.5.2 Sky lines in optical IFUs

As we were visually inspecting the cube in Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135, we noticed some slices with very bad noise. They will later affect our detection within the cube, so in this section let's have a fast look at them here. We'll start by looking at the two cubes within the downloaded FITS file:

```
$ astscript-fits-view a370-crop.fits
```

The cube on the left is the same cube we studied before. The cube on the right (which is called `STAT`) shows the variance of each voxel. Go to slice 3195 and press "Next" to view the subsequent slices. Initially (for the first 5 or 6 slices), the noise looks reasonable. But as you pass slice 3206, you will see that the noise becomes very bad in both cubes. It stays like this until about slice 3238! As you go through the whole cube, you will notice that these slices are much more frequent in the reddest wavelengths.

These slices are affected by the emission lines from our own atmosphere! The atmosphere's emission in these wavelengths significantly raises the background level in these slices. As a result, the Poisson noise also increases significantly (see Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408). During the data reduction, the excess background flux of each slice is removed as the Sky (or the mean of undetected pixels, see Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528). However, the increased Poisson noise (scatter of pixel values) remains!

To see spectrum of the sky emission lines, simply put a region somewhere in the `STAT` cube and generate its spectrum (as we did in Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135). You will clearly see the comb-like shape of atmospheric emission lines and can use this to know where to expect them.

2.5.3 Continuum subtraction

In Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135, we visually inspected some of the most prominent emission lines of the brightest galaxy of the demo MUSE cube (see Section 2.5 [Detecting lines and extracting spectra in 3D data], page 134). Here, we will remove the "continuum" flux from under the emission lines to see them more distinctly.

Within a spectra, the continuum is the local "background" flux in the third/wavelength dimension. In other words, it is the flux that would be present at that wavelength if the emission line didn't exist. Therefore, to accurately measure the flux of the emission line, we first need to subtract the continuum. One crude way of estimating the continuum flux at every slice is to use the sigma-clipped median value of that same pixel in the $\pm N/2$ slides around it (for more on sigma-clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200).

In this case, $N = 100$ should be a good first approximate (since it is much larger than any of the absorption or emission lines). With the first command below, let's use Arithmetic's filtering operators for estimating the sigma-clipped median only along the third dimension for every pixel in every slice (see Section 6.2.4.8 [Filtering (smoothing) operators], page 432). With the second command, have a look at the filtered cube and spectra. Note that the first command is computationally expensive and may take a minute or so.

```
$ astarithmetic a370-crop.fits set-i --output=filtered.fits \
                3 0.2 1 1 100 i filter-sigclip-median

$ astscript-fits-view filtered.fits -h1 --ds9scale="limits -5 20"
```

Looking at the filtered cube above, and sliding through the different wavelengths, you will see the noise in each slice has been significantly reduced! This is expected because each pixel's value is now calculated from 100 others (along the third dimension)! Using the same steps as Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135, plot the spectra of

the brightest galaxy. Then, have a look at its spectra. You see that the emission lines have been significantly smoothed out to become almost[50] invisible.

You can now subtract this "continuum" cube from the input cube to create the emission-line cube. In fact, as you see below, we can do it in a single Arithmetic command (blending the filtering and subtraction in one command). Note how the only difference with the previous Arithmetic command is that we added an `i` before the `3` and a `-` after `filter-sigclip-median`. For more on Arithmetic's powerful notation, see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404. With the second command below, let's view the input *and* continuum-subtracted cubes together:

```
$ astarithmetic a370-crop.fits set-i --output=no-continuum.fits \
                i 3 0.2 1 1 100 i filter-sigclip-median -

$ astscript-fits-view a370-crop.fits no-continuum.fits -g1 \
                      --ds9scale="limits -5 20"
```

Once the cubes are open, slide through the different wavelengths. Comparing the left (input) and right (continuum-subtracted) slices, you will rarely see any galaxy in the continuum-subtracted one! As its name suggests, the continuum flux is continuously present in all the wavelengths (with gradual change)! But the continuum has been subtracted now; so in the right-side image, you don't see anything on wavelengths that don't contain a spectral emission line. Some dark regions also appear; these are absorption lines! Please spend a few minutes sliding through the wavelengths and seeing how the emission lines pop-up and disappear again. It is almost like scuba diving, with fish appearing out of nowhere and passing by you.

Let's go to slice 3046 (corresponding to 8555.93 Angstroms; just before the H-alpha line for the brightest galaxy in Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135). Now press the "Next" button to change slices one by one until there is no more emission in the brightest galaxy. As you go to redder slices, you will see that not only does the brightness increase, but the position of the emission also changes. This is the Doppler effect (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Doppler_effect`) caused by the rotation of the galaxy: the side that rotating towards us gets blue-shifted to bluer slices and the one that is going away from us gets redshifted to redder slices. If you go to the emission lines of the other galaxies, you will see that they move with a different angle! We can use this to derive the galaxy's rotational properties and kinematics (Gnuastro doesn't have this feature yet).

To see the Doppler shift in the spectrum, plot the spectrum over the top-side of the galaxy (which is visible in slice 3047). Then Zoom-in to the H-alpha line (as we did in Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135) and press "Next" until you reach the end of the H-alpha emission-line. You see that by the time H-alpha disappears in the spectrum, within the cube, the emission shifts in the vertical axis by about 15 pixels! Then, move the region across the same path that the emission passed. You will clearly see that the H-alpha and Nitrogen II lines also move with you, in the zoomed-in spectra. Again, try this for several other emission lines, and several other galaxies to get a good feeling of this important concept when using hyper-spectral 3D data.

[50] For more on why Sigma-clipping is only a crude solution to background removal, see Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

2.5.4 3D detection with NoiseChisel

In Section 2.5.3 [Continuum subtraction], page 139, we subtracted the continuum emission, leaving us with only noise and the absorption and emission lines. The absorption lines are negative and will be missed by detection methods that look for a positive skewness[51] (like Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552). So we will focus on the detection and extraction of emission lines here.

The first step is to extract the voxels that contain emission signal. To do that, we will be using Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552. NoiseChisel and Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, operate on 2D images or 3D cubes. But by default, they are configured for 2D images (some parameters like tile size take a different number of values based on the dimensionality). Therefore, to do 3D detection, the first necessary step is to run NoiseChisel with the default 3D configuration file.

To see where Gnuastro's programs are installed, you can run the following command (the printed output is the default location when you install Gnuastro from source, but if you used another installation method or manually set a different location, you will see a different output, just use that):

```
$ which astnoisechisel
/usr/local/bin/astnoisechisel
```

As you see, the compiled binary programs (like NoiseChisel) are installed in the `bin/` sub-directory of the install path (`/usr/local` in the example above, may be different on your system). The configuration files are in the `etc/gnuastro/` sub-directory of the install path (here only showing NoiseChisel's configuration files):

```
$ ls /usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astnoisechisel*.conf
/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astnoisechisel-3d.conf
/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astnoisechisel.conf
```

We should therefore call NoiseChisel with the 3D configuration file like below (please change `/usr/local` to any directory that you find from the `which` command above):

```
$ astnoisechisel no-continuum.fits --output=det.fits \
                 --config=/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astnoisechisel-3d.conf
```

But having to add this long `--config` option is annoying and makes the command hard to read! To simplify the calling of NoiseChisel in 3D, let's first make a shell alias called `astnoisechisel-3d` using the `alias` command. Afterwards, we can just use the alias. Afterwards (in the second command below), we are calling the alias, producing the same output as above. Finally (with the last command), let's have a look at NoiseChisel's output:

```
$ alias astnoisechisel-3d="astnoisechisel \
           --config=/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astnoisechisel-3d.conf"

$ astnoisechisel-3d no-continuum.fits --output=det.fits

$ astscript-fits-view det.fits
```

Similar to its 2D outputs, NoiseChisel's output contains four extensions/HDUs (see Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569). For a multi-extension file with 3D data,

[51] But if you want to detect the absorption lines, just multiply the cube by -1 and repeat the same steps here (the noise is symmetric around 0).

`astscript-fits-view` shows each cube as a separate DS9 "Frame". In this way, as you slide through the wavelengths, you see the same slice in all the cubes. The third and fourth extensions are the Sky and Sky standard deviation, which are not relevant here, so you can close them. To do that, press on the "Frame" button (in the top row of buttons), then press "delete" two times in the second row of buttons.

As a final preparation, manually set the scale of `INPUT-NO-SKY` cube to a fixed range so the changing flux/noise in each slice doesn't interfere with visually comparing the data in the slices as you move around:

1. Click on the `INPUT-NO-SKY` cube, so it is selected.
2. Click on the "Scale" menu, then the "Scale Parameters".
3. For the "Low" value set -2 and for the "High" value set 5.
4. In the "Cube" window, slide between the slices to confirm that the noise level is visually fixed.
5. Go back to the first slice for the next steps. Note that the first and last couple of slices have much higher noise, don't worry about those.

As you press the "Next" button in the first few slides, you will notice that the `DETECTION` cube is fully black: showing that nothing has been detected. The first detection pops up in the 55th slice for the galaxy on the top of this cube. As you press "Next" you will see that the detection fades away and other detections pop up. Spend a few minutes shifting between the different slices and comparing the detected voxels with the emission lines in the continuum-subtracted cube (the `INPUT-NO-SKY` extension).

Go ahead to slice 2933 and press "Next" a few times. You will notice that the detections suddenly start covering the whole slice and until slice 2943 where the detection map becomes normal (no extra detections!). This is the effect of the sky lines we mentioned before in Section 2.5.2 [Sky lines in optical IFUs], page 138. The increased noise makes the reduction very hard and as a result, a lot of artifacts appear. To reduce the effect of sky lines, we can divide the cube by its standard deviation (the square root of the variance or `STAT` extension; see Section 2.5.2 [Sky lines in optical IFUs], page 138) and run NoiseChisel afterwards.

```
$ astarithmetic no-continuum.fits -h1 a370-crop.fits -hSTAT sqrt / \
                --output=sn.fits

$ astnoisechisel-3d sn.fits --output=det.fits

$ astscript-fits-view det.fits
```

After the new detection map opens have another look at the specific slices mentioned above (from slice 2933 to 2943). You will see that there are no more detection maps that cover the whole field of view. Scroll the slide counter across the whole cube, you will rarely see such effects by Sky lines any more. But this is just a crude solution and doesn't remove all sky line artifacts. For example go to slide 650 and press "Next". You will see that the artifacts caused by this sky line are so strong that the solution above wasn't successful. For these very strong emission lines, we need to improve the reduction. But generally, since the number of sky-line affected slices has significantly decreased, we can go ahead.

2.5.5 3D measurements and spectra

In the context of optical IFUs or radio IFUs in astronomy, a "Spectrum" is defined as separate measurements on each 2D slice of the 3D cube. Each 2D slice is defined by the first two FITS dimensions: the first FITS dimension is the horizontal axis and the second is the vertical axis. As with the tutorial on 2D image analysis (in Section 2.1.13 [Segmentation and making a catalog], page 47), let's run Segment to see how it works in 3D. Like NoiseChisel above, to simplify the commands, let's make an alias (Section 2.5.4 [3D detection with NoiseChisel], page 141):

```
$ alias astsegment-3d="astsegment \
        --config=/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astsegment-3d.conf"

$ astsegment-3d det.fits --output=seg.fits

$ astscript-fits-view seg.fits
```

You see that we now have 3D clumps and 3D objects. So we can go ahead to do measurements. MakeCatalog can do single-valued measurements (as in 2D) on 3D datasets also. For example, with the command below, let's get the flux-weighted center (in the three dimensions) and sum of pixel values. There isn't usually a standard name for the third WCS dimension (unlike Ra/Dec). So in Gnuastro, we just call it `--w3`. With the second command, we are having a look at the first 5 rows. Note that we are not using `-Y` with `asttable` anymore because the wavelength column would only be shown as zero (since it is in meters!).

```
$ astmkcatalog seg.fits --ids --ra --dec --w3 --sum --output=cat.fits

$ asttable cat.fits -h1 -O --txtf64p=5 --head=5
# Column 1: OBJ_ID [counter    ,i32,] Object identifier.
# Column 2: RA     [deg        ,f64,] Flux weighted center (WCS axis 1).
# Column 3: DEC    [deg        ,f64,] Flux weighted center (WCS axis 2).
# Column 4: AWAV   [m          ,f64,] Flux weighted center (WCS axis 3).
# Column 5: SUM    [input-units,f32,] Sum of sky subtracted values.
1  3.99677e+01   -1.58660e+00   4.82994e-07   7.311189e+02
2  3.99660e+01   -1.58927e+00   4.86411e-07   7.872681e+03
3  3.99682e+01   -1.59141e+00   4.90609e-07   1.314548e+03
4  3.99677e+01   -1.58666e+00   4.90816e-07   7.798024e+02
5  3.99659e+01   -1.58930e+00   4.93657e-07   3.255210e+03
```

Besides the single-valued measurements above (that are shared with 2D inputs), on 3D cubes, MakeCatalog can also do per-slice measurements. The options for these measurements are formatted as `--*in-slice`. With the command below, you can check their list:

```
$ astmkcatalog --help | grep in-slice
 --area-in-slice        [3D input] Number of labeled in each slice.
 --area-other-in-slice  [3D input] Area of other lab. in projected area.
 --area-proj-in-slice   [3D input] Num. voxels in '--sum-proj-in-slice'.
 --sum-err-in-slice     [3D input] Error in '--sum-in-slice'.
 --sum-in-slice         [3D input] Sum of values in each slice.
 --sum-other-err-in-slice   [3D input] Area in '--sum-other-in-slice'.
```

```
--sum-other-in-slice   [3D input] Sum of other lab. in projected area.
--sum-proj-err-in-slice   [3D input] Error of '--sum-proj-in-slice'.
--sum-proj-in-slice    [3D input] Sum of projected area in each slice.
```

For every label and measurement, these options will give many values in a vector column (see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346). Let's have a look by asking for the sum of values and area of each label in each slice associated to each label with the command below. There is just one important point: in Section 2.5.4 [3D detection with NoiseChisel], page 141, we ran NoiseChisel on the signal-to-noise image, not the continuum-subtracted image! So the values to use for the measurement of each label should come from the `no-continuum.fits` file (not `seg.fits`).

```
$ astmkcatalog seg.fits --ids --ra --dec --w3 --sum  \
               --area-in-slice --sum-in-slice --output=cat.fits \
               --valuesfile=no-continuum.fits --valueshdu=1

$ asttable -i cat.fits
--------
cat.fits (hdu: 1)
-------          -----       ----          -------
No.Name          Units       Type          Comment
-------          -----       ----          -------
1  OBJ_ID        counter     int32         Object identifier.
2  RA            deg         float64       Flux wht center (WCS 1).
3  DEC           deg         float64       Flux wht center (WCS 2).
4  AWAV          m           float64       Flux wht center (WCS 3).
5  SUM           input-units float32       Sum of sky-subed values.
6  AREA-IN-SLICE counter     int32(3681)   Number of pix. in each slice.
7  SUM-IN-SLICE  input-units float32(3681) Sum of values in each slice.
--------
Number of rows: 194
--------
```

You can see that the new `AREA-IN-SLICE` and `SUM-IN-SLICE` columns have a `(3681)` in their types. This shows that unlike the single-valued columns before them, in these columns, each row has 3681 values (a "vector" column). If you are not already familiar with vector columns, please take a few minutes to read Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346. Since a MUSE data cube has 3681 slices, this is effectively the spectrum of each object.

Let's find the object that corresponds to the H-alpha emission of the brightest galaxy (that we found in Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135). That emission line was around 8565.93 Angstroms, so let's look for the objects within ±5 Angstroms of that value (between 8560 to 8570 Angstroms):

```
$ asttable cat.fits --range=AWAV,8.560e-7,8.570e-7 -cobj_id,ra,dec -Y
181    39.965897   -1.589279
```

From the command above, we see that at this wavelength, there was only one object. Let's extract its spectrum by asking for the `sum-in-slice` column:

```
$ asttable cat.fits --range=AWAV,8.560e-7,8.570e-7 \
           -carea-in-slice,sum-in-slice
```

If you look into the outputs, you will see that it is a single line! It contains a long list of 0 values at the start and `nan` values in the end. If you scroll slowly, in the middle of each you will see some non-zero and non-NaN numbers. To help interpret this more easily, let's transpose these vector columns (so each value of the vector column becomes a row in the output). We will use the `--transpose` option of Table for this (just note that since transposition changes the number of rows, it can only be used when your table only has vector columns and they all have the same number of elements (as in this case, for more):

```
$ asttable cat.fits --range=AWAV,8.560e-7,8.570e-7 \
           -carea-in-slice,sum-in-slice --transpose
```

We now see the measurements on each slice printed in a separate line (making it much more easier to visually read). However, without a counter, it is very hard to interpret them. Let's pipe the output to a new Table command and use column arithmetic's `counter` operator for displaying the slice number (see Section 6.2.4.19 [Size and position operators], page 466). Note that since we are piping the output, we also added `-O` so the column metadata are also passed to the new instance of Table:

```
$ asttable cat.fits --range=AWAV,8.560e-7,8.570e-7 -O \
           -carea-in-slice,sum-in-slice --transpose \
           | asttable -c'arith $1 counter swap',2
...[[truncated]]...
3040   0       nan
3041   0       nan
3042   0       nan
3043   0       nan
3044   1       4.311140e-01
3045   18      3.936019e+00
3046   161    -5.800080e+00
3047   360     2.967184e+02
3048   625     1.912855e+03
3049   823     5.140487e+03
3050   945     7.174101e+03
3051   999     6.967604e+03
3052   1046    6.468591e+03
3053   1025    6.457354e+03
3054   996     6.599119e+03
3055   966     6.762280e+03
3056   873     5.014052e+03
3057   649     2.003334e+03
3058   335     3.167579e+02
3059   131     1.670975e+01
3060   25     -2.953789e+00
3061   0       nan
3062   0       nan
3063   0       nan
3064   0       nan
...[[truncated]]...
```

```
$ astscript-fits-view seg.fits
```

After DS9 opens with the last command above, go to slice 3044 (which is the first non-NaN slice in the spectrum above). In the `OBJECTS` extension of this slice, you see several non-zero pixels. The few non-zero pixels on the bottom have a label of 180 and the single non-zero pixel at a higher Y axis position has a label of 181 (which as we saw above, was the label of the H-alpha emission of this galaxy). The few 197 labeled pixels in this slice are the last voxels of the NII emission that is just blue-ward of H-alpha.

The single pixel you see in slice 3044 is why you see a value of 1 in the `AREA-IN-SLICE` column. As you go to the next slices, if you count the pixels, you will see they add up to the same number you see in that column. The values in the `SUM-IN-SLICE` are the sum of values in the continuum-subtracted cube for those same voxels. You should now be able to understand why the `--sum-in-slice` column has NaN values in all other slices: because this label doesn't exist in any other slice! Also, within slices that contain label 181, this column only uses the voxels that have the label. So as you see in the second column above, the area that is used in each changes.

Therefore `--sum-in-slice` or `area-in-slice` are the raw 3D spectrum of each 3D emission-line. This is a different concept from the traditional "spectrum" where the same area is used over all the slices. To get that you should use the `--sumprojinslice` column of MakeCatalog. All the `--*in-slice` options that contain a `proj` in their name are measurements over the fixed "projection" of the 3D volume on the 2D surface of each slice. To see the effect, let's also ask MakeCatalog to measure this projected sum column:

```
$ astmkcatalog seg.fits --ids --ra --dec --w3 --sum  \
               --area-in-slice --sum-in-slice --sum-proj-in-slice \
               --output=cat.fits --valuesfile=no-continuum.fits \
               --valueshdu=1
$ asttable cat.fits --range=AWAV,8.560e-7,8.570e-7 -O \
           -carea-in-slice,sum-in-slice,sum-proj-in-slice \
           --transpose \
           | asttable -c'arith $1 counter swap',2,3
...[[truncated]]...
3040   0       nan            8.686357e+02
3041   0       nan            4.384907e+02
3042   0       nan            4.994813e+00
3043   0       nan           -1.595918e+02
3044   1       4.311140e-01  -2.793141e+02
3045   18      3.936019e+00  -3.251023e+02
3046   161    -5.800080e+00  -2.709914e+02
3047   360     2.967184e+02   1.049625e+02
3048   625     1.912855e+03   1.841315e+03
3049   823     5.140487e+03   5.108451e+03
3050   945     7.174101e+03   7.149740e+03
3051   999     6.967604e+03   6.913166e+03
3052   1046    6.468591e+03   6.442184e+03
3053   1025    6.457354e+03   6.393185e+03
3054   996     6.599119e+03   6.572642e+03
3055   966     6.762280e+03   6.716916e+03
```

```
3056   873     5.014052e+03   4.974084e+03
3057   649     2.003334e+03   1.870787e+03
3058   335     3.167579e+02   1.057906e+02
3059   131     1.670975e+01  -2.415764e+02
3060   25     -2.953789e+00  -3.534623e+02
3061   0       nan           -3.745465e+02
3062   0       nan           -2.532008e+02
3063   0       nan           -2.372232e+02
3064   0       nan           -2.153670e+02
...[[truncated]]...
```

As you see, in the new `SUM-PROJ-IN-SLICE` column, we have a measurement in each slice: including slices that do not have the label of 181 at all. Also, the area used to measure this sum is the same in all slices (similar to a classical spectrometer's output).

However, there is a big problem: have a look at the sums in slices 3040 and 3041: the values are increasing! This is because of the emission in the NII line that also falls over the projected area of H-alpha. This shows the power of IFUs as opposed to classical spectrometers: we can distinguish between individual lines based on spatial position and do measurements in 3D!

Finally, in case you want the spectrum with the continuum, you just have to change the file given to `--valuesfile`:

```
$ astmkcatalog seg.fits --ids --ra --dec --w3 --sum  \
               --area-in-slice --sum-in-slice --sum-proj-in-slice \
               --valuesfile=a370-crop.fits --valueshdu=1 \
               --output=cat-with-continuum.fits
```

2.5.6 Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it

In Section 2.5.5 [3D measurements and spectra], page 143, we measured the spectra of all the objects with the MUSE data cube of this demonstration tutorial. Let's now write the resulting spectra for our object 181 into a file to view our measured spectra in TOPCAT for a more visual inspection. But we don't want slice numbers (which are specific to MUSE), we want the horizontal axis to be in Angstroms. To do that, we can use the WCS information:

`CRPIX3` The "Coordinate Reference PIXel" in the 3rd dimension (or slice number of reference) Let's call this s_r.

`CRVAL3` The "Coordinate Reference VALue" in the 3rd dimension (the WCS coordinate of the slice in `CRPIX3`. Let's call this λ_r

`CDELT3` The "Coordinate DELTa" in the 3rd dimension, or how much the WCS changes with every slice. Let's call this δ.

To find the λ (wavelength) of any slice with number s, we can simply use this equation:

$$\lambda = \lambda_r + \delta(s - s_r)$$

Let's extract these three values from the FITS WCS keywords as shell variables to automatically do this within Table's column arithmetic. Here we are using the technique that is described in Section 4.1.5.1 [Separate shell variables for multiple outputs], page 267.

```
$ eval $(astfits seg.fits --keyvalue=CRPIX3,CRVAL3,CDELT3 -q \
                | xargs printf "sr=%s; lr=%s; d=%s;")

## Just for a check:
$ echo $sr
1.000000e+00
$ echo $lr
4.749679687500000e-07
$ echo $d
1.250000000000000e-10
```

Now that we have the necessary constants, we can simply convert the equation above into Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404, and use column arithmetic to convert the slice counter into wavelength in the command of Section 2.5.5 [3D measurements and spectra], page 143.

```
$ asttable cat.fits --range=AWAV,8.560e-7,8.570e-7 -O \
       -carea-in-slice,sum-in-slice,sum-proj-in-slice \
       --transpose \
       | asttable -c'arith $1 counter '$sr' - '$d' x '$lr' + f32 swap' \
                  -c2,3 --output=spectrum-obj-181.fits \
                  --colmetadata=1,WAVELENGTH,m,"Wavelength of slice." \
                  --colmetadata=2,"AREA-IN-SLICE",voxel,"No. of voxels."

$ astscript-fits-view spectrum-obj-181.fits
```

Once TOPCAT opens, take the following steps:

1. In the "Graphics" menu, select "Plane plot".
2. Change `AREA-IN-SLICE` to `SUM-PROJ-IN-SLICE`.
3. Select the "Form" tab.
4. Click on the button with the large green "+" button and select "Add line".
5. Un-select the "Mark" item that was originally selected.

Of course, the table in `spectrum-obj-181.fits` can be plotted using any other plotting tool you prefer to use in your scientific papers. In the next section (Section 2.5.7 [Cubes with logarithmic third dimension], page 148), we'll review the necessary modifications to the recipes in this section for cubes where the third dimension is logarithmic, not linear (as in MUSE cubes). Finally, in Section 2.5.7 [Cubes with logarithmic third dimension], page 148, you'll see how you can make narrow-band images of your desired target around your desired emission line.

2.5.7 Cubes with logarithmic third dimension

In Section 2.5.6 [Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it], page 147, a single object's spectrum was extracted from the catalog and plotted. Extracting the wavelength of each slice was easy there because MUSE data cubes provide a linear third dimension. However, it can happen that the third axis of a cube is logarithmic not linear (as in the MUSE cube used in this tutorial). An example in the optical regime is the data cubes of the MaNGA

survey (https://www.sdss4.org/surveys/manga/)[52]. To identify if an axis is logarithmic or linear, the FITS WCS standard (https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2006A&A...446..747G) (Section 3.2) says that you should look at the CTYPE keywords and check if any have a -LOG suffix. For example, here is the output on a MaNGA data cube:

```
$ astfits manga.fits -h1 | grep CTYPE
CTYPE1  = 'RA---TAN'
CTYPE2  = 'DEC--TAN'
CTYPE3  = 'WAVE-LOG'
```

In the same section, the FITS standard describes how the "world coordinate" (wavelengh in this case) can be calculated in such cases. The column arithmetic command to add the wavelength to each slice's measurement looks is shown below (just for the first object in the catalog; replace --head=1 as you wish). For the d, lr and sr shell variables that are used in this command, see Section 2.5.6 [Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it], page 147.

```
$ asttable cat.fits --head=1 -csum-in-slice --transpose \
           | asttable -c'arith $1 index '$d' x '$lr' / set-p set-s \
                               e p pow '$lr' x s'
```

2.5.8 Synthetic narrow-band images

In Section 2.5.3 [Continuum subtraction], page 139, we subtracted/separated the continuum from the emission/absorption lines of our galaxy in the MUSE cube. Let's visualize the morphology of the galaxy at some of the spectral lines to see how it looks. To do this, we will create synthetic narrow-band 2D images by collapsing the cube along the third dimension within a certain wavelength range that is optimized for that flux.

Let's find the wavelength range that corresponds to H-alpha emission we studied in Section 2.5.6 [Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it], page 147. Fortunately MakeCatalog can calculate the minimum and maximum position of each label along each dimension like the command below. If you always need these values, you can include these columns in the same MakeCatalog with --sum-proj-in-slice. Here we are running it separately to help you follow the discussion there.

```
$ astmkcatalog seg.fits --output=cat-ranges.fits \
               --ids --min-x --max-x --min-y --max-y --min-z --max-z
```

Let's extract the minimum and maximum positions of this particular object with the first command and with the second, we'll write them into different shell variables. With the second command, we are writing those six values into a single string in the format of Crop's Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392. For more on the eval-based shell trick we used here, see Section 4.1.5.1 [Separate shell variables for multiple outputs], page 267. Finally, we are running Crop and viewing the cropped 3D cube.

```
$ asttable cat-ranges.fits --equal=OBJ_ID,181 \
                -cMIN_X,MAX_X,MIN_Y,MAX_Y,MIN_Z,MAX_Z
56     101    11     61     3044   3060

$ eval $(asttable cat-ranges.fits --equal=OBJ_ID,181 \
                -cMIN_X,MAX_X,MIN_Y,MAX_Y,MIN_Z,MAX_Z \
```

[52] An example data cube from the MaNGA survey can be downloaded from here: https://data.sdss.org/sas/dr17/manga/spectro/redux/v3_1_1/7443/stack/manga-7443-12703-LOGCUBE.fits.gz

```
                    | xargs printf "section=%s:%s,%s:%s,%s:%s; ")

$ astcrop no-continuum.fits --mode=img --section=$section \
          --output=crop-no-continuum.fits

$ astscript-fits-view crop-no-continuum.fits
```

Go through the slices and you will only see this particular region of the full cube. We can now collapse the third dimension of this image into a 2D synthetic-narrow band image with Arithmetic's Section 6.2.4.11 [Dimensionality changing operators], page 439:

```
$ astarithmetic crop-no-continuum.fits 3 collapse-sum \
                --output=collapsed-all.fits

$ astscript-fits-view collapsed-all.fits
```

During the collapse, used all the pixels in each slice. This is not good for the faint outskirts in the peak of the emission line: the noise of the slices with less signal decreases the over-all signal-to-noise ratio in the synthetic-narrow band image. So let's set all the pixels that aren't labeled with this object as NaN, then collapse. To do that, we first need to crop the `OBJECT` cube in `seg.fits`. With the second command, please have a look to confirm how the labels change as a function of wavelength.

```
$ astcrop seg.fits -hOBJECTS --mode=img --section=$section \
          --output=crop-obj.fits

$ astscript-fits-view crop-obj.fits
```

Let's use Arithmetic to first set all the pixels that are not equal to 198 in `collapsed-obj.fits` to be NaN in `crop-no-continuum.fits`. With the second command, we are opening the two collapsed images together:

```
$ astarithmetic crop-no-continuum.fits set-i \
                crop-obj.fits          set-o \
                i o 181 ne nan where 3 collapse-sum \
                -g1 --output=collapsed-obj.fits

$ astscript-fits-view collapsed-all.fits collapsed-obj.fits \
                      --ds9extra="-lock scalelimits yes -blink"
```

Let it blink a few times and focus on the outskirts: you will see that the diffuse flux in the outskirts has indeed been preserved better in the object-based collapsed narrow-band image. But this is a little hard to appreciate in the 2D image. To see it better practice, let's get the two radial profiles. We will approximately assume a position angle of -80 and axis ratio of 0.7[53]. With the final command below, we are opening both radial profiles in

[53] To derive the axis ratio and position angle automatically, you can take the following steps. Note that we are not using NoiseChisel because this crop has been intentionally selected to contain signal, so there is no raw noise inside of it.

```
$ aststatistics collapsed-all.fits --sky --tilesize=3,3
$ astarithmetic collapsed-all.fits -h1 collapsed-all_sky.fits -hSKY_STD / 5 gt
$ astmkcatalog collapsed-all_arith.fits -h1 --valuesfile=collapsed-all.fits \
               --valueshdu=1 --position-angle --axis-ratio
```

TOPCAT to visualize them. We are also undersampling the radial profile to have better signal-to-noise ratio in the outer radii:

```
$ astscript-radial-profile collapsed-all.fits \
          --position-angle=-80 --axis-ratio=0.7 \
          --undersample=2 --output=collapsed-all-rad.fits

$ astscript-radial-profile collapsed-obj.fits \
          --position-angle=-80 --axis-ratio=0.7 \
          --undersample=2 --output=collapsed-obj-rad.fits
```

To view the difference, let's merge the two profiles (the `MEAN` column) into one table and simply print the two profiles beside each other. We will then pipe the resulting table containing both columns to a second call to Gnuastro's Table and use column arithmetic to subtract the two mean values and divide them by the optimized one (to get the fractional difference):

```
$ asttable collapsed-all-rad.fits --catcolumns=MEAN -O \
          --catcolumnfile=collapsed-obj-rad.fits \
          | asttable -c1,2,3 -c'arith $3 $2 - $3 /' \
                     --colmetadata=2,MEAN-ALL \
                     --colmetadata=3,MEAN-OBJ \
                     --colmetadata=4,DIFF,frac,"Fractional diff." -YO
# Column 1: RADIUS   [pix        ,f32,] Radial distance
# Column 2: MEAN-ALL [input-units,f32,] Mean of sky subtracted values.
# Column 3: MEAN-OBJ [input-units,f32,] Mean of sky subtracted values.
# Column 4: DIFF     [frac       ,f32,] Fractional diff.
0.000          436.737        450.256        0.030
2.000          371.880        384.071        0.032
4.000          313.429        320.138        0.021
6.000          275.744        280.102        0.016
8.000          152.214        154.470        0.015
10.000         59.311         62.207         0.047
12.000         18.466         20.396         0.095
14.000         6.940          8.671          0.200
16.000         3.052          4.256          0.283
18.000         1.590          2.848          0.442
20.000         1.430          2.550          0.439
22.000         0.838          1.975          0.576
```

As you see, beyond a radius of 10, the last fractional difference column becomes very large, showing that a lot of signal is missing in the `MEAN-ALL` column. For a more visual comparison of the two profiles, you can use the command below to open both tables in TOPCAT:

```
$ astscript-fits-view collapsed-all-rad.fits \
                      collapsed-obj-rad.fits
```

Once TOPCAT has opened take the following steps:

```
$ asttable collapsed-all_arith_cat.fits -Y
-79.100       0.700
```

1. Select `collapsed-all-rad.fits`
2. In the "Graphics" menu, select "Plane Plot".
3. Click on the "Axes" side-bar (by default, at the bottom half of the window), and click on "Y Log" to view the vertical axis in logarithmic scale.
4. In the "Layers" menu, select "Add Position Control". You will see that at the bottom half, a new scatter plot information is displayed.
5. Click on the scroll-down menu in front of "Table" and select `2: collapsed-obj-rad.fits`. Afterwards, you will see the optimized synthetic-narrow-band image radial profile as blue points.

2.6 Color images with full dynamic range

Color images are fundamental tools to visualize astronomical datasets, allowing to visualize valuable physical information within them. A color image is a composite representation derived from different channels. Each channel usually corresponding to different filters (each showing wavelength intervals of the object's spectrum). In general, most common color image formats (like JPEG, PNG or PDF) are defined from a combination of Red-Green-Blue (RGB) channels (to cover the optical range with normal cameras). These three filters are hard-wired in your monitor and in most normal camera (for example smartphone or DSLR) pixels. For more on the concept and usage of colors, see Section 5.2.3 [Color], page 320, and Section 5.2.3.2 [Colormaps for single-channel pixels], page 321.

However, normal images (that you take with your smartphone during the day for example) have a very limited dynamic range (difference between brightest and fainest part of an image). For example in an image you take from a farm, the brightness pixel (the sky) cannot be more than 255 times the faintest/darkest shadow in the image (because normal cameras produce unsigned 8 bit integers; containing $2^8 = 256$ levels; see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

However, astronomical sources span a much wider dynamic range such that their central parts can be tens of millions of times brighter than their larger outer regions. Our astronomical images in the FITS format are therefore usually 32-bit floating points to preserve this information. Therefore a simple linear scaling of 32-bit astronomical data to the 8-bit range will put most of the pixels on the darkest level and barely show anything! This presents a major challenge in visualizing our astronomical images on a monitor, in print or for a projector when showing slides.

In this tutorial, we review how to prepare your images and create informative RGB images for your PDF reports. We start with aligning the images to the same pixel grid (which is usually necessary!) and using the low-level engine (Gnuastro's Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316, program) directly to create an RGB image. Afterwards, we will use a higher-level installed script (Section 10.7 [Color images with gray faint regions], page 720). This is a high-level wrapper over ConvertType that does some pre-processing and stretches the pixel values to enhance their 8-bit representation before calling ConvertType.

2.6.1 Color channels in same pixel grid

In order to use different images as color channels, it is important that the images be properly aligned and on the same pixel grid. When your inputs are high-level products of the same survey, this is usually the case. However, in many other situations the images you plan to

use as different color channels lie on different sky positions, even if they may have the same number of pixels. In this section we will show how to solve this problem.

For an example dataset, let's use the same SDSS field that we used in Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80: the field covering the outer parts of the M51 group. With the commands below, we'll make an `inputs` directory and download and prepare the three g, r and i band images of SDSS over the same field there:

```
$ mkdir in
$ sdssurl=https://dr12.sdss.org/sas/dr12/boss/photoObj/frames
$ for f in g r i; do \
      wget $sdssurl/301/3716/6/frame-$f-003716-6-0117.fits.bz2 \
           -O$f.fits.bz2; \
      bunzip2 $f.fits.bz2; \
      astfits $f.fits --copy=0 -oin/$f-sdss.fits; \
      rm $f.fits; \
  done
```

Let's have a look at the three three images with the first command, and get their number of pixels with the second:

```
## Open the images locked by image coordinates
$ astscript-fits-view in/*-sdss.fits

## Check the number of pixels along each axis of all images.
$ astfits in/*-sdss.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS1,NAXIS2
in/g-sdss.fits    2048   1489
in/i-sdss.fits    2048   1489
in/r-sdss.fits    2048   1489
```

From the first command, the images look like they cover the same astronomical object (M51) in the same region of the sky, and with the second, we see that they have the same number of pixels. But this general visual inspection does not guarantee that the astronomical objects within the pixel grid cover exactly the same positions (within a pixel!) on the sky. Let's open the images again, but this time asking DS9 to only show one at a time, and to "blink" between them:

```
$ astscript-fits-view in/*-sdss.fits \
           --ds9extra="-single -zoom to fit -blink"
```

If you pay attention, you will see that the objects within each image are at slightly different locations. If you don't immediately see it, try zooming in to any star within the image and let DS9 continue blinking. You will see that the star jumps a few pixels between each blink.

In essence, the images are not aligned on the same pixel grid, therefore, the same source does not share identical image coordinates across these three images. As a consequence, it is necessary to align the images before making the color image, otherwise this misalignment will generate multiply-peaked point-sources (stars and centers of galaxies) and artificial color gradients in the more diffuse parts. To align the images to the same pixel grid, we will employ Gnuastro's Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501, program. In particular, its features to Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

Let's take the middle (r band) filter as the reference to define our grid. With the first command after building the `aligned/` directory, let's align the r filter to the celestial coordinates (so the M51 group's position angle doesn't depend on the orientation of the telescope when it took this image). With for the other two filters, we will use Warp's `--gridfile` option to ensure that ensure that their pixel grid and WCS exactly match the r band image, but the pixel values come from the other two filters. Finally, in the last command, we'll visualize the three aligned images.

```
## Put all three channels in the same pixel grid.
$ mkdir aligned
$ astwarp in/r-sdss.fits --output=aligned/r-sdss.fits
$ astwarp in/g-sdss.fits --output=aligned/g-sdss.fits \
          --gridfile=aligned/r-sdss.fits
$ astwarp in/i-sdss.fits --output=aligned/i-sdss.fits \
          --gridfile=aligned/r-sdss.fits

## Open the images locked by image coordinates
$ astscript-fits-view aligned/*-sdss.fits \
           --ds9extra="-single -zoom to fit -blink"
```

As the images blink between each other, zoom in to some of the smaller stars and you will see that they no longer jump from one blink to the next. These images are now precisely pixel-aligned. We are now equipped with the essential data to proceed with the color image generation in Section 2.6.2 [Color image using linear transformation], page 154.

2.6.2 Color image using linear transformation

Previously (in Section 2.6.1 [Color channels in same pixel grid], page 152), we downloaded three SDSS filters of M51 and described how you can put them all in the same pixel grid. In this section, we will explore the raw and low-level process of generating color images using the input images (without modifying the pixel value distributions). We will use Gnuastro's ConvertType program (with executable name `astconvertt`).

Let's create our first color image using the aligned SDSS images mentioned in the previous section. The order in which you provide the images matters, so ensure that you sort the filters from redder to bluer (iSDSS and gSDSS are respectively the reddest and bluest of the three filters used here).

```
$ astconvertt aligned/i-sdss.fits aligned/r-sdss.fits \
              aligned/g-sdss.fits -g1 --output=m51.pdf
```

Other color formats: In the example above, we are using PDF because this is usually the best format to later also insert marks that are commonly necessary in scientific publications (see Section 2.1.21 [Marking objects for publication], page 69. But you can also generate JPEG and TIFF outputs simply by using a different suffix for your output file (for example `--output=m51.jpg` or `--output=m51.tiff`).

Open the image with your PDF viewer and have a look. Do you see something? Initially, it appears predominantly black. However, upon closer inspection, you will discern very tiny points where some color is visible. These points correspond to the brightest part of the

brightest sources in this field! The reason you saw much more structure when looking at the image in DS9 previously in Section 2.6.1 [Color channels in same pixel grid], page 152, was that `astscript-fits-view` used DS9's `-zscale` option to scale the values in a non-linear way! Let's have another look at the images with the linear `minmax` scaling of DS9:

```
$ astscript-fits-view aligned/*-sdss.fits \
          --ds9extra="-scale minmax -lock scalelimits"
```

You see that it looks very similar to the PDF we generated above: almost fully black! This phenomenon exemplifies the challenge discussed at the start of this tutorial in Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152). Given the vast number of pixels close to the sky background level compared to the relatively few very bright pixels, visualizing the entire dynamic range simultaneously is tricky.

To address this challenge, the low-level ConvertType program allows you to selectively choose the pixel value ranges to be displayed in the color image. This can be accomplished using the `--fluxlow` and `--fluxhigh` options of ConvertType. Pixel values below `--fluxlow` are mapped to the minimum value (displayed as black in the default colormap), and pixel values above `--fluxhigh` are mapped to the maximum value (displayed as white)) The choice of these values depends on the pixel value distribution of the images.

But before that, we have to account for an important differences between the filters: the brightness of the background also has different values in different filters (the sky has colors!) So before making more progress, generally, first you have to subtract the sky from all three images you want to feed to the color channels. In a previous tutorial (Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80) we used these same images as a basis to show how you can do perfect sky subtraction in the presence of large extended objects like M51. Here we are just doing a visualization and bringing pixels to 8-bit, so we don't need that level of precision reached there (we won't be doing photometry!). Therefore, let's just keep the `--tilesize=100,100` of NoiseChisel.

```
$ mkdir no-sky
$ for f in i r g; do \
    astnoisechisel aligned/$f-sdss.fits --tilesize=100,100 \
                   --output=no-sky/$f-sdss.fits; \
  done
```

Accounting for zero points: An important step that we have not implemented in this section is to unify the zero points of the three filters. In the case of SDSS (and some other surveys), the images have already been brought to the same zero point, but that is not generally the case. So before subtracting sky (and estimating the standard deviation) you should also unify the zero points of your images (for example through Arithmetic's `counts-to-customzp`, `counts-to-nanomaggy` or `counts-to-jy` described in Section 6.2.4.5 [Unit conversion operators], page 420). If you don't already have the zero point of your images, see the dedicated tutorial to measure it: Section 2.7 [Zero point of an image], page 166.

Now that we know the noise fluctuates around zero in all three images, we can start to define the values for the `--fluxlow` and `--fluxhigh`. But the sky standard deviation comes from the sky brightness in different filters and is therefore different! Let's have a look by taking the median value of the `SKY_STD` extension of NoiseChisel's output:

```
$ aststatistics no-sky/i-sdss.fits -hSKY_STD --median
2.748338e-02

$ aststatistics no-sky/r-sdss.fits -hSKY_STD --median
1.678463e-02

$ aststatistics no-sky/g-sdss.fits -hSKY_STD --median
9.687680e-03
```

You see that the sky standard deviation of the reddest filter (i) is almost three times the bluest filter (g)! This is usually the case in any scenario (redder emission usually requires much less energy and gets absorbed less, so the background is usually brighter in the reddest filters). As a result, we should define our limits based on the noise of the reddest filter. Let's set the minimum flux to 0 and the maximum flux to ~50 times the noise of the i-band image ($0.027 \times 50 = 1.35$).

```
$ astconvertt no-sky/i-sdss.fits no-sky/r-sdss.fits no-sky/g-sdss.fits \
              -g1 --fluxlow=0.0 --fluxhigh=1.35 --output=m51.pdf
```

After opening the new color image, you will observe that a spiral arm of M51 and M51B (or NGC5195, which is interacting with M51), become visible. However, the majority of the image remains black. Feel free to experiment with different values for `--fluxhigh` to set the maximum value closer to the noise-level and see the more diffuse structures. For instance, try with `--fluxhigh=0.27` the brightest pixels will have a signal-to-noise ratio of 10, or even `--fluxhigh=0.135` for a signal-to-noise ratio of 5. But you will notice that, the brighter areas of the galaxy become "saturated": you don't see the structure of brighter parts of the galaxy any more. As you bring down the maximum threshold, the saturated areas also increase in size: loosing some useful information on the bright side!

Let's go to the extreme and decrease the threshold to close the noise-level (for example `--fluxhigh=0.027` to have a signal-to-noise ratio of 1)! You will see that the noise now becomes colored! You generally don't want this because the difference in filter values of one pixel are only physically meaningful when they have a high signal-to-noise ratio. For lower signal-to-noise ratios, we should avoid color.

Ideally, we want to see both the brighter parts of the central galaxy, as well as the fainter diffuse parts together! But with the simple linear transformation here, that is not possible! You need some pre-processing (before calling ConvertType) to scale the images. For example, you can experiment with taking the logarithm or the square root of the images (using Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403) before creating the color image.

These non-linear functions transform pixel values, mapping them to a new range. After applying such transformations, you can use the transformed images as inputs to `astconvertt` to generate color images (similar to how we subtracted the sky; which is a linear operation). In addition to that, it is possible to use a different color schema for showing the different brightness ranges as it is explained in the next section. In the next section (Section 2.6.3 [Color for bright regions and grayscale for faint], page 157), we'll review one high-level installed script which will simplify all these pre-processings and help you produce images with more information in them.

2.6.3 Color for bright regions and grayscale for faint

In the previous sections we aligned three SDSS images of M51 group Section 2.6.1 [Color channels in same pixel grid], page 152, and created a linearly-scaled color image (only using `astconvertt` program) in Section 2.6.2 [Color image using linear transformation], page 154. But we saw that showing the brighter and fainter parts of the galaxy in a single image is impossible in the linear scale! In this section, we will use Gnuastro's `astscript-color-faint-gray` installed script to address this problem and create images which visualize a major fraction of the contents of our astronomical data.

This script aims to solve the problems mentioned in the previous section. See Infante-Sainz et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.03814`), which first introduced this script, for examples of the final images we will be producing in this tutorial. This script uses a non-linear transformation to modify the bright input values before combining them to produce the color image. Furthermore, for the faint regions of the image, it will use grayscale and avoid color over all (as we saw, colored noised is not too nice to look at!). The faint regions are also inverted: so the brightest pixel in the faint (black-and-white or grayscale) region is black and the faintest pixels will be white. Black therefore creates a smooth transition from the colored bright pixels: the faintest colored pixel is also black. Since the background is white and the diffuse parts are black, the final product will also show nice in print or show on a projector (the background is not black, but white!).

The SDSS image we used in the previous sections doesn't show the full glory of the M51 group! Therefore, in this section, we will use the wider images from the J-PLUS survey (`https://www.j-plus.es`). Fortunately J-PLUS includes the SDSS filters, so we can use the same iSDSS, rSDSSS, and gSDSS filters of J-PLUS. As a consequence, similar to the previous section, the R, G, and B channels are respectively mapped to the iSDSS, rSDSS and gSDSS filters of J-PLUS.

The J-PLUS identification numbers for the images containing the M51 galaxy group are in these three filters are respectively: 92797, 92801, 92803. The J-PLUS images are already sky subtracted and aligned into the same pixel grid (so we will not need the `astwarp` and `astnoisechisel` steps before). However, zero point magnitudes of the J-PLUS images are different: 23.43, 23.74, 23.74. Also, the field of view of the J-PLUS Camera is very large and we only need a small region to see the M51 galaxy group. Therefore, we will crop the regions around the M51 group with a width of 0.35 degree wide (or 21 arcmin) and put the crops in the same `aligned/` directory we made before (which contains the inputs to the colored images). With all the above information, let's download, crop, and have a look at the images to check that everything is fine. Finally, let's run `astscript-color-faint-gray` on the three cropped images.

```
## Download
$ url=https://archive.cefca.es/catalogues/vo/siap/jplus-dr3/get_fits?id=
$ wget "$url"92797 -Oin/i-jplus.fits.fz
$ wget "$url"92801 -Oin/r-jplus.fits.fz
$ wget "$url"92803 -Oin/g-jplus.fits.fz

## Crop
$ widthdeg=0.35
$ ra=202.4741207
$ dec=47.2171879
```

```
$ for f in i r g; do \
    astcrop in/$f-jplus.fits.fz --center=$ra,$dec \
            --width=$widthdeg --output=aligned/$f-jplus.fits; \
  done

## Visual inspection of the images used for the color image
$ astscript-fits-view aligned/*-jplus.fits

## Create colored image.
$ R=aligned/i-jplus.fits
$ G=aligned/r-jplus.fits
$ B=aligned/g-jplus.fits
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B -g1 --output=m51.pdf
```

After opening the PDF, you will notice that it is a color image with a gray background, making the M51 group and background galaxies visible together. However, the images does not look nice and there is significant room for improvement! You will notice that at the end of its operation, the script printed some numerical values for four options in a table, to show automatically estimated parameter values. To enhance the output, let's go through and explain these step by step.

Zero as blank value: Some astronomical data analysis software do not put "Not a Number" (NaN) in pixels that do not have data (for example there was no exposure there); instead they put a value of zero (or any other arbitrary number)! When present, such pixels usually occur on the outer edges of images (for example the image was taken at a rotated angle to the equatorial coordinates of the pixel grid). However, zero (or any arbitrary number) is statistically meaningful and will bias the measurements done in this (or any other) analysis. The examples here don't have such regions, but it is important to be prepared.

If your inputs suffer from this problem, run the command below to convert the zero (or any other arbitrary value) to a NaN before starting to use this script:

```
$ astarithmetic img.fits set-i i i 0 eq nan where --output=good.fits
```

The first important point to take into account is the photometric calibration. If the images are photometrically calibrated, then it is necessary to use the calibration to put the images in the same physical units and create "real" colors. The script is able to do it through the zero point magnitudes with the option `--zeropoint` (or `-z`). With this option, the images are internally transformed to have the same pixel units and then create the color image. Since the magnitude zero points are 23.43, 23.74, 23.74 for the i, r, and g images, let's use them in the definition

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B -g1 --output=m51.pdf \
                           -z23.43 -z23.74 -z23.74
```

Open the image and have a look. This image does not differ too much from the one generated by default (not using the zero point magnitudes). This is because the zero point values used here are similar for the three images. But in other datasets the calibration could make a big difference!

Let's consider another vital parameter: the minimum value to be displayed (`--minimum` or `-m`). Pixel values below this number will not be shown on the color image. In general, if the sky background has been subtracted (see Section 2.6.2 [Color image using linear transformation], page 154), you can use the same value (0) for all three. However, it is possible to consider different minimum values for the inputs (in this case use as many `-m` as input images). In this particular case, a minimum value of zero for all images is suitable. To keep the command simple, we'll add the zero point, minimum and HDU of each image in the variable that also had its filename.

```
$ R="aligned/i-jplus.fits -h1 --zeropoint=23.43 --minimum=0.0"
$ G="aligned/r-jplus.fits -h1 --zeropoint=23.74 --minimum=0.0"
$ B="aligned/g-jplus.fits -h1 --zeropoint=23.74 --minimum=0.0"
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B --output=m51.pdf
```

In contrast to the previous image, the new PDF (with a minimum value of zero) exhibits a better background visualization because it is avoiding negative pixels to be included in the scaling (they are white).

Now let's review briefly how the script modifies the pixel value distribution in order to show the entire dynamical range in an appropriate way. The script combines the three images into a single one by using a the mean operator, as a consequence, the combined image is the average of the three R, G, and B images. This averaged image is used for performing the asinh transformation of Lupton et al. 2004 (`https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2004PASP..116..133L`) that is controlled by two parameters: `--qbright` (q) and `--stretch` (s).

The asinh transformation consists in transforming the combined image (I) according to the expression: $f(I) = asinh(q \times s \times I)/q$. When $q \to 0$, the expression becomes linear with a slope of the "stretch" (s) parameter: $f(I) = s \times I$. In practice, we can use this characteristic to first set a low value for `--qbright` and see the brighter parts in color, while changing the parameter `--stretch` to show linearly the fainter regions (outskirts of the galaxies for example. The image obtained previously was computed by the default parameters (`--qthresh=1.0` and `--stretch=1.0`). So, let's set a lower value for `--qbright` and check the result.

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B --output=m51-qlow.pdf \
                              --qbright=0.01
```

Comparing `m51.pdf` and `m51-qlow.pdf`, you will see that a large area of the previously colored colored pixels have become black. Only the very brightest pixels (core of the galaxies and stars) are shown in color. Now, let's bring out the fainter regions around the brightest pixels linearly by increasing `--stretch`. This allows you to reveal fainter regions, such as outer parts of galaxies, spiral arms, stellar streams, and similar structures. Please, try different values to see the effect of changing this parameter. Here, we will use the value of `--stretch=100`.

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B --output=m51-qlow-shigh.pdf \
                              --qbright=0.01 --stretch=100
```

Do you see how the spiral arms and the outskirts of the galaxies have become visible as `--stretch` is increased? After some trials, you will have the necessary feeling to see how it works. Please, play with these two parameters until you obtain the desired results. Depending on the absolute pixel values of the input images and the photometric calibration,

these two parameters will be different. So, when using this script on your own data, take your time to study and analyze which parameters are good for showing the entire dynamical range. For this tutorial, we will keep it simple and use the previous parameters. Let's define a new variable to keep the parameters already discussed so we have short command-line examples.

```
$ params="--qbright=0.01 --stretch=100"
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --output=m51.pdf
$ rm m51-qlow.pdf m51-qlow-shigh.pdf
```

Having a separate color-map for the fainter parts is generally a good thing, but for some reason you may not want it! To disable this feature, you can use the `--coloronly` option:

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --coloronly \
                             --output=m51-coloronly.pdf
```

Open the image and note that now the coloring has gone all the way into the noise (producing a black background). In contrast with the gray background images before, the fainter/smaller stars/galaxies and the low surface brightness features are not visible anymore! These regions show the interaction of two galaxies; as well as all the other background galaxies and foreground stars. These structures were entirely hidden in the "only-color" images. Consequently, the gray background color scheme is particularly useful for visualizing the most features of your data and you will rarely need to use the `--coloronly` option. We will therefore not use this option anymore in this tutorial; and let's clean the temporary file made before:

```
$ rm m51-coloronly.pdf
```

Now that we have the basic parameters are set, let's consider other parameters that allow to fine tune the three ranges of values: color for the brightest pixel values, black for intermediate pixel values, and gray for the faintest pixel values:

- `--colorval` defines the boundary between the color and black regions (the lowest pixel value that is colored).
- `--grayval` defines the boundary between the black and gray regions (the highest gray value).

Looking at the last lines that the script prints, we see that the default value estimated for `--colorval` and `--grayval` are roughly 1.4. What do they mean? To answer this question it is necessary to have a look at the image that is used to separate those different regions. By default, this image is computed internally by the script and removed at the end. To have a look at it, you need to use the option `--keeptmp` to keep the temporary files. Let's put the temporary files into the `tmp` directory with the option `--tmpdir=tmp --keeptmp`. The first will use the name `tmp` for the temporary directory and with the second, we ask the script to not delete (keep) it after all operations are done.

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --output=m51.pdf \
                             --tmpdir=tmp --keeptmp
```

The image that defines the thresholds is `./tmp/colorgray_threshold.fits`. By default, this image is the asinh-transformed image with the pixel values between 0 (faint) and 100 (bright). If you obtain the statistics of this image, you will see that the median value is exactly the value that the script is giving as the `--colorval`.

```
$ aststatistics ./tmp/colorgray_threshold.fits
```

In other words, all pixels between 100 and this value (1.4) on the threshold image will be shown in color. To see its effect, let's increase this parameter to `--colorval=25`. By doing this, we expect that only bright pixels (those between 100 and 25 in the threshold image) will be in color.

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --colorval=25 \
                             --output=m51-colorval.pdf
```

Open `m51-colorval.pdf` and check that it is true! Only the central part of the objects (very bright pixels, those between 100 and 25 on the threshold image) are shown in color. Fainter pixels (below 25 on the threshold image) are shown in black and gray. However, in many situations it is good to be able to show the outskirts of galaxies and low surface brightness features in pure black, while showing the background in gray. To do that, we can use another threshold that separates the black and gray pixels: `--grayval`.

Similar to `--colorval`, the `--grayval` option defines the separation between the pure black and the gray pixels from the threshold image. For example, by setting `--grayval=5`, those pixels below 5 in the threshold image will be shown in gray, brighter pixels will be shown in black until the value 25. Pixels brighter than 25 are shown in color.

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --output=m51-check.pdf \
                             --colorval=25 --grayval=5
```

Open the image and check that the regions shown in color are smaller (as before), and that now there is a region around those color pixels that are in pure black. After the black pixels toward the fainter ones, they are shown in gray. As explained above, in the gray region, the brightest are black and the faintest are white. It is recommended to experiment with different values around the estimated one to have a feeling on how it changes the image. To have even better idea of those regions, please run the following example to keep temporary files and check the labeled image it has produced:

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --output=m51-check.pdf \
                             --colorval=25 --grayval=5 \
                             --tmpdir=tmp --keeptmp

$ astscript-fits-view tmp/total_mask-2color-1black-0gray.fits
```

In this segmentation image, pixels equal to 2 will be shown in color, pixels equal to 1 will be shown as pure black, and pixels equal to zero are shown in gray. By default, the script sets the same value for both thresholds. That means that there is not many pure black pixels. By adjusting the `--colorval` and `--grayval` parameters, you can obtain an optimal result to show the bright and faint parts of your data within one printable image. The values used here are somewhat extreme to illustrate the logic of the procedure, but we encourage you to experiment with values close to the estimated by default in order to have a smooth transition between the three regions (color, black, and gray). The script can provide additional information about the pixel value distributions used to estimate the parameters by using the `--checkparams` option.

To conclude this section of the tutorial, let's clean up the temporary test files:

```
$ rm m51-check.pdf m51-colorval.pdf
```

2.6.4 Manually setting color-black-gray regions

In Section 2.6.3 [Color for bright regions and grayscale for faint], page 157, we created a non-linear colored image. We used the `--colorval` and `--grayval` options to specify which regions to show in gray (faintest values), black (intermediate values) and color (brightest values). We also saw that the script uses a labeled image with three possible values for each pixel to identify how that pixel should be colored.

A useful feature of this script is the possibility of providing this labeled image as an input directly. This expands the possibilities of generating color images in a more quantitative way. In this section, we'll use this feature to use a more physically motivated criteria to select these three regions (the surface brightness in the reddest band).

First, let's generate a surface brightness image from the R channel. That is, the value of each pixel will be in the units of surface brightness (mag/arcsec^2). To do that, we need obtain the pixel area in arcsec and use the zero point value of the image. Then, the `counts-to-sb` operator of `astarithmetic` is used. For more on the conversion of NaN surface brightness values and the value to `R_sbl` (which is roughly the surface brightness limit of this image), see Section 2.1.20 [FITS images in a publication], page 65.

```
$ sb_sbl=26
$ sb_zp=23.43
$ sb_img=aligned/i-jplus.fits
$ pixarea=$(astfits $sb_img --pixelareaarcsec2 --quiet)

# Compute the SB image (set NaNs to SB of 26!)
$ astarithmetic $sb_img $sb_zp $pixarea counts-to-sb set-sb \
                sb sb isblank sb $sb_sbl gt or $sb_sbl where \
                --output=sb.fits

# Have a look at the image
$ astscript-fits-view sb.fits --ds9scale=minmax \
                      --ds9extra="-invert"
```

Remember that because `sb.fits` is a surface brightness image where lower values are brighter and higher values are fainter. Let's build the labeled image that defines the regions (`regions.fits`) step-by-step with the following criteria in surface brightness (SB)

SB < 23 These are the brightest pixels, we want these in color. In the regions labeled image, these should get a value of 2.

$23 <$ SB < 25
These are the intermediate pixel values, to see the fainter parts better, we want these in pure black (no change in color in this range). In the regions labeled image, these should get a value of 1.

SB > 25 These are the faintest pixel values, we want these in a gray color map (pixels with an SB of 25 will be black and as they become fainter, they will become lighter shades of gray). In the regions labeled image, these should get a value of 0.

```
# SB thresholds (low and high)
$ sb_faint=25
```

```
$ sb_bright=23

# Select the three ranges of pixels.
$ astarithmetic sb.fits set-sb \
                sb $sb_bright lt set-color \
                sb $sb_bright ge sb $sb_faint lt and set-black \
                color 2 u8 x black + \
                --output=regions.fits

# Check the images
$ astscript-fits-view regions.fits
```

We can now use this labeled image with the `--regions` option for obtaining the final image with the desired regions (the `R`, `G`, `B` and `params` shell variables were set previously in Section 2.6.3 [Color for bright regions and grayscale for faint], page 157):

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --output=m51-sb.pdf \
                             --regions=regions.fits
```

Open `m51-sb.pdf` and have a look. Do you see how the different regions (SB intervals) have been colored differently? They come from the SB levels we defined, and because it is using absolute thresholds in physical units of surface brightness, the visualization is not only a nice looking color image, but can be used in scientific analysis.

This is really interesting because now it is possible to use color images for detecting low surface brightness features at the same time they provide quantitative measurements. Of course, here we have defined this region label image just using two surface brightness values, but it is possible to define any other labeled region image that you may need for your particular purpose.

2.6.5 Weights, contrast, markers and other customizations

Previously (in Section 2.6.4 [Manually setting color-black-gray regions], page 162) we used an absolute (in units of surface brightness) thresholding for selecting which regions to show by color, black and gray. To keep the previous configurations and avoid long commands, let's add the previous options to the `params` shell variable. To help in readability, we will repeat the other shell variables from previous sections also:

```
$ R="aligned/i-jplus.fits -h1 --zeropoint=23.43 --minimum=0.0"
$ G="aligned/r-jplus.fits -h1 --zeropoint=23.74 --minimum=0.0"
$ B="aligned/g-jplus.fits -h1 --zeropoint=23.74 --minimum=0.0"
$ params="--regions=regions.fits --qbright=0.01 --stretch=100"
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --output=m51.pdf
```

To modify the color balance of the output image, you can weigh the three channels differently with the `--weight` or `-w` option. For example, by using `-w1 -w1 -w2`, you give two times more weight to the blue channel than to the red and green channels:

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params -w1 -w1 -w2 \
                             --output=m51-weighted.pdf
```

The colored pixels of the output are much bluer now and the distinction between the two merging galaxies is more clear. However, keep in mind that altering the different filters can lead to incorrect subsequent analyses by the readers/viewers of this work (for example they

will falsely think that the galaxy is blue, and not red!). If the reduction and photometric calibration are correct, and the images represent what you consider as the red, green, and blue channels, then the output color image should be suitable without weights.

In certain situations, the combination of channels may not have a traditional color interpretation. For instance, combining an X-ray channel with an optical filter and a far-infrared image can complicate the interpretation in terms of human understanding of color. But the physical interpretation remains valid as the different channels (colors in the output) represent different physical phenomena of astronomical sources. Another easier example is the use of narrow-band filters such as the H-alpha of J-PLUS survey. This is shown in the Bottom-right panel of Figure 1 by Infante-Sainz et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.03814`), in this case the G channel has been substituted by the image corresponding to the H-alpha filter to show the star formation regions. Therefore, please use the weights with caution, as it can significantly affect the output and misinform your readers/viewers.

If you do apply weights be sure to report the weights in the caption of the image (beside the filters that were used for each channel). With great power there must also come great responsibility!

Two additional transformations are available to modify the appearance of the output color image. The linear transformation combines bias adjustment and contrast enhancement through the `--bias` and `--contrast` options. In most cases, only the contrast adjustment is necessary to improve the quality of the color image. To illustrate the impact of adjusting image contrast, we will generate an image with higher contrast and compare with the previous one.

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --contrast=2 \
                              --output=m51-contrast.pdf
```

When you compare this (`m51-contrast.pdf`) with the previous output (`m51.pdf`), you see that the colored parts are now much more clear! Use this option also with caution because it may happen that the bright parts become saturated.

Another option available for transforming the image appearance is the gamma correction, a non-linear transformation that can be useful in specific cases. You can experiment with different gamma values to observe the impact on the resulting image. Lower gamma values will enhance faint structures, while higher values will emphasize brighter regions. Let's have a look by giving two very different values to it with the simple loop below:

```
$ for g in 0.4 2.0; do \
    astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --contrast=2 \
             --gamma=$g --output=m51-gamma-$g.pdf; \
  done
```

Comparing the last three files (`m51-contrast.pdf`, `m51-gamma-0.4.pdf` and `m51-gamma-2.0.pdf`), you will clearly see the effect of the `--gamma`.

Instead of using a combination of the three input images for the gray background, you can introduce a fourth image that will be used for generating the gray background. This image is referred to as the `"K"` channel and may be useful when a particular filter is deeper, has unique characteristics, or you have built by some custom processing to show the diffuse features better. In this case, this image will be used for defining the `--colorval` and `--grayval` thresholds, but the rationale remains the same as explained earlier.

Two additional options are available to smooth different regions by convolving with a Gaussian kernel: `--colorkernelfwhm` for smoothing color regions and `--graykernelfwhm` for convolving gray regions. The value specified for these options represents the full width at half maximum of the Gaussian kernel.

Finally, another commonly useful feature is `--markoptions`: it allows you to mark and label the final output image with vector graphics over the color image. The arguments passed through this option are directly passed to ConvertType for the generation of the output image. This feature was already used in Section 2.1.21 [Marking objects for publication], page 69, of the Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22; see there for a more complete introduction.

Let's create four marks/labels just to illustrate the procedure within `astscript-color-faint-gray`. First we need to create a table that contains the parameters for creating the marks (coordinates, shape, size, colors, etc.). In order to have an example that could be easily salable to more marks, with elaborated options let's create it by parts: the header with the column names, and the parameters. With the following commands, we'll create the header that contains the column metadata.

```
echo "# Column 1: ra      [pix, f32] RA coordinate"   > markers.txt
echo "# Column 2: dec     [pix, f32] Dec coordinate" >> markers.txt
echo "# Column 3: shape   [none, u8] Marker shape"   >> markers.txt
echo "# Column 4: size    [pix, f32] Marker Size"    >> markers.txt
echo "# Column 5: aratio  [none, f32] Axis ratio"    >> markers.txt
echo "# Column 6: angle   [deg, f32] Position angle" >> markers.txt
echo "# Column 7: color   [none, u8] Marker color"   >> markers.txt
```

Next is to create the parameters that define the markers. In this case, with the lines below we create four markers (cross, ellipse, square, and line) at different positions, with different shapes, and colors. These lines are appended to the header file created previously.

```
echo "400.00  400.00  3  60.000  0.50  0.000  8"  >> markers.txt
echo "1800.0  400.00  4  120.00  0.30  45.00  58" >> markers.txt
echo "400.00  1800.0  6  180.00  1.00  0.000  85" >> markers.txt
echo "1800.0  1800.0  8  240.00  1.00  -45.0  25" >> markers.txt
```

Now that we have the table containing the definition of the markers, we use the `--markoptions` option of this script. This option will pass what ever is given to it directly to ConvertType, so you can use all the options in Section 5.2.5.3 [Drawing with vector graphics], page 338. For this basic example, let's give it the following options:

```
markoptions="--mode=img \
             --sizeinarcsec \
             --markshape=shape \
             --markrotate=angle \
             --markcolor=color \
             --marks=markers.txt \
             --markcoords=ra,dec \
             --marksize=size,aratio"
```

The last step consists in executing the script with the option that provides all the markers options.

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray $R $G $B $params --contrast=2 \
```

```
--markoptions="$markoptions" \
--output=m51-marked.pdf
```

Open the `m51-marked.pdf` and check that the four markers have been printed on the image. With this quick example we just show the possibility of drawing markers on images very easily. This task can be automated, for example by plotting markers from a given catalog at specific positions, and so on. Note that there are many other options for customize your markers/drawings over an output of ConvertType, see Section 5.2.5.3 [Drawing with vector graphics], page 338, and Section 2.1.21 [Marking objects for publication], page 69.

Congratulations! By following the tutorial up to this point, we have been able to reproduce three images of Infante-Sainz et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.03814`). You can see the commands that were used to generate them within the reproducible source of that paper at `https://codeberg.org/gnuastro/papers/src/branch/color-faint-gray`. Remember that this paper is exactly reproducible with Maneage, so you can explore and build the entire paper by yourself. For more on Maneage, see Akhlaghi et al. 2021 (`https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2021CSE....23c..82A`).

This tutorial provided a general overview of the various options to construct a color image from three different FITS images using the `astscript-color-faint-gray` script. Keep in mind that the optimal parameters for generating the best color image depend on your specific goals and the quality of your input images. We encourage you to follow this tutorial with the provided J-PLUS images and later with your own dataset. See Section 10.7 [Color images with gray faint regions], page 720, for more information, and please consider citing Infante-Sainz et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.03814`) if you use this script in your work (the full BibTeX entry of this paper will be given to you with the `--cite` option).

2.7 Zero point of an image

The "zero point" of an image is astronomical jargon for the calibration factor of its pixel values; allowing us to convert the raw pixel values to physical units. It is therefore a critical step during data reduction. For more on the definition and importance of the zero point magnitude, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, and Section 10.5 [Zero point estimation], page 709.

In this tutorial, we will use Gnuastro's `astscript-zeropoint`, to estimate the zero point of a single exposure image from the J-PLUS survey (`https://www.j-plus.es`), while using an SDSS (`http://www.sdss.org`) image as reference (recall that all SDSS images have been calibrated to have a fixed zero point of 22.5). In this case, both images that we are using were taken with the SDSS r filter. See Eskandarlou et al. 2023 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2312.04263`).

Same filters and SVO filter database: It is very important that both your images are taken with the same filter. When looking at filter names, don't forget that different filter systems sometimes have the same names for one filter, such as the name "R"; which is used in both the Johnson and SDSS filter systems. Hence if you confront an image in the "R" or "r" filter, double check to see exactly which filter system it corresponds to. If you know which observatory your data came from, you can use the SVO database (`http://svo2.cab.inta-csic.es/theory/fps`) to confirm the similarity of the transmission curves of the filters of your input and reference images. SVO contains the filter data for many of the observatories world-wide.

2.7.1 Zero point tutorial with reference image

First, let's create a directory named `tutorial-zeropoint` to keep things clean and work in that. Then, with the commands below, you can download an image from J-PLUS and SDSS. To speed up the analysis, the image is cropped to have a smaller region around its center.

```
$ mkdir tutorial-zeropoint
$ cd tutorial-zeropoint
$ jplusdr2=http://archive.cefca.es/catalogues/vo/siap/jplus-dr2/reduced
$ wget $jplusdr2/get_fits?id=771463 -O jplus.fits.fz
$ astcrop jplus.fits.fz --center=107.7263,40.1754 \
          --width=0.6 --output=jplus-crop.fits
```

Although we cropped the J-PLUS image, it is still very large in comparison with the SDSS image (the J-PLUS field of view is almost 1.5×1.5 deg^2, while the field of view of SDSS in each filter is almost 0.3×0.5 deg^2). Therefore, let's download two SDSS images (and then decompress them) in the region of the cropped J-PLUS image to have a more accurate result compared to a single SDSS footprint: generally, your zero point estimation will have less scatter with more overlap between your reference image(s) and your input image.

```
$ sdssbase=https://dr12.sdss.org/sas/dr12/boss/photoObj/frames
$ wget $sdssbase/301/6509/5/frame-r-006509-5-0115.fits.bz2 \
       -O sdss1.fits.bz2
$ wget $sdssbase/301/6573/5/frame-r-006573-5-0174.fits.bz2 \
       -O sdss2.fits.bz2
$ bunzip2 sdss1.fits.bz2
$ bunzip2 sdss2.fits.bz2
```

To have a feeling of the data, let's open the three images with `astscript-fits-view` using the command below. Wait a few seconds to see the three images "blinking" one after another. The largest one is the J-PLUS crop and the two smaller ones that partially cover it in different regions are from SDSS.

```
$ astscript-fits-view sdss1.fits sdss2.fits jplus-crop.fits \
           --ds9extra="-lock frame wcs -single -zoom to fit -blink yes"
```

The test above showed that the three images are already astrometrically calibrated (the coverage of the pixel positions on the sky is correct in both). To confirm, you can zoom-in to a certain object and confirm it on a pixel level. It is always good to do the visual

check above when you are confronted with new images (and may not be confident about the accuracy of the astrometry). Do not forget that the goal here is to find the calibration of pixel values; and that we assume pixel positions are already calibrated (the image already has a good astrometry).

The SDSS images are Sky subtracted, while this single-exposure J-PLUS image still contains the counts related to the Sky emission within them. In the J-PLUS survey, the sky-level in each pixel is kept in a separate `BACKGROUND_MODEL` HDU of `jplus.fits.fz`; this allows you to use a different sky if you like. The SDSS image FITS files also have multiple extensions. To understand our inputs, let's have a fast look at the basic info of each:

```
$ astfits sdss1.fits
Fits (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
Run on Fri Apr 14 11:24:03 2023
-----
HDU (extension) information: 'sdss1.fits'.
 Column 1: Index (counting from 0, usable with '--hdu').
 Column 2: Name ('EXTNAME' in FITS standard, usable with '--hdu').
           ('n/a': no name in HDU metadata)
 Column 3: Image data type or 'table' format (ASCII or binary).
 Column 4: Size of data in HDU.
 Column 5: Units of data in HDU (only images).
           ('n/a': no unit in HDU metadata, or HDU is a table)
-----
0      n/a             float32         2048x1489 nanomaggy
1      n/a             float32         2048      n/a
2      n/a             table_binary    1x3       n/a
3      n/a             table_binary    1x31      n/a



$ astfits jplus.fits.fz
Fits (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
Run on Fri Apr 14 11:21:30 2023
-----
HDU (extension) information: 'jplus.fits.fz'.
 Column 1: Index (counting from 0, usable with '--hdu').
 Column 2: Name ('EXTNAME' in FITS standard, usable with '--hdu').
           ('n/a': no name in HDU metadata)
 Column 3: Image data type or 'table' format (ASCII or binary).
 Column 4: Size of data in HDU.
 Column 5: Units of data in HDU (only images).
           ('n/a': no unit in HDU metadata, or HDU is a table)
-----
0      n/a             no-data         0         n/a
1      IMAGE           float32         9216x9232 adu
2      MASKED_PIXELS   int16           9216x9232 n/a
```

```
3      BACKGROUND_MODEL float32         9216x9232 n/a
4      MASK_MODEL       uint8           9216x9232 n/a
```

Therefore, in order to be able to compare the SDSS and J-PLUS images, we should first subtract the sky from the J-PLUS image. To do that, we can either subtract the `BACKGROUND_MODEL` HDU from the `IMAGE` HDU using Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403, or we can use Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, to find a good sky ourselves. As scientists we like to tweak and be creative, so let's estimate it ourselves with the command below. Generally, you may not have a pre-estimated Sky estimation like above, so you should be prepared to subtract the sky yourself.

```
$ astnoisechisel jplus-crop.fits --output=jplus-nc.fits
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-nc.fits
```

Notice that there is a relatively bright star in the center-bottom of the image. In the "Cube" window, click on the "Next" button to see the `DETECTIONS` HDU. The large footprint of the bright star is obvious. Press the "Next" button one more time to get to the `SKY` HDU. You see that in the center-bottom, the footprint of the large star is clearly visible in the measured Sky level. This is not good! With Sky values above 54 ADU in the center of the star (the white pixels). This over-subtracted Sky level in part of the image will affect your magnitude measurements and thus the zero point!

In Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, we have a section on Section 2.1.11 [NoiseChisel optimization for detection], page 41, there is also a full tutorial on this in Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80. Therefore, we will not go into the details of NoiseChisel optimization here. Given the large images of J-PLUS, we will increase the tile-size to 100×100 pixels and the number of neighbors to identify outlying tiles to 50 (these are usually the first parameters you should start editing when you are confronted with a new image). After the second command, check the `SKY` extension to confirm that there is no footprint of any bright object there. You will still see a gradient, but note the minimum and maximum values of the Sky level: their difference is more than 26 times smaller than the noise standard deviation (so statistically speaking, it is pretty flat!)

```
$ astnoisechisel jplus-crop.fits --output=jplus-nc.fits \
                 --tilesize=100,100 --outliernumngb=50
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-nc.fits


## Check that the gradient in the sky is statistically negligible.
$ aststatistics jplus-nc.fits -hSKY --minimum --maximum \
                | awk '{print $2-$1}'
0.32809
$ aststatistics jplus-nc.fits -hSKY_STD --median
8.377977e+00
```

We are now ready to find the zero point! First, let's run the `astscript-zeropoint` with `--help` to see the option names (recall that you can see more details of each option in Section 10.5.1 [Invoking astscript-zeropoint], page 710). For the first time, let's use the script in the most simple state possible. We will keep only the essential options: the names of the input and reference images (and their HDUs), the name of the output, and also two apertures with radii of 3 arcsec to start with:

```
$ astscript-zeropoint --help
$ astscript-zeropoint jplus-nc.fits --hdu=INPUT-NO-SKY \
                      --refimgs=sdss1.fits,sdss2.fits \
                      --output=jplus-zeropoint.fits \
                      --refimgszp=22.5,22.5 \
                      --refimgshdu=0,0 \
                      --aperarcsec=3
```

The output is a FITS table (because generally, you will give more apertures and choose the best one based on a higher-level analysis). Let's check the output's internal structure with Gnuastro's `astfits` program.

```
$ astfits jplus-zeropoint.fits
-----
0      n/a             no-data         0     n/a
1      ZEROPOINTS      table_binary    1x3   n/a
2      APER-3          table_binary    321x2 n/a
```

You can see that there are two HDUs in this file. The HDU names give a hint, so let's have a look at each extension with Gnuastro's `asttable` program:

```
$ asttable jplus-zeropoint.fits --hdu=1 -i
--------
jplus-zeropoint.fits (hdu: 1)
-------       -----   ----     -------
No.Name       Units   Type     Comment
-------       -----   ----     -------
1  APERTURE   arcsec  float32  n/a
2  ZEROPOINT  mag     float32  n/a
3  ZPSTD      mag     float32  n/a
--------
Number of rows: 1
--------
```

As you can see, in the first extension, for each of the apertures you requested (`APERTURE`), there is a zero point (`ZEROPOINT`) and the standard deviation of the measurements on the apertures (`ZPSTD`). In this case, we only requested one aperture, so it only has one row. Now, let's have a look at the next extension:

```
$ asttable jplus-zeropoint.fits --hdu=2 -i
--------
jplus-zeropoint.fits (hdu: 2)
-------      -----  ----     -------
No.Name      Units  Type     Comment
-------      -----  ----     -------
1  MAG-REF   f32    float32  Magnitude of reference.
2  MAG-DIFF  f32    float32  Magnitude diff with input.
--------
Number of rows: 321
--------
```

It contains a table of measurements for the aperture with the least scatter. In this case, we only gave one aperture, so it is the same. If you give multiple apertures, only the one with least scatter will be present by default. In the `MAG-REF` column you see the magnitudes within each aperture on the reference (SDSS) image(s). The `MAG-DIFF` column contains the difference of the input (J-PLUS) and reference (SDSS) magnitudes for each aperture (see Section 10.5 [Zero point estimation], page 709). The two catalogs, created by the aperture photometry from the SDSS images, are merged into one so that there are more stars to compare. Therefore, no matter how many reference images you provide, there will only be a single table here. If the two SDSS images overlapped, each object in the overlap region would have two rows (one row for the measurement from one SDSS image, and another from the measurement from the other).

Now that we have obtained the zero point of the J-PLUS image, let's go a little deeper into lower-level details of how this script operates. This will help you better understand what happened and how to interpret and improve the outputs when you are confronted with a new image and strange outputs.

To keep intermediate results the `astscript-zeropoint` script keeps temporary files in a temporary directory and later deletes it (and all the intermediate products). If you like to check the temporary files of the intermediate steps, you can use `--keeptmp` option to not remove them.

Let's take a closer look into the contents of each HDU. First, we'll use Gnuastro's `asttable` to see the measured zero point for this aperture. We are using `-Y` to have human-friendly (non-scientific!) numbers (which are sufficient here) and `-O` to also show the metadata of each column at the start.

```
$ asttable jplus-zeropoint.fits -Y -O
# Column 1: APERTURE  [arcsec,f32,] Aperture used.
# Column 2: ZEROPOINT [mag   ,f32,] Zero point (sig-clip median).
# Column 3: ZPSTD     [mag   ,f32,] Zero point Standard deviation.
3.000          26.435          0.057
```

Now, let's have a look at the first 10 rows of the second (`APER-3`) extension. From the previous check we did above, we see that it contains 321 rows!

```
$ asttable jplus-zeropoint.fits -Y -O --hdu=APER-3 --head=10
# Column 1: MAG-REF  [f32,f32,] Magnitude of reference.
# Column 2: MAG-DIFF [f32,f32,] Magnitude diff with input.
16.461         30.035
16.243         28.209
15.427         26.427
20.064         26.459
17.334         26.425
20.518         26.504
17.100         26.400
16.919         26.428
17.654         26.373
15.392         26.429
```

But the table above is hard to interpret, so let's plot it. To do this, we'll use the same `astscript-fits-view` command above that we used for images. It detects if the file has

a image or table HDU and will call DS9 or TOPCAT respectively. You can also use any other plotter you like (TOPCAT is not part of Gnuastro), this script just calls it.

```
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-zeropoint.fits --hdu=APER-3
```

After `TOPCAT` opens, you can select the "Graphics" menu and then "Plain plot". This will show a plot with the SDSS (reference image) magnitude on the horizontal axis and the difference of magnitudes between the the input and reference (the zero point) on the vertical axis.

In an ideal world, the zero point should be independent of the magnitude of the different stars that were used. Therefore, this plot should be a horizontal line (with some scatter as we go to fainter stars). But as you can see in the plot, in the real world, this expected behavior is seen only for stars with magnitudes about 16 to 19 in the reference SDSS images. The stars that are brighter than 16 are saturated in one (or both) surveys[54]. Therefore, they do not have the correct magnitude or mag-diff. You can check some of these stars visually by using the blinking command above and zooming into some of the brighter stars in the SDSS images.

On the other hand, it is natural that we cannot measure accurate magnitudes for the fainter stars because the noise level (or "depth") of each image is limited. As a result, the horizontal line becomes wider (scattered) as we go to the right (fainter magnitudes on the horizontal axis). So, let's limit the range of used magnitudes from the SDSS catalog to calculate a more accurate zero point for the J-PLUS image. For this reason, we have the `--magnituderange` option in `astscript-zeropoint`.

Necessity of sky subtraction: To obtain this horizontal line, it is very important that both your images have been sky subtracted. Please, repeat the last `astscript-zeropoint` command above only by changing the input file to `jplus-crop.fits`. Then use Gnuastro's `astscript-fits-view` again to draw a plot with `TOPCAT` (also same as above). Instead of a horizontal line, you will see *a sloped line* in the magnitude range above! This happens because the sky level acts as a source of constant signal in all apertures, so the magnitude difference will not be independent of the star's magnitude, but dependent on it (the measurement on a fainter star will be dominated by the sky level).

Remember: if you see a sloped line instead of a horizontal line, the input or reference image(s) are not sky subtracted.

Another key parameter of this script is the aperture size (`--aperarcsec`) for the aperture photometry of images. On one hand, if the selected aperture is too small, you will be at the mercy of the differing PSFs between your input and reference image(s): part of the light of the star will be lost in the image with the worse PSF. On the other hand, with large aperture size, the light of neighboring objects (stars/galaxies) can affect the photometry. We should select an aperture radius of the same order than the one used in the reference image, typically 2 to 3 times the PSF FWHM of the images. For now, let's assume the values 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 arcsec for the aperture sizes parameter. The script will compare the result for several aperture sizes and choose the one with least standard deviation value, `ZPSTD` column of the `ZEROPOINTS` HDU.

[54] To learn more about saturated pixels and recognition of the saturated level of the image, please see Section 2.3.2 [Saturated pixels and Segment's clumps], page 103

Let's re-run the script with the following changes:

- Using `--magnituderange` to limit the stars used for estimating the zero point.
- Giving more values for aperture size to find the best for these two images as explained above.
- Call `--keepzpap` option to keep the result of matching the catalogs done with the selected apertures in the different extensions of the output file.

```
$ astscript-zeropoint jplus-nc.fits --hdu=INPUT-NO-SKY \
                      --refimgs=sdss1.fits,sdss2.fits \
                      --output=jplus-zeropoint.fits \
                      --refimgszp=22.5,22.5 \
                      --aperarcsec=2,3,4,5,6 \
                      --magnituderange=16,18 \
                      --refimgshdu=0,0 \
                      --keepzpap
```

Now, check number of HDU extensions by `astfits`.

```
$ astfits jplus-zeropoint.fits
-----
0      n/a             no-data         0     n/a
1      ZEROPOINTS      table_binary    5x3   n/a
2      APER-2          table_binary    319x2 n/a
3      APER-3          table_binary    321x2 n/a
4      APER-4          table_binary    323x2 n/a
5      APER-5          table_binary    323x2 n/a
6      APER-6          table_binary    325x2 n/a
```

You can see that the output file now has a separate HDU for each aperture (thanks to `--keepzpap`.) The `ZEROPOINTS` hdu contains the final zero point values for each aperture and their error. The best zero point value belongs to the aperture that has the least scatter (has the lowest standard deviation). The rest of extensions contain the zero point value computed within each aperture (as discussed above).

Let's check the different tables by plotting all magnitude tables at the same time with `TOPCAT`.

```
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-zeropoint.fits
```

After `TOPCAT` has opened take the following steps:

1. From the "Graphics" menu, select "Plain plot". You will see the last HDU's scatter plot open in a new window (for `APER-6`, with red points). The Bottom-left panel has the logo of a red-blue scatter plot that has written `6:jplus-zeropoint.fits` in front of it (showing that this is the 6th HDU of this file). In the bottom-right panel, you see the names of the columns that are being displayed.
2. In the "Layers" menu, Click on "Add Position Control". On the bottom-left panel, you will notice that a new blue-red scatter plot has appeared but it just says `<no table>`. In the bottom-right panel, in front of "Table:", select any other extension. This will plot the same two columns of that extension as blue points. Zoom-in to the region of the horizontal line to see/compare the different scatters.

   Change the HDU given to "Table:" and see the distribution of zero points for the different apertures.

The manual/visual operation above is critical if this is your first time with a new dataset (it shows all kinds of systematic biases (like the Sky issue above)! But once you know your data has no systematic biases, choosing between the different apertures is not easy visually! Let's have a look at the table the `ZEROPOINTS` HDU (we don't need to explicitly call this HDU since it is the first one):

```
$ asttable jplus-zeropoint.fits -O -Y
# Column 1: APERTURE  [arcsec,f32,] Aperture used.
# Column 2: ZEROPOINT [mag   ,f32,] Zero point (sig-clip median).
# Column 3: ZPSTD     [mag   ,f32,] Zero point Standard deviation.
2.000          26.405          0.028
3.000          26.436          0.030
4.000          26.448          0.035
5.000          26.458          0.042
6.000          26.466          0.056
```

The most accurate zero point is the one where `ZPSTD` is the smallest. In this case, minimum of `ZPSTD` is with radii of 2 and 3 arcseconds. Run the `astscript-fits-view` command above again to open TOPCAT. Let's focus on the magnitude plots in these two apertures and determine a more accurate range of magnitude. The more reliable option is the range between 16.4 (where we have no saturated stars) and 18.5 mag (fainter than this, the scatter becomes too strong). Finally, let's set some more apertures between 2 and 3 arcseconds radius:

```
$ astscript-zeropoint jplus-nc.fits --hdu=INPUT-NO-SKY \
                      --refimgs=sdss1.fits,sdss2.fits \
                      --output=jplus-zeropoint.fits \
                      --magnituderange=16.4,18.5 \
                      --refimgszp=22.5,22.5 \
                      --aperarcsec=2,2.5,3,3.5,4 \
                      --refimgshdu=0,0 \
                      --keepzpap

$ asttable jplus-zeropoint.fits -Y
2.000          26.405          0.037
2.500          26.425          0.033
3.000          26.436          0.034
3.500          26.442          0.039
4.000          26.449          0.044
```

The aperture with the least scatter is therefore the 2.5 arcsec radius aperture, giving a zero point of 26.425 magnitudes for this image. However, you can see that the scatter for the 3 arcsec aperture is also acceptable. Actually, the `ZPSTD` for of the 2.5 and 3 arcsec apertures only have a difference of 3% ($= (0.034 - 0.0333)/0.033 \times 100$). So simply choosing the minimum is just a first-order approximation (which is accurate within $26.436 - 26.425 = 0.011$ magnitudes)

Note that in aperture photometry, the PSF plays an important role (because the aperture is fixed but the two images can have very different PSFs). The aperture with the least scatter should also account for the differing PSFs. Overall, please, always check the different and

intermediate steps to make sure the parameters are the good so the estimation of the zero point is correct.

If you are happy with the minimum, you don't have to search for the minimum aperture or its corresponding zero point yourself. This script has written it in `ZPVALUE` keyword of the table. With the first command, we also see the name of the file also, (you can use this on many files for example). With the second command, we are only printing the number by adding the `-q` (or `--quiet`) option (this is useful in a script where you want to write the value in a shell variable to use later).

```
$ astfits jplus-zeropoint.fits --keyvalue=ZPVALUE
jplus-zeropoint.fits 2.642512e+01

$ astfits jplus-zeropoint.fits --keyvalue=ZPVALUE -q
2.642512e+01
```

Generally, this script will write the following FITS keywords (all starting with `ZP`) for your future reference in its output:

```
$ astfits jplus-zeropoint.fits -h1 | grep ^ZP
ZPAPER  =                  2.5 / Best aperture.
ZPVALUE =              26.42512 / Best zero point.
ZPSTD   =           0.03276644 / Best std. dev. of zeropoint.
ZPMAGMIN=                16.4 / Min mag for obtaining zeropoint.
ZPMAGMAX=                18.5 / Max mag for obtaining zeropoint.
```

Using the `--keyvalue` option of the Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, program, you can easily get multiple of the values in one run (where necessary):

```
$ astfits jplus-zeropoint.fits --hdu=1 --quiet \
          --keyvalue=ZPAPER,ZPVALUE,ZPSTD
2.500000e+00   2.642512e+01   3.276644e-02
```

2.7.2 Zero point tutorial with reference catalog

In Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167, we explained how to use the `astscript-zeropoint` for estimating the zero point of one image based on a reference image. Sometimes there is not a reference image and we need to use a reference catalog. Fortunately, `astscript-zeropoint` can also use the catalog instead of the image to find the zero point.

To show this, let's download a catalog of SDSS in the area that overlaps with the cropped J-PLUS image (used in the previous section). For more on Gnuastro's Query program, please see Section 5.4 [Query], page 378. The columns of ID, RA, Dec and magnitude in the SDSS r filter are called by their name in the SDSS catalog.

```
$ astquery vizier \
           --dataset=sdss12 \
           --overlapwith=jplus-crop.fits \
           --column=objID,RA_ICRS,DE_ICRS,rmag \
           --output=sdss-catalog.fits
```

To visualize the position of the SDSS objects over the J-PLUS image, let's use `astscript-ds9-region` (for more details please see Section 10.3 [SAO DS9 region files

from table], page 702) with the command below (it will automatically open DS9 and load the regions it created):

```
$ astscript-ds9-region sdss-catalog.fits \
                       --column=RA_ICRS,DE_ICRS \
                       --color=red --width=3 --output=sdss.reg \
                       --command="ds9 jplus-nc.fits[INPUT-NO-SKY] \
                                      -scale zscale"
```

Now, we are ready to estimate the zero point of the J-PLUS image based on the SDSS catalog. To download the input image and understand how to use the `astscript-zeropoint`, please see Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167.

Many of the options (like the aperture size) and magnitude range are the same so we will not discuss them further. You will notice that the only substantive difference of the command below with the last command in the previous section is that we are using `--refcat` instead of `--refimgs`. There are also some cosmetic differences for example a new output name, not using `--refimgszp` since it is only necessary for images) and the `--*column` options which are used to identify the names of the necessary columns of the input catalog:

```
$ astscript-zeropoint jplus-nc.fits --hdu=INPUT-NO-SKY \
                      --refcat=sdss-catalog.fits \
                      --refcatmag=rmag \
                      --refcatra=RA_ICRS \
                      --refcatdec=DE_ICRS \
                      --output=jplus-zeropoint-cat.fits \
                      --magnituderange=16.4,18.5 \
                      --aperarcsec=2,2.5,3,3.5,4 \
                      --keepzpap
```

Let's inspect the output with the command below.

```
$ asttable jplus-zeropoint-cat.fits -Y
2.000          26.337         0.034
2.500          26.386         0.036
3.000          26.417         0.041
3.500          26.439         0.043
4.000          26.455         0.050
```

As you see, the values and standard deviations are very similar to the results we got previously in Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167. The Standard deviations are generally a little higher here because we didn't do the photometry ourselves, but they are statistically similar.

Before we finish, let's open the two outputs (from a reference image and reference catalog) with the command below. To confirm how they compare, we are showing the result for `APER-3` extension in both (following the TOPCAT plotting recipe in Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167).

```
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-zeropoint.fits jplus-zeropoint-cat.fits \
                      -hAPER-3
```

2.8 Pointing pattern design

A dataset that is ready for scientific analysis is usually composed of many separate exposures and how they are taken is usually known as "observing strategy". This tutorial describes Gnuastro's tools to simplify the process of deciding the pointing pattern of your observing strategy.

A "pointing" is the location on the sky that each exposure is aimed at. Each exposure's pointing is usually moved (on the sky) compared to the previous exposure. This is done for reasons like improving calibration, increasing resolution, expending the area of the observation and etc. Therefore, deciding a suitable pointing pattern is one of the most important steps when planning your observation strategy.

There are commonly two types of pointings: "dither" and "offset". These are sometimes used interchangeably with "pointing" (especially when the final coadd is roughly the same area as the field of view. Alternatively, "dither" and "offset" are used to distinguish pointings with large or small (on the scale of the field of view) movement compared to a previous one. When a pointing has a large distance to the previous pointing, it is known as an "offset", while pointings with a small displacement are known as a "dither". This distinction originates from the mechanics and optics of most modern telescopes: the overhead (for example the need to re-focus the camera) to make small movements is usually less than large movements.

In this tutorial, let's simulate a hypothetical pointing pattern using Gnuastro's `astscript-pointing-simulate` installed script (see Section 10.6 [Pointing pattern simulation], page 715). Since we will be testing very different displacements between pointings, we'll ignore the difference between offset and dither here, and only use the term pointing.

Let's assume you want to observe M94 (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Messier_94`) in the H-alpha and rSDSS filters (to study the extended star formation in the outer rings of this beautiful galaxy!). Including the outer parts of the rings, the galaxy is half a degree in diameter! This is very large, and you want to design a pointing pattern that will allow you to cover as much area, while not loosing your ability to calibrate properly.

Do not start with this tutorial: If you are new to Gnuastro and have not already completed Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, we recommend going through that tutorial before starting this one. Basic features like access to this book on the command-line, the configuration files of Gnuastro's programs, benefiting from the modular nature of the programs, viewing multi-extension FITS files, and many others are discussed in more detail there.

2.8.1 Preparing input and generating exposure map

As mentioned in Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177, the assumed goal here is to plan an observations strategy for M94. Let's assume that after some searching, you decide to write a proposal for the JAST80 telescope (`https://oaj.cefca.es/telescopes/`

jast80) at the Observatorio Astrofísico de Javalambre (https://oaj.cefca.es), OAJ[55], in Teruel (Spain). The field of view of this telescope's camera is almost 1.4 degrees wide, nicely fitting M94! It also has these two filters that you need[56].

Before we start, as described in Section 10.6 [Pointing pattern simulation], page 715, it is just important to remember that the ideal pointing pattern depends primarily on your scientific objective, as well as the limitations of the instrument you are observing with. Therefore, there is no single pointing pattern for all purposes. However, the tools, methods, criteria or logic to check if your pointing pattern satisfies your scientific requirement are similar. Therefore, you can use the same methods, tools or logic here to simulate or verify that your pointing pattern will produce the products you expect after the observation.

To start simulating a pointing pattern for a certain telescope, you just need a single-exposure image of that telescope with WCS information. In other words, after astrometry, but before warping into any other pixel grid (to combine into a deeper coadd). The image will give us the default number of the camera's pixels, its pixel scale (width of pixel in arcseconds) and the camera distortion. These are reference parameters that are independent of the position of the image on the sky.

Because the actual position of the reference image is irrelevant, let's assume that in a previous project, presumably on NGC 4395 (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NGC_4395), you already had the download command of the following single exposure image. With the last command, please take a look at this image before continuing and explore it.

```
$ mkdir pointing-tutorial
$ cd pointing-tutorial
$ mkdir input
$ siapurl=https://archive.cefca.es/catalogues/vo/siap
$ wget $siapurl/jplus-dr3/reduced/get_fits?id=1050345 \
       -O input/jplus-1050345.fits.fz

$ astscript-fits-view input/jplus-1050345.fits.fz
```

This is the first time I am using an instrument: In case you haven't already used images from your desired instrument (to use as reference), you can find such images from their public archives; or contacting them. A single exposure images is rarely of any scientific value (post-processing and coadding is necessary to make high-level and science-ready products). Therefore, they become publicly available very soon after the observation date; furthermore, calibration images are usually public immediately.

As you see from the image above, the T80Cam images are large (9216 by 9232 pixels). Therefore, to speed up the pointing testing, let's down-sample the image by a factor of 10. This step is optional and you can safely use the full resolution, which will give you a more precise coadd. But it will be much slower (maybe good after you have an almost final solution on the down-sampled image). We will call the output ref.fits (since it is the

[55] For full disclosure, Gnuastro is being developed at CEFCA (Centro de Estudios de Física del Cosmos de Aragón); which also hosts OAJ.

[56] For the full list of available filters, see the T80Cam description (https://oaj.cefca.es/telescopes/t80cam).

"reference" for our test). We are putting these two "input" files (to the script) in a dedicated directory to keep the running directory clean (and be able to easily delete temporary/test files for a fresh start with a '`rm *.fits`').

```
$ astwarp input/jplus-1050345.fits.fz --scale=1/10 -oinput/ref.fits
```

For a first trial, let's create a cross-shaped pointing pattern with 5 points around M94, which is centered at its center on the RA and Dec of 192.721250, 41.120556. We'll center one exposure on the center of the galaxy, and include 4 more exposures that are each 1 arc-minute away along the RA and Dec axes. To simplify the actual command later[57], let's also include the column names in `pointing.txt` through two lines of metadata. Also note that the `pointing.txt` file can be made in any manner you like, for example, by writing the coordinates manually on your favorite text editor, or through another programming language or logic, or etc. Here, we are using AWK because it is sufficiently powerful for this job, and it is a very small program that is available on any Unix-based operating system (allowing you to easily run your programs on any computer).

```
$ step_arcmin=1
$ center_ra=192.721250
$ center_dec=41.120556

$ echo "# Column 1: RA  [deg, f64] Right Ascension"  > pointing.txt
$ echo "# Column 2: Dec [deg, f64] Declination"     >> pointing.txt

$ echo $center_ra $center_dec \
       | awk '{s='$step_arcmin'/60; fmt="%-10.6f %-10.6f\n"; \
               printf fmt, $1,   $2; \
               printf fmt, $1+s, $2; \
               printf fmt, $1,   $2+s; \
               printf fmt, $1-s, $2; \
               printf fmt, $1,   $2-s}' \
       >> pointing.txt
```

With the commands below, let's have a look at the produced file, first as plain-text, then with TOPCAT (which needs conversion to FITS). After TOPCAT is opened, in the "Graphics" menu, select "Plane plot" to see the five points in a flat RA, Dec plot.

```
$ cat pointing.txt
# Column 1: RA  [deg, f64] Right Ascension
# Column 2: Dec [deg, f64] Declination
192.721250 41.120556
192.737917 41.120556
192.721250 41.137223
192.704583 41.120556
192.721250 41.103889

$ asttable pointing.txt -opointing.fits
```

[57] Instead of this, later, when you called `astscript-pointing-simulate`, you could pass the `--racol=1` and `--deccol=2` options. But having metadata is always preferred (will avoid many bugs/frustrations in the long-run!).

```
$ astscript-fits-view pointing.fits
$ rm pointing.fits
```

We are now ready to generate the exposure map of the pointing pattern above using the reference image that we downloaded before. Let's put the center of our final coadd to be on the center of the galaxy, and we'll assume the coadd has a size of 2 degrees. With the second command, you can see the exposure map of the final coadd. Recall that in this image, each pixel shows the number of input images that went into it.

```
$ astscript-pointing-simulate pointing.txt --output=coadd.fits \
           --img=input/ref.fits --center=$center_ra,$center_dec \
           --width=2

$ astscript-fits-view coadd.fits
```

You will see that except for a thin boundary, we have a depth of 5 exposures over the area of the single exposure. Let's see what the width of the deepest part of the image is. First, we'll use Arithmetic to set all pixels that contain less than 5 exposures (the outer pixels) to NaN (Not a Number). In the same Arithmetic command, let's trim all the blank rows and columns, so the output only contains the pixels that are exposed 5 times. With the next command, let's view the deep region and with the last command below, let's use the `--skycoverage` option of the Fits program to see the coverage of deep part on the sky.

```
$ deep_thresh=5
$ astarithmetic coadd.fits set-s s s $deep_thresh lt nan where trim \
                --output=deep.fits

$ astscript-fits-view deep.fits

$ astfits deep.fits --skycoverage
Input file: deep.fits (hdu: 1)

Sky coverage by center and (full) width:
  Center: 192.72125      41.120556
  Width:  1.880835157    1.392461166

Sky coverage by range along dimensions:
  RA       191.7808324    193.6616676
  DEC      40.42058203    41.81304319
```

As we see, in declination, the width of this deep field is about 1.4 degrees. Recall that RA is only defined on the equator and actual coverage in RA depends on the declination due to the spherical nature of the sky. This area therefore nicely covers the expected outer parts of M94. On first thought, it may seem that we are now finished, but that is not the case unfortunately!

There is a problem: with a step size of 1 arc-minute, the brighter central parts of this large galaxy will always be on very similar pixels; making it hard to calibrate those pixels properly. If you are interested in the low surface brightness parts of this galaxy, it is even worse: the outer parts of the galaxy will always cover similar parts of the detector in all the exposures; and they cover a large area on your image. To be able to accurately

calibrate the image (in particular to estimate the flat field pattern and subtract the sky), you do not want this to happen! You want each exposure to cover very different sources of astrophysical signal, so you can accurately calibrate the artifacts created by the instrument or environment (for example flat field) or of natural causes (for example the Sky).

For an example of how these calibration issues can ruin low surface brightness science, please see the image of M94 in the Legacy Survey interactive viewer (`https://www.legacysurvey.org/viewer`). After it is loaded, at the bottom-left corner of the window, write "M94" in the box of "Jump to object" and press ENTER. At first, M94 looks good with a black background, but as you increase the "Brightness" (by scrolling it to the right and seeing what is under the originally black pixels), you will see the calibration artifacts clearly.

2.8.2 Area of non-blank pixels on sky

In Section 2.8.1 [Preparing input and generating exposure map], page 177, we generated a pointing pattern with very small steps, showing how this can cause calibration problems. Later (in Section 2.8.4 [Larger steps sizes for better calibration], page 184) using larger steps is discussed. In this section, let's see how we can get an accurate measure of the area that is covered in a certain depth.

A first thought would be to simply multiply the widths along RA and Dec reported before: $1.8808 \times 1.3924 = 2.6189$ degrees squared. But there are several problems with this:

- It ignores the fact that RA only has units of degrees on the equator: at different declinations, differences in RA should be converted to degrees. This is discussed further in this tutorial: Section 2.8.5 [Pointings that account for sky curvature], page 186.
- It doesn't take into account the thin rows/columns of blank pixels (NaN) that are on the four edges of the `deep.fits` image.
- The differing area of the pixels on the spherical sky in relation to those blank values can result in wrong estimations of the area.

Let's get a very accurate estimation of the area that will not be affected by the issues above. With the first command below, we'll use the `--pixelareaonwcs` option of the Fits program that will return the area of each pixel (in pixel units of degrees squared). After running the second command, please have a look at the produced image.

```
$ astfits deep.fits --pixelareaonwcs --output=deep-pix-area.fits

$ astfits deep.fits --pixelscale
Basic info. for --pixelscale (remove extra info with '--quiet' or '-q')
  Input: deep.fits (hdu 1) has 2 dimensions.
  Pixel scale in each FITS dimension:
    1: 0.00154403 (deg/pixel) = 5.5585 (arcsec/pixel)
    2: 0.00154403 (deg/pixel) = 5.5585 (arcsec/pixel)
  Pixel area:
    2.38402e-06 (deg^2) = 30.8969 (arcsec^2)

$ astscript-fits-view deep-pix-area.fits
```

You see a donut-like shape in DS9. Move your mouse over the central (white) region of the region and look at the values. You will see that the pixel area (in degrees squared) is

exactly the same as we saw in the output of `--pixelscale`. As you move your mouse away to other colors, you will notice that the area covered by each pixel (its value in this image) deceases very slightly (in the 5th decimal!). This is the effect of the Gnomonic projection (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnomonic_projection`); summarized as `TAN` (for "tangential") in the FITS WCS standard, the most commonly used in optical astronomical surveys and the default in this script.

Having `deep-pix-area.fits`, we can now use Arithmetic to set the areas of all the pixels that were NaN in `deep.fits` and sum all the values to get an accurate estimate of the area we get from this pointing pattern:

```
$ astarithmetic deep-pix-area.fits deep.fits isblank nan where -g1 \
                sumvalue --quiet
1.93836806631634e+00
```

Therefore, the actual area that is covered is less than the simple multiplication above. At these declinations, the dominant cause of this difference is the first point above (that RA needs correction), this will be discussed in more detail later in this tutorial (see Section 2.8.5 [Pointings that account for sky curvature], page 186). Generally, using this method to measure the area of your non-NAN pixels in an image is very easy and robust (automatically takes into account the curvature, coordinate system, projection and blank pixels of the image).

2.8.3 Script with pointing simulation steps so far

In Section 2.8.1 [Preparing input and generating exposure map], page 177, and Section 2.8.2 [Area of non-blank pixels on sky], page 181, the basic steps to simulate a pointing pattern's exposure map and measure the final output area on the sky where described in detail. From this point on in the tutorial, we will be experimenting with the shell variables that were set above, but the actual commands will not be changed regularly. If a change is necessary in a command, it is clearly mentioned in the text.

Therefore, it is better to write the steps above (after downloading the reference image) as a script. In this way, you can simply change those variables and see the final result fast by running your script. For more on writing scripts, see as described in Section 2.1.22 [Writing scripts to automate the steps], page 73.

Here is a summary of some points to remember when transferring the code in the sections before into a script:

- Where the commands are edited/changed, please also update them in your script.
- Keep all the variables at the top, even if they are used later. This allows to easily view or changed them without digging into the script.
- You do not need to include visual check commands like the `astscript-fits-view` or `cat` commands above. Those can be run interactively after your script is finished; recall that a script is for batch (non-interactive) processing.
- Put all your intermediate products inside a "build" directory.

Here is the script that summarizes the steps in Section 2.8.1 [Preparing input and generating exposure map], page 177, (after download) and Section 2.8.2 [Area of non-blank pixels on sky], page 181:

```
#!/bin/bash
```

```
#
# Copyright (C) 2024-2025 Mohammad Akhlaghi <mohammad@akhlaghi.org>
#
# Copying and distribution of this file, with or without modification,
# are permitted in any medium under the GNU GPL v3+, without royalty
# provided the copyright notice and this notice are preserved.  This
# file is offered as-is, without any warranty.

# Parameters of the script
deep_thresh=5
step_arcmin=1
center_ra=192.721250
center_dec=41.120556

# Input and build directories (can be anywhere in your file system)
indir=input
bdir=build

# Abort the script in case of an error.
set -e

# Make the build directory if it doesn't already exist.
if ! [ -d $bdir ]; then mkdir $bdir; fi

# Build the 5-pointing pointing pattern (with the step size above).
pointingcat=$bdir/pointing.txt
echo "# Column 1: RA  [deg, f64] Right Ascension"  > $pointingcat
echo "# Column 2: Dec [deg, f64] Declination"     >> $pointingcat
echo $center_ra $center_dec \
            | awk '{s='$step_arcmin'/60; fmt="%-10.6f %-10.6f\n"; \
                    printf fmt, $1,   $2; \
                    printf fmt, $1+s, $2; \
                    printf fmt, $1,   $2+s; \
                    printf fmt, $1-s, $2; \
                    printf fmt, $1,   $2-s}' \
            >> $pointingcat

# Simulate the pointing pattern.
coadd=$bdir/coadd.fits
astscript-pointing-simulate $pointingcat --output=$coadd \
           --img=input/ref.fits --center=$center_ra,$center_dec \
           --width=2

# Trim the regions shallower than the threshold.
deep=$bdir/deep.fits
astarithmetic $coadd set-s s s $deep_thresh lt nan where trim \
               --output=$deep
```

```
# Calculate the area of each pixel on the curved celestial sphere:
pixarea=$bdir/deep-pix-area.fits
astfits $deep --pixelareaonwcs --output=$pixarea

# Report the final area (the empty 'echo's are for visual help in outputs)
echo; echo
echo "Area with step of $step_arcmin arcminutes, at $deep_thresh depth:"
astarithmetic $pixarea $deep isblank nan where -g1 \
              sumvalue --quiet
```

For a description of how to make it executable and how to run it, see Section 2.1.22 [Writing scripts to automate the steps], page 73. Note that as you start adding your own text to the script, be sure to add your name (and year that you modified) in the copyright notice at the start of the script (this is very important!).

2.8.4 Larger steps sizes for better calibration

In Section 2.8.1 [Preparing input and generating exposure map], page 177, we saw that a small pointing pattern is not good for the reduction of data from a large object like M94! M94 is about half a degree in diameter; so let's set `step_arcmin=15`. This is one quarter of a degree and will put the center of the four exposures on the four corners of the M94's main ring. Furthermore, Section 2.8.3 [Script with pointing simulation steps so far], page 182, the steps were summarized into a script to allow easy changing of variables without manually re-entering the individual/separate commands.

After you change `step_arcmin=15` and re-run the script, you will get a total area (from counting of per-pixel areas) of approximately 0.96 degrees squared. This is just roughly half the previous area and will barely fit M94! To understand the cause, let's have a look at the full coadd (not just the deepest area):

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd.fits
```

Compared to the first run (with `step_arcmin=1`), we clearly see how there are indeed fewer pixels that get photons in all 5 exposures. As the area of the deepest part has decreased, the areas with fewer exposures have also grown. Let's define our deep region to be the pixels with 3 or more exposures. Please set `deep_thresh=3` in the script and re-run it. You will see that the "deep" area is now almost 2.02 degrees squared! This is (slightly) larger than the first run (with `step_arcmin=1`)!

The difference between 3 exposures and 5 exposures seems a lot at first. But let's calculate how much it actually affects the achieved signal-to-noise ratio and the surface brightness limit. The surface brightness limit (or upper-limit surface brightness) are both calculated by applying the definition of magnitude to the standard deviation of the background. So we should first calculate how much this difference in depth affects the sky standard deviation. For a complete discussion on the definition of the surface brightness limit, see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615.

Deep images will usually be dominated by Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408, (or Poisson noise). Therefore, if a single exposure image has a sky standard deviation of σ_s, and we combine N such exposures by taking their mean, the final/coadded sky standard deviation (σ) will be $\sigma = \sigma_s/\sqrt{N}$. As a result, the surface brightness limit

between the regions with N exposures and M exposures differs by $2.5 \times log_{10}(\sqrt{N/M}) = 1.25 \times log_{10}(N/M)$ magnitudes. If we set $N = 3$ and $M = 5$, we get a surface brightness magnitude difference of 0.28!

This is a very small difference; given all the other sources of error that will be present; but how much it improves the calibration artifacts. Therefore at the cost of decreasing our surface brightness limit by 0.28 magnitudes, we are now able to calibrate the individual exposures much better, and even cover a larger area!

The argument above didn't involve any image and was primarily theoretical. For the more visually-inclined readers, let's add raw Gaussian noise (with a σ of 100 counts) over each simulated exposure. We will then instruct `astscript-pointing-simulate` to coadd them as we would coadd actual data (by taking the sigma-clipped mean). The command below is identical to the previous call to the pointing simulation script with the following differences. Note that this is just for demonstration, so you should not include this in your script (unless you want to see the noisy coadd every time; at double the processing time).

`--output` We are using a different output name, so we can compare the output of the new command with the previous one.

`--coadd-operator`
: This should be one of the Arithmetic program's Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428. By default the value is `sum`; because by default, each pixel of each exposure is given a value of 1. When coadding is defined through the summation operator, we can obtain the exposure map that you have already seen above.

  But in this run, we are adding noise to each input exposure (through the hook that is described below) and coadding them (as we would coadd actual science images). Since the purpose differs here, we are using this option to change the operator.

`--hook-warp-after`
: This is the most visible difference of this command the previous one. Through a "hook", you can give any arbitrarily long (series of) command(s) that will be added to the processing of this script at a certain location. This particular hook gets applied "after" the "warp"ing phase of each exposure (when the pixels of each exposure are mapped to the final pixel grid; but not yet coadded).

  Since the script runs in parallel (the actual work-horse is a Makefile!), you can't assume any fixed file name for the input(s) and output. Therefore the inputs to, and output(s) of, hooks are some pre-defined shell variables that you should use in the command(s) that you hook into the processing. They are written in full-caps to be clear and separate from your own variables. In this case, they are the `$WARPED` (input file of the hook) and `$TARGET` (output name that next steps in the script will operate on). As you see from the command below, through this hook we are calling the Arithmetic program to add noise to all non-zero pixels in the warped image. For more on the noise-adding operators, see Section 6.2.4.16 [Random number generators], page 453.

```
$ center_ra=192.721250
$ center_dec=41.120556
```

```
$ astscript-pointing-simulate build/pointing.txt --img=input/ref.fits \
           --center=$center_ra,$center_dec \
           --width=2 --coadd-operator="3 0.2 sigclip-mean swap free" \
           --output=build/coadd-noised.fits \
           --hook-warp-after='astarithmetic $WARPED set-i \
                                            i i 0 uint8 eq nan where \
                                            100 mknoise-sigma \
                                             --output=$TARGET'

$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd.fits build/coadd-noised.fits
```

When you visually compare the two images of the last command above, you will see that (at least by eye) it is almost impossible to distinguish the differing noise pattern in the regions with 3 exposures from the regions with 5 exposures. But the regions with a single exposure are clearly visible! This is because the surface brightness limit in the single-exposure regions is $1.25 \times \log_{10}(1/5) = -0.87$ magnitudes brighter. This almost one magnitude difference in surface brightness is significant and clearly visible in the coadded image (recall that magnitudes are measured in a logarithmic scale).

Thanks to the argument above, we can now have a sufficiently large area with a usable depth. However, each the center of each pointing will still contain the central part of the galaxy. In other words, M94 will be present in all the exposures while doing the calibrations. Even in not-too-deep observations, we already see a large ring around this galaxy. When we do a low surface brightness optimized reduction, there is a good chance that the size of the galaxy is much larger than that ring. This very extended structure will make it hard to do the calibrations on very accurate scales. Accurate calibration is necessary if you do not want to loose the faint photons that have been recorded in your exposures.

Calibration is very important: Better calibration can result in a fainter surface brightness limit than more exposures with poor calibration; especially for very low surface brightness signal that covers a large area and is systematically affected by calibration issues.

Ideally, you want your target to be on the four edges/corners of each image. This will make sure that a large fraction of each exposure will not be covered by your final target in each exposure, allowing you to calibrate much more accurately.

2.8.5 Pointings that account for sky curvature

In Section 2.8.4 [Larger steps sizes for better calibration], page 184, we saw how a small loss in surface brightness limit can allow better calibration and even a larger area. Let's extend this by setting `step_arcmin=40` (almost half the width of the detector) inside your script (see Section 2.8.3 [Script with pointing simulation steps so far], page 182). After running the script with this change, take a look at `build/deep.fits`:

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/deep.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

You will see that the region with 5 exposure depth is a horizontally elongated rectangle now! Also, the vertical component of the cross with four exposures is much thicker than the horizontal component! Where does this asymmetry come from? All the steps in our pointing strategy had the same (fixed) size of 40 arc minutes.

This happens because the same change in RA and Dec (defined on the curvature of a sphere) will result in different absolute changes on the equator. To visually see this, let's look at the pointing positions in TOPCAT:

```
$ cat build/pointing.txt
# Column 1: RA  [deg, f64] Right Ascension
# Column 2: Dec [deg, f64] Declination
192.721250 41.120556
193.387917 41.120556
192.721250 41.787223
192.054583 41.120556
192.721250 40.453889

$ asttable build/pointing.txt -obuild/pointing.fits
$ astscript-fits-view build/pointing.fits
```

After TOPCAT opens, under the "graphics" window, select "Plane Plot". In the newly opened window, click on the "Axes" item on the bottom-left list of items. Then activate the "Aspect lock" box so the vertical and horizontal axes have the same scaling. You will see what you expect from the numbers: we have a beautifully symmetric set of 5 points shaped like a '+' sign.

Keep the previous window, and let's go back to the original TOPCAT window. In the first TOPCAT window, click on "Graphics" again, but this time, select "Sky plot". You will notice that the vertical component of the cross is now longer than the horizontal component! If you zoom-out (by scrolling your mouse over the plot) a lot, you will see that this is actually on the spherical surface of the sky! In other words, as you see here, on the sky, the horizontal points are closer to each other than the vertical points; causing a larger overlap between them, making the vertical overlap thicker in `build/pointing.fits`.

On the celestial sphere, only the declination is measured in degrees. In other words, the difference in declination of two points can be calculated only with their declination. However, except for points that are on the equator, differences in right ascension depend on the declination. Therefore, the origin of this problem is that we done the additions and subtractions for defining the pointing points in a flat space: based on the step size in arc minutes that was applied similarly on RA and Dec (in Section 2.8.1 [Preparing input and generating exposure map], page 177).

To fix this problem, we need to convert our points from the flat RA/Dec into the spherical RA/Dec. In the FITS standard, we have the "World Coordinate System" (WCS) that defines this type of conversion, using pre-defined projections in the `CTYPEi` keyword (short for for "Coordinate TYPE in dimension i"). Let's have a look at the coadd to see the default projection of our final coadd:

```
$ astfits build/coadd.fits -h1 | grep CTYPE
CTYPE1  = 'RA---TAN'           / Right ascension, gnomonic projection
CTYPE2  = 'DEC--TAN'           / Declination, gnomonic projection
```

We therefore see that the default projection of our final coadd is the `TAN` (short for "tangential") projection, which is more formally known as the Gnomonic projection (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnomonic_projection`). This is the most commonly used projec-

tion in optical astronomy. Now that we know the final projection, we can do this conversion using Table's column arithmetic operator `eq-j2000-from-flat` like below:

```
$ pointingcat=build/pointing.txt
$ pointingonsky=build/pointing-on-sky.fits
$ asttable $pointingcat --output=$pointingonsky \
           -c'arith RA          set-r \
                    DEC         set-d \
                    r meanvalue set-ref-r \
                    d meanvalue set-ref-d \
                    r d ref-r ref-d TAN eq-j2000-from-flat' \
           --colmetadata=1,RA,deg,"Right ascension" \
           --colmetadata=2,Dec,deg,"Declination"

$ astscript-fits-view build/pointing-on-sky.fits
```

Here is a break-down of the first command above: to do the flat-to-sky conversion, we need a reference point (where the two are equal). We have used the mean RA and mean Dec (through the `meanvalue` operator in Arithmetic) as our reference point (which are placed in the `ref-r` and `red-d` variables. After calling the `eq-j2000-from-flat` operator, we have just added metadata to the two columns.

To confirm that this operator done the job correctly, after the second command above, repeat the same experiment as before with TOPCAT (where you viewed the pointing positions on a flat and spherical coordinate system). You will see that indeed, on the sphere you have a '`+`' shape, but on the flat plot, it looks stretched.

Script update 1: you should now add the `pointingonsky` definition and the `asttable` command above into the script of Section 2.8.3 [Script with pointing simulation steps so far], page 182. They should be placed before the call to `astscript-pointing-simulate`. Also, in the call to `astscript-pointing-simulate`, `$pointingcat` should be replaced with `$pointingonsky` (so it doesn't use the flat RA, Dec pointings).

After implementing this change in your script and running it, open `deep.fits` and you will see that the widths of both the horizontal and vertical regions are much more similar. The top of the vertical overlap is slightly wider than the bottom, but that is something you can't fix by just pointing (your camera's field of view is fixed on the sky!). It can be correctly by slightly rotating some of the exposures, but that will result in different PSFs from one exposure to another; and this can cause more important problems for your final science.

Plotting the spherical RA and Dec in your papers: The inverse of the `eq-j2000-from-flat` operator above is the `eq-j2000-to-flat`. `eq-j2000-to-flat` can be used when you want to plot a set points with spherical RA and Dec in a paper. When the minimum and maximum RA and Dec differ by larger than half a degree, you'll clearly see the difference. For more, see the description of these operators in Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350.

Try to slightly increase `step_arcmin` to make the cross-like region with 4 exposures as thin as possible. For example, set it to `step_arcmin=42`. When you open `deep.fits`, you will see that the depth across this image is almost contiguous (which is another positive factor!). Try increasing it to 43 arc minutes to see that the central cross will become almost fully NaN in `deep.fits` (which is bad!).

You will notice that the vertical region of 4 exposure depth is thinner in the bottom than on the top. This is due to the RA/Dec change above, but across the width of the image. We can't therefore change this by just changing the position of the pointings, we need to rotate some of the exposures if we want it to be removed. But rotation is not yet implemented in this script.

You can construct any complex pointing pattern (with more than 5 points and in any shape) based on the logic and reasoning above to help extract the most science from the valuable telescope time that you will be getting. Since the output is a FITS file, you can easily download another FITS file of your target, open it with DS9 (and "lock" the "WCS") with the coadd produced by this simulation to make sure that the deep parts correspond to the area of interest for your science case.

Factors like the optimal exposure time are also critical for the final result[58], but is was beyond the scope of this tutorial. One relevant factor however is the effect of vignetting: the pixels on the outer extremes of the field of view that are not exposed to light and should be removed from your final coadd. They effect your pointing pattern: by decreasing your total area, they act like a larger spacing between your points, causing similar shallow crosses as you saw when you set `step_arcmin` to 43 arc minutes. In Section 2.8.6 [Accounting for non-exposed pixels], page 189, we will show how this can be done within the same test concept that we done here.

2.8.6 Accounting for non-exposed pixels

At the end of Section 2.8.5 [Pointings that account for sky curvature], page 186, we were able to maximize the region of same depth in our coadd. But we noticed that issues like strong vignetting (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vignetting`) can create discontinuity in our final coadded data product. In this section, we'll review the steps to account for such effects. Generally, the full area of a detector is not usually used in the final coadd. Vignetting is one cause, it can be due to other problems also. For example due to baffles in the optical path (to block stray light), or large regions of bad (unusable or "dead") pixels that may be in any place on the detector[59].

Without accounting for these pixels that do not receive any light, the deep area we measured in the sections above will be over-estimated. In this sub-section, let's review the necessary additions to account for such artifacts. Therefore, before continuing, please make sure that you have already read and applied the steps of the previous sections (this sub-section builds upon that section).

Vignetting strongly depends on the optical design of the instrument you are using. It can be a constant number of pixels on all the edges the detector, or it can have a more

[58] The exposure time will determine the Signal-to-noise ration on a single exposure level.

[59] For an example of bad pixels over the detector, see Figures 4 and 6 of Instrument Science Report WFC3 2019-03 (`https://www.stsci.edu/files/live/sites/www/files/home/hst/instrumentation/wfc3/documentation/instrument-science-reports-isrs/_documents/2019/WFC3-2019-03.pdf`) by the Space Telescope Science Institute.

complex shape. For example on cameras that have multiple detectors on the field of view, in this case, the regions to exclude on each detector can be very different and will not be symmetric!

Therefore, within Gnuastro's `astscript-pointing-simulate` script there is no parameter for pre-defined vignetting shapes. Instead, you should define a mask that you can apply on each exposure through the provided hook (`--hook-warp-before`; recall that we previously used another hook in Section 2.8.4 [Larger steps sizes for better calibration], page 184). Through the mask, you are free to set any vignetted or bad pixel to NaN (thus ignoring them in the coadd) and applying it in any way that best suites your instrument and detector.

The mask image should be same size as the reference image, but only containing two values: 0 or 1. Pixels in each exposure that have a value of 1 in the mask will be set to NaN before the coadding process and will not contribute to the final coadd. Ideally, you can use the master flat field image of the previous reductions to create this mask: any pixel that has a low sensitivity in the master flat (for any reason) can be set to 1, and the rest of the pixels to 0.

Let's build a simple mask by assuming that we only have strong vignetting that is affecting the outer 30 arc seconds of the individual exposures. To mask the outer edges of an image we can use Gnuastro's Arithmetic program; and in particular, the `indexonly` operator. To learn more about this operator, see Section 6.2.4.19 [Size and position operators], page 466.

But before doing that, we need convert this angular distance to pixels on the detector. In Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177, we used an undersampled version of the input image, so we should do this conversion on that image:

```
$ margin_arcsec=30
$ margin_pix=$(astfits input/ref.fits --pixelscale --quiet \
                    | awk '{print int('$margin_arcsec'/($1*3600))}')
$ echo $margin_pix
5
```

To build the mask, we can now follow the recipe under "Image: masking margins" of the `index` operator in Arithmetic (for a full description of what this command is doing[60], see Section 6.2.4.19 [Size and position operators], page 466). Finally, in the last command, let's look at the mask image in the "red" color map of DS9 (which will shows the thin 1-valued pixels to mask on the border more clearly).

```
$ width=$(astfits  input/ref.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS1 -q)
$ height=$(astfits input/ref.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS2 -q)

$ astarithmetic input/ref.fits indexonly     set-i \
                $width         uint16        set-w \
                $height        uint16        set-h \
                $margin_pix    uint16        set-m \
                i w %          uint16        set-X \
```

[60] By learning how this command works, you can customize it. For example, to mask different widths along each separate edge: it often happens that the left/right or top/bottom edges are affected differently by vignetting.

```
                i w /          uint16        set-Y \
                X m lt         X w m - gt       or \
                Y m lt         Y h m - gt       or \
                or --output=build/mask.fits
```

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/mask.fits --ds9extra="-cmap red"
```

We are now ready to run the main pointing simulate script. With the command below, we will use the `--hook-warp-before` to apply this mask on the image of each exposure just before warping. The concept of this hook is very similar to that of `--hook-warp-after` in Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177. As the name suggests, this hook is applied "before" the warping. The input to the command given to this hook should be called with `$EXPOSURE` and the output should be called with `$TOWARP`. With the second command, let's compare the two outputs:

```
$ astscript-pointing-simulate build/pointing-on-sky.fits \
          --output=build/coadd-with-trim.fits --img=input/ref.fits \
          --center=$center_ra,$center_dec --width=2 \
          --hook-warp-before='astarithmetic $EXPOSURE build/mask.fits \
                                            nan where -g1 -o$TOWARP'
```

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd.fits build/coadd-with-trim.fits
```

As expected, due to the smaller area of the detector that is exposed to photons, the regions with 4 exposures have become much thinner and on the bottom, it has been removed. To have contiguous depth in the deeper region, use this new call in your script and decrease the `step_arcmin=41`.

You can use the same command on a mask that is created in any way and as realistic as possible. More generically, you can use the before and after hooks for any other operation; for example to insert objects from a catalog using Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652, as well as adding noise as we did in Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177.

Therefore it is also good to add the mask and its application in your script. This should be pretty easy by now (following Section 2.8.3 [Script with pointing simulation steps so far], page 182, and the "Script update 1" box of Section 2.8.5 [Pointings that account for sky curvature], page 186). So we will leave this as an exercise.

2.9 Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction

After warping some images with the default mode of Warp (see Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508) you may notice that the background noise is no longer flat. Some regions will be smoother and some will be sharper; depending on the orientation and distortion of the input/output pixel grids. This is due to the Moiré pattern (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Moir%C3%A9_pattern`), which is especially noticeable/significant when two slightly different grids are super-imposed.

With the commands below, we'll download a single exposure image from the J-PLUS survey (`https://www.j-plus.es`) and run Warp (on a 8×8 arcmin^2 region to speed it up the demos here). Finally, we'll open the image to visually see the artificial Moiré pattern on the warped image.

```
## Download the image (73.7 MB containing an 9216x9232 pixel image)
```

```
$ jplusdr2=http://archive.cefca.es/catalogues/vo/siap/jplus-dr2/reduced
$ wget $jplusdr2/get_fits?id=771463 -Ojplus-exp1.fits.fz

## Align a small part of it with the sky coordinates.
$ astwarp jplus-exp1.fits.fz --center=107.62920,39.72472 \
          --width=8/60 -ojplus-e1.fits

## Open the aligned region with DS9
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-e1.fits
```

In the opened DS9 window, you can see the Moiré pattern as wave-like patterns in the noise: some parts of the noise are more smooth and some parts are more sharp. Right in the center of the image is a blob of sharp noise. Warp has the `--checkmaxfrac` option for direct inspection of the Moiré pattern (described with the other options in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508). When run with this option, an extra HDU (called `MAX-FRAC`) will be added to the output. The image in this HDU has the same size as the output. However, each output pixel will contain the largest (maximum) fraction of area that it covered over the input pixel grid. So if an output pixel has a value of 0.9, this shows that it covered 90% of an input pixel. Let's run Warp with `--checkmaxfrac` and see the output (after DS9 opens, in the "Cube" window, flip between the first and second HDUs):

```
$ astwarp jplus-exp1.fits.fz --center=107.62920,39.72472 \
          --width=8/60 -ojplus-e1.fits --checkmaxfrac

$ astscript-fits-view jplus-e1.fits
```

By comparing the first and second HDUs/extensions, you will clearly see that the regions with a sharp noise pattern fall exactly on parts of the `MAX-FRAC` extension with values larger than 0.5. In other words, output pixels where one input pixel contributed more than half of the its value. As this fraction increases, the sharpness also increases because a single input pixel's value dominates the value of the output pixel. On the other hand, when this value is small, we see that many input pixels contribute to that output pixel. Since many input pixels contribute to an output pixel, it acts like a convolution, hence that output pixel becomes smoother (see Section 6.3.1 [Spatial domain convolution], page 480). Let's have a look at the distribution of the `MAX-FRAC` pixel values:

```
$ aststatistics jplus-e1.fits -hMAX-FRAC
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Input: jplus-e1.fits (hdu: MAX-FRAC)
-------
  Number of elements:                   744769
  Minimum:                              0.250213461
  Maximum:                              0.9987495374
  Mode:                                 0.5034223567
  Mode quantile:                        0.3773819498
  Median:                               0.5520805544
  Mean:                                 0.5693956458
  Standard deviation:                   0.1554693738
```

```
-------
Histogram:
 |                      ***
 |                    **********
 |                  **********
 |               **********
 |            **********
 |          **********
 |        **********
 |      **********
 |    **********
 |  **********
 |**********
 |----------
```

The smallest value is 0.25 (=1/4), showing that 4 input pixels contributed to the output pixels value. While the maximum is almost 1.0, showing that a single input pixel defined the output pixel value. You can also see that the most probable value (the mode) is 0.5, and that the distribution is positively skewed.

This is a well-known problem in astronomical imaging and professional photography. If you only have a single image (that is already taken!), you can undersample the input: set the angular size of the output pixels to be larger than the input. This will decrease the resolution of your image, but will ensure that pixel-mixing will always happen. In the example below we are setting the output pixel scale (which is known as `CDELT` in the FITS standard) to 1/0.5 = 2 of the input's. In other words each output pixel edge will cover double the input pixel's edge on the sky, and the output's number of pixels in each dimension will be half of the previous output.

```
$ cdelt=$(astfits jplus-exp1.fits.fz --pixelscale -q \
                  | awk '{print $1}')
$ astwarp jplus-exp1.fits.fz --center=107.62920,39.72472 \
          --width=8/60 -ojplus-e1.fits --cdelt=$cdelt/0.5 \
          --checkmaxfrac
```

In the first extension, you can hardly see any Moiré pattern in the noise. When you go to the next (`MAX-FRAC`) extension, you will see that almost all the pixels have a value of 1. Of course, decreasing the resolution by half is a little too drastic. Depending on your image, you may be able to reach a sufficiently good result without such a drastic degrading of the input image. For example, if you want an output pixel scale that is just 1.5 times larger than the input, you can divide the original coordinate-delta (or "cdelt") by 1/1.5 = 0.6666 and try again. In the `MAX-FRAC` extension, you will see that the range of pixel values is now between 0.56 to 1.0 (recall that originally, this was between 0.25 and 1.0). This shows that the pixels are more similarly mixed and in fact, when you look at the actual warped image, you can hardly distinguish any Moiré pattern in the noise.

However, deep astronomical data are usually built by several exposures (images), not a single one. Each image is also taken by (slightly) shifting the telescope compared to the previous exposure. This shift is known as "dithering" or a "pointing pattern", see Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177. We do this for many reasons (for example tracking errors in the telescope, high background values, removing the effect of bad pixels

or those affected by cosmic rays, robust flat pattern measurement, etc.[61]). One of those "etc." reasons is to correct the Moiré pattern in the final coadded deep image.

The Moiré pattern is fixed to the grid of the image, slightly shifting the telescope will result in the pattern appearing in different parts of the sky. Therefore when we later coadd, or coadd, the separate exposures into a deep image, the Moiré pattern will be decreased there. However, dithering has possible drawbacks based on the scientific goal. For example when observing time-variable phenomena where cutting the exposures to several shorter ones is not feasible. If this is not the case for you (for example in galaxy evolution), continue with the rest of this section.

Because we have multiple exposures that are slightly (sub-pixel) shifted, we can also increase the spatial resolution of the output. For example, let's set the output coordinate-delta (`--cdelt`, or pixel scale) to be 1/2 of the input. In other words, the number of pixels in each dimension of the output is double the first Warp command of this section:

```
$ astwarp jplus-exp1.fits.fz --center=107.62920,39.72472 \
          --width=8/60 -ojplus-e1.fits --cdelt=$cdelt/2 \
          --checkmaxfrac

$ aststatistics jplus-e1.fits -hMAX-FRAC --minimum --maximum
6.26360438764095e-02 2.50680270139128e-01

$ astscript-fits-view jplus-e1.fits
```

From the last command, you see that like the previous change in `--cdelt`, the range of `MAX-FRAC` has decreased. However, when you look at the warped image and the `MAX-FRAC` image with the last command, you still visually see the Moiré pattern in the noise (although it has significantly decreased compared to the original resolution). It is still present because 2 is an exact multiple of 1. Let's try increasing the resolution (oversampling) by a factor of 1.25 (which isn't an exact multiple of 1):

```
$ astwarp jplus-exp1.fits.fz --center=107.62920,39.72472 \
          --width=8/60 -ojplus-e1.fits --cdelt=$cdelt/1.25 \
          --checkmaxfrac
$ astscript-fits-view jplus-e1.fits
```

You don't see any Moiré pattern in the noise any more, but when you look at the `MAX-FRAC` extension, you see it is very different from the ones you had seen before. In the previous `MAX-FRAC` image, you could see large blobs of similar values. But here, you see that the variation is almost on a pixel scale, and the difference between one pixel to the next is not significant. This is why you don't see any Moiré pattern in the warped image.

In J-PLUS, each part of the sky was observed with a three-point pointing pattern (very small shifts in each pointing). Let's download the other two exposures and warp the same region of the sky to the same pixel grid (using the `--gridfile` feature). Then, let's open all three warped images in one DS9 instance:

```
$ wget $jplusdr2/get_fits?id=771465 -Ojplus-exp2.fits.fz
$ wget $jplusdr2/get_fits?id=771467 -Ojplus-exp3.fits.fz
```

[61] E.g., `https://www.stsci.edu/hst/instrumentation/wfc3/proposing/dithering-strategies`

```
$ astwarp jplus-exp2.fits.fz --gridfile jplus-e1.fits \
          -o jplus-e2.fits --checkmaxfrac
$ astwarp jplus-exp3.fits.fz --gridfile jplus-e1.fits \
          -o jplus-e3.fits --checkmaxfrac

$ astscript-fits-view jplus-e*.fits
```

In the three warped images, you don't see any Moiré pattern, so far so good... now, take the following steps:

1. In the small "Cube" window, click the "Next" button so you see the `MAX-FRAC` extension/HDU.
2. Click on the "Frame" button (in the top row of buttons just on top of the image), and select the "Single" button in the bottom row.
3. Open the "Zoom" menu (not button), and select "Zoom 16".
4. Press the `TAB` key to flip through each exposure.
5. Focus your eyes on the pixels with the largest value (white colored pixels), while pressing `TAB` to flip between the exposures. You will see that in each exposure they cover different pixels (nicely getting averaged out after coadding).

The exercise above shows that the Moiré pattern (that had already decreased significantly) will be further decreased after we coadd the images. So let's coadd these three images with the commands below. First, we need to remove the sky-level from each image using Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, then we'll coadd the `INPUT-NO-SKY` extensions using filled MAD-clipping (to reject outliers, and especially diffuse outliers, robustly, see Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196).

```
$ for i in $(seq 3); do \
   astnoisechisel jplus-e$i.fits -ojplus-nc$i.fits; \
  done

$ astarithmetic jplus-nc*.fits 3 5 0.2 sigclip-mean swap free \
                -gINPUT-NO-SKY -ojplus-coadd.fits

$ astscript-fits-view jplus-nc*.fits jplus-coadd.fits
```

After opening the individual exposures and the final coadd with the last command, take the following steps to see the comparisons properly:

1. Click on the coadd image so it is selected.
2. Go to the "Frame" menu, then the "Lock" item, then activate "Scale and Limits".
3. Scroll your mouse or touchpad to zoom into the image.

You clearly see that the coadded image is deeper and that there is no Moiré pattern, while you have slightly *improved* the spatial resolution of the output compared to the input.

For optimal results, the oversampling should be determined by the dithering pattern of the observation: For example if you only have two dither points, you want the pixels with maximum value in the `MAX-FRAC` image of one exposure to fall on those with a minimum value in the other exposure. Ideally, many more dither points should be chosen when you are planning your observation (not just for the Moiré pattern, but also for all the

other reasons mentioned above). Based on the dithering pattern, you want to select the increased resolution such that the maximum `MAX-FRAC` values fall on every different pixel of the output grid for each exposure. Note that this discussion is on small shifts between pointings (dithers), not large ones like offsets); see Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177.

2.10 Clipping outliers

Outliers occur often in data sets. For example cosmic rays in astronomical imaging: the image of your target galaxy can be affected by a cosmic ray in one of the five exposures you took in one night. As a result, when you compare the measured magnitude of your target galaxy in all the exposures, you will get measurements like this (all in magnitudes) 19.8, 20.1, 20.5, 17.0, 19.9 (all fluctuating around magnitude 20, except the much brighter 17th magnitude measurement).

Normally, you would simply take the mean of these measurements to estimate the magnitude of your target with more precision. However, the 17th magnitude measurement above is clearly wrong and will significantly affect the mean: without it, the mean magnitude is 20.07, but with it, the mean is 19.46:

```
$ echo " 19.8 20.1 20.5 17 19.9" \
       | tr ' ' '\n' \
       | aststatistics --mean
1.94600000000000e+01

$ echo " 19.8 20.1 20.5 19.9" \
       | tr ' ' '\n' \
       | aststatistics --mean
2.00750000000000e+01
```

This difference of 0.61 magnitudes (or roughly 1.75 times) is significant (for the definition of magnitudes in astronomy, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585). In the simple example above, you can visually identify the "outlier" and manually remove it. But in most common situations you will not be so lucky! For example when you want to coadd the five images of the five exposures above, and each image has 4000×4000 (or 16 million!) pixels and not possible by hand in a reasonable time (an average human's lifetime!).

This tutorial reviews the effect of outliers and different available ways to remove them. In particular, we will be looking at coadding of multiple datasets and collapsing one dataset along one of its dimensions. But the concepts and methods are applicable to any analysis that is affected by outliers.

2.10.1 Building inputs and analysis without clipping

As described in Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196, the goal of this tutorial is to demonstrate the effects of outliers and show how to "clip" them from basic statistics measurements. This is best done on an actual dataset (rather than pure theory). In this section we will build nine noisy images with the script below, such that one of the images has a circle in the middle. We will then coadd the 9 images into one final image based on different statistical measurements: the mean, median, standard deviation (STD), median

absolute deviation (MAD) and number of inputs used in each pixel. We will then analyze the resulting coadds to demonstrate the problem with outliers.

Put the script below into a plain-text file (assuming it is called `script.sh`), and run it with `bash ./script.sh`. For more on writing and good practices in shell scripts, see Section 2.1.22 [Writing scripts to automate the steps], page 73. The last command of the script above calls DS9 to visualize the five output coadded images mentioned above.

```
# Constants
list=""
sigma=10
number=9
radius=30
width=201
bdir=build
profsum=3e5
background=10
random_seed=1699270427


# Clipping parameters (will be set later when we start clipping).
# clip_multiple:  3   for sigma; 4.5  for MAD
# clip_tolerance: 0.1 for sigma; 0.01 for MAD
clip_operator=""
clip_multiple=""
clip_tolerance=""


# Stop if there is any error.
set -e


# If the build directory does not exist, build it.
if ! [ -d $bdir ]; then mkdir $bdir; fi


# The final image (with largest number) will contain the outlier:
# we'll put a flat circle in the center of the image as the outlier
# structure.
outlier=$bdir/in-$number.fits
nn=$bdir/$number-no-noise.fits
export GSL_RNG_SEED=$random_seed
center=$(echo $width | awk '{print int($1/2)+1}')
echo "1 $center $center 5 $radius 0 0 1 $profsum 1" \
    | astmkprof --mode=img --mergedsize=$width,$width \
                --oversample=1 --output=$nn --mcolissum
astarithmetic $nn $background + $sigma mknoise-sigma \
              --envseed -o$outlier
```

```
# Build pure noise and add elements to the list of images to coadd.
list=$outlier
numnoise=$(echo $number | awk '{print $1-1}')
for i in $(seq 1 $numnoise); do
    img="$bdir/in-$i.fits"
    if ! [ -f $img ]; then
        export GSL_RNG_SEED=$(echo $random_seed | awk '{print $1+'$i'}')
        astarithmetic $width $width 2 makenew float32 $background + \
                      $sigma mknoise-sigma --envseed --output=$img
    fi
    list="$list $img"
done


# Coadd the images.
for op in mean median std mad; do
    if [ x"$clip_operator" = x ]; then    # No clipping.
        out=$bdir/coadd-$op.fits
        astarithmetic $list $number $op -g1 --output=$out
    else                                  # With clipping.
        operator=$clip_operator-$op
        out=$bdir/coadd-$operator.fits
        astarithmetic $list $number $clip_multiple $clip_tolerance \
                      $operator -g1 --writeall --output=$out
    fi
done


# Collapse the first and last image along the 2nd dimension.
for i in 1 $number; do
    if [ x"$clip_operator" = x ]; then    # No clipping.
        out=$bdir/collapsed-$i.fits
        astarithmetic $bdir/in-$i.fits 2 collapse-median counter \
                      --writeall --output=$out
    else                                  # With clipping.
        out=$bdir/collapsed-$clip_operator-$i.fits
        astarithmetic $bdir/in-$i.fits $clip_multiple $clip_tolerance \
                      2 collapse-$clip_operator-median counter \
                      --writeall --output=$out
    fi
done
```

After the script finishes, you can see the generated input images with the first command below. The second command shows the coadded images with the different statistics:

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/in-*.fits --ds9extra="-lock scalelimits yes"
```

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd-*.fits
```

Color-blind readers may not clearly see the issue in the opened images with this color bar. In this case, please choose the "color" menu at the top of the DS9 and select "gray" or any other color that makes the noisy circle (in the noise) most visible.

The effect of an outlier on the different measurements above can be visually seen (and quantitatively measured) through the visibility of the circle (that was only present in one image, of nine). Let's look at them one by one (from the one that is most affected to the least):

`std.fits` The standard deviation (third image in DS9) is the most strongly affected statistic by an outlier. This is so strong that the edge of the circle is also clearly visible! The standard deviation is calculated by first finding the mean, and estimating the difference of each element from the mean. Those differences are then taken to the power of two and finally the square root is taken (after a division by the number). It is the power-of-two component that amplifies the effect of the single outlier as you see here.

`mean.fits`

The mean (first image in DS9) is also affected by the outlier in such a way that the circle footprint is clearly visible. This is because the nine images have the same importance in the combination with a simple mean. Therefore, the outlier value pushes the result to higher values and the circle is printed.

`median.fits`

The median (second image in DS9) is also affected by the outlier; although much less significantly than the standard deviation or mean. At first sight the circle may not be too visible! To see it more clearly, click on the "Analysis" menu in DS9 and then the "smooth" item. After smoothing, you will see how the single outlier has leaked into the median coadd.

Intuitively, we would think that since the median is calculated from the middle element after sorting, the outlier goes to the end and won't affect the result. However, this is not the case as we see here: with 9 elements, the "central" element is the 5th (counting from 1; after sorting). Since the pixels covered by the circle only have 8 pure noise elements; the "true" median should have been the average of the 4th and 5th elements (after sorting). By definition, the 5th element is always larger than the mean of the 4th and 5th (because the 4th element after sorting has a smaller value than the 5th element). Therefore, using the 5th element (after sorting), we are systematically choosing higher noise values in regions that are covered by the circle!

With larger datasets, the difference between the central elements will be less. However, the improved precision (in the elements without an outlier) will also be more. A detailed analysis of the effect of a single outlier on the median based on the number of inputs can be done as an exercise; but in general, as this argument shows, the median is not immune to outliers; especially when you care about low signal-to-noise regimes (as we do in astronomy: low surface brightness science).

`mad.fits` The median absolute deviation (fourth image in DS9) is affected by outliers in a similar fashion to the median.

The example above included a single outlier. But we are not usually that lucky: there are usually more outliers! For example, the last `for` loop in the script above collapsed `1.fits` (that was pure noise, without the circle) and `9.fits` (with the circle) along their second dimension (the vertical). The output of collapsing has one less dimension; in this case, producing a 1D table (with the same number of rows as the image's horizontal axis). Collapsing was done by taking the median along all the pixels in the vertical dimension. To easily plot the output afterwards, we have also used the `counter` operator. With the command below, you can open both tables and compare them:

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/collapsed-*.fits
```

After TOPCAT has opened, select `collapsed-1.fits` in the "Table List" side-bar. In the "Graphics" menu, select "Plane plot" and you will see all the values fluctuating around 10 (with a maximum/minimum around ± 2). Afterwards, click on the "Layers" menu of the new window (with a plot) and click on "Add position control". At the bottom of the window (where the scroll bar in front of "Table" is empty), select `collapsed-9.fits`. In the regions that there was no circle in any of the vertical axes, the two match nicely (the noise level is the same). However, you see that the regions that were partly covered by the outlying circle gradually get more affected as the width of the circle in that column increases (the full diameter of the circle was in the middle of the image). This shows how the median is biased by outliers as their number increases.

To see the problem more prominently, use the `collapse-mean` operator instead of the median. The reason that the mean is more strongly affected by the outlier is exactly the same as above for the coadding of the input images. In the subsections below, we will describe some of the available ways (in Gnuastro) to reject the effect of these outliers (and have better coadds or collapses). But the methodology is not limited to these types of data and can be generically applied; unless specified explicitly.

2.10.2 Sigma clipping

Let's assume that you have pure noise (centered on zero) with a clear Gaussian distribution (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Normal_distribution`), or see Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408. Now let's assume you add very bright objects (signal) on the image which have a very sharp boundary. By a sharp boundary, we mean that there is a clear cutoff (from the noise) at the pixels the objects finish. In other words, at their boundaries, the objects do not fade away into the noise.

In optical astronomical imaging, cosmic rays (when they collide at a near normal incidence angle) are a very example of such outliers. The tracks they leave behind in the image are perfectly immune to the blurring caused by the atmosphere on images of stars or galaxies and they have a very high signal-to-noise ratio. They are also very energetic and so their borders are usually clearly separated from the surrounding noise. See Figure 15 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa, 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

In such a case, when you plot the histogram (see Section 7.1.1 [Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot], page 517) of the distribution, the pixels relating to those objects will be clearly separate from pixels that belong to parts of the image that did not have any signal (were just noise). In the cumulative frequency plot, after a steady rise (due to the noise), you would observe a long flat region were for a certain range of the dynamic range (horizontal axis), there is no increase in the index (vertical axis).

In the previous section (Section 2.10.1 [Building inputs and analysis without clipping], page 196) we created one such dataset (`in-9.fits`). With the command below, let's have a look at its histogram and cumulative frequency plot (in simple ASCII format; we are decreasing the default number of bins with `--numasciibins` to show them easily within the width of the print version of this manual; feel free to change this).

```
$ aststatistics build/in-9.fits --asciihist --asciicfp \
                --numasciibins=65

ASCII Histogram:
Number: 40401
Y: (linear: 0 to 4191)
X: (linear: -31.9714 -- 150.323, in 65 bins)
 |               **
 |              ****
 |             ******
 |             ******
 |            ********
 |            ********
 |          **********
 |         ***********
 |        **************
 |      ******************                          ******
 |*******************************         *************************
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------


ASCII Cumulative frequency plot:
Y: (linear: 0 to 40401)
X: (linear: -31.9714 -- 150.323, in 65 bins)
 |                                                  ***************
 |                    ************************************************
 |                   *************************************************
 |                 **************************************************
 |                ***************************************************
 |               ****************************************************
 |              *****************************************************
 |             ******************************************************
 |            *******************************************************
 |          *********************************************************
 |***********************************************************************
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

We see a clear bimodal (`https://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Bimodal`) distribution in the histogram. Such outliers can significantly bias any single measurement over the whole dataset. For example let's compare the median, mean and standard deviation of the image above with `1.fits`:

```
$ aststatistics build/in-1.fits --median --mean --std
```

```
9.90529778313248e+00 9.96143102101206e+00 1.00137568561776e+01

$ aststatistics build/in-9.fits --median --mean --std
1.09305819367634e+01 1.74470443173776e+01 2.88895986970341e+01
```

The effect of the outliers is obvious in all three measures: the median has become 1.10 times larger, the mean 1.75 times and the standard deviation about 2.88 times! The differing effect of outliers in different statistics was already discussed in Section 2.10.1 [Building inputs and analysis without clipping], page 196; also see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

σ-clipping is one commonly used way to remove/clip the effect of such very strong outliers in measures like the above (although not the most robust, continue reading to the end of this tutorial in the next sections). σ-clipping is defined as the very simple iteration below. In each iteration, the number of input values used might decrease. When the outliers are as strong as above, the outliers will be removed through this iteration.

1. Calculate the standard deviation (σ) and median (m) of a distribution. The median is used because, as shown above, the mean is too significantly affected by the presence of outliers.
2. Remove all points that are smaller or larger than $m \pm \alpha\sigma$.
3. Go back to step 1, unless the selected exit criteria is reached. There are commonly two types of exit criteria (to stop the σ-clipping iteration). Within Gnuastro's programs that use sigma-clipping, the exit criteria is the second value to the `--sclipparams` option (the first value is the α above):
   - When a certain number of iterations has taken place (exit criteria is an integer, larger than 1). For example `--sclipparams=5,3` means that the 5σ clipping will stop after 3 clips.
   - When the new measured standard deviation is within a certain tolerance level of the previous iteration (exit criteria is floating point and less than 1.0). The tolerance level is defined by:

     $$\frac{\sigma_{old} - \sigma_{new}}{\sigma_{new}}$$

     In each clipping, the dispersion in the distribution is either less or equal. So $\sigma_{old} \geq \sigma_{new}$. For example `--sclipparams=5,0.2` means that the 5σ clipping will stop the old and new standard deviations are equal within a factor of 0.2.

Let's see the algorithm in practice with the `--sigmaclip` option of Gnuastro's Statistics program (using the default configuration of 3σ clipping and tolerance of 0.1):

```
$ aststatistics build/in-9.fits --sigmaclip
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Input: build/in-9.fits (hdu: 1)
-------
3-sigma clipping steps until relative change in STD is less than 0.1:

round number     median       STD
```

```
1     40401      1.09306e+01  2.88896e+01
2     37660      1.00306e+01  1.07153e+01
3     37539      1.00080e+01  9.93741e+00
-------
Statistics (after clipping):
  Number of input elements:               40401
  Number of clips:                        2
  Final number of elements:               37539
  Median:                                 1.000803e+01
  Mean:                                   1.001822e+01
  Standard deviation:                     9.937410e+00
  Median Absolute Deviation:              6.772760e+00
```

After the basic information about the input and settings, the Statistics program has printed the information for each round (iteration) of clipping. Initially, there was 40401 elements (the image is 201×201 pixels). After the first round of clipping, only 37660 elements remained and because the difference in standard deviation was larger than the tolerance level, a third clipping was one. But the change in standard deviation after the third clip (in relation to the second) was smaller than the tolerance level, so the exit criteria was activated and the clipping finished with 37539 elements. In the end, we see that the final median, mean and standard deviation are very similar to the data without any outlier (`build/1.fits` in the example above). Therefore, through clipping we were able to remove the second "outlier" distribution from the bimodal histogram above (because it was so nicely separated from the main/noise).

The example above provided a single statistic from a single dataset. Other scenarios where sigma-clipping becomes necessary are coadding and collapsing (that was the main goal of the script in Section 2.10.1 [Building inputs and analysis without clipping], page 196). To generate σ-clipped coadds and collapsed tables, you just need to change the values of the three variables of the script (shown below). After making this change in your favorite text editor, have a look at the outputs. By the way, if you have still not read (and understood) the commands in that script, this is a good time to do it so the steps below do not appear as a black box to you (for more on writing shell scripts, see Section 2.1.22 [Writing scripts to automate the steps], page 73).

```
$ grep ^clip_ script.sh
clip_operator=sigclip    # These variables will be used more
clip_multiple=3          # effectively with the clipping
clip_tolerance=0.1       # operators of the next sections.

$ bash ./script.sh

$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd-std.fits \
                      build/coadd-sigclip-std.fits \
                      build/coadd-*mean.fits \
                      build/coadd-*median.fits \
                      --ds9extra="-tile grid layout 2 3 -scale minmax"
```

You will see 6 images arranged in two columns: the first column is the normal coadd (without σ-clipping) and the second column is the σ-clipped coadd of the same statistic (first row: standard deviation, second row: mean, third row: median).

It is clear that the σ-clipped (right column in DS9) results have improved in all three measures (compared to the left column). This was achieved by clipping/removing outliers. To see how many input images were used in each pixel of the clipped coadd, you should look into the second HDU of any clipping output which shows the number of inputs that were used for each pixel:

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd-sigclip-median.fits \
                      --ds9extra="-scale minmax"
```

In the "Cube" window of opened DS9, click on the "Next" button. The pixels in this image only have two values: 8 or 9. Over the footprint of the circle, most pixels have a value of 8: only 8 inputs were used for these (one of the inputs was clipped out). In the other regions of the image, you see that the pixels almost consistently have a value of 9 (except for some noisy pixels here and there).

It is the "holes" (with value 9) within the footprint of the circle that keep the circle visible in the final coadd of the output (as we saw previously in the 2-column DS9 command before). Spoiler alert: in a later section of this tutorial (Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209) you will see how we fix this problem. But please be patient and continue reading and running the commands for now.

So far, σ-clipping seems to have preformed nicely. However, there are important caveats to σ-clipping that are listed in the box below and further elaborated (with examples) afterwards.

Caveats of σ-clipping: continue this section to visually see the effect of both these caveats:

- The standard deviation is itself heavily influenced by the presence of outliers (as we have shown above). Therefore a sufficiently small number of outliers can cause an over-estimation of the standard deviation. This can be strong enough to keep those from getting clipped!
- When the outliers do not constitute a clearly distinct distribution like the example here, σ-clipping will not be able to separate them (see the bimodal histogram above for situations that σ-clipping is useful).

To demonstrate the caveats above, let's decrease the brightness (total sum of values) in the circle by decreasing the value of the `profsum` variable in the script:

```
$ grep ^profsum script.sh
profsum=1e5

$ bash ./script.sh
```

First, let's have a look at the new circle in noise with the first command below. With the second command, let's view its pixel value histogram (recall that previously, the circle had a clearly separate distribution):

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/in-9.fits
```

```
$ aststatistics build/in-9.fits --asciihist --numasciibins=65
ASCII Histogram:
Number: 40401
Y: (linear: 0 to 2654)
X: (linear: -31.9714 -- 79.4266, in 65 bins)
 |                         **
 |                        *****
 |                      *********
 |                      **********
 |                    ************
 |                    **************
 |                  ****************
 |                 ******************
 |              ***********************
 |           ***************************************
 |*****************************************************************
 |---------------------------------------------------------------
```

We see that even tough the circle is still clearly visible in the noise in DS9, we don't have a bimodal histogram any more; the circle's pixels have blended into the noise, and just caused a skewness in the (otherwise symmetric) noise distribution. Let's try running the `--sigmaclip` option as above:

```
$ aststatistics build/in-9.fits --sigmaclip
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Input: build/in-9.fits (hdu: 1)
-------
3-sigma clipping steps until relative change in STD is less than 0.1:

round number     median       STD
1     40401      1.09295e+01  1.34784e+01
2     39618      1.06762e+01  1.19852e+01
3     39126      1.05265e+01  1.12983e+01
-------
Statistics (after clipping):
  Number of input elements:               40401
  Number of clips:                        2
  Final number of elements:               39126
  Median:                                 1.052652e+01
  Mean:                                   1.114819e+01
  Standard deviation:                     1.129831e+01
  Median Absolute Deviation:              7.106166e+00
```

We see that the median, mean and standard deviation are over estimated (each worse than the time when the circle was brighter!). Let's look at the σ-clipping coadd:

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd-std.fits \
                      build/coadd-sigclip-std.fits \
                      build/coadd-*mean.fits \
```

```
                        build/coadd-*median.fits \
                        --ds9extra="-tile grid layout 2 3 -scale minmax"
```

Compared to the previous run (where the outlying circle was brighter), we see that σ-clipping is now less successful in removing the outlying circle from the coadds; or in the single value measurements. To see the reason, we can have a look at the numbers image (note that here, we are using `-h2` to only see the numbers image)

```
$ astscript-fits-view build/coadd-sigclip-median.fits -h2 \
                      --ds9extra="-scale minmax"
```

Unlike before (where the density of pixels with 8 images was very high over the circle's footprint), the circle is barely visible in the numbers image! There is only a very weak clustering of pixels with a value of 8 over the circle's footprint. This has happened because the outliers have biased the standard deviation itself to a level that includes them with this multiple of the standard deviation.

To gauge if σ-clipping will be useful for your dataset, you should inspect the bimodality of its histogram like we did above. But you can't do this manually in every case (as in the coadding which involved more than forty thousand separate σ-clippings: one for every output)! Clipping outliers should be based on a different (from standard deviation) measure of scatter/dispersion, one that is more robust (less affected by outliers). Therefore, in Gnuastro we also have median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping which is described in the next section (Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206).

2.10.3 MAD clipping

When clipping outliers, it is important that the used measure of dispersion is itself not strongly affected by the outliers. Previously (in Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200), we saw that the standard deviation is not a good measure of dispersion because of its strong dependency on outliers. In this section, we'll introduce clipping operators that are based on the median absolute deviation (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Median_absolute_deviation`) (MAD).

The median absolute deviation is defined as the median of the differences from the median (MAD requires taking two rounds of medians). As mathematically derived in the Wikipedia page above, for a pure Gaussian distribution, the median absolute deviation will be roughly 0.67449σ. We can confirm this numerically from the images with pure noise that we created previously in Section 2.10.1 [Building inputs and analysis without clipping], page 196. With the first command below we can see the raw standard deviation and median absolute deviation values and the second command shows their division:

```
$ aststatistics build/in-1.fits --std --mad
1.00137568561776e+01 6.74662296703343e+00

$ aststatistics build/in-1.fits --std --mad | awk '{print $2/$1}'
0.673735
```

The algorithm of MAD-clipping is identical to σ-clipping, except that instead of σ, it uses the median absolute deviation (also see the next paragraph). Since the median absolute deviation is smaller than the standard deviation by roughly 0.67, if you regularly use 3σ there, you should use (3/0.67)MAD = (4.48)MAD when doing MAD-clipping. The usual tolerance should also be changed due to the differing (discrete) nature of the median absolute

deviation (based on sorted differences) in relation to the standard deviation (based on the sum of squared differences; which is more smooth). A tolerance of 0.01 is better suited to the termination criteria of MAD-clipping.

Another difference of the MAD-clipping algorithm in Gnuastro with σ-clipping is a special condition when the MAD becomes zero (will be more common in integer datasets). This can happen when the median value is repeated in the input dataset. In such cases, we will find the two elements before and after the median that have a different value than the median; it will then use their difference as the MAD[62].

To demonstrate the steps in practice, let's assume you have the original script in Section 2.10.1 [Building inputs and analysis without clipping], page 196, with the changes shown in the first command below and With the second command we'll execute the script.

```
$ grep '^clip_\|^profsum' script.sh
profsum=1e5
clip_operator=madclip
clip_multiple=4.5
clip_tolerance=0.01

$ bash ./script.sh
```

Let's start by applying MAD-clipping on the image with the bright circle:

```
$ aststatistics build/in-9.fits --madclip
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Input: build/in-9.fits (hdu: 1)
-------
4.5-MAD clipping steps until relative change in MAD
(median absolute deviation) is less than 0.01:

round number     median       MAD
1     40401      1.09295e+01  7.38609e+00
2     38812      1.04313e+01  7.04036e+00
3     38567      1.03497e+01  6.98680e+00
-------
Statistics (after clipping):
  Number of input elements:               40401
  Number of clips:                        2
  Final number of elements:               38567
  Median:                                 1.034968e+01
  Mean:                                   1.070246e+01
  Standard deviation:                     1.063998e+01
  Median Absolute Deviation:              6.986797e+00
```

We see that the median, mean and standard deviation after MAD-clipping are much better than the σ-clipping (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200): the median is

[62] For more specialized conditions in Gnuastro's implementation of MAD-clipping, see the heavily commented code of `MAD_ALTERNATIVE` in `lib/statistics.c` of Gnuastro's source.

now 10.3 (was 10.5 in σ-clipping), mean is 10.7 (was 10.11) and the standard deviation is 10.6 (was 10.12).

Let's compare the MAD-clipped coadds with the results of the previous section. Since we want the images shown in a certain order, we'll first construct the list of images (with a `for` loop that will fill the `imgs` variable). Note that this assumes you have ran and carefully read/understand all the commands in the previous sections (Section 2.10.1 [Building inputs and analysis without clipping], page 196, and Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200).

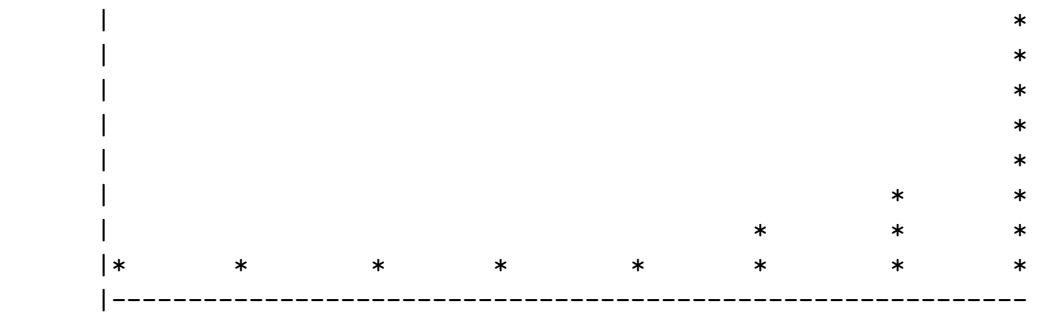
```
$ imgs=""
$ p=build/coadd   # 'p' is short for "prefix"
$ for m in std mean median mad; do \
   imgs="$imgs $p-$m.fits $p-sigclip-$m.fits $p-madclip-$m.fits"; \
  done
$ astscript-fits-view $imgs --ds9extra="-tile grid layout 3 4"
```

The first column shows the non-clipped coadds for each statistic (generated in Section 2.10.1 [Building inputs and analysis without clipping], page 196), the second column are σ-clipped coadds (generated in Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200), and the third column shows the newly created MAD-clipped coadds. We see that the circle is much more weaker in the MAD-clipped coadds than in the σ-clipped coadds in all rows (different statistics). Let's confirm this with the numbers images of the two clipping methods:

```
$ astscript-fits-view -g2 \
            build/coadd-sigclip-median.fits \
            build/coadd-madclip-median.fits -g2 \
            --ds9extra="-scale limits 1 9 -lock scalelimits yes"
```

In the numbers image of the MAD-clipped coadd, you see the circle much more clearly. However, you also see that in the regions outside the circle, many random pixels have also been coadded with less than 9 input images! This is a caveat of MAD clipping and is expected: by nature MAD clipping is much more "noisy". With the command below, let's have a look at the statistics of the numbers image of the MAD-clipping. With the second, let's see how many pixels used fewer than 5 input images:

```
$ aststatistics build/coadd-madclip-median.fits -h2 \
                --numasciibins=60
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Input: build/coadd-madclip-median.fits (hdu: 2)
-------
  Number of elements:                     40401
  Minimum:                                2
  Maximum:                                9
  Median:                                 9
  Mean:                                   8.500284646
  Standard deviation:                     1.1275244
-------
 |                                                          *
 |                                                          *
 |                                                          *
```



```
$ aststatistics build/coadd-madclip-median.fits -h2 \
                --lessthan=5 --number
686
```

Almost 700 pixels were made with less than 5 inputs! The large number of random pixels that have been clipped is not good and can make it hard to understand the noise statistics of the coadd.

Ultimately, even MAD-clipping is not perfect and even though the circle is weaker, we still see the circle in all four cases, even with the MAD-clipped median (more clearly: after smoothing/blocking). The reason is similar to what was described in σ-clipping (using the original `profsum=3e5`: the "holes" in the numbers image. Because the circle's pixel values are not too distant from the noise and the noisy nature of the MAD, some of its elements do not get clipped, and their coadded value gets systematically higher than the rest of the image.

Fortunately all is not lost! In Gnuastro, we have a fix for such contiguous outliers that is described fully in the next section (Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

2.10.4 Contiguous outliers

When source of the outlier covers more than one element, and its flux is close to the noise level, not all of its elements will be clipped: because of noise, some of its elements will remain un-clipped; and thus affecting the output.

Examples of this were created and thoroughly discussed in previous sections with σ-clipping and MAD-clipping (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, and Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206). σ-clipping had good purity (very few non-outliers were clipped) but at the cost of bad completeness (many outliers remained). MAD-clipping was the opposite: it masked many outliers (good completeness), but at the cost of clipping many pixels that shouldn't have been clipped (bad purity).

Fortunately there is a good way to benefit from the best of both worlds. Recall that in the numbers image of the MAD-clipping output, the wrongly clipped pixels were randomly distributed are barely connected. On the other hand, those that covered the circle were nicely connected, with unclipped pixels scattered within it. Therefore, using their spatial distribution, we can improve the completeness (not have any "holes" within the masked circle) and purity (remove the false clips). This is done through the `madclip-maskfilled` operator:

1. MAD-clipping is applied (σ-clipping is also possible, but less effective).

2. A binary image is created for each input: any outlying pixel of each input is set to 1 (foreground); the rest are set to 0 (background). Mathematical morphology operators are then used in preparation to filling the holes (to close the boundary of the contiguous outlier):
   - For 2D images (were each pixel has 8 neighbors) the foreground pixels are dilated with a "connectivity" of 1 (only the nearest neighbors: 4-connectivity in a 2D image).
   - For 1D arrays (where each element only has two neighbors), the foreground is eroded. This is necessary because the next step (where the holes are filled), two pixels that have been clipped purely due to noise with a large distance between them can wrongly mask a very large range of the input data.
3. Any background pixel that is fully surrounded by the foreground (or a "hole") is filled (given a value of 1: becoming a foreground pixel).
4. One step of 8-connected opening (an erosion, followed by a dilation) is applied to remove (set to background) any non-contiguous foreground pixel of each input.
5. All the foreground pixels of the binary images are set to NaN in the respective input data (that the binary image corresponds to).

Let's have a look at the output of this process with the first command below. Note that because `madclip-maskfilled` returns its main input operands back to the coadd, we need to call Arithmetic with `--writeall` (which will produce a multi-HDU output file). With the second, open the output in DS9:

```
$ astarithmetic build/in-*.fits 9 4.5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                -g1 --writeall --output=inputs-masked.fits

$ astscript-fits-view inputs-masked.fits
```

In the small "Cube" window, you will see that 9 HDUs are present in `inputs-masked.fits`. Click on the "Next" button to see each input. When you get to the last (9th) HDU, you will notice that the circle has been masked there (it is filled with NaN values). Now that all the contiguous outlier(s) of the inputs are masked, we can use more pure coadding operators (like σ-clipping) to remove any strong, single-pixel outlier:

```
$ astarithmetic build/in-*.fits 9 4.5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                9 5 0.1 sigclip-mean \
                -g1 --writeall --output=coadd-good.fits

$ astscript-fits-view coadd-good.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

You see a clean noisy coadd in the first HDU (note that we used the σ-clipped mean here; which was strongly affected by outliers as we saw before in Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200). When you go to the next HDU, you see that over the circle only 8 images were used and that there are no "holes" there. But the operator that was most affected by outliers was the standard deviation. To test it, repeat the first command above and use `sigclip-std` instead of `sigclip-mean` and have a look at the output: again, you don't see any footprint of the circle.

Of course, if the potential outlier signal can become weaker, there are some solutions: use more inputs if you can (to decrease the noise), or decrease the multiple MAD in the

`madclip-maskfilled` call above: it will decrease your purity, but to some level, this may be fine (depends on your usage of the coadd).

3 Installation

The latest released version of Gnuastro source code is always available at the following URL:

`http://ftpmirror.gnu.org/gnuastro/gnuastro-latest.tar.gz`

Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1, describes the commands necessary to configure, build, and install Gnuastro on your system. This chapter will be useful in cases where the simple procedure above is not sufficient, for example, your system lacks a mandatory/optional dependency (in other words, you cannot pass the `$ ./configure` step), or you want greater customization, or you want to build and install Gnuastro from other random points in its history, or you want a higher level of control on the installation. Thus if you were happy with downloading the tarball and following Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1, then you can safely ignore this chapter and come back to it in the future if you need more customization.

Section 3.1 [Dependencies], page 212, describes the mandatory, optional and bootstrapping dependencies of Gnuastro. Only the first group are required/mandatory when you are building Gnuastro using a tarball (see Section 3.2.1 [Release tarball], page 227), they are very basic and low-level tools used in most astronomical software, so you might already have them installed, if not they are very easy to install as described for each. Section 3.2 [Downloading the source], page 227, discusses the two methods you can obtain the source code: as a tarball (a significant snapshot in Gnuastro's history), or the full history[1]. The latter allows you to build Gnuastro at any random point in its history (for example, to get bug fixes or new features that are not released as a tarball yet).

The building and installation of Gnuastro is heavily customizable, to learn more about them, see Section 3.3 [Build and install], page 232. This section is essentially a thorough explanation of the steps in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1. It discusses ways you can influence the building and installation. If you encounter any problems in the installation process, it is probably already explained in Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246. In Appendix A [Other useful software], page 989, the installation and usage of some other free software that are not directly required by Gnuastro but might be useful in conjunction with it is discussed.

3.1 Dependencies

A minimal set of dependencies are mandatory for building Gnuastro from the standard tarball release. If they are not present you cannot pass Gnuastro's configuration step. The mandatory dependencies are therefore very basic (low-level) tools which are easy to obtain, build and install, see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213, for a full discussion.

If you have the packages of Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215, Gnuastro will have additional functionality (for example, converting FITS images to JPEG or PDF). If you are installing from a tarball as explained in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1, you can stop reading after this section. If you are cloning the version controlled source (see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228), an additional bootstrapping step is required before configuration and its dependencies are explained in Section 3.1.3 [Bootstrapping dependencies], page 218.

[1] Section 3.1.3 [Bootstrapping dependencies], page 218, are required if you clone the full history.

Your operating system's package manager is an easy and convenient way to download and install the dependencies that are already pre-built for your operating system. In Section 3.1.4 [Dependencies from package managers], page 222, we will list some common operating system package manager commands to install the optional and mandatory dependencies.

3.1.1 Mandatory dependencies

The mandatory Gnuastro dependencies are very basic and low-level tools. They all follow the same basic GNU based build system (like that shown in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1), so even if you do not have them, installing them should be pretty straightforward. In this section we explain each program and any specific note that might be necessary in the installation.

3.1.1.1 GNU Scientific Library

The GNU Scientific Library (`http://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/`), or GSL, is a large collection of functions that are very useful in scientific applications, for example, integration, random number generation, and Fast Fourier Transform among many others. To download and install GSL from source, you can run the following commands.

```
$ wget https://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gsl/gsl-latest.tar.gz
$ tar -xf gsl-latest.tar.gz
$ cd gsl-X.X                      # Replace X.X with version number.
$ ./configure CFLAGS="$CFLAGS -g0 -O3"
$ make -j8                        # Replace 8 with no. CPU threads.
$ make check
$ sudo make install
```

3.1.1.2 CFITSIO

CFITSIO (`http://heasarc.gsfc.nasa.gov/fitsio/`) is the closest you can get to the pixels in a FITS image while remaining faithful to the FITS standard (`http://fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/fits_standard.html`). It is written by William Pence, the principal author of the FITS standard[2], and is regularly updated. Setting the definitions for all other software packages using FITS images.

Some GNU/Linux distributions have CFITSIO in their package managers, if it is available and updated, you can use it. One problem that might occur is that CFITSIO might not be configured with the `--enable-reentrant` option by the distribution. This option allows CFITSIO to open a file in multiple threads, it can thus provide great speed improvements. If CFITSIO was not configured with this option, any program which needs this capability will warn you and abort when you ask for multiple threads (see Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276).

To install CFITSIO from source, we strongly recommend that you have a look through Chapter 2 (Creating the CFITSIO library) of the CFITSIO manual and understand the options you can pass to `$ ./configure` (they are not too much). This is a very basic package for most astronomical software and it is best that you configure it nicely with your

[2] Pence, W.D. et al. Definition of the Flexible Image Transport System (FITS), version 3.0. (2010) Astronomy and Astrophysics, Volume 524, id.A42, 40 pp.

system. Once you download the source and unpack it, the following configure script should be enough for most purposes. Do not forget to read chapter two of the manual though, for example, the second option is only for 64bit systems. The manual also explains how to check if it has been installed correctly.

CFITSIO comes with two executable files called `fpack` and `funpack`. From their manual: they "are standalone programs for compressing and uncompressing images and tables that are stored in the FITS (Flexible Image Transport System) data format. They are analogous to the gzip and gunzip compression programs except that they are optimized for the types of astronomical images that are often stored in FITS format". The commands below will compile and install them on your system along with CFITSIO. They are not essential for Gnuastro, since they are just wrappers for functions within CFITSIO, but they can come in handy. The `make utils` command is only available for versions above 3.39, it will build these executable files along with several other executable test files which are deleted in the following commands before the installation (otherwise the test files will also be installed).

The commands necessary to download the source, decompress, build and install CFITSIO from source are described below.

```
$ urlbase=http://heasarc.gsfc.nasa.gov/FTP/software/fitsio/c
$ wget $urlbase/cfitsio_latest.tar.gz
$ tar -xf cfitsio_latest.tar.gz
$ cd cfitsio-X.XX                   # Replace X.XX with version
$ ./configure --prefix=/usr/local --enable-sse2 --enable-reentrant \
              CFLAGS="$CFLAGS -g0 -O3"
$ make
$ make utils
$ ./testprog > testprog.lis         # See below if this has an error
$ diff testprog.lis testprog.out    # Should have no output
$ cmp testprog.fit testprog.std     # Should have no output
$ rm cookbook fitscopy imcopy smem speed testprog
$ sudo make install
```

In the `./testprog > testprog.lis` step, you may confront an error, complaining that it cannot find `libcfitsio.so.AAA` (where `AAA` is an integer). This is the library that you just built and have not yet installed. But unfortunately some versions of CFITSIO do not account for this on some OSs. To fix the problem, you need to tell your OS to also look into current CFITSIO build directory with the first command below, afterwards, the problematic command (second below) should run properly.

```
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$(pwd):$LD_LIBRARY_PATH"
$ ./testprog > testprog.lis
```

Recall that the modification above is ONLY NECESSARY FOR THIS STEP. *Do not* put the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` modification command in a permanent place (like your bash startup file). After installing CFITSIO, close your terminal and continue working on a new terminal (so `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` has its default value). For more on `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

3.1.1.3 WCSLIB

WCSLIB (`http://www.atnf.csiro.au/people/mcalabre/WCS/`) is written and maintained by one of the authors of the World Coordinate System (WCS) definition in the

FITS standard (`http://fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/fits_standard.html`)[3], Mark Calabretta. It might be already built and ready in your distribution's package management system. However, here the installation from source is explained, for the advantages of installation from source please see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213. To install WCSLIB you will need to have CFITSIO already installed, see Section 3.1.1.2 [CFITSIO], page 213.

WCSLIB also has plotting capabilities which use PGPLOT (a plotting library for C). If you wan to use those capabilities in WCSLIB, Section A.3 [PGPLOT], page 991, provides the PGPLOT installation instructions. However PGPLOT is old[4], so its installation is not easy, there are also many great modern WCS plotting tools (mostly in written in Python). Hence, if you will not be using those plotting functions in WCSLIB, you can configure it with the `--without-pgplot` option as shown below.

If you have the cURL library[5] on your system and you installed CFITSIO version 3.42 or later, you will need to also link with the cURL library at configure time (through the `-lcurl` option as shown below). CFITSIO uses the cURL library for its HTTPS (or HTTP Secure[6]) support and if it is present on your system, CFITSIO will depend on it. Therefore, if `./configure` command below fails (you do not have the cURL library), then remove this option and rerun it.

To download, configure, build, check and install WCSLIB from source, you can follow the steps below.

```
## Download and unpack the source tarball
$ wget ftp://ftp.atnf.csiro.au/pub/software/wcslib/wcslib.tar.bz2
$ tar -xf wcslib.tar.bz2

## In the `cd' command, replace `X.X' with version number.
$ cd wcslib-X.X

## If `./configure' fails, remove `-lcurl' and run again.
$ ./configure LIBS="-pthread -lcurl -lm" --without-pgplot     \
              --disable-fortran CFLAGS="$CFLAGS -g0 -O3"
$ make
$ make check
$ sudo make install
```

3.1.2 Optional dependencies

The libraries listed here are only used for very specific applications, therefore they are optional and Gnuastro can be built without them (with only those specific features disabled). Since these are pretty low-level tools, they are not too hard to install from source, but you can also use your operating system's package manager to easily install all of them. For more, see Section 3.1.4 [Dependencies from package managers], page 222.

[3] Greisen E.W., Calabretta M.R. (2002) Representation of world coordinates in FITS. Astronomy and Astrophysics, 395, 1061-1075.

[4] As of early June 2016, its most recent version was uploaded in February 2001.

[5] `https://curl.haxx.se`

[6] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HTTPS`

If the `./configure` script cannot find any of these optional dependencies, it will notify you of the operation(s) you cannot do due to not having them. If you continue the build and request an operation that uses a missing library, Gnuastro's programs will warn that the optional library was missing at build-time and abort. Since Gnuastro was built without that library, installing the library afterwards will not help. The only way is to rebuild Gnuastro from scratch (after the library has been installed). However, for program dependencies (like cURL or Ghostscript) things are easier: you can install them after building Gnuastro also. This is because libraries are used to build the internal structure of Gnuastro's executables. However, a program dependency is called by Gnuastro's programs at run-time and has no effect on their internal structure. So if a dependency program becomes available later, it will be used next time it is requested.

GNU Libtool

Libtool is a program to simplify managing of the libraries to build an executable (a program). GNU Libtool has some added functionality compared to other implementations. If GNU Libtool is not present on your system at configuration time, a warning will be printed and Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, will not be built or installed. The configure script will look into your search path (`PATH`) for GNU Libtool through the following executable names: `libtool` (acceptable only if it is the GNU implementation) or `glibtool`. See Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235, for more on `PATH`.

GNU Libtool (the binary/executable file) is a low-level program that is probably already present on your system, and if not, is available in your operating system package manager[7]. If you want to install GNU Libtool's latest version from source, please visit its web page (`https://www.gnu.org/software/libtool/`).

Gnuastro's tarball is shipped with an internal implementation of GNU Libtool. Even if you have GNU Libtool, Gnuastro's internal implementation is used for the building and installation of Gnuastro. As a result, you can still build, install and use Gnuastro even if you do not have GNU Libtool installed on your system. However, this internal Libtool does not get installed. Therefore, after Gnuastro's installation, if you want to use Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, to compile and link your own C source code which uses the Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764, you need to have GNU Libtool available on your system (independent of Gnuastro). See Section 12.1 [Review of library fundamentals], page 752, to learn more about libraries.

GNU Make extension headers

GNU Make is a workflow management system that can be used to run a series of commands in a specific order, and in parallel if you want. GNU Make offers special features to extend it with custom functions within a dynamic library. They are defined in the `gnumake.h` header. If `gnumake.h` can be found on your system at configuration time, Gnuastro will build a custom library that

[7] Note that we want the binary/executable Libtool program which can be run on the command-line. In Debian-based operating systems which separate various parts of a package, you want want `libtool-bin`, the `libtool` package will not contain the executable program.

GNU Make can use for extended functionality in (astronomical) data analysis scenarios.

libgit2 Git is one of the most common version control systems (see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228). When `libgit2` is present, and Gnuastro's programs are run within a version controlled directory, outputs will contain the version number of the working directory's repository for future reproducibility. See the `COMMIT` keyword header in Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293, for a discussion.

libjpeg libjpeg is only used by ConvertType to read from and write to JPEG images, see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317. libjpeg (`http://www.ijg.org/`) is a very basic library that provides tools to read and write JPEG images, most Unix-like graphic programs and libraries use it. Therefore you most probably already have it installed. libjpeg-turbo (`http://libjpeg-turbo.virtualgl.org/`) is an alternative to libjpeg. It uses Single instruction, multiple data (SIMD) instructions for ARM based systems that significantly decreases the processing time of JPEG compression and decompression algorithms.

libtiff libtiff is used by ConvertType and the libraries to read TIFF images, see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317. libtiff (`http://www.simplesystems.org/libtiff/`) is a very basic library that provides tools to read and write TIFF images, most Unix-like operating system graphic programs and libraries use it. Therefore even if you do not have it installed, it must be easily available in your package manager.

cURL cURL's executable (`curl`) is called by Section 5.4 [Query], page 378, for submitting queries to remote datasets and retrieving the results. It is not necessary for the build of Gnuastro from source (only a warning will be printed if it cannot be found at configure time), so if you do not have it at build-time there is no problem. Just be sure to have it when you run `astquery`, otherwise you'll get an error about not finding `curl`.

GPL Ghostscript
GPL Ghostscript's executable (`gs`) is called by ConvertType to compile a PDF file from a source PostScript file, see Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316. Therefore its headers (and libraries) are not needed.

Python3 with Numpy
Python is a high-level programming language and Numpy is the most commonly used library within Python to add multi-dimensional arrays and matrices. If you configure Gnuastro with `--with-python` *and* version 3 of Python is available with a corresponding Numpy Library, Gnuastro's library will be built with some Python-related helper functions. Python wrappers for Gnuastro's library (for example, 'pyGnuastro') can use these functions when being built from source. For more on Gnuastro's Python helper functions, see Section 12.3.32 [Python interface (`python.h`)], page 928.

This Python interface is only relevant if you want to build the Python wrappers (like 'pyGnuastro') from source. If you install the Gnuastro Python wrapper

from a pre-built repository like PyPI, this feature of your Gnuastro library won't be used. Pre-built libraries contain the full Gnuastro library that they need within them (you don't even need to have Gnuastro at all!).

Can't find the Python3 and Numpy of a virtual environment: make sure to set the `$PYTHON` variable to point to the `python3` command of the virtual environment before running `./configure`. Note that you don't need to activate the virtual env, just point `PYTHON` to its Python3 executable, like the example below:

```
$ python3 -m venv test-env    # Setting up the virtual env.
$ export PYTHON="$(pwd)/test-env/bin/python3"
$ ./configure                 # Gnuastro's configure script.
```

SAO DS9 SAO DS9 (`ds9`) is a visualization tool for FITS images. Gnuastro's `astscript-fits-view` program calls DS9 to visualize FITS images. We have a full appendix on it and how to install it in Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989. Since it is a run-time dependency, it can be installed at any later time (after building and installing Gnuastro).

TOPCAT TOPCAT (`topcat`) is a visualization tool for astronomical tables (most commonly: plotting). Gnuastro's `astscript-fits-view` program calls TOPCAT it to visualize tables. We have a full appendix on it and how to install it in Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990. Since it is a run-time dependency, it can be installed at any later time (after building and installing Gnuastro).

3.1.3 Bootstrapping dependencies

Bootstrapping is only necessary if you have decided to obtain the full version controlled history of Gnuastro, see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228, and Section 3.2.2.1 [Bootstrapping], page 229. Using the version controlled source enables you to always be up to date with the most recent development work of Gnuastro (bug fixes, new functionalities, improved algorithms, etc.). If you have downloaded a tarball (see Section 3.2 [Downloading the source], page 227), then you can ignore this subsection.

To successfully run the bootstrapping process, there are some additional dependencies to those discussed in the previous subsections. These are low level tools that are used by a large collection of Unix-like operating systems programs, therefore they are most probably already available in your system. If they are not already installed, you should be able to easily find them in any GNU/Linux distribution package management system (`apt-get`, `yum`, `pacman`, etc.). The short names in parenthesis in `typewriter` font after the package name can be used to search for them in your package manager. For the GNU Portability Library, GNU Autoconf Archive and TEX Live, it is recommended to use the instructions here, not your operating system's package manager.

GNU Portability Library (Gnulib)

To ensure portability for a wider range of operating systems (those that do not include GNU C library, namely glibc), Gnuastro depends on the GNU portability library, or Gnulib. Gnulib keeps a copy of all the functions in glibc, implemented (as much as possible) to be portable to other operating systems.

The `bootstrap` script can automatically clone Gnulib (as a `gnulib/` directory inside Gnuastro), however, as described in Section 3.2.2.1 [Bootstrapping], page 229, this is not recommended.

The recommended way to bootstrap Gnuastro is to first clone Gnulib and the Autoconf archives (see below) into a local directory outside of Gnuastro. Let's call it `DEVDIR`[8] (which you can set to any directory; preferentially where you keep your other development projects). Currently in Gnuastro, both Gnulib and Autoconf archives have to be cloned in the same top directory[9] like the case here[10]:

```
$ DEVDIR=/home/yourname/Development  ## Select any location.
$ mkdir $DEVDIR                      ## If it doesn't exist!
$ cd $DEVDIR
$ git clone https://git.sv.gnu.org/git/gnulib.git
$ git clone https://git.sv.gnu.org/git/autoconf-archive.git
```

Gnulib is a source-based dependency of Gnuastro's bootstrapping process, so simply having it is enough on your computer, there is no need to install, and thus check anything.

You now have the full version controlled source of these two repositories in separate directories. Both these packages are regularly updated, so every once in a while, you can run `$ git pull` within them to get any possible updates.

GNU Automake (`automake`)

GNU Automake will build the `Makefile.in` files in each sub-directory using the (hand-written) `Makefile.am` files. The `Makefile.in`s are subsequently used to generate the `Makefile`s when the user runs `./configure` before building.

To check that you have a working GNU Automake in your system, you can try this command:

```
$ automake --version
```

GNU Autoconf (`autoconf`)

GNU Autoconf will build the `configure` script using the configurations we have defined (hand-written) in `configure.ac`.

To check that you have a working GNU Autoconf in your system, you can try this command:

```
$ autoconf --version
```

[8] If you are not a developer in Gnulib or Autoconf archives, `DEVDIR` can be a directory that you do not backup. In this way the large number of files in these projects will not slow down your backup process or take bandwidth (if you backup to a remote server).

[9] If you already have the Autoconf archives in a separate directory, or cannot clone it in the same directory as Gnulib, or you have it with another directory name (not `autoconf-archive/`), you can follow this short step. Set `AUTOCONFARCHIVES` to your desired address. Then define a symbolic link in `DEVDIR` with the following command so Gnuastro's bootstrap script can find it:
`$ ln -s $AUTOCONFARCHIVES $DEVDIR/autoconf-archive`.

[10] If your internet connection is active, but Git complains about the network, it might be due to your network setup not recognizing the git protocol. In that case use the following URL for the HTTP protocol instead (for Autoconf archives, replace the name): `http://git.sv.gnu.org/r/gnulib.git`

GNU Autoconf Archive
: These are a large collection of tests that can be called to run at `./configure` time. See the explanation under GNU Portability Library (Gnulib) above for instructions on obtaining it and keeping it up to date.

  GNU Autoconf Archive is a source-based dependency of Gnuastro's bootstrapping process, so simply having it is enough on your computer, there is no need to install, and thus check anything. Just do not forget that it has to be in the same directory as Gnulib (described above).

GNU Texinfo (`texinfo`)
: GNU Texinfo is the tool that formats this manual into the various output formats. To bootstrap Gnuastro you need all of Texinfo's command-line programs. However, some operating systems package them separately, for example, in Fedora, `makeinfo` is packaged in the `texinfo-tex` package.

  To check that you have a working GNU Texinfo in your system, you can try this command:

  ```
  $ makeinfo --version
  ```

GNU Libtool (`libtool`)
: GNU Libtool is in charge of building all the libraries in Gnuastro. The libraries contain functions that are used by more than one program and are installed for use in other programs. They are thus put in a separate directory (`lib/`).

  To check that you have a working GNU Libtool in your system, you can try this command (and from the output, make sure it is GNU's libtool)

  ```
  $ libtool --version
  ```

GNU help2man (`help2man`)
: GNU help2man is used to convert the output of the `--help` option (Section 4.3.2 [`--help`], page 274) to the traditional Man page (Section 4.3.3 [Man pages], page 275).

  To check that you have a working GNU Help2man in your system, you can try this command:

  ```
  $ help2man --version
  ```

LaTeX and some TeX packages
: Some of the figures in this book are built by LaTeX (using the PGF/TikZ package). The LaTeX source for those figures is version controlled for easy maintenance not the actual figures. So the `./boostrap` script will run LaTeX to build the figures. The best way to install LaTeX and all the necessary packages is through TeX live (`https://www.tug.org/texlive/`) which is a package manager for TeX related tools that is independent of any operating system. It is thus preferred to the TeX Live versions distributed by your operating system.

  To install TeX Live, first download its installer, unpack it, enter the unpacked directoy (which includes the date it was generated!),

  ```
  $ baseurl=http://mirrors.rit.edu/CTAN/systems/texlive/tlnet
  $ wget $baseurl/install-tl-unx.tar.gz
  $ tar -xf install-tl-unx.tar.gz
  ```

```
$ cd install-tl-20*
$ ./install-tl
```

The output of the last command above is an interactive shell that will allow you to customize the installation. There are two important parts which you need to edit:

Basic scheme

Befault the full package repository will be downloaded and installed (around 9 Gigabytes!) which can take *very* long to download and to update later. However, most packages are not needed by everyone! So it is easier, faster and better to install only the "Basic scheme" (consisting of only the most basic TEX and LATEX packages, which is almost 300 Megabytes). To do this, from the top interactive installer environment press the following keys:

1. 'S' to select the installation scheme.
2. 'd' to select the basic scheme.
3. 'R' to return to the main menu.

Installation path

By default, TeXLiv will try to install in a system-wide location which will require root permissions. A better solution is to install TeXLive in your user-accessible directories to avoid the need to become root when installing packages or updating. This also helps in using servers where you do not have root access at all. To install it in another directory take the following steps from the main menu:

1. 'D' to enter the directory settings.
2. '1' to select the "main tree" (base of all the other directories by default).
3. You will be prompted to enter a new directory.

   To get the directory name, let's open a new/different terminal. Run the following commands to make and get the absolute location of the directory (no problem if the first command says that `$HOME/.local` already exists). If you already have a different place to host custom-built software, you can modify this step accordingly.

   ```
   $ mkdir $HOME/.local; mkdir $HOME/.local/texlive
   $ cd $HOME/.local/texlive
   $ pwd
   ```

   Copy the result of the last command above, come back to the terminal with the TeXlive interactive installation and paste the directory there. Afterwards, you can close the temporary directory.
4. 'R' to return to the main menu.

After the customizations above are implemented simply press the 'I' key to start the installation of TeXLive. After the installation finishes, be sure to set

the environment variables as suggested in the end of the outputs. For more on how to insert the given directories for the given environment PATHs, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

After the installation and setup of the PATHs are complete, you need install all the necessary TEX packages for a successful Gnuastro bootstrap. To do that, run the command below (in case it complains about not finding `tlmgr`, there is a problem in the PATHs above).

```
$ tlmgr install epsf jknapltx caption biblatex biber \
                logreq xstring xkeyval pgf xcolor \
                pgfplots times rsfs ps2eps epspdf
```

Generally (outside of Gnuastro's development), any time you confront (need) a package you do not have[11], simply install it with the `tlmgr` command above. It is very similar to how you install software from your operating system's package manager).

ImageMagick (`imagemagick`)

ImageMagick is a wonderful and robust program for image manipulation on the command-line. `bootstrap` uses it to convert the book images into the formats necessary for the various book formats.

Since ImageMagick version 7, it is necessary to edit the policy file (`/etc/ImageMagick-7/policy.xml`) to have the following line (it maybe present, but commented, in this case un-comment it):

```
<policy domain="coder" rights="read|write" pattern="{PS,PDF,XPS}"/>
```

If the following line is present, it is also necessary to comment/remove it.

```
<policy domain="delegate" rights="none" pattern="gs" />
```

To learn more about the ImageMagick security policy please see: `https://imagemagick.org/script/security-policy.php`.

To check that you have a working ImageMagick in your system, you can try this command:

```
$ convert --version
```

3.1.4 Dependencies from package managers

The most basic way to install a package on your system is to build the packages from source yourself. Alternatively, you can use your operating system's package manager to download pre-compiled files and install them. The latter choice is easier and faster. However, we recommend that you build the Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213, yourself from source (all necessary commands and links are given in the respective section). Here are some basic reasons behind this recommendation.

1. Your operating system's pre-built software might not be the most recent release. For example, Gnuastro itself is also packaged in some package managers. For the list see: `https://repology.org/project/gnuastro/versions`. You will notice that Gnuastro's version in some operating systems is more than 10 versions old! It is the same for all the dependencies of Gnuastro.

[11] After running TEX, or LATEX, you might get a warning complaining about a `missingfile`. Run '`tlmgr info missingfile`' to see the package(s) containing that file which you can install.

2. For each package, Gnuastro might preform better (or require) certain configuration options that your distribution's package managers did not add for you. If present, these configuration options are explained during the installation of each in the sections below (for example, in Section 3.1.1.2 [CFITSIO], page 213). When the proper configuration has not been set, the programs should complain and inform you.
3. For the libraries, they might separate the binary file from the header files which can cause confusion, see Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246.
4. Like any other tool, the science you derive from Gnuastro's tools highly depend on these lower level dependencies, so generally it is much better to have a close connection with them. By reading their manuals, installing them and staying up to date with changes/bugs in them, your scientific results and understanding (of what is going on, and thus how you interpret your scientific results) will also correspondingly improve.

Based on your package manager, you can use any of the following commands to install the mandatory and optional dependencies. If your package manager is not included in the list below, please send us the respective command, so we add it. For better archivability and compression ratios, Gnuastro's recommended tarball compression format is with the Lzip (`http://lzip.nongnu.org/lzip.html`) program, see Section 3.2.1 [Release tarball], page 227. Therefore, the package manager commands below also contain Lzip.

`apt-get` (Debian-based OSs: Debian, Ubuntu, Linux Mint, etc.)

Debian (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Debian`) is one of the oldest GNU/Linux distributions[12]. It thus has a very extended user community and a robust internal structure and standards. All of it is free software and based on the work of volunteers around the world. Many distributions are thus derived from it, for example, Ubuntu and Linux Mint. This arguably makes Debian-based OSs the largest, and most used, class of GNU/Linux distributions. All of them use Debian's Advanced Packaging Tool (APT, for example, `apt-get`) for managing packages.

Development features (Ubuntu or derivatives)

By default, a newly installed Ubuntu does not contain the low-level tools that are necessary for building a software from source. Therefore, if you are using Ubuntu, please run the following command.

```
$ sudo apt-get install gcc make zlib1g-dev lzip
```

Mandatory dependencies

Without these, Gnuastro cannot be built, they are necessary for input/output and low-level mathematics (see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213)!

```
$ sudo apt-get install libgsl-dev libcfitsio-dev \
                       wcslib-dev
```

Optional dependencies

If present, these libraries can be used in Gnuastro's build for extra features, see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215.

```
$ sudo apt-get install ghostscript libtool-bin \
```

[12] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Linux_distributions#Debian-based`

```
                                        libjpeg-dev libtiff-dev \
                                        libgit2-dev curl
```

Programs to view FITS images or tables

These are not used in Gnuastro's build. They can just help in viewing the inputs/outputs independent of Gnuastro!

```
$ sudo apt-get install saods9 topcat
```

Gnuastro is packaged (`https://tracker.debian.org/pkg/gnuastro`) in Debian (and thus some of its derivate operating systems). Just make sure it is the most recent version.

`dnf`
`yum` (Red Hat-based OSs: Red Hat, Fedora, CentOS, Scientific Linux, etc.)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Red_Hat`) (RHEL) is released by Red Hat Inc. RHEL requires paid subscriptions for use of its binaries and support. But since it is free software, many other teams use its code to spin-off their own distributions based on RHEL. Red Hat-based GNU/Linux distributions initially used the "Yellowdog Updated, Modifier" (YUM) package manager, which has been replaced by "Dandified yum" (DNF). If the latter is not available on your system, you can use `yum` instead of `dnf` in the command below.

Mandatory dependencies

Without these, Gnuastro cannot be built, they are necessary for input/output and low-level mathematics (see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213)!

```
$ sudo dnf install gsl-devel cfitsio-devel \
                   wcslib-devel
```

Optional dependencies

If present, these libraries can be used in Gnuastro's build for extra features, see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215.

```
$ sudo dnf install ghostscript libtool \
                   libjpeg-devel libtiff-devel \
                   libgit2-devel lzip curl
```

Programs to view FITS images or tables

These are not used in Gnuastro's build. They can just help in viewing the inputs/outputs independent of Gnuastro!

```
$ sudo dnf install saods9 topcat
```

`brew` (macOS)

macOS (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MacOS`) is the operating system used on Apple devices. macOS does not come with a package manager pre-installed, but several widely used, third-party package managers exist, such as Homebrew or MacPorts. Both are free software. Currently we have only tested Gnuastro's installation with Homebrew as described below. If not already installed, first obtain Homebrew by following the instructions at `https://brew.sh`.

Mandatory dependencies

Without these, Gnuastro cannot be built, they are necessary for input/output and low-level mathematics (see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213)!

Homebrew manages packages in different 'taps'. To install WCSLIB via Homebrew you will need to `tap` into `brewsci/science` first (the tap may change in the future, but can be found by calling `brew search wcslib`).

```
$ brew tap brewsci/science
$ brew install wcslib gsl cfitsio
```

Optional dependencies

If present, these libraries can be used in Gnuastro's build for extra features, see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215.

```
$ brew install ghostscript libtool libjpeg \
               libtiff libgit2 curl lzip
```

Programs to view FITS images or tables

These are not used in Gnuastro's build. They can just help in viewing the inputs/outputs independent of Gnuastro!

```
$ brew install saoimageds9 topcat
```

`pacman` (Arch Linux)

Arch Linux (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arch_Linux`) is a smaller GNU/Linux distribution, which follows the KISS principle ("keep it simple, stupid") as a general guideline. It "focuses on elegance, code correctness, minimalism and simplicity, and expects the user to be willing to make some effort to understand the system's operation". Arch GNU/Linux uses "Package manager" (Pacman) to manage its packages/components.

Mandatory dependencies

Without these, Gnuastro cannot be built, they are necessary for input/output and low-level mathematics (see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213)!

```
$ sudo pacman -S gsl cfitsio wcslib
```

Optional dependencies

If present, these libraries can be used in Gnuastro's build for extra features, see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215.

```
$ sudo pacman -S ghostscript libtool libjpeg \
                 libtiff libgit2 curl lzip
```

Programs to view FITS images or tables

These are not used in Gnuastro's build. They can just help in viewing the inputs/outputs independent of Gnuastro!

SAO DS9 and TOPCAT are not available in the standard Arch GNU/Linux repositories. However, installing and using both is very easy from their own web pages, as described in Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989, and Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990.

`zypper` (openSUSE and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server)
: SUSE Linux Enterprise Server[13] (SLES) is the commercial offering which shares code and tools. Many additional packages are offered in the Build Service[14]. openSUSE and SLES use `zypper` (cli) and YaST (GUI) for managing repositories and packages.

  Configuration
  : When building Gnuastro, run the configure script with the following `CPPFLAGS` environment variable:

    ```
    $ ./configure CPPFLAGS="-I/usr/include/cfitsio"
    ```

  Mandatory dependencies
  : Without these, Gnuastro cannot be built, they are necessary for input/output and low-level mathematics (see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213)!

    ```
    $ sudo zypper install gsl-devel cfitsio-devel \
                          wcslib-devel
    ```

  Optional dependencies
  : If present, these libraries can be used in Gnuastro's build for extra features, see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215.

    ```
    $ sudo zypper install ghostscript_any libtool \
                          pkgconfig libcurl-devel \
                          libgit2-devel \
                          libjpeg62-devel \
                          libtiff-devel curl
    ```

  Programs to view FITS images or tables
  : These are not used in Gnuastro's build. They can just help in viewing the inputs/outputs independent of Gnuastro!

    ```
    $ sudo zypper install ds9 topcat
    ```

Usually, when libraries are installed by operating system package managers, there should be no problems when configuring and building other programs from source (that depend on the libraries: Gnuastro in this case). However, in some special conditions, problems may pop-up during the configuration, building, or checking/running any of Gnuastro's programs. The most common of such problems and their solution are discussed below.

Not finding library during configuration: If a library is installed, but during Gnuastro's `configure` step the library is not found, then configure Gnuastro like the command below (correcting `/path/to/lib`). For more, see Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246, and Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

```
$ ./configure LDFLAGS="-L/path/to/lib"
```

[13] `https://www.suse.com/products/server`

[14] `https://build.opensuse.org`

Not finding header (.h) files while building: If a library is installed, but during Gnuastro's `make` step, the library's header (file with a `.h` suffix) is not found, then configure Gnuastro like the command below (correcting `/path/to/include`). For more, see Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246, and Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

```
$ ./configure CPPFLAGS="-I/path/to/include"
```

Gnuastro's programs do not run during check or after install: If a library is installed, but the programs do not run due to linking problems, set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` variable like below (assuming Gnuastro is installed in `/path/to/installed`). For more, see Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246, and Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

```
$ export LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$LD_LIBRARY_PATH:/path/to/installed/lib"
```

3.2 Downloading the source

Gnuastro's source code can be downloaded in two ways. As a tarball, ready to be configured and installed on your system (as described in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1), see Section 3.2.1 [Release tarball], page 227. If you want official releases of stable versions this is the best, easiest and most common option. Alternatively, you can clone the version controlled history of Gnuastro, run one extra bootstrapping step and then follow the same steps as the tarball. This will give you access to all the most recent work that will be included in the next release along with the full project history. The process is thoroughly introduced in Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228.

3.2.1 Release tarball

A release tarball (commonly compressed) is the most common way of obtaining free and open source software. A tarball is a snapshot of one particular moment in the Gnuastro development history along with all the necessary files to configure, build, and install Gnuastro easily (see Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1). It is very straightforward and needs the least set of dependencies (see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213). Gnuastro has tarballs for official stable releases and pre-releases for testing. See Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11, for more on the two types of releases and the formats of the version numbers. The URLs for each type of release are given below.

Official stable releases (`http://ftp.gnu.org/gnu/gnuastro`):
: This URL hosts the official stable releases of Gnuastro. Always use the most recent version (see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11). By clicking on the "Last modified" title of the second column, the files will be sorted by their date which you can also use to find the latest version. It is recommended to use a mirror to download these tarballs, please visit `http://ftpmirror.gnu.org/gnuastro/` and see below.

Pre-release tarballs (`http://alpha.gnu.org/gnu/gnuastro`):
: This URL contains unofficial pre-release versions of Gnuastro. The pre-release versions of Gnuastro here are for enthusiasts to try out before an official release.

> If there are problems, or bugs then the testers will inform the developers to fix before the next official release. See Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11, to understand how the version numbers here are formatted. If you want to remain even more up-to-date with the developing activities, please clone the version controlled source as described in Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228.

Gnuastro's official/stable tarball is released with two formats: Gzip (with suffix `.tar.gz`) and Lzip (with suffix `.tar.lz`). The pre-release tarballs (after version 0.3) are released only as an Lzip tarball. Gzip is a very well-known and widely used compression program created by GNU and available in most systems. However, Lzip provides a better compression ratio and more robust archival capacity. For example, Gnuastro 0.3's tarball was 2.9MB and 4.3MB with Lzip and Gzip respectively, see the Lzip web page (`http://www.nongnu.org/lzip/lzip.html`) for more. Lzip might not be pre-installed in your operating system, if so, installing it from your operating system's package manager or from source is very easy and fast (it is a very small program).

The GNU FTP server is mirrored (has backups) in various locations on the globe (`http://www.gnu.org/order/ftp.html`). You can use the closest mirror to your location for a more faster download. Note that only some mirrors keep track of the pre-release (alpha) tarballs. Also note that if you want to download immediately after and announcement (see Section 1.11 [Announcements], page 18), the mirrors might need some time to synchronize with the main GNU FTP server.

3.2.2 Version controlled source

The publicly distributed Gnuastro tarball (for example, `gnuastro-X.X.tar.gz`) does not contain the revision history, it is only a snapshot of the source code at one significant instant of Gnuastro's history (specified by the version number, see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11), ready to be configured and built. To be able to develop successfully, the revision history of the code can be very useful to track when something was added or changed, also some updates that are not yet officially released might be in it.

We use Git for the version control of Gnuastro. For those who are not familiar with it, we recommend the ProGit book (`https://git-scm.com/book/en`). The whole book is publicly available for online reading and downloading and does a wonderful job at explaining the concepts and best practices.

Let's assume you want to keep Gnuastro in the `TOPGNUASTRO` directory (can be any directory, change the value below). The full version controlled history of Gnuastro can be cloned in `TOPGNUASTRO/gnuastro` by running the following commands[15]:

```
$ TOPGNUASTRO=/home/yourname/Research/projects/
$ cd $TOPGNUASTRO
$ git clone git://git.sv.gnu.org/gnuastro.git
```

The `$TOPGNUASTRO/gnuastro` directory will contain hand-written (version controlled) source code for Gnuastro's programs, libraries, this book and the tests. All are divided into sub-directories with standard and very descriptive names. The version controlled files

[15] If your internet connection is active, but Git complains about the network, it might be due to your network setup not recognizing the Git protocol. In that case use the following URL which uses the HTTP protocol instead: `http://git.sv.gnu.org/r/gnuastro.git`

in the top cloned directory are either mainly in capital letters (for example, `THANKS` and `README`) or mainly written in small-caps (for example, `configure.ac` and `Makefile.am`). The former are non-programming, standard writing for human readers containing high-level information about the whole package. The latter are instructions to customize the GNU build system for Gnuastro. For more on Gnuastro's source code structure, please see Chapter 13 [Developing], page 958. We will not go any deeper here.

The cloned Gnuastro source cannot immediately be configured, compiled, or installed since it only contains hand-written files, not automatically generated or imported files which do all the hard work of the build process. See Section 3.2.2.1 [Bootstrapping], page 229, for the process of generating and importing those files (it is not too hard!). Once you have bootstrapped Gnuastro, you can run the standard procedures (in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1). Very soon after you have cloned it, Gnuastro's main `master` branch will be updated on the main repository (since the developers are actively working on Gnuastro), for the best practices in keeping your local history in sync with the main repository see Section 3.2.2.2 [Synchronizing], page 231.

3.2.2.1 Bootstrapping

The version controlled source code lacks the source files that we have not written or are automatically built. These automatically generated files are included in the distributed tarball for each distribution (for example, `gnuastro-X.X.tar.gz`, see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11) and make it easy to immediately configure, build, and install Gnuastro. However from the perspective of version control, they are just bloatware and sources of confusion (since they are not changed by Gnuastro developers).

The process of automatically building and importing necessary files into the cloned directory is known as *bootstrapping*. After bootstrapping is done you are ready to follow the default GNU build steps that you normally run on the tarball (`./configure && make` for example, described more in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1). Some known issues with bootstrapping may occur during the process, to see how to fix them, please see Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246.

All the instructions for an automatic bootstrapping are available in `bootstrap` and configured using `bootstrap.conf`. `bootstrap` and `COPYING` (which contains the software copyright notice) are the only files not written by Gnuastro developers but under version control to enable simple bootstrapping and legal information on usage immediately after cloning. `bootstrap.conf` is maintained by the GNU Portability Library (Gnulib) and this file is an identical copy, so do not make any changes in this file since it will be replaced when Gnulib releases an update. Make all your changes in `bootstrap.conf`.

The bootstrapping process has its own separate set of dependencies, the full list is given in Section 3.1.3 [Bootstrapping dependencies], page 218. They are generally very low-level and used by a very large set of commonly used programs, so they are probably already installed on your system. The simplest way to bootstrap Gnuastro is to simply run the bootstrap script within your cloned Gnuastro directory as shown below. However, please read the next paragraph before doing so (see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228, for `TOPGNUASTRO`).

```
$ cd TOPGNUASTRO/gnuastro
$ ./bootstrap                       # Requires internet connection
```

Without any options, `bootstrap` will clone Gnulib within your cloned Gnuastro directory (`TOPGNUASTRO/gnuastro/gnulib`) and download the necessary Autoconf archives macros. So if you run bootstrap like this, you will need an internet connection every time you decide to bootstrap. Also, Gnulib is a large package and cloning it can be slow. It will also keep the full Gnulib repository within your Gnuastro repository, so if another one of your projects also needs Gnulib, and you insist on running bootstrap like this, you will have two copies. In case you regularly backup your important files, Gnulib will also slow down the backup process. Therefore while the simple invocation above can be used with no problem, it is not recommended. To do better, see the next paragraph.

The recommended way to get these two packages is thoroughly discussed in Section 3.1.3 [Bootstrapping dependencies], page 218, (in short: clone them in the separate `DEVDIR/` directory). The following commands will take you into the cloned Gnuastro directory and run the `bootstrap` script, while telling it to copy some files (instead of making symbolic links, with the `--copy` option, this is not mandatory[16]) and where to look for Gnulib (with the `--gnulib-srcdir` option). Please note that the address given to `--gnulib-srcdir` has to be an absolute address (so do not use `~` or `../` for example).

```
$ cd $TOPGNUASTRO/gnuastro
$ ./bootstrap --copy --gnulib-srcdir=$DEVDIR/gnulib
```

Since Gnulib and Autoconf archives are now available in your local directories, you do not need an internet connection every time you decide to remove all un-tracked files and redo the bootstrap (see box below). You can also use the same command on any other project that uses Gnulib. All the necessary GNU C library functions, Autoconf macros and Automake inputs are now available along with the book figures. The standard GNU build system (Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1) will do the rest of the job.

Undoing the bootstrap: During the development, it might happen that you want to remove all the automatically generated and imported files. In other words, you might want to reverse the bootstrap process. Fortunately Git has a good program for this job: `git clean`. Run the following command and every file that is not version controlled will be removed.

```
git clean -fxd
```

It is best to commit any recent change before running this command. You might have created new files since the last commit and if they have not been committed, they will all be gone forever (using `rm`). To get a list of the non-version controlled files instead of deleting them, add the `n` option to `git clean`, so it becomes `-fxdn`.

Besides the `bootstrap` and `bootstrap.conf`, the `bootstrapped/` directory and `README-hacking` file are also related to the bootstrapping process. The former hosts all the imported (bootstrapped) directories. Thus, in the version controlled source, it only contains a `README` file, but in the distributed tarball it also contains sub-directories filled with all bootstrapped files. `README-hacking` contains a summary of the bootstrapping process discussed in this section. It is a necessary reference when you have not built this book yet. It is thus not distributed in the Gnuastro tarball.

[16] The `--copy` option is recommended because some backup systems might do strange things with symbolic links.

3.2.2.2 Synchronizing

The bootstrapping script (see Section 3.2.2.1 [Bootstrapping], page 229) is not regularly needed: you mainly need it after you have cloned Gnuastro (once) and whenever you want to re-import the files from Gnulib, or Autoconf archives[17] (not too common). However, Gnuastro developers are constantly working on Gnuastro and are pushing their changes to the official repository. Therefore, your local Gnuastro clone will soon be out-dated. Gnuastro has two mailing lists dedicated to its developing activities (see Section 13.11 [Developing mailing lists], page 980). Subscribing to them can help you decide when to synchronize with the official repository.

To pull all the most recent work in Gnuastro, run the following command from the top Gnuastro directory. If you do not already have a built system, ignore `make distclean`. The separate steps are described in detail afterwards.

```
$ make distclean && git pull && autoreconf -f
```

You can also run the commands separately:

```
$ make distclean
$ git pull
$ autoreconf -f
```

If Gnuastro was already built in this directory, you do not want some outputs from the previous version being mixed with outputs from the newly pulled work. Therefore, the first step is to clean/delete all the built files with `make distclean`. Fortunately the GNU build system allows the separation of source and built files (in separate directories). This is a great feature to keep your source directory clean and you can use it to avoid the cleaning step. Gnuastro comes with a script with some useful options for this job. It is useful if you regularly pull recent changes, see Section 3.3.2 [Separate build and source directories], page 242.

After the pull, we must re-configure Gnuastro with `autoreconf -f` (part of GNU Autoconf). It will update the `./configure` script and all the `Makefile.in`[18] files based on the hand-written configurations (in `configure.ac` and the `Makefile.am` files). After running `autoreconf -f`, a warning about `TEXI2DVI` might show up, you can ignore that.

The most important reason for rebuilding Gnuastro's build system is to generate/update the version number for your updated Gnuastro snapshot. This generated version number will include the commit information (see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11). The version number is included in nearly all outputs of Gnuastro's programs, therefore it is vital for reproducing an old result.

As a summary, be sure to run '`autoreconf -f`' after every change in the Git history. This includes synchronization with the main server or even a commit you have made yourself.

If you would like to see what has changed since you last synchronized your local clone, you can take the following steps instead of the simple command above (do not type anything after `#`):

```
$ git checkout master             # Confirm if you are on master.
```

[17] `https://savannah.gnu.org/task/index.php?13993` is defined for you to check if significant (for Gnuastro) updates are made in these repositories, since the last time you pulled from them.

[18] In the GNU build system, `./configure` will use the `Makefile.in` files to create the necessary `Makefile` files that are later read by `make` to build the package.

```
$ git fetch origin                # Fetch all new commits from server.
$ git log master..origin/master   # See all the new commit messages.
$ git merge origin/master         # Update your master branch.
$ autoreconf -f                   # Update the build system.
```

By default `git log` prints the most recent commit first, add the `--reverse` option to see the changes chronologically. To see exactly what has been changed in the source code along with the commit message, add a `-p` option to the `git log`.

If you want to make changes in the code, have a look at Chapter 13 [Developing], page 958, to get started easily. Be sure to commit your changes in a separate branch (keep your `master` branch to follow the official repository) and re-run `autoreconf -f` after the commit. If you intend to send your work to us, you can safely use your commit since it will be ultimately recorded in Gnuastro's official history. If not, please upload your separate branch to a public hosting service, for example, Codeberg (`https://codeberg.org`), and link to it in your report/paper. Alternatively, run `make distcheck` and upload the output `gnuastro-X.X.X.XXXX.tar.gz` to a publicly accessible web page so your results can be considered scientific (reproducible) later.

3.3 Build and install

This section is basically a longer explanation to the sequence of commands given in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1. If you did not have any problems during the Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1, steps, you want to have all the programs of Gnuastro installed in your system, you do not want to change the executable names during or after installation, you have root access to install the programs in the default system wide directory, the Letter paper size of the print book is fine for you or as a summary you do not feel like going into the details when everything is working, you can safely skip this section.

If you have any of the above problems or you want to understand the details for a better control over your build and install, read along. The dependencies which you will need prior to configuring, building and installing Gnuastro are explained in Section 3.1 [Dependencies], page 212. The first three steps in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1, need no extra explanation, so we will skip them and start with an explanation of Gnuastro specific configuration options and a discussion on the installation directory in Section 3.3.1 [Configuring], page 232, followed by some smaller subsections: Section 3.3.3 [Tests], page 245, Section 3.3.4 [A4 print book], page 245, and Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246, which explains the solutions to known problems you might encounter in the installation steps and ways you can solve them.

3.3.1 Configuring

The `$ ./configure` step is the most important step in the build and install process. All the required packages, libraries, headers and environment variables are checked in this step. The behaviors of make and make install can also be set through command-line options to this command.

The configure script accepts various arguments and options which enable the final user to highly customize whatever she is building. The options to configure are generally very similar to normal program options explained in Section 4.1.1 [Arguments and options],

page 250. Similar to all GNU programs, you can get a full list of the options along with a short explanation by running

```
$ ./configure --help
```

A complete explanation is also included in the `INSTALL` file. Note that this file was written by the authors of GNU Autoconf (which builds the `configure` script), therefore it is common for all programs which use the `$ ./configure` script for building and installing, not just Gnuastro. Here we only discuss cases where you do not have superuser access to the system and if you want to change the executable names. But before that, a review of the options to configure that are particular to Gnuastro are discussed.

3.3.1.1 Gnuastro configure options

Most of the options to configure (which are to do with building) are similar for every program which uses this script. Here the options that are particular to Gnuastro are discussed. The next topics explain the usage of other configure options which can be applied to any program using the GNU build system (through the configure script).

`--enable-debug`

Compile/build Gnuastro with debugging information, no optimization and without shared libraries.

In order to allow more efficient programs when using Gnuastro (after the installation), by default Gnuastro is built with a 3rd level (a very high level) optimization and no debugging information. By default, libraries are also built for static *and* shared linking (see Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756). However, when there are crashes or unexpected behavior, these three features can hinder the process of localizing the problem. This configuration option is identical to manually calling the configuration script with `CFLAGS="-g -O0" --disable-shared`.

In the (rare) situations where you need to do your debugging on the shared libraries, do not use this option. Instead run the configure script by explicitly setting `CFLAGS` like this:

```
$ ./configure CFLAGS="-g -O0"
```

`--enable-check-with-valgrind`

Do the `make check` tests through Valgrind. Therefore, if any crashes or memory-related issues (segmentation faults in particular) occur in the tests, the output of Valgrind will also be put in the `tests/test-suite.log` file without having to manually modify the check scripts. This option will also activate Gnuastro's debug mode (see the `--enable-debug` configure-time option described above).

Valgrind is free software. It is a program for easy checking of memory-related issues in programs. It runs a program within its own controlled environment and can thus identify the exact line-number in the program's source where a memory-related issue occurs. However, it can significantly slow-down the tests. So this option is only useful when a segmentation fault is found during `make check`.

`--enable-progname`
: Only build and install `progname` along with any other program that is enabled in this fashion. `progname` is the name of the executable without the `ast`, for example, `crop` for Crop (with the executable name of `astcrop`).

  Note that by default all the programs will be installed. This option (and the `--disable-progname` options) are only relevant when you do not want to install all the programs. Therefore, if this option is called for any of the programs in Gnuastro, any program which is not explicitly enabled will not be built or installed.

`--disable-progname`
`--enable-progname=no`
: Do not build or install the program named `progname`. This is very similar to the `--enable-progname`, but will build and install all the other programs except this one.

  Note: If some programs are enabled and some are disabled, it is equivalent to simply enabling those that were enabled. Listing the disabled programs is redundant.

`--enable-gnulibcheck`
: Enable checks on the GNU Portability Library (Gnulib). Gnulib is used by Gnuastro to enable users of non-GNU based operating systems (that do not use GNU C library or glibc) to compile and use the advanced features that this library provides. We make extensive use of such functions. If you give this option to `$ ./configure`, when you run `$ make check`, first the functions in Gnulib will be tested, then the Gnuastro executables. If your operating system does not support glibc or has an older version of it and you have problems in the build process (`$ make`), you can give this flag to configure to see if the problem is caused by Gnulib not supporting your operating system or Gnuastro, see Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246.

`--disable-guide-message`
`--enable-guide-message=no`
: Do not print a guiding message during the GNU Build process of Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1. By default, after each step, a message is printed guiding the user what the next command should be. Therefore, after `./configure`, it will suggest running `make`. After `make`, it will suggest running `make check` and so on. If Gnuastro is configured with this option, for example

  ```
  $ ./configure --disable-guide-message
  ```

  Then these messages will not be printed after any step (like most programs). For people who are not yet fully accustomed to this build system, these guidelines can be very useful and encouraging. However, if you find those messages annoying, use this option.

`--without-libgit2`
: Build Gnuastro without libgit2 (for including Git commit hashes in output files), see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215. libgit2 is an optional

dependency, with this option, Gnuastro will ignore any possibly existing libgit2 that may already be on the system.

`--without-libjpeg`
: Build Gnuastro without libjpeg (for reading/writing to JPEG files), see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215. libjpeg is an optional dependency, with this option, Gnuastro will ignore any possibly existing libjpeg that may already be on the system.

`--without-libtiff`
: Build Gnuastro without libtiff (for reading/writing to TIFF files), see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215. libtiff is an optional dependency, with this option, Gnuastro will ignore any possibly existing libtiff that may already be on the system.

`--with-python`
: Build the Python interface within Gnuastro's dynamic library. This interface can be used for easy communication with Python wrappers (for example, the pyGnuastro package).

  When you install the pyGnuastro package from PyPI, the correct configuration of the Gnuastro Library is already packaged with it (with the Python interface) and that is independent of your Gnuastro installation. The Python interface is only necessary if you want to build pyGnuastro from source (which is only necessary for developers). Therefore it has to be explicitly activated at configure time with this option. For more on the interface functions, see Section 12.3.32 [Python interface (`python.h`)], page 928.

The tests of some programs might depend on the outputs of the tests of other programs. For example, MakeProfiles is one the first programs to be tested when you run `$ make check`. MakeProfiles' test outputs (FITS images) are inputs to many other programs (which in turn provide inputs for other programs). Therefore, if you do not install MakeProfiles for example, the tests for many the other programs will be skipped. To avoid this, in one run, you can install all the programs and run the tests but not install. If everything is working correctly, you can run configure again with only the programs you want. However, do not run the tests and directly install after building.

3.3.1.2 Installation directory

One of the most commonly used options to `./configure` is `--prefix`, it is used to define the directory that will host all the installed files (or the "prefix" in their final absolute file name). For example, when you are using a server and you do not have administrator or root access. In this example scenario, if you do not use the `--prefix` option, you will not be able to install the built files and thus access them from anywhere without having to worry about where they are installed. However, once you prepare your startup file to look into the proper place (as discussed thoroughly below), you will be able to easily use this option and benefit from any software you want to install without having to ask the system administrators or install and use a different version of a software that is already installed on the server.

The most basic way to run an executable is to explicitly write its full file name (including all the directory information) and run it. One example is running the configuration script

with the `$ ./configure` command (see Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1). By giving a specific directory (the current directory or `./`), we are explicitly telling the shell to look in the current directory for an executable file named '`configure`'. Directly specifying the directory is thus useful for executables in the current (or nearby) directories. However, when the program (an executable file) is to be used a lot, specifying all those directories will become a significant burden. For example, the `ls` executable lists the contents in a given directory and it is (usually) installed in the `/usr/bin/` directory by the operating system maintainers. Therefore, if using the full address was the only way to access an executable, each time you wanted a listing of a directory, you would have to run the following command (which is very inconvenient, both in writing and in remembering the various directories).

```
$ /usr/bin/ls
```

To address this problem, we have the `PATH` environment variable. To understand it better, we will start with a short introduction to the shell variables. Shell variable values are basically treated as strings of characters. For example, it does not matter if the value is a name (string of *alphabetic* characters), or a number (string of *numeric* characters), or both. You can define a variable and a value for it by running

```
$ myvariable1=a_test_value
$ myvariable2="a test value"
```

As you see above, if the value contains white space characters, you have to put the whole value (including white space characters) in double quotes (`"`). You can see the value it represents by running

```
$ echo $myvariable1
$ echo $myvariable2
```

If a variable has no value or it was not defined, the last command will only print an empty line. A variable defined like this will be known as long as this shell or terminal is running. Other terminals will have no idea it existed. The main advantage of shell variables is that if they are exported[19], subsequent programs that are run within that shell can access their value. So by changing their value, you can change the "environment" of a program which uses them. The shell variables which are accessed by programs are therefore known as "environment variables"[20]. You can see the full list of exported variables that your shell recognizes by running:

```
$ printenv
```

`HOME` is one commonly used environment variable, it is any user's (the one that is logged in) top directory. Try finding it in the command above. It is used so often that the shell has a special expansion (alternative) for it: '`~`'. Whenever you see file names starting with the tilde sign, it actually represents the value to the `HOME` environment variable, so `~/doc` is the same as `$HOME/doc`.

Another one of the most commonly used environment variables is `PATH`, it is a list of directories to search for executable names. Its value is a list of directories (separated by a colon, or '`:`'). When the address of the executable is not explicitly given (like `./configure` above), the system will look for the executable in the directories specified by `PATH`. If you

[19] By running `$ export myvariable=a_test_value` instead of the simpler case in the text

[20] You can use shell variables for other actions too, for example, to temporarily keep some names or run loops on some files.

have a computer nearby, try running the following command to see which directories your system will look into when it is searching for executable (binary) files, one example is printed here (notice how `/usr/bin`, in the `ls` example above, is one of the directories in `PATH`):

```
$ echo $PATH
/usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/bin
```

By default `PATH` usually contains system-wide directories, which are readable (but not writable) by all users, like the above example. Therefore if you do not have root (or administrator) access, you need to add another directory to `PATH` which you actually have write access to. The standard directory where you can keep installed files (not just executables) for your own user is the `~/.local/` directory. The names of hidden files start with a '`.`' (dot), so it will not show up in your common command-line listings, or on the graphical user interface. You can use any other directory, but this is the most recognized.

The top installation directory will be used to keep all the package's components: programs (executables), libraries, include (header) files, shared data (like manuals), or configuration files (see Section 12.1 [Review of library fundamentals], page 752, for a thorough introduction to headers and linking). So it commonly has some of the following sub-directories for each class of installed components respectively: `bin/`, `lib/`, `include/` `man/`, `share/`, `etc/`. Since the `PATH` variable is only used for executables, you can add the `~/.local/bin` directory (which keeps the executables/programs or more generally, "binary" files) to `PATH` with the following command. As defined below, first the existing value of `PATH` is used, then your given directory is added to its end and the combined value is put back in `PATH` (run '`$ echo $PATH`' afterwards to check if it was added).

```
$ PATH=$PATH:~/.local/bin
```

Any executable that you installed in `~/.local/bin` will now be usable without having to remember and write its full address. However, as soon as you leave/close your current terminal session, this modified `PATH` variable will be forgotten. Adding the directories which contain executables to the `PATH` environment variable each time you start a terminal is also very inconvenient and prone to errors. Fortunately, there are standard 'startup files' defined by your shell precisely for this (and other) purposes. There is a special startup file for every significant starting step:

`/etc/profile` and everything in `/etc/profile.d/`
: These startup scripts are called when your whole system starts (for example, after you turn on your computer). Therefore you need administrator or root privileges to access or modify them.

`~/.bash_profile`
: If you are using (GNU) Bash as your shell, the commands in this file are run, when you log in to your account *through Bash*. Most commonly when you login through the virtual console (where there is no graphic user interface).

`~/.bashrc`
: If you are using (GNU) Bash as your shell, the commands here will be run each time you start a terminal and are already logged in. For example, when you open your terminal emulator in the graphic user interface.

For security reasons, it is highly recommended to directly type in your `HOME` directory value by hand in startup files instead of using variables. So in the following, let's assume

your user name is '`name`' (so `~` may be replaced with `/home/name`). To add `~/.local/bin` to your `PATH` automatically on any startup file, you have to "export" the new value of `PATH` in the startup file that is most relevant to you by adding this line:

```
export PATH=$PATH:/home/name/.local/bin
```

Now that you know your system will look into `~/.local/bin` for executables, you can tell Gnuastro's configure script to install everything in the top `~/.local` directory using the `--prefix` option. When you subsequently run `$ make install`, all the install-able files will be put in their respective directory under `~/.local/` (the executables in `~/.local/bin`, the compiled library files in `~/.local/lib`, the library header files in `~/.local/include` and so on, to learn more about these different files, please see Section 12.1 [Review of library fundamentals], page 752). Note that tilde ('`~`') expansion will not happen if you put a '`=`' between `--prefix` and `~/.local`[21], so we have avoided the `=` character here which is optional in GNU-style options, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251.

```
$ ./configure --prefix ~/.local
```

You can install everything (including libraries like GSL, CFITSIO, or WCSLIB which are Gnuastro's mandatory dependencies, see Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213) locally by configuring them as above. However, recall that `PATH` is only for executable files, not libraries and that libraries can also depend on other libraries. For example, WCSLIB depends on CFITSIO and Gnuastro needs both. Therefore, when you installed a library in a non-recognized directory, you have to guide the program that depends on them to look into the necessary library and header file directories. To do that, you have to define the `LDFLAGS` and `CPPFLAGS` environment variables respectively. This can be done while calling `./configure` as shown below:

```
$ ./configure LDFLAGS=-L/home/name/.local/lib           \
              CPPFLAGS=-I/home/name/.local/include      \
              --prefix ~/.local
```

It can be annoying/buggy to do this when configuring every software that depends on such libraries. Hence, you can define these two variables in the most relevant startup file (discussed above). The convention on using these variables does not include a colon to separate values (as `PATH`-like variables do). They use white space characters and each value is prefixed with a compiler option[22]. Note the `-L` and `-I` above (see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251), for `-I` see Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753, and for `-L`, see Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756. Therefore we have to keep the value in double quotation signs to keep the white space characters and adding the following two lines to the startup file of choice:

```
export LDFLAGS="$LDFLAGS -L/home/name/.local/lib"
export CPPFLAGS="$CPPFLAGS -I/home/name/.local/include"
```

Dynamic libraries are linked to the executable every time you run a program that depends on them (see Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756, to fully understand this important concept). Hence dynamic libraries also require a special path variable called `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` (same formatting as `PATH`). To use programs that depend on these libraries, you need to add `~/.local/lib` to your `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable by adding the following line to the relevant start-up file:

[21] If you insist on using '`=`', you can use `--prefix=$HOME/.local`.

[22] These variables are ultimately used as options while building the programs. Therefore every value has be an option name followed be a value as discussed in Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251.

```
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$LD_LIBRARY_PATH:/home/name/.local/lib
```

If you also want to access the Info (see Section 4.3.4 [Info], page 275) and man pages (see Section 4.3.3 [Man pages], page 275) documentations add `~/.local/share/info` and `~/.local/share/man` to your `INFOPATH`[23] and `MANPATH` environment variables respectively.

A final note is that order matters in the directories that are searched for all the variables discussed above. In the examples above, the new directory was added after the system specified directories. So if the program, library or manuals are found in the system wide directories, the user directory is no longer searched. If you want to search your local installation first, put the new directory before the already existing list, like the example below.

```
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=/home/name/.local/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

This is good when a library, for example, CFITSIO, is already present on the system, but the system-wide install was not configured with the correct configuration flags (see Section 3.1.1.2 [CFITSIO], page 213), or you want to use a newer version and you do not have administrator or root access to update it on the whole system/server. If you update `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` by placing `~/.local/lib` first (like above), the linker will first find the CFITSIO you installed for yourself and link with it. It thus will never reach the system-wide installation.

There are important security problems with using local installations first: all important system-wide executables and libraries (important executables like `ls` and `cp`, or libraries like the C library) can be replaced by non-secure versions with the same file names and put in the customized directory (`~/.local` in this example). So if you choose to search in your customized directory first, please *be sure* to keep it clean from executables or libraries with the same names as important system programs or libraries.

[23] Info has the following convention: "If the value of `INFOPATH` ends with a colon [or it is not defined] ..., the initial list of directories is constructed by appending the build-time default to the value of `INFOPATH`." So when installing in a non-standard directory and if `INFOPATH` was not initially defined, add a colon to the end of `INFOPATH` as shown below. Otherwise Info will not be able to find system-wide installed documentation:
`echo 'export INFOPATH=$INFOPATH:/home/name/.local/share/info:' >> ~/.bashrc`
Note that this is only an internal convention of Info: do not use it for other `*PATH` variables.

Summary: When you are using a server which does not give you administrator/root access AND you would like to give priority to your own built programs and libraries, not the version that is (possibly already) present on the server, add these lines to your startup file. See above for which startup file is best for your case and for a detailed explanation on each. Do not forget to replace '`/YOUR-HOME-DIR`' with your home directory (for example, '`/home/your-id`'):

```
export PATH="/YOUR-HOME-DIR/.local/bin:$PATH"
export LDFLAGS="-L/YOUR-HOME-DIR/.local/lib $LDFLAGS"
export MANPATH="/YOUR-HOME-DIR/.local/share/man/:$MANPATH"
export CPPFLAGS="-I/YOUR-HOME-DIR/.local/include $CPPFLAGS"
export INFOPATH="/YOUR-HOME-DIR/.local/share/info/:$INFOPATH"
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH="/YOUR-HOME-DIR/.local/lib:$LD_LIBRARY_PATH"
```

Afterwards, you just need to add an extra `--prefix=/YOUR-HOME-DIR/.local` to the `./configure` command of the software that you intend to install. Everything else will be the same as a standard build and install, see Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1.

3.3.1.3 Executable names

At first sight, the names of the executables for each program might seem to be uncommonly long, for example, `astnoisechisel` or `astcrop`. We could have chosen terse (and cryptic) names like most programs do. We chose this complete naming convention (something like the commands in TEX) so you do not have to spend too much time remembering what the name of a specific program was. Such complete names also enable you to easily search for the programs.

To facilitate typing the names in, we suggest using the shell auto-complete. With this facility you can find the executable you want very easily. It is very similar to file name completion in the shell. For example, simply by typing the letters below (where `[TAB]` stands for the Tab key on your keyboard)

```
$ ast[TAB][TAB]
```

you will get the list of all the available executables that start with `ast` in your `PATH` environment variable directories. So, all the Gnuastro executables installed on your system will be listed. Typing the next letter for the specific program you want along with a Tab, will limit this list until you get to your desired program.

In case all of this does not convince you and you still want to type short names, some suggestions are given below. You should have in mind though, that if you are writing a shell script that you might want to pass on to others, it is best to use the standard name because other users might not have adopted the same customization. The long names also serve as a form of documentation in such scripts. A similar reasoning can be given for option names in scripts: it is good practice to always use the long formats of the options in shell scripts, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251.

The simplest solution is making a symbolic link to the actual executable. For example, let's assume you want to type `ic` to run Crop instead of `astcrop`. Assuming you installed Gnuastro executables in `/usr/local/bin` (default) you can do this simply by running the following command as root:

```
# ln -s /usr/local/bin/astcrop /usr/local/bin/ic
```

In case you update Gnuastro and a new version of Crop is installed, the default executable name is the same, so your custom symbolic link still works.

The installed executable names can also be set using options to `$ ./configure`, see Section 3.3.1 [Configuring], page 232. GNU Autoconf (which configures Gnuastro for your particular system), allows the builder to change the name of programs with the three options `--program-prefix`, `--program-suffix` and `--program-transform-name`. The first two are for adding a fixed prefix or suffix to all the programs that will be installed. This will actually make all the names longer! You can use it to add versions of program names to the programs in order to simultaneously have two executable versions of a program.

The third configure option allows you to set the executable name at install time using the SED program. SED is a very useful 'stream editor'. There are various resources on the internet to use it effectively. However, we should caution that using configure options will change the actual executable name of the installed program and on every re-install (an update for example), you have to also add this option to keep the old executable name updated. Also note that the documentation or configuration files do not change from their standard names either.

For example, let's assume that typing `ast` on every invocation of every program is really annoying you! You can remove this prefix from all the executables at configure time by adding this option:

```
$ ./configure --program-transform-name='s/ast/ /'
```

3.3.1.4 Configure and build in RAM

Gnuastro's configure and build process (the GNU build system) involves the creation, reading, and modification of a large number of files (input/output, or I/O). Therefore file I/O issues can directly affect the work of developers who need to configure and build Gnuastro numerous times. Some of these issues are listed below:

- I/O will cause wear and tear on both the HDDs (mechanical failures) and SSDs (decreasing the lifetime).
- Having the built files mixed with the source files can greatly affect backing up (synchronization) of source files (since it involves the management of a large number of small files that are regularly changed. Backup software can of course be configured to ignore the built files and directories. However, since the built files are mixed with the source files and can have a large variety, this will require a high level of customization.

One solution to address both these problems is to use the tmpfs file system (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tmpfs`). Any file in tmpfs is actually stored in the RAM (and possibly SWAP), not on HDDs or SSDs. The RAM is built for extensive and fast I/O. Therefore the large number of file I/Os associated with configuring and building will not harm the HDDs or SSDs. Due to the volatile nature of RAM, files in the tmpfs file-system will be permanently lost after a power-off. Since all configured and built files are derivative files (not files that have been directly written by hand) there is no problem in this and this feature can be considered as an automatic cleanup.

The modern GNU C library (and thus the Linux kernel) defines the `/dev/shm` directory for this purpose in the RAM (POSIX shared memory). To build in it, you can use the

GNU build system's ability to build in a separate directory (not necessarily in the source directory) as shown below. Just set `SRCDIR` as the address of Gnuastro's top source directory (for example, where there is the unpacked tarball).

```
$ SRCDIR=/home/username/gnuastro
$ mkdir /dev/shm/tmp-gnuastro-build
$ cd /dev/shm/tmp-gnuastro-build
$ $SRCDIR/configure --srcdir=$SRCDIR
$ make
```

Gnuastro comes with a script to simplify this process of configuring and building in a different directory (a "clean" build), for more see Section 3.3.2 [Separate build and source directories], page 242.

3.3.2 Separate build and source directories

The simple steps of Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1, will mix the source and built files. This can cause inconvenience for developers or enthusiasts following the most recent work (see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228). The current section is mainly focused on this later group of Gnuastro users. If you just install Gnuastro on major releases (following Section 1.11 [Announcements], page 18), you can safely ignore this section.

When it is necessary to keep the source (which is under version control), but not the derivative (built) files (after checking or installing), the best solution is to keep the source and the built files in separate directories. One application of this is already discussed in Section 3.3.1.4 [Configure and build in RAM], page 241.

To facilitate this process of configuring and building in a separate directory, Gnuastro comes with the `developer-build` script. It is available in the top source directory and is *not* installed. It will make a directory under a given top-level directory (given to `--top-build-dir`) and build Gnuastro there. It thus keeps the source completely separated from the built files. For easy access to the built files, it also makes a symbolic link to the built directory in the top source files called `build`.

When running the developer-build script without any options in the Gnuastro's top source directory, default values will be used for its configuration. As with Gnuastro's programs, you can inspect the default values with `-P` (or `--printparams`, the output just looks a little different here). The default top-level build directory is `/dev/shm`: the shared memory directory in RAM on GNU/Linux systems as described in Section 3.3.1.4 [Configure and build in RAM], page 241.

Besides these, it also has some features to facilitate the job of developers or bleeding edge users like the `--debug` option to do a fast build, with debug information, no optimization, and no shared libraries. Here is the full list of options you can feed to this script to configure its operations.

Not all Gnuastro's common program behavior usable here: `developer-build` is just a non-installed script with a very limited scope as described above. It thus does not have all the common option behaviors or configuration files for example.

White space between option and value: `developer-build` does not accept an `=` sign between the options and their values. It also needs at least one character between the option and its value. Therefore `-n 4` or `--numthreads 4` are acceptable, while `-n4`, `-n=4`, or `--numthreads=4` are not. Finally multiple short option names cannot be merged: for example, you can say `-c -n 4`, but unlike Gnuastro's programs, `-cn4` is not acceptable.

Reusable for other packages: This script can be used in any software which is configured and built using the GNU Build System. Just copy it in the top source directory of that software and run it from there.

Example usage: See Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985, for an example usage of this script in some scenarios.

`-b STR`
`--top-build-dir STR`
: The top build directory to make a directory for the build. If this option is not called, the top build directory is `/dev/shm` (only available in GNU/Linux operating systems, see Section 3.3.1.4 [Configure and build in RAM], page 241).

`-V`
`--version`
: Print the version string of Gnuastro that will be used in the build. This string will be appended to the directory name containing the built files.

`-a`
`--autoreconf`
: Run `autoreconf -f` before building the package. In Gnuastro, this is necessary when a new commit has been made to the project history. In Gnuastro's build system, the Git description will be used as the version, see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11, and Section 3.2.2.2 [Synchronizing], page 231.

`-c`
`--clean`
: Delete the contents of the build directory (clean it) before starting the configuration and building of this run.

  This is useful when you have recently pulled changes from the main Git repository, or committed a change yourself and ran `autoreconf -f`, see Section 3.2.2.2 [Synchronizing], page 231. After running GNU Autoconf, the version will be updated and you need to do a clean build.

`-d`
`--debug`
: Build with debugging flags (for example, to use in GNU Debugger, also known as GDB, or Valgrind), disable optimization and also the building of shared libraries. Similar to running the configure script of below

```
$ ./configure --enable-debug
```

Besides all the debugging advantages of building with this option, it will also be significantly speed up the build (at the cost of slower built programs). So when you are testing something small or working on the build system itself, it will be much faster to test your work with this option.

`-v`
`--valgrind`
Build all `make check` tests within Valgrind. For more, see the description of `--enable-check-with-valgrind` in Section 3.3.1.1 [Gnuastro configure options], page 233.

`-j INT`
`--jobs INT`
The maximum number of threads/jobs for Make to build at any moment. As the name suggests (Make has an identical option), the number given to this option is directly passed on to any call of Make with its `-j` option.

`-C`
`--check` After finishing the build, also run `make check`. By default, `make check` is not run because the developer usually has their own checks to work on (for example, defined in `tests/during-dev.sh`).

`-i`
`--install`
After finishing the build, also run `make install`.

`-D`
`--dist` Run `make dist-lzip pdf` to build a distribution tarball (in `.tar.lz` format) and a PDF manual. This can be useful for archiving, or sending to colleagues who do not use Git for an easy build and manual.

`-u STR`

`--upload STR`
Activate the `--dist` (`-D`) option, then use secure copy (`scp`, part of the SSH tools) to copy the tarball and PDF to the `src` and `pdf` sub-directories of the specified server and its directory (value to this option). For example, `--upload my-server:dir`, will copy the tarball in the `dir/src`, and the PDF manual in `dir/pdf` of `my-server` server. It will then make a symbolic link in the top server directory to the tarball that is called `gnuastro-latest.tar.lz`.

`-p STR`
`--publish=STR`
Clean, bootstrap, build, check and upload the checked tarball and PDF of the book to the URL given as `STR`. This option is just a wrapper for `--autoreconf --clean --debug --check --upload STR`. `--debug` is added because it will greatly speed up the build. `--debug` will have no effect on the produced tarball (people who later download will be building with the default optimized, and non-debug mode). This option is good when you have made a commit and are ready to publish it on your server (if nothing crashes). Recall that if any of the previous steps fail the script aborts.

`-I`

`--install-archive`
: Short for `--autoreconf --clean --check --install --dist`. This is useful when you actually want to install the commit you just made (if the build and checks succeed). It will also produce a distribution tarball and PDF manual for easy access to the installed tarball on your system at a later time.

  Ideally, Gnuastro's Git version history makes it easy for a prepared system to revert back to a different point in history. But Gnuastro also needs to bootstrap files and also your collaborators might (usually do!) find it too much of a burden to do the bootstrapping themselves. So it is convenient to have a tarball and PDF manual of the version you have installed (and are using in your research) handily available.

`-h`
`--help`
`-P`
`--printparams`
: Print a description of this script along with all the options and their current values.

3.3.3 Tests

After successfully building (compiling) the programs with the `$ make` command you can check the installation before installing. To run the tests, run

```
$ make check
```

For every program some tests are designed to check some possible operations. Running the command above will run those tests and give you a final report. If everything is OK and you have built all the programs, all the tests should pass. In case any of the tests fail, please have a look at Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246, and if that still does not fix your problem, look that the `./tests/test-suite.log` file to see if the source of the error is something particular to your system or more general. If you feel it is general, please contact us because it might be a bug. Note that the tests of some programs depend on the outputs of other program's tests, so if you have not installed them they might be skipped or fail. Prior to releasing every distribution all these tests are checked. If you have a reasonably modern terminal, the outputs of the successful tests will be colored green and the failed ones will be colored red.

These scripts can also act as a good set of examples for you to see how the programs are run. All the tests are in the `tests/` directory. The tests for each program are shell scripts (ending with `.sh`) in a sub-directory of this directory with the same name as the program. See Section 13.7 [Test scripts], page 972, for more detailed information about these scripts in case you want to inspect them.

3.3.4 A4 print book

The default print version of this book is provided in the letter paper size. If you would like to have the print version of this book on paper and you are living in a country which uses A4, then you can rebuild the book. The great thing about the GNU build system is that

the book source code which is in Texinfo is also distributed with the program source code, enabling you to do such customization (hacking).

In order to change the paper size, you will need to have GNU Texinfo installed. Open `doc/gnuastro.texi` with any text editor. This is the source file that created this book. In the first few lines you will see this line:

```
@c@afourpaper
```

In Texinfo, a line is commented with `@c`. Therefore, un-comment this line by deleting the first two characters such that it changes to:

```
@afourpaper
```

Save the file and close it. You can now run the following command

```
$ make pdf
```

and the new PDF book will be available in `SRCdir/doc/gnuastro.pdf`. By changing the `pdf` in `$ make pdf` to `ps` or `dvi` you can have the book in those formats. Note that you can do this for any book that is in Texinfo format, they might not have `@afourpaper` line, so you can add it close to the top of the Texinfo source file.

3.3.5 Known issues

Depending on your operating system and the version of the compiler you are using, you might confront some known problems during the configuration (`$ ./configure`), compilation (`$ make`) and tests (`$ make check`). Here, their solutions are discussed.

- `$ ./configure`: *Configure complains about not finding a library even though you have installed it.* The possible solution is based on how you installed the package:
  - From your distribution's package manager. Most probably this is because your distribution has separated the header files of a library from the library parts. Please also install the 'development' packages for those libraries too. Just add a `-dev` or `-devel` to the end of the package name and re-run the package manager. This will not happen if you install the libraries from source. When installed from source, the headers are also installed.
  - From source. Then your linker is not looking where you installed the library. If you followed the instructions in this chapter, all the libraries will be installed in `/usr/local/lib`. So you have to tell your linker to look in this directory. To do so, configure Gnuastro like this:

    ```
    $ ./configure LDFLAGS="-L/usr/local/lib"
    ```

    If you want to use the libraries for your other programming projects, then export this environment variable in a start-up script similar to the case for `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` explained below, also see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.
- `$ make`: *Complains about an unknown function on a non-GNU based operating system.* In this case, please run `$ ./configure` with the `--enable-gnulibcheck` option to see if the problem is from the GNU Portability Library (Gnulib) not supporting your system or if there is a problem in Gnuastro, see Section 3.3.1.1 [Gnuastro configure options], page 233. If the problem is not in Gnulib and after all its tests you get the same complaint from `make`, then please contact us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`. The cause is probably that a function that we have used is not supported by your operating system

and we did not included it along with the source tarball. If the function is available in Gnulib, it can be fixed immediately.

- `$ make`: *Cannot find the headers (.h files) of installed libraries.* Your C preprocessor (CPP) is not looking in the right place. To fix this, configure Gnuastro with an additional `CPPFLAGS` like below (assuming the library is installed in `/usr/local/include`:

  ```
  $ ./configure CPPFLAGS="-I/usr/local/include"
  ```

  If you want to use the libraries for your other programming projects, then export this environment variable in a start-up script similar to the case for `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` explained below, also see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

- `$ make check`: *Only the first couple of tests pass, all the rest fail or get skipped.* It is highly likely that when searching for shared libraries, your system does not look into the `/usr/local/lib` directory (or wherever you installed Gnuastro or its dependencies). To make sure it is added to the list of directories, add the following line to your `~/.bashrc` file and restart your terminal. Do not forget to change `/usr/local/lib` if the libraries are installed in other (non-standard) directories.

  ```
  export LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$LD_LIBRARY_PATH:/usr/local/lib"
  ```

  You can also add more directories by using a colon ':' to separate them. See Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235, and Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756, to learn more on the `PATH` variables and dynamic linking respectively.

- `$ make check`: *The tests relying on external programs (for example,* `fitstopdf.sh` *fail.)* This is probably due to the fact that the version number of the external programs is too old for the tests we have preformed. Please update the program to a more recent version. For example, to create a PDF image, you will need GPL Ghostscript, but older versions do not work, we have successfully tested it on version 9.15. Older versions might cause a failure in the test result.

- `$ make pdf`: *The PDF book cannot be made.* To make a PDF book, you need to have the GNU Texinfo program (like any program, the more recent the better). A working TEX program is also necessary, which you can get from Tex Live[24].

- After `make check`: do not copy the programs' executables to another (for example, the installation) directory manually (using `cp`, or `mv` for example). In the default configuration[25], the program binaries need to link with Gnuastro's shared library which is also built and installed with the programs. Therefore, to run successfully before and after installation, linking modifications need to be made by GNU Libtool at installation time. `make install` does this internally, but a simple copy might give linking errors when you run it. If you need to copy the executables, you can do so after installation.

- `$ make` (when bootstrapping): After you have bootstrapped Gnuastro from the version-controlled source, you may confront the following (or a similar) error when converting images (for more on bootstrapping, see Section 3.2.2.1 [Bootstrapping], page 229):

  ```
  convert: attempt to perform an operation not allowed by the
  security policy `gs'  error/delegate.c/ExternalDelegateCommand/378.
  ```

[24] `https://www.tug.org/texlive/`

[25] If you configure Gnuastro with the `--disable-shared` option, then the libraries will be statically linked to the programs and this problem will not exist, see Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756.

This error is a known issue[26] with `ImageMagick` security policies in some operating systems. In short, `imagemagick` uses Ghostscript for PDF, EPS, PS and XPS parsing. However, because some security vulnerabilities have been found in Ghostscript[27], by default, ImageMagick may be compiled without Ghostscript library. In such cases, if allowed, ImageMagick will fall back to the external `gs` command instead of the library. But this may be disabled with the following (or a similar) lines in `/etc/ImageMagick-7/policy.xml` (anything related to PDF, PS, or Ghostscript).

```
<policy domain="delegate" rights="none" pattern="gs" />
<policy domain="module" rights="none" pattern="{PS,PDF,XPS}" />
```

To fix this problem, simply comment such lines (by placing a `<!--` before each statement/line and `-->` at the end of that statement/line).

- `$ make dist`: *Complains about "Numeric user ID too large" and aborts.* This is a problem related to the way that GNU Automake calls GNU Tar on some operating systems. For more information see bug 65578[28]. Until this bug is fixed, you can build the tarball by following the steps below:

```
## Generate the build directory; ready to be packaged.
$ ./developer-build -a -c -d -C

## Go to the build directory:
$ cd build
```

Open and edit the `Makefile` to add `--format=posix` to the definition of the `am__tar`. So, the line

```
am__tar = $${TAR-tar} chof - "$$tardir"
```

becomes

```
am__tar = $${TAR-tar} --format=posix chof - "$$tardir"
```

Finally, create the tarball:

```
$ make dist
```

If your problem was not listed above, please file a bug report (Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15).

[26] `https://wiki.archlinux.org/title/ImageMagick`

[27] `https://security.archlinux.org/package/ghostscript`

[28] `https://savannah.gnu.org/bugs/index.php?65578`

4 Common program behavior

All the programs in Gnuastro share a set of common behavior mainly to do with user interaction to facilitate their usage and development. This includes how to feed input datasets into the programs, how to configure them, specifying the outputs, numerical data types, treating columns of information in tables, etc. This chapter is devoted to describing this common behavior in all programs. Because the behaviors discussed here are common to several programs, they are not repeated in each program's description.

In Section 4.1 [Command-line], page 249, a very general description of running the programs on the command-line is discussed, like difference between arguments and options, as well as options that are common/shared between all programs. None of Gnuastro's programs keep any internal configuration value (values for their different operational steps), they read their configuration primarily from the command-line, then from specific files in directory, user, or system-wide settings. Using these configuration files can greatly help reproducible and robust usage of Gnuastro, see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270, for more.

It is not possible to always have the different options and configurations of each program on the top of your head. It is very natural to forget the options of a program, their current default values, or how it should be run and what it did. Gnuastro's programs have multiple ways to help you refresh your memory in multiple levels (just an option name, a short description, or fast access to the relevant section of the manual. See Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273, for more for more on benefiting from this very convenient feature.

Many of the programs use the multi-threaded character of modern CPUs, in Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276, we will discuss how you can configure this behavior, along with some tips on making best use of them. In Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, we will review the various types to store numbers in your datasets: setting the proper type for the usage context[1] can greatly improve the file size and also speed of reading, writing or processing them.

We will then look into the recognized table formats in Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284, and how large datasets are broken into tiles, or mesh grid in Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290. Finally, we will take a look at the behavior regarding output files: Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292, describes how the programs set a default name for their output when you do not give one explicitly (using `--output`). When the output is a FITS file, all the programs also store some very useful information in the header that is discussed in Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

4.1 Command-line

Gnuastro's programs are customized through the standard Unix-like command-line environment and GNU style command-line options. Both are very common in many Unix-like operating system programs. In Section 4.1.1 [Arguments and options], page 250, we will start with the difference between arguments and options and elaborate on the GNU style

[1] For example, if the values in your dataset can only be integers between 0 or 65000, store them in a unsigned 16-bit type, not 64-bit floating point type (which is the default in most systems). It takes four times less space and is much faster to process.

of options. Afterwards, in Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, we will go into the detailed list of all the options that are common to all the programs in Gnuastro.

4.1.1 Arguments and options

When you type a command on the command-line, it is passed onto the shell (a generic name for the program that manages the command-line) as a string of characters. As an example, see the "Invoking ProgramName" sections in this manual for some examples of commands with each program, like Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362, Section 5.1.1 [Invoking Fits], page 299, or Section 7.1.5 [Invoking Statistics], page 534.

The shell then brakes up your string into separate *tokens* or *words* using any *metacharacters* (like white-space, tab, `|`, `>` or `;`) that are in the string. On the command-line, the first thing you usually enter is the name of the program you want to run. After that, you can specify two types of tokens: *arguments* and *options*. In the GNU-style, arguments are those tokens that are not preceded by any hyphens (`-`, see Section 4.1.1.1 [Arguments], page 251). Here is one example:

```
$ astcrop --center=53.162551,-27.789676 -w10/3600 --mode=wcs udf.fits
```

In the example above, we are running Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389, to crop a region of width 10 arc-seconds centered at the given RA and Dec from the input Hubble Ultra-Deep Field (UDF) FITS image. Here, the argument is `udf.fits`. Arguments are most commonly the input file names containing your data. Options start with one or two hyphens, followed by an identifier for the option (the option's name, for example, `--center`, `-w`, `--mode` in the example above) and its value (anything after the option name, or the optional `=` character). Through options you can configure how the program runs (interprets the data you provided).

Arguments can be mandatory and optional and unlike options, they do not have any identifiers. Hence, when there multiple arguments, their order might also matter (for example, in `cp` which is used for copying one file to another location). The outputs of `--usage` and `--help` shows which arguments are optional and which are mandatory, see Section 4.3.1 [`--usage`], page 273.

As their name suggests, *options* can be considered to be optional and most of the time, you do not have to worry about what order you specify them in. When the order does matter, or the option can be invoked multiple times, it is explicitly mentioned in the "Invoking ProgramName" section of each program (this is a very important aspect of an option).

If there is only one such character, you can use a backslash (\) before it. If there are multiple, it might be easier to simply put your whole argument or option value inside of double quotes (`"`). In such cases, everything inside the double quotes will be seen as one token or word.

For example, let's say you want to specify the header data unit (HDU) of your FITS file using a complex expression like '`3; images(exposure > 100)`'. If you simply add these after the `--hdu` (`-h`) option, the programs in Gnuastro will read the value to the HDU option as '`3`' and run. Then, the shell will attempt to run a separate command '`images(exposure > 100)`' and complain about a syntax error. This is because the semicolon (`;`) is an 'end of command' character in the shell. To solve this problem you can simply put double quotes around the whole string you want to pass to `--hdu` as seen below:

```
$ astcrop --hdu="3; images(exposure > 100)" image.fits
```

4.1.1.1 Arguments

In Gnuastro, arguments are almost exclusively used as the input data file names. Please consult the first few paragraph of the "Invoking ProgramName" section for each program for a description of what it expects as input, how many arguments, or input data, it accepts, or in what order. Everything particular about how a program treats arguments, is explained under the "Invoking ProgramName" section for that program.

Generally, if there is a standard file name suffix for a particular format, that filename extension is checked to identify their format. In astronomy (and thus Gnuastro), FITS is the preferred format for inputs and outputs, so the focus here and throughout this book is on FITS. However, other formats are also accepted in special cases, for example, Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316, also accepts JPEG or TIFF inputs, and writes JPEG, EPS or PDF files. The recognized suffixes for these formats are listed there.

The list below shows the recognized suffixes for FITS data files in Gnuastro's programs. However, in some scenarios FITS writers may not append a suffix to the file, or use a non-recognized suffix (not in the list below). Therefore if a FITS file is expected, but it does not have any of these suffixes, Gnuastro programs will look into the contents of the file and if it does conform with the FITS standard, the file will be used. Just note that checking about 5 characters at the end of a name string is much more efficient than opening and checking the contents of a file, so it is generally recommended to have a recognized FITS suffix.

- `.fits`: The standard file name ending of a FITS image.
- `.fit`: Alternative (3 character) FITS suffix.
- `.fits.Z`: A FITS image compressed with `compress`.
- `.fits.gz`: A FITS image compressed with GNU zip (gzip).
- `.fits.fz`: A FITS image compressed with `fpack`.
- `.imh`: IRAF format image file.

Throughout this book and in the command-line outputs, whenever we want to generalize all such astronomical data formats in a text place-holder, we will use `ASTRdata` and assume that the extension is also part of this name. Any file ending with these names is directly passed on to CFITSIO to read. Therefore you do not necessarily have to have these files on your computer, they can also be located on an FTP or HTTP server too, see the CFITSIO manual for more information.

CFITSIO has its own error reporting techniques, if your input file(s) cannot be opened, or read, those errors will be printed prior to the final error by Gnuastro.

4.1.1.2 Options

Command-line options allow configuring the behavior of a program in all GNU/Linux applications for each particular execution on a particular input data. A single option can be called in two ways: *long* or *short*. All options in Gnuastro accept the long format which has two hyphens an can have many characters (for example, `--hdu`). Short options only have one hyphen (`-`) followed by one character (for example, `-h`). You can see some examples in the list of options in Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, or those for each program's "Invoking ProgramName" section. Both formats are shown for those which support both. First the short is shown then the long.

Usually, the short options are handy when you are writing on the command-line and want to save keystrokes and time. The long options are good for shell scripts, where you are not usually rushing. Long options provide a level of documentation, since they are more descriptive and less cryptic. Usually after a few months of not running a program, the short options will be forgotten and reading your previously written script will not be easy.

Some options need to be given a value if they are called and some do not. You can think of the latter type of options as on/off options. These two types of options can be distinguished using the output of the `--help` and `--usage` options, which are common to all GNU software, see Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273. In Gnuastro we use the following strings to specify when the option needs a value and what format that value should be in. More specific tests will be done in the program and if the values are out of range (for example, negative when the program only wants a positive value), an error will be reported.

`INT` The value is read as an integer.

`FLT` The value is read as a float. There are generally two types, depending on the context. If they are for fractions, they will have to be less than or equal to unity.

`STR` The value is read as a string of characters. For example, column names in a table, or HDU names in a multi-extension FITS file. Other examples include human-readable settings by some programs like the `--domain` option of the Convolve program that can be either `spatial` or `frequency` (to specify the type of convolution, see Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479).

`FITS` or `FITS/TXT`
The value should be a file (most commonly FITS). In many cases, other formats may also be accepted (for example, input tables can be FITS or plain-text, see Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285).

To specify a value in the short format, simply put the value after the option. Note that since the short options are only one character long, you do not have to type anything between the option and its value. For the long option you either need white space or an `=` sign, for example, `-h2`, `-h 2`, `--hdu 2` or `--hdu=2` are all equivalent.

The short format of on/off options (those that do not need values) can be concatenated for example, these two hypothetical sequences of options are equivalent: `-a -b -c4` and `-abc4`. As an example, consider the following command to run Crop:

```
$ astcrop -Dr3 --wwidth 3 catalog.txt --deccol=4 ASTRdata
```

The `$` is the shell prompt, `astcrop` is the program name. There are two arguments (`catalog.txt` and `ASTRdata`) and four options, two of them given in short format (`-D`, `-r`) and two in long format (`--width` and `--deccol`). Three of them require a value and one (`-D`) is an on/off option.

If an abbreviation is unique between all the options of a program, the long option names can be abbreviated. For example, instead of typing `--printparams`, typing `--print` or maybe even `--pri` will be enough, if there are conflicts, the program will warn you and show you the alternatives. Finally, if you want the argument parser to stop parsing arguments beyond a certain point, you can use two dashes: `--`. No text on the command-line beyond these two dashes will be parsed.

Gnuastro has two types of options with values, those that only take a single value are the most common type. If these options are repeated or called more than once on the command-line, the value of the last time it was called will be assigned to it. This is very useful when you are testing/experimenting. Let's say you want to make a small modification to one option value. You can simply type the option with a new value in the end of the command and see how the script works. If you are satisfied with the change, you can remove the original option for human readability. If the change was not satisfactory, you can remove the one you just added and not worry about forgetting the original value. Without this capability, you would have to memorize or save the original value somewhere else, run the command and then change the value again which is not at all convenient and is potentially cause lots of bugs.

On the other hand, some options can be called multiple times in one run of a program and can thus take multiple values (for example, see the `--column` option in Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362. In these cases, the order of stored values is the same order that you specified on the command-line.

Gnuastro's programs do not keep any internal default values, so some options are mandatory and if they do not have a value, the program will complain and abort. Most programs have many such options and typing them by hand on every call is impractical. To facilitate the user experience, after parsing the command-line, Gnuastro's programs read special configuration files to get the necessary values for the options you have not identified on the command-line. These configuration files are fully described in Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270.

CAUTION: In specifying a file address, if you want to use the shell's tilde expansion (`~`) to specify your home directory, leave at least one space between the option name and your value. For example, use `-o ~/test`, `--output ~/test` or `--output= ~/test`. Calling them with `-o~/test` or `--output=~/test` will disable shell expansion.

CAUTION: If you forget to specify a value for an option which requires one, and that option is the last one, Gnuastro will warn you. But if it is in the middle of the command, it will take the text of the next option or argument as the value which can cause undefined behavior.

NOTE: In some contexts Gnuastro's counting starts from 0 and in others 1. You can assume by default that counting starts from 1, if it starts from 0 for a special option, it will be explicitly mentioned.

4.1.2 Common options

To facilitate the job of the users and developers, all the programs in Gnuastro share some basic command-line options for the options that are common to many of the programs. The full list is classified as Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254, Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257, and Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259. In some programs, some of the options are irrelevant, but still recognized (you will not get an

unrecognized option error, but the value is not used). Unless otherwise mentioned, these options are identical between all programs.

4.1.2.1 Input/Output options

These options are to do with the input and outputs of the various programs.

`--stdintimeout`

Number of micro-seconds to wait for writing/typing in the *first line* of standard input from the command-line (see Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266). This is only relevant for programs that also accept input from the standard input, *and* you want to manually write/type the contents on the terminal. When the standard input is already connected to a pipe (output of another program), there will not be any waiting (hence no timeout, thus making this option redundant).

If the first line-break (for example, with the `ENTER` key) is not provided before the timeout, the program will abort with an error that no input was given. Note that this time interval is *only* for the first line that you type. Once the first line is given, the program will assume that more data will come and accept rest of your inputs without any time limit. You need to specify the ending of the standard input, for example, by pressing `CTRL-D` after a new line.

Note that any input you write/type into a program on the command-line with Standard input will be discarded (lost) once the program is finished. It is only recoverable manually from your command-line (where you actually typed) as long as the terminal is open. So only use this feature when you are sure that you do not need the dataset (or have a copy of it somewhere else).

`-h STR/INT`
`--hdu=STR/INT`

The name or number of the desired Header Data Unit, or HDU, in the FITS image. A FITS file can store multiple HDUs or extensions, each with either an image or a table or nothing at all (only a header). Note that counting of the extensions starts from 0(zero), not 1(one). Counting from 0 is forced on us by CFITSIO which directly reads the value you give with this option (see Section 3.1.1.2 [CFITSIO], page 213). When specifying the name, case is not important so `IMAGE`, `image` or `ImAgE` are equivalent.

CFITSIO has many capabilities to help you find the extension you want, far beyond the simple extension number and name. See CFITSIO manual's "HDU Location Specification" section for a very complete explanation with several examples. A `#` is appended to the string you specify for the HDU[2] and the result is put in square brackets and appended to the FITS file name before calling CFITSIO to read the contents of the HDU for all the programs in Gnuastro.

[2] With the `#` character, CFITSIO will only read the desired HDU into your memory, not all the existing HDUs in the fits file.

Default HDU is HDU number 1 (counting from 0): by default, Gnuastro's programs assume that their (main/first) input is in HDU number 1 (counting from zero). So if you don't specify the HDU number, the program will read the input from this HDU. For programs that can take multiple FITS datasets as input (like Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403) this default HDU applies to the first input, you still need to call `--hdu` for the other inputs. Generally, all Gnuastro's programs write their outputs in HDU number 1 (HDU 0 is reserved for metadata like the configuration parameters that the program was run with). For more on this, see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297.

`-s STR`
`--searchin=STR`
Where to match/search for columns when the column identifier was not a number, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. The acceptable values are `name`, `unit`, or `comment`. This option is only relevant for programs that take table columns as input.

`-I`
`--ignorecase`
Ignore case while matching/searching column meta-data (in the field specified by the `--searchin`). The FITS standard suggests to treat the column names as case insensitive, which is strongly recommended here also but is not enforced. This option is only relevant for programs that take table columns as input.

This option is not relevant to Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, hence in that program the short option `-I` is used for include directories, not to ignore case.

`-o STR`
`--output=STR`
The name of the output file or directory. With this option the automatic output names explained in Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292, are ignored.

`-T STR`
`--type=STR`
The data type of the output depending on the program context. This option is not applicable to some programs like Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, and will be ignored by them. The different acceptable values to this option are fully described in Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

`-D`
`--dontdelete`
By default, if the output file already exists, Gnuastro's programs will silently delete it and put their own outputs in its place. When this option is activated, if the output file already exists, the programs will not delete it, will warn you, and will abort.

`-K`
`--keepinputdir`
: In automatic output names, do not remove the directory information of the input file names. As explained in Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292, if no output name is specified (with `--output`), then the output name will be made in the existing directory based on your input's file name (ignoring the directory of the input). If you call this option, the directory information of the input will be kept and the automatically generated output name will be in the same directory as the input (usually with a suffix added). Note that his is only relevant if you are running the program in a different directory than the input data.

`-t STR`
`--tableformat=STR`
: The output table's type. This option is only relevant when the output is a table and its format cannot be deduced from its filename. For example, if a name ending in `.fits` was given to `--output`, then the program knows you want a FITS table. But there are two types of FITS tables: FITS ASCII, and FITS binary. Thus, with this option, the program is able to identify which type you want. The currently recognized values to this option are:

`--wcslinearmatrix=STR`
: Select the linear transformation matrix of the output's WCS. This option only takes two values: `pc` (for the `PCi_j` formalism) and `cd` (for `CDi_j`). For more on the different formalisms, please see Section 8.1 of the FITS standard[3], version 4.0.

  In short, in the `PCi_j` formalism, we only keep the linear rotation matrix in these keywords and put the scaling factor (or the pixel scale in astronomical imaging) in the `CDELTi` keywords. In the `CDi_j` formalism, we blend the scaling into the rotation into a single matrix and keep that matrix in these FITS keywords. By default, Gnuastro uses the `PCi_j` formalism, because it greatly helps in human readability of the raw keywords and is also the default mode of WCSLIB. However, in some circumstances it may be necessary to have the keywords in the CD format; for example, when you need to feed the outputs into other software that do not follow the full FITS standard and only recognize the `CDi_j` formalism.

  `txt`
  : A plain text table with white-space characters between the columns (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287).

  `fits-ascii`
  : A FITS ASCII table (see Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285).

  `fits-binary`
  : A FITS binary table (see Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285).

[3] `https://fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/standard40/fits_standard40aa-le.pdf`

`--outfitsnoconfig`
: Do not write any of the program's metadata (option values or versions and dates) into the 0-th HDU of the output FITS file, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

`--outfitsnodate`
: Do not write the `DATE` or `DATEUTC` keywords into the 0-th HDU of the output FITS file, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

`--outfitsnocommit`
: Do not write the `COMMIT` keyword into the 0-th HDU of the output FITS file, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

`--outfitsnoversions`
: Do not write the versions of any dependency software into the 0-th HDU of the output FITS file, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

4.1.2.2 Processing options

Some processing steps are common to several programs, so they are defined as common options to all programs. Note that this class of common options is thus necessarily less common between all the programs than those described in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254, or Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259, options. Also, if they are irrelevant for a program, these options will not display in the `--help` output of the program.

`--minmapsize=INT`
: The minimum size (in bytes) to memory-map a processing/internal array as a file (on the non-volatile HDD/SSD), and not use the system's RAM. Before using this option, please read Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. By default processing arrays will only be memory-mapped to a file when the RAM is full. With this option, you can force the memory-mapping, even when there is enough RAM. To ensure this default behavior, the pre-defined value to this option is an extremely large value (larger than any existing RAM).

  Please note that using a non-volatile file (in the HDD/SDD) instead of RAM can significantly increase the program's running time, especially on HDDs (where read/write is slower). Also, note that the number of memory-mapped files that your kernel can support is limited. So when this option is necessary, it is best to give it values larger than 1 megabyte (`--minmapsize=1000000`). You can then decrease it for a specific program's invocation on a large input after you see memory issues arise (for example, an error, or the program not aborting and fully consuming your memory). If you see randomly named files remaining in this directory when the program finishes normally, please send us a bug report so we address the problem, see Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15.

  Limited number of memory-mapped files: The operating system kernels usually support a limited number of memory-mapped files. Therefore never set `--minmapsize` to zero or a small number of bytes (so too many files are created). If the kernel capacity is exceeded, the program will crash.

`--quietmmap`
: Do not print any message when an array is stored in non-volatile memory (HDD/SSD) and not RAM, see the description of `--minmapsize` (above) for more.

`-Z INT[,INT[,...]]`
`--tilesize=[,INT[,...]]`
: The size of regular tiles for tessellation, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290. For each dimension an integer length (in units of data-elements or pixels) is necessary. If the number of input dimensions is different from the number of values given to this option, the program will stop with an error. Values must be separated by commas (`,`) and can also be fractions (for example, `4/2`). If they are fractions, the result must be an integer, otherwise an error will be printed.

`-M INT[,INT[,...]]`
`--numchannels=INT[,INT[,...]]`
: The number of channels for larger input tessellation, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290. The number and types of acceptable values are similar to `--tilesize`. The only difference is that instead of length, the integers values given to this option represent the *number* of channels, not their size.

`-F FLT`
`--remainderfrac=FLT`
: The fraction of remainder size along all dimensions to add to the first tile. See Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, for a complete description. This option is only relevant if `--tilesize` is not exactly divisible by the input dataset's size in a dimension. If the remainder size is larger than this fraction (compared to `--tilesize`), then the remainder size will be added with one regular tile size and divided between two tiles at the start and end of the given dimension.

`--workoverch`
: Ignore the channel borders for the high-level job of the given application. As a result, while the channel borders are respected in defining the small tiles (such that no tile will cross a channel border), the higher-level program operation will ignore them, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290.

`--checktiles`
: Make a FITS file with the same dimensions as the input but each pixel is replaced with the ID of the tile that it is associated with. Note that the tile IDs start from 0. See Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, for more on Tiling an image in Gnuastro.

`--oneelempertile`
: When showing the tile values (for example, with `--checktiles`, or when the program's output is tessellated) only use one element for each tile. This can be useful when only the relative values given to each tile compared to the rest are important or need to be checked. Since the tiles usually have a large number of pixels within them the output will be much smaller, and so easier to read, write, store, or send.

  Note that when the full input size in any dimension is not exactly divisible by the given `--tilesize` in that dimension, the edge tile(s) will have different sizes

(in units of the input's size), see `--remainderfrac`. But with this option, all displayed values are going to have the (same) size of one data-element. Hence, in such cases, the image proportions are going to be slightly different with this option.

If your input image is not exactly divisible by the tile size and you want one value per tile for some higher-level processing, all is not lost though. You can see how many pixels were within each tile (for example, to weight the values or discard some for later processing) with Gnuastro's Statistics (see Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517) as shown below. The output FITS file is going to have two extensions, one with the median calculated on each tile and one with the number of elements that each tile covers. You can then use the `where` operator in Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403, to set the values of all tiles that do not have the regular area to a blank value.

```
$ aststatistics --median --number --ontile input.fits    \
                --oneelempertile --output=o.fits
$ REGULAR_AREA=1600    # Check second extension of `o.fits'.
$ astarithmetic o.fits o.fits $REGULAR_AREA ne nan where \
                -h1 -h2
```

Note that if `input.fits` also has blank values, then the median on tiles with blank values will also be ignored with the command above (which is desirable).

`--inteponlyblank`
When values are to be interpolated, only change the values of the blank elements, keep the non-blank elements untouched.

`--interpmetric=STR`
The metric to use for finding nearest neighbors. Currently it only accepts the Manhattan (or taxicab) metric with `manhattan`, or the radial metric with `radial`.

The Manhattan distance between two points is defined with $|\Delta x| + |\Delta y|$. Thus the Manhattan metric has the advantage of being fast, but at the expense of being less accurate. The radial distance is the standard definition of distance in a Euclidean space: $\sqrt{\Delta x^2 + \Delta y^2}$. It is accurate, but the multiplication and square root can slow down the processing.

`--interpnumngb=INT`
The number of nearby non-blank neighbors to use for interpolation.

4.1.2.3 Operating mode options

Another group of options that are common to all the programs in Gnuastro are those to do with the general operation of the programs. The explanation for those that are not only limited to Gnuastro but are common to all GNU programs start with (GNU option).

`--` (GNU option) Stop parsing the command-line. This option can be useful in scripts or when using the shell history. Suppose you have a long list of options, and want to see if removing some of them (to read from configuration files, see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270) can give a better result. If the ones you want to remove are the last ones on the command-line, you do not have to

delete them, you can just add `--` before them and if you do not get what you want, you can remove the `--` and get the same initial result.

`--usage` (GNU option) Only print the options and arguments and abort. This is very useful for when you know the what the options do, and have just forgot their long/short identifiers, see Section 4.3.1 [`--usage`], page 273.

`-?`
`--help` (GNU option) Print all options with an explanation and abort. Adding this option will print all the options in their short and long formats, also displaying which ones need a value if they are called (with an `=` after the long format followed by a string specifying the format, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251). A short explanation is also given for what the option is for. The program will quit immediately after the message is printed and will not do any form of processing, see Section 4.3.2 [`--help`], page 274.

`-V`
`--version`
(GNU option) Print a short message, showing the full name, version, copyright information and program authors and abort. On the first line, it will print the official name (not executable name) and version number of the program. Following this is a blank line and a copyright information. The program will not run.

`-q`
`--quiet` Do not report steps. All the programs in Gnuastro that have multiple major steps will report their steps for you to follow while they are operating. If you do not want to see these reports, you can call this option and only error/warning messages will be printed. If the steps are done very fast (depending on the properties of your input) disabling these reports will also decrease running time.

`--cite` Print all necessary information to cite and acknowledge Gnuastro in your published papers. With this option, the programs will print the BibTeX entry to include in your paper for Gnuastro in general, and the particular program's paper (if that program comes with a separate paper). It will also print the necessary acknowledgment statement to add in the respective section of your paper and it will abort. For a more complete explanation, please see Section 1.13 [Acknowledgments], page 19.

Citations and acknowledgments are vital for the continued work on Gnuastro. Gnuastro started, and is continued, based on separate research projects. So if you find any of the tools offered in Gnuastro to be useful in your research, please use the output of this command to cite and acknowledge the program (and Gnuastro) in your research paper. Thank you.

Gnuastro is still new, there is no separate paper only devoted to Gnuastro yet. Therefore currently the paper to cite for Gnuastro is the paper for NoiseChisel which is the first published paper introducing Gnuastro to the astronomical community. Upon reaching a certain point, a paper completely devoted to describing Gnuastro's many functionalities will be published, see Section 1.7.1 [GNU Astronomy Utilities 1.0], page 12.

`-P`
`--printparams`
: With this option, Gnuastro's programs will read your command-line options and all the configuration files. If there is no problem (like a missing parameter or a value in the wrong format or range) and immediately before actually running, the programs will print the full list of option names, values and descriptions, sorted and grouped by context and abort. They will also report the version number, the date they were configured on your system and the time they were reported.

  As an example, you can give your full command-line options and even the input and output file names and finally just add `-P` to check if all the parameters are finely set. If everything is OK, you can just run the same command (easily retrieved from the shell history, with the top arrow key) and simply remove the last two characters that showed this option.

  No program will actually start its processing when this option is called. The otherwise mandatory arguments for each program (for example, input image or catalog files) are no longer required when you call this option.

`--config=STR`
: Parse `STR` as a configuration file name, immediately when this option is confronted (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). The `--config` option can be called multiple times in one run of any Gnuastro program on the command-line or in the configuration files. In any case, it will be immediately read (before parsing the rest of the options on the command-line, or lines in a configuration file). If the given file does not exist or cannot be read for any reason, the program will print a warning and continue its processing. The warning can be suppressed with `--quiet`.

  Note that by definition, options on the command-line still take precedence over those in any configuration file, including the file(s) given to this option if they are called before it. Also see `--lastconfig` and `--onlyversion` on how this option can be used for reproducible results. You can use `--checkconfig` (below) to check/confirm the parsing of configuration files.

`--checkconfig`
: Print options and their values, within the command-line or configuration files, as they are parsed (see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271). If an option has already been set, or is ignored by the program, this option will also inform you with special values like `--ALREADY-SET--`. Only options that are parsed after this option are printed, so to see the parsing of all input options, it is recommended to put this option immediately after the program name before any other options.

  This is a very good option to confirm where the value of each option is has been defined in scenarios where there are multiple configuration files (for debugging).

`--config-prefix=STR`
: Accept option names in configuration files that start with the given prefix. Since order matters when reading custom configuration files, this option should be called **before** the `--config` option(s) that contain options with the given prefix.

This option does not affect the options within configuration files that have the standard name (without a prefix).

This gives unique features to Gnuastro's configuration files, especially in large pipelines. Let's demonstrate this with the simple scenario below. You have multiple configuration files for different instances of one program (let's assume `nc-a.conf` and `nc-b.conf`). At the same time, want to load all the option names/values into your shell as environment variables (for example with `source`). This happens when you want to use the options as shell variables in other parts of the your pipeline.

If the two configuration files have different values for the same option (as shown below), and you don't use `--config-prefix`, the shell will over-write the common option values between the configuration files. But thanks to `--config-prefix`, you can give a different prefix for the different instances of the same option in different configuration files.

```
$ cat nc-a.conf
a_tilesize=20,20

$ cat nc-b.conf
b_tilesize=40,40

## Load configuration files as shell scripts (to define the
## option name and values as shell variables with values).
## Just note that 'source' only takes one file at a time.
$ for c in nc-*.conf; do source $c; done

$ astnoisechisel img.fits \
                 --config=nc-a.conf --config-prefix=a_
$ echo "NoiseChisel run with --tilesize=$a_tilesize"

$ astnoisechisel img.fits \
                 --config=nc-b.conf --config-prefix=b_
$ echo "NoiseChisel run with --tilesize=$b_tilesize"
```

`-S`
`--setdirconf`

Update the current directory configuration file for the Gnuastro program and quit. The full set of command-line and configuration file options will be parsed and options with a value will be written in the current directory configuration file for this program (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). If the configuration file or its directory does not exist, it will be created. If a configuration file exists it will be replaced (after it, and all other configuration files have been read). In any case, the program will not run.

This is the recommended method[4] to edit/set the configuration file for all future calls to Gnuastro's programs. It will internally check if your values are in the correct range and type and save them according to the configuration file

[4] Alternatively, you can use your favorite text editor.

format, see Section 4.2.1 [Configuration file format], page 270. So if there are unreasonable values to some options, the program will notify you and abort before writing the final configuration file.

When this option is called, the otherwise mandatory arguments, for example input image or catalog file(s), are no longer mandatory (since the program will not run).

`-U`
`--setusrconf`
Update the user configuration file and quit (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). See explanation under `--setdirconf` for more details.

`--lastconfig`
This is the last configuration file that must be read. When this option is confronted in any stage of reading the options (on the command-line or in a configuration file), no other configuration file will be parsed, see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271, and Section 4.2.3 [Current directory and User wide], page 272. Like all on/off options, on the command-line, this option does not take any values. But in a configuration file, it takes the values of `0` or `1`, see Section 4.2.1 [Configuration file format], page 270. If it is present in a configuration file with a value of `0`, then all later occurrences of this option will be ignored.

`--onlyversion=STR`
Only run the program if Gnuastro's version is exactly equal to `STR` (see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11). Note that it is not compared as a number, but as a string of characters, so `0`, or `0.0` and `0.00` are different. If the running Gnuastro version is different, then this option will report an error and abort as soon as it is confronted on the command-line or in a configuration file. If the running Gnuastro version is the same as `STR`, then the program will run as if this option was not called.

This is useful if you want your results to be exactly reproducible and not mistakenly run with an updated/newer or older version of the program. Besides internal algorithmic/behavior changes in programs, the existence of options or their names might change between versions (especially in these earlier versions of Gnuastro).

Hence, when using this option (probably in a script or in a configuration file), be sure to call it before other options. The benefit is that, when the version differs, the other options will not be parsed and you, or your collaborators/users, will not get errors saying an option in your configuration does not exist in the running version of the program.

Here is one example of how this option can be used in conjunction with the `--lastconfig` option. Let's assume that you were satisfied with the results of this command: `astnoisechisel image.fits --snquant=0.95` (along with various options set in various configuration files). You can save the state of NoiseChisel and reproduce that exact result on `image.fits` later by following these steps (the extra spaces, and \, are only for easy readability, if you want to try it out, only one space between each token is enough).

```
$ echo "onlyversion X.XX"             > reproducible.conf
$ echo "lastconfig 1"                >> reproducible.conf
$ astnoisechisel image.fits --snquant=0.95 -P           \
                                      >> reproducible.conf
```

`--onlyversion` was available from Gnuastro 0.0, so putting it immediately at the start of a configuration file will ensure that later, you (or others using different version) will not get a non-recognized option error in case an option was added/removed. `--lastconfig` will inform the installed NoiseChisel to not parse any other configuration files. This is done because we do not want the user's user-wide or system wide option values affecting our results. Finally, with the third command, which has a `-P` (short for `--printparams`), NoiseChisel will print all the option values visible to it (in all the configuration files) and the shell will append them to `reproduce.conf`. Hence, you do not have to worry about remembering the (possibly) different options in the different configuration files.

Afterwards, if you run NoiseChisel as shown below (telling it to read this configuration file with the `--config` option). You can be sure that there will either be an error (for version mismatch) or it will produce exactly the same result that you got before.

```
$ astnoisechisel --config=reproducible.conf
```

`--log` Some programs can generate extra information about their outputs in a log file. When this option is called in those programs, the log file will also be printed. If the program does not generate a log file, this option is ignored.

> `--log` **is not thread-safe**: The log file usually has a fixed name. Therefore if two simultaneous calls (with `--log`) of a program are made in the same directory, the program will try to write to he same file. This will cause problems like unreasonable log file, undefined behavior, or a crash.

`-N INT`
`--numthreads=INT`
Use `INT` CPU threads when running a Gnuastro program (see Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276). If the value is zero (`0`), or this option is not given on the command-line or any configuration file, the value will be determined at run-time: the maximum number of threads available to the system when you run a Gnuastro program.

Note that multi-threaded programming is only relevant to some programs. In others, this option will be ignored.

4.1.3 Shell TAB completion (highly customized)

Under development: Gnuastro's TAB completion in Bash already greatly improves usage of Gnuastro on the command-line, but still under development and not yet complete. If you are interested to try it out, please go ahead and activate it (as described below), we encourage this. But please have in mind that there are known issues[5] and you may find new issues. If you do, please get in touch with us as described in Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15. TAB completion is currently only implemented in the following programs: Arithmetic, BuildProgram, ConvertType, Convolve, CosmicCalculator, Crop, Fits and Table. For progress on this task, please see Task 15799[6].

Bash provides a built-in feature called *programmable completion*[7] to help increase interactive workflow efficiency and minimize the number of keystrokes *and* the need to memorize things. It is also known as TAB completion, bash completion, auto-completion, or word completion. Completion is activated by pressing `[TAB]` while you are typing a command. For file arguments this is the default behavior already and you have probably used it a lot with any command-line program.

Besides this simple/default mode, Bash also enables a high level of customization features for its completion. These features have been extensively used in Gnuastro to improve your work efficiency[8]. For example, if you are running `asttable` (which only accepts files containing a table), and you press `[TAB]`, it will only suggest files containing tables. As another example, if an option needs image HDUs within a FITS file, pressing `[TAB]` will only suggest the image HDUs (and not other possibly existing HDUs that contain tables, or just metadata). Just note that the file name has to be already given on the command-line before reaching such options (that look into the contents of a file).

But TAB completion is not limited to file types or contents. Arguments/Options that take certain fixed string values will directly suggest those strings with TAB, and completely ignore the file structure (for example, spectral line names in Section 9.1.3 [Invoking CosmicCalculator], page 682)! As another example, the option `--numthreads` option (to specify the number of threads to use by the program), will find the number of available threads on the system, and suggest the possible numbers with a TAB!

To activate Gnuastro's custom TAB completion in Bash, you need to put the following line in one of your Bash startup files (for example, `~/.bashrc`). If you installed Gnuastro using the steps of Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1, you should have already done this (the command just after `sudo make install`). For a list of (and discussion on) Bash startup files and installation directories see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235. Of course, if Gnuastro was installed in a custom location, replace the '`/usr/local`' part of the line below to the value that was given to `--prefix` during Gnuastro's configuration[9].

```
# Enable Gnuastro's TAB completion
```

[5] `http://savannah.gnu.org/bugs/index.php?group=gnuastro&category_id=128`

[6] `https://savannah.gnu.org/task/?15799`

[7] `https://www.gnu.org/software/bash/manual/html_node/Programmable-Completion.html`

[8] To learn how Gnuastro implements TAB completion in Bash, see Section 13.8 [Bash programmable completion], page 973.

[9] In case you do not know the installation directory of Gnuastro on your system, you can find out with this command: `which astfits | sed -e"s|/bin/astfits||"`

```
source /usr/local/share/gnuastro/completion.bash
```

After adding the line above in a Bash startup file, TAB completion will always be activated in any new terminal. To see if it has been activated, try it out with `asttable [TAB][TAB]` and `astarithmetic [TAB][TAB]` in a directory that contains tables and images. The first will only suggest the files with a table, and the second, only those with an image.

TAB completion only works with long option names: As described above, short options are much more complex to generalize, therefore TAB completion is only available for long options. But do not worry! TAB completion also involves option names, so if you just type `--a[TAB][TAB]`, you will get the list of options that start with an `--a`. Therefore as a side-effect of TAB completion, your commands will be far more human-readable with minimal key strokes.

4.1.4 Standard input

The most common way to feed the primary/first input dataset into a program is to give its filename as an argument (discussed in Section 4.1.1.1 [Arguments], page 251). When you want to run a series of programs in sequence, this means that each will have to keep the output of each program in a separate file and re-type that file's name in the next command. This can be very slow and frustrating (mis-typing a file's name).

To solve the problem, the founders of Unix defined pipes to directly feed the output of one program (its "Standard output" stream) into the "standard input" of a next program. This removes the need to make temporary files between separate processes and became one of the best demonstrations of the Unix-way, or Unix philosophy.

Every program has three streams identifying where it reads/writes non-file inputs/outputs: *Standard input*, *Standard output*, and *Standard error*. When a program is called alone, all three are directed to the terminal that you are using. If it needs an input, it will prompt you for one and you can type it in. Or, it prints its results in the terminal for you to see.

For example, say you have a FITS table/catalog containing the B and V band magnitudes (`MAG_B` and `MAG_V` columns) of a selection of galaxies along with many other columns. If you want to see only these two columns in your terminal, can use Gnuastro's Section 5.3 [Table], page 344, program like below:

```
$ asttable cat.fits -cMAG_B,MAG_V
```

Through the Unix pipe mechanism, when the shell confronts the pipe character (`|`), it connects the standard output of the program before the pipe, to the standard input of the program after it. So it is literally a "pipe": everything that you would see printed by the first program on the command (without any pipe), is now passed to the second program (and not seen by you).

To continue the previous example, let's say you want to see the B-V color. To do this, you can pipe Table's output to AWK (a wonderful tool for processing things like plain text tables):

```
$ asttable cat.fits -cMAG_B,MAG_V | awk '{print $1-$2}'
```

But understanding the distribution by visually seeing all the numbers under each other is not too useful! You can therefore feed this single column information into Section 7.1

[Statistics], page 517, to give you a general feeling of the distribution with the same command:

```
$ asttable cat.fits -cMAG_B,MAG_V | awk '{print $1-$2}' | aststatistics
```

Gnuastro's programs that accept input from standard input, only look into the Standard input stream if there is no first argument. In other words, arguments take precedence over Standard input. When no argument is provided, the programs check if the standard input stream is already full or not (output from another program is waiting to be used). If data is present in the standard input stream, it is used.

When the standard input is empty, the program will wait `--stdintimeout` micro-seconds for you to manually enter the first line (ending with a new-line character, or the `ENTER` key, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254). If it detects the first line in this time, there is no more time limit, and you can manually write/type all the lines for as long as it takes. To inform the program that Standard input has finished, press `CTRL-D` after a new line. If the program does not catch the first line before the time-out finishes, it will abort with an error saying that no input was provided.

Manual input in Standard input is discarded: Be careful that when you manually fill the Standard input, the data will be discarded once the program finishes and reproducing the result will be impossible. Therefore this form of providing input is only good for temporary tests.

Standard input currently only for plain text: Currently Standard input only works for plain text inputs like the example above. We will later allow FITS files into the programs through standard input also.

4.1.5 Shell tips

Gnuastro's programs are primarily meant to be run on the command-line shell environment. In this section, we will review some useful tips and tricks that can be helpful in the pipelines that you run.

4.1.5.1 Separate shell variables for multiple outputs

Sometimes your commands print multiple values and you want to use them as different shell variables. Let's describe the problem (shown in the box below) with an example (that you can reproduce without any external data).

With the commands below, we'll first make a noisy ($\sigma = 5$) image (100×100 pixels) using Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403. Then, we'll measure[10] its mean and standard deviation using Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517.

```
$ astarithmetic 100 100 2 makenew 5 mknoise-sigma -oimg.fits

$ aststatistics img.fits --mean --std
```

[10] The actual printed values by `aststatistics` may slightly differ for you. This is because of a different random number generator seed used in `astarithmetic`. To get an exactly reproducible result, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410

```
-3.10938611484039e-03 4.99607077069093e+00
```

THE PROBLEM: you want the first number printed above to be stored in a shell variable called `my_mean` and the second number to be stored as the `my_std` shell variable (you are free to choose any name!).

The first thing that may come to mind is to run Statistics two times, and write the output into separate variables like below:

```
$ my_std=$(aststatistics img.fits --std)          ## NOT SOLUTION! ##
$ my_mean=$(aststatistics img.fits --mean)        ## NOT SOLUTION! ##
```

But this is not a good solution because as `img.fits` becomes larger (more pixels), the time it takes for Statistics to simply load the data into memory can be significant. This will slow down your pipeline and besides wasting your time, it contributes to global warming (by spending energy on an un-necessary action; take this seriously because your pipeline may scale up to involve thousands of large datasets)! Furthermore, besides loading of the input data, Statistics (and Gnuastro in general) is designed to do multiple measurements in one pass over the data as much as possible (to further decrease Gnuastro's carbon footprint). So when given `--mean --std`, it will measure both in one pass over the pixels (not two passes!). In other words, in this case, you get the two measurements for the cost of one.

How do you separate the values from the first `aststatistics` command above? One ugly way is to write the two-number output string into a single shell variable and then separate, or tokenize, the string with two subsequent commands like below:

```
$ meanstd=$(aststatistics img.fits --mean --std)  ## NOT SOLUTION! ##
$ my_mean=$(echo $meanstd | awk '{print $1}')     ## NOT SOLUTION! ##
$ my_std=$(echo $meanstd | awk '{print $2}')      ## NOT SOLUTION! ##
```

SOLUTION: The solution is to formatted-print (`printf`) the numbers as shell variables definitions in a string, and evaluate (`eval`) that string as a command:

```
$ eval "$(aststatistics img.fits --mean --std \
                        | xargs printf "my_mean=%s; my_std=%s")"
```

Let's review the solution (in more detail):

1. We pipe the output into `xargs`[11] (extended arguments) which puts the two numbers it gets from the pipe, as arguments for `printf` (formatted print; because `printf` doesn't take input from pipes).
2. Within the `printf` call, we write the values after putting a variable name and equal-sign, and in between them we put a `;` (as if it was a shell command). The `%s` tells `printf` to print each input as a string (not to interpret it as a number and loose precision). Here is the output of this phase:

```
$ aststatistics img.fits --mean --std \
```

[11] For more on `xargs`, see `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xargs`. It will take the standard input (from the pipe in this scenario) and put it as arguments of the next program (`printf` in this scenario). In other words, it is good for programs that don't take input from standard input (`printf` in this case; but also includes others like `cp`, `rm`, or `echo`).

```
                                | xargs printf "my_mean=%s; my_std=%s"
my_mean=-3.10938611484039e-03; my_std=4.99607077069093e+00
```

3. But the output above is a string! To evaluate this string as a command, we give it to the eval command like above.

After the solution above, you will have the two `my_mean` and `my_std` variables to use separately in your pipeline:

```
$ echo $my_mean
-3.10938611484039e-03
$ echo $my_std
4.99607077069093e+00
```

This `eval`-based solution has been tested in in GNU Bash, Dash and Zsh and it works nicely in them (is "portable"). This is because the constructs used here are pretty low-level (and widely available).

For examples usages of this technique, see the following sections: Section 2.5.6 [Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it], page 147, and Section 2.5.8 [Synthetic narrow-band images], page 149.

4.1.5.2 Truncating start of long string FITS keyword values

When you want to put a string (not a number, for example a file name) into the keyword value, if it is longer than 68 characters, CFITSIO is going to truncate the end of the string. The number 68 is the maximum allowable sting keyword length in the FITS standard[12]. A robust way to solve this problem is to break the keyword into multiple keywords and continue the file name there. However, especially when dealing with file names, it is usually the last few characters that you want to preserve (the first ones are usually just basic operating system locations).

Below, you can see the three necessary commands to optionally (when the length is too long) truncate such long strings in GNU Bash. When truncation is necessary, to inform the reader that the value has been truncated, we'll put '`...`' at the start of the string.

```
$ fname="/a/very/long/file/location"
$ if [ ${#fname} -gt 68 ]; then value="...${fname: -65}"; \
  else                          value=$fname; \
  fi
$ astfits image.fits --write=KEYNAME,"$value"
```

Here are the core handy constructs of Bash that we are using here:

`${#fname}`
: Returns the length of the value given to the `fname` variable.

`${fname: -65}`
: Returns the last 65 characters in the value of the `fname` variable.

[12] In the FITS standard, the full length of a keyword (including its name) is 80 characters. The keyword name occupies 8 characters, which is followed by an `=` (1 character). For strings, we need one SPACE after the `=`, and the string should be enclosed in two single quotes. Accounting for all of these, we get $80 - 8 - 1 - 1 - 2 = 68$ available characters.

4.2 Configuration files

Each program needs a certain number of parameters to run. Supplying all the necessary parameters each time you run the program is very frustrating and prone to errors. Therefore all the programs read the values for the necessary options you have not given in the command-line from one of several plain text files (which you can view and edit with any text editor). These files are known as configuration files and are usually kept in a directory named `etc/` according to the file system hierarchy standard[13].

The thing to have in mind is that none of the programs in Gnuastro keep any internal default value. All the values must either be stored in one of the configuration files or explicitly called in the command-line. In case the necessary parameters are not given through any of these methods, the program will print a missing option error and abort. The only exception to this is `--numthreads`, whose default value is determined at run-time using the number of threads available to your system, see Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276. Of course, you can still provide a default value for the number of threads at any of the levels below, but if you do not, the program will not abort. Also note that through automatic output name generation, the value to the `--output` option is also not mandatory on the command-line or in the configuration files for all programs which do not rely on that value as an input[14], see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292.

4.2.1 Configuration file format

The configuration files for each program have the standard program executable name with a '`.conf`' suffix. When you download the source code, you can find them in the same directory as the source code of each program, see Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965.

Any line in the configuration file whose first non-white character is a `#` is considered to be a comment and is ignored. An empty line is also similarly ignored. The long name of the option should be used as an identifier. The option name and option value should be separated by any number of 'white-space' characters (space, tab or vertical tab) or an equal (`=`). By default several space characters are used. If the value of an option has space characters (most commonly for the `hdu` option), then the full value can be enclosed in double quotation signs (`"`, similar to the example in Section 4.1.1 [Arguments and options], page 250). If it is an option without a value in the `--help` output (on/off option, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251), then the value should be `1` if it is to be 'on' and `0` otherwise.

In each non-commented and non-blank line, any text after the first two words (option identifier and value) is ignored. If an option identifier is not recognized in the configuration file, the name of the file, the line number of the unrecognized option, and the unrecognized identifier name will be reported and the program will abort. If a parameter is repeated more more than once in the configuration files, accepts only one value, and is not set on the command-line, then only the first value will be used, the rest will be ignored.

You can build or edit any of the directories and the configuration files yourself using any text editor. However, it is recommended to use the `--setdirconf` and `--setusrconf`

[13] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Filesystem_Hierarchy_Standard`

[14] One example of a program that uses the value given to `--output` as an input is ConvertType, this value specifies the type of the output through the value to `--output`, see Section 5.2.5 [Invoking ConvertType], page 332.

options to set default values for the current directory or this user, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259. With these options, the values you give will be checked before writing in the configuration file. They will also print a set of commented lines guiding the reader and will also classify the options based on their context and write them in their logical order to be more understandable.

4.2.2 Configuration file precedence

The option values in all the programs of Gnuastro will be filled in the following order. If an option only takes one value which is given in an earlier step, any value for that option in a later step will be ignored. Note that if the `lastconfig` option is specified in any step below, no other configuration files will be parsed (see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259).

1. Command-line options, for a particular run of ProgramName.
2. `.gnuastro/astprogname.conf` is parsed by ProgramName in the current directory.
3. `.gnuastro/gnuastro.conf` is parsed by all Gnuastro programs in the current directory.
4. `$HOME/.local/etc/gnuastro/astprogname.conf` is parsed by ProgramName in the user's home directory (see Section 4.2.3 [Current directory and User wide], page 272).
5. `$HOME/.local/etc/gnuastro/gnuastro.conf` is parsed by all Gnuastro programs in the user's home directory (see Section 4.2.3 [Current directory and User wide], page 272).
6. `prefix/etc/gnuastro/astprogname.conf` is parsed by ProgramName in the system-wide installation directory (see Section 4.2.4 [System wide], page 272, for `prefix`).
7. `prefix/etc/gnuastro/gnuastro.conf` is parsed by all Gnuastro programs in the system-wide installation directory (see Section 4.2.4 [System wide], page 272, for `prefix`).

The basic idea behind setting this progressive state of checking for parameter values is that separate users of a computer or separate folders in a user's file system might need different values for some parameters.

Checking the order: You can confirm/check the order of parsing configuration files using the `--checkconfig` option with any Gnuastro program, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259. Just be sure to place this option immediately after the program name, before any other option.

As you see above, there can also be a configuration file containing the common options in all the programs: `gnuastro.conf` (see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253). If options specific to one program are specified in this file, there will be unrecognized option errors, or unexpected behavior if the option has different behavior in another program. On the other hand, there is no problem with `astprogname.conf` containing common options[15].

[15] As an example, the `--setdirconf` and `--setusrconf` options will also write the common options they have read in their produced `astprogname.conf`.

Manipulating the order: You can manipulate this order or add new files with the following two options which are fully described in Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259:

`--config` Allows you to define any file to be parsed as a configuration file on the command-line or within the any other configuration file. Recall that the file given to `--config` is parsed immediately when this option is confronted (on the command-line or in a configuration file).

`--lastconfig`
Allows you to stop the parsing of subsequent configuration files. Note that if this option is given in a configuration file, it will be fully read, so its position in the configuration does not matter (unlike `--config`).

One example of benefiting from these configuration files can be this: raw telescope images usually have their main image extension in the second FITS extension, while processed FITS images usually only have one extension. If your system-wide default input extension is 0 (the first), then when you want to work with the former group of data you have to explicitly mention it to the programs every time. With this progressive state of default values to check, you can set different default values for the different directories that you would like to run Gnuastro in for your different purposes, so you will not have to worry about this issue any more.

The same can be said about the `gnuastro.conf` files: by specifying a behavior in this single file, all Gnuastro programs in the respective directory, user, or system-wide steps will behave similarly. For example, to keep the input's directory when no specific output is given (see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292), or to not delete an existing file if it has the same name as a given output (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

4.2.3 Current directory and User wide

For the current (local) and user-wide directories, the configuration files are stored in the hidden sub-directories named `.gnuastro/` and `$HOME/.local/etc/gnuastro/` respectively. Unless you have changed it, the `$HOME` environment variable should point to your home directory. You can check it by running `$ echo $HOME`. Each time you run any of the programs in Gnuastro, this environment variable is read and placed in the above address. So if you suddenly see that your home configuration files are not being read, probably you (or some other program) has changed the value of this environment variable.

Although it might cause confusions like above, this dependence on the `HOME` environment variable enables you to temporarily use a different directory as your home directory. This can come in handy in complicated situations. To set the user or current directory configuration files based on your command-line input, you can use the `--setdirconf` or `--setusrconf`, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259.

4.2.4 System wide

When Gnuastro is installed, the configuration files that are shipped with the distribution are copied into the (possibly system wide) `prefix/etc/gnuastro` directory. For more details on `prefix`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235, (by default it is: `/usr/local`).

This directory is the final place (with the lowest priority) that the programs in Gnuastro will check to retrieve parameter values.

If you remove an option and its value from the system wide configuration files, you either have to specify it in more immediate configuration files or set it each time in the command-line. Recall that none of the programs in Gnuastro keep any internal default values and will abort if they do not find a value for the necessary parameters (except the number of threads and output file name). So even though you might never expect to use an optional option, it safe to have it available in this system-wide configuration file even if you do not intend to use it frequently.

Note that in case you install Gnuastro from your distribution's repositories, `prefix` will either be set to `/` (the root directory) or `/usr`, so you can find the system wide configuration variables in `/etc/gnuastro/` or `/usr/etc/gnuastro/`. The prefix of `/usr/local/` is conventionally used for programs you install from source by yourself as in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1.

4.3 Getting help

Probably the first time you read this book, it is either in the PDF or HTML formats. These two formats are very convenient for when you are not actually working, but when you are only reading. Later on, when you start to use the programs and you are deep in the middle of your work, some of the details will inevitably be forgotten. Going to find the PDF file (printed or digital) or the HTML web page is a major distraction.

GNU software have a very unique set of tools for aiding your memory on the command-line, where you are working, depending how much of it you need to remember. In the past, such command-line help was known as "online" help, because they were literally provided to you 'on' the command 'line'. However, nowadays the word "online" refers to something on the internet, so that term will not be used. With this type of help, you can resume your exciting research without taking your hands off the keyboard.

Another major advantage of such command-line based help routines is that they are installed with the software in your computer, therefore they are always in sync with the executable you are actually running. Three of them are actually part of the executable. You do not have to worry about the version of the book or program. If you rely on external help (a PDF in your personal print or digital archive or HTML from the official web page) you have to check to see if their versions fit with your installed program.

If you only need to remember the short or long names of the options, `--usage` is advised. If it is what the options do, then `--help` is a great tool. Man pages are also provided for those who are use to this older system of documentation. This full book is also available to you on the command-line in Info format. If none of these seems to resolve the problems, there is a mailing list which enables you to get in touch with experienced Gnuastro users. In the subsections below each of these methods are reviewed.

4.3.1 `--usage`

If you give this option, the program will not run. It will only print a very concise message showing the options and arguments. Everything within square brackets (`[]`) is optional. For example, here are the first and last two lines of Crop's `--usage` is shown:

```
$ astcrop --usage
```

```
Usage: astcrop [-Do?IPqSVW] [-d INT] [-h INT] [-r INT] [-w INT]
            [-x INT] [-y INT] [-c INT] [-p STR] [-N INT] [--deccol=INT]
            ....
            [--setusrconf] [--usage] [--version] [--wcsmode]
            [ASCIIcatalog] FITSimage(s).fits
```

There are no explanations on the options, just their short and long names shown separately. After the program name, the short format of all the options that do not require a value (on/off options) is displayed. Those that do require a value then follow in separate brackets, each displaying the format of the input they want, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251. Since all options are optional, they are shown in square brackets, but arguments can also be optional. For example, in this example, a catalog name is optional and is only required in some modes. This is a standard method of displaying optional arguments for all GNU software.

4.3.2 `--help`

If the command-line includes this option, the program will not be run. It will print a complete list of all available options along with a short explanation. The options are also grouped by their context. Within each context, the options are sorted alphabetically. Since the options are shown in detail afterwards, the first line of the `--help` output shows the arguments and if they are optional or not, similar to Section 4.3.1 [`--usage`], page 273.

In the `--help` output of all programs in Gnuastro, the options for each program are classified based on context. The first two contexts are always options to do with the input and output respectively. For example, input image extensions or supplementary input files for the inputs. The last class of options is also fixed in all of Gnuastro, it shows operating mode options. Most of these options are already explained in Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259.

The help message will sometimes be longer than the vertical size of your terminal. If you are using a graphical user interface terminal emulator, you can scroll the terminal with your mouse, but we promised no mice distractions! So here are some suggestions:

- `Shift + PageUP` to scroll up and `Shift + PageDown` to scroll down. For most help output this should be enough. The problem is that it is limited by the number of lines that your terminal keeps in memory and that you cannot scroll by lines, only by whole screens.
- Pipe to `less`. A pipe is a form of shell re-direction. The `less` tool in Unix-like systems was made exactly for such outputs of any length. You can pipe (`|`) the output of any program that is longer than the screen to it and then you can scroll through (up and down) with its many tools. For example:

  ```
  $ astnoisechisel --help | less
  ```

  Once you have gone through the text, you can quit `less` by pressing the `q` key.
- Redirect to a file. This is a less convenient way, because you will then have to open the file in a text editor! You can do this with the shell redirection tool (`>`):

  ```
  $ astnoisechisel --help > filename.txt
  ```

In case you have a special keyword you are looking for in the help, you do not have to go through the full list. GNU Grep is made for this job. For example, if you only want

the list of options whose `--help` output contains the word "axis" in Crop, you can run the following command:

```
$ astcrop --help | grep axis
```

If the output of this option does not fit nicely within the confines of your terminal, GNU does enable you to customize its output through the environment variable `ARGP_HELP_FMT`, you can set various parameters which specify the formatting of the help messages. For example, if your terminals are wider than 70 spaces (say 100) and you feel there is too much empty space between the long options and the short explanation, you can change these formats by giving values to this environment variable before running the program with the `--help` output. You can define this environment variable in this manner:

```
$ export ARGP_HELP_FMT=rmargin=100,opt-doc-col=20
```

This will affect all GNU programs using GNU C library's `argp.h` facilities as long as the environment variable is in memory. You can see the full list of these formatting parameters in the "Argp User Customization" part of the GNU C library manual. If you are more comfortable to read the `--help` outputs of all GNU software in your customized format, you can add your customization (similar to the line above, without the `$` sign) to your `~/.bashrc` file. This is a standard option for all GNU software.

4.3.3 Man pages

Man pages were the Unix method of providing command-line documentation to a program. With GNU Info, see Section 4.3.4 [Info], page 275, the usage of this method of documentation is highly discouraged. This is because Info provides a much more easier to navigate and read environment.

However, some operating systems require a man page for packages that are installed and some people are still used to this method of command-line help. So the programs in Gnuastro also have Man pages which are automatically generated from the outputs of `--version` and `--help` using the GNU help2man program. So if you run

```
$ man programname
```

You will be provided with a man page listing the options in the standard manner.

4.3.4 Info

Info is the standard documentation format for all GNU software. It is a very useful command-line document viewing format, fully equipped with links between the various pages and menus and search capabilities. As explained before, the best thing about it is that it is available for you the moment you need to refresh your memory on any command-line tool in the middle of your work without having to take your hands off the keyboard. This complete book is available in Info format and can be accessed from anywhere on the command-line.

To open the Info format of any installed programs or library on your system which has an Info format book, you can simply run the command below (change `executablename` to the executable name of the program or library):

```
$ info executablename
```

In case you are not already familiar with it, run `$ info info`. It does a fantastic job in explaining all its capabilities itself. It is very short and you will become sufficiently fluent

in about half an hour. Since all GNU software documentation is also provided in Info, your whole GNU/Linux life will significantly improve.

Once you've become an efficient navigator in Info, you can go to any part of this book or any other GNU software or library manual, no matter how long it is, in a matter of seconds. It also blends nicely with GNU Emacs (a text editor) and you can search manuals while you are writing your document or programs without taking your hands off the keyboard, this is most useful for libraries like the GNU C library. To be able to access all the Info manuals installed in your GNU/Linux within Emacs, type `Ctrl-H + i`.

To see this whole book from the beginning in Info, you can run

```
$ info gnuastro
```

If you run Info with the particular program executable name, for example `astcrop` or `astnoisechisel`:

```
$ info astprogramname
```

you will be taken to the section titled "Invoking ProgramName" which explains the inputs and outputs along with the command-line options for that program. Finally, if you run Info with the official program name, for example, Crop or NoiseChisel:

```
$ info ProgramName
```

you will be taken to the top section which introduces the program. Note that in all cases, Info is not case sensitive.

4.3.5 help-gnuastro mailing list

Gnuastro maintains the help-gnuastro mailing list for users to ask any questions related to Gnuastro. The experienced Gnuastro users and some of its developers are subscribed to this mailing list and your email will be sent to them immediately. However, when contacting this mailing list please have in mind that they are possibly very busy and might not be able to answer immediately.

To ask a question from this mailing list, send a mail to `help-gnuastro@gnu.org`. Anyone can view the mailing list archives at `http://lists.gnu.org/archive/html/help-gnuastro/`. It is best that before sending a mail, you search the archives to see if anyone has asked a question similar to yours. If you want to make a suggestion or report a bug, please do not send a mail to this mailing list. We have other mailing lists and tools for those purposes, see Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15, or Section 1.10 [Suggest new feature], page 17.

4.4 Multi-threaded operations

Some of the programs benefit significantly when you use all the threads your computer's CPU has to offer to your operating system. The number of threads available can be larger than the number of physical (hardware) cores in the CPU (also known as Simultaneous multithreading). For example, in Intel's CPUs (those that implement its Hyper-threading technology) the number of threads is usually double the number of physical cores in your CPU. On a GNU/Linux system, the number of threads available can be found with the command `$ nproc` command (part of GNU Coreutils).

Gnuastro's programs can find the number of threads available to your system internally at run-time (when you execute the program). However, if a value is given to the

`--numthreads` option, the given number will be used, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259, and Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270, for ways to use this option. Thus `--numthreads` is the only common option in Gnuastro's programs with a value that does not have to be specified anywhere on the command-line or in the configuration files.

4.4.1 A note on threads

Spinning off threads is not necessarily the most efficient way to run an application. Creating a new thread is not a cheap operation for the operating system. It is most useful when the input data are fixed and you want the same operation to be done on parts of it. For example, one input image to Crop and multiple crops from various parts of it. In this fashion, the image is loaded into memory once, all the crops are divided between the number of threads internally and each thread cuts out those parts which are assigned to it from the same image. On the other hand, if you have multiple images and you want to crop the same region(s) out of all of them, it is much more efficient to set `--numthreads=1` (so no threads spin off) and run Crop multiple times simultaneously, see Section 4.4.2 [How to run simultaneous operations], page 278.

You can check the boost in speed by first running a program on one of the data sets with the maximum number of threads and another time (with everything else the same) and only using one thread. You will notice that the wall-clock time (reported by most programs at their end) in the former is longer than the latter divided by number of physical CPU cores (not threads) available to your operating system. Asymptotically these two times can be equal (most of the time they are not). So limiting the programs to use only one thread and running them independently on the number of available threads will be more efficient.

Note that the operating system keeps a cache of recently processed data, so usually, the second time you process an identical data set (independent of the number of threads used), you will get faster results. In order to make an unbiased comparison, you have to first clean the system's cache with the following command between the two runs.

```
$ sync; echo 3 | sudo tee /proc/sys/vm/drop_caches
```

SUMMARY: Should I use multiple threads? Depends:

- If you only have **one** data set (image in most cases!), then yes, the more threads you use (with a maximum of the number of threads available to your OS) the faster you will get your results.
- If you want to run the same operation on **multiple** data sets, it is best to set the number of threads to 1 and use Make, or GNU Parallel, as explained in Section 4.4.2 [How to run simultaneous operations], page 278.

4.4.2 How to run simultaneous operations

There are two[16] approaches to simultaneously execute a program: using GNU Parallel or Make (GNU Make is the most common implementation). The first is very useful when you only want to do one job multiple times and want to get back to your work without actually keeping the command you ran. The second is usually for more important operations, with lots of dependencies between the different products (for example, a full scientific research).

GNU Parallel

When you only want to run multiple instances of a command on different threads and get on with the rest of your work, the best method is to use GNU parallel. Surprisingly GNU Parallel is one of the few GNU packages that has no Info documentation but only a Man page, see Section 4.3.4 [Info], page 275. So to see the documentation after installing it please run

```
$ man parallel
```

As an example, let's assume we want to crop a region fixed on the pixels (500, 600) with the default width from all the FITS images in the `./data` directory ending with `sci.fits` to the current directory. To do this, you can run:

```
$ parallel astcrop --numthreads=1 --xc=500 --yc=600 ::: \
  ./data/*sci.fits
```

GNU Parallel can help in many more conditions, this is one of the simplest, see the man page for lots of other examples. For absolute beginners: the backslash (\) is only a line breaker to fit nicely in the page. If you type the whole command in one line, you should remove it.

Make

Make is a program for building "targets" (e.g., files) using "recipes" (a set of operations) when their known "prerequisites" (other files) have been updated. It elegantly allows you to define dependency structures for building your final output and updating it efficiently when the inputs change. It is the most common infra-structure to build software today.

Scientific research methodology is very similar to software development: you start by testing a hypothesis on a small sample of objects/targets with a simple set of steps. As you are able to get promising results, you improve the method and use it on a larger, more general, sample. In the process, you will confront many issues that have to be corrected (bugs in software development jargon). Make is a wonderful tool to manage this style of development.

Besides the raw data analysis pipeline, Make has been used to for producing reproducible papers, for example, see the reproduction pipeline (`https://gitlab.com/makhlaghi/NoiseChisel-paper`) of the paper introducing Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, (one of Gnuastro's programs). In fact the NoiseChisel paper's Make-based workflow was the foundation of a parallel project called Maneage (`http://maneage.org`) (*Man*aging data lin*eage*): `http://maneage.org` that is described more fully in Akhlaghi et al. 2021

[16] A third way would be to open multiple terminal emulator windows in your GUI, type the commands separately on each and press `Enter` once on each terminal, but this is far too frustrating, tedious and prone to errors. It's therefore not a realistic solution when tens, hundreds or thousands of operations (your research targets, multiplied by the operations you do on each) are to be done.

(`https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.03018`). Therefore, it is a very useful tool for complex scientific workflows.

GNU Make[17] is the most common implementation which (similar to nearly all GNU programs, comes with a wonderful manual[18]). Make is very basic and simple, and thus the manual is short (the most important parts are in the first roughly 100 pages) and easy to read/understand.

Make comes with a `--jobs` (`-j`) option which allows you to specify the maximum number of jobs that can be done simultaneously. For example, if you have 8 threads available to your operating system. You can run:

```
$ make -j8
```

With this command, Make will process your `Makefile` and create all the targets (can be thousands of FITS images for example) simultaneously on 8 threads, while fully respecting their dependencies (only building a file/target when its prerequisites are successfully built). Make is thus strongly recommended for managing scientific research where robustness, archiving, reproducibility and speed[19] are important.

4.5 Numeric data types

At the lowest level, the computer stores everything in terms of `1` or `0`. For example, each program in Gnuastro, or each astronomical image you take with the telescope is actually a string of millions of these zeros and ones. The space required to keep a zero or one is the smallest unit of storage, and is known as a *bit*. However, understanding and manipulating this string of bits is extremely hard for most people. Therefore, different standards are defined to package the bits into separate *type*s with a fixed interpretation of the bits in each package.

To store numbers, the most basic standard/type is for integers ($..., -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, ...$). The common integer types are 8, 16, 32, and 64 bits wide (more bits will give larger limits). Each bit corresponds to a power of 2 and they are summed to create the final number. In the integer types, for each width there are two standards for reading the bits: signed and unsigned. In the 'signed' convention, one bit is reserved for the sign (stating that the integer is positive or negative). The 'unsigned' integers use that bit in the actual number and thus contain only positive numbers (starting from zero).

Therefore, at the same number of bits, both signed and unsigned integers can allow the same number of integers, but the positive limit of the `unsigned` types is double their `signed` counterparts with the same width (at the expense of not having negative numbers). When the context of your work does not involve negative numbers (for example, counting, where negative is not defined), it is best to use the `unsigned` types. For the full numerical range of all integer types, see below.

[17] `https://www.gnu.org/software/make/`

[18] `https://www.gnu.org/software/make/manual/`

[19] Besides its multi-threaded capabilities, Make will only rebuild those targets that depend on a change you have made, not the whole work. For example, if you have set the prerequisites properly, you can easily test the changing of a parameter on your paper's results without having to re-do everything (which is much faster). This allows you to be much more productive in easily checking various ideas/assumptions of the different stages of your research and thus produce a more robust result for your exciting science.

Another standard of converting a given number of bits to numbers is the floating point standard, this standard can *approximately* store any real number with a given precision. There are two common floating point types: 32-bit and 64-bit, for single and double precision floating point numbers respectively. The former is sufficient for data with less than 8 significant decimal digits (most astronomical data), while the latter is good for less than 16 significant decimal digits. The representation of real numbers as bits is much more complex than integers. If you are interested to learn more about it, you can start with the Wikipedia article (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Floating_point`).

Practically, you can use Gnuastro's Arithmetic program to convert/change the type of an image/data-cube (see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403), or Gnuastro Table program to convert a table column's data type (see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350). Conversion of a dataset's type is necessary in some contexts. For example, the program/library, that you intend to feed the data into, only accepts floating point values, but you have an integer image/column. Another situation that conversion can be helpful is when you know that your data only has values that fit within `int8` or `uint16`. However it is currently formatted in the `float64` type.

The important thing to consider is that operations involving wider, floating point, or signed types can be significantly slower than smaller-width, integer, or unsigned types respectively. Note that besides speed, a wider type also requires much more storage space (by 4 or 8 times). Therefore, when you confront such situations that can be optimized and want to store/archive/transfer the data, it is best to use the most efficient type. For example, if your dataset (image or table column) only has positive integers less than 65535, store it as an unsigned 16-bit integer for faster processing, faster transfer, and less storage space.

The short and long names for the recognized numeric data types in Gnuastro are listed below. Both short and long names can be used when you want to specify a type. For example, as a value to the common option `--type` (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254), or in the information comment lines of Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287. The ranges listed below are inclusive.

`u8`
`uint8` 8-bit unsigned integers, range:
[0 to $2^8 - 1$] or [0 to 255].

`i8`
`int8` 8-bit signed integers, range:
[-2^7 to $2^7 - 1$] or [−128 to 127].

`u16`
`uint16` 16-bit unsigned integers, range:
[0 to $2^{16} - 1$] or [0 to 65535].

`i16`
`int16` 16-bit signed integers, range:
[-2^{15} to $2^{15} - 1$] or [−32768 to 32767].

`u32`
`uint32` 32-bit unsigned integers, range:
[0 to $2^{32} - 1$] or [0 to 4294967295].

`i32`
`int32` 32-bit signed integers, range:
$[-2^{31}$ to $2^{31}-1]$ or [−2147483648 to 2147483647].

`u64`
`uint64` 64-bit unsigned integers, range
$[0$ to $2^{64}-1]$ or [0 to 18446744073709551615].

`i64`
`int64` 64-bit signed integers, range:
$[-2^{63}$ to $2^{63}-1]$ or [−9223372036854775808 to 9223372036854775807].

`f32`
`float32` 32-bit (single-precision) floating point types. The maximum (minimum is its negative) possible value is 3.402823×10^{38}. Single-precision floating points can accurately represent a floating point number up to ~ 7.2 significant decimals. Given the heavy noise in astronomical data, this is usually more than sufficient for storing results. For more, see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345.

`f64`
`float64` 64-bit (double-precision) floating point types. The maximum (minimum is its negative) possible value is $\sim 10^{308}$. Double-precision floating points can accurately represent a floating point number ~ 15.9 significant decimals. This is usually good for processing (mixing) the data internally, for example, a sum of single precision data (and later storing the result as `float32`). For more, see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345.

Some file formats do not recognize all types. for example, the FITS standard (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297) does not define `uint64` in binary tables or images. When a type is not acceptable for output into a given file format, the respective Gnuastro program or library will let you know and abort. On the command-line, you can convert the numerical type of an image, or table column into another type with Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403, or Section 5.3 [Table], page 344, respectively. If you are writing your own program, you can use the `gal_data_copy_to_new_type()` function in Gnuastro's library, see Section 12.3.6.4 [Copying datasets], page 790.

4.6 Memory management

In this section we will review how Gnuastro manages your input data in your system's memory. Knowing this can help you optimize your usage (in speed and memory consumption) when the data volume is large and approaches, or exceeds, your available RAM (usually in various calls to multiple programs simultaneously). But before diving into the details, let's have a short basic introduction to memory in general and in particular the types of memory most relevant to this discussion.

Input datasets (that are later fed into programs for analysis) are commonly first stored in *non-volatile memory*. This is a type of memory that does not need a constant power supply to keep the data and is therefore primarily aimed for long-term storage, like HDDs

or SSDs. So data in this type of storage is preserved when you turn off your computer. But by its nature, non-volatile memory is much slower, in reading or writing, than the speeds that CPUs can process the data. Thus relying on this type of memory alone would create a bad bottleneck in the input/output (I/O) phase of any processing.

The first step to decrease this bottleneck is to have a faster storage space, but with a much limited storage volume. For this type of storage, computers have a Random Access Memory (or RAM). RAM is classified as a *volatile memory* because it needs a constant flow of electricity to keep the information. In other words, the moment power is cut-off, all the stored information in your RAM is gone (hence the "volatile" name). But thanks to that constant supply of power, it can access any random address with equal (and very high!) speed.

Hence, the general/simplistic way that programs deal with memory is the following (this is general to almost all programs, not just Gnuastro's): 1) Load/copy the input data from the non-volatile memory into RAM. 2) Use the copy of the data in RAM as input for all the internal processing as well as the intermediate data that is necessary during the processing. 3) Finally, when the analysis is complete, write the final output data back into non-volatile memory, and free/delete all the used space in the RAM (the initial copy and all the intermediate data). Usually the RAM is most important for the data of the intermediate steps (that you never see as a user of a program!).

When the input dataset(s) to a program are small (compared to the available space in your system's RAM at the moment it is run) Gnuastro's programs and libraries follow the standard series of steps above. The only exception is that deleting the intermediate data is not only done at the end of the program. As soon as an intermediate dataset is no longer necessary for the next internal steps, the space it occupied is deleted/freed. This allows Gnuastro programs to minimize their usage of your system's RAM over the full running time.

The situation gets complicated when the datasets are large (compared to your available RAM when the program is run). For example, if a dataset is half the size of your system's available RAM, and the program's internal analysis needs three or more intermediately processed copies of it at one moment in its analysis. There will not be enough RAM to keep those higher-level intermediate data. In such cases, programs that do not do any memory management will crash. But fortunately Gnuastro's programs do have a memory management plans for such situations.

When the necessary amount of space for an intermediate dataset cannot be allocated in the RAM, Gnuastro's programs will not use the RAM at all. They will use the "memory-mapped file" concept in modern operating systems to create a randomly-named file in your non-volatile memory and use that instead of the RAM. That file will have the exact size (in bytes) of that intermediate dataset. Any time the program needs that intermediate dataset, the operating system will directly go to that file, and bypass your RAM. As soon as that file is no longer necessary for the analysis, it will be deleted. But as mentioned above, non-volatile memory has much slower I/O speed than the RAM. Hence in such situations, the programs will become noticeably slower (sometimes by factors of 10 times slower, depending on your non-volatile memory speed).

Because of the drop in I/O speed (and thus the speed of your running program), the moment that any to-be-allocated dataset is memory-mapped, Gnuastro's programs and libraries will notify you with a descriptive statement like below (can happen in any phase

of their analysis). It shows the location of the memory-mapped file, and its size, complemented with a small description of the cause, a pointer to this section of the book for more information on how to deal with it (if necessary), and how to suppress it.

```
astarithmetic: ./gnuastro_mmap/Fu7Dhs: temporary memory-mapped file
(XXXXXXXXXX bytes) created for intermediate data that is not stored
in RAM (see the "Memory management" section of Gnuastro's manual for
optimizing your project's memory management, and thus speed). To
disable this warning, please use the option '--quiet-mmap'
```

Finally, when the intermediate dataset is no longer necessary, the program will automatically delete it and notify you with a statement like this:

```
astarithmetic: ./gnuastro_mmap/Fu7Dhs: deleted
```

To disable these messages, you can run the program with `--quietmmap`, or set the `quietmmap` variable in the allocating library function to be non-zero.

An important component of these messages is the name of the memory-mapped file. Knowing that the file has been deleted is important for the user if the program crashes for any reason: internally (for example, a parameter is given wrongly) or externally (for example, you mistakenly kill the running job). In the event of a crash, the memory-mapped files will not be deleted and you have to manually delete them because they are usually large and they may soon fill your full storage if not deleted in a long time due to successive crashes.

This brings us to managing the memory-mapped files in your non-volatile memory. In other words: knowing where they are saved, or intentionally placing them in different places of your file system, or deleting them when necessary. As the examples above show, memory-mapped files are stored in a sub-directory of the running directory called `gnuastro_mmap`. If this directory does not exist, Gnuastro will automatically create it when memory mapping becomes necessary. Alternatively, it may happen that the `gnuastro_mmap` sub-directory exists and is not writable, or it cannot be created. In such cases, the memory-mapped file for each dataset will be created in the running directory with a `gnuastro_mmap_` prefix.

Therefore one easy way to delete all memory-mapped files in case of a crash, is to delete everything within the sub-directory (first command below), or all files stating with this prefix:

```
rm -f gnuastro_mmap/*
rm -f gnuastro_mmap_*
```

A much more common issue when dealing with memory-mapped files is their location. For example, you may be running a program in a partition that is hosted by an HDD. But you also have another partition on an SSD (which has much faster I/O). So you want your memory-mapped files to be created in the SSD to speed up your processing. In this scenario, you want your project source directory to only contain your plain-text scripts and you want your project's built products (even the temporary memory-mapped files) to be built in a different location because they are large; thus I/O speed becomes important.

To host the memory-mapped files in another location (with fast I/O), you can set (`gnuastro_mmap`) to be a symbolic link to it. For example, let's assume you want your memory-mapped files to be stored in `/path/to/dir/for/mmap`. All you have to do is to run the following command before your Gnuastro analysis command(s).

```
ln -s /path/to/dir/for/mmap gnuastro_mmap
```

The programs will delete a memory-mapped file when it is no longer needed, but they will not delete the `gnuastro_mmap` directory that hosts them. So if your project involves many Gnuastro programs (possibly called in parallel) and you want your memory-mapped files to be in a different location, you just have to make the symbolic link above once at the start, and all the programs will use it if necessary.

Another memory-management scenario that may happen is this: you do not want a Gnuastro program to allocate internal datasets in the RAM at all. For example, the speed of your Gnuastro-related project does not matter at that moment, and you have higher-priority jobs that are being run at the same time which need to have RAM available. In such cases, you can use the `--minmapsize` option that is available in all Gnuastro programs (see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257). Any intermediate dataset that has a size larger than the value of this option will be memory-mapped, even if there is space available in your RAM. For example, if you want any dataset larger than 100 megabytes to be memory-mapped, use `--minmapsize=100000000` (8 zeros!).

You should not set the value of `--minmapsize` to be too small, otherwise even small intermediate values (that are usually very numerous) in the program will be memory-mapped. However the kernel can only host a limited number of memory-mapped files at every moment (by all running programs combined). For example, in the default[20] Linux kernel on GNU/Linux operating systems this limit is roughly 64000. If the total number of memory-mapped files exceeds this number, all the programs using them will crash. Gnuastro's programs will warn you if your given value is too small and may cause a problem later.

Actually, the default behavior for Gnuastro's programs (to only use memory-mapped files when there is not enough RAM) is a side-effect of `--minmapsize`. The pre-defined value to this option is an extremely large value in the lowest-level Gnuastro configuration file (the installed `gnuastro.conf` described in Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271). This value is larger than the largest possible available RAM. You can check by running any Gnuastro program with a `-P` option. Because no dataset will be larger than this, by default the programs will first attempt to use the RAM for temporary storage. But if writing in the RAM fails (for any reason, mainly due to lack of available space), then a memory-mapped file will be created.

4.7 Tables

"A table is a collection of related data held in a structured format within a database. It consists of columns, and rows." (from Wikipedia). Each column in the table contains the values of one property and each row is a collection of properties (columns) for one target object. For example, let's assume you have just ran MakeCatalog (see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582) on an image to measure some properties for the labeled regions (which might be detected galaxies for example) in the image. For each labeled region (detected galaxy), there will be a *row* which groups its measured properties as *columns*, one column for each property. One such property can be the object's magnitude, which is the sum of pixels with that label, or its center can be defined as the light-weighted average value of those pixels. Many such properties can be derived from the raw pixel values and their position, see Section 7.4.8 [Invoking MakeCatalog], page 624, for a long list.

[20] If you need to host more memory-mapped files at one moment, you need to build your own customized Linux kernel.

As a summary, for each labeled region (or, galaxy) we have one *row* and for each measured property we have one *column*. This high-level structure is usually the first step for higher-level analysis, for example, finding the stellar mass or photometric redshift from magnitudes in multiple colors. Thus, tables are not just outputs of programs, in fact it is much more common for tables to be inputs of programs. For example, to make a mock galaxy image, you need to feed in the properties of each galaxy into Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652, for it do the inverse of the process above and make a simulated image from a catalog, see Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123. In other cases, you can feed a table into Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389, and it will crop out regions centered on the positions within the table, see Section 2.1.19 [Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization], page 63. So to end this relatively long introduction, tables play a very important role in astronomy, or generally all branches of data analysis.

In Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285, the currently recognized table formats in Gnuastro are discussed. You can use any of these tables as input or ask for them to be built as output. The most common type of table format is a simple plain text file with each row on one line and columns separated by white space characters, this format is easy to read/write by eye/hand. To give it the full functionality of more specific table types like the FITS tables, Gnuastro has a special convention which you can use to give each column a name, type, unit, and comments, while still being readable by other plain text table readers. This convention is described in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

When tables are input to a program, the program reading it needs to know which column(s) it should use for its desired purposes. Gnuastro's programs all follow a similar convention, on the way you can select columns in a table. They are thoroughly discussed in Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289.

4.7.1 Recognized table formats

The list of table formats that Gnuastro can currently read from and write to are described below. Each has their own advantage and disadvantages, so a short review of the format is also provided to help you make the best choice based on how you want to define your input tables or later use your output tables.

Plain text table

This is the most basic and simplest way to create, view, or edit the table by hand on a text editor. The other formats described below are less eye-friendly and have a more formal structure (for easier computer readability). It is fully described in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

FITS ASCII tables

The FITS ASCII table extension is fully in ASCII encoding and thus easily readable on any text editor (assuming it is the only extension in the FITS file). If the FITS file also contains binary extensions (for example, an image or binary table extensions), then there will be many hard to print characters. The FITS ASCII format does not have new line characters to separate rows. In the FITS ASCII table standard, each row is defined as a fixed number of characters (value to the `NAXIS1` keyword), so to visually inspect it properly, you would have to adjust your text editor's width to this value. All columns start at given character positions and have a fixed width (number of characters).

Numbers in a FITS ASCII table are printed into ASCII format, they are not in binary (that the CPU uses). Hence, they can take a larger space in memory, loose their precision, and take longer to read into memory. If you are dealing with integer type columns (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), another issue with FITS ASCII tables is that the type information for the column will be lost (there is only one integer type in FITS ASCII tables). One problem with the binary format on the other hand is that it is not portable (different CPUs/compilers) have different standards for translating the zeros and ones. But since ASCII characters are defined on a byte and are well recognized, they are better for portability on those various systems. Gnuastro's plain text table format described below is much more portable and easier to read/write/interpret by humans manually.

Generally, as the name implies, this format is useful for when your table mainly contains ASCII columns (for example, file names, or descriptions). They can be useful when you need to include columns with structured ASCII information along with other extensions in one FITS file. In such cases, you can also consider header keywords (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297).

FITS binary tables

The FITS binary table is the FITS standard's solution to the issues discussed with keeping numbers in ASCII format as described under the FITS ASCII table title above. Only columns defined as a string type (a string of ASCII characters) are readable in a text editor. The portability problem with binary formats discussed above is mostly solved thanks to the portability of CFITSIO (see Section 3.1.1.2 [CFITSIO], page 213) and the very long history of the FITS format which has been widely used since the 1970s.

In the case of most numbers, storing them in binary format is more memory efficient than ASCII format. For example, to store `-25.72034` in ASCII format, you need 9 bytes/characters. But if you keep this same number (to the approximate precision possible) as a 4-byte (32-bit) floating point number, you can keep/transmit it with less than half the amount of memory. When catalogs contain thousands/millions of rows in tens/hundreds of columns, this can lead to significant improvements in memory/band-width usage. Moreover, since the CPU does its operations in the binary formats, reading the table in and writing it out is also much faster than an ASCII table.

When you are dealing with integer numbers, the compression ratio can be even better, for example, if you know all of the values in a column are positive and less than `255`, you can use the `unsigned char` type which only takes one byte! If they are between `-128` and `127`, then you can use the (signed) `char` type. So if you are thoughtful about the limits of your integer columns, you can greatly reduce the size of your file and also the speed at which it is read/written. This can be very useful when sharing your results with collaborators or publishing them. To decrease the file size even more you can name your output as ending in `.fits.gz` so it is also compressed after creation. Just note that compression/decompressing is CPU intensive and can slow down the writing/reading of the file.

Fortunately the FITS Binary table format also accepts ASCII strings as column types (along with the various numerical types). So your dataset can also contain non-numerical columns.

4.7.2 Gnuastro text table format

Plain text files are the most generic, portable, and easiest way to (manually) create, (visually) inspect, or (manually) edit a table. In this format, the ending of a row is defined by the new-line character (a line on a text editor). So when you view it on a text editor, every row will occupy one line. The delimiters (or characters separating the columns) are white space characters (space, horizontal tab, vertical tab) and a comma (`,`). The only further requirement is that all rows/lines must have the same number of columns.

The columns do not have to be exactly under each other and the rows can be arbitrarily long with different lengths. For example, the following contents in a file would be interpreted as a table with 4 columns and 2 rows, with each element interpreted as a 64-bit floating point type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

```
1     2.234948   128   39.8923e8
2 , 4.454        792     72.98348e7
```

However, the example above has no other information about the columns (it is just raw data, with no meta-data). To use this table, you have to remember what the numbers in each column represent. Also, when you want to select columns, you have to count their position within the table. This can become frustrating and prone to bad errors (getting the columns wrong in your scientific project!) especially as the number of columns increase. It is also bad for sending to a colleague, because they will find it hard to remember/use the columns properly.

To solve these problems in Gnuastro's programs/libraries you are not limited to using the column's number, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. If the columns have names, units, or comments you can also select your columns based on searches/matches in these fields, for example, see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344. Also, in this manner, you cannot guide the program reading the table on how to read the numbers. As an example, the first and third columns above can be read as integer types: the first column might be an ID and the third can be the number of pixels an object occupies in an image. So there is no need to read these to columns as a 64-bit floating point type (which takes more memory, and is slower).

In the bare-minimum example above, you also cannot use strings of characters, for example, the names of filters, or some other identifier that includes non-numerical characters. In the absence of any information, only numbers can be read robustly. Assuming we read columns with non-numerical characters as string, there would still be the problem that the strings might contain space (or any delimiter) character for some rows. So, each 'word' in the string will be interpreted as a column and the program will abort with an error that the rows do not have the same number of columns.

To correct for these limitations, Gnuastro defines the following convention for storing the table meta-data along with the raw data in one plain text file. The format is primarily designed for ease of reading/writing by eye/fingers, but is also structured enough to be read by a program.

When the first non-white character in a line is `#`, or there are no non-white characters in it, then the line will not be considered as a row of data in the table (this is a pretty standard convention in many programs, and higher level languages). In the first case (when the first character of the line is `#`), the line is interpreted as a *comment*.

If the comment line starts with '`# Column N:`', then it is assumed to contain information about column `N` (a number, counting from 1). Comment lines that do not start with this pattern are ignored and you can use them to include any further information you want to store with the table in the text file. The most generic column information comment line has the following format:

```
# Column N: NAME [UNIT, TYPE(NUM), BLANK] COMMENT
```

Any sequence of characters between '`:`' and '`[`' will be interpreted as the column name (so it can contain anything except the '`[`' character). Anything between the '`]`' and the end of the line is defined as a comment. Within the brackets, anything before the first '`,`' is the units (physical units, for example, km/s, or erg/s), anything before the second '`,`' is the short type identifier (see below, and Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

If the type identifier is not recognized, the default 64-bit floating point type will be used. The type identifier can optionally be followed by an integer within parenthesis. If the parenthesis is present and the integer is larger than 1, the column is assumed to be a "vector column" (which can have multiple values, for more see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346).

Finally (still within the brackets), any non-white characters after the second '`,`' are interpreted as the blank value for that column (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). The blank value can either be in the same type as the column (for example, `-99` for a signed integer column), or any string (for example, `NaN` in that same column). In both cases, the values will be stored in memory as Gnuastro's fixed blank values for each type. For floating point types, Gnuastro's internal blank value is IEEE NaN (Not-a-Number). For signed integers, it is the smallest possible value and for unsigned integers its the largest possible value.

When a formatting problem occurs, or when the column was already given meta-data in a previous comment, or when the column number is larger than the actual number of columns in the table (the non-commented or empty lines), then the comment information line will be ignored.

When a comment information line can be used, the leading and trailing white space characters will be stripped from all of the elements. For example, in this line:

```
# Column 5:  column name   [km/s,    f32,-99] Redshift as speed
```

The `NAME` field will be '`column name`' and the `TYPE` field will be '`f32`'. Note how all the white space characters before and after strings are not used, but those in the middle remained. Also, white space characters are not mandatory. Hence, in the example above, the `BLANK` field will be given the value of '`-99`'.

Except for the column number (`N`), the rest of the fields are optional. Also, the column information comments do not have to be in order. In other words, the information for column $N + m$ ($m > 0$) can be given in a line before column N. Furthermore, you do not have to specify information for all columns. Those columns that do not have this information will be interpreted with the default settings (like the case above: values are double precision floating point, and the column has no name, unit, or comment). So these

lines are all acceptable for any table (the first one, with nothing but the column number is redundant):

```
# Column 5:
# Column 1: ID [,i8] The Clump ID.
# Column 3: mag_f160w [AB mag, f32] Magnitude from the F160W filter
```

The data type of the column should be specified with one of the following values:

- For a numeric column, you can use any of the numeric types (and their recognized identifiers) described in Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.
- '`strN`': for strings. The `N` value identifies the length of the string (how many characters it has). The start of the string on each row is the first non-delimiter character of the column that has the string type. The next `N` characters will be interpreted as a string and all leading and trailing white space will be removed.

  If the next column's characters, are closer than `N` characters to the start of the string column in that line/row, they will be considered part of the string column. If there is a new-line character before the ending of the space given to the string column (in other words, the string column is the last column), then reading of the string will stop, even if the `N` characters are not complete yet. See `tests/table/table.txt` for one example. Therefore, the only time you have to pay attention to the positioning and spaces given to the string column is when it is not the last column in the table.

  The only limitation in this format is that trailing and leading white space characters will be removed from the columns that are read. In most cases, this is the desired behavior, but if trailing and leading white-spaces are critically important to your analysis, define your own starting and ending characters and remove them after the table has been read. For example, in the sample table below, the two '`|`' characters (which are arbitrary) will remain in the value of the second column and you can remove them manually later. If only one of the leading or trailing white spaces is important for your work, you can only use one of the '`|`'s.

  ```
  # Column 1: ID [label, u8]
  # Column 2: Notes [no unit, str50]
  1    leading and trailing white space is ignored here    2.3442e10
  2   |         but they will be preserved here        |   8.2964e11
  ```

Note that the FITS binary table standard does not define the `unsigned int` and `unsigned long` types, so if you want to convert your tables to FITS binary tables, use other types. Also, note that in the FITS ASCII table, there is only one integer type (`long`). So if you convert a Gnuastro plain text table to a FITS ASCII table with the Section 5.3 [Table], page 344, program, the type information for integers will be lost. Conversely if integer types are important for you, you have to manually set them when reading a FITS ASCII table (for example, with the Table program when reading/converting into a file, or with the `gnuastro/table.h` library functions when reading into memory).

4.7.3 Selecting table columns

At the lowest level, the only defining aspect of a column in a table is its number, or position. But selecting columns purely by number is not very convenient and, especially when the tables are large it can be very frustrating and prone to errors. Hence, table file formats (for example, see Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285) have ways to store

additional information about the columns (meta-data). Some of the most common pieces of information about each column are its *name*, the *units* of data in it, and a *comment* for longer/informal description of the column's data.

To facilitate research with Gnuastro, you can select columns by matching, or searching in these three fields, besides the low-level column number. To view the full list of information on the columns in the table, you can use the Table program (see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344) with the command below (replace `table-file` with the filename of your table, if its FITS, you might also need to specify the HDU/extension which contains the table):

```
$ asttable --information table-file
```

Gnuastro's programs need the columns for different purposes, for example, in Crop, you specify the columns containing the central coordinates of the crop centers with the `--coordcol` option (see Section 6.1.4.1 [Crop options], page 394). On the other hand, in MakeProfiles, to specify the column containing the profile position angles, you must use the `--pcol` option (see Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660). Thus, there can be no unified common option name to select columns for all programs (different columns have different purposes). However, when the program expects a column for a specific context, the option names end in the `col` suffix like the examples above. These options accept values in integer (column number), or string (metadata match/search) format.

If the value can be parsed as a positive integer, it will be seen as the low-level column number. Note that column counting starts from 1, so if you ask for column 0, the respective program will abort with an error. When the value cannot be interpreted as an a integer number, it will be seen as a string of characters which will be used to match/search in the table's meta-data. The meta-data field which the value will be compared with can be selected through the `--searchin` option, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254. `--searchin` can take three values: `name`, `unit`, `comment`. The matching will be done following this convention:

- If the value is enclosed in two slashes (for example, `-x/RA_/`, or `--coordcol=/RA_/`, see Section 6.1.4.1 [Crop options], page 394), then it is assumed to be a regular expression with the same convention as GNU AWK. GNU AWK has a very well written chapter (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gawk/manual/html_node/Regexp.html`) describing regular expressions, so we will not continue discussing them here. Regular expressions are a very powerful tool in matching text and useful in many contexts. We thus strongly encourage reviewing this chapter for greatly improving the quality of your work in many cases, not just for searching column meta-data in Gnuastro.
- When the string is not enclosed between '`/`'s, any column that exactly matches the given value in the given field will be selected.

Note that in both cases, you can ignore the case of alphabetic characters with the `--ignorecase` option, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254. Also, in both cases, multiple columns may be selected with one call to this function. In this case, the order of the selected columns (with one call) will be the same order as they appear in the table.

4.8 Tessellation

It is sometimes necessary to classify the elements in a dataset (for example, pixels in an image) into a grid of individual, non-overlapping tiles. For example, when background sky

gradients are present in an image, you can define a tile grid over the image. When the tile sizes are set properly, the background's variation over each tile will be negligible, allowing you to measure (and subtract) it. In other cases (for example, spatial domain convolution in Gnuastro, see Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479), it might simply be for speed of processing: each tile can be processed independently on a separate CPU thread. In the arts and mathematics, this process is formally known as tessellation (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tessellation`).

The size of the regular tiles (in units of data-elements, or pixels in an image) can be defined with the `--tilesize` option. It takes multiple numbers (separated by a comma) which will be the length along the respective dimension (in FORTRAN/FITS dimension order). Divisions are also acceptable, but must result in an integer. For example, `--tilesize=30,40` can be used for an image (a 2D dataset). The regular tile size along the first FITS axis (horizontal when viewed in SAO DS9) will be 30 pixels and along the second it will be 40 pixels. Ideally, `--tilesize` should be selected such that all tiles in the image have exactly the same size. In other words, that the dataset length in each dimension is divisible by the tile size in that dimension.

However, this is not always possible: the dataset can be any size and every pixel in it is valuable. In such cases, Gnuastro will look at the significance of the remainder length, if it is not significant (for example, one or two pixels), then it will just increase the size of the first tile in the respective dimension and allow the rest of the tiles to have the required size. When the remainder is significant (for example, one pixel less than the size along that dimension), the remainder will be added to one regular tile's size and the large tile will be cut in half and put in the two ends of the grid/tessellation. In this way, all the tiles in the central regions of the dataset will have the regular tile sizes and the tiles on the edge will be slightly larger/smaller depending on the remainder significance. The fraction which defines the remainder significance along all dimensions can be set through `--remainderfrac`.

The best tile size is directly related to the spatial properties of the property you want to study (for example, gradient on the image). In practice we assume that the gradient is not present over each tile. So if there is a strong gradient (for example, in long wavelength ground based images) or the image is of a crowded area where there is not too much blank area, you have to choose a smaller tile size. A larger mesh will give more pixels and so the scatter in the results will be less (better statistics).

For raw image processing, a single tessellation/grid is not sufficient. Raw images are the unprocessed outputs of the camera detectors. Modern detectors usually have multiple readout channels each with its own amplifier. For example, the Hubble Space Telescope Advanced Camera for Surveys (ACS) has four amplifiers over its full detector area dividing the square field of view to four smaller squares. Ground based image detectors are not exempt, for example, each CCD of Subaru Telescope's Hyper Suprime-Cam camera (which has 104 CCDs) has four amplifiers, but they have the same height of the CCD and divide the width by four parts.

The bias current on each amplifier is different, and initial bias subtraction is not perfect. So even after subtracting the measured bias current, you can usually still identify the boundaries of different amplifiers by eye. See Figure 11(a) in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa (2015) for an example. This results in the final reduced data to have non-uniform amplifier-shaped regions with higher or lower background flux values. Such systematic biases will then

propagate to all subsequent measurements we do on the data (for example, photometry and subsequent stellar mass and star formation rate measurements in the case of galaxies).

Therefore an accurate analysis requires a two layer tessellation: the top layer contains larger tiles, each covering one amplifier channel. For clarity we will call these larger tiles "channels". The number of channels along each dimension is defined through the `--numchannels`. Each channel is then covered by its own individual smaller tessellation (with tile sizes determined by the `--tilesize` option). This will allow independent analysis of two adjacent pixels from different channels if necessary. If the image is processed or the detector only has one amplifier, you can set the number of channels in both dimension to 1.

The final tessellation can be inspected on the image with the `--checktiles` option that is available to all programs which use tessellation for localized operations. When this option is called, a FITS file with a `_tiled.fits` suffix will be created along with the outputs, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. Each pixel in this image has the number of the tile that covers it. If the number of channels in any dimension are larger than unity, you will notice that the tile IDs are defined such that the first channels is covered first, then the second and so on. For the full list of processing-related common options (including tessellation options), please see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257.

4.9 Automatic output

All the programs in Gnuastro are designed such that specifying an output file or directory (based on the program context) is optional. When no output name is explicitly given (with `--output`, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254), the programs will automatically set an output name based on the input name(s) and what the program does. For example, when you are using ConvertType to save FITS image named `dataset.fits` to a JPEG image and do not specify a name for it, the JPEG output file will be name `dataset.jpg`. When the input is from the standard input (for example, a pipe, see Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266), and `--output` is not given, the output name will be the program's name (for example, `converttype.jpg`).

Another very important part of the automatic output generation is that all the directory information of the input file name is stripped off of it. This feature can be disabled with the `--keepinputdir` option, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254. It is the default because astronomical data are usually very large and organized specially with special file names. In some cases, the user might not have write permissions in those directories[21].

Let's assume that we are working on a report and want to process the FITS images from two projects (ABC and DEF), which are stored in the sub-directories named `ABCproject/` and `DEFproject/` of our top data directory (`/mnt/data`). The following shell commands show how one image from the former is first converted to a JPEG image through ConvertType and then the objects from an image in the latter project are detected using NoiseChisel. The text after the `#` sign are comments (not typed!).

```
$ pwd                                                  # Current location
/home/usrname/research/report
```

[21] In fact, even if the data is stored on your own computer, it is advised to only grant write permissions to the super user or root. This way, you will not accidentally delete or modify your valuable data!

```
$ ls                                              # List directory contents
ABC01.jpg
$ ls /mnt/data/ABCproject                                      # Archive 1
ABC01.fits ABC02.fits ABC03.fits
$ ls /mnt/data/DEFproject                                      # Archive 2
DEF01.fits DEF02.fits DEF03.fits
$ astconvertt /mnt/data/ABCproject/ABC02.fits --output=jpg     # Prog 1
$ ls
ABC01.jpg ABC02.jpg
$ astnoisechisel /mnt/data/DEFproject/DEF01.fits               # Prog 2
$ ls
ABC01.jpg ABC02.jpg DEF01_detected.fits
```

4.10 Output FITS files

The output of many of Gnuastro's programs are (or can be) FITS files. The FITS format has many useful features for storing scientific datasets (cubes, images and tables) along with a robust features for archivability. For more on this standard, please see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297.

As a community convention described in Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, the first extension of all FITS files produced by Gnuastro's programs only contains the meta-data that is intended for the file's extension(s). For a Gnuastro program, this generic meta-data (that is stored as FITS keyword records) is its configuration when it produced this dataset: file name(s) of input(s) and option names, values and comments. You can use the `--outfitsnoconfig` option to stop the programs from writing these keywords into the first extension of their output.

When the configuration is too trivial (only input filename, for example, the program Section 5.3 [Table], page 344) no meta-data is written in this extension. FITS keywords have the following limitations in regards to generic option names and values which are described below:

- If a keyword (option name) is longer than 8 characters, the first word in the record (80 character line) is `HIERARCH` which is followed by the keyword name.
- Values can be at most 75 characters, but for strings, this changes to 73 (because of the two extra `'` characters that are necessary). However, if the value is a file name, containing slash (`/`) characters to separate directories, Gnuastro will break the value into multiple keywords.
- Keyword names ignore case, therefore they are all in capital letters. Therefore, if you want to use Grep to inspect these keywords, use the `-i` option, like the example below.

```
$ astfits image_detected.fits -h0 | grep -i snquant
```

The keywords above are classified (separated by an empty line and title) as a group titled "ProgramName configuration". This meta-data extension also contains a final group of keywords to keep the basic date and version information of Gnuastro, its dependencies and the pipeline that is using Gnuastro (if it is under version control); they are listed below.

`DATE` The creation time of the FITS file. This date is written directly by CFITSIO and is in UT format.

While the date can be a good metadata in most scenarios, it does have a caveat: when everything else in your output is the same between multiple runs, the date will be different! If exact reproducibility is important for you, this can be annoying! To stop any Gnuastro program from writing the `DATE` keyword, you can use the `--outfitsnodate` (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

`DATEUTC` If the date in the `DATE` keyword is in UTC (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Coordinated_Universal_Time`), this keyword will have a value of 1; otherwise, it will have a value of 0. If `DATE` is not written, this is also ignored.

`COMMIT` Git's commit description from the running directory of Gnuastro's programs. If the running directory is not version controlled or `libgit2` is not installed (see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215) then this keyword will not be present. The printed value is equivalent to the output of the following command:

```
git describe --dirty --always
```

If the running directory contains non-committed work, then the stored value will have a '`-dirty`' suffix. This can be very helpful to let you know that the data is not ready to be shared with collaborators or submitted to a journal. You should only share results that are produced after all your work is committed (safely stored in the version controlled history and thus reproducible).

At first sight, version control appears to be mainly a tool for software developers. However progress in a scientific research is almost identical to progress in software development: first you have a rough idea that starts with handful of easy steps. But as the first results appear to be promising, you will have to extend, or generalize, it to make it more robust and work in all the situations your research covers, not just your first test samples. Slowly you will find wrong assumptions or bad implementations that need to be fixed ('bugs' in software development parlance). Finally, when you submit the research to your collaborators or a journal, many comments and suggestions will come in, and you have to address them.

Software developers have created version control systems precisely for this kind of activity. Each significant moment in the project's history is called a "commit", see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228. A snapshot of the project in each "commit" is safely stored away, so you can revert back to it at a later time, or check changes/progress. This way, you can be sure that your work is reproducible and track the progress and history. With version control, experimentation in the project's analysis is greatly facilitated, since you can easily revert back if a brainstorm test procedure fails.

One important feature of version control is that the research result (FITS image, table, report or paper) can be stamped with the unique commit information that produced it. This information will enable you to exactly reproduce that same result later, even if you have made changes/progress. For one example of a research paper's reproduction pipeline, please see the reproduction pipeline (`https://gitlab.com/makhlaghi/`

`NoiseChisel-paper`) of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) describing Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552.

In case you don't want the `COMMIT` keyword in the first extension of your output FITS file, you can use the `--outfitsnocommit` option (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

`CFITSIO` The version of CFITSIO used (see Section 3.1.1.2 [CFITSIO], page 213). This can be disabled with `--outfitsnoversions` (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

`WCSLIB` The version of WCSLIB used (see Section 3.1.1.3 [WCSLIB], page 214). Note that older versions of WCSLIB do not report the version internally. So this is only available if you are using more recent WCSLIB versions. This can be disabled with `--outfitsnoversions` (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

`GSL` The version of GNU Scientific Library that was used, see Section 3.1.1.1 [GNU Scientific Library], page 213. This can be disabled with `--outfitsnoversions` (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

`GNUASTRO` The version of Gnuastro used (see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11). This can be disabled with `--outfitsnoversions` (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

4.11 Numeric locale

If your system locale (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Locale_(computer_software)`) is not English, it may happen that the '.' is not used as the decimal separator of basic command-line tools for input or output. For example, in Spanish and some other languages the decimal separator (symbol used to separate the integer and fractional part of a number), is a comma. Therefore in such systems, some programs may print 0.5 as as '`0,5`' (instead of '`0.5`'). This mainly happens in some core operating system tools like `awk` or `seq` depend on the locale. This can cause problems for other programs (like those in Gnuastro that expect a '`.`' as the decimal separator).

To see the effect, please try the commands below. The first one will print 0.5 in your default locale's format. The second set will use the Spanish locale for printing numbers (which will put a comma between the 0 and the 5). The third will use the English (US) locale for printing numbers (which will put a point between the 0 and the 5).

```
$ seq 0.5 1

$ export LC_NUMERIC=es_ES.utf8
$ seq 0.5 1

$ export LC_NUMERIC=en_US.utf8
$ seq 0.5 1
```

With the simple command below, you can check your current locale environment variables for specifying the formats of various things like date, time, monetary, telephone, numbers, etc. You can change any of these, by simply giving different values to the respective variable

like above. For a more complete explanation on each variable, see `https://www.baeldung.com/linux/locale-environment-variables`.

```
$ locale
```

To avoid these kinds of locale-specific problems (for example, another program not being able to read '`0,5`' as half of unity), you can change the locale by giving the value of `C` to the `LC_NUMERIC` environment variable (or the lower-level/generic `LC_ALL`). You will notice that `C` is not a human-language and country identifier like `en_US`, it is the programming locale, which is well recognized by programmers in all countries and is available on all Unix-like operating systems (others may not be pre-defined and may need installation). You can set the `LC_NUMERIC` only for a single command (the first one below: simply defining the variable in the same line), or all commands within the running session (the second command below, or "exporting" it to all subsequent commands):

```
## Change the numeric locale, only for this 'seq' command.
$ LC_NUMERIC=C seq 0.5 1

## Change the locale to the standard, for all commands after it.
$ export LC_NUMERIC=C
```

If you want to change it generally for all future sessions, you can put the second command in your shell's startup file. For more on startup files, please see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

5 Data containers

The most low-level and basic property of a dataset is how it is stored. To process, archive and transmit the data, you need a container to store it first. From the start of the computer age, different formats have been defined to store data, optimized for particular applications. One format/container can never be useful for all applications: the storage defines the application and vice-versa. In astronomy, the Flexible Image Transport System (FITS) standard has become the most common format of data storage and transmission. It has many useful features, for example, multiple sub-containers (also known as extensions or header data units, HDUs) within one file, or support for tables as well as images. Each HDU can store an independent dataset and its corresponding meta-data. Therefore, Gnuastro has one program (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297) specifically designed to manipulate FITS HDUs and the meta-data (header keywords) in each HDU.

Your astronomical research does not just involve data analysis (where the FITS format is very useful). For example, you want to demonstrate your raw and processed FITS images or spectra as figures within slides, reports, or papers. The FITS format is not defined for such applications. Thus, Gnuastro also comes with the ConvertType program (see Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316) which can be used to convert a FITS image to and from (where possible) other formats like plain text and JPEG (which allow two way conversion), along with EPS and PDF (which can only be created from FITS, not the other way round).

Finally, the FITS format is not just for images, it can also store tables. Binary tables in particular can be very efficient in storing catalogs that have more than a few tens of columns and rows. However, unlike images (where all elements/pixels have one data type), tables contain multiple columns and each column can have different properties: independent data types (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) and meta-data. In practice, each column can be viewed as a separate container that is grouped with others in the table. The only shared property of the columns in a table is thus the number of elements they contain. To allow easy inspection/manipulation of table columns, Gnuastro has the Table program (see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344). It can be used to select certain table columns in a FITS table and see them as a human readable output on the command-line, or to save them into another plain text or FITS table.

5.1 Fits

The "Flexible Image Transport System", or FITS, is by far the most common data container format in astronomy and in constant use since the 1970s. Archiving (future usage, simplicity) has been one of the primary design principles of this format. In the last few decades it has proved so useful and robust that the Vatican Library has also chosen FITS for its "long-term digital preservation" project[1].

Although the full name of the standard invokes the idea that it is only for images, it also contains complete and robust features for tables. It started off in the 1970s and was formally published as a standard in 1981, it was adopted by the International Astronomical Union (IAU) in 1982 and an IAU working group to maintain its future was defined in 1988. The FITS 2.0 and 3.0 standards were approved in 2000 and 2008 respectively, and the 4.0 draft has also been released recently, please see the FITS standard document web page (`https://`

[1] `https://www.vaticanlibrary.va/home.php?pag=progettodigit`

`fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/fits_standard.html`) for the full text of all versions. Also see the FITS 3.0 standard paper (`https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361/201015362`) for a nice introduction and history along with the full standard.

Many common image formats, for example, a JPEG, only have one image/dataset per file, however one great advantage of the FITS standard is that it allows you to keep multiple datasets (images or tables along with their separate meta-data) in one file. In the FITS standard, each data + metadata is known as an extension, or more formally a header data unit or HDU. The HDUs in a file can be completely independent: you can have multiple images of different dimensions/sizes or tables as separate extensions in one file. However, while the standard does not impose any constraints on the relation between the datasets, it is strongly encouraged to group data that are contextually related with each other in one file. For example, an image and the table/catalog of objects and their measured properties in that image. Other examples can be images of one patch of sky in different colors (filters), or one raw telescope image along with its calibration data (tables or images).

As discussed above, the extensions in a FITS file can be completely independent. To keep some information (meta-data) about the group of extensions in the FITS file, the community has adopted the following convention: put no data in the first extension, so it is just meta-data. This extension can thus be used to store Meta-data regarding the whole file (grouping of extensions). Subsequent extensions may contain data along with their own separate meta-data. All of Gnuastro's programs also follow this convention: the main output dataset(s) are placed in the second (or later) extension(s). The first extension contains no data the program's configuration (input file name, along with all its option values) are stored as its meta-data, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

The meta-data contain information about the data, for example, which region of the sky an image corresponds to, the units of the data, what telescope, camera, and filter the data were taken with, it observation date, or the software that produced it and its configuration. Without the meta-data, the raw dataset is practically just a collection of numbers and really hard to understand, or connect with the real world (other datasets). It is thus strongly encouraged to supplement your data (at any level of processing) with as much meta-data about your processing/science as possible.

The meta-data of a FITS file is in ASCII format, which can be easily viewed or edited with a text editor or on the command-line. Each meta-data element (known as a keyword generally) is composed of a name, value, units and comments (the last two are optional). For example, below you can see three FITS meta-data keywords for specifying the world coordinate system (WCS, or its location in the sky) of a dataset:

```
LATPOLE =           -27.805089 / [deg] Native latitude of celestial pole
RADESYS = 'FK5'                / Equatorial coordinate system
EQUINOX =               2000.0 / [yr] Equinox of equatorial coordinates
```

However, there are some limitations which discourage viewing/editing the keywords with text editors. For example, there is a fixed length of 80 characters for each keyword (its name, value, units and comments) and there are no new-line characters, so on a text editor all the keywords are seen in one line. Also, the meta-data keywords are immediately followed by the data which are commonly in binary format and will show up as strange looking characters on a text editor, and significantly slowing down the processor.

Gnuastro's Fits program was designed to allow easy manipulation of FITS extensions and meta-data keywords on the command-line while conforming fully with the FITS standard. For example, you can copy or cut (copy and remove) HDUs/extensions from one FITS file to another, or completely delete them. It also has features to delete, add, or edit meta-data keywords within one HDU.

5.1.1 Invoking Fits

Fits can print or manipulate the FITS file HDUs (extensions), meta-data keywords in a given HDU. The executable name is `astfits` with the following general template

```
$ astfits [OPTION...] ASTRdata
```

One line examples:

```
## View general information about every extension:
$ astfits image.fits

## Print the header keywords in the second HDU (counting from 0):
$ astfits image.fits -h1

## Only print header keywords that contain `NAXIS':
$ astfits image.fits -h1 | grep NAXIS

## Only print the WCS standard PC matrix elements
$ astfits image.fits -h1 | grep 'PC._.'

## Copy a HDU from input.fits to out.fits:
$ astfits input.fits --copy=hdu-name --output=out.fits

## Update the OLDKEY keyword value to 153.034:
$ astfits --update=OLDKEY,153.034,"Old keyword comment"

## Delete one COMMENT keyword and add a new one:
$ astfits --delete=COMMENT --comment="Anything you like ;-)."

## Write two new keywords with different values and comments:
$ astfits --write=MYKEY1,20.00,"An example keyword" --write=MYKEY2,fd

## Inspect individual pixel area taken based on its WCS (in degree^2).
## Then convert the area to arcsec^2 with the Arithmetic program.
$ astfits input.fits --pixelareaonwcs -o pixarea.fits
$ astarithmetic pixarea.fits 3600 3600 x x -o pixarea_arcsec2.fits
```

When no action is requested (and only a file name is given), Fits will print a list of information about the extension(s) in the file. This information includes the HDU number, HDU name (`EXTNAME` keyword), type of data (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, and the number of data elements it contains (size along each dimension for images and table rows and columns). Optionally, a comment column is printed for special situations (like a 2D HEALPix grid that is usually stored as a 1D dataset/table). You can use this to get a

general idea of the contents of the FITS file and what HDU to use for further processing, either with the Fits program or any other Gnuastro program.

Here is one example of information about a FITS file with four extensions: the first extension has no data, it is a purely meta-data HDU (commonly used to keep meta-data about the whole file, or grouping of extensions, see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297). The second extension is an image with name `IMAGE` and single precision floating point type (`float32`, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), it has 4287 pixels along its first (horizontal) axis and 4286 pixels along its second (vertical) axis. The third extension is also an image with name `MASK`. It is in 2-byte integer format (`int16`) which is commonly used to keep information about pixels (for example, to identify which ones were saturated, or which ones had cosmic rays and so on), note how it has the same size as the `IMAGE` extension. The third extension is a binary table called `CATALOG` which has 12371 rows and 5 columns (it probably contains information about the sources in the image).

```
GNU Astronomy Utilities X.X
Run on Day Month DD HH:MM:SS YYYY
-----
HDU (extension) information: `image.fits'.
 Column 1: Index (counting from 0).
 Column 2: Name (`EXTNAME' in FITS standard).
 Column 3: Image data type or `table' format (ASCII or binary).
 Column 4: Size of data in HDU.
-----
0      n/a             uint8           0
1      IMAGE           float32         4287x4286
2      MASK            int16           4287x4286
3      CATALOG         table_binary    12371x5
```

If a specific HDU is identified on the command-line with the `--hdu` (or `-h` option) and no operation requested, then the full list of header keywords in that HDU will be printed (as if the `--printallkeys` was called, see below). It is important to remember that this only occurs when `--hdu` is given on the command-line. The `--hdu` value given in a configuration file will only be used when a specific operation on keywords requested. Therefore as described in the paragraphs above, when no explicit call to the `--hdu` option is made on the command-line and no operation is requested (on the command-line or configuration files), the basic information of each HDU/extension is printed.

The operating mode and input/output options to Fits are similar to the other programs and fully described in Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253. The options particular to Fits can be divided into three groups: 1) those related to modifying HDUs or extensions (see Section 5.1.1.1 [HDU information and manipulation], page 301), and 2) those related to viewing/modifying meta-data keywords (see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304). 3) those related to creating meta-images where each pixel shows values for a specific property of the image (see Section 5.1.1.3 [Pixel information images], page 315). These three classes of options cannot be called together in one run: you can either work on the extensions, meta-data keywords in any instance of Fits, or create meta-images where each pixel shows a particular information about the image itself.

5.1.1.1 HDU information and manipulation

Each FITS file header data unit, or HDU (also known as an extension) is an independent dataset (data + meta-data). Multiple HDUs can be stored in one FITS file, see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297. The general HDU-related options to the Fits program are listed below as two general classes: the first group below focus on HDU information while the latter focus on manipulating (moving or deleting) the HDUs.

The options below print information about the given HDU on the command-line. Thus they cannot be called together in one command (each has its own independent output).

`-n`
`--numhdus`
: Print the number of extensions/HDUs in the given file. Note that this option must be called alone and will only print a single number. It is thus useful in scripts, for example, when you need to do check the number of extensions in a FITS file.

  For a complete list of basic meta-data on the extensions in a FITS file, do not use any of the options in this section or in Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304. For more, see Section 5.1.1 [Invoking Fits], page 299.

`--hastablehdu`
: Print `1` (on standard output) if at least one table HDU (ASCII or binary) exists in the FITS file. Otherwise (when no table HDU exists in the file), print `0`.

`--listtablehdus`
: Print the names or numbers (when a name does not exist, counting from zero) of HDUs that contain a table (ASCII or Binary) on standard output, one per line. Otherwise (when no table HDU exists in the file) nothing will be printed.

`--hasimagehdu`
: Print `1` (on standard output) if at least one image HDU exists in the FITS file. Otherwise (when no image HDU exists in the file), print `0`.

  In the FITS standard, any array with any dimensions is called an "image", therefore this option includes 1, 3 and 4 dimensional arrays too. However, an image HDU with zero dimensions (which is usually the first extension and only contains metadata) is not counted here.

`--listimagehdus`
: Print the names or numbers (when a name does not exist, counting from zero) of HDUs that contain an image on standard output, one per line. Otherwise (when no image HDU exists in the file) nothing will be printed.

  In the FITS standard, any array with any dimensions is called an "image", therefore this option includes 1, 3 and 4 dimensional arrays too. However, an image HDU with zero dimensions (which is usually the first extension and only contains metadata) is not counted here.

`--listallhdus`
: Print the names or numbers (when a name does not exist, counting from zero) of all HDUs within the input file on the standard output, one per line.

`--pixelscale`

Print the HDU's pixel-scale (change in world coordinate for one pixel along each dimension) and pixel area or voxel volume. Without the `--quiet` option, the output of `--pixelscale` has multiple lines and explanations, thus being more human-friendly. It prints the file/HDU name, number of dimensions, and the units along with the actual pixel scales. Also, when any of the units are in degrees, the pixel scales and area/volume are also printed in units of arcseconds. For 3D datasets, the pixel area (on each 2D slice of the 3D cube) is printed as well as the voxel volume. If you only want the pixel area of a 2D image in units of arcsec^2 you can use `--pixelareaarcsec2` described below.

However, in scripts (that are to be run automatically), this human-friendly format is annoying, so when called with the `--quiet` option, only the pixel-scale value(s) along each dimension is(are) printed in one line. These numbers are followed by the pixel area (in the raw WCS units). For 3D datasets, this will be area on each 2D slice. Finally, for 3D datasets, a final number (the voxel volume) is printed. As a summary, in `--quiet` mode, for 2D datasets three numbers are printed and for 3D datasets, 5 numbers are printed. If the dataset has more than 3 dimensions, only the pixel-scale values are printed (no area or volume will be printed).

`--pixelareaarcsec2`

Print the HDU's pixel area in units of arcsec^2. This option only works on 2D images, that have WCS coordinates in units of degrees. For lower-level information about the pixel scale in each dimension, see `--pixelscale` (described above).

`--skycoverage`

Print the rectangular area (or 3D cube) covered by the given image/data-cube HDU over the Sky in the WCS units. The covered area is reported in two ways: 1) the center and full width in each dimension, 2) the minimum and maximum sky coordinates in each dimension. This is option is thus useful when you want to get a general feeling of a new image/dataset, or prepare the inputs to query external databases in the region of the image (for example, with Section 5.4 [Query], page 378).

If run without the `--quiet` option, the values are given with a human-friendly description. For example, here is the output of this option on an image taken near the star Castor:

```
$ astfits castor.fits --skycoverage
Input file: castor.fits (hdu: 1)

Sky coverage by center and (full) width:
  Center: 113.9149075    31.93759664
  Width:  2.41762045     2.67945253

Sky coverage by range along dimensions:
  RA       112.7235592    115.1411797
  DEC      30.59262123    33.27207376
```

With the `--quiet` option, the values are more machine-friendly (easy to parse). It has two lines, where the first line contains the center/width values and the second line shows the coordinate ranges in each dimension.

```
$ astfits castor.fits --skycoverage --quiet
113.9149075     31.93759664     2.41762045      2.67945253
112.7235592     115.1411797     30.59262123     33.27207376
```

Note that this is a simple rectangle (cube in 3D) definition, so if the image is rotated in relation to the celestial coordinates a general polygon is necessary to exactly describe the coverage. Hence when there is rotation, the reported area will be larger than the actual area containing data, you can visually see the area with the `--pixelareaonwcs` option of Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297.

Currently this option only supports images that are less than 180 degrees in width (which is usually the case!). This requirement has been necessary to account for images that cross the RA=0 hour circle on the sky. Please get in touch with us at `mailto:bug-gnuastro@gnu.org` if you have an image that is larger than 180 degrees so we try to find a solution based on need.

`--datasum`

Calculate and print the given HDU's "datasum" to stdout. The given HDU is specified with the `--hdu` (or `-h`) option. This number is calculated by parsing all the bytes of the given HDU's data records (excluding keywords). This option ignores any possibly existing `DATASUM` keyword in the HDU. For more on `DATASUM` in the FITS standard, see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304, (under the `checksum` component of `--write`).

You can use this option to confirm that the data in two different HDUs (possibly with different keywords) is identical. Its advantage over `--write=datasum` (which writes the `DATASUM` keyword into the given HDU) is that it does not require write permissions.

`--datasum-encoded`

Similar to `--datasum`, except that the output will be an encoded string of numbers and small-caps alphabetic characters. This is the same encoding algorithm that is used for the `CHECKSUM` keyword, but applied to the value of the `DATASUM` result. In some scenarios, this string can be more useful than the raw integer.

The following options manipulate (move/delete) the HDUs in one FITS file or to another FITS file. These options may be called multiple times in one run. If so, the extensions will be copied from the input FITS file to the output FITS file in the given order (on the command-line and also in configuration files, see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271). If the separate classes are called together in one run of Fits, then first `--copy` is run (on all specified HDUs), followed by `--cut` (again on all specified HDUs), and then `--remove` (on all specified HDUs).

The `--copy` and `--cut` options need an output FITS file (specified with the `--output` option). If the output file exists, then the specified HDU will be copied following the last extension of the output file (the existing HDUs in it will be untouched). Thus, after Fits finishes, the copied HDU will be the last HDU of the output file. If no output file name is given, then automatic output will be used to store the HDUs given to this option (see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292).

`-C STR`
`--copy=STR`
Copy the specified extension into the output file, see explanations above.

`-k STR`
`--cut=STR`
Cut (copy to output, remove from input) the specified extension into the output file, see explanations above.

`-R STR`
`--remove=STR`
Remove the specified HDU from the input file.

The first (zero-th) HDU cannot be removed with this option. Consider using `--copy` or `--cut` in combination with `primaryimghdu` to not have an empty zero-th HDU. From CFITSIO: "In the case of deleting the primary array (the first HDU in the file) then [it] will be replaced by a null primary array containing the minimum set of required keywords and no data.". So in practice, any existing data (array) and meta-data in the first extension will be removed, but the number of extensions in the file will not change. This is because of the unique position the first FITS extension has in the FITS standard (for example, it cannot be used to store tables).

`--primaryimghdu`
Copy or cut an image HDU to the zero-th HDU/extension a file that does not yet exist. This option is thus irrelevant if the output file already exists or the copied/cut extension is a FITS table. For example, with the commands below, first we make sure that `out.fits` does not exist, then we copy the first extension of `in.fits` to the zero-th extension of `out.fits`.

```
$ rm -f out.fits
$ astfits in.fits --copy=1 --primaryimghdu --output=out.fits
```

If we had not used `--primaryimghdu`, then the zero-th extension of `out.fits` would have no data, and its second extension would host the copied image (just like any other output of Gnuastro).

5.1.1.2 Keyword inspection and manipulation

The meta-data in each header data unit, or HDU (also known as extension, see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297) is stored as "keyword"s. Each keyword consists of a name, value, unit, and comments. The Fits program (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297) options related to viewing and manipulating keywords in a FITS HDU are described below.

First, let's review the `--keyvalue` option which should be called separately from the rest of the options described in this section. Also, unlike the rest of the options in this section, with `--keyvalue`, you can give more than one input file.

`-l STR[,STR[,...]`
`--keyvalue=STR[,STR[,...]`
Only print the value of the requested keyword(s): the `STR`s. `--keyvalue` can be called multiple times, and each call can contain multiple comma-separated keywords. If more than one file is given, this option uses the same HDU/extension

for all of them (value to `--hdu`). For example, you can get the number of dimensions of the three FITS files in the running directory, as well as the length along each dimension, with this command:

```
$ astfits *.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS,NAXIS1 --keyvalue=NAXIS2
image-a.fits 2      774    672
image-b.fits 2      774    672
image-c.fits 2      387    336
```

If only one input is given, and the `--quiet` option is activated, the file name is not printed on the first column, only the values of the requested keywords.

```
$ astfits image-a.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS,NAXIS1 \
          --keyvalue=NAXIS2 --quiet
2      774    672
```

Argument list too long: if the list of input files are too long, the shell is going to complain with the `Argument list too long` error! To avoid this problem, you can put the list of files in a plain-text file and give that plain-text file to the Fits program through the `--arguments` option discussed below.

The output is internally stored (and finally printed) as a table (with one column per keyword). Therefore just like the Table program, you can use `--colinfoinstdout` to print the metadata like the example below (also see Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362). The keyword metadata (comments and units) are extracted from the comments and units of the keyword in the input files (first file that has a comment or unit). Hence if the keyword does not have units or comments in any of the input files, they will be empty. For more on Gnuastro's plain-text metadata format, see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

```
$ astfits *.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS,NAXIS1,NAXIS2 \
          --colinfoinstdout
# Column 1: FILENAME [name,str10,] Name of input file.
# Column 2: NAXIS    [    ,u8   ,] number of data axes
# Column 3: NAXIS1   [    ,u16  ,] length of data axis 1
# Column 4: NAXIS2   [    ,u16  ,] length of data axis 2
image-a.fits 2      774    672
image-b.fits 2      774    672
image-c.fits 2      387    336
```

Another advantage of a table output is that you can directly write the table to a file. For example, if you add `--output=fileinfo.fits`, the information above will be printed into a FITS table. You can also pipe it into Section 5.3 [Table], page 344, to select files based on certain properties, to sort them based on another property, or any other operation that can be done with Table (including Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350). For example, with the command below, you can select all the files that have a size larger than 500 pixels in both dimensions.

```
$ astfits *.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS,NAXIS1,NAXIS2 \
```

```
                --colinfoinstdout \
                | asttable --range=NAXIS1,500,inf \
                           --range=NAXIS2,500,inf -cFILENAME
    image-a.fits
    image-b.fits
```

Note that `--colinfoinstdout` is necessary to use column names when piping to other programs (like `asttable` above). Also, with the `-cFILENAME` option, we are asking Table to only print the final file names (we do not need the sizes any more).

The commands with multiple files above used `*.fits`, which is only useful when all your FITS files are in the same directory. However, in many cases, your FITS files will be scattered in multiple sub-directories of a certain top-level directory, or you may only want those with more particular file name patterns. A more powerful way to list the input files to `--keyvalue` is to use the `find` program in Unix-like operating systems. For example, with the command below you can search all the FITS files in all the sub-directories of `/TOP/DIR`.

```
astfits $(find /TOP/DIR/ -name "*.fits") --keyvalue=NAXIS2
```

`--arguments=STR`
: A plain-text file containing the list of input files that will be used in `--keyvalue`. Each word (group of characters separated by SPACE or new-line) is assumed to be the name of the separate input file. This option is only relevant when no input files are given as arguments on the command-line: if any arguments are given, this option is ignored.

  This is necessary when the list of input files are very long; causing the shell to abort with an `Argument list too long` error. In such cases, you can put the list into a plain-text file and use this option like below:

```
$ ls $(path)/*.fits > list.txt
$ astfits --arguments=list.txt --keyvalue=NAXIS1
```

`-O`
`--colinfoinstdout`
: Print column information (or metadata) above the column values when writing keyword values to standard output with `--keyvalue`. You can read this option as column-information-in-standard-output.

Below we will discuss the options that can be used to manipulate keywords. To see the full list of keywords in a FITS HDU, you can use the `--printallkeys` option. If any of the keyword modification options below are requested (for example, `--update`), the headers of the input file/HDU will be changed first, then printed. Keyword modification is done within the input file. Therefore, if you want to keep the original FITS file or HDU intact, it is easiest to create a copy of the file/HDU first and then run Fits on that (for copying a HDU to another file, see Section 5.1.1.1 [HDU information and manipulation], page 301. In the FITS standard, keywords are always uppercase. So case does not matter in the input or output keyword names you specify.

`CHECKSUM` **automatically updated, when present:** the keyword modification options will change the contents of the HDU. Therefore, if a `CHECKSUM` is present in the HDU, after all the keyword modification options have been complete, Fits will also update `CHECKSUM` before closing the file.

Most of the options can accept multiple instances in one command. For example, you can add multiple keywords to delete by calling `--delete` multiple times, since repeated keywords are allowed, you can even delete the same keyword multiple times. The action of such options will start from the top most keyword.

The precedence of operations are described below. Note that while the order within each class of actions is preserved, the order of individual actions is not. So irrespective of what order you called `--delete` and `--update`. First, all the delete operations are going to take effect then the update operations.

1. `--delete`
2. `--rename`
3. `--update`
4. `--write`
5. `--asis`
6. `--history`
7. `--comment`
8. `--date`
9. `--printallkeys`
10. `--verify`
11. `--copykeys`

All possible syntax errors will be reported before the keywords are actually written. FITS errors during any of these actions will be reported, but Fits will not stop until all the operations are complete. If `--quitonerror` is called, then Fits will immediately stop upon the first error.

If you want to inspect only a certain set of header keywords, it is easiest to pipe the output of the Fits program to GNU Grep. Grep is a very powerful and advanced tool to search strings which is precisely made for such situations. for example, if you only want to check the size of an image FITS HDU, you can run:

```
$ astfits input.fits | grep NAXIS
```

FITS STANDARD KEYWORDS: Some header keywords are necessary for later operations on a FITS file, for example, BITPIX or NAXIS, see the FITS standard for their full list. If you modify (for example, remove or rename) such keywords, the FITS file extension might not be usable any more. Also be careful for the world coordinate system keywords, if you modify or change their values, any future world coordinate system (like RA and Dec) measurements on the image will also change.

The keyword related options to the Fits program are fully described below.

`-d STR`
`--delete=STR`
: Delete one instance of the `STR` keyword from the FITS header. Multiple instances of `--delete` can be given (possibly even for the same keyword, when its repeated in the meta-data). All keywords given will be removed from the headers in the same given order. If the keyword does not exist, Fits will give a warning and return with a non-zero value, but will not stop. To stop as soon as an error occurs, run with `--quitonerror`.

`-r STR,STR`
`--rename=STR,STR`
: Rename a keyword to a new value (for example, `--rename=OLDNAME,NEWNAME`. `STR` contains both the existing and new names, which should be separated by either a comma (`,`) or a space character. Note that if you use a space character, you have to put the value to this option within double quotation marks (`"`) so the space character is not interpreted as an option separator. Multiple instances of `--rename` can be given in one command. The keywords will be renamed in the specified order. If the keyword does not exist, Fits will give a warning and return with a non-zero value, but will not stop. To stop as soon as an error occurs, run with `--quitonerror`.

`-u STR`
`--update=STR`
: Update a keyword, its value, its comments and its units in the format described below. If there are multiple instances of the keyword in the header, they will be changed from top to bottom (with multiple `--update` options).

  The format of the values to this option can best be specified with an example:

  ```
  --update=KEYWORD,value,"comments for this keyword",unit
  ```

  If there is a writing error, Fits will give a warning and return with a non-zero value, but will not stop. To stop as soon as an error occurs, run with `--quitonerror`.

  The value can be any numerical or string value[2]. Other than the `KEYWORD`, all the other values are optional. To leave a given token empty, follow the preceding comma (`,`) immediately with the next. If any space character is present around the commas, it will be considered part of the respective token. So if more than one token has space characters within it, the safest method to specify a value to this option is to put double quotation marks around each individual token that needs it. Note that without double quotation marks, space characters will be seen as option separators and can lead to undefined behavior.

[2] Some tricky situations arise with values like '`87095e5`', if this was intended to be a number it will be kept in the header as `8709500000` and there is no problem. But this can also be a shortened Git commit hash. In the latter case, it should be treated as a string and stored as it is written. Commit hashes are very important in keeping the history of a file during your research and such values might arise without you noticing them in your reproduction pipeline. One solution is to use `git describe` instead of the short hash alone. A less recommended solution is to add a space after the commit hash and Fits will write the value as '`87095e5 `' in the header. If you later compare the strings on the shell, the space character will be ignored by the shell in the latter solution and there will be no problem.

`-w STR`
`--write=STR`
Write a keyword to the header. For the possible value input formats, comments and units for the keyword, see the `--update` option above. The special names (first string) below will cause a special behavior:

`/` Write a "title" to the list of keywords. A title consists of one blank line and another which is blank for several spaces and starts with a slash (`/`). The second string given to this option is the "title" or string printed after the slash. For example, with the command below you can add a "title" of 'My keywords' after the existing keywords and add the subsequent `K1` and `K2` keywords under it (note that keyword names are not case sensitive).

```
$ astfits test.fits -h1 --write=/,"My keywords" \
          --write=k1,1.23,"My first keyword"    \
          --write=k2,4.56,"My second keyword"
$ astfits test.fits -h1
[[[ ... truncated ... ]]]

                        / My keywords
K1      =                   1.23 / My first keyword
K2      =                   4.56 / My second keyword
END
```

Adding a "title" before each contextually separate group of header keywords greatly helps in readability and visual inspection of the keywords. So generally, when you want to add new FITS keywords, it is good practice to also add a title before them.

The reason you need to use `/` as the keyword name for setting a title is that `/` is the first non-white character.

The title(s) is(are) written into the FITS with the same order that `--write` is called. Therefore in one run of the Fits program, you can specify many different titles (with their own keywords under them). For example, the command below that builds on the previous example and adds another group of keywords named `A1` and `A2`.

```
$ astfits test.fits -h1 --write=/,"My keywords"   \
          --write=k1,1.23,"My first keyword"      \
          --write=k2,4.56,"My second keyword"     \
          --write=/,"My second group of keywords" \
          --write=a1,7.89,"First keyword"         \
          --write=a2,0.12,"Second keyword"
```

`checksum` When nothing is given afterwards, the header integrity keywords `DATASUM` and `CHECKSUM` will be calculated and written/updated. The calculation and writing is done fully by CFITSIO, therefore

they comply with the FITS standard 4.0[3] that defines these keywords (its Appendix J).

If a value is given (e.g., `--write=checksum,MyOwnCheckSum`), then CFITSIO will not be called to calculate these two keywords and the value (as well as possible comment and unit) will be written just like any other keyword. This is generally not recommended since `CHECKSUM` is a reserved FITS standard keyword. If you want to calculate the checksum with another hashing standard manually and write it into the header, it is recommended to use another keyword name.

In the FITS standard, `CHECKSUM` depends on the HDU's data *and* header keywords, it will therefore not be valid if you make any further changes to the header after writing the `CHECKSUM` keyword. This includes any further keyword modification options in the same call to the Fits program. However, `DATASUM` only depends on the data section of the HDU/extension, so it is not changed when you add, remove or update the header keywords. Therefore, it is recommended to write these keywords as the last keywords that are written/modified in the extension. You can use the `--verify` option (described below) to verify the values of these two keywords.

`datasum` Similar to `checksum`, but only write the `DATASUM` keyword (that does not depend on the header keywords, only the data).

`-a STR`
`--asis=STR`

Write the given `STR` *exactly* as it is, into the given FITS file header with no modifications. If the contents of `STR` does not conform to the FITS standard for keywords, then it may (most probably: it will!) corrupt your file and you may not be able to open it any more. So please be **very careful** with this option (its your responsibility to make sure that the string conforms with the FITS standard for keywords).

If you want to define the keyword from scratch, it is best to use the `--write` option (see below) and let CFITSIO worry about complying with the FITS standard. Also, you want to copy keywords from one FITS file to another, you can use `--copykeys` that is described below. Through these high-level instances, you don't have to worry about low-level issues.

One common usage of `--asis` occurs when you are given the contents of a FITS header (many keywords) as a plain-text file (so the format of each keyword line conforms with the FITS standard, just the file is plain-text, and you have one keyword per line when you open it in a plain-text editor). In that case, Gnuastro's Fits program won't be able to parse it (it doesn't conform to the FITS standard, which doesn't have a new-line character!). With the command below, you can insert those headers in `headers.txt` into `img.fits` (its HDU number 1, the default; you can change the HDU to modify with `--hdu`).

```
$ cat headers.txt \
```

[3] `https://fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/standard40/fits_standard40aa-le.pdf`

```
| while read line; do \
        astfits img.fits --asis="$line"; \
  done
```

Don't forget a title: Since the newly added headers in the example above weren't originally in the file, they are probably some form of high-level metadata. The raw example above will just append the new keywords after the last one. Making it hard for human readability (its not clear what this new group of keywords signify, where they start, and where this group of keywords end). To help the human readability of the header, add a title for this group of keywords before writing them. To do that, run the following command before the `cat ...` command above (replace `Imported keys` with any title that best describes this group of new keywords based on their context):

```
$ astfits img.fits --write=/,"Imported keys"
```

`-H STR`
`--history STR`
Add a `HISTORY` keyword to the header with the given value. A new `HISTORY` keyword will be created for every instance of this option. If the string given to this option is longer than 70 characters, it will be separated into multiple keyword cards. If there is an error, Fits will give a warning and return with a non-zero value, but will not stop. To stop as soon as an error occurs, run with `--quitonerror`.

`-c STR`
`--comment STR`
Add a `COMMENT` keyword to the header with the given value. Similar to the explanation for `--history` above.

`-t`
`--date` Put the current date and time in the header. If the `DATE` keyword already exists in the header, it will be updated. If there is a writing error, Fits will give a warning and return with a non-zero value, but will not stop. To stop as soon as an error occurs, run with `--quitonerror`.

`-p`
`--printallkeys`
Print the full metadata (keywords, values, units and comments) in the specified FITS extension (HDU). If this option is called along with any of the other keyword editing commands, as described above, all other editing commands take precedence to this. Therefore, it will print the final keywords after all the editing has been done.

`--printkeynames`
Print only the keyword names of the specified FITS extension (HDU), one line per name. This option must be called alone.

`-v`
`--verify` Verify the `DATASUM` and `CHECKSUM` data integrity keywords of the FITS standard. See the description under the `checksum` (under `--write`, above) for more on these keywords.

This option will print `Verified` for both keywords if they can be verified. Otherwise, if they do not exist in the given HDU/extension, it will print `NOT-PRESENT`, and if they cannot be verified it will print `INCORRECT`. In the latter case (when the keyword values exist but cannot be verified), the Fits program will also return with a failure.

By default this function will also print a short description of the `DATASUM` AND `CHECKSUM` keywords. You can suppress this extra information with `--quiet` option.

`--copykeys=INT:INT/STR,STR[,STR]`
Copy the desired set of the input's keyword records, to the to the output (specified with the `--output` and `--outhdu` for the filename and HDU/extension respectively). The keywords to copy can be given either as a range (in the format of `INT:INT`, inclusive) or a list of keyword names as comma-separated strings (`STR,STR`), the list can have any number of keyword names. More details and examples of the two forms are given below:

Range The given string to this option must be two integers separated by a colon (`:`). The first integer must be positive (counting of the keyword records starts from 1). The second integer may be negative (zero is not acceptable) or an integer larger than the first.

A negative second integer means counting from the end. So `-1` is the last copy-able keyword (not including the `END` keyword).

To see the header keywords of the input with a number before them, you can pipe the output of the Fits program (when it prints all the keywords in an extension) into the `cat` program like below:

```
$ astfits input.fits -h1 | cat -n
```

List of names
The given string to this option must be a comma separated list of keyword names. For example, see the command below:

```
$ astfits input.fits -h1 --copykeys=KEY1,KEY2 \
          --output=output.fits --outhdu=1
```

Please consider the notes below when copying keywords with names:

- If the number of characters in the name is more than 8, CFITSIO will place a `HIERARCH` before it. In this case simply give the name and do not give the `HIERARCH` (which is a constant and not considered part of the keyword name).
- If your keyword name is composed only of digits, do not give it as the first name given to `--copykeys`. Otherwise, it will be confused with the range format above. You can safely give

an only-digit keyword name as the second, or third requested keywords.

- If the keyword is repeated more than once in the header, currently only the first instance will be copied. In other words, even if you call `--copykeys` multiple times with the same keyword name, its first instance will be copied. If you need to copy multiple instances of the same keyword, please get in touch with us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`.

`--outhdu` The HDU/extension to write the output keywords of `--copykeys`.

`-Q`
`--quitonerror`
Quit if any of the operations above are not successful. By default if an error occurs, Fits will warn the user of the faulty keyword and continue with the rest of actions.

`-s STR`
`--datetosec STR`
Interpret the value of the given keyword in the FITS date format (most generally: `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.ddd...`) and return the corresponding Unix epoch time (number of seconds that have passed since 00:00:00 Thursday, January 1st, 1970). The `Thh:mm:ss.ddd...` section (specifying the time of day), and also the `.ddd...` (specifying the fraction of a second) are optional. The value to this option must be the FITS keyword name that contains the requested date, for example, `--datetosec=DATE-OBS`.

This option can also interpret the older FITS date format (`DD/MM/YYThh:mm:ss.ddd...`) where only two characters are given to the year. In this case (following the GNU C Library), this option will make the following assumption: values 68 to 99 correspond to the years 1969 to 1999, and values 0 to 68 as the years 2000 to 2068.

This is a very useful option for operations on the FITS date values, for example, sorting FITS files by their dates, or finding the time difference between two FITS files. The advantage of working with the Unix epoch time is that you do not have to worry about calendar details (for example, the number of days in different months, or leap years).

`--wcscoordsys=STR`
Convert the coordinate system of the image's world coordinate system (WCS) to the given coordinate system (`STR`) and write it into the file given to `--output` (or an automatically named file if no `--output` has been given).

For example, with the command below, `img-eq.fits` will have an identical dataset (pixel values) as `image.fits`. However, the WCS coordinate system of `img-eq.fits` will be the equatorial coordinate system in the Julian calendar epoch 2000 (which is the most common epoch used today). Fits will automatically extract the current coordinate system of `image.fits` and as long as it is one of the recognized coordinate systems listed below, it will do the conversion.

```
$ astfits image.fits --wcscoordsys=eq-j2000 \
```

```
--output=img-eq.fits
```

The currently recognized coordinate systems are listed below (the most common one today is `eq-j2000`):

`eq-j2000` 2000.0 (Julian-year) equatorial coordinates. This is also known as FK5 (short for "Fundamental Katalog No 5" which was the source of the star coordinates used to define it).

This coordinate system is based on the motion of the Sun and has epochs when the mean equator was used (for example `eq-b1950` below). Furthermore, the definition of year is different: either the Besselian year in 1950.0, or the Julian year in 2000. For more on their difference and links for further reading about epochs in astronomy, please see the description in Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Epoch_(astronomy)`).

Because of these difficulties, the equatorial J2000.0 coordinate system has been deprecated by the IAU in favor of International Celestial Refernece System (ICRS) but is still used extensively. ICRS is defined based on extra-galactic quasars, so it does not depend on the dynamics of the solar system any more. But to enable historical continuity, ICRS has been defined to be equivalent to the equatorial J2000.0 within its accepted error bars of the latter (tens of milli-arcseconds). This justifies the reason that moving to ICRS has been relatively slow.

`eq-b1950` 1950.0 (Besselian-year) equatorial coordinates.

`ec-j2000` 2000.0 (Julian-year) ecliptic coordinates.

`ec-b1950` 1950.0 (Besselian-year) ecliptic coordinates.

`galactic` Galactic coordinates.

`supergalactic`
Supergalactic coordinates.

`--wcsdistortion=STR`

If the argument has a WCS distortion, the output (file given with the `--output` option) will have the distortion given to this option (for example, `SIP`, `TPV`). The output will be a new file (with a copy of the image, and the new WCS), so if it already exists, the file will be delete (unless you use the `--dontdelete` option, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

With this option, the Fits program will read the minimal set of keywords from the input HDU and the HDU data. It will then write them into the file given to the `--output` option but with a newly created set of WCS-related keywords corresponding to the desired distortion standard.

If no `--output` file is specified, an automatically generated output name will be used which is composed of the input's name but with the `-DDD.fits` suffix, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. Where `DDD` is the value given to this option (desired output distortion).

Note that all possible conversions between all standards are not yet supported. If the requested conversion is not supported, an informative error message will be printed. If this happens, please let us know and we will try our best to add the respective conversions.

For example, with the command below, you can be sure that if `in.fits` has a distortion in its WCS, the distortion of `out.fits` will be in the SIP standard.

```
$ astfits in.fits --wcsdistortion=SIP --output=out.fits
```

5.1.1.3 Pixel information images

In Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304, options like `--pixelscale` were introduced for information on the pixels from the keywords. But that only provides a single value for all the pixels! This will not be sufficient in some scenarios; for example due to distortion, different regions of the image will have different pixel areas when projected onto the sky.

The options in this section provide such "meta" images: images where the pixel values are information about the pixel itself. Such images can be useful in understanding the underlying pixel grid with the same tools that you study the astronomical objects within the image (like Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989). After all, nothing beats visual inspection with tools you are familiar with.

`--pixelareaonwcs`

Create a meta-image where each pixel's value shows its area in the WCS units (usually degrees squared). The output is therefore the same size as the input.

This option uses the same "pixel mixing" or "area resampling" concept that is described in Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505, (as part of the Warp program). Similar to Warp, its sampling can be tuned with the `--edgesampling` that is described below.

One scenario where this option becomes handy is when you are debugging aligned images using the Warp program (see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501). You may observe gradients after warping and can check if they caused by the distortion of the instrument or not. Such gradients can happen due to distortions because the detectors pixels are measuring photons from different areas on the sky (or the type of projection you're seeing). This effect is more pronounced in images covering larger portions of the sky, for instance, the TESS images[4].

Here is an example usage of the `--pixelareaonwcs` option:

```
# Check the area each 'input.fits' pixel takes in sky
$ astfits input.fits -h1 --pixelareaonwcs -o pixarea.fits

# Convert each pixel's area to arcsec^2
$ astarithmetic pixarea.fits 3600 3600 x x \
                --output=pixarea_arcsec2.fits

# Compare area relative to the actual reported pixel scale
$ pixarea=$(astfits input.fits --pixelscale -q \
```

[4] `https://www.nasa.gov/tess-transiting-exoplanet-survey-satellite`

```
                                | awk '{print $3}')
        $ astarithmetic pixarea.fits $pixarea / -o pixarea_rel.fits
```

`--edgesampling=INT`
: Extra sampling along the pixel edges for `--pixelareaonwcs`. The default value is 0, meaning that only the pixel vertices are used. Values greater than zero improve the accuracy in the expense of greater time and memory consumption. With that said, the default value of zero usually has a good precision unless the given image has extreme distortions that produce irregular pixel shapes. For more, see Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508).

> **Caution:** This option does not "oversample" the output image! Rather, it makes Warp use more points to calculate the *input* pixel area. To oversample the output image, set a reasonable `--cdelt` value.

5.2 ConvertType

The FITS format used in astronomy was defined mainly for archiving, transmission, and processing. In other situations, the data might be useful in other formats. For example, when you are writing a paper or report, or if you are making slides for a talk, you cannot use a FITS image. Other image formats should be used. In other cases you might want your pixel values in a table format as plain text for input to other programs that do not recognize FITS. ConvertType is created for such situations. The various types will increase with future updates and based on need.

The conversion is not only one way (from FITS to other formats), but two ways (except the EPS and PDF formats[5]). So you can also convert a JPEG image or text file into a FITS image. Basically, other than EPS/PDF, you can use any of the recognized formats as different color channel inputs to get any of the recognized outputs.

Before explaining the options and arguments (in Section 5.2.5 [Invoking ConvertType], page 332), we will start with a short discussion on the difference between raster and vector graphics in Section 5.2.1 [Raster and Vector graphics], page 316. In ConvertType, vector graphics are used to add markers over your originally rasterized data, producing high quality images, ready to be used in your exciting papers. We will continue with a description of the recognized files types in Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317, followed a short introduction to digital color in Section 5.2.3 [Color], page 320. A tutorial on how to add markers over an image is then given in Section 2.1.21 [Marking objects for publication], page 69, and we conclude with a LaTeX based solution to add coordinates over an image.

5.2.1 Raster and Vector graphics

Images that are produced by a hardware (for example, the camera in your phone, or the camera connected to a telescope) provide pixelated data. Such data are therefore stored in a Raster graphics (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Raster_graphics`) format which has discrete, independent, equally spaced data elements. For example, this is the format used FITS (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297), JPEG, TIFF, PNG and other image formats.

[5] Because EPS and PDF are vector, not raster/pixelated formats

On the other hand, when something is generated by the computer (for example, a diagram, plot or even adding a cross over a camera image to highlight something there), there is no "observation" or connection with nature! Everything is abstract! For such things, it is much easier to draw a mathematical line (with infinite resolution). Therefore, no matter how much you zoom-in, it will never get pixelated. This is the realm of Vector graphics (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vector_graphics`). If you open the Gnuastro manual in PDF format (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gnuastro/manual/gnuastro.pdf`) You can see such graphics in the Gnuastro manual, for example, in Section 6.3.2.2 [Circles and the complex plane], page 484, or Section 9.1.1 [Distance on a 2D curved space], page 677. The most common vector graphics format is PDF for document sharing or SVG for web-based applications.

The pixels of a raster image can be shown as vector-based squares with different shades, so vector graphics can generally also support raster graphics. This is very useful when you want to add some graphics over an image to help your discussion (for example a + over your object of interest). However, vector graphics is not optimized for rasterized data (which are usually also noisy!), and can either not display nicely, or result in much larger file volume (in bytes). Therefore, if it is not necessary to add any marks over a FITS image, for example, it may be better to store it in a rasterized format.

The distinction between the vector and raster graphics is also the primary theme behind Gnuastro's logo, see Section 1.5 [Logo of Gnuastro], page 10.

5.2.2 Recognized file formats

The various standards and the file name extensions recognized by ConvertType are listed below. For a review on the difference between Raster and Vector graphics, see Section 5.2.1 [Raster and Vector graphics], page 316. For a review on the concept of color and channels, see Section 5.2.3 [Color], page 320. Currently, except for the FITS format, Gnuastro uses the file name's suffix to identify the format, so if the file's name does not end with one of the suffixes mentioned below, it will not be recognized.

FITS or IMH

Astronomical data are commonly stored in the FITS format (or the older data IRAF `.imh` format), a list of file name suffixes which indicate that the file is in this format is given in Section 4.1.1.1 [Arguments], page 251. FITS is a raster graphics format.

Each image extension of a FITS file only has one value per pixel/element. Therefore, when used as input, each input FITS image contributes as one color channel. If you want multiple extensions in one FITS file for different color channels, you have to repeat the file name multiple times and use the `--hdu`, `--hdu2`, `--hdu3` or `--hdu4` options to specify the different extensions.

JPEG The JPEG standard was created by the Joint photographic experts group. It is currently one of the most commonly used image formats. Its major advantage is the compression algorithm that is defined by the standard. Like the FITS standard, this is a raster graphics format, which means that it is pixelated.

A JPEG file can have 1 (for gray-scale), 3 (for RGB) and 4 (for CMYK) color channels. If you only want to convert one JPEG image into other formats, there is no problem, however, if you want to use it in combination with other input

files, make sure that the final number of color channels does not exceed four. If it does, then ConvertType will abort and notify you.

The file name endings that are recognized as a JPEG file for input are: `.jpg`, `.JPG`, `.jpeg`, `.JPEG`, `.jpe`, `.jif`, `.jfif` and `.jfi`.

TIFF

TIFF (or Tagged Image File Format) was originally designed as a common format for scanners in the early 90s and since then it has grown to become very general. In many aspects, the TIFF standard is similar to the FITS image standard: it can allow data of many types (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), and also allows multiple images to be stored in a single file (like a FITS extension: each image in the file is called a 'directory' in the TIFF standard). However, unlike FITS, it can only store images, it has no constructs for tables. Also unlike FITS, each 'directory' of a TIFF file can have a multi-channel (e.g., RGB) image. Another (inconvenient) difference with the FITS standard is that keyword names are stored as numbers, not human-readable text.

However, outside of astronomy, because of its support of different numeric data types, many fields use TIFF images for accurate (for example, 16-bit integer or floating point for example) imaging data.

EPS

The Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) format is essentially a one page PostScript file which has a specified size. Postscript is used to store a full document like this whole Gnuastro book. PostScript therefore also includes non-image data, for example, lines and texts. It is a fully functional programming language to describe a document. A PostScript file is a plain text file that can be edited like any program source with any plain-text editor. Therefore in ConvertType, EPS is only an output format and cannot be used as input. Contrary to the FITS or JPEG formats, PostScript is not a raster format, but is categorized as vector graphics.

With these features in mind, you can see that when you are compiling a document with TEX or LATEX, using an EPS file is much more low level than a JPEG and thus you have much greater control and therefore quality. Since it also includes vector graphic lines we also use such lines to make a thin border around the image to make its appearance in the document much better. Furthermore, through EPS, you can add marks over the image in many shapes and colors. No matter the resolution of the display or printer, these lines will always be clear and not pixelated. However, this can be done better with tools within TEX or LATEX such as PGF/Tikz[6].

If the final input image (possibly after all operations on the flux explained below) is a binary image or only has two colors of black and white (in segmentation maps for example), then PostScript has another great advantage compared to other formats. It allows for 1 bit pixels (pixels with a value of 0 or 1), this can decrease the output file size by 8 times. So if a gray-scale image is binary, ConvertType will exploit this property in the EPS and PDF (see below) outputs.

[6] `http://sourceforge.net/projects/pgf/`

The standard formats for an EPS file are `.eps`, `.EPS`, `.epsf` and `.epsi`. The EPS outputs of ConvertType have the `.eps` suffix.

PDF The Portable Document Format (PDF) is currently the most common format for documents. It is a vector graphics format, allowing abstract constructs like marks or borders.

The PDF format is based on Postscript, so it shares all the features mentioned above for EPS. To be able to display it is programmed content or print, a Postscript file needs to pass through a processor or compiler. A PDF file can be thought of as the processed output of the PostScript compiler. PostScript, EPS and PDF were created and are registered by Adobe Systems.

As explained under EPS above, a PDF document is a static document description format, viewing its result is therefore much faster and more efficient than PostScript. To create a PDF output, ConvertType will make an EPS file and convert that to PDF using GPL Ghostscript. The suffixes recognized for a PDF file are: `.pdf`, `.PDF`. If GPL Ghostscript cannot be run on the PostScript file, The EPS will remain and a warning will be printed (see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215).

`blank` This is not actually a file type! But can be used to fill one color channel with a blank value. If this argument is given for any color channel, that channel will not be used in the output.

Plain text The value of each pixel in a 2D image can be written as a 2D matrix in a plain-text file. Therefore, for the purpose of ConvertType, plain-text files are a single-channel raster graphics file format.

Plain text files have the advantage that they can be viewed with any text editor or on the command-line. Most programs also support input as plain text files. As input, each plain text file is considered to contain one color channel.

In ConvertType, the recognized extensions for plain text files are `.txt` and `.dat`. As described in Section 5.2.5 [Invoking ConvertType], page 332, if you just give these extensions, (and not a full filename) as output, then automatic output will be preformed to determine the final output name (see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292). Besides these, when the format of a file cannot be recognized from its name, ConvertType will fall back to plain text mode. So you can use any name (even without an extension) for a plain text input or output. Just note that when the suffix is not recognized, automatic output will not be preformed.

The basic input/output on plain text images is very similar to how tables are read/written as described in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287. Simply put, the restrictions are very loose, and there is a convention to define a name, units, data type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), and comments for the data in a commented line. The only difference is that as a table, a text file can contain many datasets (columns), but as a 2D image, it can only contain one dataset. As a result, only one information comment line is necessary for a 2D image, and instead of the starting '`# Column N`' (`N` is the column number), the information line for a 2D image must start

with '`# Image 1`'. When ConvertType is asked to output to plain text file, this information comment line is written before the image pixel values.

When converting an image to plain text, consider the fact that if the image is large, the number of columns in each line will become very large, possibly making it very hard to open in some text editors.

Standard output (command-line)
: This is very similar to the plain text output, but instead of creating a file to keep the printed values, they are printed on the command-line. This can be very useful when you want to redirect the results directly to another program in one command with no intermediate file. The only difference is that only the pixel values are printed (with no information comment line). To print to the standard output, set the output name to '`stdout`'.

5.2.3 Color

Color is generally defined after mixing various data "channels". The values for each channel usually come a filter that is placed in the optical path. Filters, only allow a certain window of the spectrum to pass (for example, the SDSS r filter only allows light from about 5500 to 7000 Angstroms). In digital monitors or common digital cameras, a different set of filters are used: Red, Green and Blue (commonly known as RGB) that are more optimized to the eye's perception. On the other hand, when printing on paper, standard printers use the cyan, magenta, yellow and key (CMYK, key=black) color space.

5.2.3.1 Pixel colors

As discussed in Section 5.2.3 [Color], page 320, for each displayed/printed pixel of a color image, the dataset/image has three or four values. To store/show the three values for each pixel, cameras and monitors allocate a certain fraction of each pixel's area to red, green and blue filters. These three filters are thus built into the hardware at the pixel level.

However, because measurement accuracy is very important in scientific instruments, and we want to do measurements (take images) with various/custom filters (without having to order a new expensive detector!), scientific detectors use the full area of the pixel to store one value for it in a single/mono channel dataset. To make measurements in different filters, we just place a filter in the light path before the detector. Therefore, the FITS format that is used to store astronomical datasets is inherently a mono-channel format (see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317, or Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297).

When a subject has been imaged in multiple filters, you can feed each different filter into the red, green and blue channels of your monitor and obtain a false-colored visualization. The reason we say "false-color" (or pseudo color) is that generally, the three data channels you provide are not from the same Red, Green and Blue filters of your monitor! So the observed color on your monitor does not correspond the physical "color" that you would have seen if you looked at the object by eye. Nevertheless, it is good (and sometimes necessary) for visualization (of special features).

In ConvertType, you can do this by giving each separate single-channel dataset (for example, in the FITS image format) as an argument (in the proper order), then asking for the output in a format that supports multi-channel datasets (for example, see the command below, or Section 5.2.5.1 [ConvertType input and output], page 332).

```
$ astconvertt r.fits g.fits b.fits --output=color.jpg
```

5.2.3.2 Colormaps for single-channel pixels

As discussed in Section 5.2.3.1 [Pixel colors], page 320, color is not defined when a dataset/image contains a single value for each pixel. However, we interact with scientific datasets through monitors or printers. They allow multiple channels (independent values) per pixel and produce color with them (on monitors, this is usually with three channels: Red, Green and Blue). As a result, there is a lot of freedom in visualizing a single-channel dataset.

The mapping of single-channel values to multi-channel colors is called called a "color map". Since more information can be put in multiple channels, this usually results in better visualizing the dynamic range of your single-channel data. In ConvertType, you can use the `--colormap` option to choose between different mappings of mono-channel inputs, see Section 5.2.5 [Invoking ConvertType], page 332. Below, we will review two of the basic color maps, please see the description of `--colormap` in Section 5.2.5 [Invoking ConvertType], page 332, for the full list.

- The most basic colormap is shades of black (because of its strong contrast with white). This scheme is called Grayscale (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grayscale`). But ultimately, the black is just one color, so with Grayscale, you are not using the full dynamic range of the three-channel monitor effectively. To help in visualization, more complex mappings can be defined.
- A slightly more complex color map can be defined when you scale the values to a range of 0 to 360, and use as it as the "Hue" term of the Hue-Saturation-Value (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HSL_and_HSV`) (HSV) color space (while fixing the "Saturation" and "Value" terms). The increased usage of the monitor's 3-channel color space is indeed better, but the resulting images can be un-"natural" to the eye.

Since grayscale is a commonly used mapping of single-valued datasets, we will continue with a closer look at how it is stored. One way to represent a gray-scale image in different color spaces is to use the same proportions of the primary colors in each pixel. This is the common way most FITS image viewers work: for each pixel, they fill all the channels with the single value. While this is necessary for displaying a dataset, there are downsides when storing/saving this type of grayscale visualization (for example, in a paper).

- Three (for RGB) or four (for CMYK) values have to be stored for every pixel, this makes the output file very heavy (in terms of bytes).
- If printing, the printing errors of each color channel can make the printed image slightly more blurred than it actually is.

To solve both these problems when storing grayscale visualization, the best way is to save a single-channel dataset into the black channel of the CMYK color space. The JPEG standard is the only common standard that accepts CMYK color space.

The JPEG and EPS standards set two sizes for the number of bits in each channel: 8-bit and 12-bit. The former is by far the most common and is what is used in ConvertType. Therefore, each channel should have values between 0 to $2^8 - 1 = 255$. From this we see how each pixel in a gray-scale image is one byte (8 bits) long, in an RGB image, it is 3 bytes long and in CMYK it is 4 bytes long. But thanks to the JPEG compression algorithms,

when all the pixels of one channel have the same value, that channel is compressed to one pixel. Therefore a Grayscale image and a CMYK image that has only the K-channel filled are approximately the same file size.

5.2.3.3 Vector graphics colors

When creating vector graphics, ConvertType recognizes the extended web colors (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_colors#Extended_colors`) that are the result of merging the colors in the HTML 4.01, CSS 2.0, SVG 1.0 and CSS3 standards. They are all shown with their standard name in Figure 5.1. The names are not case sensitive so you can use them in any form (for example, `turquoise` is the same as `Turquoise` or `TURQUOISE`).

On the command-line, you can also get the list of colors with the `--listcolors` option to CovertType, like below. In particular, if your terminal is 24-bit or "true color", in the last column, you will see each color. This greatly helps in selecting the best color for our purpose easily on the command-line (without taking your hands off the keyboard and getting distracted).

```
$ astconvertt --listcolors
```

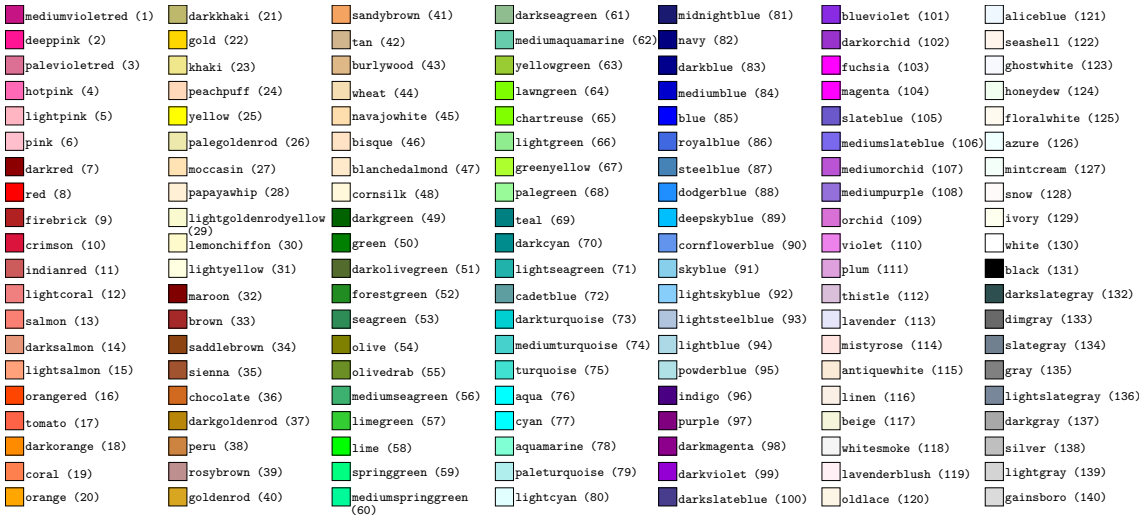


Figure 5.1: Recognized color names in Gnuastro, shown with their numerical identifiers.

5.2.4 Annotations for figure in paper

To make a nice figure from your FITS images, it is important to show more than merely the raw image (converted to a printer friendly format like PDF or JPEG; see Section 2.1.20 [FITS images in a publication], page 65, and Section 2.1.21 [Marking objects for publication], page 69).

Annotations (or visual metadata) over the raw image greatly help the readers clearly see your argument and put the image/result in a larger context. Examples include:

- Coordinates (Right Ascension and Declination) on the edges of the image, so viewers of your paper or presentation slides can get a physical feeling of the field's sky coverage.

- Thick line that has a fixed tangential size (for example, in kilo parsecs) at the redshift/distance of interest.
- Contours over the image to show radio/X-ray emission, over an optical image for example.
- Text, arrows, etc., over certain parts of the image.

Because of the modular philosophy of Gnuastro, ConvertType is only focused on converting your FITS images to printer friendly formats like JPEG or PDF. But to present your results in a slide or paper, you will often need to annotate the raw JPEG or PDF with some of the features above. The good news is that there are many powerful plotting programs that you can use to add such annotations. As a result, there is no point in making a new one, specific to Gnuastro. Instead, Gnuastro hopes to provide the necessary interface to communicate easily with those tools. In this section, we will demonstrate this using the very powerful PGFPlots[7] package of LaTeX.

Single script for easy running: In this section we are reviewing the reason and details of every step which is good for educational purposes. But when you know the steps already, these separate code blocks can be annoying. Therefore the full script (except for the data download step) is available in Section 5.2.4.1 [Full script of annotations on figure], page 329.

PGFPlots uses the same LaTeX graphic engine that typesets your paper/slide. Therefore when you build your plots and figures using PGFPlots (and its underlying package PGF/TiKZ[8]) your plots will blend beautifully within your text: same fonts, same colors, same line properties, etc. Since most papers (and presentation slides[9]) are made with LaTeX, PGFPlots is therefore the best tool for those who use LaTeX to create documents. PGFPlots also does not need any extra dependencies beyond a basic/minimal TeX-live installation, so it is much more reliable than tools like Matplotlib in Python that have hundreds of fast-evolving dependencies[10].

To demonstrate this, we will create a surface brightness image of a galaxy in the F160W filter of the ABYSS survey[11]. In the code-block below, let's make a "build" directory to keep intermediate files and avoid populating the top-level source directory (it is always good to keep your data separate from your source). Afterwards, we will download the full image and crop out a 20 arcmin wide image around the galaxy with the commands below. You can run these commands in an empty directory.

```
$ mkdir build
$ wget http://cdsarc.u-strasbg.fr/ftp/J/A+A/621/A133/fits/ah_f160w.fits
$ astcrop ah_f160w.fits --center=53.1616278,-27.7802446 --mode=wcs \
          --width=20/3600 --output=build/crop.fits
```

[7] http://mirrors.ctan.org/graphics/pgf/contrib/pgfplots/doc/pgfplots.pdf

[8] http://mirrors.ctan.org/graphics/pgf/base/doc/pgfmanual.pdf

[9] To build slides, LaTeX has packages like Beamer, see http://mirrors.ctan.org/macros/latex/contrib/beamer/doc/beameruserguide.pdf

[10] See Figure 1 of Alliez et al. 2019 (https://arxiv.org/abs/1905.11123).

[11] http://research.iac.es/proyecto/abyss

To better show the low surface brightness (LSB) outskirts, we will warp the image, then convert the pixel units to surface brightness with the commands below with Gnuastro's Arithmetic program. An important point to remember here is that the magnitudes (and thus the surface brightness) come from a logarithm; therefore if a pixel is negative, its log will be NaN (Not-a-Number). Therefore after `counts-to-sb`, we convert all the NaN pixels with the faintest (highest) surface brightness limit possible in this image: 30 mag/arcsec^2 (which we define as a variable because it is also necessary later). In case you don't know your image's surface brightness limit, see Section 2.1.20 [FITS images in a publication], page 65. For more, see the surface brightness topic of Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, and for a more complete tutorial, see Section 2.1.20 [FITS images in a publication], page 65.

```
$ sbhigh=30
$ zeropoint=25.94
$ astwarp build/crop.fits --centeroncorner --scale=1/3 \
          --output=build/scaled.fits
$ pixarea=$(astfits build/scaled.fits --pixelareaarcsec2)
$ astarithmetic build/scaled.fits $zeropoint $pixarea counts-to-sb \
                set-sb sb sb isblank sb $sbhigh gt or $sbhigh where \
                --output=build/sb.fits
```

We are now ready to convert the surface brightness image into a PDF. To better show the LSB features, we will limit the brighter range of values (lower numerics in the Magnitude) with the `--fluxlow` option. All pixels with a surface brightness brighter than 22 mag/arcsec^2 will be shown at a similar color. This threshold is also being defined as a variable, because we will also need it later below (to pass into PGFPlots). Finally, in the call to convert the FITS to PDF, we also set `--borderwidth=0`, because the coordinate system we will be added over the edges of the image which effectively becomes a border for the image (separating it from the background). The `--cmappgfplots` option of ConvertType is recommended when you want to add a color bar in PGFPlots because it will create the necessary PGFPlots command to show the exact color map that ConvertType used in the colorbar.

```
$ sblow=22
$ colormap=sls
$ astconvertt build/sb.fits --colormap=$colormap --borderwidth=0 \
              --fluxhigh=$sbhigh --fluxlow=$sblow \
              --output=build/sb.pdf --cmappgfplots
```

Please open `build/sb.pdf` and have a look. Try changing the surface brightness variables above or the colormap to make it more pleasing to your eye (you will need such experimentation when you later do this on your own images). We now have the printable PDF representation of the image, but as discussed above, it is not enough for a paper. We will add 1) a thick line showing the size of 20 kpc (kilo parsecs) at the redshift of the central galaxy to help the readers of our report create a mental image of its physical size, 2) coordinates on the edge so the reader can easily identify the location on the sky and observed size, and 3) a color bar, showing the colormap of the surface brightness level for readers to be able to interpret the pixel values.

To get the first job done, we first need to know the redshift of the central galaxy. To do this, we can use Gnuastro's Query program to look into all the objects in NED within

this image (only asking for the RA, Dec and redshift columns). We will then use the Match program to find the NED entry that corresponds to our galaxy.

```
$ astquery ned --dataset=objdir --overlapwith=build/sb.fits \
           --column=ra,dec,z --output=build/ned.fits
$ astmatch build/ned.fits -h1 --coord=53.1616278,-27.7802446 \
           --ccol1=RA,Dec --aperture=1/3600 \
           --output=build/ned-matched.fits
$ redshift=$(asttable build/ned-matched.fits -cz)
$ echo $redshift
```

Now that we know the redshift of the central object, we can define the coordinates of the thick line that will show the length of 20 kpc at that redshift. It will be a horizontal line (fixed Declination) across a range of RA. The start of this thick line will be located at the top edge of the image (at the 95-percent of the width and height of the image). With the commands below we will find the three necessary parameters (one declination and two Right Ascensions). Just note that in astronomical images, RA increases to the left/east, which is the reason we are using the minimum and `+` to find the RA starting point.

```
$ scalelineinkpc=20
$ coverage=$(astfits build/sb.fits --skycoverage --quiet | awk 'NR==2')
$ scalelinedec=$(echo      $coverage | awk '{print $4-($4-$3)*0.05}')
$ scalelinerastart=$(echo  $coverage | awk '{print $1+($2-$1)*0.05}')
$ scalelineraend=$(astcosmiccal --redshift=$redshift --arcsectandist \
                       | awk '{start='$scalelinerastart'; \
                               width='$scalelineinkpc'/$1/3600; \
                               print start+width}')
```

To draw coordinates over the image, we need to feed these values into PGFPlots. But manually entering numbers into the PGFPlots source will be very frustrating, prone to many errors and will be hard to change in the future (for example after the referee report comes)! Fortunately there is an easy way to do this: LaTeX macros. New macros are defined by this LaTeX command:

```
\newcommand{\macroname}{value}
```

Anywhere that LaTeX confronts `\macroname`, it will replace `value` when building the output. We will have one file called `macros.tex` in the build directory and define macros based on those values. We will use the shell's `printf` command to write these macro definition lines into the macro file. Double backslashes are used in the `printf` command, because backslash is a meaningful character for it. Also, we put a `\n` at the end of each line, otherwise, all the commands will go into a single line of the macro file. We will also place the random '`ma`' string at the start of all our LaTeX macros to help identify the macros for this plot throughout your report's source. In the case of calculated numbers (like the redshift, we will use AWK to print to two decimal digits) to simplify the LaTeX commands.

```
$ macros=build/macros.tex
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleDec}'"{$scalelinedec}\n" > $macros
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleRAa}'"{$scalelinerastart}\n" >> $macros
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleRAb}'"{$scalelineraend}\n" >> $macros
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleKpc}'"{$scalelineinkpc}\n" >> $macros
$ v=$(echo $redshift | awk '{printf "%.2f", $1'})
```

```
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maCenterZ}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
```

Please open the macros file after these commands and have a look to see if they do conform to the expected format above. Another set of macros we will need to feed into PGFPlots is the coordinates of the image corners. Fortunately the `coverage` variable found above is also useful here. We just need to extract each item before feeding it into the macros. To do this, we will use AWK and keep each value with the temporary shell variable 'v'.

```
$ v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $1}')
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maCropRAMin}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
$ v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $2}')
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maCropRAMax}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
$ v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $3}')
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maCropDecMin}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
$ v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $4}')
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maCropDecMax}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
```

Finally, we also need to pass some other numbers to PGFPlots: 1) the major tick distance (in the coordinate axes that will be printed on the edge of the image). We will assume 7 ticks for this image. 2) The minimum and maximum surface brightness values that we gave to ConvertType when making the PDF; PGFPlots will define its color-bar based on these two values. 3) The name of the Gnuastro colormap (you can manually change this in the produced colormap file by ConvertType: it is plain-text). Also, note that if all your figures are generated with the same colormap you only need to ask ConvertType to generate it once.

```
$ v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print ($2-$1)/7}')
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maTickDist}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maSBlow}'"{$sblow}\n" >> $macros
$ printf '\\newcommand{\\maSBhigh}'"{$sbhigh}\n" >> $macros
$ printf '\\newcommand{\maColormap}'"{gnuastro$colormap}\n" >> $macros
```

All the necessary numbers we need to pass to LaTeX are now ready. Please copy the contents below into a file called `my-figure.tex`. This is the PGFPlots source for this particular plot. Besides the coordinates and scale-line, we will also add some text over the image and an orange arrow pointing to the central object with its redshift printed over it. The parameters are generally human-readable, so you should be able to get a good feeling of every line by simply reading it. There are also comments which will show up as a different color when you copy this into a plain-text editor that recognizes LaTeX.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}

  %% Define the coordinates and colorbar
  \begin{axis}[
      at={(0,0)},
      axis on top,
      x dir=reverse,
      scale only axis,
      width=\linewidth,
      height=\linewidth,
```

```
    minor tick num=10,
    xmin=\maCropRAMin,
    xmax=\maCropRAMax,
    ymin=\maCropDecMin,
    ymax=\maCropDecMax,
    enlargelimits=false,
    every tick/.style={black},
    xtick distance=\maTickDist,
    ytick distance=\maTickDist,
    yticklabel style={rotate=90},
    ylabel={Declination (degrees)},
    xlabel={Right Ascension (degrees)},
    ticklabel style={font=\small,
      /pgf/number format/.cd, precision=4,/tikz/.cd},
    x label style={at={(axis description cs:0.5,0.02)},
      anchor=north,font=\small},
    y label style={at={(axis description cs:0.07,0.5)},
      anchor=south,font=\small},
    colorbar,
    colormap name=\maColormap,
    point meta min=\maSBlow,
    point meta max=\maSBhigh,
    colorbar style={
      at={(1.01,1)},
      ylabel={Surface brightness (mag/arcsec$^2$)},
      yticklabel style={
        /pgf/number format/.cd, precision=1, /tikz/.cd},
      y label style={at={(axis description cs:5.3,0.5)},
        anchor=south,font=\small},
    },
  ]

  %% Put the image in the proper positions of the plot.
  \addplot graphics[ xmin=\maCropRAMin,  xmax=\maCropRAMax,
                     ymin=\maCropDecMin, ymax=\maCropDecMax]
           {sb.pdf};

  %% Draw the scale factor.
  \addplot[black, line width=5, name=scaleline] coordinates
          {(\maScaleRAa,\maScaleDec) (\maScaleRAb,\maScaleDec)}
          node [anchor=north west] {\large $\maScaleKpc$ kpc};
\end{axis}

%% Add some text anywhere over the plot. The text is added two
%% times: the first time with a white background (that with a
%% certain opacity), the second time just the text with opacity.
\node[anchor=south west, fill=white, opacity=0.5]
```

```
      at (0.01\linewidth,0.01\linewidth)
      {(a) Text can be added here};
  \node[anchor=south west]
      at (0.01\linewidth,0.01\linewidth)
      {(a) Text can be added here};

  %% Add an arrow to highlight certain structures.
  \draw [->, black, line width=5]
  (0.35\linewidth,0.35\linewidth)
  -- node [anchor=south, rotate=45]{$z=\maCenterZ$}
  (0.45\linewidth,0.45\linewidth);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Finally, we need another simple LaTeX source for the main text of your report that will host the figure (it helps the readability of your source for yourself to keep the code of your figures in a separate file to be easily included in the proper place you want). Simply copy the minimal working example below in a file called `report.tex`.

```
\documentclass{article}

%% Import the TiKZ package and activate its "external" feature.
\usepackage{tikz}
\usetikzlibrary{external}
\tikzexternalize

%% PGFPlots (which uses TiKZ) and all the colormaps you need.
\usepackage{pgfplots}
\pgfplotsset{axis line style={thick}}
\input{sb-colormap.tex}

%% Import the macros.
\input{macros.tex}

%% Start document.
\begin{document}
You can write anything here.

%% Add the figure and its caption.
\begin{figure}
  \input{my-figure.tex}
  \caption{A demo image.}
\end{figure}

%% Finish the document.
\end{document}
```

You are now ready to create the PDF. But LaTeX creates many temporary files, so to avoid populating our top-level (source code and input data) directory, we will copy the two `.tex` files into the build directory, go there and run LaTeX. Before running it, we will first

delete all the files that have the name pattern `*-figure0*`, these are "external" files created by TiKZ+PGFPlots, including the actual PDF of the figure. PGFPlots has nice ways to set a name for each "external" figure it generates (and not depend on a counter), but that is beyond the scope here, see its manual for details.

```
$ cp report.tex my-figure.tex build
$ cd build
$ rm -f *-figure0*
$ pdflatex -shell-escape -halt-on-error report.tex
```

You now have the full "report" in `report.pdf`. The good news is that in case you need the high-quality figure for other purposes (like showing in slides), you don't have to take a screenshot! You also have the raw PDF of the figure in `report-figure0.pdf`. Try adding some extra text in `report.tex`, or in the caption of the figure and re-running the last four commands so it becomes more like an actual

You can also try changing the 20kpc scale line length to 50kpc, or try changing the redshift, to see how the length and text of the thick scale-line will automatically change. But these kinds of changes will be hard in the manual steps above and due to the number of steps, human error can easily cause a crash. Therefore it is best to put such numerous steps in a script as we have done in Section 5.2.4.1 [Full script of annotations on figure], page 329, below. So it may be easier to take the script from there and do the changes suggested here.

In a larger paper, you can add multiple such figures (with different `.tex` files that are placed in different `figure` environments with different captions throughout your text). Each figure will get a number in the build directory. TiKZ also allows setting a file name for each "external" figure (to avoid such numbers that can be annoying if the image orders are changed). PGFPlots is also highly customizable, you can make a lot of changes and customizations. Both TiKZ[12] and PGFPLots[13] have wonderful manuals, so have a look trough them and you will enjoy the power that comes under your fingers afterwards.

5.2.4.1 Full script of annotations on figure

In Section 5.2.4 [Annotations for figure in paper], page 322, we went through each of the steps to add annotations over an image were described in detail. So if you have understood the steps, but want to start experimenting with different settings, repeating those steps individually will be annoying and buggy (humans aren't good at repetition). Therefore in this section, we will summarize all the steps in a single script that you can simply copy-paste into a text editor, configure, and run.

Compared to Section 5.2.4 [Annotations for figure in paper], page 322, we have brought the redshift as a parameter here. But if the center of your image always points to your main object, you can also include the Query command to automatically find the object's redshift from NED. Alternatively, your image may already be cropped, in this case, you can remove the cropping step. If you are not familiar with reading, writing or running scripts, see Section 2.1.22 [Writing scripts to automate the steps], page 73.

[12] `http://mirrors.ctan.org/graphics/pgf/base/doc/pgfmanual.pdf`

[13] `http://mirrors.ctan.org/graphics/pgf/contrib/pgfplots/doc/pgfplots.pdf`

Necessary files: To run this script, you will need an image to crop your object from (here assuming it is called `ah_f160w.fits` with a certain zero point) and two `my-figure.tex` and `report.tex` files that were fully provided in Section 5.2.4 [Annotations for figure in paper], page 322. They need to be in the same directory as this script.

```
# Parameters.
sblow=22                # Minimum surface brightness.
sbhigh=30               # Maximum surface brightness.
bdir=build              # Build directory location on filesystem.
numticks=7              # Number of major ticks in each axis.
colormap=sls            # Name of ConvertType's colormap.
redshift=0.619          # Redshift of object of interest.
zeropoint=25.94         # Zero point of input image.
scalelineinkpc=20       # Length of scale-line (in kilo parsecs).
input=ah_f160w.fits     # Name of large input image.
width=20/3600           # Width of crop in degrees.
center=53.1616278,-27.7802446  # RA and Dec of crop's center.

# Stop the script in case of a crash.
set -e

# Build directory
if ! [ -d $bdir ]; then mkdir $bdir; fi

# Crop out the desired region.
crop=$bdir/crop.fits
astcrop $input --center=$center --mode=wcs --width=$width \
        --output=$crop

# Warp the image to larger pixels to show surface brightness better.
scaled=$bdir/scaled.fits
astwarp $crop --centeroncorner --scale=1/3 --output=$scaled

# Calculate the pixel area and convert image to Surface brightness.
sb=$bdir/sb.fits
pixarea=$(astfits $scaled --pixelareaarcsec2)
astarithmetic $scaled $zeropoint $pixarea counts-to-sb \
              set-sb sb sb isblank sb $sbhigh gt or $sbhigh where \
              --output=$sb

# Convert the surface brightness image into PDF.
sbpdf=$bdir/sb.pdf
astconvertt $sb --colormap=$colormap --borderwidth=0 --cmappgfplots \
            --fluxhigh=$sbhigh --fluxlow=$sblow --output=$sbpdf
```

```
# Specify the coordinates of the scale line (specifying a certain
# width in kpc). We will put it on the top-right side of the image (5%
# of the full width of the image away from the edge).
coverage=$(astfits $sb --skycoverage --quiet | awk 'NR==2')
scalelinedec=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $4-($4-$3)*0.05}')
scalelinerastart=$(echo  $coverage | awk '{print $1+($2-$1)*0.05}')
scalelineraend=$(astcosmiccal --redshift=$redshift --arcsectandist \
                     | awk '{start='$scalelinerastart'; \
                             width='$scalelineinkpc'/$1/3600; \
                             print start+width}')

# Write the LaTeX macros to use in plot. Start with the thick line
# showing tangential distance.
macros=$bdir/macros.tex
printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleDec}'"{$scalelinedec}\n" > $macros
printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleRAa}'"{$scalelinerastart}\n" >> $macros
printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleRAb}'"{$scalelineraend}\n" >> $macros
printf '\\newcommand{\\maScaleKpc}'"{$scalelineinkpc}\n" >> $macros
printf '\\newcommand{\\maCenterZ}'"{$redshift}\n" >> $macros

# Add image extrema for the coordinates.
v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $1}')
printf '\\newcommand{\maCropRAMin}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $2}')
printf '\\newcommand{\maCropRAMax}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $3}')
printf '\\newcommand{\maCropDecMin}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print $4}')
printf '\\newcommand{\maCropDecMax}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
printf '\\newcommand{\maColormap}'"{gnuastro$colormap}\n" >> $macros

# Distance between each tick value.
v=$(echo $coverage | awk '{print ($2-$1)/'$numticks'}')
printf '\\newcommand{\maTickDist}'"{$v}\n" >> $macros
printf '\\newcommand{\maSBlow}'"{$sblow}\n" >> $macros
printf '\\newcommand{\maSBhigh}'"{$sbhigh}\n" >> $macros

# Copy the LaTeX source into the build directory and go there to run
# it and have all the temporary LaTeX files there.
cp report.tex my-figure.tex $bdir
cd $bdir
rm -f *-figure0*
pdflatex -shell-escape -halt-on-error report.tex
```

5.2.5 Invoking ConvertType

ConvertType will convert any recognized input file type to any specified output type. The executable name is `astconvertt` with the following general template

```
$ astconvertt [OPTION...] InputFile [InputFile2] ... [InputFile4]
```

One line examples:

```
## Convert an image in FITS to PDF:
$ astconvertt image.fits --output=pdf

## Similar to before, but use the Viridis color map:
$ astconvertt image.fits --colormap=viridis --output=pdf

## Add markers to to highlight parts of the image
## ('marks.fits' is a table containing coordinates)
$ astconvertt image.fits --marks=marks.fits --output=pdf

## Convert an image in JPEG to FITS (with multiple extensions
## if it has color):
$ astconvertt image.jpg -oimage.fits

## Use three 2D arrays to create an RGB JPEG output (two are
## plain-text, the third is FITS, but all have the same size).
$ astconvertt f1.txt f2.txt f3.fits -o.jpg

## Use two images and one blank for an RGB EPS output:
$ astconvertt M31_r.fits M31_g.fits blank -oeps

## Directly pass input from output of another program through Standard
## input (not a file).
$ cat 2darray.txt | astconvertt -oimg.fits
```

In the sub-sections below various options that are specific to ConvertType are grouped in different categories. Please see those sections for a detailed discussion on each group and its options. Besides those, ConvertType also shares the Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, with other Gnuastro programs. The common options are not repeated here.

5.2.5.1 ConvertType input and output

At most four input files (one for each color channel for formats that allow it) are allowed in ConvertType. When there is only one input channel (grayscale), the input can either be given as a file name (as an argument on the command-line) or through Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266, (a pipe for example: only when no input file is specified). Therefore, if an input file is given, the standard input will not be checked.

The order of multiple input files is important. After reading the input file(s) the number of color channels in all the inputs will be used to define which color space to use for the outputs and how each color channel is interpreted: 1 (for grayscale), 3 (for RGB) and 4 (for CMYK) input channels. For more on pixel color channels, see Section 5.2.3.1 [Pixel colors], page 320. Depending on the format of the input(s), the number of input files can differ.

For example, if you plan to build an RGB PDF and your three channels are in the first HDU of `r.fits`, `g.fits` and `b.fits`, then you can simply call MakeProfiles like this:

```
$ astconvertt r.fits g.fits b.fits -g1 --output=rgb.pdf
```

However, if the three color channels are in three extensions (assuming the HDUs are respectively named `R`, `G` and `B`) of a single file (assuming `channels.fits`), you should run it like this:

```
$ astconvertt channels.fits -hR -hG -hB --output=rgb.pdf
```

On the other hand, if the channels are already in a multi-channel format (like JPEG), you can simply provide that file:

```
$ astconvertt image.jpg --output=rgb.pdf
```

If multiple channels are given as input, and the output format does not support multiple color channels (for example, FITS), ConvertType will put the channels in different HDUs, like the example below. After running the `astfits` command, if your JPEG file was not grayscale (single channel), you will see multiple HDUs in `channels.fits`.

```
$ astconvertt image.jpg --output=channels.fits
$ astfits channels.fits
```

As shown above, the output's file format will be interpreted from the name given to the `--output` option (as a common option to all Gnuastro programs, for the description of `--output`, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254). It can either be given on the command-line or in any of the configuration files (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). When the output suffix is not recognized, it will default to plain text format, see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317.

If there is one input dataset (color channel) the output will be gray-scale. When three input datasets (color channels) are given, they are respectively considered to be the red, green and blue color channels. Finally, if there are four color channels they will be cyan, magenta, yellow and black (CMYK colors).

The value to `--output` (or `-o`) can be either a full file name or just the suffix of the desired output format. In the former case (full name), it will be directly used for the output's file name. In the latter case, the name of the output file will be set based on the automatic output guidelines, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. Note that the suffix name can optionally start with a `.` (dot), so for example, `--output=.jpg` and `--output=jpg` are equivalent. See Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317.

The relevant options for input/output formats are described below:

`-h STR/INT`
`--hdu=STR/INT`

Input HDU name or counter (counting from 0) for each input FITS file. If the same HDU should be used from all the FITS files, you can use the `--globalhdu` option described below. In ConvertType, it is possible to call the HDU option multiple times for the different input FITS or TIFF files in the same order that they are called on the command-line. Note that in the TIFF standard, one 'directory' (similar to a FITS HDU) may contain multiple color channels (for example, when the image is in RGB).

Except for the fact that multiple calls are possible, this option is identical to the common `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254. The

number of calls to this option cannot be less than the number of input FITS or TIFF files, but if there are more, the extra HDUs will be ignored, note that they will be read in the order described in Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271.

Unlike CFITSIO, libtiff (which is used to read TIFF files) only recognizes numbers (counting from zero, similar to CFITSIO) for 'directory' identification. Hence the concept of names is not defined for the directories and the values to this option for TIFF files must be numbers.

`-g STR/INT`
`--globalhdu=STR/INT`
Use the value given to this option (a HDU name or a counter, starting from 0) for the HDU identifier of all the input FITS files. This is useful when all the inputs are distributed in different files, but have the same HDU in those files.

`-w FLT`
`--widthincm=FLT`
The width of the output in centimeters. This is only relevant for those formats that accept such a width as metadata (not FITS or plain-text for example), see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317. For most digital purposes, the number of pixels is far more important than the value to this parameter because you can adjust the absolute width (in inches or centimeters) in your document preparation program.

`-x`
`--hex` Use Hexadecimal encoding in creating EPS output. By default the ASCII85 encoding is used which provides a much better compression ratio. When converted to PDF (or included in TEX or LATEX which is finally saved as a PDF file), an efficient binary encoding is used which is far more efficient than both of them. The choice of EPS encoding will thus have no effect on the final PDF.

So if you want to transfer your EPS files (for example, if you want to submit your paper to arXiv or journals in PostScript), their storage might become important if you have large images or lots of small ones. By default ASCII85 encoding is used which offers a much better compression ratio (nearly 40 percent) compared to Hexadecimal encoding.

`-u INT`
`--quality=INT`
The quality (compression) of the output JPEG file with values from 0 to 100 (inclusive). For other formats the value to this option is ignored. Note that only in gray-scale (when one input color channel is given) will this actually be the exact quality (each pixel will correspond to one input value). If it is in color mode, some degradation will occur. While the JPEG standard does support loss-less graphics, it is not commonly supported.

5.2.5.2 Pixel visualization

The main goal of ConvertType is to visualize pixels to/from print or web friendly formats.

Astronomical data usually have a very large dynamic range (difference between maximum and minimum value) and different subjects might be better demonstrated with a limited flux range.

`--colormap=STR[,FLT,...]`
The color map to visualize a single channel. The first value given to this option is the name of the color map, which is shown below. Some color maps can be configured. In this case, the configuration parameters are optionally given as numbers following the name of the color map for example, see `hsv`. When the input has blank values, the value to `--cmapblankcolor` will be used to define the color that they are shown (except for the `gray` color map). The table below contains the usable names of the color maps that are currently supported:

`gray`
`grey` Grayscale color map. This color map does not have any parameters. The full dataset range will be scaled to 0 and $2^8 - 1 = 255$ to be stored in the requested format.

`hsv` Hue, Saturation, Value[14] color map. If no values are given after the name (`--colormap=hsv`), the dataset will be scaled to 0 and 360 for hue covering the full spectrum of colors. However, you can limit the range of hue (to show only a special color range) by explicitly requesting them after the name (for example, `--colormap=hsv,20,240`).

The mapping of a single-channel dataset to HSV is done through the Hue and Value elements: Lower dataset elements have lower "value" *and* lower "hue". This creates darker colors for fainter parts, while also respecting the range of colors.

`viridis` Viridis is the default colormap of the popular Matplotlib module of Python and available in many other visualization tools like PGFPlots.

`sls` The SLS color range, taken from the commonly used SAO DS9 (`http://ds9.si.edu`). The advantage of this color range is that it starts with black, going into dark blue and finishes with the brighter colors of red and white. So unlike the HSV color range, it includes black and white and brighter colors (like yellow, red) show the larger values.

`sls-inverse`
The inverse of the SLS color map (see above), where the lowest value corresponds to white and the highest value is black. While SLS is good for visualizing on the monitor, SLS-inverse is good for printing.

[14] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HSL_and_HSV`

`-l STR`
`--cmapblankcolor=STR`
Name of color to be used for blank pixels with the `--colormap` is used (a single channel input). For the list of color names that can be given to this option, run ConvertType with `--listcolors`.

This option will be ignored for the gray color map because the list of colors given to this option are defined on a 3-channel RGB color space. But image formats have single-channel formats for grayscale images that ConvertType also uses (to save storage space).

`--cmappgfplots`
Create a second output file containing the PGFPlots colormap definition for single-channel data that are to be displayed through a colormap. PGFPlots is a powerful plot creation package within LaTeX to create high-quality plots and figures in your papers, slides or reports. With this option, you can use Gnuastro colormaps that are not available in PGFPlots. For a fully working example of the usage of PGFPlots in combination with Gnuastro for high-quality figure generation (including this option), see Section 5.2.4 [Annotations for figure in paper], page 322.

`--rgbtohsv`
When there are three input channels and the output is in the FITS format, interpret the three input channels as red, green and blue channels (RGB) and convert them to the hue, saturation, value (HSV) color space.

The currently supported output formats of ConvertType do not have native support for HSV. Therefore this option is only supported when the output is in FITS format and each of the hue, saturation and value arrays can be saved as one FITS extension in the output for further analysis (for example, to select a certain color).

`-c STR`
`--change=STR`
(`=STR`) Change pixel values with the following format `"from1:to1, from2:to2,..."`. This option is very useful in displaying labeled pixels (not actual data images which have noise) like segmentation maps. In labeled images, usually a group of pixels have a fixed integer value. With this option, you can manipulate the labels before the image is displayed to get a better output for print or to emphasize on a particular set of labels and ignore the rest. The labels in the images will be changed in the same order given. By default first the pixel values will be converted then the pixel values will be truncated (see `--fluxlow` and `--fluxhigh`).

You can use any number for the values irrespective of your final output, your given values are stored and used in the double precision floating point format. So for example, if your input image has labels from 1 to 20000 and you only want to display those with labels 957 and 11342 then you can run ConvertType with these options:

```
$ astconvertt --change=957:50000,11342:50001 --fluxlow=5e4 \
   --fluxhigh=1e5 segmentationmap.fits --output=jpg
```

While the output JPEG format is only 8 bit, this operation is done in an intermediate step which is stored in double precision floating point. The pixel values are converted to 8-bit after all operations on the input fluxes have been complete. By placing the value in double quotes you can use as many spaces as you like for better readability.

`-C`
`--changeaftertrunc`
Change pixel values (with `--change`) after truncation of the flux values, by default it is the opposite.

`-L FLT`
`--fluxlow=FLT`
The minimum flux (pixel value) to display in the output image, any pixel value below this value will be set to this value in the output. If the value to this option is the same as `--fluxhigh`, then no flux truncation will be applied. Note that when multiple channels are given, this value is used for all the color channels.

`-H FLT`
`--fluxhigh=FLT`
The maximum flux (pixel value) to display in the output image, see `--fluxlow`.

`-m INT`
`--maxbyte=INT`
This is only used for the JPEG and EPS output formats which have an 8-bit space for each channel of each pixel. The maximum value in each pixel can therefore be $2^8 - 1 = 255$. With this option you can change (decrease) the maximum value. By doing so you will decrease the dynamic range. It can be useful if you plan to use those values for other purposes.

`-A`
`--forcemin`
Enforce the value of `--fluxlow` (when it is given), even if it is smaller than the minimum of the dataset and the output is format supporting color. This is particularly useful when you are converting a number of images to a common image format like JPEG or PDF with a single command and want them all to have the same range of colors, independent of the contents of the dataset. Note that if the minimum value is smaller than `--fluxlow`, then this option is redundant.

By default, when the dataset only has two values, *and* the output format is PDF or EPS, ConvertType will use the PostScript optimization that allows setting the pixel values per bit, not byte (Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317). This can greatly help reduce the file size. However, when `--fluxlow` or `--fluxhigh` are called, this optimization is disabled: even though there are only two values (is binary), the difference between them does not correspond to the full contrast of black and white.

`-B`
`--forcemax`
Similar to `--forcemin`, but for the maximum.

`-i`
`--invert` For 8-bit output types (JPEG, EPS, and PDF for example) the final value that is stored is inverted so white becomes black and vice versa. The reason for this is that astronomical images usually have a very large area of blank sky in them. The result will be that a large are of the image will be black. This behavior is ideal for gray-scale images, if you want a color image, the colors are going to be mixed up.

Special considerations for this option:

- For single-channel inputs (when `--colormap` becomes necessary), this option only affects `--colormap=gray`.

5.2.5.3 Drawing with vector graphics

With the options described in this section, you can draw marks over your to-be-published images (for example, in PDF). Each mark can be highly customized so they can have different shapes, colors, line widths, text, text size, etc. The properties of the marks should be stored in a table that is given to the `--marks` option described below. A fully working demo on adding marks is provided in Section 2.1.21 [Marking objects for publication], page 69.

An important factor to consider when drawing vector graphics is that vector graphics standards (the PostScript standard in this case) use a "point" as the primary unit of line thickness or font size. Such that 72 points correspond to 1 inch (or 2.54 centimeters). In other words, there are roughly 3 PostScript points in every millimeter. On the other hand, the pixels of the images you plan to show as the background do not have any real size! Pixels are abstract and can be associated with any print-size.

In ConvertType, the print-size of your final image is set with the `--widthincm` option (see Section 5.2.5.1 [ConvertType input and output], page 332). The value to `--widthincm` is the to-be width of the image in centimeters. It therefore defines the thickness of lines or font sizes for your vector graphics features (like the image border or marks). Just recall that we are not talking about resolution! Vector graphics have infinite resolution! We are talking about the relative thickness of the lines (or font sizes) in relation to the pixels in your background image.

`-b INT`
`--borderwidth=INT`
The width of the border to be put around the EPS and PDF outputs in units of PostScript points. If you are planning on adding a border, its thickness in relation to your image pixel sizes is highly correlated with the value you give to the `--widthincm` parameter. See the description at the start of this section for more.

Unfortunately in the document structuring convention of the PostScript language, the "bounding box" has to be in units of PostScript points with no fractions allowed. So the border values only have to be specified in integers. To have a final border that is thinner than one PostScript point in your document, you can ask for a larger width in ConvertType and then scale down the output EPS or PDF file in your document preparation program. For example, by setting `width` in your `includegraphics` command in TEX or LATEX to be larger

than the value to `--widthincm`. Since it is vector graphics, the changes of size have no effect on the quality of your output (pixels do not get different values).

`--bordercolor=STR`
: The name of the color to use for border that will be put around the EPS and PDF outputs. The list of available colors, along with their name and an example can be seen with the following command (also see Section 5.2.3.3 [Vector graphics colors], page 322):

```
$ astconvertt --listcolors
```

This option only accepts the name of the color, not the numeric identifier.

`--marks=STR`
: Draw vector graphics (infinite resolution) marks over the image. The value to this option should be the file name of a table containing the mark information. The table given to this option can have various properties for each mark in each column. You can specify which column contains which property of the marks using the options below that start with `--mark`. Only two property columns are mandatory (`--markcoords`), the rest are optional.

The table can be in any of the Gnuastro's Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285. For more on the difference between vector and raster graphics, see Section 5.2.1 [Raster and Vector graphics], page 316. For example, if your table with mark information is called `my-marks.fits`, you can use the command below to draw red circles of radius 5 pixels over the coordinates.

```
$ astconvertt image.fits --output=image.pdf \
              --marks=marks.fits --mode=wcs \
              --markcoords=RA,DEC
```

You can highly customize each mark with different columns in `marks.fits` using the `--mark*` options below (for example, using different colors, different shapes, different sizes, text, and the rest on each mark).

`--markshdu=STR/INT`
: The HDU (or extension) name or number of the table containing mark properties (file given to `--marks`). This is only relevant if the table is in the FITS format and there is more than one HDU in the FITS file.

`-r STR,STR`
`--markcoords=STR,STR`
: The column names (or numbers) containing the coordinates of each mark (in table given to `--marks`). Only two values should be given to this option (one for each coordinate). They can either be given to one call (`--markcoords=RA,DEC`) or in separate calls (`--markcoords=RA --markcoords=DEC`).

When `--mode=image` the columns will be associated to the horizontal/vertical coordinates of the image, and interpreted in units of pixels. In `--mode=wcs`, the columns will be associated to the WCS coordinates (typically Right Ascension and Declination, in units of degrees).

`-O STR`
`--mode=STR`
The coordinate mode for interpreting the values in the columns given to the `--markcoord1` and `--markcoord2` options. The acceptable values are either `img` (for image or pixel coordinates), and `wcs` for World Coordinate System (typically RA and Dec). For the WCS-mode, the input image should have the necessary WCS keywords, otherwise ConvertType will crash.

`--markshape=STR/INT`
The column name(s), or number(s), containing the shapes of each mark (in table given to `--marks`). The shapes can either be identified by their name, or their numerical identifier. If identifying them by name in a plain-text table, you need to define a string column (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287). The full list of names is shown below, with their numerical identifier in parenthesis afterwards. For each shape, you can also specify properties such as the size, line width, rotation, and color. See the description of the relevant `--mark*` option below.

`circle (1)`
A circular circumference. It's *radius* is defined by a single size element (the first column given to `--marksize`). Any value in the second size column (if given for other shapes in the same call) are ignored by this shape.

`plus (2)` The plus sign (+). The *length of its lines* is defined by a single size element (the first column given to `--marksize`). Such that the intersection of its lines is on the central coordinate of the mark. Any value in the second size column (if given for other shapes in the same call) are ignored by this shape.

`cross (3)` A multiplication sign (×). The *length of its lines* is defined by a single size element (the first column given to `--marksize`). Such that the intersection of its lines is on the central coordinate of the mark. Any value in the second size column (if given for other shapes in the same call) are ignored by this shape.

`ellipse (4)`
An elliptical circumference. Its major axis radius is defined by the first size element (first column given to `--marksize`), and its axis ratio is defined through the second size element (second column given to `--marksize`).

`point (5)` A point (or a filled circle). Its *radius* is defined by a single size element (the first column given to `--marksize`). Any value in the second size column (if given for other shapes in the same call) are ignored by this shape.

This filled circle mark is defined as a "point" because it is usually relevant as a small size (or point in the whole image). But there is no limit on its size, so it can be arbitrarily large.

`square (6)`
A square circumference. Its *edge length* is defined by a single size element (the first column given to `--marksize`). Any value in the second size column (if given for other shapes in the same call) are ignored by this shape.

`rectangle (7)`
A rectangular circumference. Its length along the horizontal image axis is defined by first size element (first column given to `--marksize`), and its length along the vertical image axis is defined through the second size element (second column given to `--marksize`).

`line (8)` A line. The line's *length* is defined by a single size element (the first column given to `--marksize`. The line will be centered on the given coordinate. Like all shapes, you can rotate the line about its center using the `--markrotate` column. Any value in the second size column (if given for other shapes in the same call) are ignored by this shape.

`--markrotate=STR/INT`
Column name or number that contains the mark's rotation angle. The rotation angle should be in degrees and be relative to the horizontal axis of the image.

`--marksize=STR[,STR]`
The column name(s), or number(s), containing the size(s) of each mark (in table given to `--marks`). All shapes need at least one "size" parameter and some need two. For the interpretation of the size column(s) for each shape, see the `--markshape` option's description. Since the size column(s) is (are) optional, when not specified, default values will be used (which may be too small in larger images, so you need to change them).

By default, the values in the size column are assumed to be in the same units as the coordinates (defined by the `--mode` option, described above). However, when the coordinates are in WCS-mode, some special cases may occur for the size.

- The native WCS units (usually degrees) can be too large, and it may be more convenient for the values in the size column(s) to be in arc-seconds. In this case, you can use the `--sizeinarcsec` option.
- Similar to above, but in units of arc-minutes. In this case, you can use the `--sizeinarcmin` option.
- Your sizes may be in units of pixels, not the WCS units. In this case, you can use the `--sizeinpix` option.

`--sizeinpix`
In WCS-mode, assume that the sizes are in units of pixels. By default, when in WCS-mode, the sizes are assumed to be in the units of the WCS coordinates (usually degrees).

`--sizeinarcsec`
: In WCS-mode, assume that the sizes are in units of arc-seconds. By default, when in WCS-mode, the sizes are assumed to be in the units of the WCS coordinates (usually degrees).

`--sizeinarcmin`
: In WCS-mode, assume that the sizes are in units of arc-seconds. By default, when in WCS-mode, the sizes are assumed to be in the units of the WCS coordinates (usually degrees).

`--marklinewidth=STR/INT`
: Column containing the width (thickness) of the line to draw each mark. The line width is measured in units of "points" (where 72 points is one inch), and it can be any positive floating point number. Therefore, the thickness (in relation to the pixels of your image) depends on `--widthincm` option. For more, see the description at the start of this section.

`--markcolor=STR/INT`
: Column containing the color of the mark. This column can be either a string or an integer. As a string, the color name can be written directly in your table (this greatly helps in human readability). For more on string columns see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287. As an integer, you can simply use the numerical identifier of the column. You can see the list of colors with their names and numerical identifiers in Gnuastro by running ConvertType with `--listcolors`, or see Section 5.2.3.3 [Vector graphics colors], page 322.

`--listcolors`
: The list of acceptable color names, their codes and their representation can be seen with the `--listcolors` option. By "representation" we mean that the color will be shown on the terminal as the background in that column. But this will only be properly visible with "true color" or 24-bit terminals, see ANSI escape sequence standard (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ANSI_escape_code`). Most modern GNU/Linux terminals support 24-bit colors natively, and no modification is necessary. For macOS, see the box below.

  The printed text in standard output is in the Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287, so if you want to store this table, you can simply pipe the output to Gnuastro's Table program and store it as a FITS table:

```
$ astconvertt --listcolors | astttable -ocolors.fits
```

  macOS terminal colors: as of August 2022, the default macOS terminal (iTerm) does not support 24-bit colors! The output of `--listlines` therefore does not display the actual colors (you can only use the color names). One tested solution is to install and use iTerm2 (`https://iterm2.com`), which is free software and available in Homebrew (`https://formulae.brew.sh/cask/iterm2`). iTerm2 is described as a successor for iTerm and works on macOS 10.14 (released in September 2018) or newer.

`--marktext=STR/INT`
: Column name or number that contains the text that should be printed under the mark. If the column is numeric, the number will be printed under the mark (for example, if you want to write the magnitude or redshift of the object under the mark showing it). For the precision of writing floating point columns, see `--marktextprecision`. But if the column has a string format (for example, the name of the object like an NGC1234), you need to define the column as a string column (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287).

  For text with different lengths, set the length in the definition of the column to the maximum length of the strings to be printed. If there are some rows or marks that don't require text, set the string in this column to `n/a` (not applicable; the blank value for strings in Gnuastro). When having strings with different lengths, make sure to have enough white spaces (for the shorter strings) so the adjacent columns are not taken as part of the string (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287).

`--marktextprecision=INT`
: The number of decimal digits to print after the floating point. This is only relevant when `--marktext` is given, and the selected column has a floating point format.

`--markfont=STR/INT`
: Column name or number that contains the font for the displayed text under the mark. This is only relevant if `--marktext` is called. The font should be accessible by Ghostscript.

  If you are not familiar with the available fonts on your system's Ghostscript, you can use the `--showfonts` option to see all the fonts in a custom PDF file (one page per font). If you are already familiar with the font you want, but just want to make sure about its presence (or spelling!), you can get a list (on standard output) of all the available fonts with the `--listfonts` option. Both are described below.

  It is possible to add custom fonts to Ghostscript as described in the Fonts section (`https://ghostscript.com/doc/current/Fonts.htm`) of the Ghostscript manual.

`--markfontsize=STR/INT`
: Column name or number that contains the font size to use. This is only relevant if a text column has been defined (with `--marktext`, described above). The font size is in units of "point"s, see description at the start of this section for more.

`--showfonts`
: Create a special PDF file that shows the name and shape of all available fonts in your system's Ghostscript. You can use this for selecting the best font to put in the `--markfonts` column. The available fonts can differ from one system to another (depending on how Ghostscript was configured in that system). The PDF file's name is constructed by appending a `-fonts.pdf` to the file name given to the `--output` option.

  The PDF file will have one page for each font, and the sizes of the pages are customized for showing the fonts (each page is horizontally elongated). This

helps to better check the files by disable "continuous" mode in your PDF viewer, and setting the zoom such that the width of the page corresponds to the width of your PDF viewer. Simply pressing the left/right keys will then nicely show each fonts separately.

`--listfonts`
: Print (to standard output) the names of all available fonts in Ghostscript that you can use for the `--markfonts` column. The available fonts can differ from one system to another (depending on how Ghostscript was configured in that system). If you are not already familiar with the shape of each font, please use `--showfonts` (described above).

5.3 Table

Tables are the high-level products of processing on low-leveler data like images or spectra. For example, in Gnuastro, MakeCatalog will process the pixels over an object and produce a catalog (or table) with the properties of each object such as magnitudes and positions (see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582). Each one of these properties is a column in its output catalog (or table) and for each input object, we have a row.

When there are only a small number of objects (rows) and not too many properties (columns), then a simple plain text file is mainly enough to store, transfer, or even use the produced data. However, to be more efficient, astronomers have defined the FITS binary table standard to store data in a binary format (which cannot be seen in a text editor text). This can offer major advantages: the file size will be greatly reduced and the reading and writing will also be faster (because the RAM and CPU also work in binary). The acceptable table formats are fully described in Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284.

Binary tables are not easily readable with basic plain-text editors. There is no fixed/unified standard on how the zero and ones should be interpreted. Unix-like operating systems have flourished because of a simple fact: communication between the various tools is based on human readable characters[15]. So while the FITS table standards are very beneficial for the tools that recognize them, they are hard to use in the vast majority of available software. This creates limitations for their generic use.

Table is Gnuastro's solution to this problem. Table has a large set of operations that you can directly do on any recognized table (such as selecting certain rows and doing arithmetic on the columns). For operations that Table does not do internally, FITS tables (ASCII or binary) are directly accessible to the users of Unix-like operating systems (in particular those working the command-line or shell, see Section 1.8.1 [Command-line interface], page 13). With Table, a FITS table (in binary or ASCII formats) is only one command away from AWK (or any other tool you want to use). Just like a plain text file that you read with the `cat` command. You can pipe the output of Table into any other tool for higher-level processing, see the examples in Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362, for some simple examples.

[15] In "The art of Unix programming", Eric Raymond makes this suggestion to programmers: "When you feel the urge to design a complex binary file format, or a complex binary application protocol, it is generally wise to lie down until the feeling passes.". This is a great book and strongly recommended, give it a look if you want to truly enjoy your work/life in this environment.

In the sections below we describe how to effectively use the Table program. We start with Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, where the basic concept and methods of applying arithmetic operations on one or more columns are discussed. Afterwards, in Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357, we review the various types of operations available and their precedence in an instance of calling Table. This is a good place to get a general feeling of all the things you can do with Table. Finally, in Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362, we give some examples and describe each option in Table.

5.3.1 Printing floating point numbers

Many of the columns containing astronomical data will contain floating point numbers (those that aren't an integer, like 1.23 or 4.56×10^{-7}). However, printing (for human readability) of floating point numbers has some intricacies that we will explain in this section. For a basic introduction to different types of integers or floating points, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

It may be tempting to simply use 64-bit floating points all the time and avoid this section over all. But have in mind that compared to 32-bit floating point type, a 64-bit floating point type will consume double the storage, double the RAM and will take almost double the time for processing. So when the statistical precision of your numbers is less than that offered by 32-bit floating point precision, it is much better to store them in this format.

Within almost all commonly used CPUs of today, numbers (including integers or floating points) are stored in binary base-2 format (where the only digits that can be used to represent the number are 0 and 1). However, we (humans) are use to numbers in base-10 (where we have 10 digits: 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9). For integers, there is a one-to-one correspondence between a base-2 and base-10 representation. Therefore, converting a base-10 integer (that you will be giving as an option value when running a Gnuastro program, for example) to base-2 (that the computer will store in memory), or vice-versa, will not cause any loss of information for integers.

The problem is that floating point numbers don't have such a one-to-one correspondence between the two notations. The full discussion on how floating point numbers are stored in binary format is beyond the scope of this book. But please have a look at the corresponding Wikipedia article (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Floating-point_arithmetic`) to get a rough feeling about the complexity. Of course, if you are interested in the details, that Wikipedia article should be a good starting point for further reading.

The most common convention for storing floating point numbers in digital storage is IEEE Standard for Floating-Point Arithmetic; IEEE 754 (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE_754`). In short, the full width (in bits) assigned to that type (for example the 32 bits allocated for 32-bit floating point types) is divided into separate components: The first bit is the "sign" (specifying if the number is negative or positive). In 32-bit floats, the next 8 bits are the "exponent" and finally (again, in 32-bit floats), the "fraction" is stored in the next 23 bits. For example see this image on Wikipedia (`https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Float_example.svg`).

In IEEE 754, around zero, the base-2 and base-10 representations approximately match. However, as we go away from 0, you will loose precision. The important concept in understanding the precision of floating point numbers is "decimal digits", or the number of digits in the number, independent of where the decimal point is. For example 1.23 has three

decimal digits and 4.5678×10^9 has 5 decimal digits. According to IEEE 754[16], 32-bit and 64-bit floating point numbers can accurately (statistically) represent a floating point with 7.22 and 15.95 decimal digits respectively.

Should I store my columns as 32-bit or 64-bit floating point type? If your floating point numbers have 7 decimal digits or less (for example noisy image pixel values, measured star or galaxy magnitudes, and anything that is derived from them like galaxy mass and etc), you can safely use 32-bit precision (the statistical error on the measurements is usually significantly larger than 7 digits!). However, some columns require more digits; thus 64-bit precision. For example, RA or Dec with more than one arcsecond accuracy: the degrees can have 3 digits, and 1 arcsecond is $1/3600 \sim 0.0003$ of a degree, requiring 4 more digits). You can use the Section 6.2.4.15 [Numerical type conversion operators], page 452, of Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, to convert your columns to a certain type for storage.

The discussion above was for the storage of floating point numbers. When printing floating point numbers in a human-friendly format (for example, in a plain-text file or on standard output in the command-line), the computer has to convert its internal base-2 representation to a base-10 representation. This second conversion may cause a small discrepancy between the stored and printed values.

Use FITS tables as output of measurement programs: When you are doing a measurement to produce a catalog (for example with Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582) set the output to be a FITS table (for example `--output=mycatalog.fits`). A FITS binary table will store the same the base-2 number that was measured by the CPU. However, if you choose to store the output table as a plain-text table, you risk loosing information due to the human friendly base-10 floating point conversion (which is necessary in a plain-text output).

To customize how columns containing floating point values are printed (in a plain-text output file, or in the standard output in your terminal), Table has four options for the two different types: `--txtf32format`, `--txtf32precision`, `--txtf64format` and `--txtf64precision`. They are fully described in Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362.

Summary: it is therefore recommended to always store your tables as FITS (binary) tables. To view the contents of the table on the command-line or to feed it to a program that doesn't recognize FITS tables, you can use the four options above for a custom base-10 conversion that will not cause any loss of data.

5.3.2 Vector columns

In its most common format, each column of a table only has a single value in each row. For example, we usually have one column for the magnitude, another column for the RA (Right Ascension) and yet another column for the DEC (Declination) of a set of galaxies/stars (where each galaxy is represented by one row in the table). This common single-valued

[16] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IEEE_754#Basic_and_interchange_formats`

column format is sufficient in many scenarios. However, in some situations (like those below) it would help to have multiple values for each row in each column, not just one.

- Conceptually: the various numbers are "connected" to each other. In other words, their order and position in relation to each other matters. Common examples in astronomy are the radial profiles of each galaxy in your catalog, or their spectrum. For example, each MUSE[17] spectra has 3681 points (with a sampling of of 1.25 Angstroms).

  Dealing with this many separate measurements as separate columns in your table is very annoying and prone to error: you don't want to forget moving some of them in an output table for further analysis, mistakenly change their order, or do some operation only on a sub-set of them.
- Technically: in the FITS standard, you can only store a maximum of 999 columns in a FITS table. Therefore, if you have more than 999 data points for each galaxy (like the MUSE spectra example above), it is impossible to store each point in one table as separate columns.

To address these problems, the FITS standard has defined the concept of "vector" columns in its Binary table format (ASCII FITS tables don't support vector columns, but Gnuastro's plain-text format does, as described here). Within each row of a single vector column, we can store any number of data points (like the MUSE spectra above or the full radial profile of each galaxy). All the values in a vector column have to have the same Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, and the number of elements within each vector column is the same for all rows.

By grouping conceptually similar data points (like a spectrum) in one vector column, we can significantly reduce the number of columns and make it much more manageable, without loosing any information! To demonstrate the vector column features of Gnuastro's Table program, let's start with a randomly generated small (5 rows and 3 columns) catalog. This will allows us to show the outputs of each step here, but you can apply the same concept to vectors with any number of columns.

With the command below, we use `seq` to generate a single-column table that is piped to Gnuastro's Table program. Table then uses column arithmetic to generate three columns with random values from that column (for more, see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350). Each column becomes noisy, with standard deviations of 2, 5 and 10. Finally, we will add metadata to each column, giving each a different name (using names is always the best way to work with columns):

```
$ seq 1 5 \
      | asttable -c'arith $1 2  mknoise-sigma f32' \
                 -c'arith $1 5  mknoise-sigma f32' \
                 -c'arith $1 10 mknoise-sigma f32' \
                 --colmetadata=1,abc,none,"First column." \
                 --colmetadata=2,def,none,"Second column." \
                 --colmetadata=3,ghi,none,"Third column." \
                 --output=table.fits
```

With the command below, let's have a look at the table. When you run it, you will have a different random number generator seed, so the numbers will be slightly different. For

[17] `https://www.eso.org/sci/facilities/develop/instruments/muse.html`

making reproducible random numbers, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410. The `-Y` option is used for more easily readable numbers (without it, floating point numbers are written in scientific notation, for more see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345) and with the `-O` we are asking Table to also print the metadata. For more on Table's options, see Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362, and for seeing how the short options can be merged (such that `-Y -O` is identical to `-YO`), see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251.

```
$ asttable table.fits -YO
# Column 1: abc [none,f32,] First column.
# Column 2: def [none,f32,] Second column.
# Column 3: ghi [none,f32,] Third column.
1.074           5.535         -4.464
0.606          -2.011          15.397
1.475           1.811          5.687
2.248           7.663         -7.789
6.355           17.374         6.767
```

We see that indeed, it has three columns, with our given names. Now, let's assume that you want to make a two-element vector column from the values in the `def` and `ghi` columns. To do that, you can use the `--tovector` option like below. As the name suggests, `--tovector` will merge the rows of the two columns into one vector column with multiple values in each row.

```
$ asttable table.fits -YO --tovector=def,ghi
# Column 1: abc        [none,f32   ,] First column.
# Column 2: def-VECTOR [none,f32(2),] Vector by merging multiple cols.
1.074           5.535         -4.464
0.606          -2.011          15.397
1.475           1.811          5.687
2.248           7.663         -7.789
6.355           17.374         6.767
```

If you ignore the metadata, this doesn't seem to have changed anything! You see that each line of numbers still has three "tokens" (to distinguish them from "columns"). But once you look at the metadata, you only see metadata for two columns, not three. If you look closely, the numeric data type of the newly added fourth column is '`f32(2)`' (look above; previously it was `f32`). The `(2)` shows that the second column contains two numbers/tokens not one. If your vector column consisted of 3681 numbers, this would be `f32(3681)`. Looking again at the metadata, we see that `--tovector` has also created a new name and comments for the new column. This is done all the time to avoid confusion with the old columns.

Let's confirm that the newly added column is indeed a single column but with two values. To do this, with the command below, we'll write the output into a FITS table. In the same command, let's also give a more suitable name for the new merged/vector column). We can get a first confirmation by looking at the table's metadata in the second command below:

```
$ asttable table.fits -YO --tovector=def,ghi --output=vec.fits \
          --colmetadata=2,vector,nounits,"New vector column."
```

```
$ asttable vec.fits -i
--------
vec.fits (hdu: 1)
-------    -----    ----        -------
No.Name    Units    Type        Comment
-------    -----    ----        -------
1  abc     none     float32     First column.
2  vector  nounits  float32(2)  New vector column.
--------
Number of rows: 5
--------
```

A more robust confirmation would be to print the values in the newly added `vector` column. As expected, asking for a single column with `--column` (or `-c`) will given us two numbers per row/line (instead of one!).

```
$ asttable vec.fits -c vector -YO
# Column 1: vector [nounits,f32(2),] New vector column.
 5.535         -4.464
-2.011          15.397
 1.811          5.687
 7.663         -7.789
 17.374         6.767
```

If you want to keep the original single-valued columns that went into the vector column, you can use the `--keepvectfin` option (read it as "KEEP VECtor To/From Inputs"):

```
$ asttable table.fits -YO --tovector=def,ghi --keepvectfin \
           --colmetadata=4,vector,nounits,"New vector column."
# Column 1: abc    [none   ,f32   ,] First column.
# Column 2: def    [none   ,f32   ,] Second column.
# Column 3: ghi    [none   ,f32   ,] Third column.
# Column 4: vector [nounits,f32(2),] New vector column.
1.074           5.535         -4.464          5.535         -4.464
0.606          -2.011          15.397        -2.011          15.397
1.475           1.811          5.687          1.811          5.687
2.248           7.663         -7.789          7.663         -7.789
6.355           17.374         6.767          17.374         6.767
```

Now that you know how to create vector columns, let's assume you have the inverse scenario: you want to extract one of the values of a vector column into a separate single-valued column. To do this, you can use the `--fromvector` option. The `--fromvector` option takes the name (or counter) of a vector column, followed by any number of integer counters (counting from 1). It will extract those elements into separate single-valued columns. For example, let's assume you want to extract the second element of the `defghi` column in the file you made before:

```
$ asttable vec.fits --fromvector=vector,2 -YO
# Column 1: abc      [none   ,f32,] First column.
# Column 2: vector-2 [nounits,f32,] New vector column.
1.074          -4.464
```

```
0.606           15.397
1.475           5.687
2.248          -7.789
6.355           6.767
```

Just like the case with `--tovector` above, if you want to keep the input vector column, use `--keepvectfin`. This feature is useful in scenarios where you want to select some rows based on a single element (or multiple) of the vector column.

Vector columns and FITS ASCII tables: As mentioned above, the FITS standard only recognizes vector columns in its Binary table format (the default FITS table format in Gnuastro). You can still use the `--tableformat=fits-ascii` option to write your tables in the FITS ASCII format (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254). In this case, if a vector column is present, it will be written as separate single-element columns to avoid loosing information (as if you run called `--fromvector` on all the elements of the vector column). A warning is printed if this occurs.

For an application of the vector column concepts introduced here on MUSE data, see the 3D data cube tutorial and in particular these two sections: Section 2.5.5 [3D measurements and spectra], page 143, and Section 2.5.6 [Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it], page 147.

5.3.3 Column arithmetic

In many scenarios, you want to apply some kind of operation on the columns and save them in another table or feed them into another program. With Table you can do a rich set of operations on the contents of one or more columns in a table, and save the resulting values as new column(s) in the output table. For seeing the precedence of Column arithmetic in relation to other Table operators, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

To enable column arithmetic, the first 6 characters of the value to `--column` (`-c`) should be the activation word '`arith` ' (note the space character in the end, after '`arith`'). After the activation word, you can use reverse polish notation to identify the operators and their operands, see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404. Just note that white-space characters are used between the tokens of the arithmetic expression and that they are meaningful to the command-line environment. Therefore the whole expression (including the activation word) has to be quoted on the command-line or in a shell script (see the examples below).

To identify a column you can directly use its name, or specify its number (counting from one, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289). When you are giving a column number, it is necessary to prefix the number with a `$`, similar to AWK. Otherwise the number is not distinguishable from a constant number to use in the arithmetic operation.

For example, with the command below, the first two columns of `table.fits` will be printed along with a third column that is the result of multiplying the first column with 10^{10} (for example, to convert wavelength from Meters to Angstroms). Note that without the '`$`', it is not possible to distinguish between "1" as a column-counter, or "1" as a constant number to use in the arithmetic operation. Also note that because of the significance of `$`

for the command-line environment, the single-quotes are the recommended quoting method (as in an AWK expression), not double-quotes (for the significance of using single quotes see the box below).

```
$ asttable table.fits -c1,2 -c'arith $1 1e10 x'
```

Single quotes when string contains `$`: On the command-line, or in shell-scripts, `$` is used to expand variables, for example, `echo $PATH` prints the value (a string of characters) in the variable `PATH`, it will not simply print `$PATH`. This operation is also permitted within double quotes, so `echo "$PATH"` will produce the same output. This is good when printing values, for example, in the command below, `$PATH` will expand to the value within it.

```
$ echo "My path is: $PATH"
```

If you actually want to return the literal string `$PATH`, not the value in the `PATH` variable (like the scenario here in column arithmetic), you should put it in single quotes like below. The printed value here will include the `$`, please try it to see for yourself and compare to above.

```
$ echo 'My path is: $PATH'
```

Therefore, when your column arithmetic involves the `$` sign (to specify columns by number), quote your `arith` string with a single quotation mark. Otherwise you can use both single or double quotes.

Manipulate all columns in one call using `$_all`: Usually we manipulate one column in one call of column arithmetic. For instance, with the command below the elements of the `AWAV` column will be sumed.

```
$ asttable table.fits -c'arith AWAV sumvalue'
```

But sometimes, we want to manipulate more than one column with the same expression. For example we want to sum all the elements of all the columns. In this case we could use the following command (assuming that the table has four different `AWAV-*` columns):

```
$ asttable table.fits -c'arith AWAV-1 sumvalue' \
                      -c'arith AWAV-2 sumvalue' \
                      -c'arith AWAV-3 sumvalue' \
                      -c'arith AWAV-4 sumvalue'
```

To avoid repetition and mistakes, instead of using column arithmetic many times, we can use the `$_all` identifier. When column arithmetic confronts this special string, it will repeat the expression for all the columns in the input table. Therefore the command above can be written as:

```
$ asttable table.fits -c'arith $_all sumvalue'
```

Alternatively, if the columns have meta-data and the first two are respectively called `AWAV` and `SPECTRUM`, the command above is equivalent to the command below. Note that the character '`$`' is no longer necessary in this scenario (because names will not be confused with numbers):

```
$ asttable table.fits -cAWAV,SPECTRUM -c'arith AWAV 1e10 x'
```

Comparison of the two commands above clearly shows why it is recommended to use column names instead of numbers. When the columns have descriptive names, the command/script actually becomes much more readable, describing the intent of the operation. It is also independent of the low-level table structure: for the second command, the column numbers of the `AWAV` and `SPECTRUM` columns in `table.fits` is irrelevant.

Column arithmetic changes the values of the data within the column. So the old column metadata cannot be used any more. By default the output column of the arithmetic operation will be given a generic metadata (for example, its name will be `ARITH_1`, which is hardly useful!). But metadata are critically important and it is good practice to always have short, but descriptive, names for each columns, units and also some comments for more explanation. To add metadata to a column, you can use the `--colmetadata` option that is described in Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362, and Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

Since the arithmetic expressions are a value to `--column`, it does not necessarily have to be a separate option, so the commands above are also identical to the command below (note that this only has one `-c` option). Just be very careful with the quoting! With the `--colmetadata` option, we are also giving a name, units and a comment to the third column.

```
$ asttable table.fits -cAWAV,SPECTRUM,'arith AWAV 1e10 x' \
          --colmetadata=3,AWAV_A,angstrom,"Wavelength (in Angstroms)"
```

In case you need to append columns from other tables (with `--catcolumnfile`), you can use those extra columns in column arithmetic also. The easiest, and most robust, way is that your columns of interest (in all files whose columns are to be merged) have different names. In this scenario, you can simply use the names of the columns you plan to append. If there are similar names, note that by default Table appends a `-N` to similar names (where `N` is the file counter given to `--catcolumnfile`, see the description of `--catcolumnfile` for more). Using column numbers can get complicated: if the number is smaller than the main input's number of columns, the main input's column will be used. Otherwise (when the requested column number is larger than the main input's number of columns), the final output (after appending all the columns from all the possible files) column number will be used.

Almost all the arithmetic operators of Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412, are also supported for column arithmetic in Table. In particular, the few that are not present in the Gnuastro library[18] are not yet supported for column arithmetic. Besides the operators in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412, several operators are only available in Table to use on table columns.

`wcs-to-img`
: Convert the given WCS positions to image/dataset coordinates based on the number of dimensions in the WCS structure of `--wcshdu` extension/HDU in `--wcsfile`. It will output the same number of columns. The first popped operand is the last FITS dimension.

[18] For a list of the Gnuastro library arithmetic operators, please see the macros starting with `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP` and ending with the operator name in Section 12.3.14 [Arithmetic on datasets (`arithmetic.h`)], page 856.

For example, the two commands below (which have the same output) will produce 5 columns. The first three columns are the input table's ID, RA and Dec columns. The fourth and fifth columns will be the pixel positions in `image.fits` that correspond to each RA and Dec.

```
$ asttable table.fits -cID,RA,DEC,'arith RA DEC wcs-to-img' \
           --wcsfile=image.fits
$ asttable table.fits -cID,RA -cDEC \
           -c'arith RA DEC wcs-to-img' --wcsfile=image.fits
```

`img-to-wcs`

Similar to `wcs-to-img`, except that image/dataset coordinates are converted to WCS coordinates.

`eq-j2000-to-flat`

Convert spherical RA and Dec (in Julian year 2000.0 equatorial coordinates; which are the most common) into RA and Dec on a flat surface based on the given reference point and projection. The full details of the operands to this operator are given below, but let's start with a practical example to show the concept.

At (or very near) the reference point the output of this operator will be the same as the input. But as you move away from the reference point, distortions due to the particular projection will gradually cause changes in the output (when compared to the input). For example if you simply plot RA and Dec without this operator, a circular annulus on the sky will become elongated as the declination of its center goes farther from the equator. For a demonstration of the difference between curved and flat RA and Decs, see Section 2.8.5 [Pointings that account for sky curvature], page 186, in the Tutorials chapter.

Let's assume you want to plot a set of RA and Dec points (defined on a spherical surface) in a paper (a flat surface) and that `table.fits` contains the RA and Dec in columns that are called `RA` and `DEC`. With the command below, the points will be converted to flat-RA and flat-Dec using the Gnomonic projection (which is known as `TAN` in the FITS WSC standard; see the description of the first popped operand below):

```
$ asttable table.fits \
           -c'arith RA set-r DEC set-d \
                    r d r meanvalue d meanvalue TAN \
                    eq-j2000-to-flat'
```

As you see, the RA and Dec (`r` and `d`) are the last two operators that are popped. Before them, the reference point's coordinates are calculated from the mean of the RA and Decs ('`r meanvalue`' and '`d meanvalue`'), and the first popped operand is the projection (`TAN`). We are using the mean RA and Dec as the reference point since we are assuming that this is the only set of points you want to convert. In case you have to plot multiple sets of points in the same plot, you should give the same reference point in each separate conversion; like the example below:

```
$ ref_ra=123.45
$ ref_dec=-6.789
```

```
$ asttable table-1.fits --output=flat-1.txt \
           -c'arith RA DEC '$ref_ra' '$ref_dec' TAN \
                    eq-j2000-to-flat'
$ asttable table-2.fits --output=flat-2.txt \
           -c'arith RA DEC '$ref_ra' '$ref_dec' TAN \
                    eq-j2000-to-flat'
```

This operator takes 5 operands:

1. The *first* popped operand (closest to the operator) is the standard FITS WCS projection to use; and should contain a single element (not a column). The full list of projections can be seen in the description of the `--ctype` option in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508. The most common projection for smaller fields of view is `TAN` (Gnomonic), but when your input catalog contains large portions of the sky, projections like `MOL` (Mollweide) should be used. This is because distortions caused by the `TAN` projection can become very significant after a couple of degrees from the reference point.
2. The *second* popped operand is the reference point's declination; and should contain a single value (not a column).
3. The *third* popped operand is the reference point's right ascension; and should contain a single value (not a column).
4. The *fourth* popped operand is the declination column of your input table (the points that will be converted).
5. The *fifth* popped operand is the right ascension column of your input table (the points that will be converted).

`eq-j2000-from-flat`

The inverse of `eq-j2000-to-flat`. In other words, you have a set of points defined on the flat RA and Dec (after the projection from spherical to flat), but you want to map them to spherical RA and Dec. For an example, see Section 2.8.5 [Pointings that account for sky curvature], page 186, in the Gnuastro tutorials.

`distance-flat`

Return the distance between two points assuming they are on a flat surface. Note that each point needs two coordinates, so this operator needs four operands (currently it only works for 2D spaces). The first and second popped operands are considered to belong to one point and the third and fourth popped operands to the second point.

Each of the input points can be a single coordinate or a full table column (containing many points). In other words, the following commands are all valid:

```
$ asttable table.fits \
           -c'arith X1 Y1 X2 Y2 distance-flat'
$ asttable table.fits \
           -c'arith X Y 12.345 6.789 distance-flat'
$ asttable table.fits \
```

```
                -c'arith 12.345 6.789 X Y distance-flat'
```

In the first case we are assuming that `table.fits` has the following four columns `X1`, `Y1`, `X2`, `Y2`. The returned column by this operator will be the difference between two points in each row with coordinates like the following (`X1`, `Y1`) and (`X2`, `Y2`). In other words, for each row, the distance between different points is calculated. In the second and third cases (which are identical), it is assumed that `table.fits` has the two columns `X` and `Y`. The returned column by this operator will be the difference of each row with the fixed point at (12.345, 6.789).

`distance-on-sphere`

Return the spherical angular distance (along a great circle, in degrees) between the given two points. Note that each point needs two coordinates (in degrees), so this operator needs four operands. The first and second popped operands are considered to belong to one point and the third and fourth popped operands to the second point.

Each of the input points can be a single coordinate or a full table column (containing many points). In other words, the following commands are all valid:

```
$ asttable table.fits \
           -c'arith RA1 DEC1 RA2 DEC2 distance-on-sphere'
$ asttable table.fits \
           -c'arith RA DEC 9.876 5.432 distance-on-sphere'
$ asttable table.fits \
           -c'arith 9.876 5.432 RA DEC distance-on-sphere'
```

In the first case we are assuming that `table.fits` has the following four columns `RA1`, `DEC1`, `RA2`, `DEC2`. The returned column by this operator will be the difference between two points in each row with coordinates like the following (`RA1`, `DEC1`) and (`RA2`, `DEC2`). In other words, for each row, the angular distance between different points is calculated. In the second and third cases (which are identical), it is assumed that `table.fits` has the two columns `RA` and `DEC`. The returned column by this operator will be the difference of each row with the fixed point at (9.876, 5.432).

The distance (along a great circle) on a sphere between two points is calculated with the equation below, where r_1, r_2, d_1 and d_2 are the right ascensions and declinations of points 1 and 2.

$$\cos(d) = \sin(d_1)\sin(d_2) + \cos(d_1)\cos(d_2)\cos(r_1 - r_2)$$

`ra-to-degree`

Convert the hour-wise Right Ascension (RA) string, in the sexagesimal format of `_h_m_s` or `_:_:_`, to degrees. Note that the input column has to have a string format. In FITS tables, string columns are well-defined. For plain-text tables, please follow the standards defined in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287, otherwise the string column will not be read.

```
$ asttable catalog.fits -c'arith RA ra-to-degree'
```

```
$ asttable catalog.fits -c'arith $5 ra-to-degree'
```

`dec-to-degree`
: Convert the sexagesimal Declination (Dec) string, in the format of `_d_m_s` or `_:_:_`, to degrees (a single floating point number). For more details please see the `ra-to-degree` operator.

`degree-to-ra`
: Convert degrees (a column with a single floating point number) to the Right Ascension, RA, string (in the sexagesimal format hours, minutes and seconds, written as `_h_m_s`). The output will be a string column so no further mathematical operations can be done on it. The output file can be in any format (for example, FITS or plain-text). If it is plain-text, the string column will be written following the standards described in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

`degree-to-dec`
: Convert degrees (a column with a single floating point number) to the Declination, Dec, string (in the format of `_d_m_s`). See the `degree-to-ra` for more on the format of the output.

`date-to-sec`
: Return the number of seconds from the Unix epoch time (00:00:00 Thursday, January 1st, 1970). The input (popped) operand should be a string column in the FITS date format (most generally: `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.ddd...`).

  The returned operand will be named `UNIXSEC` (short for Unix-seconds) and will be a 64-bit, signed integer, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. If the input string has sub-second precision, it will be ignored because floating point numbers cannot accurately store numbers with many significant digits. To preserve sub-second precision, please use `date-to-millisec`.

  For example, in the example below we are using this operator, in combination with the `--keyvalue` option of the Fits program, to sort your desired FITS files by observation date (value in the `DATE-OBS` keyword in example below):

  ```
  $ astfits *.fits --keyvalue=DATE-OBS --colinfoinstdout \
            | asttable -cFILENAME,'arith DATE-OBS date-to-sec' \
                       --colinfoinstdout \
            | asttable --sort=UNIXSEC
  ```

  If you do not need to see the Unix-seconds any more, you can add a `-cFILENAME` (short for `--column=FILENAME`) at the end. For more on `--keyvalue`, see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304.

`date-to-millisec`
: Return the number of milli-seconds from the Unix epoch time (00:00:00 Thursday, January 1st, 1970). The input (popped) operand should be a string column in the FITS date format (most generally: `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.ddd...`, where `.ddd` is the optional sub-second component).

  The returned operand will be named `UNIXMILLISEC` (short for Unix milliseconds) and will be a 64-bit, signed integer, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. The returned value is not a floating point type because for

large numbers, floating point data types loose single-digit precision (which is important here).

Other than the units of the output, this operator behaves similarly to `date-to-sec`. See the description of that operator for an example.

`sorted-to-interval`

Given a single column (which must be already sorted and have a numeric data type), return two columns: the first returned column is the minimum and the second returned column is the maximum value of the interval of each row row. The maximum of each row is equal to the minimum of the previous row; thus creating a contiguous interval coverage of the input column's range in all rows.

The minimum value of the first row and maximum of the last row will be smaller/larger than the respective row of the input (based on the distance to the next/previous element). This is done to ensure that if your input has a fixed interval length between all elements, the first and last intervals also have that fixed length.

For example, with the command below, we'll use this operator on a hypothetical radial profile. Note how the intervals are contiguous even though the radius values are not equally distant (if the row with a radius of 2.5 didn't exist, the intervals would all be the same length). For another example of the usage of this operator, see the example in the description of `--customtable` in Section 8.1.4.2 [MakeProfiles profile settings], page 664.

```
$ cat radial-profile.txt
# Column 1: RADIUS [pix,f32,] Distance to center in pixels.
# Column 2: MEAN   [ADU,f32,] Mean value at that radius.
0    100
1    40
2    30
2.5  25
3    20

$ asttable radial-profile.txt --txtf32f=fixed --txtf32p=3 \
           -c'arith RADIUS sorted-to-interval',MEAN
-0.500        0.500         100.000
0.500         1.500         40.000
1.500         2.250         30.000
2.250         2.750         25.000
2.750         3.250         20.000
```

Such intervals can be useful in scenarios like generating the input to `--customtable` in MakeProfiles (see Section 8.1.4.2 [MakeProfiles profile settings], page 664) from a radial profile (see Section 10.2 [Generate radial profile], page 694).

5.3.4 Operation precedence in Table

The Table program can do many operations on the rows and columns of the input tables and they are not always applied in the order you call the operation on the command-line. In this

section we will describe which operation is done before/after which operation. Knowing this precedence table is important to avoid confusion when you ask for more than one operation. For a description of each option, please see Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362. By default, column-based operations will be done first. You can ask for switching to row-based operations to be done first, using the `--rowfirst` option.

Pipes for different precedence: It may happen that your desired series of operations cannot be done with the precedence mentioned below (in one command). In this case, you can pipe the output of one call to `asttable` to another `asttable`. Just don't forget to give `-O` (or `--colinfoinstdout`) to the first instance (so the column metadata are also passed to the next instance). Without metadata, all numbers will be read as double-precision (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287; recall that piping is done in plain text format), vector columns will be broken into single-valued columns, and column names, units and comments will be lost. At the end of this section, there is an example of doing this.

Input table information
: The first set of operations that will be preformed (if requested) are the printing of the input table information. Therefore, when the following options are called, the column data are not read at all. Table simply reads the main input's column metadata (name, units, numeric data type and comments), and the number of rows and prints them. Table then terminates and no other operation is done. These can therefore be called at the end of an arbitrarily long Table command. When you have forgot some information about the input table. You can then delete these options and continue writing the command (using the shell's history to retrieve the previous command with an up-arrow key).

  At any time only a single one of the options in this category may be called. The order of checking for these options is therefore important: in the same order that they are described below:

  Column and row information (`--information` or `-i`)
  : Print the list of input columns and the metadata of each column in a single row. This includes the column name, numeric data type, units and comments of each column within a separate row of the output. Finally, print the number of rows.

  Number of columns (`--info-num-cols`)
  : Print the number of columns in the input table. Only a single integer (number of columns) is printed before Table terminates.

  Number of rows (`--info-num-rows`)
  : Print the number of rows in the input table. Only a single integer (number of rows) is printed before Table terminates.

Column selection (`--column`)
: When this option is given, only the columns given to this option (from the main input) will be used for all future steps. When `--column` (or `-c`) is not given, then all the main input's columns will be used in the next steps.

Column-based operations

By default the following column-based operations will be done before the row-based operations in the next item. If you need to give precedence to row-based operations, use `--rowfirst`.

Column(s) from other file(s): `--catcolumnfile`

When column concatenation (addition) is requested, columns from other tables (in other files, or other HDUs of the same FITS file) will be added after the existing columns are read from the main input. In one command, you can call `--catcolumnfile` multiple times to allow addition of columns from many files.

Therefore you can merge the columns of various tables into one table in this step (at the start), then start adding/limiting the rows, or building vector columns, . If any of the row-based operations below are requested in the same `asttable` command, they will also be applied to the rows of the added columns. However, the conditions to keep/reject rows can only be applied to the rows of the columns in main input table (not the columns that are added with these options).

Extracting single-valued columns from vectors (`--fromvector`)

Once all the input columns are read into memory, if any of them are vectors, you can extract a single-valued column from the vector columns at this stage. For more on vector columns, see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346.

Creating vector columns (`--tovector`)

After column arithmetic, there is no other way to add new columns so the `--tovector` operator is applied at this stage. You can use it to merge multiple columns that are available in this stage to a single vector column. For more, see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346.

Column arithmetic

Once the final columns are selected in the requested order, column arithmetic is done (if requested). For more on column arithmetic, see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350.

Row-based operations

Row-based operations only work within the rows of existing columns when they are activated. By default row-based operations are activated after column-based operations (which are mentioned above). If you need to give precedence to row-based operations, use `--rowfirst`.

Rows from other file(s) (`--catrowfile`)

With this feature, you can import rows from other tables (in other files, or other HDUs of the same FITS file). The same column selection of `--column` is applied to the tables given to this option. The column metadata (name, units and comments) will be taken

from the main input. Two conditions are mandatory for adding rows:

- The number of columns used from the new tables must be equal to the number of columns in memory, by the time control reaches here.
- The data type of each column (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) should be the same as the respective column in memory by the time control reaches here. If the data types are different, you can use the type conversion operators of column arithmetic which has higher precedence (and will therefore be applied before this by default). For more on type conversion, see Section 6.2.4.15 [Numerical type conversion operators], page 452, and Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350).

Row selection by value in a column

The following operations select rows based on the values in them. A more complete description of each of these options is given in Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362.

- `--range`: only keep rows where the value in the given column is within a certain interval.
- `--inpolygon`: only keep rows where the value is within the polygon of `--polygon`.
- `--outpolygon`: only keep rows outside the polygon of `--polygon`.
- `--equal`: only keep rows with an specified value in given column.
- `--notequal`: only keep rows without specified value in given column.
- `--noblank`: only keep rows that are not blank in the given column(s).

These options can be called any number of times (to limit the final rows based on values in different columns for example). Since these are row-rejection operations, their internal order is irrelevant. In other words, it makes no difference if `--equal` is called before or after `--range` for example.

As a side-effect, because NaN/blank values are defined to fail on any condition, these operations will also remove rows with NaN/blank values in the specified column they are checking. Also, the columns that are used for these operations do not necessarily have to be in the final output table (you may not need the column after doing the selection based on it).

By default, these options are applied after merging columns from other tables. However, currently, the column given to these options can only come from the main input table. If you need to apply these

operations on columns from `--catcolumnfile`, pipe the output of one instance of Table with `--catcolumnfile` into another instance of Table as suggested in the box above this list.

These row-based operations options are applied first because the speed of later operations can be greatly affected by the number of rows. For example, if you also call the `--sort` option, and your row selection will result in 50 rows (from an input of 10000 rows), limiting the number of rows first will greatly speed up the sorting in your final output.

Sorting (`--sort`)
: Sort of the rows based on values in a certain column. The column to sort by can only come from the main input table columns (not columns that may have been added with `--catcolumnfile`).

Row selection (by position)
: - `--head`: keep only requested number of top rows.
  - `--tail`: keep only requested number of bottom rows.
  - `--rowrandom`: keep only a random number of rows.
  - `--rowrange`: keep only rows within a certain positional interval.

  These options limit/select rows based on their position within the table (not their value in any certain column).

Transpose vector columns (`--transpose`)
: Transposing vector columns will not affect the number or metadata of columns, it will just re-arrange them in their 2D structure. As a result, after transposing, the number of rows changes, as well as the number of elements in each vector column. See the description of this option in Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362, for more (with an example).

Column metadata (`--colmetadata`)
: Once the structure of the final table is set, you can set the column metadata just before finishing.

Output row selection (`--noblankend`)
: Only keep the output rows that do not have a blank value in the given column(s). For example, you may need to apply arithmetic operations on the columns (through Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350) before rejecting the undesired rows. After the arithmetic operation is done, you can use the `where` operator to set the non-desired columns to NaN/blank and use `--noblankend` option to remove them just before writing the output. In other scenarios, you may want to remove blank values based on columns in another table. To help in readability, you can also use the final column names that you set with `--colmetadata`! See the example below for applying any generic value-based row selection based on `--noblankend`.

As an example, let's review how Table interprets the command below. We are assuming that `table.fits` contains at least three columns: `RA`, `DEC` and `PARAM` and you only want the RA and Dec of the rows where $p \times 2 < 5$ (p is the value of each row in the `PARAM` column).

```
$ asttable table.fits -cRA,DEC --noblankend=MULTIP \
           -c'arith PARAM 2 x set-i i i 5 gt nan where' \
           --colmetadata=3,MULTIP,unit,"Description of column"
```

Due to the precedence described in this section, Table does these operations (which are independent of the order of the operations written on the command-line):

1. At the start (with `-cRA,DEC`), Table reads the `RA` and `DEC` columns.
2. In between all the operations in the command above, Column arithmetic (with `-c'arith ...'`) has the highest precedence. So the arithmetic operation is done and stored as a new (third) column. In this arithmetic operation, we multiply all the values of the `PARAM` column by 2, then set all those with a value larger than 5 to NaN (for more on understanding this operation, see the '`set-`' and '`where`' operators in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412).
3. Updating column metadata (with `--colmetadata`) is then done to give a name (`MULTIP`) to the newly calculated (third) column. During the process, besides a name, we also set a unit and description for the new column. These metadata entries are *very important*, so always be sure to add metadata after doing column arithmetic.
4. The lowest precedence operation is `--noblankend=MULTIP`. So only rows that are not blank/NaN in the `MULTIP` column are kept.
5. Finally, the output table (with three columns) is written to the command-line. If you also want to print the column metadata, you can use the `-O` (or `--colinfoinstdout`) option. Alternatively, if you want the output in a file, you can use the `--output` option to save the table in FITS or plain-text format.

It may happen that your desired operation needs a separate precedence. In this case you can pipe the output of Table into another call of Table and use the `-O` (or `--colinfoinstdout`) option to preserve the metadata between the two calls.

For example, let's assume that you want to sort the output table from the example command above based on the new `MULTIP` column. Since sorting is done prior to column arithmetic, you cannot do it in one command, but you can circumvent this limitation by simply piping the output (including metadata) to another call to Table:

```
asttable table.fits -cRA,DEC --noblankend=MULTIP --colinfoinstdout \
         -c'arith PARAM 2 x set-i i i 5 gt nan where' \
         --colmetadata=3,MULTIP,unit,"Description of column" \
         | asttable --sort=MULTIP --output=selected.fits
```

5.3.5 Invoking Table

Table will read/write, select, modify, or show the information of the rows and columns in recognized Table formats (including FITS binary, FITS ASCII, and plain text table files, see Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284). Output columns can also be determined by number or regular expression matching of column names, units, or comments. The executable name is `asttable` with the following general template

```
$ asttable [OPTION...] InputFile
```

One line examples:

```
## Get the table column information (name, units, or data type), and
## the number of rows:
$ asttable table.fits --information

## Print columns named RA and DEC, followed by all the columns where
## the name starts with "MAG_":
$ asttable table.fits --column=RA --column=DEC --column=/^MAG_/

## Similar to the above, but with one call to `--column' (or `-c'),
## also sort the rows by the input's photometric redshift (`Z_PHOT')
## column. To confirm the sort, you can add `Z_PHOT' to the columns
## to print.
$ asttable table.fits -cRA,DEC,/^MAG_/ --sort=Z_PHOT

## Similar to the above, but only print rows that have a photometric
## redshift between 2 and 3.
$ asttable table.fits -cRA,DEC,/^MAG_/ --range=Z_PHOT,2:3

## Only print rows with a value in the 10th column above 100000:
$ asttable table.txt --range=10,10e5,inf

## Only print the 2nd column, and the third column multiplied by 5,
## Save the resulting two columns in `table.txt'
$ asttable table.fits -c2,'arith $2 5 x' -otable.fits

## Sort the output columns by the third column, save output:
$ asttable table.fits --sort=3 -ooutput.txt

## Subtract the first column from the second in `cat.txt' (can also
## be a FITS table) and keep the third and fourth columns.
$ asttable cat.txt -c'arith $2 $1 -',3,4 -ocat.fits

## Convert sexagesimal coordinates to degrees (same can be done in a
## large table given as argument).
$ echo "7h34m35.5498 31d53m14.352s" | asttable

## Convert RA and Dec in degrees to sexagesimal (same can be done in a
## large table given as argument).
$ echo "113.64812416667 31.88732" \
       | asttable -c'arith $1 degree-to-ra $2 degree-to-dec'

## Extract columns 1 and 2, as well as all those between 12 to 58:
$ asttable table.fits -c1,2,$(seq -s',' 12 58)
```

Table's input dataset can be given either as a file or from Standard input (piped from another program, see Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266). In the absence of selected

columns, all the input's columns and rows will be written to the output. The full set of operations Table can do are described in detail below, but for a more high-level introduction to the various operations, and their precedence, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

If any output file is explicitly requested (with `--output`) the output table will be written in it. When no output file is explicitly requested the output table will be written to the standard output. If the specified output is a FITS file, the type of FITS table (binary or ASCII) will be determined from the `--tabletype` option. If the output is not a FITS file, it will be printed as a plain text table (with space characters between the columns). When the output is not binary (for example standard output or a plain-text), the `--txtf32*` or `--txtf64*` options can be used for the formatting of floating point columns (see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345). When the columns are accompanied by metadata (like column name, units, or comments), this information will also printed in the plain text file before the table, as described in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

For the full list of options common to all Gnuastro programs please see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253. Options can also be stored in directory, user or system-wide configuration files to avoid repeating on the command-line, see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. Table does not follow Automatic output that is common in most Gnuastro programs, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. Thus, in the absence of an output file, the selected columns will be printed on the command-line with no column information, ready for redirecting to other tools like `awk`.

Sexagesimal coordinates as floats in plain-text tables: When a column is determined to be a floating point type (32-bit or 64-bit) in a plain-text table, it can contain sexagesimal values in the format of '`_h_m_s`' (for RA) and '`_d_m_s`' (for Dec), where the '`_`'s are placeholders for numbers. In this case, the string will be immediately converted to a single floating point number (in units of degrees) and stored in memory with the rest of the column or table. Besides being useful in large tables, with this feature, conversion to sexagesimal coordinates to degrees becomes very easy, for example:

```
echo "7h34m35.5498 31d53m14.352s" | asttable
```

The inverse can also be done with the more general column arithmetic operators:

```
echo "113.64812416667 31.88732" \
     | asttable -c'arith $1 degree-to-ra $2 degree-to-dec'
```

If you want to preserve the sexagesimal contents of a column, you should store that column as a string, see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

`-i`
`--information`
: Only print the column information in the specified table on the command-line and exit. Each column's information (number, name, units, data type, and comments) will be printed as a row on the command-line. If the column is a multi-value (vector) a `[N]` is printed after the type, where `N` is the number of elements within that vector.

Note that the FITS standard only requires the data type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), and in plain text tables, no meta-data/information is mandatory. Gnuastro has its own convention in the comments of a plain text table to store and transfer this information as described in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

This option will take precedence over all other operations in Table, so when it is called along with other operations, they will be ignored, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357. This can be useful if you forget the identifier of a column after you have already typed some on the command-line. You can simply add a `-i` to your already-written command (without changing anything) and run Table, to see the whole list of column names and information. Then you can use the shell history (with the up arrow key on the keyboard), and retrieve the last command with all the previously typed columns present, delete `-i` and add the identifier you had forgot.

`--info-num-cols`
Similar to `--information`, but only the number of the input table's columns will be printed as a single integer (useful in scripts for example).

`--info-num-rows`
Similar to `--information`, but only the number of the input table's rows will be printed as a single integer (useful in scripts for example).

`-c STR/INT`
`--column=STR/INT`
Set the output columns either by specifying the column number, or name. For more on selecting columns, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. If a value of this option starts with '`arith` ', column arithmetic will be activated, allowing you to edit/manipulate column contents. For more on column arithmetic see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350.

To ask for multiple columns this option can be used in two ways: 1) multiple calls to this option, 2) using a comma between each column specifier in one call to this option. These different solutions may be mixed in one call to Table: for example, '`-cRA,DEC,MAG`', or '`-cRA,DEC -cMAG`' are both equivalent to '`-cRA -cDEC -cMAG`'. The order of the output columns will be the same order given to the option or in the configuration files (see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271).

This option is not mandatory, if no specific columns are requested, all the input table columns are output. When this option is called multiple times, it is possible to output one column more than once.

Sequence of columns: when dealing with a large number catalogs (hundreds for example!), it will be frustrating, annoying and buggy to insert the columns manually. If you want to read all the input columns, you can use the special `_all` value to `--column` option. A more generic solution (for example if you want every second one, or all the columns within a special range) is to use the `seq` command's features with an extra `-s','` (so a comma is used as the "separator"). For example if you want columns 1, 2 and all columns between 12 to 58 (inclusive), you can use the following command:

```
$ asttable table.fits -c1,2,$(seq -s',' 12 58)
```

`-w FITS`
`--wcsfile=FITS`
FITS file that contains the WCS to be used in the `wcs-to-img` and `img-to-wcs` operators of Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350. The extension name/number within the FITS file can be specified with `--wcshdu`.

If the value to this option is '`none`', no WCS will be written in the output.

`-W STR`
`--wcshdu=STR`
FITS extension/HDU in the FITS file given to `--wcsfile` (see the description of `--wcsfile` for more).

`-L FITS/TXT`
`--catcolumnfile=FITS/TXT`
Concatenate (or add, or append) the columns of this option's value (a filename) to the output columns. This option may be called multiple times (to add columns from more than one file into the final output), the columns from each file will be added in the same order that this option is called. The number of rows in the file(s) given to this option has to be the same as the input table (before any type of row-selection), see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

By default all the columns of the given file will be appended, if you only want certain columns to be appended, use the `--catcolumns` option to specify their name or number (see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289). Note that the columns given to `--catcolumns` must be present in all the given files (if this option is called more than once with more than one file).

If the file given to this option is a FITS file, it is necessary to also define the corresponding HDU/extension with `--catcolumnhdu`. Also note that no operation (such as row selection and arithmetic) is applied to the table given to this option.

If the appended columns have a name, and their name is already present in the table before adding those columns, the column names of each file will be appended with a `-N`, where `N` is a counter starting from 1 for each appended table. Just note that in the FITS standard (and thus in Gnuastro), column names are not case-sensitive.

This is done because when concatenating columns from multiple tables (more than two) into one, they may have the same name, and it is not good practice to have multiple columns with the same name. You can disable this feature with `--catcolumnrawname`. Generally, you can use the `--colmetadata` option to update column metadata in the same command, after all the columns have been concatenated.

For example, let's assume you have two catalogs of the same objects (same number of rows) in different filters. Such that `f160w-cat.fits` has a `MAGNITUDE` column that has the magnitude of each object in the `F160W` filter and similarly `f105w-cat.fits`, also has a `MAGNITUDE` column, but for the `F105W` filter. You can use column concatenation like below to import the `MAGNITUDE` column from the `F105W` catalog into the `F160W` catalog, while giving each magnitude column a different name:

```
asttable f160w-cat.fits --output=both.fits \
  --catcolumnfile=f105w-cat.fits --catcolumns=MAGNITUDE \
  --colmetadata=MAGNITUDE,MAG-F160W,log,"Magnitude in F160W" \
  --colmetadata=MAGNITUDE-1,MAG-F105W,log,"Magnitude in F105W"
```

For a more complete example, see Section 2.1.15 [Working with catalogs (estimating colors)], page 54.

Loading external columns with Arithmetic: an alternative way to load external columns into your output is to use column arithmetic (Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350) In particular the `load-col-` operator described in Section 6.2.4.18 [Loading external columns], page 465. But this operator will load only one column per file/HDU every time it is called. So if you have many columns to insert, it is much faster to use `--catcolumnfile`. Because `--catcolumnfile` will load all the columns in one opening of the file, and possibly even read them all into memory in parallel!

`-u STR/INT`
`--catcolumnhdu=STR/INT`
: The HDU/extension of the FITS file(s) that should be concatenated, or appended, by column with `--catcolumnfile`. If `--catcolumn` is called more than once with more than one FITS file, it is necessary to call this option more than once. The HDUs will be loaded in the same order as the FITS files given to `--catcolumnfile`.

`-C STR/INT`
`--catcolumns=STR/INT`
: The column(s) in the file(s) given to `--catcolumnfile` to append. When this option is not given, all the columns will be concatenated. See `--catcolumnfile` for more.

`--catcolumnrawname`
: Do not modify the names of the concatenated (appended) columns, see description in `--catcolumnfile`.

`--transpose`

Transpose (as in a matrix) the given vector column(s) individually. When this operation is done (see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357), only vector columns of the same data type and with the same number of elements should exist in the table. A usage of this operator is presented in the IFU spectroscopy tutorial in Section 2.5.6 [Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it], page 147.

As a generic example, see the commands below. The `in.txt` table below has two vector columns (each with three elements) in two rows. After running `asttable` with `--transpose`, you can see how the vector columns have two elements per row (`u8(3)` has been replaced by `u8(2)`), and that the table now has three rows.

```
$ cat in.txt
# Column 1: abc [nounits,u8(3),] First vector column.
# Column 2: def [nounits,u8(3),] Second vector column.
111  112  113  211  212  213
121  122  123  221  222  223

$ asttable in.txt --transpose -O
# Column 1: abc [nounits,u8(2),] First vector column.
# Column 2: def [nounits,u8(2),] Second vector column.
111    121    211    221
112    122    212    222
113    123    213    223
```

`--fromvector=STR,INT[,INT[,INT]]`

Extract the given tokens/elements from the given vector column into separate single-valued columns. The input vector column can be identified by its name or counter, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. After the columns are extracted, the input vector is deleted by default. To preserve the input vector column, you can use `--keepvectfin` described below. For a complete usage scenario see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346.

`--tovector=STR/INT,STR/INT[,STR/INT]`

Move the given columns into a newly created vector column. The given columns can be identified by their name or counter, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. After the columns are copied, they are deleted by default. To preserve the inputs, you can use `--keepvectfin` described below. For a complete usage scenario see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346.

`-k`
`--keepvectfin`

Do not delete the input column(s) when using `--fromvector` or `--tovector`.

`-R FITS/TXT`
`--catrowfile=FITS/TXT`

Add the rows of the given file to the output table. The selected columns in the tables given to this option should have the same number and datatype and the rows before control reaches this phase (after column selection and column

concatenation), for more see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

For example, if `a.fits`, `b.fits` and `c.fits` have the columns `RA`, `DEC` and `MAGNITUDE` (possibly in different column-numbers in their respective table, along with many more columns), the command below will add their rows into the final output that will only have these three columns:

```
$ asttable a.fits --catrowfile=b.fits --catrowhdu=1 \
                  --catrowfile=c.fits --catrowhdu=1 \
                  -cRA,DEC,MAGNITUDE --output=allrows.fits
```

Provenance of each row: When merging rows from separate catalogs, it is important to keep track of the source catalog of each row (its provenance). To do this, you can use `--catrowfile` in combination with the `constant` operator and Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350. For a working example of this scenario, see the example within the documentation of the `constant` operator in Section 6.2.4.20 [New operands], page 470.

How to avoid repetition when adding rows: this option will simply add the rows of multiple tables into one, it does not check their contents! Therefore if you use this option on multiple catalogs that may have some shared physical objects in some of their rows, those rows/objects will be repeated in the final table. In such scenarios, to avoid potential repetition, it is better to use Section 7.5 [Match], page 637, (with `--notmatched` and `--outcols=AAA,BBB`) instead of Table. For more on using Match for this scenario, see the description of `--outcols` in Section 7.5.3 [Invoking Match], page 644.

`-X STR`
`--catrowhdu=STR`
The HDU/extension of the FITS file(s) that should be concatenated, or appended, by rows with `--catrowfile`. If `--catrowfile` is called more than once with more than one FITS file, it is necessary to call this option more than once also (once for every FITS table given to `--catrowfile`). The HDUs will be loaded in the same order as the FITS files given to `--catrowfile`.

`-O`
`--colinfoinstdout`
Add column metadata when the output is printed in the standard output. Usually the standard output is used for a fast visual check, or to pipe into other metadata-agnostic programs (like AWK) for further processing. So by default meta-data are not included. But when piping to other Gnuastro programs (where metadata can be interpreted and used) it is recommended to use this option and use column names in the next program.

`-r STR,FLT:FLT`
`--range=STR,FLT:FLT`

Only output rows that have a value within the given range in the `STR` column (can be a name or counter). Note that the range is only inclusive in the lower-limit. For example, with `--range=sn,5:20` the output's columns will only contain rows that have a value in the `sn` column (not case-sensitive) that is greater or equal to 5, and less than 20. Also you can use the comma for separating the values such as this `--range=sn,5,20`. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

This option can be called multiple times (different ranges for different columns) in one run of the Table program. This is very useful for selecting the final rows from multiple criteria/columns.

The chosen column does not have to be in the output columns. This is good when you just want to select using one column's values, but do not need that column anymore afterwards.

For one example of using this option, see the example under `--sigclip-median` in Section 7.1.5 [Invoking Statistics], page 534.

`--inpolygon=STR1,STR2`

Only return rows where the given coordinates are inside the polygon specified by the `--polygon` option. The coordinate columns are the given `STR1` and `STR2` columns, they can be a column name or counter (see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289). For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

Note that the chosen columns does not have to be in the output columns (which are specified by the `--column` option). For example, if we want to select rows in the polygon specified in Section 2.1.4 [Dataset inspection and cropping], page 25, this option can be used like this (you can remove the double quotations and write them all in one line if you remove the white-spaces around the colon separating the column vertices):

```
asttable table.fits --inpolygon=RA,DEC      \
         --polygon="53.187414,-27.779152    \
                    : 53.159507,-27.759633  \
                    : 53.134517,-27.787144  \
                    : 53.161906,-27.807208" \
```

Flat/Euclidean space: The `--inpolygon` option assumes a flat/Euclidean space so it is only correct for RA and Dec when the polygon size is very small like the example above. If your polygon is a degree or larger, it may not return correct results. Please get in touch if you need such a feature (see Section 1.10 [Suggest new feature], page 17).

`--outpolygon=STR1,STR2`
: Only return rows where the given coordinates are outside the polygon specified by the `--polygon` option. This option is very similar to the `--inpolygon` option, so see the description there for more.

`--polygon=STR`
`--polygon=FLT,FLT:FLT,FLT:...`
: The polygon to use for the `--inpolygon` and `--outpolygon` options. This option is parsed in an identical way to the same option in the Crop program, so for more information on how to use it, see Section 6.1.4.1 [Crop options], page 394.

`-e STR,INT/FLT/STR,...`
`--equal=STR,INT/FLT/STR,...`
: Only output rows that are equal to the given string(s)/number(s) in the given column. The first value is the column identifier (name or number, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289), after that you can specify any number of values. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

  For example, `--equal=ID,5,6,8` will only print the rows that have a value of 5, 6, or 8 in the `ID` column. This option can also be called multiple times, so `--equal=ID,4,5 --equal=ID,6,7` has the same effect as `--equal=4,5,6,7`.

  Equality and floating point numbers: Floating point numbers are only approximate values (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). In this context, their equality depends on how the input table was originally stored (as a plain text table or as an ASCII/binary FITS table). If you want to select floating point numbers, it is strongly recommended to use the `--range` option and set a very small interval around your desired number, do not use `--equal` or `--notequal`.

  The `--equal` and `--notequal` options also work when the given column has a string type. In this case the given value to the option will also be parsed as a string, not as a number. When dealing with string columns, be careful with trailing white space characters (the actual value maybe adjusted to the right, left, or center of the column's width). If you need to account for such white spaces, you can use shell quoting. For example, `--equal=NAME," myname "`.

  Strings with a comma (,): When your desired column values contain a comma, you need to put a '`\`' before the internal comma (within the value). Otherwise, the comma will be interpreted as a delimiter between multiple values, and anything after it will be interpreted as a separate string. For example, assume column `AB` of your `table.fits` contains this value: '`cd,ef`' in your desired rows. To extract those rows, you should use the command below:

  ```
  $ asttable table.fits --equal=AB,cd\,ef
  ```

`-n STR,INT/FLT,...`
`--notequal=STR,INT/FLT,...`

Only output rows that are *not* equal to the given number(s) in the given column. The first argument is the column identifier (name or number, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289), after that you can specify any number of values. For example, `--notequal=ID,5,6,8` will only print the rows where the `ID` column does not have value of 5, 6, or 8. This option can also be called multiple times, so `--notequal=ID,4,5 --notequal=ID,6,7` has the same effect as `--notequal=4,5,6,7`.

Be very careful if you want to use the non-equality with floating point numbers, see the special note under `--equal` for more. This option also works when the given column has a string type, see the description under `--equal` (above) for more.

`-b STR[,STR[,STR]]`
`--noblank=STR[,STR[,STR]]`

Only output rows that are *not* blank in the given column of the *input* table. Like above, the columns can be specified by their name or number (counting from 1). This option can be called multiple times, so `--noblank=MAG --noblank=PHOTOZ` is equivalent to `--noblank=MAG,PHOTOZ`. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

For example, if `table.fits` has blank values (NaN in floating point types) in the `magnitude` and `sn` columns, with `--noblank=magnitude,sn`, the output will not contain any rows with blank values in these two columns.

If you want *all* columns to be checked, simply set the value to `_all` (in other words: `--noblank=_all`). This mode is useful when there are many columns in the table and you want a "clean" output table (with no blank values in any column): entering their name or number one-by-one can be buggy and frustrating. In this mode, no other column name should be given. For example, if you give `--noblank=_all,magnitude`, then Table will assume that your table actually has a column named `_all` and `magnitude`, and if it does not, it will abort with an error.

If you want to change column values using Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, (and set some to blank, to later remove), or you want to select rows based on columns that you have imported from other tables, you should use the `--noblankend` option described below. Also, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

`-s STR`
`--sort=STR`

Sort the output rows based on the values in the `STR` column (can be a column name or number). By default the sort is done in ascending/increasing order, to sort in a descending order, use `--descending`. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

The chosen column does not have to be in the output columns. This is good when you just want to sort using one column's values, but do not need that column anymore afterwards.

`-d`
`--descending`
When called with `--sort`, rows will be sorted in descending order.

`-H INT`
`--head=INT`
Only print the given number of rows from the *top* of the final table. Note that this option only affects the *output* table. For example, if you use `--sort`, or `--range`, the printed rows are the first *after* applying the sort sorting, or selecting a range of the full input. This option cannot be called with `--tail`, `--rowrange` or `--rowrandom`. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

If the given value to `--head` is 0, the output columns will not have any rows and if it is larger than the number of rows in the input table, all the rows are printed (this option is effectively ignored). This behavior is taken from the `head` program in GNU Coreutils.

`-t INT`
`--tail=INT`
Only print the given number of rows from the *bottom* of the final table. See `--head` for more. This option cannot be called with `--head`, `--rowrange` or `--rowrandom`.

`--rowrange=INT,INT`
Only return the rows within the requested positional range (inclusive on both sides). Therefore, `--rowrange=5,7` will return 3 of the input rows, row 5, 6 and 7. This option will abort if any of the given values is larger than the total number of rows in the table. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

With the `--head` or `--tail` options you can only see the top or bottom few rows. However, with this option, you can limit the returned rows to a contiguous set of rows in the middle of the table. Therefore this option cannot be called with `--head`, `--tail`, or `--rowrandom`.

`--rowrandom=INT`
Select `INT` rows from the input table by random (assuming a uniform distribution). This option is applied *after* the value-based selection options (such as `--sort`, `--range`, and `--polygon`). On the other hand, only the row counters are randomly selected, this option does not change the order. Therefore, if `--rowrandom` is called together with `--sort`, the returned rows are still sorted. This option cannot be called with `--head`, `--tail`, or `--rowrange`. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

This option will only have an effect if `INT` is larger than the number of rows when it is activated (after the value-based selection options have been applied).

When there are fewer rows, a warning is printed, saying that this option has no effect. The warning can be disabled with the `--quiet` option.

Due to its nature (to be random), the output of this option differs in each run. Therefore 5 calls to Table with `--rowrandom` on the same input table will generate 5 different outputs. If you want a reproducible random selection, set the `GSL_RNG_SEED` environment variable and also use the `--envseed` option, for more see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

`--envseed`

Read the random number generator seed from the `GSL_RNG_SEED` environment variable for `--rowrandom` (instead of generating a different seed internally on every run). This is useful if you want a reproducible random selection of the input rows. For more, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

`-E STR[,STR[,STR]]`
`--noblankend=STR[,STR[,STR]]`

Remove all rows in the requested *output* columns that have a blank value. Like above, the columns can be specified by their name or number (counting from 1). This option can be called multiple times, so `--noblank=MAG --noblank=PHOTOZ` is equivalent to `--noblank=MAG,PHOTOZ`. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

for example, if your final output table (possibly after column arithmetic, or adding new columns) has blank values (NaN in floating point types) in the `magnitude` and `sn` columns, with `--noblankend=magnitude,sn`, the output will not contain any rows with blank values in these two columns.

If you want blank values to be removed from the main input table _before_ any further processing (like adding columns, sorting or column arithmetic), you should use the `--noblank` option. With the `--noblank` option, the column(s) that is(are) given does not necessarily have to be in the output (it is just temporarily used for reading the inputs and selecting rows, but does not necessarily need to be present in the output). However, the column(s) given to this option should exist in the output.

If you want *all* columns to be checked, simply set the value to `_all` (in other words: `--noblankend=_all`). This mode is useful when there are many columns in the table and you want a "clean" output table (with no blank values in any column): entering their name or number one-by-one can be buggy and frustrating. In this mode, no other column name should be given. For example, if you give `--noblankend=_all,magnitude`, then Table will assume that your table actually has a column named `_all` and `magnitude`, and if it does not, it will abort with an error.

This option is applied just before writing the final table (after `--colmetadata` has finished). So in case you changed the column metadata, or added new columns, you can use the new names, or the newly defined column numbers. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

`-m STR/INT,STR[,STR[,STR]]`
`--colmetadata=STR/INT,STR[,STR[,STR]]`

Update the specified column metadata in the output table. This option is applied after all other column-related operations are complete, for example, column arithmetic, or column concatenation. For the precedence of this operation in relation to others, see Section 5.3.4 [Operation precedence in Table], page 357.

The first value (before the first comma) given to this option is the column's identifier. It can either be a counter (positive integer, counting from 1), or a name (the column's name in the output if this option was not called).

After the to-be-updated column is identified, at least one other string should be given, with a maximum of three strings. The first string after the original name will the selected column's new name. The next (optional) string will be the selected column's unit and the third (optional) will be its comments. If the two optional strings are not given, the original column's units or comments will remain unchanged.

If any of the values contains a comma, you should place a '\' before the comma to avoid it getting confused with a delimiter. For example, see the command below for a column description that contains a comma:

```
$ asttable table.fits \
           --colmetadata=NAME,UNIT,"Comments\, with a comma"
```

Generally, since the comma is commonly used as a delimiter in many scenarios, to avoid complicating your future analysis with the table, it is best to avoid using a comma in the column name and units.

Some examples of this option are available in the tutorials, in particular Section 2.1.15 [Working with catalogs (estimating colors)], page 54. Here are some more specific examples:

`--colmetadata=MAGNITUDE,MAG_F160W`
This will convert name of the original `MAGNITUDE` column to `MAG_F160W`, leaving the unit and comments unchanged.

`--colmetadata=3,MAG_F160W,mag`
This will convert name of the third column of the final output to `MAG_F160W` and the units to `mag`, while leaving the comments untouched.

`--colmetadata=MAGNITUDE,MAG_F160W,mag,"Magnitude in F160W filter"`
This will convert name of the original `MAGNITUDE` column to `MAG_F160W`, and the units to `mag` and the comments to `Magnitude in F160W filter`. Note the double quotations around the comment string, they are necessary to preserve the white-space characters within the column comment from the command-line, into the program (otherwise, upon reaching a white-space character, the shell will consider this option to be finished and cause un-expected behavior).

If your table is large and generated by a script, you can first do all your operations on your table's data and write it into a temporary file (maybe called `temp.fits`). Then, look into that file's metadata (with `asttable temp.fits -i`) to see the exact column positions and possible names, then add the necessary calls to this option to your previous call to `asttable`, so it writes proper metadata in the same run (for example, in a script or Makefile). Recall that when a name is given, this option will update the metadata of the first column that matches, so if you have multiple columns with the same name, you can call this options multiple times with the same first argument to change them all to different names.

Finally, if you already have a FITS table by other means (for example, by downloading) and you merely want to update the column metadata and leave the data intact, it is much more efficient to directly modify the respective FITS header keywords with `astfits`, using the keyword manipulation features described in Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304. `--colmetadata` is mainly intended for scenarios where you want to edit the data so it will always load the full/partial dataset into memory, then write out the resulting datasets with updated/corrected metadata.

`-f STR`
`--txtf32format=STR`

The plain-text format of 32-bit floating point columns when output is not binary (this option is ignored for binary outputs like FITS tables, see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345). The acceptable values are listed below. This is just the format of the plain-text outputs; see `--txtf32precision` for customizing their precision.

`fixed` Fixed-point notation (for example `123.4567`).

`exp` Exponential notation (for example `1.234567e+02`).

The default mode is `exp` since it is the most generic and will not cause any loss of data. Be very cautious if you set it to `fixed`. As a rule of thumb, the fixed-point notation is only good if the numbers are larger than 1.0, but not too large! Given that the total number of accurate decimal digits is fixed the more digits you have on the left of the decimal point (integer part), the more un-accurate digits will be printed on the right of the decimal point.

`-p STR`
`--txtf32precision=INT`

Number of digits after (to the right side of) the decimal point (precision) for columns with a 32-bit floating point datatype (this option is ignored for binary outputs like FITS tables, see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345). This can take any positive integer (including 0). When given a value of zero, the floating point number will be rounded to the nearest integer.

The default value to this option is 6. This is because according to IEEE 754, 32-bit floating point numbers can be accurately presented to 7.22 decimal digits (see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345). Since we only have an integer number of digits in a number, we'll round it to 7 decimal digits.

Furthermore, the precision is only defined to the right side of the decimal point. In exponential notation (default of `--txtf32format`), one decimal digit will be printed on the left of the decimal point. So the default value to this option is $7 - 1 = 6$.

`-A STR`
`--txtf64format=STR`
The plain-text format of 64-bit floating point columns when output is not binary (this option is ignored for binary outputs like FITS tables, see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345). The acceptable values are listed below. This is just the format of the plain-text outputs; see `--txtf64precision` for customizing their precision.

`fixed` Fixed-point notation (for example `12345.6789012345`).

`exp` Exponential notation (for example `1.23456789012345e4`).

The default mode is `exp` since it is the most generic and will not cause any loss of data. Be very cautious if you set it to `fixed`. As a rule of thumb, the fixed-point notation is only good if the numbers are larger than 1.0, but not too large! Given that the total number of accurate decimal digits is fixed the more digits you have on the left of the decimal point (integer part), the more un-accurate digits will be printed on the right of the decimal point.

`-B STR`
`--txtf64precision=INT`
Number of digits after the decimal point (precision) for columns with a 64-bit floating point datatype (this option is ignored for binary outputs like FITS tables, see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345). This can take any positive integer (including 0). When given a value of zero, the floating point number will be rounded to the nearest integer.

The default value to this option is 15. This is because according to IEEE 754, 64-bit floating point numbers can be accurately presented to 15.95 decimal digits (see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345). Since we only have an integer number of digits in a number, we'll round it to 16 decimal digits. Furthermore, the precision is only defined to the right side of the decimal point. In exponential notation (default of `--txtf64format`), one decimal digit will be printed on the left of the decimal point. So the default value to this option is $16 - 1 = 15$.

`-Y`
`--txteasy`
When output is a plain-text file or just gets printed on standard output (the terminal), all floating point columns are printed in fixed point notation (as in `123.456`) instead of the default exponential notation (as in `1.23456e+02`). For 32-bit floating points, this option will use a precision of 3 digits (see `--txtf32precision`) and for 64-bit floating points use a precision of 6 digits (see `--txtf64precision`). This can be useful for human readability, but be careful with some scenarios (for example `1.23e-120`, which will show only as `0.0`!). When this option is called any value given the following options

is ignored: `--txtf32format`, `--txtf32precision`, `--txtf64format` and `--txtf64precision`. For example below you can see the output of table with and without this option:

```
$ asttable table.fits --head=5 -O
# Column 1: OBJNAME   [name  ,str23,   ] Name in HyperLeda.
# Column 2: RAJ2000   [deg   ,f64  ,   ] Right Ascension.
# Column 3: DEJ2000   [deg   ,f64  ,   ] Declination.
# Column 4: RADIUS    [arcmin,f32  ,   ] Major axis radius.
NGC0884  2.3736267000000e+00 5.7138753300000e+01  8.994357e+00
NGC1629  4.4935191000000e+00 -7.1838322400000e+01 5.000000e-01
NGC1673  4.7109672000000e+00 -6.9820892700000e+01 3.499210e-01
NGC1842  5.1216920000000e+00 -6.7273195300000e+01 3.999171e-01

$ asttable table.fits --head=5 -O -Y
# Column 1: OBJNAME   [name  ,str23,   ] Name in HyperLeda.
# Column 2: RAJ2000   [deg   ,f64  ,   ] Right Ascension.
# Column 3: DEJ2000   [deg   ,f64  ,   ] Declination.
# Column 4: RADIUS    [arcmin,f32  ,   ] Major axis radius.
NGC0884  2.373627           57.138753          8.994
NGC1629  4.493519           -71.838322         0.500
NGC1673  4.710967           -69.820893         0.350
NGC1842  5.121692           -67.273195         0.400
```

This is also useful when you want to make outputs of other programs more "easy" to read, for example:

```
$ echo 123.45678 | asttable
1.234567800000000e+02

$ echo 123.45678 | asttable -Y
123.456780
```

Can result in loss of information: be very careful with this option! It can loose precision or generally the full value if the value is not within a "good" range like this example. Such cases are the reason that this is not the default format of plain-text outputs.

```
$ echo 123.4e-9 | asttable -Y
0.000000
```

5.4 Query

There are many astronomical databases available for downloading astronomical data. Most follow the International Virtual Observatory Alliance (IVOA, `https://ivoa.net`) standards (and in particular the Table Access Protocol, or TAP[19]). With TAP, it is possible to submit your queries via a command-line downloader (for example, `curl`) to only get specific tables, targets (rows in a table) or measurements (columns in a table): you do not have to

[19] `https://ivoa.net/documents/TAP`

download the full table (which can be very large in some cases)! These customizations are done through the Astronomical Data Query Language (ADQL[20]).

Therefore, if you are sufficiently familiar with TAP and ADQL, you can easily custom-download any part of an online dataset. However, you also need to keep a record of the URLs of each database and in many cases, the commands will become long and hard/buggy to type on the command-line. On the other hand, most astronomers do not know TAP or ADQL at all, and are forced to go to the database's web page which is slow (it needs to download so many images, and has too much annoying information), requires manual interaction (further making it slow and buggy), and cannot be automated.

Gnuastro's Query program is designed to be the middle-man in this process: it provides a simple high-level interface to let you specify your constraints on what you want to download. It then internally constructs the command to download the data based on your inputs and runs it to download your desired data. Query also prints the full command before it executes it (if not called with `--quiet`). Also, if you ask for a FITS output table, the full command is written into its 0-th extension along with other input parameters to query (all Gnuastro programs generally keep their input configuration parameters as FITS keywords in the zero-th output). You can see it with Gnuastro's Fits program, like below:

```
$ astfits query-output.fits -h0
```

With the full command used to download the dataset, you only need a minimal knowledge of ADQL to do lower-level customizations on your downloaded dataset. You can simply copy that command and change the parts of the query string you want: ADQL is very powerful! For example, you can ask the server to do mathematical operations on the columns and apply selections after those operations, or combine/match multiple datasets. We will try to add high-level interfaces for such capabilities, but generally, do not limit yourself to the high-level operations (that cannot cover everything!).

5.4.1 Available databases

The current list of databases supported by Query are listed at the end of this section. To get the list of available datasets within each database, you can use the `--information` option. for example, with the command below you can get a list of the roughly 100 datasets that are available within the ESA Gaia server with their description:

```
$ astquery gaia --information
```

However, other databases like VizieR host many more datasets (tens of thousands!). Therefore it is very inconvenient to get the *full* information every time you want to find your dataset of interest (the full metadata file VizieR is more than 20Mb). In such cases, you can limit the downloaded and displayed information with the `--limitinfo` option. For example, with the first command below, you can get all datasets relating to the MUSE (an instrument on the Very Large Telescope), and those that include Roland Bacon (Principle Investigator of MUSE) as an author (`Bacon, R.`). Recall that `-i` is the short format of `--information`.

```
$ astquery vizier -i --limitinfo=MUSE
$ astquery vizier -i --limitinfo="Bacon R."
```

Once you find the recognized name of your desired dataset, you can see the column information of that dataset with adding the dataset name. For example, with the command

[20] `https://ivoa.net/documents/ADQL`

below you can see the column metadata in the `J/A+A/608/A2/udf10` dataset (one of the datasets in the search above) using this command:

```
$ astquery vizier --dataset=J/A+A/608/A2/udf10 -i
```

For very popular datasets of a database, Query provides an easier-to-remember short name that you can feed to `--dataset`. This short name will map to the officially recognized name of the dataset on the server. In this mode, Query will also set positional columns accordingly. For example, most VizieR datasets have an `RAJ2000` column (the RA and the epoch of 2000) so it is the default RA column name for coordinate search (using `--center` or `--overlapwith`). However, some datasets do not have this column (for example, SDSS DR12). So when you use the short name and Query knows about this dataset, it will internally set the coordinate columns that SDSS DR12 has: `RA_ICRS` and `DEC_ICRS`. Recall that you can always change the coordinate columns with `--ccol`.

For example, in the VizieR and Gaia databases, the recognized name for data release 3 data is respectively `I/355/gaiadr3` and `gaiadr3.gaia_source`. These technical names are hard to remember. Therefore Query provides `gaiadr3` (for VizieR) and `dr3` (for ESA's Gaia database) shortcuts which you can give to `--dataset` instead. They will be internally mapped to the fully recognized name by Query. In the list below that describes the available databases, the available short names, that are recognized for each, are also listed.

Not all datasets support TAP: Large databases like VizieR have TAP access for all their datasets. However, smaller databases have not implemented TAP for all their tables. Therefore some datasets that are searchable in their web interface may not be available for a TAP search. To see the full list of TAP-ed datasets in a database, use the `--information` (or `-i`) option with the dataset name like the command below.

```
$ astquery astron -i
```

If your desired dataset is not in this list, but has web-access, contact the database maintainers and ask them to add TAP access for it. After they do it, you should see the name added to the output list of the command above.

The list of databases recognized by Query (and their names in Query) is described below. Since Query is a new member of the Gnuastro family (first available in Gnuastro 0.14), this list will hopefully grow significantly in the next releases. If you have any particular datasets in mind, please let us know by sending an email to `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`. If the dataset supports IVOA's TAP (Table Access Protocol), it should be very easy to add.

`astron` The ASTRON Virtual Observatory service (`https://vo.astron.nl`) is a database focused on radio astronomy data and images, primarily those collected by ASTRON itself. A query to `astron` is submitted to `https://vo.astron.nl/__system__/tap/run/tap/sync`.

Here is the list of short names for dataset(s) in ASTRON's VO service:

- `tgssadr` --> `tgssadr.main`

`gaia` The Gaia project (`https://www.cosmos.esa.int/web/gaia`) database which is a large collection of star positions on the celestial sphere, as well as peculiar velocities, parallaxes and magnitudes in some bands among many others. Besides scientific studies (like studying resolved stellar populations in the Galaxy and its

halo), Gaia is also invaluable for raw data calibrations, like astrometry. A query to `gaia` is submitted to `https://gea.esac.esa.int/tap-server/tap/sync`.

Here is the list of short names for popular datasets within Gaia:

- `dr3 --> gaiadr3.gaia_source`
- `edr3 --> gaiaedr3.gaia_source`
- `dr2 --> gaiadr2.gaia_source`
- `dr1 --> gaiadr1.gaia_source`
- `tycho2 --> public.tycho2`
- `hipparcos --> public.hipparcos`

`ned` The NASA/IPAC Extragalactic Database (NED, `http://ned.ipac.caltech.edu`) is a fusion database, integrating the information about extra-galactic sources from many large sky surveys into a single catalog. It covers the full spectrum, from Gamma rays to radio frequencies and is updated when new data arrives. A TAP query to `ned` is submitted to `https://ned.ipac.caltech.edu/tap/sync`.

- `objdir --> NEDTAP.objdir`: default TAP-based dataset in NED.
- `extinction`: A command-line interface to the NED Extinction Calculator (`https://ned.ipac.caltech.edu/extinction_calculator`). It only takes a central coordinate and returns a VOTable of the calculated extinction in many commonly used filters at that point. As a result, options like `--width` or `--radius` are not supported. However, Gnuastro does not yet support the VOTable format. Therefore, if you specify an `--output` file, it should have an `.xml` suffix and the downloaded file will not be checked.

  Until VOTable support is added to Gnuastro, you can use GREP, AWK and SED to convert the VOTable data into a FITS table with a command like below (assuming the queried VOTable is called `ned-extinction.xml`):

```
grep '^<TR><TD>' ned-extinction.xml \
 | sed -e's|<TR><TD>||' \
       -e's|</TD></TR>||' \
       -e's|</TD><TD>|@|g' \
 | awk 'BEGIN{FS="@"; \
     print "# Column 1: FILTER [name,str15] Filter name"; \
     print "# Column 2: CENTRAL [um,f32] Central Wavelength"; \
     print "# Column 3: EXTINCTION [mag,f32] Galactic Ext."; \
     print "# Column 4: ADS_REF [ref,str50] ADS reference"} \
        {printf "%-15s %g %g %s\n", $1, $2, $3, $4}' \
 | asttable -oned-extinction.fits
```

  Once the table is in FITS, you can easily get the extinction for a certain filter (for example, the `SDSS r` filter) like the command below:

```
asttable ned-extinction.fits --equal=FILTER,"SDSS r" \
         -cEXTINCTION
```

`vizier` Vizier (`https://vizier.u-strasbg.fr`) is arguably the largest catalog database in astronomy: containing more than 20500 catalogs as of mid January

2021. Almost all published catalogs in major projects, and even the tables in many papers are archived and accessible here. For example, VizieR also has a full copy of the Gaia database mentioned below, with some additional standardized columns (like RA and Dec in J2000).

The current implementation of `--limitinfo` only looks into the description of the datasets, but since VizieR is so large, there is still a lot of room for improvement. Until then, if `--limitinfo` is not sufficient, you can use VizieR's own web-based search for your desired dataset: `http://cdsarc.u-strasbg.fr/viz-bin/cat`

Because VizieR curates such a diverse set of data from tens of thousands of projects and aims for interoperability between them, the column names in VizieR may not be identical to the column names in the surveys' own databases (Gaia in the example above). A query to `vizier` is submitted to `http://tapvizier.u-strasbg.fr/TAPVizieR/tap/sync`.

Here is the list of short names for popular datasets within VizieR (sorted alphabetically by their short name). Please feel free to suggest other major catalogs (covering a wide area or commonly used in your field).. For details on each dataset with necessary citations, and links to web pages, look into their details with their ViziR names in `https://vizier.u-strasbg.fr/viz-bin/VizieR`.

- `2mass --> II/246/out` (2MASS All-Sky Catalog)
- `akarifis --> II/298/fis` (AKARI/FIS All-Sky Survey)
- `allwise --> II/328/allwise` (AllWISE Data Release)
- `apass9 --> II/336/apass9` (AAVSO Photometric All Sky Survey, DR9)
- `catwise --> II/365/catwise` (CatWISE 2020 catalog)
- `des1 --> II/357/des_dr1` (Dark Energy Survey data release 1)
- `gaiadr3 --> I/355/gaiadr3` (GAIA Data Release 3)
- `gaiaedr3 --> I/350/gaiadr3` (GAIA Early Data Release 3)
- `gaiadr2 --> I/345/gaia2` (GAIA Data Release 2)
- `galex5 --> II/312/ais` (All-sky Survey of GALEX DR5)
- `nomad --> I/297/out` (Naval Observatory Merged Astrometric Dataset)
- `panstarrs1 --> II/349/ps1` (Pan-STARRS Data Release 1).
- `ppmxl --> I/317/sample` (Positions and proper motions on the ICRS)
- `sdss12 --> V/147/sdss12` (SDSS Photometric Catalogue, Release 12)
- `usnob1 --> I/284/out` (Whole-Sky USNO-B1.0 Catalog)
- `ucac5 --> I/340/ucac5` (5th U.S. Naval Obs. CCD Astrograph Catalog)
- `unwise --> II/363/unwise` (Band-merged unWISE Catalog)
- `wise --> II/311/wise` (WISE All-Sky data Release)

5.4.2 Invoking Query

Query provides a high-level interface to downloading subsets of data from databases. The executable name is `astquery` with the following general template

```
$ astquery DATABASE-NAME [OPTION...] ...
```

One line examples:

```
## Information about all datasets in ESA's GAIA database:
$ astquery gaia --information

## Only show catalogs in VizieR that have 'MUSE' in their
## description. The '-i' is short for '--information'.
$ astquery vizier -i --limitinfo=MUSE

## List of columns in 'J/A+A/608/A2/udf10' (one of the above).
$ astquery vizier --dataset=J/A+A/608/A2/udf10 -i

## ID, RA and Dec of all Gaia sources within an image.
$ astquery gaia --dataset=dr3 --overlapwith=image.fits \
           -csource_id,ra,dec

## RA, Dec and Spectroscopic redshifts of objects in SDSS DR12
## spectroscopic redshift that overlap with 'image.fits'.
$ astquery vizier --dataset=sdss12 --overlapwith=image.fits \
           -cRA_ICRS,DE_ICRS,zsp --range=zsp,1e-10,inf

## All columns of all entries in the Gaia DR3 catalog (hosted at
## VizieR) within 1 arc-minute of the given coordinate.
$ astquery vizier --dataset=gaiadr3 --output=my-gaia.fits \
           --center=113.8729761,31.9027152 --radius=1/60 \

## Similar to above, but only ID, RA and Dec columns for objects with
## magnitude range 10 to 15. In VizieR, this column is called 'Gmag'.
## Also, using sexagesimal coordinates instead of degrees for center.
$ astquery vizier --dataset=gaiadr3 --output=my-gaia.fits \
           --center=07h35m29.51,31d54m9.77 --radius=1/60 \
           --range=Gmag,10:15 -cDR3Name,RAJ2000,DEJ2000
```

Query takes a single argument which is the name of the database. For the full list of available databases and accessing them, see Section 5.4.1 [Available databases], page 379. There are two methods to query the databases, each is more fully discussed in its option's description below.

- **Low-level:** With `--query` you can directly give a raw query statement that is recognized by the database. This is very low level and will require a good knowledge of the database's query language, but of course, it is much more powerful. If this option is given, the raw string is directly passed to the server and all other constraints/options (for Query's high-level interface) are ignored.
- **High-level:** With the high-level options (like `--column`, `--center`, `--radius`, `--range` and other constraining options below), the low-level query will be constructed automatically for the particular database. This method is only limited to the generic capabilities that Query provides for all servers. So `--query` is more powerful, however, in this mode, you do not need any knowledge of the database's query language. You

can see the internally generated query on the terminal (if `--quiet` is not used) or in the 0-th extension of the output (if it is a FITS file). This full command contains the internally generated query.

The name of the downloaded output file can be set with `--output`. The requested output format can have any of the Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285, (currently `.txt` or `.fits`). Like all Gnuastro programs, if the output is a FITS file, the zero-th/first HDU of the output will contain all the command-line options given to Query as well as the full command used to access the server. When `--output` is not set, the output name will be in the format of `NAME-STRING.fits`, where `NAME` is the name of the database and `STRING` is a randomly selected 6-character set of numbers and alphabetic characters. With this feature, a second run of `astquery` that is not called with `--output` will not over-write an already downloaded one. Generally, when calling Query more than once, it is recommended to set an output name for each call based on your project's context.

The outputs of Query will have a common output format, irrespective of the used database. To achieve this, Query will ask the databases to provide a FITS table output (for larger tables, FITS can consume much less download volume). After downloading is complete, the raw downloaded file will be read into memory once by Query, and written into the file given to `--output`. The raw downloaded file will be deleted by default, but can be preserved with the `--keeprawdownload` option. This strategy avoids unnecessary surprises depending on database. For example, some databases can download a compressed FITS table, even though we ask for FITS. But with the strategy above, the final output will be an uncompressed FITS file. The metadata that is added by Query (including the full download command) is also very useful for future usage of the downloaded data. Unfortunately many databases do not write the input queries into their generated tables.

`--dry-run`
: Only print the final download command to contact the server, do not actually run it. This option is good when you want to check the finally constructed query or download options given to the download program. You may also want to use the constructed command as a base to do further customizations on it and run it yourself.

`-k`
`--keeprawdownload`
: Do not delete the raw downloaded file from the database. The name of the raw download will have a `OUTPUT-raw-download.fits` format. Where `OUTPUT` is either the base-name of the final output file (without a suffix).

`-i`
`--information`
: Print the information of all datasets (tables) within a database or all columns within a database. When `--dataset` is specified, the latter mode (all column information) is downloaded and printed and when it is not defined, all dataset information (within the database) is printed.

  Some databases (like VizieR) contain tens of thousands of datasets, so you can limit the downloaded and printed information for available databases with the `--limitinfo` option (described below). Dataset descriptions are often large and contain a lot of text (unlike column descriptions). Therefore when printing the

information of all datasets within a database, the information (e.g., database name) will be printed on separate lines before the description. However, when printing column information, the output has the same format as a similar option in Table (see Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362).

Important note to consider: the printed order of the datasets or columns is just for displaying in the printed output. You cannot ask for datasets or columns based on the printed order, you need to use dataset or column names.

`-L STR`
`--limitinfo=STR`

Limit the information that is downloaded and displayed (with `--information`) to those that have the string given to this option in their description. Note that *this is case-sensitive*. This option is only relevant when `--information` is also called.

Databases may have thousands (or tens of thousands) of datasets. Therefore just the metadata (information) to show with `--information` can be tens of megabytes (for example, the full VizieR metadata file is about 23Mb as of January 2021). Once downloaded, it can also be hard to parse manually. With `--limitinfo`, only the metadata of datasets that contain this string *in their description* will be downloaded and displayed, greatly improving the speed of finding your desired dataset.

`-Q "STR"`
`--query="STR"`

Directly specify the query to be passed onto the database. The queries will generally contain space and other meta-characters, so we recommend placing the query within quotations.

`-s STR`
`--dataset=STR`

The dataset to query within the database (not compatible with `--query`). This option is mandatory when `--query` or `--information` are not provided. You can see the list of available datasets within a database using `--information` (possibly supplemented by `--limitinfo`). The output of `--information` will contain the recognized name of the datasets within that database. You can pass the recognized name directly to this option. For more on finding and using your desired database, see Section 5.4.1 [Available databases], page 379.

`-c STR`
`--column=STR[,STR[,...]]`

The column name(s) to retrieve from the dataset in the given order (not compatible with `--query`). If not given, all the dataset's columns for the selected rows will be queried (which can be large!). This option can take multiple values in one instance (for example, `--column=ra,dec,mag`), or in multiple instances (for example, `-cra -cdec -cmag`), or mixed (for example, `-cra,dec -cmag`).

In case, you do not know the full list of the dataset's column names a-priori, and you do not want to download all the columns (which can greatly decrease your download speed), you can use the `--information` option combined with the `--dataset` option, see Section 5.4.1 [Available databases], page 379.

`-H INT`
`--head=INT`
: Only ask for the first `INT` rows of the finally selected columns, not all the rows. This can be good when your search can result a large dataset, but before downloading the full volume, you want to see the top rows and get a feeling of what the whole dataset looks like.

`-v FITS`
`--overlapwith=FITS`
: File name of FITS file containing an image (in the HDU given by `--hdu`) to use for identifying the region to query in the give database and dataset. Based on the image's WCS and pixel size, the sky coverage of the image is estimated and values to the `--center`, `--width` will be calculated internally. Hence this option cannot be used with `--center`, `--width` or `--radius`. Also, since it internally generates the query, it cannot be used with `--query`.

  If the image is rotated in relation to RA/DEC, or the image has a large coverage on the sky, or it has WCS distortions (that the server can't know about), the retrieved catalog may not fully overlap with the image (correspond to a larger area in the sky). To be sure that the final catalog you use actually has sources within the image, use the commands below. Two points to have in mind in the example below: 1) use the `cols` variable to specify the names of the columns you want (this is necessary since this list of column names is necessary in two places of the commands below). 2) The last two commands are just for visual validation, they are not necessary in a script.

```
$ cols=source_id,ra,dec,phot_g_mean_mag

$ astquery gaia --dataset=dr3 --overlapwith=image.fits \
           --column=$cols --output=gaia.fits

$ astcrop image.fits --catalog=gaia.fits --coordcol=ra \
          --coordcol=dec --mode=wcs --width=1 \
          --widthinpix --log --oneelemstdout --quiet \
          --output=crop-log.fits > /dev/null

$ asttable gaia.fits --catcolumnfile=crop-log.fits \
           --catcolumns=NUM_INPUTS -O \
           | asttable --equal=NUM_INPUTS,1 \
                      --column=$cols \
                      --output=gaia-in-image.fits

$ astscript-ds9-region gaia-in-image.fits --column=ra,dec \
                       --radius=5 --width=5 \
                       --output=stars-in.reg

$ astscript-fits-view image.fits --region=stars-in.reg
```

  Note that if the image has WCS distortions and the reference point for the WCS is not within the image, the WCS will not be well-defined. Therefore the

resulting catalog may not overlap, or correspond to a larger/small area in the sky.

`-C FLT,FLT`
`--center=FLT,FLT`
The spatial center position (mostly RA and Dec) to use for the automatically generated query (not compatible with `--query`). The comma-separated values can either be in degrees (a single number), or sexagesimal (`_h_m_` for RA, `_d_m_` for Dec, or `_:_:_` for both).

The given values will be compared to two columns in the database to find/return rows within a certain region around this center position will be requested and downloaded. Pre-defined RA and Dec column names are defined in Query for every database, however you can use `--ccol` to select other columns to use instead. The region can either be a circle and the point (configured with `--radius`) or a box/rectangle around the point (configured with `--width`).

`--ccol=STR,STR`
The name of the coordinate-columns in the dataset to compare with the values given to `--center`. Query will use its internal defaults for each dataset (for example, `RAJ2000` and `DEJ2000` for VizieR data). But each dataset is treated separately and it is not guaranteed that these columns exist in all datasets. Also, more than one coordinate system/epoch may be present in a dataset and you can use this option to construct your spatial constraint based on the others coordinate systems/epochs.

`-r FLT`
`--radius=FLT`
The radius about the requested center to use for the automatically generated query (not compatible with `--query`). The radius is in units of degrees, but you can use simple division with this option directly on the command-line. For example, if you want a radius of 20 arc-minutes or 20 arc-seconds, you can use `--radius=20/60` or `--radius=20/3600` respectively (which is much more human-friendly than `0.3333` or `0.005556`).

`-w FLT[,FLT]`
`--width=FLT[,FLT]`
The square (or rectangle) side length (width) about the requested center to use for the automatically generated query (not compatible with `--query`). If only one value is given to `--width` the region will be a square, but if two values are given, the widths of the query box along each dimension will be different. The value(s) is (are) in the same units as the coordinate column (see `--ccol`, usually RA and Dec which are degrees). You can use simple division for each value directly on the command-line if you want relatively small (and more human-friendly) sizes. For example, if you want your box to be 1 arc-minutes along the RA and 2 arc-minutes along Dec, you can use `--width=1/60,2/60`.

`-g STR,FLT,FLT`
`--range=STR,FLT,FLT`
The column name and numerical range (inclusive) of acceptable values in that column (not compatible with `--query`). This option can be called multiple

times for applying range limits on many columns in one call (thus greatly reducing the download size). For example, when used on the ESA gaia database, you can use `--range=phot_g_mean_mag,10:15` to only get rows that have a value between 10 and 15 (inclusive on both sides) in the `phot_g_mean_mag` column.

If you want all rows larger, or smaller, than a certain number, you can use `inf`, or `-inf` as the first or second values respectively. For example, if you want objects with SDSS spectroscopic redshifts larger than 2 (from the VizieR `sdss12` database), you can use `--range=zsp,2,inf`

If you want the interval to not be inclusive on both sides, you can run `astquery` once and get the command that it executes. Then you can edit it to be non-inclusive on your desired side.

`-b STR[,STR]`
`--noblank=STR[,STR]`
Only ask for rows that do not have a blank value in the `STR` column. This option can be called many times, and each call can have multiple column names (separated by a comma or `,`). For example, if you want the retrieved rows to not have a blank value in columns `A`, `B`, `C` and `D`, you can use `--noblank=A -bB,C,D`.

`--sort=STR[,STR]`
Ask for the server to sort the downloaded data based on the given columns. For example, let's assume your desired catalog has column `Z` for redshift and column `MAG_R` for magnitude in the R band. When you call `--sort=Z,MAG_R`, it will primarily sort the columns based on the redshift, but if two objects have the same redshift, they will be sorted by magnitude. You can add as many columns as you like for higher-level sorting.

6 Data manipulation

Images are one of the major formats of data that is used in astronomy. The functions in this chapter explain the GNU Astronomy Utilities which are provided for their manipulation. For example, cropping out a part of a larger image or convolving the image with a given kernel or applying a transformation to it.

6.1 Crop

Astronomical images are often very large, filled with thousands of galaxies. It often happens that you only want a section of the image, or you have a catalog of sources and you want to visually analyze them in small postage stamps. Crop is made to do all these things. When more than one crop is required, Crop will divide the crops between multiple threads to significantly reduce the run time.

Astronomical surveys are usually extremely large. So large in fact, that the whole survey will not fit into a reasonably sized file. Because of this, surveys usually cut the final image into separate tiles and store each tile in a file. For example, the COSMOS survey's Hubble space telescope, ACS F814W image consists of 81 separate FITS images, with each one having a volume of 1.7 Gigabytes.

Even though the tile sizes are chosen to be large enough that too many galaxies/targets do not fall on the edges of the tiles, inevitably some do. So when you simply crop the image of such targets from one tile, you will miss a large area of the surrounding sky (which is essential in estimating the noise). Therefore in its WCS mode, Crop will stitch parts of the tiles that are relevant for a target (with the given width) from all the input images that cover that region into the output. Of course, the tiles have to be present in the list of input files.

Besides cropping postage stamps around certain coordinates, Crop can also crop arbitrary polygons from an image (or a set of tiles by stitching the relevant parts of different tiles within the polygon), see `--polygon` in Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393. Alternatively, it can crop out rectangular regions through the `--section` option from one image, see Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392.

6.1.1 Crop modes

In order to be comprehensive, intuitive, and easy to use, there are two ways to define the crop:

1. From its center and side length. For example, if you already know the coordinates of an object and want to inspect it in an image or to generate postage stamps of a catalog containing many such coordinates.
2. The vertices of the crop region, this can be useful for larger crops over many targets, for example, to crop out a uniformly deep, or contiguous, region of a large survey.

Irrespective of how the crop region is defined, the coordinates to define the crop can be in Image (pixel) or World Coordinate System (WCS) standards. All coordinates are read as floating point numbers (not integers, except for the `--section` option, see below). By setting the *mode* in Crop, you define the standard that the given coordinates must be interpreted. Here, the different ways to specify the crop region are discussed within each standard. For the full list options, please see Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393.

When the crop is defined by its center, the respective (integer) central pixel position will be found internally according to the FITS standard. To have this pixel positioned in the center of the cropped region, the final cropped region will have an add number of pixels (even if you give an even number to `--width` in image mode).

Furthermore, when the crop is defined as by its center, Crop allows you to only keep crops what do not have any blank pixels in the vicinity of their center (your primary target). This can be very convenient when your input catalog/coordinates originated from another survey/filter which is not fully covered by your input image, to learn more about this feature, please see the description of the `--checkcenter` option in Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393.

Image coordinates

In image mode (`--mode=img`), Crop interprets the pixel coordinates and widths in units of the input data-elements (for example, pixels in an image, not world coordinates). In image mode, only one image may be input. The output crop(s) can be defined in multiple ways as listed below.

Center of multiple crops (in a catalog)

The center of (possibly multiple) crops are read from a text file. In this mode, the columns identified with the `--coordcol` option are interpreted as the center of a crop with a width of `--width` pixels along each dimension. The columns can contain any floating point value. The value to `--output` option is seen as a directory which will host (the possibly multiple) separate crop files, see Section 6.1.4.2 [Crop output], page 399, for more. For a tutorial using this feature, please see Section 2.1.19 [Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization], page 63.

Center of a single crop (on the command-line)

The center of the crop is given on the command-line with the `--center` option. The crop width is specified by the `--width` option along each dimension. The given coordinates and width can be any floating point number.

Vertices of a single crop

In Image mode there are two options to define the vertices of a region to crop: `--section` and `--polygon`. The former is lower-level (does not accept floating point vertices, and only a rectangular region can be defined), it is also only available in Image mode. Please see Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392, for a full description of this method.

The latter option (`--polygon`) is a higher-level method to define any polygon (with any number of vertices) with floating point values. Please see the description of this option in Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393, for its syntax.

WCS coordinates

In WCS mode (`--mode=wcs`), the coordinates and width are interpreted using the World Coordinate System (WCS, that must accompany the dataset), not

pixel coordinates. You can optionally use `--widthinpix` for the width to be interpreted in pixels (even though the coordinates are in WCS). In WCS mode, Crop accepts multiple datasets as input. When the cropped region (defined by its center or vertices) overlaps with multiple of the input images/tiles, the overlapping regions will be taken from the respective input (they will be stitched when necessary for each output crop).

In this mode, the input images do not necessarily have to be the same size, they just need to have the same orientation and pixel resolution. Currently only orientation along the celestial coordinates is accepted, if your input has a different orientation or resolution you can use Warp's `--gridfile` option to align the image before cropping it (see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501).

Each individual input image/tile can even be smaller than the final crop. In any case, any part of any of the input images which overlaps with the desired region will be used in the crop. Note that if there is an overlap in the input images/tiles, the pixels from the last input image read are going to be used for the overlap. Crop will not change pixel values, so it assumes your overlapping tiles were cutout from the same original image. There are multiple ways to define your cropped region as listed below.

Center of multiple crops (in a catalog)
: Similar to catalog inputs in Image mode (above), except that the values along each dimension are assumed to have the same units as the dataset's WCS information. For example, the central RA and Dec value for each crop will be read from the first and second calls to the `--coordcol` option. The width of the cropped box (in units of the WCS, or degrees in RA and Dec mode) must be specified with the `--width` option. You can optionally use `--widthinpix` for the value of `--width` to be interpreted in pixels.

Center of a single crop (on the command-line)
: You can specify the center of only one crop box with the `--center` option. If it exists in the input images, it will be cropped similar to the catalog mode, see above also for `--width`.

Vertices of a single crop
: The `--polygon` option is a high-level method to define any convex polygon (with any number of vertices). Please see the description of this option in Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393, for its syntax.

CAUTION: In WCS mode, the image has to be aligned with the celestial coordinates, such that the first FITS axis is parallel (opposite direction) to the Right Ascension (RA) and the second FITS axis is parallel to the declination. If these conditions are not met for an image, Crop will warn you and abort. You can use Warp to align the input image to standard celestial coordinates, see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501.

As a summary, if you do not specify a catalog, you have to define the cropped region manually on the command-line. In any case the mode is mandatory for Crop to be able to interpret the values given as coordinates or widths.

6.1.2 Crop section syntax

When in image mode, one of the methods to crop only one rectangular section from the input image is to use the `--section` option. Crop has a powerful syntax to read the box parameters from a string of characters. If you leave certain parts of the string to be empty, Crop can fill them for you based on the input image sizes.

To define a box, you need the coordinates of two points: the first (`X1`, `Y1`) and the last pixel (`X2`, `Y2`) pixel positions in the image, or four integer numbers in total. The four coordinates can be specified with one string in this format: '`X1:X2,Y1:Y2`'. This string is given to the `--section` option. Therefore, the pixels along the first axis that are $\geq$`X1` and $\leq$`X2` will be included in the cropped image. The same goes for the second axis. Note that each different term will be read as an integer, not a float.

The reason it only accepts integers is that `--section` is a low-level option (which is also very fast!). For a higher-level way to specify region (any polygon, not just a box), please see the `--polygon` option in Section 6.1.4.1 [Crop options], page 394. Also note that in the FITS standard, pixel indexes along each axis start from unity(1) not zero(0).

You can omit any of the values and they will be filled automatically. The left hand side of the colon (`:`) will be filled with `1`, and the right side with the image size. So, `2:,:` will include the full range of pixels along the second axis and only those with a first axis index larger than `2` in the first axis. If the colon is omitted for a dimension, then the full range is automatically used. So the same string is also equal to `2:,` or `2:` or even `2`. If you want such a case for the second axis, you should set it to: `,2`.

If you specify a negative value, it will be seen as before the indexes of the image which are outside the image along the bottom or left sides when viewed in SAO DS9. In case you want to count from the top or right sides of the image, you can use an asterisk (`*`). When confronted with a `*`, Crop will replace it with the maximum length of the image in that dimension. So `*-10:*+10,*-20:*+20` will mean that the crop box will be 20×40 pixels in size and only include the top corner of the input image with 3/4 of the image being covered by blank pixels, see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392.

If you feel more comfortable with space characters between the values, you can use as many space characters as you wish, just be careful to put your value in double quotes, for example, `--section="5:200, 123:854"`. If you forget the quotes, anything after the first space will not be seen by `--section` and you will most probably get an error because the rest of your string will be read as a filename (which most probably does not exist). See Section 4.1 [Command-line], page 249, for a description of how the command-line works.

6.1.3 Blank pixels

The cropped box can potentially include pixels that are beyond the image range. For example, when a target in the input catalog was very near the edge of the input image. The parts of the cropped image that were not in the input image will be filled with the following two values depending on the data type of the image. In both cases, SAO DS9 will not color code those pixels.

- If the data type of the image is a floating point type (float or double), IEEE NaN (Not a number) will be used.
- For integer types, pixels out of the image will be filled with the value of the `BLANK` keyword in the cropped image header. The value assigned to it is the lowest value possible for that type, so you will probably never need it any way. Only for the unsigned character type (`BITPIX=8` in the FITS header), the maximum value is used because it is unsigned, the smallest value is zero which is often meaningful.

You can ask for such blank regions to not be included in the output crop image using the `--noblank` option. In such cases, there is no guarantee that the image size of your outputs are what you asked for.

In some survey images, unfortunately they do not use the `BLANK` FITS keyword. Instead they just give all pixels outside of the survey area a value of zero. So by default, when dealing with float or double image types, any values that are 0.0 are also regarded as blank regions. This can be turned off with the `--zeroisnotblank` option.

6.1.4 Invoking Crop

Crop will crop a region from an image. If in WCS mode, it will also stitch parts from separate images in the input files. The executable name is `astcrop` with the following general template

```
$ astcrop [OPTION...] [ASCIIcatalog] ASTRdata ...
```

One line examples:

```
## Crop all objects in cat.txt from image.fits:
$ astcrop --catalog=cat.txt image.fits

## Crop all options in catalog (with RA,DEC) from all the files
## ending in `_drz.fits' in `/mnt/data/COSMOS/':
$ astcrop --mode=wcs --catalog=cat.txt /mnt/data/COSMOS/*_drz.fits

## Crop the outer 10 border pixels of the input image and give
## the output HDU a name ('EXTNAME' keyword in FITS) of 'mysection'.
$ astcrop --section=10:*-10,10:*-10 --hdu=2 image.fits \
          --metaname=mysection

## Crop region around RA and Dec of (189.16704, 62.218203):
$ astcrop --mode=wcs --center=189.16704,62.218203 goodsnorth.fits

## Same crop above, but coordinates given in sexagesimal (you can
## also use ':' between the sexagesimal components).
$ astcrop --mode=wcs --center=12h36m40.08,62d13m5.53 goodsnorth.fits

## Crop region around pixel coordinate (568.342, 2091.719):
$ astcrop --mode=img --center=568.342,2091.719 --width=201 image.fits

## Crop all HDUs within a FITS file at a certain coordinate, while
## preserving the names of the HDUs in the output.
```

```
$ for hdu in $(astfits input.fits --listimagehdus); do \
    astcrop input.fits --hdu=$hdu --append --output=crop.fits \
            --metaname=$hdu --mode=wcs --center=189.16704,62.218203 \
            --width=10/3600
  done
```

Crop has one mandatory argument which is the input image name(s), shown above with `ASTRdata ...`. You can use shell expansions, for example, `*` for this if you have lots of images in WCS mode. If the crop box centers are in a catalog, you can use the `--catalog` option. In other cases, you have to provide the single cropped output parameters must be given with command-line options. See Section 6.1.4.2 [Crop output], page 399, for how the output file name(s) can be specified. For the full list of general options to all Gnuastro programs (including Crop), please see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253.

Floating point numbers can be used to specify the crop region (except the `--section` option, see Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392). In such cases, the floating point values will be used to find the desired integer pixel indices based on the FITS standard. Hence, Crop ultimately does not do any sub-pixel cropping (in other words, it does not change pixel values). If you need such crops, you can use Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501, to first warp the image to the a new pixel grid, then crop from that. For example, let's assume you want a crop from pixels 12.982 to 80.982 along the first dimension. You should first translate the image by -0.482 (note that the edge of a pixel is at integer multiples of 0.5). So you should run Warp with `--translate=-0.482,0` and then crop the warped image with `--section=13:81`.

There are two ways to define the cropped region: with its center or its vertices. See Section 6.1.1 [Crop modes], page 389, for a full description. In the former case, Crop can check if the central region of the cropped image is indeed filled with data or is blank (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392), and not produce any output when the center is blank, see the description under `--checkcenter` for more.

When in catalog mode, Crop will run in parallel unless you set `--numthreads=1`, see Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276. Note that when multiple outputs are created with threads, the outputs will not be created in the same order. This is because the threads are asynchronous and thus not started in order. This has no effect on each output, see Section 2.1.19 [Reddest clumps, cutouts and parallelization], page 63, for a tutorial on effectively using this feature.

6.1.4.1 Crop options

The options can be classified into the following contexts: Input, Output and operating mode options. Options that are common to all Gnuastro program are listed in Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, and will not be repeated here.

When you are specifying the crop vertices yourself (through `--section`, or `--polygon`) on relatively small regions (depending on the resolution of your images) the outputs from image and WCS mode can be approximately equivalent. However, as the crop sizes get large, the curved nature of the WCS coordinates have to be considered. For example, when using `--section`, the right ascension of the bottom left and top left corners will not be equal. If you only want regions within a given right ascension, use `--polygon` in WCS mode.

Input image parameters:

`--hstartwcs=INT`

Specify the first keyword card (line number) to start finding the input image world coordinate system information. This is useful when certain header keywords of the input may cause bad conflicts with your crop (see an example described below). To get line numbers of the header keywords, you can pipe the fully printed header into `cat -n` like below:

```
$ astfits image.fits -h1 | cat -n
```

For example, distortions have only been present in WCSLIB from version 5.15 (released in mid 2016). Therefore some pipelines still apply their own specific set of WCS keywords for distortions and put them into the image header along with those that WCSLIB does recognize. So now that WCSLIB recognizes most of the standard distortion parameters, they will get confused with the old ones and give wrong results. For example, in the CANDELS-GOODS South images that were created before WCSLIB 5.15[1].

The two `--hstartwcs` and `--hendwcs` are thus provided so when using older datasets, you can specify what region in the FITS headers you want to use to read the WCS keywords. Note that this is only relevant for reading the WCS information, basic data information like the image size are read separately. These two options will only be considered when the value to `--hendwcs` is larger than that of `--hstartwcs`. So if they are equal or `--hstartwcs` is larger than `--hendwcs`, then all the input keywords will be parsed to get the WCS information of the image.

`--hendwcs=INT`

Specify the last keyword card to read for specifying the image world coordinate system on the input images. See `--hstartwcs`

Crop box parameters:

`-c FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
`--center=FLT[,FLT[,...]]`

The central position of the crop in the input image. The positions along each dimension must be separated by a comma (`,`) and fractions are also acceptable. The comma-separated values can either be in degrees (a single number), or sexagesimal (`_h_m_` for RA, `_d_m_` for Dec, or `_:_:_` for both).

The number of values given to this option must be the same as the dimensions of the input dataset. The width of the crop should be set with `--width`. The units of the coordinates are read based on the value to the `--mode` option, see below.

`-O STR`
`--mode=STR`

Mode to interpret the crop's coordinates (for example with `--center`, `--catalog` or `--polygon`). The value must either be `img` (to assume image/pixel coordinates) or `wcs` (to assume WCS, usually RA/Dec, coordinates), see Section 6.1.1 [Crop modes], page 389, for a full description.

[1] `https://archive.stsci.edu/pub/hlsp/candels/goods-s/gs-tot/v1.0/`

`-w FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
`--width=FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
Width of the cropped region about coordinate given to `--center`. If in WCS mode, value(s) given to this option will be read in the same units as the dataset's WCS information along this dimension (unless `--widthinpix` is given). This option may take either a single value (to be used for all dimensions: `--width=10` in image-mode will crop a 10×10 pixel image) or multiple values (a specific value for each dimension: `--width=10,20` in image-mode will crop a 10×20 pixel image).

The `--width` option also accepts fractions. For example, if you want the width of your crop to be 3 by 5 arcseconds along RA and Dec respectively and you are in wcs-mode, you can use: `--width=3/3600,5/3600`.

The final output will have an odd number of pixels to allow easy identification of the pixel which keeps your requested coordinate (from `--center` or `--catalog`). If you want an even sided crop, you can run Crop afterwards with `--section=":*-1,:*-1"` or `--section=2:,2:` (depending on which side you do not need), see Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392.

The basic reason for making an odd-sided crop is that your given central coordinate will ultimately fall within a discrete pixel in the image (defined by the FITS standard). When the crop has an odd number of pixels in each dimension, that pixel can be very well defined as the "central" pixel of the crop, making it unambiguously easy to identify. However, for an even-sided crop, it will be very hard to identify the central pixel (it can be on any of the four pixels adjacent to the central point of the image!).

`-X`
`--widthinpix`
In WCS mode, interpret the value to `--width` as number of pixels, not the WCS units like degrees. This is useful when you want a fixed crop size in pixels, even though your center coordinates are in WCS (for example, RA and Dec).

`-l STR`
`-l FLT:FLT,...`
`--polygon=STR`
`--polygon=FLT,FLT:FLT,FLT:...`
Polygon vertice coordinates (when value is in `FLT,FLT:FLT,FLT:...` format) or the filename of a SAO DS9 region file (when the value has no `,` or `:` characters). Each vertice can either be in degrees (a single floating point number) or sexagesimal (in formats of '`_h_m_`' for RA and '`_d_m_`' for Dec, or simply '`_:_:_`' for either of them).

The vertices are used to define the polygon: in the same order given to this option. When the vertices are not necessarily ordered in the proper order (for example, one vertice in a square comes after its diagonal opposite), you can add the `--polygonsort` option which will attempt to sort the vertices before cropping. Note that for concave polygons, sorting is not recommended because there is no unique solution, for more, see the description under `--polygonsort`.

This option can be used both in the image and WCS modes, see Section 6.1.1 [Crop modes], page 389. If a SAO DS9 region file is used, the coordinate mode of Crop will be determined by the contents of the file and any value given to `--mode` is ignored. The cropped image will be the size of the rectangular region that completely encompasses the polygon. By default all the pixels that are outside of the polygon will be set as blank values (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). However, if `--polygonout` is called all pixels internal to the vertices will be set to blank. In WCS-mode, you may provide many FITS images/tiles: Crop will stitch them to produce this cropped region, then apply the polygon.

The syntax for the polygon vertices is similar to, and simpler than, that for `--section`. In short, the dimensions of each coordinate are separated by a comma (`,`) and each vertex is separated by a colon (`:`). You can define as many vertices as you like. If you would like to use space characters between the dimensions and vertices to make them more human-readable, then you have to put the value to this option in double quotation marks.

For example, let's assume you want to work on the deepest part of the WFC3/IR images of Hubble Space Telescope eXtreme Deep Field (HST-XDF). According to the web page (`https://archive.stsci.edu/prepds/xdf/`)[2] the deepest part is contained within the coordinates:

```
[ (53.187414,-27.779152), (53.159507,-27.759633),
  (53.134517,-27.787144), (53.161906,-27.807208) ]
```

They have provided mask images with only these pixels in the WFC3/IR images, but what if you also need to work on the same region in the full resolution ACS images? Also what if you want to use the CANDELS data for the shallow region? Running Crop with `--polygon` will easily pull out this region of the image for you, irrespective of the resolution. If you have set the operating mode to WCS mode in your nearest configuration file (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270), there is no need to call `--mode=wcs` on the command-line.

```
$ astcrop --mode=wcs desired-filter-image(s).fits          \
   --polygon="53.187414,-27.779152 : 53.159507,-27.759633 : \
              53.134517,-27.787144 : 53.161906,-27.807208"
```

More generally, you have an image and want to define the polygon yourself (it is not already published like the example above). As the number of vertices increases, checking the vertex coordinates on a FITS viewer (for example, SAO DS9) and typing them in, one by one, can be very tedious and prone to typo errors. In such cases, you can make a polygon "region" in DS9 and using your mouse, easily define (and visually see) it. Given that SAO DS9 has a graphic user interface (GUI), if you do not have the polygon vertices before-hand, it is much more easier build your polygon there and pass it onto Crop through the region file.

You can take the following steps to make an SAO DS9 region file containing your polygon. Open your desired FITS image with SAO DS9 and activate its "region" mode with Edit→Region. Then define the region as a polygon with

[2] `https://archive.stsci.edu/prepds/xdf/`

Region→Shape→Polygon. Click on the approximate center of the region you want and a small square will appear. By clicking on the vertices of the square you can shrink or expand it, clicking and dragging anywhere on the edges will enable you to define a new vertex. After the region has been nicely defined, save it as a file with Region→"Save Regions". You can then select the name and address of the output file, keep the format as `REG (*.reg)` and press the "OK" button. In the next window, keep format as "ds9" and "Coordinate System" as "fk5" for RA and Dec (or "Image" for pixel coordinates). A plain text file is now created (let's call it `ds9.reg`) which you can pass onto Crop with `--polygon=ds9.reg`.

For the expected format of the region file, see the description of `gal_ds9_reg_read_polygon` in Section 12.3.36 [SAO DS9 library (`ds9.h`)], page 940. However, since SAO DS9 makes this file for you, you do not usually need to worry about its internal format unless something un-expected happens and you find a bug.

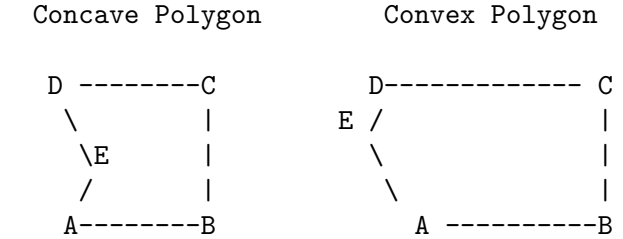
`--polygonout`

Keep all the regions outside the polygon and mask the inner ones with blank pixels (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). This is practically the inverse of the default mode of treating polygons. Note that this option only works when you have only provided one input image. If multiple images are given (in WCS mode), then the full area covered by all the images has to be shown and the polygon excluded. This can lead to a very large area if large surveys like COSMOS are used. So Crop will abort and notify you. In such cases, it is best to crop out the larger region you want, then mask the smaller region with this option.

`--polygonsort`

Sort the given set of vertices to the `--polygon` option. For a concave polygon it will sort the vertices correctly, however for a convex polygon it there is no unique sorting, so be careful because the crop may not be what you expected.

Polygons come in two classes: convex and concave (or generally, non-convex!), see below for a demonstration. Convex polygons are those where all inner angles are less than 180 degrees. By contrast, a concave polygon is one where an inner angle may be more than 180 degrees.



`-s STR`
`--section=STR`

Section of the input image which you want to be cropped. See Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392, for a complete explanation on the syntax required for this input.

`-C FITS/TXT`
`--catalog=FITS/TXT`
File name of catalog for making multiple crops from the input images/cubes. The catalog can be in any of Gnuastro's recognized Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285. The columns containing the coordinates for the crop centers can be specified with the `--coordcol` option (using column names or numbers, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289). The catalog can also contain the name of each crop, you can specify the column containing the name with the `--namecol`.

`--cathdu=STR/INT`
The HDU (extension) containing the catalog (if the file given to `--catalog` is a FITS file). This can either be the HDU name (if it has one) or number (counting from 0). By default (if this option is not given), the second HDU will be used (equivalent to `--cathdu=1`. For more on how to specify the HDU, see the explanation of the `--hdu` option in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

`-x STR/INT`
`--coordcol=STR/INT`
The column in a catalog to read as a coordinate. The value can be either the column number (starting from 1), or a match/search in the table meta-data, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. This option must be called multiple times, depending on the number of dimensions in the input dataset. If it is called more than necessary, the extra columns (later calls to this option on the command-line or configuration files) will be ignored, see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271.

`-n STR/INT`
`--namecol=STR/INT`
Column selection of crop file name. The value can be either the column number (starting from 1), or a match/search in the table meta-data, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. This option can be used both in Image and WCS modes, and not a mandatory. When a column is given to this option, the final crop base file name will be taken from the contents of this column. The directory will be determined by the `--output` option (current directory if not given) and the value to `--suffix` will be appended. When this column is not given, the row number will be used instead.

6.1.4.2 Crop output

The string given to `--output` option will be interpreted depending on how many crops were requested, see Section 6.1.1 [Crop modes], page 389:

- When a catalog is given, the value of the `--output` (see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253) will be read as the directory to store the output cropped images. Hence if it does not already exist, Crop will abort with an "No such file or directory" error.

  The crop file names will consist of two parts: a variable part (the row number of each target starting from 1) along with a fixed string which you can set with the `--suffix`

option. Optionally, you may also use the `--namecol` option to define a column in the input catalog to use as the file name instead of numbers.

- When only one crop is desired, the value to `--output` will be read as a file name. If no output is specified or if it is a directory, the output file name will follow the automatic output names of Gnuastro, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292: The string given to `--suffix` will be replaced with the `.fits` suffix of the input.

When the desired crop is not within the input image(s) crop will not produce any image for that crop. If the `--quiet` option is not given, crop will report which one of the inputs was created and which wasn't (due to an overlap or the center being empty, see `--checkcenter`. This information can be formally written in an optional log-file also, see below. At the end, Crop will return successfully to the shell if at least one output file was created. If no output was created at all, then crop will return to the shell with a failure.

By default, as suggested by the FITS standard and implemented in all Gnuastro programs, the first/primary extension of the output files will only contain metadata. The cropped images/cubes will be written into the 2nd HDU of their respective FITS file (which is actually counted as `1` because HDU counting starts from `0`). However, if you want the cropped data to be written into the primary (0-th) HDU, run Crop with the `--primaryimghdu` option.

If the output file already exists by default Crop will re-write it (so that all existing HDUs in it will be deleted). If you want the cropped HDU to be appended to existing HDUs, use `--append` described below.

The 0-th HDU of each output cropped image will contain the names of the input image(s) it was cut from. If a name is longer than the 70 character space that the FITS standard allows for header keyword values, the name will be cut into several keywords from the nearest slash (`/`). The keywords have the following format: `ICFn_m` (for Crop File). Where `n` is the number of the image used in this crop and `m` is the part of the name (it can be broken into multiple keywords). Following the name is another keyword named `ICFnPIX` which shows the pixel range from that input image in the same syntax as Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392. So this string can be directly given to the `--section` option later.

Once done, a log file can be created in the current directory with the `--log` option. This file will have three columns and the same number of rows as the number of cropped images. There are also comments on the top of the log file explaining basic information about the run and descriptions for the columns. A short description of the columns is also given below:

1. The cropped image file name for that row.
2. The number of input images that were used to create that image.
3. A `0` if the central few pixels (value to the `--checkcenter` option) are blank and `1` if they are not. When the crop was not defined by its center (see Section 6.1.1 [Crop modes], page 389), or `--checkcenter` was given a value of 0 (see Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393), the center will not be checked and this column will be given a value of `-1`.

If the output crop(s) have a single element (pixel in an image) and `--oneelemstdout` has been called, no output file will be produced! Instead, the single element's value is printed on the standard output. See the description of `--oneelemstdout` below for more:

`-p STR`
`--suffix=STR`
: The suffix (or post-fix) of the output files for when you want all the cropped images to have a special ending. One case where this might be helpful is when besides the science images, you want the weight images (or exposure maps, which are also distributed with survey images) of the cropped regions too. So in one run, you can set the input images to the science images and `--suffix=_s.fits`. In the next run you can set the weight images as input and `--suffix=_w.fits`.

`-a STR`
`--metaname=STR`
: Name of cropped HDU (value to the `EXTNAME` keyword of FITS). If not given, a default `CROP` will be placed there (so the `EXTNAME` keyword will always be present in the output). If crop produces many outputs from a catalog, they will be given the same string as `EXTNAME` (the file names containing the cropped HDU will be different).

`-A`
`--append` If the output file already exists, append the cropped image HDU to the end of any existing HDUs. By default (when this option isn't given), if an output file already exists, any existing HDU in it will be deleted. If the output file doesn't exist, this option is redundant.

`--primaryimghdu`
: Write the output into the primary (0-th) HDU/extension of the output. By default, like all Gnuastro's default outputs, no data is written in the primary extension because the FITS standard suggests keeping that extension free of data and only for metadata.

`-t`
`--oneelemstdout`
: When a crop only has a single element (a single pixel), print it to the standard output instead of making a file. By default (without this option), a single-pixel crop will be saved to a file, just like a crop of any other size.

  When a single crop is requested (either through `--center`, or a catalog of one row is given), the single value alone is printed with nothing else. This makes it easy to immediately write the value into a shell variable for example:

```
value=$(astcrop img.fits --mode=wcs --center=1.234,5.678 \
                --width=1 --widthinpix --oneelemstdout \
                --quiet)
```

  If a catalog of coordinates is given (that would produce multiple crops; or multiple values in this scenario), the solution for a single value will not work! Recall that Crop will do the crops in parallel, therefore each time you run it, the order of the rows will be different and not correspond to the order of the inputs.

  To allow identification of each value (which row of the input catalog it corresponds to), Crop will first print the name of the would-be created file name,

and print the value after it (separated by an empty SPACE character). In other words, the file in the first column will not actually be created, but the value of the pixel it would have contained (if this option was not called) is printed after it.

`-c FLT/INT`
`--checkcenter=FLT/INT`
Square box width of region in the center of the image to check for blank values. If any of the pixels in this central region of a crop (defined by its center) are blank, then it will not be stored in an output file. If the value to this option is zero, no checking is done. This check is only applied when the cropped region(s) are defined by their center (not by the vertices, see Section 6.1.1 [Crop modes], page 389) and when FITS files are made (`--oneelemstdout` is not called).

The units of the value are interpreted based on the `--mode` value (in WCS or pixel units). The ultimate checked region size (in pixels) will be an odd integer around the center (converted from WCS, or when an even number of pixels are given to this option). In WCS mode, the value can be given as fractions, for example, if the WCS units are in degrees, `0.1/3600` will correspond to a check size of 0.1 arcseconds.

Because survey regions do not often have a clean square or rectangle shape, some of the pixels on the sides of the survey FITS image do not commonly have any data and are blank (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). So when the catalog was not generated from the input image, it often happens that the image does not have data over some of the points.

When the given center of a crop falls in such regions or outside the dataset, and this option has a non-zero value, no crop will be created. Therefore with this option, you can specify a width of a small box (3 pixels is often good enough) around the central pixel of the cropped image. You can check which crops were created and which were not from the command-line (if `--quiet` was not called, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259), or in Crop's log file (see Section 6.1.4.2 [Crop output], page 399).

`-b`
`--noblank`
Pixels outside of the input image that are in the crop box will not be used. By default they are filled with blank values (depending on type), see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392. This option only applies only in Image mode, see Section 6.1.1 [Crop modes], page 389.

`-z`
`--zeroisnotblank`
In float or double images, it is common to give the value of zero to blank pixels. If the input image type is one of these two types, such pixels will also be considered as blank. You can disable this behavior with this option, see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392.

`--log` Generate a log file that contains the status of each of each crop in three columns: the name of the crop, if its center overlapped with the input(s) and if the central

pixels were blank or not. The name of the log file will be based on the output file name:

- If no output file name is given, it will be `astcrop-log.fits`.
- If there is only a single crop and the output is a FITS image, the log file will have the same base name as the output crop, but with a `-log.fits` suffix. In case `--oneelemstdout` is called with a single-pixel width then no output file will be created, so the log-file's name will be the string given to `--output`.
- If the output is a directory name (when a catalog is given), the log file name will be the directory name along with a `-log.fits` suffix. In case `--oneelemstdout` is called with a single-pixel width then no output file will be created, so the log-file's name will be the string given to `--output`.

6.1.4.3 Crop known issues

When running Crop, you may encounter strange errors and bugs. In these cases, please report a bug and we will try to fix it as soon as possible, see Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15. However, some things are beyond our control, or may take too long to fix directly. In this section we list such known issues that may occur in known cases and suggest the hack (or work-around) to fix the problem:

Crash with '`Killed`' when cropping catalog from `.fits.gz`

This happens because CFISTIO (that reads and writes FITS files) will internally decompress the file in a temporary place (possibly in the RAM), then start reading from it. On the other hand, by default when given a catalog (with many crops) and not specifying `--numthreads`, Crop will use the maximum number of threads available on your system to do each crop faster. On an normal (not compressed) file, parallel access will not cause a problem, however, when attempting parallel access with the maximum number of threads on a compressed file, CFITSIO crashes with `Killed`. Therefore the following solutions can be used to fix this crash:

- Decrease the number of threads (at the minimum, set `--numthreads=1`). Since this solution does not attempt to change any of your previous Crop command components or does not change your local file structure, it is the preferred way.
- Decompress the file (with the command below) and feed the `.fits` file into Crop without changing the number of threads.

```
$ gunzip -k image.fits.gz
```

6.2 Arithmetic

It is commonly necessary to do operations on some or all of the elements of a dataset independently (pixels in an image). For example, in the reduction of raw data it is necessary to subtract the Sky value (Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528) from each image image. Later (once the images as warped into a single grid using Warp for example, see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501), the images are co-added (the output pixel grid is the average of the pixels of the individual input images). Arithmetic is Gnuastro's program for such operations on your

datasets directly from the command-line. It currently uses the reverse polish or post-fix notation, see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404, and will work on the native data types of the input images/data to reduce CPU and RAM resources, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. For more information on how to run Arithmetic, please see Section 6.2.5 [Invoking Arithmetic], page 473.

6.2.1 Reverse polish notation

The most common notation for arithmetic operations is the infix notation (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Infix_notation`) where the operator goes between the two operands, for example, $4+5$. The infix notation is the preferred way in most programming languages which come with scripting features for large programs. This is because the infix notation requires a way to define precedence when more than one operator is involved.

For example, consider the statement `5 + 6 / 2`. Should 6 first be divided by 2, then added by 5? Or should 5 first be added with 6, then divided by 2? Therefore we need parenthesis to show precedence: `5+(6/2)` or `(5+6)/2`. Furthermore, if you need to leave a value for later processing, you will need to define a variable for it; for example, `a=(5+6)/2`.

Gnuastro provides libraries where you can also use infix notation in C or C++ programs. However, Gnuastro's programs are primarily designed to be run on the command-line and the level of complexity that infix notation requires can be annoying/confusing to write on the command-line (where they can get confused with the shell's parenthesis or variable definitions). Therefore Gnuastro's Arithmetic and Table (when doing column arithmetic) programs use the post-fix notation, also known as reverse polish notation (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reverse_Polish_notation`). For example, instead of writing `5+6`, we write `5 6 +`.

The Wikipedia article on the reverse polish notation provides some excellent explanation on this notation but here we will give a short summary here for self-sufficiency. In short, in the reverse polish notation, the operator is placed after the operands. As we will see below this removes the need to define parenthesis and lets you use previous values without needing to define a variable. In the future[3] we do plan to also optionally allow infix notation when arithmetic operations on datasets are desired, but due to time constraints on the developers we cannot do it immediately.

To easily understand how the reverse polish notation works, you can think of each operand (`5` and `6` in the example above) as a node in a "last-in-first-out" stack. One such stack in daily life is a stack of dishes in the kitchen: you put a clean dish, on the top of a stack of dishes when it is ready for later usage. Later, when you need a dish, you pick the top one (hence the "last" dish placed "in" the stack is the "first" dish that comes "out" when necessary).

Each operator will need a certain number of operands (in the example above, the `+` operator needs two operands: `5` and `6`). In the kitchen metaphor, an operator can be an oven. Every time an operator is confronted, the operator takes (or "pops") the number of operands it needs from the top of the stack (so they do not exist in the stack any more), does its operation, and places (or "pushes") the result back on top of the stack. So if you want the average of 5 and 6, you would write: `5 6 + 2 /`. The operations that are done are:

[3] `https://savannah.gnu.org/task/index.php?13867`

1. `5` is an operand, so Arithmetic pushes it to the top of the stack (which is initially empty). In the kitchen metaphor, you can visualize this as taking a new dish from the cabinet, putting the number 5 inside of the dish, and putting the dish on top of the (empty) cooking table in front of you. You now have a stack of one dish on the table in front of you.
2. `6` is also an operand, so it is pushed to the top of the stack. Like before, you can visualize this as taking a new dish from the cabinet, putting the number 6 in it and placing it on top of the previous dish. You now have a stack of two dishes on the table in front of you.
3. `+` is a *binary* operator, so it will pop the top two elements of the stack out of it, and perform addition on them (the order is $5 + 6$ in the example above). The result is `11` which is pushed to the top of the stack.

   To visualize this, you can think of the `+` operator as an oven with a place for two dishes. You pick up the top-most dish (that has the number 6 in it) and put it in the oven. The top dish is now the one that has the number 5. You also pick it up and put it in the oven, and close the oven door. When the oven has finished its cooking, it produces a single output (in one dish, with the number 11 inside of it). You take that output dish and put it back on the table. You now have a stack of one dish on the table in front of you.
4. `2` is an operand so push it onto the top of the stack. In the kitchen metaphor, you again go to the cabinet, pick up a dish and put the number 2 inside of it and put the dish over the previous dish (that has the number 11). You now have a stack of two dishes on the table in front of you.
5. `/` (division) is a binary operator, so pull out the top two elements of the stack (top-most is `2`, then `11`) and divide the second one by the first. In the kitchen metaphor, the `/` operator can be visualized as a microwave that takes two dishes. But unlike the oven (`+` operator) before, the order of inputs matters (they are on top of each other: with the top dish holder being the numerator and the bottom one being the denominator). Again, you look at your stack of dishes on the table.

   You pick up the top one (with value 2 inside of it) and put it in the microwave's bottom (denominator) dish holder. Then you go back to your stack of dishes on the table and pick up the top dish (with value 11 inside of it) and put that in the top (nominator) dish holder. The microwave will do its work and when it is finished, returns a new dish with the single value 5.5 inside of it. You pick up the dish from the microwave and place it back on the table.
6. There are no more operands or operators, so simply return the remaining operand in the output. In the kitchen metaphor, you see that your recipe has no more steps, so you just pick up the remaining dish and take it to the dining room to enjoy a good dinner.

In the Arithmetic program, the operands can be FITS images of any dimensionality, or numbers (see Section 6.2.5 [Invoking Arithmetic], page 473). In Table's column arithmetic, they can be any column in the table (a series of numbers in an array) or a single number (see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350).

With this notation, very complicated procedures can be created without the need for parenthesis or worrying about precedence. Even functions which take an arbitrary number

of arguments can be defined in this notation. This is a very powerful notation and is used in languages like Postscript[4] which produces PDF files when compiled.

6.2.2 Integer benefits and pitfalls

Integers are the simplest numerical data types (Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). Because of this, their storage space is much less, and their processing is much faster than floating point types. You can confirm this on your computer with the series of commands below. You will make four 5000 by 5000 pixel images filled with random values. Two of them will be saved as signed 8-bit integers, and two with 64-bit floating point types. The last command prints the size of the created images.

```
$ astarithmetic 5000 5000 2 makenew 5 mknoise-sigma int8    -oint-1.fits
$ astarithmetic 5000 5000 2 makenew 5 mknoise-sigma int8    -oint-2.fits
$ astarithmetic 5000 5000 2 makenew 5 mknoise-sigma float64 -oflt-1.fits
$ astarithmetic 5000 5000 2 makenew 5 mknoise-sigma float64 -oflt-2.fits
$ ls -lh int-*.fits flt-*.fits
```

The 8-bit integer images are only 24MB, while the 64-bit floating point images are 191 MB! Besides helping in storage (on your disk, or in RAM, while the program is running), the small size of these files also helps in faster reading of the inputs. Furthermore, CPUs can process integer operations much faster than floating points. In the integers, the ones with a smaller width (number of bits) can be processed much faster. You can see this with the two commands below where you will add the integer images with each other and the floats with each other:

```
$ astarithmetic flt-1.fits flt-2.fits + -oflt-sum.fits -g1
$ astarithmetic int-1.fits int-2.fits + -oint-sum.fits -g1
```

Have a look at the running time of the two commands above (that is printed on their last line). On the system that this paragraph was written on, the floating point and integer image sums were respectively done in 0.481 and 0.089 seconds (the integer operation was almost 5 times faster!).

If your data does not have decimal points, use integer types: integer types are much faster and can take much less space in your storage or RAM (while the program is running).

Select the smallest width that can host the range/precision of values: for example, if the largest possible value in your dataset is 1000 and all numbers are integers, store it as a 16-bit integer. Also, if you know the values can never become negative, store it as an unsigned 16-bit integer. For floating point types, if you know you will not need a precision of more than 6 significant digits, use the 32-bit floating point type. For more on the range (for integers) and precision (for floats), see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

There is a price to be paid for this improved efficiency in integers: your wisdom! If you have not selected your types wisely, strange situations may happen. For example, try the command below:

[4] See the EPS and PDF part of Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317, for a little more on the Postscript language.

```
$ astarithmetic 125 10 +
```

You expect the output to be 135, but it will be −121! The reason is that when Arithmetic (or column-arithmetic in Table) confronts a number on the command-line, it use the principles above to select the most efficient type for each number. Both 125 and 10 can safely fit within a signed, 8-bit integer type, so arithmetic will store both as an 8-bit integer. However, the sum (135) is larger than the maximum possible value of an 8-bit signed integer (127). Therefore an integer overflow will occur, and the bits will be over-written. As a result, the value will be $135 - 128 = 7$ more than the minimum value of this type (−128), which is $-128 + 7 = -121$.

When you know situations like this may occur, you can simply use Section 6.2.4.15 [Numerical type conversion operators], page 452, to set just one of the inputs to a wider data type (the smallest, wider type to avoid wasting resources). In the example above, this would be `uint16`:

```
$ astarithmetic 125 uint16 10 +
```

The reason this worked is that 125 is now converted into an unsigned 16-bit integer before the `+` operator. Since this is larger than an 8-bit integer, the C programming language's automatic type conversion will treat both as the wider type and store the result of the binary operation (`+`) in that type.

For such a basic operation like the command above, a faster hack would be any of the two commands below (which are equivalent). This is because `125.0` or `125.` are interpreted as floating-point types and they do not suffer from such issues (converting only on one input is enough):

```
$ astarithmetic 125.  10 +
$ astarithmetic 125.0 10 +
```

For this particular command, the fix above will be as fast as the `uint16` solution. This is because there are only two numbers, and the overhead of Arithmetic (reading configuration files, etc.) dominates the running time. However, for large datasets, the `uint16` solution will be faster (as you saw above), Arithmetic will consume less RAM while running, and the output will consume less storage in your system (all major benefits)!

It is possible to do internal checks in Gnuastro and catch integer overflows and correct them internally. However, we have not opted for this solution because all those checks will consume significant resources and slow down the program (especially with large datasets where RAM, storage and running time become important). To be optimal, we therefore trust that you (the wise Gnuastro user!) make the appropriate type conversion in your commands where necessary (recall that the operators are available in Section 6.2.4.15 [Numerical type conversion operators], page 452).

6.2.3 Noise basics

Deep astronomical images, like those used in extragalactic studies, seriously suffer from noise in the data. Generally speaking, the sources of noise in an astronomical image are photon counting noise and Instrumental noise which are discussed in Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408, and Section 6.2.3.2 [Instrumental noise], page 410. This review finishes with Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410, which is a short introduction on how random numbers are generated. We will see that while software random number generators are not perfect, they allow us to obtain a reproducible series of random

numbers through setting the random number generator function and seed value. Therefore in this section, we will also discuss how you can set these two parameters in Gnuastro's programs (including the arithmetic operators in Section 6.2.4.16 [Random number generators], page 453).

6.2.3.1 Photon counting noise

With the very accurate electronics used in today's detectors, photon counting noise[5] is the most significant source of uncertainty in most datasets. To understand this noise (error in counting) and its effect on the images of astronomical targets, let's start by reviewing how a distribution produced by counting can be modeled as a parametric function.

Counting is an inherently discrete operation, which can only produce positive integer outputs (including zero). For example, we cannot count 3.2 or -2 of anything. We only count 0, 1, 2, 3 and so on. The distribution of values, as a result of counting efforts is formally known as the Poisson distribution (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Poisson_distribution`). It is associated to Siméon Denis Poisson, because he discussed it while working on the number of wrongful convictions in court cases in his 1837 book[6].

Let's take λ to represent the expected mean count of something. Furthermore, let's take k to represent the output of a counting attempt (hence k is a positive integer). The probability density function of getting k counts (in each attempt, given the expected/mean count of λ) can be written as:

$$f(k) = \frac{\lambda^k}{k!}e^{-\lambda}, \quad k \in \{0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots\}$$

Because the Poisson distribution is only applicable to positive integer values (note the factorial operator, which only applies to non-negative integers), naturally it is very skewed when λ is near zero. One qualitative way to understand this behavior is that for smaller values near zero, there simply are not enough integers smaller than the mean, than integers that are larger. Therefore to accommodate all possibilities/counts, it has to be strongly skewed to the positive when the mean is small. For more on Skewness, see Section 2.2.3 [Skewness caused by signal and its measurement], page 88.

As λ becomes larger, the distribution becomes more and more symmetric, and the variance of that distribution is equal to its mean. In other words, the standard deviation is the square root of the mean. It can also be proved that when the mean is large, say $\lambda > 1000$, the Poisson distribution approaches the Normal (Gaussian) distribution (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Normal_distribution`) with mean $\mu = \lambda$ and standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{\lambda}$. In other words, a Poisson distribution (with a sufficiently large λ) is simply a Gaussian that has one free parameter ($\mu = \lambda$ and $\sigma = \sqrt{\lambda}$), instead of the two parameters that the Gaussian distribution originally has (independent μ and σ).

In real situations, the photons/flux from our targets are combined with photons from a certain background (observationally, the *Sky* value). The Sky value is defined to be the

[5] In practice, we are actually counting the electrons that are produced by each photon, not the actual photons.

[6] [From Wikipedia] Poisson's result was also derived in a previous study by Abraham de Moivre in 1711. Therefore some people suggest it should rightly be called the de Moivre distribution.

average flux of a region in the dataset with no targets. Its physical origin can be the brightness of the atmosphere (for ground-based instruments), possible stray light within the imaging instrument, the average flux of undetected targets, etc. The Sky value is thus an ideal definition, because in real datasets, what lies deep in the noise (far lower than the detection limit) is never known[7]. To account for all of these, the sky value is defined to be the average count/value of the undetected regions in the image. In a mock image/dataset, we have the luxury of setting the background (Sky) value.

In summary, the value in each element of the dataset (pixel in an image) is the sum of contributions from various galaxies and stars (after convolution by the PSF, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654). Let's name the convolved sum of possibly overlapping objects in each pixel as I_{nn}. nn represents 'no noise'. For now, let's assume the background (B) is constant and sufficiently high for the Poisson distribution to be approximated by a Gaussian. Then the flux of that pixel, after adding noise, is *a random value* taken from a Gaussian distribution with the following mean (μ) and standard deviation (σ):

$$\mu = B + I_{nn}, \quad \sigma = \sqrt{B + I_{nn}}$$

In astronomical instruments, B is enhanced by adding a "bias" level to each pixel before the shutter is even opened (for the exposure to start). As the exposure is ongoing and photo-electrons are accumulating from the astronomical objects, a "dark" current (due to thermal radiation of the instrument) also builds up in the pixels. The "dark" current will accumulate even when the shutter is closed, but the CCD electronics are working (hence the name "dark"). This added dark level further enhances the mean value in a real observation compared to the raw background value (from the atmosphere for example).

Since this type of noise is inherent in the objects we study, it is usually measured on the same scale as the astronomical objects, namely the magnitude system, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585. It is then internally converted to the flux scale for further processing.

The equations above clearly show the importance of the background value and its effect on the final signal to noise ratio in each pixel of a science image. It is therefore, one of the most important factors in understanding the noise (and properly simulating observations where necessary). An inappropriately bright background value can hide the signal of the mock profile hide behind the noise. In other words, a brighter background has larger standard deviation and vice versa. As a result, the only necessary parameter to define photon-counting noise over a mock image of simulated profiles is the background. For a complete example, see Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123.

To better understand the correlation between the mean (or background) value and the noise standard deviation, let's use an analogy. Consider the profile of your galaxy to be analogous to the profile of a ship that is sailing in the sea. The height of the ship would therefore be analogous to the maximum flux difference between your galaxy's minimum and

[7] In a real image, a relatively large number of very faint objects can be fully buried in the noise and never detected. These undetected objects will bias the background measurement to slightly larger values. Our best approximation is thus to simply assume they are uniform, and consider their average effect. See Figure 1 (a.1 and a.2) and Section 2.2 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

maximum values. Furthermore, let's take the depth of the sea to represent the background value: a deeper sea, corresponds to a brighter background. In this analogy, the "noise" would be the height of the waves that surround the ship: in deeper waters, the waves would also be taller (the square root of the mean depth at the ship's position).

If the ship is in deep waters, the height of waves are greater than when the ship is near to the beach (at lower depths). Therefore, when the ship is in the middle of the sea, there are high waves that are capable of hiding a significant part of the ship from our perspective. This corresponds to a brighter background value in astronomical images: the resulting noise from that brighter background can completely wash out the signal from a fainter galaxy, star or solar system object.

6.2.3.2 Instrumental noise

While taking images with a camera, a bias current is fed to the pixels, the variation of the value of this bias current over the pixels, also adds to the final image noise. Another source of noise is the readout noise that is produced by the electronics in the detector. Specifically, the parts that attempt to digitize the voltage produced by the photo-electrons in the analog to digital converter. With the current generation of instruments, this source of noise is not as significant as the noise due to the background Sky discussed in Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408.

Let C represent the combined standard deviation of all these instrumental sources of noise. When only this source of noise is present, the noised pixel value would be a random value chosen from a Gaussian distribution with

$$\mu = I_{nn}, \quad \sigma = \sqrt{C^2 + I_{nn}}$$

This type of noise is independent of the signal in the dataset, it is only determined by the instrument. So the flux scale (and not magnitude scale) is most commonly used for this type of noise. In practice, this value is usually reported in analog-to-digital units or ADUs, not flux or electron counts. The gain value of the device can be used to convert between these two, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

6.2.3.3 Final noised pixel value

Based on the discussions in Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408, and Section 6.2.3.2 [Instrumental noise], page 410, depending on the values you specify for B and C from the above, the final noised value for each pixel is a random value chosen from a Gaussian distribution with

$$\mu = B + I_{nn}, \quad \sigma = \sqrt{C^2 + B + I_{nn}}$$

6.2.3.4 Generating random numbers

As discussed above, to generate noise we need to make random samples of a particular distribution. So it is important to understand some general concepts regarding the generation of random numbers. For a very complete and nice introduction we strongly advise reading

Donald Knuth's "The art of computer programming", volume 2, chapter 3[8]. Quoting from the GNU Scientific Library manual, "If you do not own it, you should stop reading right now, run to the nearest bookstore, and buy it"[9]!

Using only software, we can only produce what is called a psuedo-random sequence of numbers. A true random number generator is a hardware (let's assume we have made sure it has no systematic biases), for example, throwing dice or flipping coins (which have remained from the ancient times). More modern hardware methods use atmospheric noise, thermal noise or other types of external electromagnetic or quantum phenomena. All pseudo-random number generators (software) require a seed to be the basis of the generation. The advantage of having a seed is that if you specify the same seed for multiple runs, you will get an identical sequence of random numbers which allows you to reproduce the same final noised image.

The programs in GNU Astronomy Utilities (for example, MakeNoise or MakeProfiles) use the GNU Scientific Library (GSL) to generate random numbers. GSL allows the user to set the random number generator through environment variables, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235, for an introduction to environment variables. In the chapter titled "Random Number Generation" they have fully explained the various random number generators that are available (there are a lot of them!). Through the two environment variables `GSL_RNG_TYPE` and `GSL_RNG_SEED` you can specify the generator and its seed respectively.

If you do not specify a value for `GSL_RNG_TYPE`, GSL will use its default random number generator type. The default type is sufficient for most general applications. If no value is given for the `GSL_RNG_SEED` environment variable and you have asked Gnuastro to read the seed from the environment (through the `--envseed` option), then GSL will use the default value of each generator to give identical outputs. If you do not explicitly tell Gnuastro programs to read the seed value from the environment variable, then they will use the system time (accurate to within a microsecond) to generate (apparently random) seeds. In this manner, every time you run the program, you will get a different random number distribution.

There are two ways you can specify values for these environment variables. You can call them on the same command-line for example:

```
$ GSL_RNG_TYPE="taus" GSL_RNG_SEED=345 astarithmetic input.fits \
                                                     mknoise-sigma \
                                                     --envseed
```

In this manner the values will only be used for this particular execution of Arithmetic. However, it makes your code hard to read! Alternatively, you can define them for the full period of your terminal session or script, using the shell's `export` command with the two separate commands below (for a script remove the `$` signs):

```
$ export GSL_RNG_TYPE="taus"
$ export GSL_RNG_SEED=345
```

The subsequent programs which use GSL's random number generators will hence forth use these values in this session of the terminal you are running or while executing this script. In case you want to set fixed values for these parameters every time you use the GSL

[8] Knuth, Donald. 1998. The art of computer programming. Addison–Wesley. ISBN 0-201-89684-2

[9] For students, running to the library might be more affordable!

random number generator, you can add these two lines to your `.bashrc` startup script[10], see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

IMPORTANT NOTE: If the two environment variables `GSL_RNG_TYPE` and `GSL_RNG_SEED` are defined, GSL will report them by default, even if you do not use the `--envseed` option. For example, see this call to MakeProfiles:

```
$ export GSL_RNG_TYPE=taus
$ export GSL_RNG_SEED=345
$ astmkprof -s1 --kernel=gaussian,2,5
GSL_RNG_TYPE=taus
GSL_RNG_SEED=345
MakeProfiles V.VV started on DDD MMM DDD HH:MM:SS YYYY
  - Building one gaussian kernel
  - Random number generator (RNG) type: taus
  - Basic RNG seed: 1618960836
  ---- ./kernel.fits created.
  -- Output: ./kernel.fits
MakeProfiles finished in 0.068945 seconds
```

The first two output lines (showing the names and values of the GSL environment variables) are printed by GSL before MakeProfiles actually starts generating random numbers. Gnuastro's programs will report the actual values they use independently (after the name of the program), you should check them for the final values used, not GSL's printed values. In the example above, did you notice how the random number generator seed above is different between GSL and MakeProfiles? However, if `--envseed` was given, both printed seeds would be the same.

6.2.4 Arithmetic operators

In this section, list of recognized operators in Arithmetic (and the Table program's Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350) and discussed in detail with examples. As mentioned before, to be able to easily do complex operations on the command-line, the Reverse Polish Notation is used (where you write '4 5 +' instead of '4 + 5'), if you are not already familiar with it, before continuing, please see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404.

The operands to all operators can be a data array (for example, a FITS image or data cube) or a number, the output will be an array or number according to the inputs. For example, a number multiplied by an array will produce an array. The numerical data type of the output of each operator is described within it. Here are some generic tips and tricks (relevant to all operators):

Multiple operators in one command

When you need to use arithmetic commands in several consecutive operations, you can use one command instead of multiple commands and perform all calculations in the same command. For example, assume you want to apply a

[10] Do not forget that if you are going to give your scripts (that use the GSL random number generator) to others you have to make sure you also tell them to set these environment variable separately. So for scripts, it is best to keep all such variable definitions within the script, even if they are within your `.bashrc`.

threshold of 10 on your image, and label the connected groups of pixel above this threshold. You need two operators for this: `gt` (for "greater than", see Section 6.2.4.12 [Conditional operators], page 445) and `connected-components` (see Section 6.2.4.13 [Mathematical morphology operators], page 448). The bad (non-optimized and slow) way of doing this is to call Arithmetic two times:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 10 gt --output=thresh.fits
$ astarithmetic thresh.fits 2 connected-components \
                --output=labeled.fits
$ rm thresh.fits
```

The good (optimal) way is to call them after each other (remember Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404):

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 10 gt 2 connected-components \
                --output=labeled.fits
```

You can similarly add any number of operations that must be done sequentially in a single command and benefit from the speed and lack of intermediate files. When your commands become long, you can use the `set-AAA` operator to make it more readable, see Section 6.2.4.21 [Operand storage in memory or a file], page 471.

Blank pixels in Arithmetic

Blank pixels in the image (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392) will be stored based on the data type. When the input is floating point type, blank values are NaN. One aspect of NaN values is that by definition they will fail on *any* comparison. Also, any operator that includes a NaN as a an operand will produce a NaN (irrespective of its other operands). Hence both equal and not-equal operators will fail when both their operands are NaN! Therefore, the only way to guarantee selection of blank pixels is through the `isblank` operator explained above.

One way you can exploit this property of the NaN value to your advantage is when you want a fully zero-valued image (even over the blank pixels) based on an already existing image (with same size and world coordinate system settings). The following command will produce this for you:

```
$ astarithmetic input.fits nan eq --output=all-zeros.fits
```

Note that on the command-line you can write NaN in any case (for example, `NaN`, or `NAN` are also acceptable). Reading NaN as a floating point number in Gnuastro is not case-sensitive.

6.2.4.1 Basic mathematical operators

These are some of the most common operations you will be doing on your data and include, so no further explanation is necessary. If you are new to Gnuastro, just read the description of each carefully.

`+` Addition, so "`4 5 +`" is equivalent to 4+5. For example, in the command below, the value 20000 is added to each pixel's value in `image.fits`:

```
$ astarithmetic 20000 image.fits +
```

You can also use this operator to sum the values of one pixel in two images (which have to be the same size). For example, in the commands below (which

are identical, see paragraph after the commands), each pixel of `sum.fits` is the sum of the same pixel's values in `a.fits` and `b.fits`.

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits + -h1 -h1 --output=sum.fits
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits + -g1     --output=sum.fits
```

The HDU/extension has to be specified for each image with `-h`. However, if the HDUs are the same in all inputs, you can use `-g` to only specify the HDU once

If you need to add more than one dataset, one way is to use this operator multiple times, for example, see the two commands below that are identical in the Reverse Polish Notation (Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404):

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits + c.fits + -osum.fits
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits + + -osum.fits
```

However, this can get annoying/buggy if you have more than three or four images, in that case, a better way to sum data is to use the `sum` operator (which also ignores blank pixels), that is discussed in Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428.

NaN values: if a single argument of `+` has a NaN value, the output will also be NaN. To ignore NaN values, use the `sum` operator of Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428. You can see the difference with the two commands below:

```
$ astarithmetic --quiet 1.0 2.0 3.0 nan + + +
nan
$ astarithmetic --quiet 1.0 2.0 3.0 nan 4 sum
6.000000e+00
```

The same goes for all the Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428, so if your data may include NaN pixels, be sure to use the coadding operators.

`-` Subtraction, so "`4 5 -`" is equivalent to $4 - 5$. Usage of this operator is similar to `+` operator, for example:

```
$ astarithmetic 20000 image.fits -
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits - -g1 --output=sub.fits
```

`x` Multiplication, so "`4 5 x`" is equivalent to 4×5. For example, in the command below, the value of each output pixel is 5 times its value in `image.fits`:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 5 x
```

And you can multiply the value of each pixel in two images, like this:

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits a.fits x -g1 --output=multip.fits
```

`/` Division, so "`4 5 /`" is equivalent to 4/5. Like the multiplication, for example

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 5 -h1 /
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits / -g1 --output=div.fits
```

`%` Modulo (remainder), so "`3 2 %`" will return 1. Note that the modulo operator only works on integer types (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). This operator is therefore not defined for most processed astronomical astronomical images that have floating-point value. However it is useful in labeled

images, for example, Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580). In such cases, each pixel is the integer label of the object it is associated with hence with the example command below, we can change the labels to only be between 1 and 4 and decrease all objects on the image to 4/5th (all objects with a label that is a multiple of 5 will be set to 0).

```
$ astarithmetic label.fits 5 1 %
```

`abs` Absolute value of first operand, so "`4 abs`" is equivalent to $|4|$. For example, the output of the command bellow will not have any negative pixels (all negative pixels will be multiplied by -1 to become positive)

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits abs
```

`pow` First operand to the power of the second, so "`4.3 5 pow`" is equivalent to 4.3^5. For example, with the command below all pixels will be squared

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 2 pow
```

`sqrt` The square root of the first operand, so "`5 sqrt`" is equivalent to $\sqrt{5}$. Since the square root is only defined for positive values, any negative-valued pixel will become NaN (blank). The output will have a floating point type, but its precision is determined from the input: if the input is a 64-bit floating point, the output will also be 64-bit. Otherwise, the output will be 32-bit floating point (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, for the respective precision). Therefore if you require 64-bit precision in estimating the square root, convert the input to 64-bit floating point first, for example, with `5 float64 sqrt`. For example, each pixel of the output of the command below will be the square root of that pixel in the input.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits sqrt
```

If you just want to scale an image with negative values using this operator (for better visual inspection, and the actual values do not matter for you), you can subtract the image from its minimum value, then take its square root:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits image.fits minvalue - sqrt -g1
```

Alternatively, to avoid reading the image into memory two times, you can use the `set-` operator to read it into the variable `i` and use `i` two times to speed up the operation (described below):

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits set-i i i minvalue - sqrt
```

`log` Natural logarithm of first operand, so "`4 log`" is equivalent to $ln(4)$. Negative pixels will become NaN, and the output type is determined from the input, see the explanation under `sqrt` for more on these features. For example, the command below will take the natural logarithm of every pixel in the input.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits log --output=log.fits
```

`log10` Base-10 logarithm of first popped operand, so "`4 log10`" is equivalent to $log_{10}(4)$. Negative pixels will become NaN, and the output type is determined from the input, see the explanation under `sqrt` for more on these features. For example, the command below will take the base-10 logarithm of every pixel in the input.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits log10
```

6.2.4.2 Trigonometric and hyperbolic operators

All the trigonometric and hyperbolic functions are described here. One good thing with these operators is that they take inputs and outputs in degrees (which we usually need as input or output), not radians (like most other programs/libraries).

`sin`
`cos`
`tan` Basic trigonometric functions. They take one operand, in units of degrees.

`asin`
`acos`
`atan` Inverse trigonometric functions. They take one operand and the returned values are in units of degrees.

`atan2` Inverse tangent (output in units of degrees) that uses the signs of the input coordinates to distinguish between the quadrants. This operator therefore needs two operands: the first popped operand is assumed to be the X axis position of the point, and the second popped operand is its Y axis coordinate.

For example, see the commands below. To be more clear, we are using Table's Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, which uses exactly the same internal library function as the Arithmetic program for images. We are showing the results for four points in the four quadrants of the 2D space (if you want to try running them, you do not need to type/copy the parts after `#`). The first point (2,2) is in the first quadrant, therefore the returned angle is 45 degrees. But the second, third and fourth points are in the quadrants of the same order, and the returned angles reflect the quadrant.

```
$ echo " 2  2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 atan2'   # -->   45
$ echo " 2 -2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 atan2'   # -->  -45
$ echo "-2 -2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 atan2'   # --> -135
$ echo "-2  2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 atan2'   # -->  135
```

However, if you simply use the classic arc-tangent operator (`atan`) for the same points, the result will only be in two quadrants as you see below:

```
$ echo " 2  2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 / atan'  # -->   45
$ echo " 2 -2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 / atan'  # -->  -45
$ echo "-2 -2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 / atan'  # -->   45
$ echo "-2  2" | asttable -c'arith $2 $1 / atan'  # -->  -45
```

`sinh`
`cosh`
`tanh` Hyperbolic sine, cosine, and tangent. These operators take a single operand.

`asinh`
`acosh`
`atanh` Inverse Hyperbolic sine, cosine, and tangent. These operators take a single operand.

6.2.4.3 Constants

During your analysis it is often necessary to have certain constants like the number π. The "operators" in this section do not actually take any operand, they just replace the desired

constant into the stack. So in effect, these are actually operands. But since their value is not inserted by the user, we have placed them in the list of operators.

`e` Euler's number, or the base of the natural logarithm (no units). See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/E_(mathematical_constant)`).

`pi` Ratio of circle's circumference to its diameter (no units). See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pi`).

`c` The speed of light in vacuum, in units of m/s. see Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Speed_of_light`).

`G` The gravitational constant, in units of $m^3/kg/s^2$. See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gravitational_constant`).

`h` Plank's constant, in units of J/Hz or $kg \times m^2/s$. See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Planck_constant`).

`au` Astronomical Unit, in units of meters. See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Astronomical_unit`).

`ly` Distance covered by light in vacuum in one year, in units of meters. See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Light-year`).

`avogadro` Avogadro's constant, in units of $1/mol$. See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avogadro_constant`).

`fine-structure`
The fine-structure constant (no units). See Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fine-structure_constant`).

6.2.4.4 Coordinate conversion operators

Different celestial coordinate systems are useful for different scenarios. For example, assume you have the RA and Dec of large sample of galaxies that you plan to study the halos of galaxies from. For such studies, you prefer to stay as far away as possible from the Galactic plane, because the density of stars and interstellar filaments (cirrus) significantly increases as you get close to the Milky way's disk. But the Equatorial coordinate system (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Equatorial_coordinate_system`) which defines the RA and Dec and is based on Earth's equator; and does not show the position of your objects in relation to the galactic disk.

The best way forward in the example above is to convert your RA and Dec table into the Galactic coordinate system (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Galactic_coordinate_system`); and select those with a large (positive or negative) Galactic latitude. Alternatively, if you observe a bright point on a galaxy and want to confirm if it was actually a super-nova and not a moving asteroid, a first step is to convert your RA and Dec to the Ecliptic coordinate system (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ecliptic_coordinate_system`) and confirm if you are sufficiently distant from the ecliptic (plane of the Solar System; where fast moving objects are most common).

The operators described in this section are precisely for the purpose above: to convert various celestial coordinate systems that are supported within Gnuastro into each other. For example, if you want to convert the RA and Dec equatorial (at the Julian year 2000 equinox)

coordinates (within the `RA` and `DEC` columns) of `points.fits` into Galactic longitude and latitude, you can use the command below (the column metadata are not mandatory, but to avoid later confusion, it is always good to have them in your output.

```
$ asttable points.fits -c'arith RA DEC eq-j2000-to-galactic' \
           --colmetadata=1,GLON,deg,"Galactic longitude" \
           --colmetadata=2,GLAT,deg,"Galactic latitude" \
           --output=points-gal.fits
```

One important thing to consider is that the equatorial and ecliptic coordinates are not static: they include the dynamics of Earth in the solar system: in particular, the reference point on the equator moves over decades. Therefore these two (equatorial and ecliptic) coordinate systems are defined within epochs: the 1950 epoch is defined by Besselian years (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Epoch_(astronomy)#Besselian_years`), while the 2000 epoch is defined in Julian years (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Epoch_(astronomy)#Julian_years_and_J2000`). So when dealing with these coordinates one of the '`-b1950`' or '`-j2000`' suffixes are necessary (for example `eq-j2000` or `ec-b1950`).

The Galactic or Supergalactic coordinates are not defined based on the Earth's dynamics; therefore they do not have any epoch associated with them. Extra-galactic studies do not depend on the dynamics of the earth, but the equatorial coordinate system is the most dominant in that field. Therefore in its 23rd General Assembly, the International Astronomical Union approved the International Celestial Reference System (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Celestial_Reference_System_and_its_realizations`) or ICRS based on quasars (which are static within our observational limitations)viewed through long baseline radio interferometry (the most accurate method of observation that we currently have). ICRS is designed to be within the errors of the Equatorial J2000 coordinate system, so they are currently very similar; but ICRS has much better accuracy. We will be adding ICRS in the operators below soon.

Floating point errors: The operation to convert between the coordinate systems involves many sines, cosines (and their inverse). Therefore, floating point errors (due to the limited precision of the definition of floating points in bits) can cause small offsets. For example see the code below were we convert equatorial to galactic and back, then compare the input and output (which is in the 5th and 6th decimal of a degree; or about 0.2 or 0.01 arcseconds).

```
$ sys1=eq-j2000
$ sys2=galactic
$ echo "10.2345689 45.6789012" \
       | asttable -Afixed -B8 \
                  -c'arith $1 $2 '$sys1'-to-'$sys2' \
                           '$sys2'-to-'$sys1' set-lat set-lng \
                           lng $1 - lat $2 -'
0.00000363   -0.00007725
```

If you set `sys2=ec-j2000` or `sys2=supergalactic`, it will be zero until the full set of 8 decimals that are printed here (the displayed precision can be changed with the value of the `-B` option above). It is therefore useful to have your original coordinates (in the same table for example) and not do too many conversions on conversions (to propagate this problem).

`eq-b1950-to-eq-j2000`
`eq-b1950-to-ec-b1950`
`eq-b1950-to-ec-j2000`
`eq-b1950-to-galactic`
`eq-b1950-to-supergalactic`
: Convert Equatorial (B1950 equinox) coordinates into the respective coordinate system within each operator's name.

`eq-j2000-to-eq-b1950`
`eq-j2000-to-ec-b1950`
`eq-j2000-to-ec-j2000`
`eq-j2000-to-galactic`
`eq-j2000-to-supergalactic`
: Convert Equatorial (J2000 equinox) coordinates into the respective coordinate system within each operator's name.

`ec-b1950-to-eq-b1950`
`ec-b1950-to-eq-j2000`
`ec-b1950-to-ec-j2000`
`ec-b1950-to-galactic`
`ec-b1950-to-supergalactic`
: Convert Ecliptic (B1950 equinox) coordinates into the respective coordinate system within each operator's name.

`ec-j2000-to-eq-b1950`
`ec-j2000-to-eq-j2000`
`ec-j2000-to-ec-b1950`
`ec-j2000-to-galactic`
`ec-j2000-to-supergalactic`
: Convert Ecliptic (J2000 equinox) coordinates into the respective coordinate system within each operator's name.

`galactic-to-eq-b1950`
`galactic-to-eq-j2000`
`galactic-to-ec-b1950`
`galactic-to-ec-j2000`
`galactic-to-supergalactic`
: Convert Galactic coordinates into the respective coordinate system within each operator's name.

`supergalactic-to-eq-b1950`
`supergalactic-to-eq-j2000`
`supergalactic-to-ec-b1950`
`supergalactic-to-ec-j2000`
`supergalactic-to-galactic`
: Convert Supergalactic coordinates into the respective coordinate system within each operator's name.

6.2.4.5 Unit conversion operators

It often happens that you have data in one unit (for example, counts on your CCD), but would like to convert it into another (for example, magnitudes, to measure the brightness of a galaxy). While the equations for the unit conversions can be easily found on the internet, the operators in this section are designed to simplify the process and let you do it easily and fast without having to remember constants and relations.

`counts-to-mag`
: Convert counts (usually CCD outputs) to magnitudes using the given zero point. The zero point is the first popped operand and the count image or value is the second popped operand.

  For example, assume you have measured the standard deviation of the noise in an image to be `0.1` counts, and the image's zero point is `22.5` and you want to measure the *per-pixel* surface brightness limit of the dataset[11]. To apply this operator on an image, simply replace `0.1` with the image name, as described below.

  ```
  $ astarithmetic 0.1 22.5 counts-to-mag --quiet
  ```

  Of course, you can also convert every pixel in an image (or table column in Table's Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350) with this operator if you replace the second popped operand with an image/column name. For an example of applying this operator on an image, see the description of surface brightness in Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, where we will convert an image's pixel values to surface brightness.

`mag-to-counts`
: Convert magnitudes to counts (usually CCD outputs) using the given zero point. The zero point is the first popped operand and the magnitude value is the second. For example, if an object has a magnitude of 20, you can estimate the counts corresponding to it (when the image has a zero point of 24.8) with this command: Note that because the output is a single number, we are using `--quiet` to avoid printing extra information.

  ```
  $ astarithmetic 20 24.8 mag-to-counts --quiet
  ```

`mag-to-luminosity`
: Convert the given apparent magnitude to luminosity (in units of the luminosity of a reference object). It takes the following three operands (in the order written on the command-line; see example below):

  1. The measured apparent magnitude that is corrected for the ISM absorption/extinction. You can find the ISM absorption/extinction of a certain position on the sky using Gnuastro's Query program, which gives you direct access to the NED Extinction Calculator as described in Section 5.4.1 [Available databases], page 379.

[11] The *per-pixel* surface brightness limit is the magnitude of the noise standard deviation. For more on surface brightness see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585. In the example command, because the output is a single number, we are using `--quiet` to avoid printing extra information.

2. Absolute magnitude of the reference object in the same filter and magnitude system (for example Vega or AB) that the measured apparent magnitude was derived from. The reference object is conventionally the Sun. The Sun's absolute magnitude in various commonly used filters and magnitude systems from table 3 of Willmer 2018 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1804.07788`). For example the Sun's absolute magnitude in the SDSS u, g, r, i and z filters (with the AB magnitude system) is respectively 6.39, 5.11, 4.65, 4.53 and 4.50.
3. Difference of apparent (m) and absolute (M) magnitudes: $m - M$. At small distances or when the input is bolometric (across all wavelengths), the distance modulus can be used for this. See `--distancemodulus` in Section 9.1.3.2 [CosmicCalculator basic cosmology calculations], page 684, for more details and why `--absmagconv` is preferred to the distance modulus in the absense of SED-based methods.

For example, let's assume the apparent AB magnitude of a galaxy (after correcting Galactic extinction) is 20 in the SDSS g filter, and that its redshift is 0.01 and we need its luminosity (in units of solar luminosity) in the same filter. To do this, we need the apparent-absolute magnitude difference (using CosmicCalculator), as well as the Sun's absolute magnitude, from Willmer 2018 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1804.07788`) in this filter (which is 5.11):

```
$ conv=$(astcosmiccal --absmagconv --redshift=0.01)
$ astarithmetic 20 5.11 $conv mag-to-luminosity
```

`luminosity-to-mag`

Convert luminostiy (in units of solar luminosity) to apparent magnitude using the distance modulus. This is the inverse of `mag-to-luminosity`, see its description for the details and usage example.

`counts-to-sb`

Convert counts to surface brightness using the zero point and area (in units of arcsec^2). The first popped operand is the area (in arcsec^2), the second popped operand is the zero point and the third are the count values. Estimating the surface brightness involves taking the logarithm. Therefore this operator will produce NaN for counts with a negative value.

For example, with the commands below, we read the zero point from the image headers (assuming it is in the `ZPOINT` keyword), we calculate the pixel area from the image itself, and we call this operator to convert the image pixels (in counts) to surface brightness (mag/arcsec^2).

```
$ zeropoint=$(astfits image.fits --keyvalue=ZPOINT -q)
$ pixarea=$(astfits image.fits --pixelareaarcsec2)
$ astarithmetic image.fits $zeropoint $pixarea counts-to-sb \
                --output=image-sb.fits
```

For more on the definition of surface brightness see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, and for a fully tutorial on optimal usage of this, see Section 2.1.20 [FITS images in a publication], page 65.

`sb-to-counts`
: Convert surface brightness using the zero point and area (in units of arcsec^2) to counts. The first popped operand is the area (in arcsec^2), the second popped operand is the zero point and the third are the surface brightness values. See the description of `counts-to-sb` for more.

`mag-to-sb`
: Convert magnitudes to surface brightness over a certain area (in units of arcsec^2). The first popped operand is the area and the second is the magnitude. For example, let's assume you have a table with the two columns of magnitude (called `MAG`) and area (called `AREAARCSEC2`). In the command below, we will use Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, to return the surface brightness.

```
$ asttable table.fits -c'arith MAG AREAARCSEC2 mag-to-sb'
```

`sb-to-mag`
: Convert surface brightness to magnitudes over a certain area (in units of arcsec^2). The first popped operand is the area and the second is the magnitude. See the description of `mag-to-sb` for more.

`counts-to-jy`
: Convert counts (usually CCD outputs) to Janskys through an AB-magnitude based zero point. The top-popped operand is assumed to be the AB-magnitude zero point and the second-popped operand is assumed to be a dataset in units of counts (an image in Arithmetic, and a column in Table's Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350). For the full equation and basic definitions, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

  For example, SDSS images are calibrated in units of nanomaggies, with a fixed zero point magnitude of 22.5. Therefore you can convert the units of SDSS image pixels to Janskys with the command below:

```
$ astarithmetic sdss-image.fits 22.5 counts-to-jy
```

`jy-to-counts`
: Convert Janskys to counts (usually CCD outputs) through an AB-magnitude based zero point. This is the inverse operation of the `counts-to-jy`, see there for usage example.

`zeropoint-change`
: Change the zero point of the input dataset to a new zero point (output will always be 64-bit floating point). For example, with the command below, we are changing the zero point of an image from 26.892 to 27.0:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 26.892 27.0 zeropoint-change
```

  Note that the input or output zero points can also be an image (with the same size as the input image). This is very useful to correct situations where the zero point can change over the image (happens in single exposures) and you want to unify it across the whole image (to build a deep coadded image).

`counts-to-nanomaggy`
: Convert counts to Nanomaggy (with fixed zero point of 22.5, used as the pixel units of many surveys like SDSS). For example if your image has a zero point of 24.93, you can convert it to Nanomaggies with the command below:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 24.93 counts-to-nanomaggy
```

This is just a wrapper over the `zeropoint-change` operator where the output zero point is 22.5.

`nanomaggy-to-counts`
: Convert Nanomaggy to counts. Nanomaggy is defined to have a fixed zero point of 22.5 and is the pixel units of many surveys like SDSS. For example if you would like to convert an image in units of Nanomaggy (for example from SDSS) to the counts of a camera with a zero point of 25.92, you can use the command below:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 25.92 nanomaggy-to-counts
```

This is just a wrapper over the `zeropoint-change` operator where the input zero point is 22.5.

`mag-to-jy`
: Convert AB magnitudes to Janskys, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`jy-to-mag`
: Convert Janskys to AB magnitude, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`jy-to-wavelength-flux-density`
: Convert Janskys to wavelength flux density (in units of $erg/cm^2/s/\mathring{A}$) at a certain wavelength (given in units of Angstroms). Recall that Jansky is also a unit of spectral flux density, but it is in units of frequency ($erg/cm^2/s/Hz$).

For example at the wavelength of 5556, Vega's frequency flux density is 3500 Janskys. To convert this to wavelength flux density, you can use this command:

```
$ astarithmetic 3.5e3 5556 jy-to-wavelength-flux-density
```

If your input values are in units of counts or magnitudes, you can use the `mag-to-jy` or `count-to-jy` operators that are described above. For example, if you want the wavelength flux density of a source with magnitude 21 in the J-PAS J0660 filter (centered at approximately $6600\mathring{A}$), you can use this command:

```
$ astarithmetic 21 mag-to-jy 6600 \
                   jy-to-wavelength-flux-density
```

The conversion is done based on this derivation: the speed of light (c) can be written as:

$$c = 2.99792458 \times 10^8 m/s = 2.99792458 \times 10^{18} \mathring{A}Hz$$

The speed of light connects the wavelength (λ) and frequency (ν) of photons: $c = \nu\lambda$. Therefore, $\nu = c/\lambda$ and taking the derivative: $d\nu = (c/\lambda^2)d\lambda$ or $d\nu/d\lambda = c/\lambda^2$. Inserting physical values and units:

$$d\nu/d\lambda = \frac{2.99792458 \times 10^{18} \mathring{A} Hz}{\lambda^2 \mathring{A}^2} = \frac{2.99792458 \times 10^{18}}{\lambda^2} Hz/A$$

Recall that to convert a function of ν into a function of λ, where ν and λ are also related to each other, we have the following equation: $f(\lambda) = \frac{d\nu}{d\lambda} f(\nu)$. Here, $f(\nu)$ is the value in Janskys ($J \times 10^{-23} erg/s/cm^2/Hz$; see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585). Replacing $d\nu/d\lambda$ from above we get:

$$F_\lambda = \frac{2.99792458 \times 10^{8}}{\lambda^2} Hz/A \times J \times 10^{-23} erg/s/cm^2/Hz$$

$$F_\lambda = J \times \frac{2.99792458 \times 10^{-5}}{\lambda^2} erg/s/cm^2/\mathring{A}$$

`wavelength-flux-density-to-jy`
: Convert wavelength flux density (in units of $erg/cm^2/s/\mathring{A}$) to Janskys at a certain wavelength (given in units of Angstroms). For details and usage examples, see the description of `jy-to-wavelength-flux-density` (the inverse of this function).

`sblim-diff`
: Calculate the difference in surface brightness limit after using a different exposed radius (of a different telescope) or a different exposure time. The filter used, the multiple of sigma and the extrapolated area of the derived surface brightness limit will be the same as your reference surface brighntess limit. For more on the surface brightness limit, the exposed radius, the extrapolated area and the equation behind this operator, see Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615.

  For example, we know that in the rSDSS filter, the SDSS survey reaches a 3σ surface brightness limit of 26.5 mag/arcsec^2 over 100 arcsec^2. Let's use this to find the expected surface brighntess limit of the LSST survey in the same filter (after its observations have been completed). To do this, we need to know the exposed radius and exposure time of SDSS and LSST to feed into the command below:

  - The SDSS telescope[12] has an exposed radius of $\sqrt{1.25^2 - 0.54^2} = 1.13$ meters and it had a 1 minute (60 seconds) exposure time.
  - The Vera C. Rubin telescope[13] (used for LSST) has an exposed radius of $\sqrt{4.2^2 - 2.5^2} = 3.37$ meters and at its end, it will have 8 hours (28800 seconds) of total exposure on all observed regions[14] (in all filters). Because

[12] `https://voyages.sdss.org/preflight/capturing-recording-light/sdss-telescope`

[13] https://www.lsst.org/sites/default/files/docs/ivezic_086.02.pdf

[14] `https://www.lsst.org/sites/default/files/docs/ivezic_086.02.pdf`

it has 6 filters, in the rSDSS filter it will have a total exposure time of about $28800/6 = 4800$ seconds in its observed regions.

```
$ astarithmetic 3.37 1.13 / 4800 60 / sblim-diff 26.5 +
3.00652410811219e+01
Arithmetic finished in 0.012210 seconds
```

To have an easy to read number, you can pipe it to the Table program and use the `-Y` option. But the time-reporting feature of Arithmetic will be problematic, so you should also pass `--quiet` (or `-q`) to Arithmetic.

```
$ astarithmetic 3.37 1.13 / 4800 60 / sblim-diff 26.5 + -q \
                | asttable -Y
30.065241
```

Therefore, juduging purely based on exposed area and time (too idealistic!), the LSST will reach a 3σ surface brightness limit of 30.07 over 100 arcsec^2.

A simple note for the second command: this trick is only useful for operators like this that are sure to produce numbers that are larger than 10^{-2}. You will loose precision for values smaller than that and using the default scientific notation is best.

`au-to-pc` Convert Astronomical Units (AUs) to Parsecs (PCs). This operator takes a single argument which is interpreted to be the input AUs. The conversion is based on the definition of Parsecs: 1PC = 1/tan(1″)AU, where 1″ is one arcseconds. In other words, 1(PC) = $648000/\pi$(AU). For example, if we take Pluto's average distance to the Sun to be 40 AUs, we can obtain its distance in Parsecs using this command:

```
echo 40 | asttable -c'arith $1 au-to-pc'
```

`pc-to-au` Convert Parsecs (PCs) to Astronomical Units (AUs). This operator takes a single argument which is interpreted to be the input PCs. For more on the conversion equation, see description of `au-to-pc`. For example, Proxima Centauri (the nearest star to the Solar system) is 1.3020 Parsecs from the Sun, we can calculate this distance in units of AUs with the command below:

```
echo 1.3020 | asttable -c'arith $1 pc-to-au'
```

`ly-to-pc` Convert Light-years (LY) to Parsecs (PCs). This operator takes a single argument which is interpreted to be the input LYs. The conversion is done from IAU's definition of the light-year (9460730472580800 m $\approx$ 63241.077 AU = 0.306601 PC, for the conversion of AU to PC, see the description of `au-to-pc`).

For example, the distance of Andromeda galaxy to our galaxy is 2.5 million light-years, so its distance in kilo-Parsecs can be calculated with the command below (note that we want the output in kilo-parsecs, so we are dividing the output of this operator by 1000):

```
echo 2.5e6 | asttable -c'arith $1 ly-to-pc 1000 /'
```

`pc-to-ly` Convert Parsecs (PCs) to Light-years (LY). This operator takes a single argument which is interpreted to be the input PCs. For the conversion and an example of the inverse of this operator, see the description of `ly-to-pc`.

`ly-to-au` Convert Light-years (LY) to Astronomical Units (AUs). This operator takes a single argument which is interpreted to be the input LYs. For the conversion and a similar example, see the description of `ly-to-pc`.

`au-to-ly` Convert Astronomical Units (AUs) to Light-years (LY). This operator takes a single argument which is interpreted to be the input AUs. For the conversion and a similar example, see the description of `ly-to-pc`.

6.2.4.6 Statistical operators

The operators in this section take a single dataset as input, and will return the desired statistic as a single value.

`minvalue` Minimum value in the first popped operand, so "`a.fits minvalue`" will push the minimum pixel value in this image onto the stack. When this operator acts on a single image, the output (operand that is put back on the stack) will no longer be an image, but a number. The output of this operand is in the same type as the input. This operator is mainly intended for multi-element datasets (for example, images or data cubes), if the popped operand is a number, it will just return it without any change.

Note that when the final remaining/output operand is a single number, it is printed onto the standard output. For example, with the command below the minimum pixel value in `image.fits` will be printed in the terminal:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits minvalue
```

However, the output above also includes a lot of extra information that are not relevant in this context. If you just want the final number, run Arithmetic in quiet mode:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits minvalue -q
```

Also see the description of `sqrt` for other example usages of this operator.

`maxvalue` Maximum value of first operand in the same type, similar to `minvalue`, see the description there for more. For example

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits maxvalue -q
```

`numbervalue`
Number of non-blank elements in first operand in the `uint64` type (since it is always a positive integer, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). Its usage is similar to `minvalue`, for example

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits numbervalue -q
```

`sumvalue` Sum of non-blank elements in first operand in the `float32` type. Its usage is similar to `minvalue`, for example

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits sumvalue -q
```

`meanvalue`
Mean value of non-blank elements in first operand in the `float32` type. Its usage is similar to `minvalue`, for example

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits meanvalue -q
```

`stdvalue` Standard deviation of non-blank elements in first operand in the `float32` type. Its usage is similar to `minvalue`, for example

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits stdvalue -q
```

`medianvalue`
Median of non-blank elements in first operand with the same type. Its usage is similar to `minvalue`, for example

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits medianvalue -q
```

`madclip-maskfilled`
`sigclip-maskfilled`
Mask (set to blank/NaN) all the outlying elements (defined by σ or MAD clipping) in the inputs and put all the inputs back on the stack. The first popped operand is the termination criteria of the clipping, the second popped operand is the multiple of σ or MAD and the third is the number of input datasets that will be popped for the actual operation. If you are not yet familiar with σ or MAD clipping, it is recommended to read this tutorial: Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196.

When more than 95% of the area of an operand is masked, the full operand will be masked. This is necessary in like this: one of your inputs has many outliers (for example it is much more noisy than the rest or its sky level has not been subtracted properly). Because this operator fills holes between outlying pixels, most of the area of the input will be masked, but the thin edges (where there are no "holes") will remain, causing different statistics in those thin edges of that input in your final coadd. Through this mask coverage fraction (which is currently hard-coded[15]), we ensure that such thin edges do not cause artifacts in the final coadd.

For example, with the second command below, we are masking the MAD clipped pixels of the 9 inputs (that are generated in Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196) and writing them as separate HDUs of the output. The clipping is done with 5 times the MAD and the clipping starts when the relative difference between subsequent MADs is 0.01. Finally, with the third command, we see 10 HDUs in the output (because the first, or 0-th, is just metadata).

```
$ ls in-*.fits
in-1.fits  in-3.fits  in-5.fits  in-7.fits  in-9.fits
in-2.fits  in-4.fits  in-6.fits  in-8.fits

$ astarithmetic in-*.fits 9 5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                -g1 --writeall --output=clipped.fits

$ astfits clipped.fits --numhdus
10
```

In the Arithmetic command above, `--writeall` is necessary because this operator puts all its inputs back on the stack of operands. This is because these are

[15] Please get in touch with us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org` if you notice this problem and feel the fraction needs to be lowered (or generally to be set in each run).

usually just intermediate operators. For example, after masking the outliers from each input, you may want to coadd them into one deeper image (with the Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428. After the coadding is done, only one operand will be on the stack, and `--writeall` will no longer be necessary. For example if you want to see how many images were used in the final coadd's pixels, you can use the `number` operator like below:

```
$ astarithmetic in-*.fits 9 5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                9 number -g1 --output=num-good.fits
```

`unique` Remove all duplicate (and blank) elements from the first popped operand. The unique elements of the dataset will be stored in a single-dimensional dataset.

Recall that by default, single-dimensional datasets are stored as a table column in the output. But you can use `--onedasimage` or `--onedonstdout` to respectively store them as a single-dimensional FITS array/image, or to print them on the standard output.

Although you can use this operator on the floating point dataset, due to floating-point errors it may give non-reasonable values: because the tenth digit of the decimal point is also considered although it may be statistically meaningless, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. It is therefore better/recommended to use it on the integer dataset like the labeled images of Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580, where each pixel has the integer label of the object/clump it is associated with. For example, let's assume you have cropped a region of a larger labeled image and want to find the labels/objects that are within the crop. With this operator, this job is trivial:

```
$ astarithmetic seg-crop.fits unique
```

`noblank` Remove all blank elements from the first popped operand. Since the blank pixels are being removed, the output dataset will always be single-dimensional, independent of the dimensionality of the input.

Recall that by default, single-dimensional datasets are stored as a table column in the output. But you can use `--onedasimage` or `--onedonstdout` to respectively store them as a single-dimensional FITS array/image, or to print them on the standard output.

For example, with the command below, the non-blank pixel values of `cropped.fits` are printed on the command-line (the `--quiet` option is used to remove the extra information that Arithmetic prints as it reads the inputs, its version and its running time).

```
$ astarithmetic cropped.fits noblank --onedonstdout --quiet
```

6.2.4.7 Coadding operators

The operators in this section are used when you have multiple datasets that you would like to merge into one. For example, you have taken ten exposures of your scientific target, and you would like to combine them all into one deep stacked image that is deeper. This is commonly known as "stacking" or "coaddition". We use the latter in Gnuastro because "stack" refers to the intermediate 3D data set (if we are coadding 2D images). However, the final product of this operation has the same number of dimensions as each of the

inputs. The astronomical community has traditionally used the term "coadd" to specify that the nature of the output 2D image is different from each of the input 2D images (it is created from them). Furthermore, within Arithmetic, "Stack" is already reserved for the stack of operands that the operators read from (see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404).

Masking outliers (before coadding): Outliers in one of the inputs (for example star ghosts, satellite trails, or cosmic rays, can leave their imprints in the final coadd. One good way to remove them is the `madclip-maskfilled` operator that can be called before the operators here. It is described in Section 6.2.4.6 [Statistical operators], page 426; and a full tutorial on understanding outliers and how best to remove them is available in Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196.

Hundreds or thousands of images to coadd: It can happen that you need to coadd hundreds or thousands of images. Added with the possibly long file/directory names, this can lead to an extremely long shell command that may cause an "Argument list too long" error in your shell. To avoid this, you should use Arithmetic's `--arguments` option, see Section 6.2.5 [Invoking Arithmetic], page 473.

When calling the coadding operators you should determine how many operands they should take in: unlike the rest of the operators that have a fixed number of input operands, these operators have a variable number of input operators. As described in the first operand below, you do this through their first (or early) popped operands (which should be a single integer number that is larger than one). Below are some important points for all the coadding operators described in this section:

- NaN/blank pixels will be ignored, see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392.
- The operation will be multi-threaded, greatly speeding up the process if you have large and numerous data to coadd. You can disable multi-threaded operations with the `--numthreads=1` option (see Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276).

`min`
`max`
`sum`
`std`
`mad`
`mean`
`median`
`number` For each pixel, calculate the respective statistic from in all given datasets. For the `min` and `max` operators, the output will have the same type as the input. For the `number` operator, the output will have an unsigned 32-bit integer type and the rest will be 32-bit floating point.

The first popped operand to this operator must be a positive integer number which specifies how many further operands should be popped from the stack. All the subsequently popped operands must have the same type and size. This operator (and all the variable-operand operators similar to it that are discussed

below) will work in multi-threaded mode unless Arithmetic is called with the `--numthreads=1` option, see Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276.

For example, the following command will produce an image with the same size and type as the three inputs, but each output pixel value will be the minimum of the same pixel's values in all three input images.

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits 3 min --output=min.fits
```

Regarding the `number` operator: some datasets may have blank values (which are also ignored in all similar operators like `min`, `sum`, `mean` or `median`). Hence, the final pixel values of this operator will not, in general, be equal to the number of inputs. This operator is therefore mostly called in parallel with those operators to know the "weight" of each pixel (in case you want to only keep pixels that had the full exposure for example).

`quantile` For each pixel, find the quantile from all given datasets. The output will have the same numeric data type and size as the input datasets. Besides the input datasets, the quantile operator also needs a single parameter (the requested quantile). The parameter should be the first popped operand, with a value between (and including) 0 and 1. The second popped operand must be the number of datasets to use.

In the example below, the first-popped operand (`0.7`) is the quantile, the second-popped operand (`3`) is the number of datasets to pop.

```
astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits 3 0.7 quantile
```

`sigclip-mad`
`sigclip-std`
`sigclip-mean`
`sigclip-median`

Return the respective statistic after σ-clipping the values of the same pixel of all the input operands. The respective statistic will be stored in a 32-bit floating point number. The number of inputs used to make the desired measurement for each pixel is also returned as a second output operand; see below for more on how to deal with the second output operand.

For a complete tutorial on clipping outliers when coadding images see Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196, (if you haven't read it yet, we encourage you to read through it before continuing). In particular, the most robust solution is to first use `madclip-maskfilled` (described in Section 6.2.4.6 [Statistical operators], page 426), then use any of these.

This operator is very similar to `min`, with the exception that it expects two extra operands (parameters for MAD-clipping) before the total number of inputs. The first popped operand is the termination criteria and the second is the multiple of the median absolute deviation.

For example, in the command below, the first popped operand of `sigclip-mean` (`0.1`) is the σ-clipping termination criteria. If the termination criteria is larger than, or equal to 1, it is interpreted as the total number of clips. But if it is between 0 and 1, then it is the tolerance level on the change in the median absolute deviation (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200). The second

popped operand (`4`) is the multiple of sigma (STD) to use. The third popped operand (`3`) is number of datasets that should be coadded (similar to the first popped operand to `min`). Two other side-notes should be mentioned here:

- As mentioned above, before this operator, we are masking the filled MAD-clipped elements with `madclip-maskfilled`. As described in Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196, this is very important for removing the types of outliers that we have in astronomical imaging.
- We are using `--writeall` because this operator places two operands on the coadd: your desired statistics, and the number of inputs that were used in it (after clipping).

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits -g1 --writeall \
                3 5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                3 4 0.1  sigclip-mean
```

The numbers image has the smallest unsigned integer type that fits the total number of your input datasets (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). For example if you have less than 255 input operands (not pixels!), then it will have an unsigned 8-bit integer type, if you have 1000 input operands (or any number less than 65534 inputs), it will be an unsigned 16-bit integer. Recall that when you have many input files to coadd, it may be necessary to write the arguments into a text file and use `--arguments` (see Section 6.2.5 [Invoking Arithmetic], page 473).

The numbers image is included by default because it is usually important in clipping based coadds (where the number of inputs used in the calculation of each pixel can be different from another pixel, and this affects the final output noise). In case you are not interested in the numbers image, you should first `swap` the two output operands, then `free` the top operand like below.

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits -g1 \
                3 5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                3 4 0.1  sigclip-mean swap free \
                --output=single-hdu.fits
```

In case you just want the numbers image, you can use `sigclip-median` (which is always calculated as part of the clipping process: no extra overhead), and `free` the top operand (without the `swap`: the median-coadd image), leaving only the numbers image:

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits -g1 \
                3 5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                3 4 0.1  sigclip-median free \
                --output=single-hdu-only-numbers.fits
```

`madclip-mad`
`madclip-std`
`madclip-mean`
`madclip-median`

Similar to the `sigclip-*` operators, but using Median Absolute Deviation (MAD) as the measure of spread. See Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206,

and more generally Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196. See the description of `sigclip-*` for usage details; just remember that o1 MAD is equivalent to 0.67449σ.

`sigclip-all`
`madclip-all`
Similar to the `sigclip-*` or `madclip-*` operators, but instead of returning only a single measured statistic (mean, STD, median or MAD) all of them are returned (along with the numbers image). This will greatly speed up your analysis pipelines when more than one statistic is required (for example you need both the mean and the standard deviation). Just note that as described under the sigma-clip operators, `--writeall` will be necessary if you want them all to be put in the output.

For example, let's assume you want the mean and standard deviation after a sigma-clipping like the examples before (not just one of them). In that case, the cleanest way is to add metadata to each output in the same Arithmetic call. Afterwards, copy the HDUs you want in your output and delete the intermediate file like below:

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits -g1 --writeall \
                3 5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled \
                3 4 0.1  sigclip-mean \
                --output=out-arith.fits \
                --metaname=MEAN,STD,MEDIAN,MAD,NUMBER
$ astfits out-arith.fits --copy=MEAN --copy=STD \
          --output=out.fits
$ rm out-arith.fits
```

Different combinations of the various statistics are commonly necessary for differnet purposes. The rason we haven't specified an option for each combination is because that would dramatically increase the operator-count and would confuse the developers and users. On the other hand, the process of maskfilling or even just clipping is much more computationally expensive on large datasets than these measurements combined. We therefore recommend the process above to extract the statistics you want.

6.2.4.8 Filtering (smoothing) operators

Image filtering is commonly used for smoothing: every pixel value in the output image is created by applying a certain statistic to the pixels in its vicinity.

`filter-mean`
Apply mean filtering (or moving average (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Moving_average`)) on the input dataset. During mean filtering, each pixel (data element) is replaced by the mean value of all its surrounding pixels (excluding blank values). The number of surrounding pixels in each dimension (to calculate the mean) is determined through the earlier operands that have been pushed onto the stack prior to the input dataset. The number of necessary operands is determined by the dimensions of the input dataset (first popped operand).

The order of the dimensions on the command-line is the order in FITS format. Here is one example:

```
$ astarithmetic 5 4 image.fits filter-mean
```

In this example, each pixel is replaced by the mean of a 5 by 4 box around it. The box is 5 pixels along the first FITS dimension (horizontal when viewed in ds9) and 4 pixels along the second FITS dimension (vertical).

Each pixel will be placed in the center of the box that the mean is calculated on. If the given width along a dimension is even, then the center is assumed to be between the pixels (not in the center of a pixel). When the pixel is close to the edge, the pixels of the box that fall outside the image are ignored. Therefore, on the edge, less points will be used in calculating the mean.

The final effect of mean filtering is to smooth the input image, it is essentially a convolution with a kernel that has identical values for all its pixels (is flat), see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480.

Note that blank pixels will also be affected by this operator: if there are any non-blank elements in the box surrounding a blank pixel, in the filtered image, it will have the mean of the non-blank elements, therefore it will not be blank any more. If blank elements are important for your analysis, you can use the `isblank` operator with the `where` operator to set them back to blank after filtering.

For example in the command below, we are first filtering the image, then setting its original blank elements back to blank in the output of filtering (all within one Arithmetic command). Note how we are using the `set-` operator to give names to the temporary outputs of steps and simplify the code (see Section 6.2.4.21 [Operand storage in memory or a file], page 471).

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits -h1        set-in \
                5 4 in filter-mean    set-filtered \
                filtered in isblank nan where \
                --output=out.fits
```

`filter-median`

Apply median filtering (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Median_filter`) on the input dataset. This is very similar to `filter-mean`, except that instead of the mean value of the box pixels, the median value is used to replace a pixel's value. For more on how to use this operator, please see `filter-mean`.

The median is less susceptible to outliers compared to the mean. As a result, after median filtering, the pixel values will be more discontinuous than mean filtering.

`filter-minimum`

`filter-maximum`

Apply a minimum/maximum filter to the input. This is very similar to `filter-mean`, except that instead of the mean value of the box pixels, the minimum/maximum value is used to replace a pixel's value. For more on how to use this operator, please see `filter-mean`.

`filter-sigclip-mean`
: Apply a σ-clipped mean filtering onto the input dataset. This is very similar to `filter-mean`, except that all outliers (identified by the σ-clipping algorithm) have been removed, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, for more on the basics of this algorithm. As described there, two extra input parameters are necessary for σ-clipping: the multiple of σ and the termination criteria. `filter-sigclip-mean` therefore needs to pop two other operands from the stack after the dimensions of the box.

  For example, the line below uses the same box size as the example of `filter-mean`. However, all elements in the box that are iteratively beyond 3σ of the distribution's median are removed from the final calculation of the mean until the change in σ is less than 0.2.

  ```
  $ astarithmetic 3 0.2 5 4 image.fits filter-sigclip-mean
  ```

  The median (which needs a sorted dataset) is necessary for σ-clipping, therefore `filter-sigclip-mean` can be significantly slower than `filter-mean`. However, if there are strong outliers in the dataset that you want to ignore (for example, emission lines on a spectrum when finding the continuum), this is a much better solution. Note that σ-clipping is easily biased by outliers, so `filter-madclip-mean` is more robust.

`filter-sigclip-std`
`filter-sigclip-mad`
`filter-sigclip-median`
: Apply a σ-clipped STD/MAD/median filtering onto the input dataset. This operator and its necessary operands are almost identical to `filter-sigclip-mean`, except that after σ-clipping, the median value (which is less affected by outliers than the mean) is added back to the stack. Note that σ-clipping is easily biased by outliers, so `filter-madclip-median` is more robust.

`filter-madclip-mean`
: Apply a MAD-clipped mean filtering onto the input dataset. MAD stands for Median Absolute Deviation, this is much more robust to outliers than the σ-clipping. This operator is called in a similar way to `filter-madclip-mean`, for example in the command below, we use $4\times$MAD clipping with a termination criteria of 0.01 on an image:

  ```
  $ astarithmetic 4 0.01 5 5 image.fits filter-madclip-mean
  ```

`filter-madclip-std`
`filter-madclip-mad`
`filter-madclip-median`
: Apply a MAD-clipped STD/MAD/median filtering onto the input dataset; see the description of `filter-madclip-mean` for more.

6.2.4.9 Pooling operators

Pooling is one way of reducing the complexity of the input image by grouping multiple input pixels into one output pixel (using any statistical measure). As a result, the output image has fewer pixels (less complexity). In Computer Vision, Pooling is com-

monly used in Convolutional Neural Networks (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convolutional_neural_network`) (CNNs).

In pooling, the inputs are an image (e.g., a FITS file) and a square window pixel size that is known as a pooling window. The window has to be smaller than the input's number of pixels in both dimensions and its width is called the "pool size". The pooling window starts at the top-left corner pixel of the input and calculates statistical operations on the pixels that overlap with it. It slides forward by the "stride" pixels, moving over all pixels in the input from the top-left corner to the bottom-right corner, and repeats the same calculation for the overlapping pixels in each position.

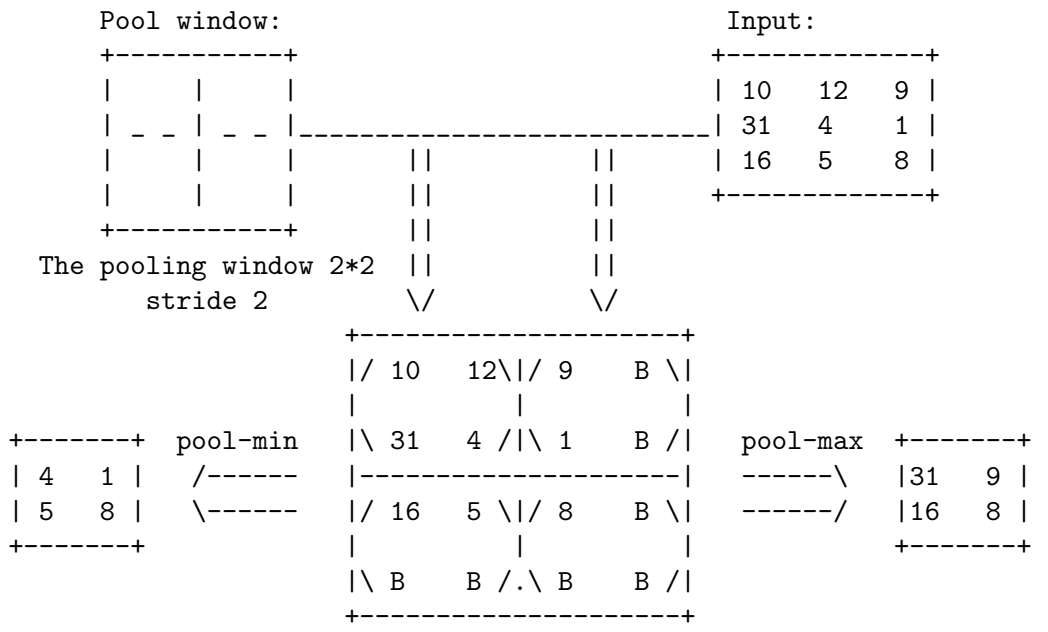
Usually, the stride (or spacing between the windows as they slide over the input) is equal to the window-size. In other words, in pooling, the separate "windows" do not overlap with each other on the input. However, you can choose any size for the stride. Remember this, It's crucial to ensure that the stride size is less than the pool size. If not, some pixels may be missed during the pooling process. Therefore there are two major differences with Section 6.3.1 [Spatial domain convolution], page 480, or Section 6.2.4.8 [Filtering (smoothing) operators], page 432, but pooling has some similarities to the Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501.

- In convolution or filtering the input and output sizes are the same. However, when the stride is larger than 1 then, the output of pooling must have fewer pixels.
- In convolution or filters, the kernels slide over the input in a pixel-by-pixel manner. As a result, the same pixel's value will be used in many of the output pixels. However, in pooling each input pixel may be only used in a single output pixel (if the stride and the pool size are the same).
- Special cases of Warping an image are similar to pooling. For example calling `pool-sum` with pool size of 2 will give the same pixel values (except the outer edges) as giving the same image to `astwarp` with `--scale=1/2 --centeroncorner`. However, warping will only provide the sum of the input pixels, there is no easy way to generically define something like `pool-max` in Warp (which is far more general than pooling). Also, due to its generic features (for example for non-linear warps), Warp is slower than the `pool-max` that is introduced here.

No WCS in output: As of Gnuastro 0.23.84-726fd, the output of pooling will not contain WCS information (primarily due to a lack of time by developers). Please inform us of your interest in having it, by contacting us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`. If you need `pool-sum`, you can use Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501, (which also modifies the WCS, see note above).

If the width or height of input is not divisible by the stride size, the pool window will go beyond the input pixel grid. In this case, the window pixels that do not overlap with the input are given a blank value (and thus ignored in the calculation of the desired statistical operation).

The simple ASCII figure below shows the pooling operation where the input is a 3×3 pixel image with a pool size of 2 pixels. In the center of the second row, you see the intermediate input matrix that highlights how the input and output pixels relate with each other. Since the input is 3×3 and we have a stride size of 2, as mentioned above blank pseudo-pixels are added with a value of `B` (for blank).



The choice of the statistic to use depends on the specific use case, the characteristics of the input data, and the desired output. Each statistic has its advantages and disadvantages and the choice of which to use should be informed by the specific needs of the problem at hand. Below, the various pool operators of arithmetic are listed:

`pool-max` Apply max-pooling on the input dataset. This operator takes three operands: the first popped operand is the stride and the second is the width of the square pooling window (which should be a single integer). Also, The third operand should be the input image. Within the pooling window, this operator will place the largest value in the output pixel (any blank pixels will be ignored).

See the ASCII diagram above for a demonstration of how max-pooling works. Here is an example of using this operator:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 2 2 pool-max
```

Max-pooling retains the largest value of the input window in the output, so the returned image is sharper where you have strong signal-to-noise ratio and more noisy in regions with no significant signal (only noise). It is therefore useful when the background of the image is dark and we are interested in only the highest signal-to-noise ratio regions of the image.

`pool-min` Apply min-pooling on the input dataset. This operator takes three operands: the first popped operand is the stride and the second is the width of the square pooling window (which should be a single integer). Also, The third operand should be the input image. Except the used statistical measurement, this operator is similar to `pool-max`, see the description there for more.

Min-pooling is mostly used when the image has a high signal-to-noise ratio and a light background: min-pooling will select darker (lower-valued) pixels. For low signal-to-noise regions, this operator will increase the noise level (similar to the maximum, the scatter in the minimum is very strong).

`pool-sum` Apply sum-pooling to the input dataset. This operator takes three operands: the first popped operand is the stride and the second is the width of the square pooling window (which should be a single integer). Also, The third operand should be the input image. Except the used statistical measurement, this operator is similar to `pool-max`, see the description there for more.

Sum-pooling will increase the signal-to-noise ratio at the cost of having a smoother output (less resolution).

`pool-mean`

Apply mean pooling on the input dataset. This operator takes three operands: the first popped operand is the stride and the second is the width of the square pooling window (which should be a single integer). Also, The third operand should be the input image. Except the used statistical measurement, this operator is similar to `pool-max`, see the description there for more.

The mean pooling method smooths out the image and hence the sharp features may not be identified when this pooling method is used. This therefore preserves more information than max-pooling, but may also reduces the effect of the most prominent pixels. Mean is often used where a more accurate representation of the input is required.

`pool-median`

Apply median pooling on the input dataset. This operator takes three operands: the first popped operand is the stride and the second is the width of the square pooling window (which should be a single integer). Also, The third operand should be the input image. Except the used statistical measurement, this operator is similar to `pool-max`, see the description there for more.

In general, the mean is mathematically easier to interpret and more susceptible to outliers, while the median outputs as being less subject to the influence of outliers compared to the mean so we have a smoother image. This is therefore better for low signal-to-ratio (noisy) features and extended features (where you don't want a single high or low valued pixel to affect the output).

6.2.4.10 Interpolation operators

Interpolation is the process of removing blank pixels from a dataset (by giving them a value based on the non-blank neighbors).

`interpolate-medianngb`

Interpolate the blank elements of the second popped operand with the median of nearest non-blank neighbors to each. The number of the nearest non-blank neighbors used to calculate the median is given by the first popped operand.

The distance of the nearest non-blank neighbors is irrelevant in this interpolation. The neighbors of each blank pixel will be parsed in expanding circular rings (for 2D images) or spherical surfaces (for 3D cube) and each non-blank element over them is stored in memory. When the requested number of non-blank neighbors have been found, their median is used to replace that blank element. For example, the line below replaces each blank element with the median of the nearest 5 pixels.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 5 interpolate-medianngb
```

When you want to interpolate blank regions and you want each blank region to have a fixed value (for example, the centers of saturated stars) this operator is not good. Because the pixels used to interpolate various parts of the region differ. For such scenarios, you may use `interpolate-maxofregion` or `interpolate-inofregion` (described below).

`interpolate-meanngb`
: Similar to `interpolate-medianngb`, but will fill the blank values of the dataset with the mean value of the requested number of nearest neighbors.

`interpolate-minngb`
: Similar to `interpolate-medianngb`, but will fill the blank values of the dataset with the minimum value of the requested number of nearest neighbors.

`interpolate-maxngb`
: Similar to `interpolate-medianngb`, but will fill the blank values of the dataset with the maximum value of the requested number of nearest neighbors. One useful implementation of this operator is to fill the saturated pixels of stars in images.

`interpolate-minofregion`
: Interpolate all blank regions (consisting of many blank pixels that are touching) of the third popped operand with the minimum value of the pixels that are touching that region (a single value). The second popped operand is the inner-connectivity (defining the actual region: which touching pixels are considered as part of the region to give a single value). The first popped operand is the outer-connectivity which defines the pixels outside the blank region which are used. For more on the definition of connectivity, see `connected-components`).

  For example, with the command below all the 2-connected blank regions of `image.fits` will be filled with the minimum of the 1-connected, non-blank neighbors of the region. The ‘image.fits‘ is an image (2D dataset), so a 2 connectivity means that the independent blank regions are defined by 8-connected neighbors: two pixels touching on the corner (a point) are considered as one region. If inner-connectivity was 1, the regions would be defined by 4-connectivity: blank regions would be defined only by pixels touch touch along one full edge length. Conversely, for the non-blank pixels “touching” the outer parts of the blank regions (to find the minimum), the command below assumes 1-connectivity.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 2 1 interpolate-minofregion
```

`interpolate-maxofregion`
: Similar to `interpolate-minofregion`, but the maximum is used to fill the blank regions.

  This operator can be useful in filling saturated pixels in stars for example. Recall that the `interpolate-maxngb` operator looks for the maximum value with a given number of neighboring pixels and is more useful in small noisy regions. Therefore as the blank regions become larger, `interpolate-maxngb` can cause a fragmentation in the connected blank region because the nearest neighbor to one part of the blank region, may not fall within the pixels searched

for the other regions. With this option, the size of the blank region is irrelevant: all the pixels bordering the blank region are parsed and their maximum value is used for the whole region.

6.2.4.11 Dimensionality changing operators

Through these operators you can change the dimensions of the output through certain statistics on the dimensions that should be removed. For example, let's assume you have a 3D data cube that has 300 by 300 pixels in the RA and Dec dimensions (first two dimensions), and 3600 slices along the wavelength (third dimension), so the whole cube is $300 \times 300 \times 3600$ voxels (volume elements). To create a narrow-band image that only contains 100 slices around a certain wavelength, you can crop that section (using Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389), giving you a $300 \times 300 \times 100$ cube. You can now use the `collapse-sum` operator below to "collapse" all the 100 slices into one 2D image that has 300×300 pixels. Every pixel in this 2D image will have the flux of the sum of the 100 slices.

`to-1d` Convert the input operand into a 1D array; irrespective of the number of dimensions it has. This operator only takes a single operand (the input array) and just updates the metadata. Therefore it does not change the layout of the array contents in memory and is very fast.

If no further operation is requested on the 1D array, recall that Arithmetic will write a 1D array as a table column by default. In case you want the output to be saved as a 1D image, or to see it on the standard output, please use the `--onedasimage` or `--onedonstdout` options respectively (see Section 6.2.5 [Invoking Arithmetic], page 473).

This operator is useful in scenarios where after some operations on a 2D image or 3D cube, the dimensionality is no longer relevant for you and you just care about the values. In the example below, we will first make a simple 2D image from a plain-text file, then convert it to a 1D array:

```
## Contents of 'a.txt' to start with.
$ cat a.txt
# Image 1: DEMO [counts, uint8] An example image
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9

## Convert the text image into a FITS image.
$ astconvertt a.txt -o a.fits

## Convert it into a table column (1D):
$ astarithmetic a.fits to-1d -o table.fits

## Convert it into a 1D image:
$ astarithmetic a.fits to-1d -o table.fits --onedasimage
```

A more real-world example would be the following: assume you want to "flatten" two images into a single 1D array (as commonly done in convolutional

neural networks, or CNNs[16]). First, we show the contents of a new 2×2 image in plain-text image, then convert it to a 2D FITS image (`b.fits`). We will then use arithmetic to make both `a.fits` (from the example above) and `b.fits` into a 1D array and stitch them together into a single 1D image with one call to Arithmetic. For a description of the `stitch` operator, see below (same section).

```
## Contents of 'b.txt':
$ cat b.txt
# Image 1: DEMO [counts, uint8] An example image
10 11
12 13

## Convert the text image into a FITS image.
$ astconvertt b.txt -o b.fits

# Flatten the two images into a single 1D image:
$ astarithmetic a.fits to-1d b.fits to-1d 2 1 stitch -g1 \
                --onedonstdout --quiet
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
```

`stitch` Stitch (connect) any number of given images together along the given dimension. The output has the same number of dimensions as the input, but the number of pixels along the requested dimension will be different from the inputs. The `stitch` operator takes at least three operands:

- The first popped operand (placed just before `stitch`) is the direction (dimension) that the images should be stitched along. The first FITS dimension is along the horizontal, therefore a value of `1` will stitch them horizontally. Similarly, giving a value of `2` will result in a vertical stitch.
- The second popped operand is the number of images that should be stitched.
- Depending on the value given to the second popped operand, `stitch` will pop the given number of datasets from the stack and stitch them along the given dimension. The popped images have to have the same number of pixels along the other dimension. The order of the stitching is defined by

[16] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convolutional_neural_network`

how they are placed in the command-line, not how they are popped (after being popped, they are placed in a list in the same order).

For example, in the commands below, we will first crop out fixed sized regions of 100×300 pixels of a larger image (`large.fits`) first. In the first call of Arithmetic below, we will stitch the bottom set of crops together along the first (horizontal) axis. In the second Arithmetic call, we will stitch all 6 along both dimensions.

```
## Crop the fixed-size regions of a larger image ('-O' is the
## short form of the '--mode' option).
$ astcrop large.fits -Oimg --section=1:100,1:300     -oa.fits
$ astcrop large.fits -Oimg --section=101:200,1:300   -ob.fits
$ astcrop large.fits -Oimg --section=201:300,1:300   -oc.fits
$ astcrop large.fits -Oimg --section=1:100,301:600   -od.fits
$ astcrop large.fits -Oimg --section=101:200,301:600 -oe.fits
$ astcrop large.fits -Oimg --section=201:300,301:600 -of.fits

## Stitch the bottom three crops into one image.
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits 3 1 stitch -obottom.fits

# Stitch all the 6 crops along both dimensions
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits 3 1 stitch \
                d.fits e.fits f.fits 3 1 stitch \
                2 2 stitch -g1 -oall.fits
```

The start of the last command is like the one before it (stitching the bottom three crops along the first FITS dimension, producing a 300×300 image). Later in the same command, we then stitch the top three crops horizontally (again, into a 300×300 image) This leaves the the two 300×300 images on the stack (see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404). We finally stitch those two along the second (vertical) dimension. This operator is therefore useful in scenarios like placing the CCD amplifiers into one image.

`trim` Trim all blank elements from the outer edges of the input operand (it only takes a single operand). For example see the commands below using Table's Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350:

```
$  cat table.txt
nan
nan
nan
3
4
nan
5
6
nan

$ asttable table.txt -Y -c'arith $1 trim'
```

```
3.000000
4.000000
nan
5.000000
6.000000
```

Similarly, on 2D images or 3D cubes, all outer rows/columns or slices that are fully blank get "trim"ed with this operator. This is therefore a very useful operator for extracting a certain feature within your dataset.

For example, let's assume that you have set Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, and Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, on an image to extract all clumps and objects. With the command below on Segment's output, you will have a smaller image that only contains the sky-subtracted input pixels corresponding to object 263.

```
$ astarithmetic seg.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY seg.fits -hOBJECTS \
                263 ne nan where trim --output=obj-263.fits
```

`add-dimension-slow`

Build a higher-dimensional dataset from all the input datasets stacked after one another (along the slowest dimension). The first popped operand has to be a single number. It is used by the operator to know how many operands it should pop from the stack (and the size of the output in the new dimension). The rest of the operands must have the same size and numerical data type. This operator currently only works for 2D input operands, please contact us if you want inputs to have different dimensions.

The output's WCS (which should have a different dimensionality compared to the inputs) can be read from another file with the `--wcsfile` option. If no file is specified for the WCS, the first dataset's WCS will be used, you can later add/change the necessary WCS keywords with the FITS keyword modification features of the Fits program (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297).

If your datasets do not have the same type, you can use the type transformation operators of Arithmetic that are discussed below. Just beware of overflow if you are transforming to a smaller type, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

For example, let's assume you have 3 two-dimensional images `a.fits`, `b.fits` and `c.fits` (each with 200×100 pixels). You can construct a 3D data cube with $200 \times 100 \times 3$ voxels (volume-pixels) using the command below:

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits c.fits 3 add-dimension-slow
```

`add-dimension-fast`

Similar to `add-dimension-slow` but along the fastest dimension. This operator currently only works for 1D input operands, please contact us if you want inputs to have different dimensions.

For example, let's assume you have 3 one-dimensional datasets, each with 100 elements. With this operator, you can construct a 3×100 pixel FITS image that has 3 pixels along the horizontal and 5 pixels along the vertical.

`collapse-sum`

Collapse the given dataset (second popped operand), by summing all elements along the first popped operand (a dimension in FITS standard: counting from one, from fastest dimension). The returned dataset has one dimension less compared to the input.

The output will have a double-precision floating point type irrespective of the input dataset's type. Doing the operation in double-precision (64-bit) floating point will help the collapse (summation) be affected less by floating point errors. But afterwards, single-precision floating points are usually enough in real (noisy) datasets. So depending on the type of the input and its nature, it is recommended to use one of the type conversion operators on the returned dataset.

If any WCS is present, the returned dataset will also lack the respective dimension in its WCS matrix. Therefore, when the WCS is important for later processing, be sure that the input is aligned with the respective axes: all non-diagonal elements in the WCS matrix are zero.

One common application of this operator is the creation of synthetic broad-band or narrow-band 2D images from 3D data cubes. For example, integral field unit (IFU) data products that have two spatial dimensions (first two FITS dimensions) and one spectral dimension (third FITS dimension). The command below will collapse the whole third dimension into a 2D array the size of the first two dimensions, and then convert the output to single-precision floating point (as discussed above).

```
$ astarithmetic cube.fits 3 collapse-sum float32
```

`collapse-min`
`collapse-max`
`collapse-mean`
`collapse-median`

Similar to `collapse-sum`, but the returned dataset will be the desired statistic along the collapsed dimension, not the sum.

`collapse-madclip-fill-mad`
`collapse-madclip-fill-std`
`collapse-madclip-fill-mean`
`collapse-madclip-fill-median`
`collapse-madclip-fill-number`

Collapse the input dataset (fourth popped operand) along the FITS dimension given as the first popped operand by calculating the desired statistic after median absolute deviation (MAD) filled re-clipping. The MAD-clipping parameters (namely, the multiple of sigma and termination criteria) are read as the third and second popped operands respectively.

This is the most robust method to reject outliers; for more on filled re-clipping and its advantages, see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209. For a more general tutorial on rejecting outliers, see Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196. If you have not done this tutorial yet, we recommend you to take an hour or so and go through that tutorial for optimal understanding and results.

When more than 95% of the area of an operand is masked, the full operand will be masked. This is necessary in like this: one of your inputs has many outliers (for example it is much more noisy than the rest or its sky level has not been subtracted properly). Because this operator fills holes between outlying pixels, most of the area of the input will be masked, but the thin edges (where there are no "holes") will remain, causing different statistics in those thin edges of that input in your final coadd. Through this mask coverage fraction (which is currently hard-coded[17]), we ensure that such thin edges do not cause artifacts in the final coadd.

For example, with the command below, the pixels of the input 2 dimensional `image.fits` will be collapsed to a single dimension output. The first popped operand is `2`, so it will collapse all the pixels that are vertically on top of each other. Such that the output will have the same number of pixels as the horizontal axis of the input. During the collapsing, all pixels that are more than 3σ (third popped operand) are rejected, and the clipping will continue until the standard deviation changes less than 0.2 between clips. Finally the `counter` operator is used to have a two-column table with the first one being a simple counter starting from one (see Section 6.2.4.19 [Size and position operators], page 466).

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 3 0.2 2 collapse-sigclip-mean \
                counter --output=collapsed-vertical.fits
```

Printing output of collapse in plain-text: the default datatype of `collapse-sigclip-mean` is 32-bit floating point. This is sufficient for any observed astronomical data. However, if you request a plain-text output, or decide to print/view the output as plain-text on the standard output, the full set of decimals may not be printed in some situations. This can lead to apparently discrete values in the output of this operator when viewed in plain-text! The FITS format is always superior (since it stores the value in binary, therefore not having the problem above). But if you are forced to save the output in plain-text, use the `float64` operator after this to change the type to 64-bit floating point (which will print more decimals).

`collapse-madclip-mad`
`collapse-madclip-std`
`collapse-madclip-mean`
`collapse-madclip-median`
`collapse-madclip-number`

Collapse the input dataset (fourth popped operand) along the FITS dimension given as the first popped operand by calculating the desired statistic after median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping. This operator is called similarly to the `collapse-madclip-fill-*` operators, see the description there for more.

[17] Please get in touch with us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org` if you notice this problem and feel the fraction needs to be lowered (or generally to be set in each run).

`collapse-sigclip-fill-mad`
`collapse-sigclip-fill-std`
`collapse-sigclip-fill-mean`
`collapse-sigclip-fill-median`
`collapse-sigclip-fill-number`
: Collapse the input dataset (fourth popped operand) along the FITS dimension given as the first popped operand by calculating the desired statistic after filled σ re-clipping. This operator is called similarly to the `collapse-madclip-fill-*` operators, see the description there for more.

`collapse-sigclip-mad`
`collapse-sigclip-std`
`collapse-sigclip-mean`
`collapse-sigclip-median`
`collapse-sigclip-number`
: Collapse the input dataset (fourth popped operand) along the FITS dimension given as the first popped operand by calculating the desired statistic after σ-clipping. This operator is called similarly to the `collapse-madclip-fill-*` operators, see the description there for more.

6.2.4.12 Conditional operators

Conditional operators take two inputs and return a binary output that can only have two values 0 (for pixels where the condition was false) or 1 (for the pixels where the condition was true). Because of the binary (2-valued) nature of their outputs, the output is therefore stored in an `unsigned char` data type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) to speed up process and take less space in your storage. There are two exceptions to the general features above: `isblank` only takes one input, and `where` takes three, while not returning a binary output, see their description for more.

`lt`
: Less than: creates a binary output (values either 0 or 1) where each pixel will be 1 if the second popped operand is smaller than the first popped operand and 0 otherwise. If both operands are images, then all the pixels will be compared with their counterparts in the other image.

  For example, the pixels in the output of the command below will have a value of 1 (true) if their value in `image1.fits` is less than their value in `image2.fits`. Otherwise, their value will be 0 (false).

  ```
  $ astarithmetic image1.fits image2.fits lt
  ```

  If only one operand is an image, then all the pixels will be compared with the single value (number) of the other operand. For example:

  ```
  $ astarithmetic image1.fits 1000 lt
  ```

  Finally if both are numbers, then the output is also just one number (0 or 1).

  ```
  $ astarithmetic 4 5 lt
  ```

`le`
: Less or equal: similar to `lt` ('less than' operator), but returning 1 when the second popped operand is smaller or equal to the first. For example

  ```
  $ astarithmetic image1.fits 1000 le
  ```

`gt` Greater than: similar to `lt` ('less than' operator), but returning 1 when the second popped operand is greater than the first. For example

```
$ astarithmetic image1.fits 1000 gt
```

`ge` Greater or equal: similar to `lt` ('less than' operator), but returning 1 when the second popped operand is larger or equal to the first. For example

```
$ astarithmetic image1.fits 1000 ge
```

`eq` Equality: similar to `lt` ('less than' operator), but returning 1 when the two popped operands are equal (to double precision floating point accuracy).

```
$ astarithmetic image1.fits 1000 eq
```

`ne` Non-Equality: similar to `lt` ('less than' operator), but returning 1 when the two popped operands are *not* equal (to double precision floating point accuracy).

```
$ astarithmetic image1.fits 1000 ne
```

`and` Logical AND: returns 1 if both operands have a non-zero value, and returns 0 if either operand is zero. Both operands have to be the same kind: either both images or both numbers and it mostly makes meaningful values when the inputs are binary (with pixel values of 0 or 1).

```
$ astarithmetic image1.fits image2.fits -g1 and
```

For example, if you only want to see which pixels in an image have a value *between* 50 (greater equal, or inclusive) and 200 (less than, or exclusive), you can use this command:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits set-i i 50 ge i 200 lt and
```

`or` Logical OR: returns 1 if either one of the operands is non-zero and 0 only when both operators are zero. Both operands have to be the same kind: either both images or both numbers. The usage is similar to `and`.

For example, if you only want to see which pixels in an image have a value *outside of* -100 (greater equal, or inclusive) and 200 (less than, or exclusive), you can use this command:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits set-i i -100 lt i 200 ge or
```

`not` Logical NOT: returns 1 when the operand is 0 and 0 when the operand is non-zero. The operand can be an image or number, for an image, it is applied to each pixel separately. For example, if you want to know which pixels are not blank (and assuming that we didn't have the `isnotblank` operator), you can use this `not` operator on the output of the `isblank` operator described below:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits isblank not
```

`isblank` Test each pixel for being a blank value (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). This is a conditional operator: the output has the same size and dimensions as the input, but has an unsigned 8-bit integer type with two possible values: either 1 (for a pixel that was blank) or 0 (for a pixel that was not blank). See the description of `lt` operator above). The difference is that it only needs one operand. For example:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits isblank
```

Because of the definition of a blank pixel, a blank value is not even equal to itself, so you cannot use the equal operator above to select blank pixels. See the "Blank pixels" box below for more on Blank pixels in Arithmetic.

In case you want to set non-blank pixels to an output pixel value of 1, it is better to use `isnotblank` instead of '`isblank not`' (for more, see the description of `isnotblank`).

`isnotblank`

The inverse of the `isblank` operator above (see that description for more). Therefore, if a pixel has a blank value, the output of this operator will have a 0 value for it. This operator is therefore similar to running '`isblank not`', but slightly more efficient (won't need the intermediate product of two operators).

`where` Change the input (pixel) value *where*/if a certain condition holds. The conditional operators above can be used to define the condition. Three operands are required for `where`. The input format is demonstrated in this simplified example:

```
$ astarithmetic modify.fits binary.fits if-true.fits where
```

The value of any pixel in `modify.fits` that corresponds to a non-zero *and* non-blank pixel of `binary.fits` will be changed to the value of the same pixel in `if-true.fits` (this may also be a number). The 3rd and 2nd popped operands (`modify.fits` and `binary.fits` respectively, see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404) have to have the same dimensions/size. `if-true.fits` can be either a number, or have the same dimension/size as the other two.

The 2nd popped operand (`binary.fits`) has to have `uint8` (or `unsigned char` in standard C) type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). It is treated as a binary dataset (with only two values: zero and non-zero, hence the name `binary.fits` in this example). However, commonly you will not be dealing with an actual FITS file of a condition/binary image. You will probably define the condition in the same run based on some other reference image and use the conditional and logical operators above to make a true/false (or one/zero) image for you internally. For example, the case below:

```
$ astarithmetic in.fits reference.fits 100 gt new.fits where
```

In the example above, any of the `in.fits` pixels that has a value in `reference.fits` greater than `100`, will be replaced with the corresponding pixel in `new.fits`. Effectively the `reference.fits 100 gt` part created the condition/binary image which was added to the stack (in memory) and later used by `where`. The command above is thus equivalent to these two commands:

```
$ astarithmetic reference.fits 100 gt --output=binary.fits
$ astarithmetic in.fits binary.fits new.fits where
```

Finally, the input operands are read and used independently, so you can use the same file more than once as any of the operands.

When the 1st popped operand to `where` (`if-true.fits`) is a single number, it may be a NaN value (or any blank value, depending on its type) like the example below (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). When the number is blank,

it will be converted to the blank value of the type of the 3rd popped operand (`in.fits`). Hence, in the example below, all the pixels in `reference.fits` that have a value greater than 100, will become blank in the natural data type of `in.fits` (even though NaN values are only defined for floating point types).

```
$ astarithmetic in.fits reference.fits 100 gt nan where
```

6.2.4.13 Mathematical morphology operators

From Wikipedia: "Mathematical morphology (MM) is a theory and technique for the analysis and processing of geometrical structures, based on set theory, lattice theory, topology, and random functions. MM is most commonly applied to digital images". In theory it extends a very large body of research and methods in image processing, but currently in Gnuastro it mainly applies to images that are binary (only have a value of 0 or 1). For example, you have applied the greater-than operator (`gt`, see Section 6.2.4.12 [Conditional operators], page 445) to select all pixels in your image that are larger than a value of 100. But they will all have a value of 1, and you want to separate the various groups of pixels that are connected (for example, peaks of stars in your image). With the `connected-components` operator, you can give each connected region of the output of `gt` a separate integer label.

`erode` Erode the foreground pixels (with value `1`) of the input dataset (second popped operand). The first popped operand is the connectivity (see description in `connected-components`). Erosion is simply a flipping of all foreground pixels (with value `1`) to background (with value `0`) that are "touching" background pixels. "Touching" is defined by the connectivity.

In effect, this operator "carves off" the outer borders of the foreground, making them thinner. This operator assumes a binary dataset (all pixels are `0` or `1`). For example, imagine that you have an astronomical image with a mean/sky value of 0 units and a standard deviation (σ) of 100 units and many galaxies in it. With the first command below, you can apply a threshold of 2σ on the image (by only keeping pixels that are greater than 200 using the `gt` operator). The output of thresholding the image is a binary image (each pixel is either smaller or equal to the threshold or larger than it). You can then erode the binary image with the second command below to remove very small false positives (one or two pixel peaks).

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 100 gt -obinary.fits
$ astarithmetic binary.fits 2 erode -oout.fits
```

In fact, you can merge these operations into one command thanks to the reverse polish notation (see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404):

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 100 gt 2 erode -oout.fits
```

To see the effect of connectivity, try this:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 100 gt 1 erode -oout-con-1.fits
```

`dilate` Dilate the foreground pixels (with value `1`) of the binary input dataset (second popped operand). The first popped operand is the connectivity (see description in `connected-components`). Dilation is simply a flipping of all background pixels (with value `0`) to foreground (with value `1`) that are "touching" foreground

pixels. "Touching" is defined by the connectivity. In effect, this expands the outer borders of the foreground. This operator assumes a binary dataset (all pixels are `0` and `1`). The usage is similar to `erode`, for example:

```
$ astarithmetic binary.fits 2 dilate -oout.fits
```

`number-neighbors`

Return a dataset of the same size as the second popped operand, but where each non-zero and non-blank input pixel is replaced with the number of its non-zero and non-blank neighbors. The first popped operand is the connectivity (see above) and must be a single-value of an integer type. The dataset is assumed to be binary (having an unsigned, 8-bit dataset).

For example with the command below, you can select all pixels above a value of 100 in your image with the "greater-than" or `gt` operator (see Section 6.2.4.12 [Conditional operators], page 445). Recall that the output of all conditional operators is a binary output (having a value of 0 or 1). In the same command, we will then find how many neighboring pixels of each pixel (that was originally above the threshold) are also above the threshold.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 100 gt 2 number-neighbors
```

`connected-components`

Find the connected components in the input dataset (second popped operand). The first popped is the connectivity used in the connected components algorithm. The second popped operand is the dataset where connected components are to be found. It is assumed to be a binary image (with values of 0 or 1). It must have an 8-bit unsigned integer type which is the format produced by conditional operators. This operator will return a labeled dataset where the non-zero pixels in the input will be labeled with a counter (starting from 1).

The connectivity is a number between 1 and the number of dimensions in the dataset (inclusive). 1 corresponds to the weakest (symmetric) connectivity between elements and the number of dimensions the strongest. For example, on a 2D image, a connectivity of 1 corresponds to 4-connected neighbors and 2 corresponds to 8-connected neighbors.

One example usage of this operator can be the identification of regions above a certain threshold, as in the command below. With this command, Arithmetic will first separate all pixels greater than 100 into a binary image (where pixels with a value of 1 are above that value). Afterwards, it will label all those that are connected.

```
$ astarithmetic in.fits 100 gt 2 connected-components
```

If your input dataset does not have a binary type, but you know all its values are 0 or 1, you can use the `uint8` operator (below) to convert it to binary.

`fill-holes`

Flip background (0) pixels surrounded by foreground (1) in a binary dataset. This operator takes two operands (similar to `connected-components`): the second is the binary (0 or 1 valued) dataset to fill holes in and the first popped operand is the connectivity (to define a hole). Imagine that in your dataset there are some holes with zero value inside the objects with one value (for

example, the output of the thresholding example of `erode`) and you want to fill the holes:

```
$ astarithmetic binary.fits 2 fill-holes
```

`invert` Invert an unsigned integer dataset (will not work on other data types, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). This is the only operator that ignores blank values (which are set to be the maximum values in the unsigned integer types).

This is useful in cases where the target(s) has(have) been imaged in absorption as raw formats (which are unsigned integer types). With this option, the maximum value for the given type will be subtracted from each pixel value, thus "inverting" the image, so the target(s) can be treated as emission. This can be useful when the higher-level analysis methods/tools only work on emission (positive skew in the noise, not negative).

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits invert
```

6.2.4.14 Bitwise operators

Astronomical images are usually stored as an array multi-byte pixels with different sizes for different precision levels (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). For example, images from CCDs are usually in the unsigned 16-bit integer type (each pixel takes 16 bits, or 2 bytes, of memory) and fully reduced deep images have a 32-bit floating point type (each pixel takes 32 bits or 4 bytes).

On the other hand, during the data reduction, we need to preserve a lot of meta-data about some pixels. For example, if a cosmic ray had hit the pixel during the exposure, or if the pixel was saturated, or is known to have a problem, or if the optical vignetting is too strong on it. A crude solution is to make a new image when checking for each one of these things and make a binary image where we flag (set to 1) pixels that satisfy any of these conditions above, and set the rest to zero. However, processing pipelines sometimes need more than 20 flags to store important per-pixel meta-data, and recall that the smallest numeric data type is one byte (or 8 bits, that can store up to 256 different values), while we only need two values for each flag! This is a major waste of storage space!

A much more optimal solution is to use the bits within each pixel to store different flags! In other words, if you have an 8-bit pixel, use each bit as a flag to mark if a certain condition has happened on a certain pixel or not. For example, let's set the following standard based on the four cases mentioned above: the first bit will show that a cosmic ray has hit that pixel. So if a pixel is only affected by cosmic rays, it will have this sequence of bits (note that the bit-counting starts from the right): `00000001`. The second bit shows that the pixel was saturated (`00000010`), the third bit shows that it has known problems (`00000100`) and the fourth bit shows that it was affected by vignetting (`00001000`).

Since each bit is independent, we can thus mark multiple metadata about that pixel in the actual image, within a single "flag" or "mask" pixel of a flag or mask image that has the same number of pixels. For example, a flag-pixel with the following bits `00001001` shows that it has been affected by cosmic rays *and* it has been affected by vignetting at the same time. The common data type to store these flagging pixels are unsigned integer types (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). Therefore when you open an unsigned 8-bit flag image in a viewer like DS9, you will see a single integer in each pixel that actually has

8 layers of metadata in it! For example, the integer you will see for the bit sequences given above will respectively be: $2^0 = 1$ (for a pixel that only has cosmic ray), $2^1 = 2$ (for a pixel that was only saturated), $2^2 = 4$ (for a pixel that only has known problems), $2^3 = 8$ (for a pixel that is only affected by vignetting) and $2^0 + 2^3 = 9$ (for a pixel that has a cosmic ray *and* was affected by vignetting).

You can later use this bit information to mark objects in your final analysis or to mask certain pixels. For example, you may want to set all pixels affected by vignetting to NaN, but can interpolate over cosmic rays. You therefore need ways to separate the pixels with a desired flag(s) from the rest. It is possible to treat a flag pixel as a single integer (and try to define certain ranges in value to select certain flags). But a much more easier and robust way is to actually look at each pixel as a sequence of bits (not as a single integer!) and use the bitwise operators below for this job. For more on the theory behind bitwise operators, see Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bitwise_operation`).

`bitand` Bitwise AND operator: only bits with values of 1 in both popped operands will get the value of 1, the rest will be set to 0. For example, (assuming numbers can be written as bit strings on the command-line): `00101000 00100010 bitand` will give `00100000`. Note that the bitwise operators only work on integer type datasets.

`bitor` Bitwise inclusive OR operator: The bits where at least one of the two popped operands has a 1 value get a value of 1, the others 0. For example, (assuming numbers can be written as bit strings on the command-line): `00101000 00100010 bitand` will give `00101010`. Note that the bitwise operators only work on integer type datasets.

`bitxor` Bitwise exclusive OR operator: A bit will be 1 if it differs between the two popped operands. For example, (assuming numbers can be written as bit strings on the command-line): `00101000 00100010 bitand` will give `00001010`. Note that the bitwise operators only work on integer type datasets.

`lshift` Bitwise left shift operator: shift all the bits of the first operand to the left by a number of times given by the second operand. For example, (assuming numbers can be written as bit strings on the command-line): `00101000 2 lshift` will give `10100000`. This is equivalent to multiplication by 4. Note that the bitwise operators only work on integer type datasets.

`rshift` Bitwise right shift operator: shift all the bits of the first operand to the right by a number of times given by the second operand. For example, (assuming numbers can be written as bit strings on the command-line): `00101000 2 rshift` will give `00001010`. Note that the bitwise operators only work on integer type datasets.

`bitnot` Bitwise not (more formally known as one's complement) operator: flip all the bits of the popped operand (note that this is the only unary, or single operand, bitwise operator). In other words, any bit with a value of `0` is changed to `1` and vice-versa. For example, (assuming numbers can be written as bit strings on the command-line): `00101000 bitnot` will give `11010111`. Note that the bitwise operators only work on integer type datasets/numbers.

6.2.4.15 Numerical type conversion operators

With the operators below you can convert the numerical data type of your input, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. Type conversion is particularly useful when dealing with integers, see Section 6.2.2 [Integer benefits and pitfalls], page 406.

As an example, let's assume that your colleague gives you many single exposure images for processing, but they have a double-precision floating point type! You know that the statistical error a single-exposure image can never exceed 6 or 7 significant digits, so you would prefer to archive them as a single-precision floating point and save space on your computer (a double-precision floating point is also double the file size!). You can do this with the `float32` operator described below.

`u8`
`uint8` Convert the type of the popped operand to 8-bit unsigned integer type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

`i8`
`int8` Convert the type of the popped operand to 8-bit signed integer type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

`u16`
`uint16` Convert the type of the popped operand to 16-bit unsigned integer type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

`i16`
`int16` Convert the type of the popped operand to 16-bit signed integer (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

`u32`
`uint32` Convert the type of the popped operand to 32-bit unsigned integer type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

`i32`
`int32` Convert the type of the popped operand to 32-bit signed integer type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

`u64`
`uint64` Convert the type of the popped operand to 64-bit unsigned integer (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

`f32`
`float32` Convert the type of the popped operand to 32-bit (single precision) floating point (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used. For example, if `f64.fits` is a 64-bit floating point image, and you want to store it as a 32-bit floating point image, you can use the command

below (the second command is to show that the output file consumes half the storage)

```
$ astarithmetic f64.fits float32 --output=f32.fits
$ ls -lh f64.fits f32.fits
```

`f64`
`float64` Convert the type of the popped operand to 64-bit (double precision) floating point (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The internal conversion of C will be used.

6.2.4.16 Random number generators

When you simulate data (for example, see Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123), everything is ideal and there is no noise! The final step of the process is to add simulated noise to the data. The operators in this section are designed for that purpose. To learn more about the definition and implementation "noise", see Section 6.2.3 [Noise basics], page 407.

In case each data element's random distribution should have an independent parameter (for example σ in a Gaussian distribution), the first popped operand can be a dataset of the same size as the second. In this case (when the parameter is not a single value, but an array), each element will have a different parameter.

When `--quiet` is not given, a statement will be printed on each invocation of these operators (if there are multiple calls to the `mknoise-*` operators, the statement will be printed multiple times). It will show the random number generator function and seed that was used in that invocation. These are necessary for the future reproducibility of the outputs using the `--envseed` option, for more, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410. For example, with the first command below, `image.fits` will be degraded by a noise of standard deviation 3 units.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 3 mknoise-sigma
```

Alternatively, you can use the operators in this section within the Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, feature of the Table program. For example, with the command below, you can generate a random number (centered on 0, with $\sigma = 3$). With the second command, you can put it into a shell variable for later usage.

```
$ echo 0 | asttable -c'arith $1 3 mknoise-sigma'
$ value=$(echo 0 | asttable -c'arith $1 3 mknoise-sigma' --quiet)
$ echo $value
```

You can also use the operators here in combination with AWK to easily generate an arbitrarily large table with random columns. In the example below, we will create a two column table with 20 rows. The first column will be centered on 5 and $\sigma_1 = 2$, the second will be centered on 10 and $\sigma_2 = 3$:

```
$ echo 5 10 \
       | awk '{for(i=0;i<20;++i) print $1, $2}' \
       | asttable -c'arith $1 2 mknoise-sigma' \
                  -c'arith $2 3 mknoise-sigma'
```

By adding an extra `--output=random.fits`, the table will be saved into a file called `random.fits`, and you can change the `i<20` to `i<5000` to have 5000 rows instead. Of course, if your input table has different values in the desired column the noisy distribution will be centered on each input element, but all will have the same scatter/sigma.

As mentioned above, you can use the `--envseed` option to pre-define the random number generator seed (and thus get a reproducible result). For more on `--envseed`, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410. When using column arithmetic in Table, it may happen that multiple columns need random numbers (with any of the `mknoise-*` operators) in one call of `asttable`. In such cases, the value given to `GSL_RNG_SEED` is incremented by one on every call to the `mknoise-*` operators. Without this increment, when the column values are the same (happens a lot, for no-noised datasets), the returned values for all columns will be identical. But this feature has a side-effect: that if the order of calling the `mknoise-*` operators changes, the seeds used for each operator will change[18].

`mknoise-sigma`

Add a Gaussian noise with pre-defined σ to each element of the input dataset (independent of the input pixel value). σ is the standard deviation of the Gaussian or Normal distribution (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Normal_distribution`). This operator takes two arguments: the top/first popped operand is the noise standard deviation, the next popped operand is the dataset that the noise should be added to.

For example, with the first command below, let's put a Sérsic profile with Sérsic index 1 and effective radius 10 pixels, truncated at 5 times the effective radius in the center of a mock image that is 100×100 pixels wide. We will also give it a position angle of 45 degrees and an axis ratio of 0.8, and set it to have a total electron count of 10000 (`1e4` in the command). Note that this example is focused on this operator, for a robust simulation, see the tutorial in Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123. With the second command, let's add noise to this image and with the third command, we'll subtract the raw image from the noised image. Finally, we'll view them both together:

```
$ echo "1 50 50 1 10 1 45 0.8 1e4 5" \
       | astmkprof --mergedsize=100,100 --oversample=1 \
                   --mcolissum --output=raw.fits

$ astarithmetic raw.fits 2 mknoise-sigma --output=sigma.fits

$ astarithmetic raw.fits sigma.fits - -g1 \
                --output=diff-sigma.fits

$ astscript-fits-view raw.fits sigma.fits diff-sigma.fits
```

You see that the final `diff-sigma.fits` distribution was independent of the pixel values of the input. You will also notice that within `sigma.fits` the noisy pixels that had a zero value in `raw.fits`, the noise fluctuates around zero (is negative in half of those pixels). These behaviors will be different in the case for `mknoise-sigma-from-mean` below, which is more "realistic" (or Poisson-like).

[18] We have defined Task 15971 (`https://savannah.gnu.org/task/?15971`) in Gnuastro's project management system to address this. If you need this feature please send us an email at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org` (to motivate us in its implementation).

`mknoise-sigma-from-mean`

Replace each input element (e.g., pixel in an image) of the input with a random value taken from a Gaussian distribution (for pixel i) with mean μ_i and standard deviation σ_i. Where, $\sigma_i = \sqrt{I_i + B_i}$ and $\mu_i = I_i + B_i$ and I_i and B_i are respectively the values of the input image, and background in that same pixel. In other words, this can be seen as approximating a Poisson distribution at high mean values (where the Poisson distribution becomes identical to the Gaussian distribution).

This operator takes two arguments: 1. the first popped operand (just before the operator) is the *per-pixel* background value (in units of electron counts). 2. The second popped operand is the dataset that the noise should be added to.

To demonstrate the effect of this noise pattern, please run the example commands in the description of `mknoise-sigma`. With the first command below, let's add this Poisson-like noise (assuming a background level of 4 electron counts, to be similar to a $\sigma = 2$ of the example in `mknoise-sigma`). With the second command, let's subtract the raw image from this noise pattern:

```
$ astarithmetic raw.fits 4 mknoise-sigma-from-mean \
                --output=sigma-from-mean.fits

$ astarithmetic raw.fits sigma-from-mean.fits - -g1 \
                --output=diff-sigma-from-mean.fits

$ astscript-fits-view diff-sigma.fits \
                      diff-sigma-from-mean.fits
```

You clearly see how the noise in the center of the Sérsic profile is much stronger than the outer parts. As described, above, this is behavior we would expect in a "real" observation: the regions with stronger signal, also have stronger noise as defined through the Poisson distribution (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Poisson_distribution`)! The reason we described this operator as "Poisson-like" is that, it has some shortcomings as opposed to the `mknoise-poisson` operator (that is described below):

- For low mean values (less than 3 for example), this will produce a symmetric Gaussian distribution, while the Poisson distribution will not be symmetric.
- The random values from this distribution are floating point (unlike the Poisson distribution that produces integers.
- The random values can be negative (which is not possible in a Poisson distribution).

Therefore to simulate photon-starved images (for example UV or X-ray data), the `mknoise-poisson` operator should always be used, not this one. However, in optical (or redder bands) data, the background is very bright (much brighter than 10 counts for example). In such cases (as the mean increases), the Poisson distributions becomes identical to the Gaussian distribution. Furthermore, processed coadded images are no longer integers, but floating points with the Sky-level already subtracted (see Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528). Therefore

if you are trying to simulate a processed, photon-rich dataset, you can safely use this operator.

Recall that the background values reported by observatories (for example, to define dark or gray nights), or in papers, is usually reported in units of magnitudes per arcseconds square. You need to do the conversion to counts per pixel manually. The conversion of magnitudes to counts is described below. For converting arcseconds squared to number of pixels, you can use the `--pixelscale` option of Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297. For example, `astfits image.fits --pixelscale`.

Except for the noise-model, this operator is very similar to `mknoise-sigma` and the examples there apply here too. The main difference with `mknoise-sigma` is that in a Poisson distribution the scatter/sigma will depend on each element's value.

For example, let's assume you have made a mock image called `mock.fits` with Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652, and it is assumed zero point is 22.5 (for more on the zero point, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585). Let's assume the background level for the Poisson noise has a value of 19 magnitudes. You can first use the `mag-to-counts` operator to convert this background magnitude into counts, then feed the background value in counts to `mknoise-sigma-from-mean` operator:

```
$ astarithmetic mock.fits 19 22.5 mag-to-counts \
                mknoise-sigma-from-mean
```

Try changing the background value from 19 to 10 to see the effect! Recall that the tutorial Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123, shows how you can use MakeProfiles to build mock images.

`mknoise-poisson`

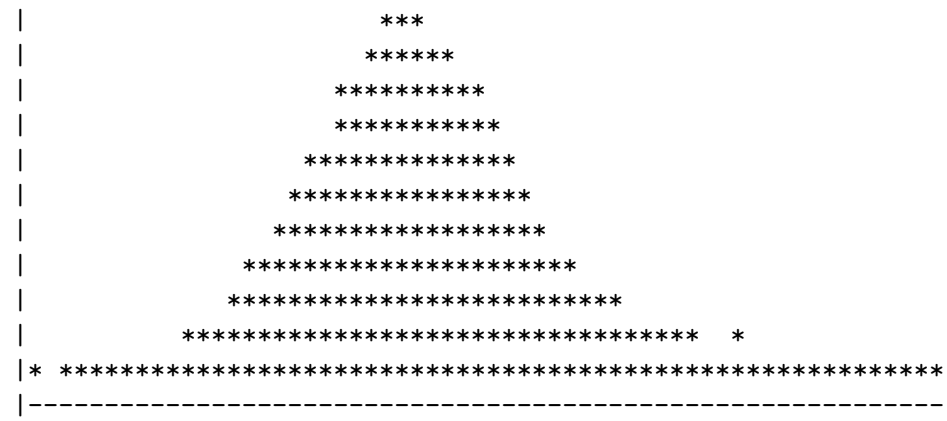
Replace every pixel of the input with a random integer taken from a Poisson distribution with the mean value of that input pixel. Similar to `mknoise-sigma-from-mean`, it takes two operands: 1. The first popped operand (just before the operator) is the per-pixel background value (in units of electron counts). 2. The second popped operand is the dataset that the noise should be added to.

To demonstrate this noise pattern, let's use `mknoise-poisson` in the example of the description of `mknoise-sigma-from-mean` with the first command below. The second command below will show you the two images side-by-side, you will notice that the Poisson distribution's undetected regions are slightly darker (this is because of the skewness of the Poisson distribution). Finally, with the last two commands, you can see the histograms of the two distributions:

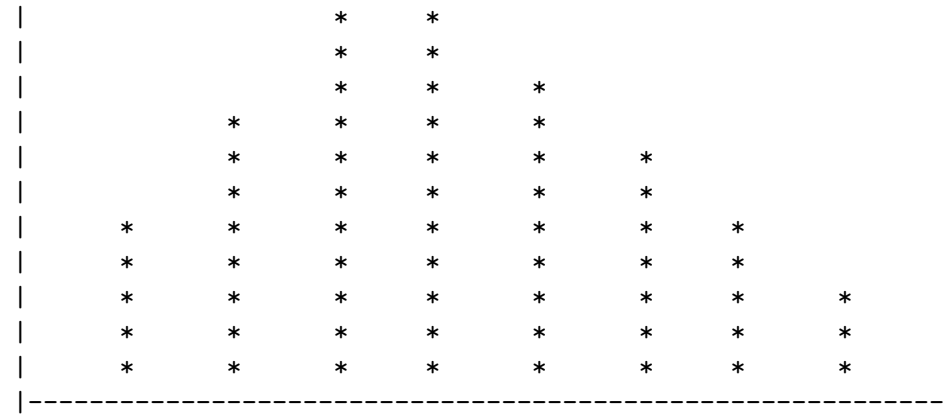
```
$ astarithmetic raw.fits 4 mknoise-poisson \
                --output=poisson.fits

$ astscript-fits-view sigma-from-mean.fits poisson.fits

$ aststatistics sigma-from-mean.fits --lessthan=10
-------
Histogram:
```



```
$ aststatistics poisson.fits --lessthan=10
-------
Histogram:
```



The extra skewness in the Poisson distribution, and the fact that it only returns integers is therefore clear with the commands above. The comparison was further made above in the description of `mknoise-sigma-from-mean`. In summary, you should prefer the Poisson distribution when you are simulating the following scenarios:

- A photon-starved image (as in UV or X-ray).
- A raw exposure of a photon-rich image (which may be photon-rich, but always integers).

`mknoise-uniform`

Add uniform noise to each element of the input dataset. This operator takes two arguments: the top/first popped operand is the width of the interval, the second popped operand is the dataset that the noise should be added to (each element will be the center of the interval). The returned random values may happen to be the minimum interval value, but will never be the maximum. Except for the noise-model, this operator behaves very similar to `mknoise-sigma`, see the explanation there for more.

For example, with the command below, a random value will be selected between 10 to 14 (centered on 12, which is the only input data element, with a total width of 4).

```
echo 12 | asttable -c'arith $1 4 mknoise-uniform'
```

Similar to the example in `mknoise-sigma`, you can pipe the output of `echo` to `awk` before passing it to `asttable` to generate a full column of uniformly selected values within the same interval.

`random-from-hist-raw`

Generate random values from a custom distribution (defined by a histogram). The output will have a double-precision floating point type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). This operator takes three operands:

- The first popped operand (nearest to the operator) is the histogram values. The histogram is a 1-dimensional dataset (a table column) and contains the probability of obtaining a certain interval of values. The histogram does not have to be normalized: the GNU Scientific Library (or GSL, which is used by Gnuastro for this operator), will normalize it internally. The value of each bin (whose probability is given in the histogram) is given in the second popped operand. Therefore these two operands have to have the same number of rows.
- The second popped operand is the bin value (mostly the bin center, but it can be anything). The probability of each bin is defined in the histogram operand (first popped operand). The bins can have any width (do not have to be evenly spaced), and any order. Just make sure that the same row in the bins column corresponds to the same row in the histogram: the number of rows in the bins and histogram must be equal.
- The third popped operand is the dataset that the random values should be written over. Effectively only its size will be used by this operator (all values will be over-written as a double-precision floating point number).

The first two operands have to be single-dimensional (a table column) and have the same number of rows, but the last popped operand can have any number of dimensions. You can use the `load-col-` operator to load the two bins and histogram columns from an external file (see Section 6.2.4.18 [Loading external columns], page 465).

For example, in the command below, we first construct a fake histogram to represent a $y = x^2$ distribution with AWK. We aim to distribute random values from this distribution in a 100×100 image. Therefore, we use the `makenew` operator to construct an empty image of that size, use the `load-col-` operator to load the histogram columns into Arithmetic and put the output in `random.fits`. Finally we visually inspect `random.fits` with DS9 and also have a look at its pixel distribution with `aststatistics`.

```
$ echo "" | awk '{for(i=1;i<5;++i) print i, i*i}' \
                > histogram.txt

$ cat histogram.txt
1 1
```

```
2 4
3 9
4 16

$ astarithmetic 100 100 2 makenew \
                load-col-1-from-histogram.txt \
                load-col-2-from-histogram.txt \
                random-from-hist-raw \
                --output=random.fits

$ astscript-fits-view random.fits

$ aststatistics random.fits --asciihist --numasciibins=50
 |                                                 *
 |                                                 *
 |                                                 *
 |                                                 *
 |                               *                 *
 |                               *                 *
 |                               *                 *
 |                 *             *                 *
 |                 *             *                 *
 |*                *             *                 *
 |*                *             *                 *
 |-------------------------------------------------
```

As you see, the 10000 pixels in the image only have values 1, 2, 3 or 4 (which were the values in the bins column of `histogram.txt`), and the number of times each of these values occurs follows the $y = x^2$ distribution.

Generally, any value given in the bins column will be used for the final output values. For example, in the command below (for generating a histogram from an analytical function), we are adding the bins by 20 (while keeping the same probability distribution of $y = x^2$). If you re-run the Arithmetic command above after this, you will notice that the pixels values are now one of the following 21, 22, 23 or 24 (instead of 1, 2, 3, or 4). But the shape of the histogram of the resulting random distribution will be unchanged.

```
$ echo "" | awk '{for(i=1;i<5;++i) print 20+i, i*i}' \
                > histogram.txt
```

If you do not want the outputs to have exactly the value of the bin identifier, but be a randomly selected value from a uniform distribution within the bin, you should use `random-from-hist` (see below).

As mentioned above, the output will have a double-precision floating point type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). Therefore, by default each element of the output will consume 8 bytes (64-bits) of storage. This is usually far more than the statistical error/precision of your data (and just results in wasted storage in your file system, or wasted RAM when a program that uses the data is being run, and a slower running time of the program).

It is therefore recommended to use a type-conversion operator after this operator to put the output in the smallest type that can be used to safely store your data without wasting storage, RAM or time. For the list of type conversion operators, see Section 6.2.4.15 [Numerical type conversion operators], page 452. Recall that you already know the values returned by this operator (they are one of the values in the bins column).

For example, in the example above, the whole image only has values 1, 2, 3 or 4. Since they are always positive and are below 255, we can safely place them in an unsigned 8-bit integer (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) with the command below (note the `uint8` after the operator name, and that we are using a different name for the output). After building the new image, let's have a look at the sizes of the two images with `ls -l`:

```
$ astarithmetic 100 100 2 makenew \
                load-col-1-from-histogram.txt \
                load-col-2-from-histogram.txt \
                random-from-hist-raw uint8 \
                --output=random-u8.fits

$ ls -lh random.fits random-u8.fits
-rw-r--r-- 1 name name 85K Jan 01 13:40 random.fits
-rw-r--r-- 1 name name 17K Jan 01 13:45 random-u8.fits
```

As you see, when using a suitable data type, we can shrink the size of the file significantly without loosing any information (from 85 kilobytes to 17 kilobytes). This difference can be felt much better for larger (real-world) datasets, so be sure to always set the output data type after calling this operator.

`random-from-hist`

Similar to `random-from-hist-raw`, but do not return the exact bin value, instead return a random value from a uniform distribution within each bin. Therefore the following limitations have to be taken into account (compared to `random-from-hist-raw`):

- The number associated with each bin (in the bin column) should be its center.
- The bins have to be in descending order (so the second row in the bin column is larger than the first).
- The bin widths (distance from one bin to another) have to be fixed.

For a demonstration, let's replace `random-from-hist-raw` with `random-from-hist` in the example of the description of `random-from-hist-raw`. Note how we are manually converting the output of this operator into single-precision floating point (32-bit, since the default 64-bit precision is statistically meaningless in this scenario and we do not want to waste storage, memory and running time):

```
$ echo "" | awk '{for(i=1;i<5;++i) print i, i*i}' \
                > histogram.txt

$ astarithmetic 100 100 2 makenew \
                load-col-1-from-histogram.txt \
```

```
                load-col-2-from-histogram.txt \
                random-from-hist float32 \
                --output=random.fits

$ aststatistics random.fits --asciihist --numasciibins=50
 |                                          *
 |                                       *** ********
 |                                       ************
 |                                      *************
 |                             *     * *************
 |                           * ************************
 |                           *************************
 |                           *************************
 |              ************************************
 |********* * ************************************
 |************************************************
 |------------------------------------------------
```

You can see that the pixels of `histogram.fits` are no longer just 1, 2, 3 or 4. Instead, the values within each bin are selected from a uniform distribution covering that bin. This creates the step-like feature in the histogram of the output.

Of course, this extra uniform random number generation can make your program slower so be sure to check if it is worth it. In particular, one way to avoid this (and use `random-from-hist-raw` with a more contiguous-looking output distribution) is to simply use a higher-resolution histogram (assuming it is possible: you have a sufficient number of data points, or you have an analytical expression that you can sample at smaller bin sizes).

To better demonstrate this operator and its practical usage in everyday research, let's look at another example: Assume you want to get 100 random star magnitudes that follow the real-world Gaia Data release 3 magnitude distribution within a radius of 2 degrees around the (RA,Dec) coordinate of (1.23,4.56). Let's further assume that you want to distribute them uniformly over an image of size 1000 by 1000 pixels. So your desired output table should have three columns, the first two are pixel positions of each star, and the third is the magnitude.

First, we need to query the Gaia database and ask for all the magnitudes in this region of the sky. We know that Gaia is not complete for stars fainter than the 20th magnitude, so we will use the `--range` option and only ask for those stars that are brighter than magnitude 20.

```
$ astquery gaia --dataset=dr3 --center=1.23,3.45 --radius=2 \
           --column=phot_g_mean_mag --output=gaia.fits \
           --range=phot_g_mean_mag,-inf,20
```

We now have more than 25000 magnitudes in `gaia.fits`! To get a more accurate random sampling of our stars, let's construct a histogram with 500 bins, and generate our three desired randomly selected columns:

```
$ aststatistics gaia.fits --histogram --numbins=500 \
                --output=gaia-hist.fits

$ asttable gaia-hist.fits -i

$ echo 1000 \
    | awk '{for(i=0;i<100;++i) print $1/2}' \
    | asttable -c'arith $1 500 mknoise-uniform' \
               -c'arith $1 500 mknoise-uniform' \
               -c'arith $1 \
                        load-col-1-from-gaia-hist.fits-hdu-1 \
                        load-col-2-from-gaia-hist.fits-hdu-1 \
                        random-from-hist float32'
```

These columns can easily be placed in the format for Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652, to be inserted into an image automatically.

6.2.4.17 Coordinate and border operators

The operators here help you in defining or manipulating coordinates. For examples to define the "box" (a rectangular region) that surrounds an ellipse or to rotate a point around a reference point.

`rotate-coord`

Rotate the given point (horizontal and vertical coordinates given in 5th and 4th popped operands) around a center/reference point (coordinates given in the 3rd and 2nd popped operands) by a given angle (first popped operand).

For example, if you want to trace the outer edge of a circle centered on (1.23,45.6) with a radius of 0.78, you can use this operator like below. The logic is that we assume a single point that is located on 0.78 units after the center on the horizontal axis (the point's vertical axis position is the same as the center). We then rotate this point in each row by one degree to build the circle's circumference.

```
$ cx=1.23
$ cy=45.6
$ rad=0.78
$ seq 0 360 \
      | awk '{print '$rad'+'$cx', '$cy', $1}' \
      | asttable -c'arith $1 $2 '$cx' '$cy' $3 rotate-coord' \
                 --output=circle.fits

##  Within TOPCAT, after opening "Plane Plot", within "Axes" select
## "Aspect lock" so the steps in both axis is the same.
$ astscript-fits-view circle.fits
```

If you want the points to create a circle on the celestial sphere, you can use the `eq-j2000-from-flat` operator after this one (see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350):

```
$ seq 0 360 \
```

```
| awk '{print '$rad'+'$cx', '$cy', $1}' \
| asttable -c'arith $1 $2 '$cx' '$cy' $3 rotate-coord \
                    '$cx' '$cy' TAN eq-j2000-from-flat' \
                    --output=circle-on-sky.fits
```

When you open TOPCAT, if you open the "Plane Plot", you will see an ellipse. However, if you open "Sky Plot" (from the "Graphics" menu), and select the first and second columns respectively, you will see a circle.

The center coordinates and angle can be fixed for all the rows (as in the example above) or be different for every row. Recall that if you want these to change on every row, you should give the column name (or number followed by `$`) for these operands instead of the constant number above.

`box-around-ellipse`

Return the width (along horizontal) and height (along vertical) of a box that encompasses an ellipse with the same center point. The top-popped operand is assumed to be the position angle (angle from the horizontal axis) in *degrees*. The second and third popped operands are the minor and major radii of the ellipse respectively. This operator outputs two operands on the general stack. The first one is the width and the second (which will be the top one when this operator finishes) is the height.

If the value to the second popped operand (minor axis) is larger than the third (major axis), a NaN value will be written for both the width and height of that element and a warning will be printed (the warning can be disabled with the `--quiet` option).

As an example, if your ellipse has a major axis radius of 10 units, a minor axis radius of 4 units and a position angle of 20 degrees, you can estimate the bounding box with this command:

```
$ echo "10 4 20" \
       | asttable -c'arith $1 $2 $3 box-around-ellipse'
```

Alternatively if your three values are in separate FITS arrays/images, you can use the command below to have the width and height in similarly sized fits arrays. In this example `a.fits` and `b.fits` are respectively the major and minor axis lengths and `pa.fits` is the position angle (in degrees). Also, in all three, we assume the first extension is used. After it is done, the height of the box will be put in `h.fits` and the width will be in `w.fits`. Just note that because this operator has two output datasets, you need to first write the height (top output operand) into a file and free it with the `tofilefree-` operator, then write the width in the file given to `--output`.

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits b.fits pa.fits box-around-ellipse \
                tofilefree-h.fits -ow.fits -g1
```

Finally, if you need to treat the width and height separately for further processing, you can call the `set-` operator two times afterwards like below. Recall that the `set-` operator will pop the top operand, and put it in memory with a certain name, bringing the next operand to the top of the stack.

For example, let's assume `catalog.fits` has at least three columns `MAJOR`, `MINOR` and `PA` which specify the major axis, minor axis and position angle

respectively. But you want the final width and height in 32-bit floating point numbers (not the default 64-bit, which may be too much precision in many scenarios). You can do this with the command below (note you can also break lines with \, within the single-quote environment)

```
$ asttable catalog.fits \
           -c'arith MAJOR MINOR PA box-around-ellipse \
                    set-height set-width \
                    width float32 height float32'
```

`box-vertices-on-sphere`

Convert a box center and width to the coordinates of the vertices of the box on a left-hand spherical coordinate system. In a left-handed spherical coordinate system, the longitude increases towards the left while north is up (as in the RA and Dec direction of the equatorial coordinate system used in astronomy). This operator therefore takes four input operands (the RA and Dec of the box's center, as well as the width of the box in each direction).

After it is complete, this operator places 8 operands on the stack which contain the RA and Dec of the four vertices of the box in the following anti-clockwise order:

1. Bottom-left vertice Longitude (RA)
2. Bottom-left vertice Latitude (Dec)
3. Bottom-right vertice Longitude (RA)
4. Bottom-right vertice Latitude (Dec)
5. Top-right vertice Longitude (RA)
6. Top-right vertice Latitude (Dec)
7. Top-left vertice Longitude (RA)
8. Top-left vertice Latitude (Dec)

For example, with the command below, we will retrieve the vertice coordinates of a rectangle around a point with RA=20 and Dec=0 (on the equator). The rectangle will have a 1 degree edge along the RA direction and a 2 degree edge along the declination. In this example, we are using the `-Afixed -B2` only for demonstration purposes here due to the round numbers! In general, it is best to write your outputs to a binary FITS table to preserve the full precision (see Section 5.3.1 [Printing floating point numbers], page 345).

```
$ echo "20 0 1 2" \
       | asttable -Afixed -B2 \
                  -c'arith $1 $2 $3 $4 box-vertices-on-sphere'
20.50  -1.00  19.50  -1.00  19.50  1.00   20.50  1.00
```

We see that the bottom-left vertice is at (RA,Dec) of $(20.50, -1.0)$ and the top-right vertice is at $(19.50, 1.00)$. These could have easily been done by manually adding and subtracting! But you will see that the complexity arises at higher/lower declinations. For example, with the command below, let's see how vertice coordinates of the same box, but after moving its center to (RA,Dec) of (20,85):

```
$ echo "20 85 1 2" \
```

```
            | asttable -Afixed -B2 \
                       -c'arith $1 $2 $3 $4 box-vertices-on-sphere'
    24.78  84.00  15.22  84.00  12.83  86.00  27.17  86.00
```

Even though, we didn't change the central RA (20) or the size of the box along the RA (1 degree), the RA of the bottom-left vertice is now at 24.78; almost 5 degrees away! This occurs because of the spherical coordinate system, we measure the longitude (e.g., RA) with the following way:

1. Draw a meridian that passes your point. The meridian is half of a great-circle (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_circle`) (which has a diameter that is equal to the sphere's diameter) passes both poles.
2. Find the intersection of that meridian with the equator.
3. The distance of the intersection and the reference point (along the equator) defines the longitude angle.

As you get more distant from the equator (declination becomes non-zero), any change along the RA (towards the east; 1 degree in the example above) will on longer be on a great circle, but along a "small circle (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Circle_of_a_sphere`)". On a small circle that is defined by the fixed declination δ, the distance of two points is closer than the distances of their projection on the equator (as described in the definition of longitude above). It is smaller by a factor of $\cos(\delta)$.

Therefore, an angular change (let's call it Δ_{lon}) along the small circle defined by the fixed declination of δ corresponds to $\Delta_{lon}/\cos(\delta)$ on the equator.

6.2.4.18 Loading external columns

In the Arithmetic program, you can always load new dataset by simply giving their name. However, they can only be images, not a column. In the Table program, you can load columns in Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, but it has to be columns within the same table (and thus the same number of rows). However, in some situations, it is necessary to use certain columns of a table in the Arithmetic program, or columns of different rows (from the main input) in Table.

`load-col-%-from-%`
`load-col-%-from-%-hdu-%`

Load the requested column (first `%`) from the requested file (second `%`). If the file is a FITS file, it is also necessary to specify a HDU using the second form (where the HDU identifier is the third `%`. For example, `load-col-MAG-from-catalog.fits-hdu-1` will load the `MAG` column from HDU 1 of `catalog.fits`.

For example, let's assume you have the following two tables, and you would like to add the first column of the first with the second:

```
$ asttable tab-1.fits
1  43.23
2  21.91
3  71.28
4  18.10
```

```
$ cat tab-2.txt
5
6
7
8

$ asttable tab-1.txt -c'arith $1 load-col-1-from-tab-2.txt +'
6
8
10
12
```

6.2.4.19 Size and position operators

With the operators below you can get metadata about the top dataset on the stack.

`index` Add a new operand to the stack with an integer type and the same size (in all dimensions) as top operand on the stack (before it was called; it is not popped!). The first pixel in the returned operand is zero, and every later pixel's value is incremented by one. It is important to remember that the top operand is not popped by this operand, so it remains on the stack. After this operand is finished, it adds a new operand to the stack. To pop the previous operand, you can use the `indexonly` operator.

The data type of the output is always an unsigned integer, and its width is determined from the number of pixels/rows in the top operand. For example if there are only 108 rows in a table, the returned column will have an unsigned 8-bit integer type (that can keep 256 separate values). But if the top operand is a $1000 \times 1000 = 10^6$ pixel image, the output will be a 32-bit unsigned integer. For the various types of integers, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

To see the index image along with the actual image, you can use the `--writeall` operator to have a multi-HDU output (without `--writeall`, Arithmetic will complain if more than one operand is left at the end). After DS9 opens with the second command, flip between the two extensions.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits index --writeall
$ astscript-fits-view image_arith.fits
```

Below is a review some usage examples of this operator:

Image: masking margins

With the command below, we will be masking all pixels that are 20 pixels away from the edges of the image (on the margin). Here is a description of the command below (for the basics of Arithmetic's notation, see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404):

- The `index` operator just adds a new dataset on the stack: unlike almost all other operators in Arithmetic, `index` doesn't remove its input dataset from the stack (use `indexonly` for the "normal" behavior). This is because `index` returns the pixel metadata not data. As a result, after `index`, we have

two operands on the stack: the input image and the index image.

- With the `set-i` operator, the top operand (the image containing the index of each pixel) is popped from the stack and associated to the name `i`. Therefore after this, the stack only has the input image. For more on the `set-` operator, see Section 6.2.4.21 [Operand storage in memory or a file], page 471.
- We need three values from the commands before Arithmetic (for the width and height of the image and the size of the margin). To make the rest of the command easier to read/use, we'll define them in Arithmetic as three named operators (respectively called `w`, `h` and `m`). All three are integers that will have a positive value lower than $2^{16} = 65536$ (for a "normal" image!). Therefore, we will store them as 16-bit unsigned integers with the `uint16` operator (this will help optimal processing in later steps). For more the type changing operators, see Section 6.2.4.15 [Numerical type conversion operators], page 452.
- Using the modulo `%` and division (`/`) operators on the index image and the width, we extract the horizontal (X) and vertical (Y) positions of each pixel in separately named operands called `X` and `Y`. The maximum value in these two will also fit within an unsigned 16-bit integer, so we'll also store these in that type.
- For the horizontal (X) dimension, we select pixels that are less than the margin (`X m lt`) and those that are more than the width subtracted by the margin (`X w m - gt`).
- The output of the `lt` and `gt` conditional operators above is a binary (0 or 1 valued) image. We therefore merge them into one binary image using the `or` operator. For more, see Section 6.2.4.12 [Conditional operators], page 445.
- We repeat the two steps above for the vertical (Y) dimension.
- Once the images containing the to-be-masked pixels in each dimension are made, we combine them into one binary image with a final `or` operator. At this point, the stack only has two operands: 1) the input image and 2) the binary image that has a value of 1 for all pixels whose value should be changed.
- A single-element operand (`nan`) is added on the stack.
- Using the `where` operator, we replace all the pixels that are non-zero in the second operand (on the margins) to the top operand's value (NaN) in the third popped operand (image that was read from `image.fits`). For more on the `where` operator, see Section 6.2.4.12 [Conditional operators], page 445.

```
$ margin=20
$ width=$(astfits  image.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS1 -q)
$ height=$(astfits image.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS2 -q)
```

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits index       set-i \
                $width     uint16      set-w \
                $height    uint16      set-h \
                $margin    uint16      set-m \
                i w %      uint16      set-X \
                i w /      uint16      set-Y \
                X m lt     X w m - gt     or \
                Y m lt     Y h m - gt     or \
                or nan where
```

Image: Masking regions outside a circle

As another example for usage on an image, in the command below we are using `index` to define an image where each pixel contains the distance to the pixel with X,Y coordinates of 345,250. We are then using that distance image to only keep the pixels that are within a 50 pixel radius of that point.

The basic concept behind this process is very similar to the previous example, with a different mathematical definition for pixels to mask. The major difference is that we want the distance to a pixel within the image, we need to have negative values and the center coordinates can be in a sub-pixel positions. The best numeric datatype for intermediate steps is therefore floating point. 64-bit floating point can have a precision of up to 15 digits after the decimal point. This is far too much for what we need here: in astronomical imaging, the PSF is usually on the scale of 1 or more pixels (see Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491). So even reaching a precision of one millionth of a pixel (offered by 32-bit floating points) is beyond our wildest dreams (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). We will also define the horizontal (X) and vertical (Y) operands after shifting to the desired central point.

```
$ radius=50
$ centerx=345.2
$ centery=250.3
$ width=$(astfits image.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS1 -q)
$ astarithmetic image.fits index set-i \
                $width       uint16    set-w \
                $radius      float32   set-r \
                $centerx     float32   set-cx \
                $centery     float32   set-cy \
                i w % cx -             set-X \
                i w / cy -             set-Y \
                X X x Y Y x + sqrt r gt \
                nan where --output=arith-masked.fits
```

Optimal data types have significant benefits: choosing the minimum required datatype for your operation is very important to avoid wasting your CPU and RAM. Don't simply default to 64-bit floating points for everything! Integer operations are much faster than floating points, and within floating point types, 32-bit is faster and will use half the RAM/storage! For more, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

The example above was just a demo for usage of the `index` operator and some important concepts. But it is not the easiest way to achieve the desired result above! An easier way for the scenario above (to keep a circle within an image and set everything else to NaN) is to use MakeProfiles in combination with Arithmetic, like below:

```
$ radius=50
$ centerx=345.2
$ centery=250.3
$ echo "1 $centerx $centery 5 $radius 0 0 1 1 1" \
       | astmkprof --background=image.fits \
                   --mforflatpix --clearcanvas \
                   -omkprof-mask.fits --type=uint8
$ astarithmetic image.fits mkprof-mask.fits not \
                nan where -g1 -omkprof-masked.fits
```

Tables: adding new columns with row index

Within Table, you can use this operator to add an index column like below (see the `counter` operator for starting the count from one).

```
## The index will be the second column.
$ asttable table.fits -c'arith $1 index'

## The index will be the first column
$ asttable table.fits -c'arith $1 index swap'
```

`indexonly`

Similar to `index`, except that the top operand is popped from the stack and is no longer available afterwards.

`counter` Similar to `index`, except that counting starts from one (not zero as in `index`). Counting from one is usually necessary when adding row counters in tables, like below:

```
$ asttable table.fits -c'arith $1 counter swap'
```

`counteronly`

Similar to `counter`, but the top operand before it is popped (no longer available).

`size` Size of the dataset along a given FITS (or FORTRAN) dimension (counting from 1). The desired dimension should be the first popped operand and the dataset must be the second popped operand. The output will be a single unsigned integer (dimensions cannot be negative). For example, the following command will produce the size of the first extension/HDU (the default HDU) of `a.fits` along the second FITS axis.

```
$ astarithmetic a.fits 2 size
```

Not optimal: This operator reads the top element on the stack and then simply reads its size along the given dimension. On a small dataset this won't consume much RAM, but if you want to put this in a pipeline or use it on large image, the extra RAM and slow operation can become meaningful. To avoid such issues, you can read the size along the given dimension using the `--keyvalue` option of Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304. For example, in the code below, the X axis position of every pixel is returned:

```
$ width=$(astfits image.fits --keyvalue=NAXIS1 -q)
$ astarithmetic image.fits indexonly $width % -opix-x.fits
```

6.2.4.20 New operands

With the operator here, you can create a new dataset from scratch to start certain operations without any input data.

`makenew` Create a new dataset that only has zero values. The number of dimensions is read as the first popped operand and the number of elements along each dimension are the next popped operand (in reverse of the popping order). The type of the new dataset is an unsigned 8-bit integer and all pixel values have a value of zero. For example, if you want to create a new 100 by 200 pixel image, you can run this command:

```
$ astarithmetic 100 200 2 makenew
```

To further extend the example, you can use any of the noise-making operators to add noise to this new dataset (see Section 6.2.4.16 [Random number generators], page 453), like the command below:

```
$ astarithmetic 100 200 2 makenew 5 mknoise-sigma
```

`constant` Return an operand that will have a constant value (first popped operand) in all its elements. The number of elements is read from the second popped operand. The second popped operand is only used for its number of elements, its numeric data type, or its values are fully ignored and it is later freed.

Here is one useful scenario for this operator in tables: you want to merge the objects/rows of some catalogs together, but you first want to give each source catalog a label/counter that distinguishes between the source of each rows in the merged/final catalog (using Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362). The steps below show the the usage of this.

```
## Add label 1 to the RA, Dec, magnitude and magnitude error
```

```
## rows of the first catalog.
$ asttable cat-1.fits -cRA,DEC,MAG,MAG_ERR \
       -c'arith $1 1 constant' --output=tab-1.fits

## Similar to above, but for the second catalog.
$ asttable cat-2.fits -cRA,DEC,MAG,MAG_ERR \
          -c'arith $1 2 constant' --output=tab-2.fits

## Concatenate (merge/blend) the rows of the two tables into
## one for the 5 columns, but also add a counter for each
## object or row in the final catalog.
$ asttable tab-1.fits --catrowfile=tab-2.fits \
          -c'arith $1 counteronly' \
          -cRA,DEC,MAG,MAG_ERR,5 --output=merged.fits \
          --colmetadata=1,ID_MERGED,counter,"Merged ID." \
          --colmetadata=6,SOURCE-CAT,counter,"Source ID."

## Add keyword information on each input. It is very important
## to preserve this within the merged catalog. If the tables
## came from public databases (for example on VizieR), give
## their public identifier as the value.
$ astfits merged.fits --write=/,"Source catalogs" \
         --write=CATSRC1,"I/355/gaiadr3","VizieR ID." \
         --write=CATSRC2,"Jane Doe","Name of source."

## Check the metadata in 'merged.fits' and clean the
## temporary files.
$ rm tab-1.fits tab-2.fits
$ astfits merged.fits -h1
```

Like most operators, `constant` is not limited to tables, you can also apply it on images. In the example below, we'll use `constant` to set all the pixels of the input image to NaN (which is necessary in scenarios that you need to include in an image in an analysis, but you don't want its pixels to affect the processing):

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits nan constant
```

6.2.4.21 Operand storage in memory or a file

In your early days of using Gnuastro, to do multiple operations, it is likely that you will simply call Arithmetic (or Table, with column arithmetic) multiple times: feed the output file of the first call to the second call. But as you get more proficient in the reverse polish notation, you will find yourself combining many operations into one call. This greatly speeds up your operation, because instead of writing the dataset to a file in one command, and reading it in the next command, it will just keep the intermediate dataset in memory!

But adding more complexity to your operations, can make them much harder to debug, or extend even further. Therefore in this section we have some special operators that behave differently from the rest: they do not touch the contents of the data, only where/how they

are stored. They are designed to do complex operations, without necessarily having a complex command.

`swap` Swap the top two operands on the stack. For example the `index` operator doesn't pop with the top operand (the input to `index`), it just adds the index image to the stack. In case you want your next operation to be on the input to `index`, you can simply call `swap` and continue the operations on that image, while keeping the indexed pixels for later steps. In the example below we are using the `--writeall` option to write the full stack and if you open the outputs you will see that the stack order has changed.

```
## Index image is written in HDU 1.
$ astarithmetic image.fits index      --writeall \
                --output=ind-first.fits

## image.fits in HDU 1.
$ astarithmetic image.fits index swap --writeall \
                --output=img-first.fits
```

`repeat` Add N copies of the second popped operand to the stack of operands. N is the first popped operand. For example, let's assume `image.fits` is a 100×100 image. The output of the command below will be a 3D data cube of size $100 \times 100 \times 20$ voxels (volume-pixels):

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits 20 repeat 20 add-dimension-slow
```

`free` Free the top operand from the stack and memory. This is useful in cases where the operator adds more than one operand on the stack. For example operators that do stacking by clipping in Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428; see the examples there for more.

`set-AAA` Set the characters after the dash (`AAA` in the case shown here) as a name for the first popped operand on the stack. The named dataset will be freed from memory as soon as it is no longer needed, or if the name is reset to refer to another dataset later in the command. This operator thus enables reusability of a dataset without having to reread it from a file every time it is necessary during a process. When a dataset is necessary more than once, this operator can thus help simplify reading/writing on the command-line (thus avoiding potential bugs), while also speeding up the processing.

Like all operators, this operator pops the top operand off of the main processing stack, but unlike other operands, it will not add anything back to the stack immediately. It will keep the popped dataset in memory through a separate list of named datasets (not on the main stack). That list will be used to add/copy any requested dataset to the main processing stack when the name is called.

The name to give the popped dataset is part of the operator's name. For example, the `set-a` operator of the command below, gives the name "`a`" to the contents of `image.fits`. This name is then used instead of the actual filename to multiply the dataset by two.

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits set-a a 2 x
```

The name can be any string, but avoid strings ending with standard filename suffixes (for example, `.fits`)[19].

One example of the usefulness of this operator is in the `where` operator. For example, let's assume you want to mask all pixels larger than `5` in `image.fits` (extension number 1) with a NaN value. Without setting a name for the dataset, you have to read the file two times from memory in a command like this:

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits image.fits 5 gt nan where -g1
```

But with this operator you can simply give `image.fits` the name `i` and simplify the command above to the more readable one below (which greatly helps when the filename is long):

```
$ astarithmetic image.fits set-i i i 5 gt nan where
```

`tofile-AAA`

Write the top operand on the operands stack into a file called `AAA` (can be any FITS file name) without changing the operands stack. If you do not need the dataset any more and would like to free it, see the `tofilefree` operator below.

By default, any file that is given to this operator is deleted before Arithmetic actually starts working on the input datasets. The deletion can be deactivated with the `--dontdelete` option (as in all Gnuastro programs, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254). If the same FITS file is given to this operator multiple times, it will contain multiple extensions (in the same order that it was called.

For example, the operator `tofile-check.fits` will write the top operand to `check.fits`. Since it does not modify the operands stack, this operator is very convenient when you want to debug, or understanding, a string of operators and operands given to Arithmetic: simply put `tofile-AAA` anywhere in the process to see what is happening behind the scenes without modifying the overall process.

`tofilefree-AAA`

Similar to the `tofile` operator, with the only difference that the dataset that is written to a file is popped from the operand stack and freed from memory (cannot be used any more).

6.2.5 Invoking Arithmetic

Arithmetic will do pixel to pixel arithmetic operations on the individual pixels of input data and/or numbers. For the full list of operators with explanations, please see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412. Any operand that only has a single element (number, or single pixel FITS image) will be read as a number, the rest of the inputs must have the same dimensions. The general template is:

```
$ astarithmetic [OPTION...] ASTRdata1 [ASTRdata2] OPERATOR ...
```

One line examples:

```
## Calculate (10.32-3.84)^2.7 quietly (will just print 155.329):
```

[19] A dataset name like `a.fits` (which can be set with `set-a.fits`) will cause confusion in the initial parser of Arithmetic. It will assume this name is a FITS file, and if it is used multiple times, Arithmetic will abort, complaining that you have not provided enough HDUs.

```
$ astarithmetic -q 10.32 3.84 - 2.7 pow

## Inverse the input image (1/pixel):
$ astarithmetic 1 image.fits / --out=inverse.fits

## Multiply each pixel in image by -1:
$ astarithmetic image.fits -1 x --out=negative.fits

## Subtract extension 4 from extension 1 (counting from zero):
$ astarithmetic image.fits image.fits - --out=skysub.fits \
                --hdu=1 --hdu=4

## Add two images, then divide them by 2 (2 is read as floating point):
## Note that without the '.0', the '2' will be read/used as an integer.
$ astarithmetic image1.fits image2.fits + 2.0 / --out=average.fits

## Use Arithmetic's average operator:
$ astarithmetic image1.fits image2.fits average --out=average.fits

## Calculate the median of three images in three separate extensions:
$ astarithmetic img1.fits img2.fits img3.fits median \
                -h0 -h1 -h2 --out=median.fits
```

Arithmetic's notation for giving operands to operators is fully described in Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404. The output dataset is last remaining operand on the stack. When the output dataset a single number, and `--output` is not called, it will be printed on the standard output (command-line). When the output is an array, it will be stored as a file.

The name of the final file can be specified with the `--output` option, but if it is not given (and the output dataset has more than one element), Arithmetic will use "automatic output" on the name of the first FITS image encountered to generate an output file name, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. By default, if the output file already exists, it will be deleted before Arithmetic starts operation. However, this can be disabled with the `--dontdelete` option (see below). At any point during Arithmetic's operation, you can also write the top operand on the stack to a file, using the `tofile` or `tofilefree` operators, see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

By default, the world coordinate system (WCS) information of the output dataset will be taken from the first input image (that contains a WCS) on the command-line. This can be modified with the `--wcsfile` and `--wcshdu` options described below. When the `--quiet` option is not given, the name and extension of the dataset used for the output's WCS is printed on the command-line.

Through operators like those starting with `collapse-`, the dimensionality of the inputs may not be the same as the outputs. By default, when the output is 1D, Arithmetic will write it as a table, not an image/array. The format of the output table (plain text or FITS ASCII or binary) can be set with the `--tableformat` option, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254). You can disable this feature (write 1D arrays as FITS

images/arrays, or to the standard output) with the `--onedasimage` or `--onedonstdout` options.

See Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, for a review of the options in all Gnuastro programs. Arithmetic just redefines the `--hdu` and `--dontdelete` options as explained below.

`--arguments=STR`
: A plain-text file containing the command-line arguments that will be used by Arithmetic. This option is only relevant when no arguments are given on the command-line: if any arguments are given, this option is ignored.

  This is necessary when the set of of input files and operators (arguments; see Section 4.1.1 [Arguments and options], page 250) are very long (thousands of long file names for example; usually generated within large pipelines). Such long arguments will cause the shell to abort with an `Argument list too long` error. In such cases, you can put the list into a plain-text file and use this option like below. Here we are assuming you want to coadd all the files in a certain directory with the `mean` operator but after masking outliers; see Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428, and Section 6.2.4.6 [Statistical operators], page 426:

  ```
  $ counter=0
  $ for f in $(pwd)/*.fits; do \
      echo $f; counter=$((counter+1)); \
    done > arguments.txt; \
    echo "$counter 4.5 0.01 madclip-maskfilled $counter mean" \
         >> arguments.txt
  $ astarithmetic --arguments=arguments.txt -g1
  ```

`-h INT/STR`
`--hdu INT/STR`
: The header data unit of the input FITS images, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254. Unlike most options in Gnuastro (which will ultimately only have one value for this option), Arithmetic allows `--hdu` to be called multiple times and the value of each invocation will be stored separately (for the unlimited number of input images you would like to use). Recall that for other programs this (common) option only takes a single value. So in other programs, if you specify it multiple times on the command-line, only the last value will be used and in the configuration files, it will be ignored if it already has a value.

  The order of the values to `--hdu` has to be in the same order as input FITS images. Options are first read from the command-line (from left to right), then top-down in each configuration file, see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271.

  If the number of HDUs is less than the number of input images, Arithmetic will abort and notify you. However, if there are more HDUs than FITS images, there is no problem: they will be used in the given order (every time a FITS image comes up on the stack) and the extra HDUs will be ignored in the end. So there is no problem with having extra HDUs in the configuration files and by

default several HDUs with a value of `0` are kept in the system-wide configuration file when you install Gnuastro.

`-g INT/STR`
`--globalhdu INT/STR`
Use the value to this option as the HDU of all input FITS files. This option is very convenient when you have many input files and the dataset of interest is in the same HDU of all the files. When this option is called, any values given to the `--hdu` option (explained above) are ignored and will not be used.

`-w FITS`
`--wcsfile FITS`
FITS Filename containing the WCS structure that must be written to the output. The HDU/extension should be specified with `--wcshdu`.

When this option is used, the respective WCS will be read before any processing is done on the command-line and directly used in the final output. If the given file does not have any WCS, then the default WCS (first file on the command-line with WCS) will be used in the output.

This option will mostly be used when the default file (first of the set of inputs) is not the one containing your desired WCS. But with this option, you can also use Arithmetic to rewrite/change the WCS of an existing FITS dataset from another file:

```
$ astarithmetic data.fits --wcsfile=other.fits -ofinal.fits
```

`-W STR`
`--wcshdu STR`
HDU/extension to read the WCS within the file given to `--wcsfile`. For more, see the description of `--wcsfile`.

`--envseed`
Use the environment for the random number generator settings in operators that need them (for example, `mknoise-sigma`). This is very important for obtaining reproducible results, for more see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

`--append` If the output file already exists, do not delete it; add the output data to new HDUs at the end of that file. You can use the `--meta*` options below to give a name, unit or comments to this HDUs (to easily distinguish it from other HDUs). When this option is given, the 0th HDU of the existing file will not be updated to add Arithmetic's option values at run-time (because the existing file must already have values there).

`-n STR[,STR,[...]]`
`--metaname=STR[,STR,[...]]`
Metadata (name) of the output dataset(s). Multiple strings can be given (separated by a coma), in multiple calls to this option when you have multiple datasets in the output (and `--writeall` is necessary). For a FITS image or table, the string given to this option is written in the `EXTNAME` or `TTYPE1` keyword (respectively).

In the case of tables, recall that the Arithmetic program only outputs a single column, you should use column arithmetic in Table for more than one column (see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350). If this keyword is present in a FITS extension, it will be printed in the table output of a command like `astfits image.fits` (for images) or `asttable table.fits -i` (for tables). This metadata can be very helpful for yourself in the future (when you have forgotten the details), so it is recommended to use this option for files that should be archived or shared with colleagues.

`-u STR[,STR,[...]]`
`--metaunit=STR[,STR,[...]]`
Metadata (unit) of the output dataset(s). Multiple strings can be given (separated by a coma), in multiple calls to this option when you have multiple datasets in the output (and `--writeall` is necessary). For a FITS image or table, the string given to this option is written in the `BUNIT` or `TTYPE1` keyword respectively. For more on the importance of metadata, see the description of `--metaname`.

`-c STR[,STR,[...]]`
`--metacomment=STR[,STR,[...]]`
Metadata (comments) of the output dataset(s). Multiple strings can be given (separated by a coma), in multiple calls to this option when you have multiple datasets in the output (and `--writeall` is necessary). In case your comment has a coma within it, be sure to quote it with a '\', for example `--metacomment="My comment\, with a coma"`.

For a FITS image or table, the string given to this option is written in the `COMMENT` or `TCOMM1` keyword respectively. For more on the importance of metadata, see the description of `--metaname`.

`-O`
`--onedasimage`
Write final dataset as a FITS image/array even if it has a single dimension. By default, if the output is 1D, it will be written as a table, see above. If the output has more than one dimension, this option is redundant.

`-s`
`--onedonstdout`
Write final dataset (only when it is 1D) to standard output, not as a file. By default 1D datasets will be written as a table, see above. If the output has more than one dimension, this option is redundant.

`-D`
`--dontdelete`
Do not delete the output file, or files given to the `tofile` or `tofilefree` operators, if they already exist. Instead append the desired datasets to the extensions that already exist in the respective file. Note it does not matter if the final output file name is given with the `--output` option, or determined automatically.

Arithmetic treats this option differently from its default operation in other Gnuastro programs (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

If the output file exists, when other Gnuastro programs are called with `--dontdelete`, they simply complain and abort. But when Arithmetic is called with `--dontdelete`, it will appended the dataset(s) to the existing extension(s) in the file.

`-a`
`--writeall`
Write all datasets on the stack as separate HDUs in the output file. This only affects datasets with multiple dimensions (or single-dimension datasets when the `--onedasimg` is called). This option is useful to debug Arithmetic calls: to check all the images on the stack while you are designing your operation. The top dataset on the stack will be on HDU number 1 of the output, the second dataset will be on HDU number 2 and so on.

Arithmetic accepts two kinds of input: images and numbers. Images are considered to be any of the inputs that is a file name of a recognized type (see Section 4.1.1.1 [Arguments], page 251) and has more than one element/pixel. Numbers on the command-line will be read into the smallest type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) that can store them, so `-2` will be read as a `char` type (which is signed on most systems and can thus keep negative values), `2500` will be read as an `unsigned short` (all positive numbers will be read as unsigned), while `3.1415926535897` will be read as a `double` and `3.14` will be read as a `float`. To force a number to be read as float, put a `.` after it (possibly followed by a zero for easier readability), or add an `f` after it. Hence while `5` will be read as an integer, `5.`, `5.0` or `5f` will be added to the stack as `float` (see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404).

Unless otherwise stated (in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412), the operators can deal with numeric multiple data types (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). For example, in "`a.fits b.fits +`", the image types can be `long` and `float`. In such cases, C's internal type conversion will be used. The output type will be set to the higher-ranking type of the two inputs. Unsigned integer types have smaller ranking than their signed counterparts and floating point types have higher ranking than the integer types. So the internal C type conversions done in the example above are equivalent to this piece of C:

```
size_t i;
long a[100];
float b[100], out[100];
for(i=0;i<100;++i) out[i]=a[i]+b[i];
```

Relying on the default C type conversion significantly speeds up the processing and also requires less RAM (when using very large images).

Some operators can only work on integer types (of any length, for example, bitwise operators) while others only work on floating point types, (currently only the `pow` operator). In such cases, if the operand type(s) are different, an error will be printed. Arithmetic also comes with internal type conversion operators which you can use to convert the data into the appropriate type, see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

The hyphen (`-`) can be used both to specify options (see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251) and also to specify a negative number which might be necessary in your arithmetic. In order to enable you to do this, Arithmetic will first parse all the input strings and if the first character after a hyphen is a digit, then that hyphen is temporarily replaced

by the vertical tab character which is not commonly used. The arguments are then parsed and these strings will not be specified as an option. Then the given arguments are parsed and any vertical tabs are replaced back with a hyphen so they can be read as negative numbers. Therefore, as long as the names of the files you want to work on, do not start with a vertical tab followed by a digit, there is no problem. An important consequence of this implementation is that you should not write negative fractions like this: `-.3`, instead write them as `-0.3`.

Without any images, Arithmetic will act like a simple calculator and print the resulting output number on the standard output like the first example above. If you really want such calculator operations on the command-line, AWK (GNU AWK is the most common implementation) is much faster, easier and much more powerful. For example, the numerical one-line example above can be done with the following command. In general AWK is a fantastic tool and GNU AWK has a wonderful manual (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gawk/manual/`). So if you often confront situations like this, or have to work with large text tables/catalogs, be sure to checkout AWK and simplify your life.

```
$ echo "" | awk '{print (10.32-3.84)^2.7}'
155.329
```

6.3 Convolve

On an image, convolution can be thought of as a process to blur or remove the contrast in an image. If you are already familiar with the concept and just want to run Convolve, you can jump to Section 6.3.4 [Convolution kernel], page 497, and Section 6.3.5 [Invoking Convolve], page 498, and skip the lengthy introduction on the basic definitions and concepts of convolution.

There are generally two methods to convolve an image. The first and more intuitive one is in the "spatial domain" or using the actual image pixel values, see Section 6.3.1 [Spatial domain convolution], page 480. The second method is when we manipulate the "frequency domain", or work on the magnitudes of the different frequencies that constitute the image, see Section 6.3.2 [Frequency domain and Fourier operations], page 482. Understanding convolution in the spatial domain is more intuitive and thus recommended if you are just starting to learn about convolution. However, getting a good grasp of the frequency domain is a little more involved and needs some concentration and some mathematical proofs. However, its reward is a faster operation and more importantly a very fundamental understanding of this very important operation.

Convolution of an image will generally result in blurring the image because it mixes pixel values. In other words, if the image has sharp differences in neighboring pixel values[20], those sharp differences will become smoother. This has very good consequences in detection of signal in noise for example. In an actual observed image, the variation in neighboring pixel values due to noise can be very high. But after convolution, those variations will decrease and we have a better hope in detecting the possible underlying signal. Another case where convolution is extensively used is in mock images and modeling in general, convolution can be used to simulate the effect of the atmosphere or the optical system on the mock profiles that we create, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654. Convolution is a

[20] In astronomy, the only major time we confront such sharp borders in signal are cosmic rays. All other sources of signal in an image are already blurred by the atmosphere or the optics of the instrument.

very interesting and important topic in any form of signal analysis (including astronomical observations). So we have thoroughly[21] explained the concepts behind it in the following sub-sections.

6.3.1 Spatial domain convolution

The pixels in an input image represent different "spatial" positions, therefore when convolution is done only using the actual input pixel values, we name the process as being done in the "Spatial domain". In particular this is in contrast to the "frequency domain" that we will discuss later in Section 6.3.2 [Frequency domain and Fourier operations], page 482. In the spatial domain (and in realistic situations where the image and the convolution kernel do not extend to infinity), convolution is the process of changing the value of one pixel to the *weighted* average of all the pixels in its *neighborhood*.

The 'neighborhood' of each pixel (how many pixels in which direction) and the 'weight' function (how much each neighboring pixel should contribute depending on its position) are given through a second image which is known as a "kernel"[22].

6.3.1.1 Convolution process

In convolution, the kernel specifies the weight and positions of the neighbors of each pixel. To find the convolved value of a pixel, the central pixel of the kernel is placed on that pixel. The values of each overlapping pixel in the kernel and image are multiplied by each other and summed for all the kernel pixels. To have one pixel in the center, the sides of the convolution kernel have to be an odd number. This process effectively mixes the pixel values of each pixel with its neighbors, resulting in a blurred image compared to the sharper input image.

Formally, convolution is one kind of linear 'spatial filtering' in image processing texts. If we assume that the kernel has $2a+1$ and $2b+1$ pixels on each side, the convolved value of a pixel placed at x and y ($C_{x,y}$) can be calculated from the neighboring pixel values in the input image (I) and the kernel (K) from

$$C_{x,y} = \sum_{s=-a}^{a} \sum_{t=-b}^{b} K_{s,t} \times I_{x+s,y+t}.$$

Formally, any pixel that is outside of the image in the equation above will be considered to be zero (although, see Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481). When the kernel is symmetric about its center the blurred image has the same orientation as the original image. However, if the kernel is not symmetric, the image will be affected in the opposite manner, this is a natural consequence of the definition of spatial filtering. In order to avoid this we can rotate the kernel about its center by 180 degrees so the convolved output can have the same original orientation (this is done by default in the Convolve program). Technically speaking, only if the kernel is flipped the process is known as *Convolution*. If it is not it is known as *Correlation*.

[21] A mathematician will certainly consider this explanation is incomplete and inaccurate. However this text is written for an understanding on the operations that are done on a real (not complex, discrete and noisy) astronomical image, not any general form of abstract function

[22] Also known as filter, here we will use 'kernel'.

To be a weighted average, the sum of the weights (the pixels in the kernel) has to be unity. This will have the consequence that the convolved image of an object and unconvolved object will have the same brightness (see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585), which is natural, because convolution should not eat up the object photons, it only disperses them.

The convolution of each pixel is independent of the other pixels, and in some cases, it may be necessary to convolve different parts of an image separately (for example, when you have different amplifiers on the CCD). Therefore, to speed up spatial convolution, Gnuastro first defines a tessellation over the input; assigning each group of pixels to "tiles". It then does the convolution in parallel on each tile. For more on how Gnuastro's programs create the tile grid (tessellation), see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290.

6.3.1.2 Edges in the spatial domain

In purely 'linear' spatial filtering (convolution), there are problems with the edges of the input image. Here we will explain the problem in the spatial domain. For a discussion of this problem from the frequency domain perspective, see Section 6.3.2.10 [Edges in the frequency domain], page 496. The problem originates from the fact that on the edges, in practice, the sum of the weights we use on the actual image pixels is not unity[23]. For example, as discussed above, a profile in the center of an image will have the same brightness before and after convolution. However, for partially imaged profile on the edge of the image, the brightness (sum of its pixel fluxes within the image, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585) will not be equal, some of the flux is going to be 'eaten' by the edges.

If you run `$ make check` on the source files of Gnuastro, you can see this effect by comparing the `convolve_frequency.fits` with `convolve_spatial.fits` in the `./tests/` directory. In the spatial domain, by default, no assumption will be made about pixels outside of the image or any blank pixels in the image. The problem explained above will also occur on the sides of blank regions (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). The solution to this edge effect problem is only possible in the spatial domain. For pixels near the edge, we have to abandon the assumption that the sum of the kernel pixels is unity during the convolution process[24]. So taking W as the sum of the kernel pixels that overlapped with non-blank and in-image pixels, the equation in Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480, will become:

$$C_{x,y} = \frac{\sum_{s=-a}^{a}\sum_{t=-b}^{b} K_{s,t} \times I_{x+s,y+t}}{W}.$$

In this manner, objects which are near the edges of the image or blank pixels will also have the same brightness (within the image) before and after convolution. This correction is applied by default in Convolve when convolving in the spatial domain. To disable it, you can use the `--noedgecorrection` option. In the frequency domain, there is no way to avoid this loss of flux near the edges of the image, see Section 6.3.2.10 [Edges in the frequency domain], page 496, for an interpretation from the frequency domain perspective.

[23] Because we assumed the overlapping pixels outside the input image have a value of zero.

[24] Of course the sum of the kernel pixels still have to be unity in general.

Note that the edge effect discussed here is different from the one in Section 8.1.2 [If convolving afterwards], page 658. In making mock images we want to simulate a real observation. In a real observation, the images of the galaxies on the sides of the CCD are first blurred by the atmosphere and instrument, then imaged. So light from the parts of a galaxy which are immediately outside the CCD will affect the parts of the galaxy which are covered by the CCD. Therefore in modeling the observation, we have to convolve an image that is larger than the input image by exactly half of the convolution kernel. We can hence conclude that this correction for the edges is only useful when working on actual observed images (where we do not have any more data on the edges) and not in modeling.

6.3.2 Frequency domain and Fourier operations

Getting a good grip on the frequency domain is usually not an easy job! So we have decided to give the issue a complete review here. Convolution in the frequency domain (see Section 6.3.2.6 [Convolution theorem], page 489) heavily relies on the concepts of Fourier transform (Section 6.3.2.4 [Fourier transform], page 487) and Fourier series (Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485) so we will be investigating these important operations first. It has become something of a cliché for people to say that the Fourier series "is a way to represent a (wave-like) function as the sum of simple sine waves" (from Wikipedia). However, sines themselves are abstract functions, so this statement really adds no extra layer of physical insight.

Before jumping head-first into the equations and proofs, we will begin with a historical background to see how the importance of frequencies actually roots in our ancient desire to see everything in terms of circles. A short review of how the complex plane should be interpreted is then given. Having paved the way with these two basics, we define the Fourier series and subsequently the Fourier transform. The final aim is to explain discrete Fourier transform, however some very important concepts need to be solidified first: The Dirac comb, convolution theorem and sampling theorem. So each of these topics are explained in their own separate sub-sub-section before going on to the discrete Fourier transform. Finally we revisit (after Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481) the problem of convolution on the edges, but this time in the frequency domain. Understanding the sampling theorem and the discrete Fourier transform is very important in order to be able to pull out valuable science from the discrete image pixels. Therefore we have included the mathematical proofs and figures so you can have a clear understanding of these very important concepts.

6.3.2.1 Fourier series historical background

Ever since the ancient times, the circle has been (and still is) the simplest shape for abstract comprehension. All you need is a center point and a radius and you are done. All the points on a circle are at a fixed distance from the center. However, the moment you try to connect this elegantly simple and beautiful abstract construct (the circle) with the real world (for example, compute its area or its circumference), things become really hard (ideally, impossible) because the irrational number π gets involved.

The key to understanding the Fourier series (thus the Fourier transform and finally the Discrete Fourier Transform) is our ancient desire to express everything in terms of circles or the most exceptionally simple and elegant abstract human construct. Most people prefer to say the same thing in a more ahistorical manner: to break a function into sines and cosines.

As the term "ancient" in the previous sentence implies, Jean-Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1768 – 1830 A.D.) was not the first person to do this. The main reason we know this process by his name today is that he came up with an ingenious method to find the necessary coefficients (radius of) and frequencies ("speed" of rotation on) the circles for any generic (integrable) function.

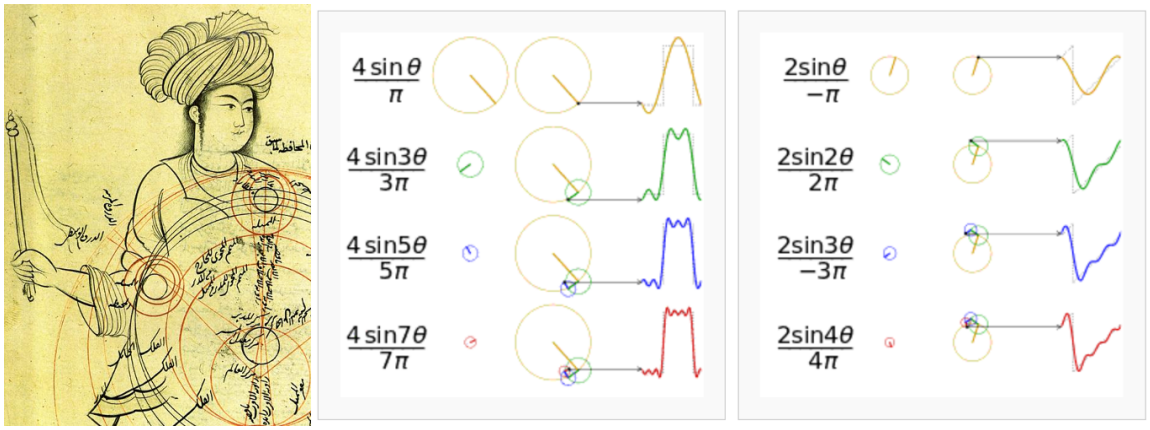


Figure 6.1: Epicycles and the Fourier series. Left: A demonstration of Mercury's epicycles relative to the "center of the world" by Qutb al-Din al-Shirazi (1236 – 1311 A.D.) retrieved from Wikipedia (`https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ghotb2.jpg`). Middle (`https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fourier_series_square_wave_circles_animation.gif`) and Right: How adding more epicycles (or terms in the Fourier series) will approximate functions. The right (`https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fourier_series_sawtooth_wave_circles_animation.gif`) animation is also available.

Like most aspects of mathematics, this process of interpreting everything in terms of circles, began for astronomical purposes. When astronomers noticed that the orbit of Mars and other outer planets, did not appear to be a simple circle (as everything should have been in the heavens). At some point during their orbit, the revolution of these planets would become slower, stop, go back a little (in what is known as the retrograde motion) and then continue going forward again.

The correction proposed by Ptolemy (90 – 168 A.D.) was the most agreed upon. He put the planets on Epicycles or circles whose center itself rotates on a circle whose center is the earth. Eventually, as observations became more and more precise, it was necessary to add more and more epicycles in order to explain the complex motions of the planets[25]. Figure 6.1(Left) shows an example depiction of the epicycles of Mercury in the late 13th century.

Of course we now know that if they had abdicated the Earth from its throne in the center of the heavens and allowed the Sun to take its place, everything would become much simpler and true. But there was not enough observational evidence for changing the "professional

[25] See the Wikipedia page on "Deferent and epicycle" for a more complete historical review.

consensus" of the time to this radical view suggested by a small minority[26]. So the pre-Galilean astronomers chose to keep Earth in the center and find a correction to the models (while keeping the heavens a purely "circular" order).

The main reason we are giving this historical background which might appear off topic is to give historical evidence that while such "approximations" do work and are very useful for pragmatic reasons (like measuring the calendar from the movement of astronomical bodies). They offer no physical insight. The astronomers who were involved with the Ptolemaic world view had to add a huge number of epicycles during the centuries after Ptolemy in order to explain more accurate observations. Finally the death knell of this world-view was Galileo's observations with his new instrument (the telescope). So the physical insight, which is what Astronomers and Physicists are interested in (as opposed to Mathematicians and Engineers who just like proving and optimizing or calculating!) comes from being creative and not limiting ourselves to such approximations. Even when they work.

6.3.2.2 Circles and the complex plane

Before going onto the derivation, it is also useful to review how the complex numbers and their plane relate to the circles we talked about above. The two schematics in the middle and right of Figure 6.1 show how a 1D function of time can be made using the 2D real and imaginary surface. Seeing the animation in Wikipedia will really help in understanding this important concept. At each point in time, we take the vertical coordinate of the point and use it to find the value of the function at that point in time. Figure 6.2 shows this relation with the axes marked.

Leonhard Euler[27] (1707 – 1783 A.D.) showed that the complex exponential (e^{iv} where v is real) is periodic and can be written as: $e^{iv} = \cos v + isinv$. Therefore $e^{iv+2\pi} = e^{iv}$. Later, Caspar Wessel (mathematician and cartographer 1745 – 1818 A.D.) showed how complex numbers can be displayed as vectors on a plane. Euler's identity might seem counter intuitive at first, so we will try to explain it geometrically (for deeper physical insight). On the real-imaginary 2D plane (like the left hand plot in each box of Figure 6.2), multiplying a number by i can be interpreted as rotating the point by 90 degrees (for example, the value 3 on the real axis becomes $3i$ on the imaginary axis). On the other hand, $e \equiv \lim_{n\to\infty}(1+\frac{1}{n})^n$, therefore, defining $m \equiv nu$, we get:

$$e^u = \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(1+\frac{1}{n}\right)^{nu} = \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(1+\frac{u}{nu}\right)^{nu} = \lim_{m\to\infty}\left(1+\frac{u}{m}\right)^{m}$$

Taking $u \equiv iv$ the result can be written as a generic complex number (a function of v):

$$e^{iv} = \lim_{m\to\infty}\left(1+i\frac{v}{m}\right)^{m} = a(v) + ib(v)$$

[26] Aristarchus of Samos (310 – 230 B.C.) appears to be one of the first people to suggest the Sun being in the center of the universe. This approach to science (that the standard model is defined by consensus) and the fact that this consensus might be completely wrong still applies equally well to our models of particle physics and cosmology today.

[27] Other forms of this equation were known before Euler. For example, in 1707 A.D. (the year of Euler's birth) Abraham de Moivre (1667 – 1754 A.D.) showed that $(\cos x + i\sin x)^n = \cos(nx) + i\sin(nx)$. In 1714 A.D., Roger Cotes (1682 – 1716 A.D. a colleague of Newton who proofread the second edition of Principia) showed that: $ix = \ln(\cos x + i\sin x)$.

For $v = \pi$, a nice geometric animation of going to the limit can be seen on Wikipedia (`https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:ExpIPi.gif`). We see that $\lim_{m\to\infty} a(\pi) = -1$, while $\lim_{m\to\infty} b(\pi) = 0$, which gives the famous $e^{i\pi} = -1$ equation. The final value is the real number -1, however the distance of the polygon points traversed as $m \to \infty$ is half the circumference of a circle or π, showing how v in the equation above can be interpreted as an angle in units of radians and therefore how $a(v) = cos(v)$ and $b(v) = sin(v)$.

Since e^{iv} is periodic (let's assume with a period of T), it is more clear to write it as $v \equiv \frac{2\pi n}{T}t$ (where n is an integer), so $e^{iv} = e^{i\frac{2\pi n}{T}t}$. The advantage of this notation is that the period (T) is clearly visible and the frequency ($\frac{2\pi n}{T}$, in units of 1/cycle) is defined through the integer n. In this notation, t is in units of "cycle"s.

As we see from the examples in Figure 6.1 and Figure 6.2, for each constituting frequency, we need a respective 'magnitude' or the radius of the circle in order to accurately approximate the desired 1D function. The concepts of "period" and "frequency" are relatively easy to grasp when using temporal units like time because this is how we define them in every-day life. However, in an image (astronomical data), we are dealing with spatial units like distance. Therefore, by one "period" we mean the *distance* at which the signal is identical and frequency is defined as the inverse of that spatial "period". The complex circle of Figure 6.2 can be thought of the Moon rotating about Earth which is rotating around the Sun; so the "Real (signal)" axis shows the Moon's position as seen by a distant observer on the Sun as time goes by. Because of the scalar (not having any direction or vector) nature of time, Figure 6.2 is easier to understand in units of time. When thinking about spatial units, mentally replace the "Time (sec)" axis with "Distance (meters)". Because length has direction and is a vector, visualizing the rotation of the imaginary circle and the advance along the "Distance (meters)" axis is not as simple as temporal units like time.

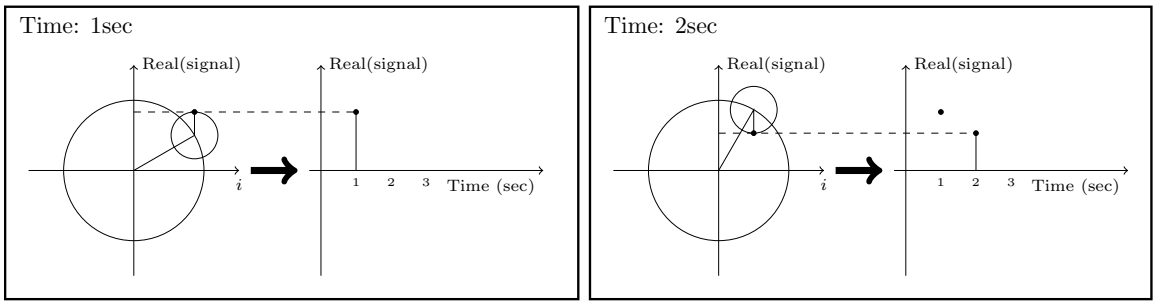


Figure 6.2: Relation between the real (signal), imaginary ($i \equiv \sqrt{-1}$) and time axes at two snapshots of time.

6.3.2.3 Fourier series

In astronomical images, our variable (brightness, or number of photo-electrons, or signal to be more generic) is recorded over the 2D spatial surface of a camera pixel. However to make things easier to understand, here we will assume that the signal is recorded in 1D (assume one row of the 2D image pixels). Also for this section and the next (Section 6.3.2.4 [Fourier transform], page 487) we will be talking about the signal before it is digitized or pixelated. Let's assume that we have the continuous function $f(l)$ which is integrable in the interval $[l_0, l_0 + L]$ (always true in practical cases like images). Take l_0 as the position of the first

pixel in the assumed row of the image and L as the width of the image along that row. The units of l_0 and L can be in any spatial units (for example, meters) or an angular unit (like radians) multiplied by a fixed distance which is more common.

To approximate $f(l)$ over this interval, we need to find a set of frequencies and their corresponding 'magnitude's (see Section 6.3.2.2 [Circles and the complex plane], page 484). Therefore our aim is to show $f(l)$ as the following sum of periodic functions:

$$f(l) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n e^{i\frac{2\pi n}{L}l}$$

Note that the different frequencies ($2\pi n/L$, in units of cycles per meters for example) are not arbitrary. They are all integer multiples of the fundamental frequency of $\omega_0 = 2\pi/L$. Recall that L was the length of the signal we want to model. Therefore, we see that the smallest possible frequency (or the frequency resolution) in the end, depends on the length we observed the signal or L. In the case of each dimension on an image, this is the size of the image in the respective dimension. The frequencies have been defined in this "harmonic" fashion to insure that the final sum is periodic outside of the $[l_0, l_0 + L]$ interval too. At this point, you might be thinking that the sky is not periodic with the same period as my camera's view angle. You are absolutely right! The important thing is that since your camera's observed region is the only region we are "observing" and will be using, the rest of the sky is irrelevant; so we can safely assume the sky is periodic outside of it. However, this working assumption will haunt us later in Section 6.3.2.10 [Edges in the frequency domain], page 496.

The frequencies are thus determined by definition. So all we need to do is to find the coefficients (c_n), or magnitudes, or radii of the circles for each frequency which is identified with the integer n. Fourier's approach was to multiply both sides with a fixed term:

$$f(l)e^{-i\frac{2\pi m}{L}l} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n e^{i\frac{2\pi(n-m)}{L}l}$$

where $m > 0$[28]. We can then integrate both sides over the observation period:

$$\int_{l_0}^{l_0+L} f(l)e^{-i\frac{2\pi m}{L}l}dl = \int_{l_0}^{l_0+L} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n e^{i\frac{2\pi(n-m)}{L}l}dl = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n \int_{l_0}^{l_0+L} e^{i\frac{2\pi(n-m)}{L}l}dl$$

Both n and m are positive integers. Also, we know that a complex exponential is periodic so after one period (L) it comes back to its starting point. Therefore $\int_{l_0}^{l_0+L} e^{2\pi k/L}dl = 0$ for any $k > 0$. However, when $k = 0$, this integral becomes: $\int_{l_0}^{l_0+T} e^0 dt = \int_{l_0}^{l_0+T} dt = T$. Hence since the integral will be zero for all $n{\neq}m$, we get:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n \int_{l_0}^{l_0+T} e^{i\frac{2\pi(n-m)}{L}l}dl = Lc_m$$

[28] We could have assumed $m < 0$ and set the exponential to positive, but this is more clear.

The origin of the axis is fundamentally an arbitrary position. So let's set it to the start of the image such that $l_0 = 0$. So we can find the "magnitude" of the frequency $2\pi m/L$ within $f(l)$ through the relation:

$$c_m = \frac{1}{L}\int_0^L f(l)e^{-i\frac{2\pi m}{L}l}dl$$

6.3.2.4 Fourier transform

In Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485, we had to assume that the function is periodic outside of the desired interval with a period of L. Therefore, assuming that $L \to \infty$ will allow us to work with any function. However, with this approximation, the fundamental frequency (ω_0) or the frequency resolution that we discussed in Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485, will tend to zero: $\omega_0 \to 0$. In the equation to find c_m, every m represented a frequency (multiple of ω_0) and the integration on l removes the dependence of the right side of the equation on l, making it only a function of m or frequency. Let's define the following two variables:

$$\omega \equiv m\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi m}{L}$$

$$F(\omega) \equiv Lc_m$$

The equation to find the coefficients of each frequency in Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485, thus becomes:

$$F(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(l)e^{-i\omega l}dl.$$

The function $F(\omega)$ is thus the *Fourier transform* of $f(l)$ in the frequency domain. So through this transformation, we can find (analyze) the magnitudes of the constituting frequencies or the value in the frequency space[29] of our spatial input function. The great thing is that we can also do the reverse and later synthesize the input function from its Fourier transform. Let's do it: with the approximations above, multiply the right side of the definition of the Fourier Series (Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485) with $1 = L/L = (\omega_0 L)/(2\pi)$:

$$f(l) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} Lc_n e^{\frac{2\pi i n}{L}l}\omega_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{i\omega l}\Delta\omega$$

[29] As we discussed before, this 'magnitude' can be interpreted as the radius of the circle rotating at this frequency in the epicyclic interpretation of the Fourier series, see Figure 6.1 and Figure 6.2.

To find the right most side of this equation, we renamed ω_0 as $\Delta\omega$ because it was our resolution, $2\pi n/L$ was written as ω and finally, Lc_n was written as $F(\omega)$ as we defined above. Now, as $L \to \infty$, $\Delta\omega \to 0$ so we can write:

$$f(l) = \frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)e^{i\omega l}d\omega$$

Together, these two equations provide us with a very powerful set of tools that we can use to process (analyze) and recreate (synthesize) the input signal. Through the first equation, we can break up our input function into its constituent frequencies and analyze it, hence it is also known as *analysis*. Using the second equation, we can synthesize or make the input function from the known frequencies and their magnitudes. Thus it is known as *synthesis*. Here, we symbolize the Fourier transform (analysis) and its inverse (synthesis) of a function $f(l)$ and its Fourier Transform $F(\omega)$ as $\mathcal{F}[f]$ and $\mathcal{F}^{-1}[F]$.

6.3.2.5 Dirac delta and comb

The Dirac δ (delta) function (also known as an impulse) is the way that we convert a continuous function into a discrete one. It is defined to satisfy the following integral:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(l)dl = 1$$

When integrated with another function, it gives that function's value at $l = 0$:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(l)\delta(l)dt = f(0)$$

An impulse positioned at another point (say l_0) is written as $\delta(l - l_0)$:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(l)\delta(l - l_0)dt = f(l_0)$$

The Dirac δ function also operates similarly if we use summations instead of integrals. The Fourier transform of the delta function is:

$$\mathcal{F}[\delta(l)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(l)e^{-i\omega l}dl = e^{-i\omega 0} = 1$$

$$\mathcal{F}[\delta(l - l_0)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(l - l_0)e^{-i\omega l}dl = e^{-i\omega l_0}$$

From the definition of the Dirac δ we can also define a Dirac comb (III_P) or an impulse train with infinite impulses separated by P:

$$\mathrm{III}_P(l) \equiv \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(l - kP)$$

P is chosen to represent "pixel width" later in Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491. Therefore the Dirac comb is periodic with a period of P. We have intentionally used a different name for the period of the Dirac comb compared to the input signal's length of observation that we showed with L in Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485. This difference is highlighted here to avoid confusion later when these two periods are needed together in Section 6.3.2.8 [Discrete Fourier transform], page 493. The Fourier transform of the Dirac comb will be necessary in Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491, so let's derive it. By its definition, it is periodic, with a period of P, so the Fourier coefficients of its Fourier Series (Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485) can be calculated within one period:

$$\text{III}_P = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n e^{i\frac{2\pi n}{P}l}$$

We can now find the c_n from Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485:

$$c_n = \frac{1}{P}\int_{-P/2}^{P/2} \delta(l) e^{-i\frac{2\pi n}{P}l} = \frac{1}{P} \qquad \rightarrow \qquad \text{III}_P = \frac{1}{P}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{i\frac{2\pi n}{P}l}$$

So we can write the Fourier transform of the Dirac comb as:

$$\mathcal{F}[\text{III}_P] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \text{III}_P e^{-i\omega l} dl = \frac{1}{P}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i(\omega-\frac{2\pi n}{P})l} dl = \frac{1}{P}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi n}{P}\right)$$

In the last step, we used the fact that the complex exponential is a periodic function, that n is an integer and that as we defined in Section 6.3.2.4 [Fourier transform], page 487, $\omega \equiv m\omega_0$, where m was an integer. The integral will be zero for any ω that is not equal to $2\pi n/P$, a more complete explanation can be seen in Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485. Therefore, while in the spatial domain the impulses had spacing of P (meters for example), in the frequency space, the spacing between the different impulses are $2\pi/P$ cycles per meters.

6.3.2.6 Convolution theorem

The convolution (shown with the $*$ operator) of the two functions $f(l)$ and $h(l)$ is defined as:

$$c(l) \equiv [f*h](l) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\tau)h(l-\tau)d\tau$$

See Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480, for a more detailed physical (pixel based) interpretation of this definition. The Fourier transform of convolution ($C(\omega)$) can be written as:

$$C(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [f*h](l)e^{-i\omega l}dl = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\tau)\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(l-\tau)e^{-i\omega l}dl\right]d\tau$$

To solve the inner integral, let's define $s \equiv l-\tau$, so that $ds = dl$ and $l = s+\tau$ then the inner integral becomes:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(l-\tau)e^{-i\omega l}dl = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(s)e^{-i\omega(s+\tau)}ds = e^{-i\omega\tau}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(s)e^{-i\omega s}ds = H(\omega)e^{-i\omega\tau}$$

where $H(\omega)$ is the Fourier transform of $h(l)$. Substituting this result for the inner integral above, we get:

$$C(\omega) = H(\omega)\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\tau)e^{-i\omega\tau}d\tau = H(\omega)F(\omega) = F(\omega)H(\omega)$$

where $F(\omega)$ is the Fourier transform of $f(l)$. So multiplying the Fourier transform of two functions individually, we get the Fourier transform of their convolution. The convolution theorem also proves a relation between the convolutions in the frequency space. Let's define:

$$D(\omega) \equiv F(\omega)*H(\omega)$$

Applying the inverse Fourier Transform or synthesis equation (Section 6.3.2.4 [Fourier transform], page 487) to both sides and following the same steps above, we get:

$$d(l) = f(l)h(l)$$

Where $d(l)$ is the inverse Fourier transform of $D(\omega)$. We can therefore re-write the two equations above formally as the convolution theorem:

$$\mathcal{F}[f*h] = \mathcal{F}[f]\mathcal{F}[h]$$

$$\mathcal{F}[fh] = \mathcal{F}[f] * \mathcal{F}[h]$$

Besides its usefulness in blurring an image by convolving it with a given kernel, the convolution theorem also enables us to do another very useful operation in data analysis: to match the blur (or PSF) between two images taken with different telescopes/cameras or under different atmospheric conditions. This process is also known as deconvolution. Let's take $f(l)$ as the image with a narrower PSF (less blurry) and $c(l)$ as the image with a wider PSF which appears more blurred. Also let's take $h(l)$ to represent the kernel that should be convolved with the sharper image to create the more blurry image. Above, we proved

the relation between these three images through the convolution theorem. But there, we assumed that $f(l)$ and $h(l)$ are known (given) and the convolved image is desired.

In deconvolution, we have $f(l)$ –the sharper image– and $f*h(l)$ –the more blurry image– and we want to find the kernel $h(l)$. The solution is a direct result of the convolution theorem:

$$\mathcal{F}[h] = \frac{\mathcal{F}[f*h]}{\mathcal{F}[f]} \qquad \text{or} \qquad h(l) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}\left[\frac{\mathcal{F}[f*h]}{\mathcal{F}[f]}\right]$$

While this works really nice, it has two problems:

- If $\mathcal{F}[f]$ has any zero values, then the inverse Fourier transform will not be a number!
- If there is significant noise in the image, then the high frequencies of the noise are going to significantly reduce the quality of the final result.

A standard solution to both these problems is the Weiner deconvolution algorithm[30].

6.3.2.7 Sampling theorem

Our mathematical functions are continuous, however, our data collecting and measuring tools are discrete. Here we want to give a mathematical formulation for digitizing the continuous mathematical functions so that later, we can retrieve the continuous function from the digitized recorded input. Assuming that we have a continuous function $f(l)$, then we can define $f_s(l)$ as the 'sampled' $f(l)$ through the Dirac comb (see Section 6.3.2.5 [Dirac delta and comb], page 488):

$$f_s(l) = f(l)\text{III}_P = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f(l)\delta(l - nP)$$

The discrete data-element f_k (for example, a pixel in an image), where k is an integer, can thus be represented as:

$$f_k = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_s(l)dl = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(l)\delta(l - kP)dt = f(kP)$$

Note that in practice, our discrete data points are not found in this fashion. Each detector pixel (in an image for example) has an area and averages the signal it receives over that area, not a mathematical point as the Dirac δ function defines. However, as long as the variation in the signal over one detector pixel is not significant, this can be a good approximation. Having put this issue to the side, we can now try to find the relation between the Fourier transforms of the un-sampled $f(l)$ and the sampled $f_s(l)$. For a more clear notation, let's define:

$$F_s(\omega) \equiv \mathcal{F}[f_s]$$

[30] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiener_deconvolution`

$$D(\omega) \equiv \mathcal{F}[\mathrm{III}_P]$$

Then using the Convolution theorem (see Section 6.3.2.6 [Convolution theorem], page 489), $F_s(\omega)$ can be written as:

$$F_s(\omega) = \mathcal{F}[f(l)\mathrm{III}_P] = F(\omega) * D(\omega)$$

Finally, from the definition of convolution and the Fourier transform of the Dirac comb (see Section 6.3.2.5 [Dirac delta and comb], page 488), we get:

$$\begin{aligned} F_s(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) D(\omega - \mu) d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{P} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) \delta\left(\omega - \mu - \frac{2\pi n}{P}\right) d\mu \\ &= \frac{1}{P} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} F\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi n}{P}\right). \end{aligned}$$

$F(\omega)$ was only a simple function, see Figure 6.3(left). However, from the sampled Fourier transform function we see that $F_s(\omega)$ is the superposition of infinite copies of $F(\omega)$ that have been shifted, see Figure 6.3(right). From the equation, it is clear that the shift in each copy is $2\pi/P$.

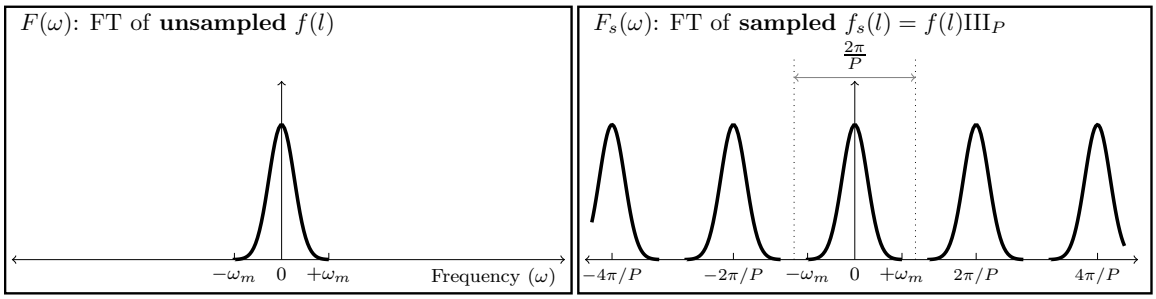


Figure 6.3: Sampling causes infinite repetition in the frequency domain. FT is an abbreviation for 'Fourier transform'. ω_m represents the maximum frequency present in the input. $F(\omega)$ is only symmetric on both sides of 0 when the input is real (not complex). In general $F(\omega)$ is complex and thus cannot be simply plotted like this. Here we have assumed a real Gaussian $f(t)$ which has produced a Gaussian $F(\omega)$.

The input $f(l)$ can have any distribution of frequencies in it. In the example of Figure 6.3(left), the input consisted of a range of frequencies equal to $\Delta\omega = 2\omega_m$. Fortunately as Figure 6.3(right) shows, the assumed pixel size (P) we used to sample this hypothetical function was such that $2\pi/P > \Delta\omega$. The consequence is that each copy of $F(\omega)$ has become completely separate from the surrounding copies. Such a digitized (sampled) data set is thus called *over-sampled*. When $2\pi/P = \Delta\omega$, P is just small enough to finely separate even the largest frequencies in the input signal and thus it is known as *critically-sampled*. Finally

if $2\pi/P < \Delta\omega$ we are dealing with an *under-sampled* data set. In an under-sampled data set, the separate copies of $F(\omega)$ are going to overlap and this will deprive us of recovering high constituent frequencies of $f(l)$. The effects of under-sampling in an image with high rates of change (for example, a brick wall imaged from a distance) can clearly be visually seen and is known as *aliasing*.

When the input $f(l)$ is composed of a finite range of frequencies, $f(l)$ is known as a *band-limited* function. The example in Figure 6.3(left) was a nice demonstration of such a case: for all $\omega < -\omega_m$ or $\omega > \omega_m$, we have $F(\omega) = 0$. Therefore, when the input function is band-limited and our detector's pixels are placed such that we have critically (or over-) sampled it, then we can exactly reproduce the continuous $f(l)$ from the discrete or digitized samples. To do that, we just have to isolate one copy of $F(\omega)$ from the infinite copies and take its inverse Fourier transform.

This ability to exactly reproduce the continuous input from the sampled or digitized data leads us to the *sampling theorem* which connects the inherent property of the continuous signal (its maximum frequency) to that of the detector (the spacing between its pixels). The sampling theorem states that the full (continuous) signal can be recovered when the pixel size (P) and the maximum constituent frequency in the signal (ω_m) have the following relation[31]:

$$\frac{2\pi}{P} > 2\omega_m$$

This relation was first formulated by Harry Nyquist (1889 – 1976 A.D.) in 1928 and formally proved in 1949 by Claude E. Shannon (1916 – 2001 A.D.) in what is now known as the Nyquist-Shannon sampling theorem. In signal processing, the signal is produced (synthesized) by a transmitter and is received and de-coded (analyzed) by a receiver. Therefore producing a band-limited signal is necessary.

In astronomy, we do not produce the shapes of our targets, we are only observers. Galaxies can have any shape and size, therefore ideally, our signal is not band-limited. However, since we are always confined to observing through an aperture, the aperture will cause a point source (for which $\omega_m = \infty$) to be spread over several pixels. This spread is quantitatively known as the point spread function or PSF. This spread does blur the image which is undesirable; however, for this analysis it produces the positive outcome that there will be a finite ω_m. Though we should caution that any detector will have noise which will add lots of very high frequency (ideally infinite) changes between the pixels. However, the coefficients of those noise frequencies are usually exceedingly small.

6.3.2.8 Discrete Fourier transform

As we have stated several times so far, the input image is a digitized, pixelated or discrete array of values ($f_s(l)$, see Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491). The input is not a continuous function. Also, all our numerical calculations can only be done on a sampled, or discrete Fourier transform. Note that $F_s(\omega)$ is not discrete, it is continuous. One way would be to find the analytic $F_s(\omega)$, then sample it at any desired "freq-pixel"[32] spacing. However,

[31] This equation is also shown in some places without the 2π. Whether 2π is included or not depends on how you define the frequency

[32] We are using the made-up word "freq-pixel" so they are not confused with spatial domain "pixels".

this process would involve two steps of operations and computers in particular are not too good at analytic operations for the first step. So here, we will derive a method to directly find the 'freq-pixel'ated $F_s(\omega)$ from the pixelated $f_s(l)$. Let's start with the definition of the Fourier transform (see Section 6.3.2.4 [Fourier transform], page 487):

$$F_s(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_s(l) e^{-i\omega l} dl$$

From the definition of $f_s(\omega)$ (using x instead of n) we get:

$$\begin{aligned} F_s(\omega) &= \sum_{x=-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(l)\delta(l - xP) e^{-i\omega l} dl \\ &= \sum_{x=-\infty}^{\infty} f_x e^{-i\omega x P} \end{aligned}$$

Where f_x is the value of $f(l)$ on the point x or the value of the xth pixel. As shown in Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491, this function is infinitely periodic with a period of $2\pi/P$. So all we need is the values within one period: $0 < \omega < 2\pi/P$, see Figure 6.3. We want X samples within this interval, so the frequency difference between each frequency sample or freq-pixel is $1/XP$. Hence we will evaluate the equation above on the points at:

$$\omega = \frac{u}{XP} \qquad u = 0, 1, 2, ..., X - 1$$

Therefore the value of the freq-pixel u in the frequency domain is:

$$F_u = \sum_{x=0}^{X-1} f_x e^{-i\frac{ux}{X}}$$

Therefore, we see that for each freq-pixel in the frequency domain, we are going to need all the pixels in the spatial domain[33]. If the input (spatial) pixel row is also X pixels wide, then we can exactly recover the xth pixel with the following summation:

$$f_x = \frac{1}{X} \sum_{u=0}^{X-1} F_u e^{i\frac{ux}{X}}$$

When the input pixel row (we are still only working on 1D data) has X pixels, then it is $L = XP$ spatial units wide. L, or the length of the input data was defined in Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485, and P or the space between the pixels in the input was defined in Section 6.3.2.5 [Dirac delta and comb], page 488. As we saw in Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491, the input (spatial) pixel spacing (P) specifies the range of frequencies

[33] So even if one pixel is a blank pixel (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392), all the pixels in the frequency domain will also be blank.

that can be studied and in Section 6.3.2.3 [Fourier series], page 485, we saw that the length of the (spatial) input, (L) determines the resolution (or size of the freq-pixels) in our discrete Fourier transformed image. Both result from the fact that the frequency domain is the inverse of the spatial domain.

6.3.2.9 Fourier operations in two dimensions

Once all the relations in the previous sections have been clearly understood in one dimension, it is very easy to generalize them to two or even more dimensions since each dimension is by definition independent. Previously we defined l as the continuous variable in 1D and the inverse of the period in its direction to be ω. Let's show the second spatial direction with m the inverse of the period in the second dimension with ν. The Fourier transform in 2D (see Section 6.3.2.4 [Fourier transform], page 487) can be written as:

$$F(\omega,\nu)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}f(l,m)e^{-i(\omega l+\nu m)}dl$$

$$f(l,m)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}F(\omega,\nu)e^{i(\omega l+\nu m)}dl$$

The 2D Dirac $\delta(l,m)$ is non-zero only when $l=m=0$. The 2D Dirac comb (or Dirac brush! See Section 6.3.2.5 [Dirac delta and comb], page 488) can be written in units of the 2D Dirac δ. For most image detectors, the sides of a pixel are equal in both dimensions. So P remains unchanged, if a specific device is used which has non-square pixels, then for each dimension a different value should be used.

$$\text{III}_P(l,m)\equiv\sum_{j=-\infty}^{\infty}\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty}\delta(l-jP,m-kP)$$

The Two dimensional Sampling theorem (see Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491) is thus very easily derived as before since the frequencies in each dimension are independent. Let's take ν_m as the maximum frequency along the second dimension. Therefore the two dimensional sampling theorem says that a 2D band-limited function can be recovered when the following conditions hold[34]:

$$\frac{2\pi}{P}>2\omega_m \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{2\pi}{P}>2\nu_m$$

Finally, let's represent the pixel counter on the second dimension in the spatial and frequency domains with y and v respectively. Also let's assume that the input image has Y pixels on the second dimension. Then the two dimensional discrete Fourier transform and its inverse (see Section 6.3.2.8 [Discrete Fourier transform], page 493) can be written as:

[34] If the pixels are not a square, then each dimension has to use the respective pixel size, but since most detectors have square pixels, we assume so here too

$$F_{u,v} = \sum_{x=0}^{X-1} \sum_{y=0}^{Y-1} f_{x,y} e^{-i(\frac{ux}{X} + \frac{vy}{Y})}$$

$$f_{x,y} = \frac{1}{XY} \sum_{u=0}^{X-1} \sum_{v=0}^{Y-1} F_{u,v} e^{i(\frac{ux}{X} + \frac{vy}{Y})}$$

6.3.2.10 Edges in the frequency domain

With a good grasp of the frequency domain, we can revisit the problem of convolution on the image edges, see Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481. When we apply the convolution theorem (see Section 6.3.2.6 [Convolution theorem], page 489) to convolve an image, we first take the discrete Fourier transforms (DFT, Section 6.3.2.8 [Discrete Fourier transform], page 493) of both the input image and the kernel, then we multiply them with each other and then take the inverse DFT to construct the convolved image. Of course, in order to multiply them with each other in the frequency domain, the two images have to be the same size, so let's assume that we pad the kernel (it is usually smaller than the input image) with zero valued pixels in both dimensions so it becomes the same size as the input image before the DFT.

Having multiplied the two DFTs, we now apply the inverse DFT which is where the problem is usually created. If the DFT of the kernel only had values of 1 (unrealistic condition!) then there would be no problem and the inverse DFT of the multiplication would be identical with the input. However in real situations, the kernel's DFT has a maximum of 1 (because the sum of the kernel has to be one, see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480) and decreases something like the hypothetical profile of Figure 6.3. So when multiplied with the input image's DFT, the coefficients or magnitudes (see Section 6.3.2.2 [Circles and the complex plane], page 484) of the smallest frequency (or the sum of the input image pixels) remains unchanged, while the magnitudes of the higher frequencies are significantly reduced.

As we saw in Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491, the Fourier transform of a discrete input will be infinitely repeated. In the final inverse DFT step, the input is in the frequency domain (the multiplied DFT of the input image and the kernel DFT). So the result (our output convolved image) will be infinitely repeated in the spatial domain. In order to accurately reconstruct the input image, we need all the frequencies with the correct magnitudes. However, when the magnitudes of higher frequencies are decreased, longer periods (shorter frequencies) will dominate in the reconstructed pixel values. Therefore, when constructing a pixel on the edge of the image, the newly empowered longer periods will look beyond the input image edges and will find the repeated input image there. So if you convolve an image in this fashion using the convolution theorem, when a bright object exists on one edge of the image, its blurred wings will be present on the other side of the convolved image. This is often termed as circular convolution or cyclic convolution.

So, as long as we are dealing with convolution in the frequency domain, there is nothing we can do about the image edges. The least we can do is to eliminate the ghosts of the other side of the image. So, we add zero valued pixels to both the input image and the kernel in both dimensions so the image that will be convolved has a size equal to the sum of both

images in each dimension. Of course, the effect of this zero-padding is that the sides of the output convolved image will become dark. To put it another way, the edges are going to drain the flux from nearby objects. But at least it is consistent across all the edges of the image and is predictable. In Convolve, you can see the padded images when inspecting the frequency domain convolution steps with the `--viewfreqsteps` option.

6.3.3 Spatial vs. Frequency domain

With the discussions above it might not be clear when to choose the spatial domain and when to choose the frequency domain. Here we will try to list the benefits of each.

The spatial domain,

- Can correct for the edge effects of convolution, see Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481.
- Can operate on blank pixels.
- Can be faster than frequency domain when the kernel is small (in terms of the number of pixels on the sides).

The frequency domain,

- Will be much faster when the image and kernel are both large.

As a general rule of thumb, when working on an image of modeled profiles use the frequency domain and when working on an image of real (observed) objects use the spatial domain (corrected for the edges). The reason is that if you apply a frequency domain convolution to a real image, you are going to loose information on the edges and generally you do not want large kernels. But when you have made the profiles in the image yourself, you can just make a larger input image and crop the central parts to completely remove the edge effect, see Section 8.1.2 [If convolving afterwards], page 658. Also due to oversampling, both the kernels and the images can become very large and the speed boost of frequency domain convolution will significantly improve the processing time, see Section 8.1.1.6 [Oversampling], page 657.

6.3.4 Convolution kernel

All the programs that need convolution will need to be given a convolution kernel file and extension. In most cases (other than Convolve, see Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479) the kernel file name is optional. However, the extension is necessary and must be specified either on the command-line or at least one of the configuration files (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). Within Gnuastro, there are two ways to create a kernel image:

- MakeProfiles: You can use MakeProfiles to create a parametric (based on a radial function) kernel, see Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652. By default MakeProfiles will make the Gaussian and Moffat profiles in a separate file so you can feed it into any of the programs.
- ConvertType: You can write your own desired kernel into a text file table and convert it to a FITS file with ConvertType, see Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316. Just be careful that the kernel has to have an odd number of pixels along its two axes, see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480. All the programs that do convolution will normalize the kernel internally, so if you choose this option, you do not have to worry about normalizing the kernel. Only within Convolve, there is an option to disable normalization, see Section 6.3.5 [Invoking Convolve], page 498.

The two options to specify a kernel file name and its extension are shown below. These are common between all the programs that will do convolution.

`-k FITS`
`--kernel=FITS`
: The convolution kernel file name. The `BITPIX` (data type) value of this file can be any standard type and it does not necessarily have to be normalized. Several operations will be done on the kernel image prior to the program's processing:

  - It will be converted to floating point type.
  - All blank pixels (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392) will be set to zero.
  - It will be normalized so the sum of its pixels equal unity.
  - It will be flipped so the convolved image has the same orientation. This is only relevant if the kernel is not circular. See Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480.

`-U STR`
`--khdu=STR`
: The convolution kernel HDU. Although the kernel file name is optional, before running any of the programs, they need to have a value for `--khdu` even if the default kernel is to be used. So be sure to keep its value in at least one of the configuration files (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). By default, the system configuration file has a value.

6.3.5 Invoking Convolve

Convolve an input dataset (2D image or 1D spectrum for example) with a known kernel, or make the kernel necessary to match two PSFs. The general template for Convolve is:

```
$ astconvolve [OPTION...] ASTRdata
```

One line examples:

```
## Convolve mockimg.fits with psf.fits:
$ astconvolve --kernel=psf.fits mockimg.fits

## Convolve in the spatial domain:
$ astconvolve observedimg.fits --kernel=psf.fits --domain=spatial

## Convolve a 3D cube (only spatial domain is supported in 3D).
## It is also necessary to define 3D tiles and channels for
## parallelization (see the Tessellation section for more).
$ astconvolve cube.fits --kernel=kernel3d.fits --domain=spatial \
              --tilesize=30,30,30 --numchannels=1,1,1

## Find the kernel to convolve with a sharper PSF to become similar
## to a broader PSF (they both have to have the same pixel size).
$ astconvolve --kernel=sharper-psf.fits --makekernel=10 \
              broader-psf.fits
```

```
## Convolve a Spectrum (column 14 in the FITS table below) with a
## custom kernel (the kernel will be normalized internally, so only
## the ratios are important). Sed is used to replace the spaces with
## new line characters so Convolve sees them as values in one column.
$ echo "1 3 10 3 1" | sed 's/ /\n/g' | astconvolve spectra.fits -c14
```

The only argument accepted by Convolve is an input image file. Some of the options are the same between Convolve and some other Gnuastro programs. Therefore, to avoid repetition, they will not be repeated here. For the full list of options shared by all Gnuastro programs, please see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253. In particular, in the spatial domain, on a multi-dimensional datasets, convolve uses Gnuastro's tessellation to speed up the run, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290. Common options related to tessellation are described in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257.

1-dimensional datasets (for example, spectra) are only read as columns within a table (see Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284, for more on how Gnuastro programs read tables). Note that currently 1D convolution is only implemented in the spatial domain and thus kernel-matching is also not supported.

Here we will only explain the options particular to Convolve. Run Convolve with `--help` in order to see the full list of options Convolve accepts, irrespective of where they are explained in this book.

`--kernelcolumn`
: Column containing the 1D kernel. When the input dataset is a 1-dimensional column, and the host table has more than one column, use this option to specify which column should be used.

`--nokernelflip`
: Do not flip the kernel after reading; only for spatial domain convolution. This can be useful if the flipping has already been applied to the kernel. By default, the input kernel is flipped to avoid the output getting flipped; see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480.

`--nokernelnorm`
: Do not normalize the kernel after reading it, such that the sum of its pixels is unity. As described in Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480, the kernel is normalized by default.

`--conv-on-blank`
: Do not ignore blank pixels in the convolution. The output pixels that were originally non-blank are not affected by this option (they will have the same value if this option is called or not). This option just expands/dilates the non-blank regions of your dataset into the blank regions and only works in spatial domain convolution. Therefore, with this option convolution can be used as a proxy for interpolation or dilation.

  By default, blank pixels are ignored during spatial domain convolution; so the input and output have exactly the same number of blank pixels. With this option, the blank pixels that are sufficiently close to non-blank pixels (based on the kernel) will be given a value based on the non-blank elements that overlap with the kernel for that blank pixel (see Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481).

`-d STR`
`--domain=STR`
The domain to use for the convolution. The acceptable values are '`spatial`' and '`frequency`', corresponding to the respective domain.

For large images, the frequency domain process will be more efficient than convolving in the spatial domain. However, the edges of the image will loose some flux (see Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481) and the image must not contain any blank pixels, see Section 6.3.3 [Spatial vs. Frequency domain], page 497.

`--checkfreqsteps`
With this option a file with the initial name of the output file will be created that is suffixed with `_freqsteps.fits`, all the steps done to arrive at the final convolved image are saved as extensions in this file. The extensions in order are:

1. The padded input image. In frequency domain convolution the two images (input and convolved) have to be the same size and both should be padded by zeros.
2. The padded kernel, similar to the above.
3. The Fourier spectrum of the forward Fourier transform of the input image. Note that the Fourier transform is a complex operation (and not view able in one image!) So we either have to show the 'Fourier spectrum' or the 'Phase angle'. For the complex number $a + ib$, the Fourier spectrum is defined as $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ while the phase angle is defined as $\arctan(b/a)$.
4. The Fourier spectrum of the forward Fourier transform of the kernel image.
5. The Fourier spectrum of the multiplied (through complex arithmetic) transformed images.
6. The inverse Fourier transform of the multiplied image. If you open it, you will see that the convolved image is now in the center, not on one side of the image as it started with (in the padded image of the first extension). If you are working on a mock image which originally had pixels of precisely 0.0, you will notice that in those parts that your convolved profile(s) did not convert, the values are now $\sim 10^{-18}$, this is due to floating-point round off errors. Therefore in the final step (when cropping the central parts of the image), we also remove any pixel with a value less than 10^{-17}.

`--noedgecorrection`
Do not correct the edge effect in spatial domain convolution (this correction is done in spatial domain convolution by default). For a full discussion, please see Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481.

`-m INT`
`--makekernel=INT`
If this option is called, Convolve will do PSF-matching: the output will be the kernel that you should convolve with the sharper image to obtain the blurry one (see Section 6.3.2.6 [Convolution theorem], page 489). The two images must have the same size (number of pixels). This option is not yet supported

in 1-dimensional datasets. In effect, it is only necessary to give the two PSFs of your two datasets, find the matching kernel based on that, then apply that kernel to the higher-resolution (sharper image).

The image given to the `--kernel` option is assumed to be the sharper (less blurry) image and the input image (with no option) is assumed to be the more blurry image. The value given to this option will be used as the maximum radius of the kernel. Any pixel in the final kernel that is larger than this distance from the center will be set to zero.

Noise has large frequencies which can make the result less reliable for the higher frequencies of the final result. So all the frequencies which have a spectrum smaller than the value given to the `minsharpspec` option in the sharper input image are set to zero and not divided. This will cause the wings of the final kernel to be flatter than they would ideally be which will make the convolved image result unreliable if it is too high.

There is a complete tutorial in Gnuastro on how to build the (extended) PSF: Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. Since the very extended PSF wings can be subtracted before matching (as described in that tutorial), for PSF-matching, you may not need the full extended PSF. It it is good to validate how large the PSF to match should be, based on the size of the sources you want to study: if it is a large nearby galaxy, you need a larger PSF, but if it is high redshift galxies, only the inner part of the tutorial above is enough.

`-c`
`--minsharpspec`
(`=FLT`) The minimum frequency spectrum (or coefficient, or pixel value in the frequency domain image) to use in deconvolution, see the explanations under the `--makekernel` option for more information.

6.4 Warp

Image warping is the process of mapping the pixels of one image onto a new pixel grid. This process is sometimes known as transformation, however following the discussion of Heckbert 1989[35] we will not be using that term because it can be confused with only pixel value or flux transformations. Here we specifically mean the pixel grid transformation which is better conveyed with 'warp'.

Image warping is a very important step in astronomy, both in observational data analysis and in simulating modeled images. In modeling, warping an image is necessary when we want to apply grid transformations to the initial models, for example, in simulating gravitational lensing. Observational reasons for warping an image are listed below:

- **Noise:** Most scientifically interesting targets are inherently faint (have a very low Signal to noise ratio). Therefore one short exposure is not enough to detect such objects that are drowned deeply in the noise. We need multiple exposures so we can add them together and increase the objects' signal to noise ratio. Keeping the telescope fixed on one field of the sky is practically impossible. Therefore very deep observations have to put into the same grid before adding them.

[35] Paul S. Heckbert. 1989. *Fundamentals of Texture mapping and Image Warping*, Master's thesis at University of California, Berkeley.

- **Resolution:** If we have multiple images of one patch of the sky (hopefully at multiple orientations) we can warp them to the same grid. The multiple orientations will allow us to 'guess' the values of pixels on an output pixel grid that has smaller pixel sizes and thus increase the resolution of the output. This process of merging multiple observations is known as Mosaicing.
- **Cosmic rays:** Cosmic rays can randomly fall on any part of an image. If they collide vertically with the camera, they are going to create a very sharp and bright spot that in most cases can be separated easily[36]. However, depending on the depth of the camera pixels, and the angle that a cosmic rays collides with it, it can cover a line-like larger area on the CCD which makes the detection using their sharp edges very hard and error prone. One of the best methods to remove cosmic rays is to compare multiple images of the same field. To do that, we need all the images to be on the same pixel grid.
- **Optical distortion:** In wide field images, the optical distortion that occurs on the outer parts of the focal plane will make accurate comparison of the objects at various locations impossible. It is therefore necessary to warp the image and correct for those distortions prior to the analysis.
- **Detector not on focal plane:** In some cases (like the Hubble Space Telescope ACS and WFC3 cameras), the CCD might be tilted compared to the focal plane, therefore the recorded CCD pixels have to be projected onto the focal plane before further analysis.

6.4.1 Linear warping basics

Let's take $[\,u \quad v\,]$ as the coordinates of a point in the input image and $[\,x \quad y\,]$ as the coordinates of that same point in the output image[37]. The simplest form of coordinate transformation (or warping) is the scaling of the coordinates, let's assume we want to scale the first axis by M and the second by N, the output coordinates of that point can be calculated by

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} Mu \\ Nv \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} M & 0 \\ 0 & N \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \end{bmatrix}$$

Note that these are matrix multiplications. We thus see that we can represent any such grid warping as a matrix. Another thing we can do with this 2×2 matrix is to rotate the output coordinate around the common center of both coordinates. If the output is rotated anticlockwise by θ degrees from the positive (to the right) horizontal axis, then the warping matrix should become:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} ucos\theta - vsin\theta \\ usin\theta + vcos\theta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} cos\theta & -sin\theta \\ sin\theta & cos\theta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \end{bmatrix}$$

We can also flip the coordinates around the first axis, the second axis and the coordinate center with the following three matrices respectively:

[36] All astronomical targets are blurred with the PSF, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654, however a cosmic ray is not and so it is very sharp (it suddenly stops at one pixel).

[37] These can be any real number, we are not necessarily talking about integer pixels here.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The final thing we can do with this definition of a 2×2 warping matrix is shear. If we want the output to be sheared along the first axis with A and along the second with B, then we can use the matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & A \\ B & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

To have one matrix representing any combination of these steps, you use matrix multiplication, see Section 6.4.2 [Merging multiple warpings], page 504. So any combinations of these transformations can be displayed with one 2×2 matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$$

The transformations above can cover a lot of the needs of most coordinate transformations. However they are limited to mapping the point $[\,0 \quad 0\,]$ to $[\,0 \quad 0\,]$. Therefore they are useless if you want one coordinate to be shifted compared to the other one. They are also space invariant, meaning that all the coordinates in the image will receive the same transformation. In other words, all the pixels in the output image will have the same area if placed over the input image. So transformations which require varying output pixel sizes like projections cannot be applied through this 2×2 matrix either (for example, for the tilted ACS and WFC3 camera detectors on board the Hubble space telescope).

To add these further capabilities, namely translation and projection, we use the homogeneous coordinates. They were defined about 200 years ago by August Ferdinand Möbius (1790 – 1868). For simplicity, we will only discuss points on a 2D plane and avoid the complexities of higher dimensions. We cannot provide a deep mathematical introduction here, interested readers can get a more detailed explanation from Wikipedia[38] and the references therein.

By adding an extra coordinate to a point we can add the flexibility we need. The point $[\,x \quad y\,]$ can be represented as $[\,xZ \quad yZ \quad Z\,]$ in homogeneous coordinates. Therefore multiplying all the coordinates of a point in the homogeneous coordinates with a constant will give the same point. Put another way, the point $[\,x \quad y \quad Z\,]$ corresponds to the point $[\,x/Z \quad y/Z\,]$ on the constant Z plane. Setting $Z = 1$, we get the input image plane, so $[\,u \quad v \quad 1\,]$ corresponds to $[\,u \quad v\,]$. With this definition, the transformations above can be generally written as:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b & 0 \\ c & d & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

[38] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Homogeneous_coordinates`

We thus acquired 4 extra degrees of freedom. By giving non-zero values to the zero valued elements of the last column we can have translation (try the matrix multiplication!). In general, any coordinate transformation that is represented by the matrix below is known as an affine transformation[39]:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We can now consider translation, but the affine transform is still spatially invariant. Giving non-zero values to the other two elements in the matrix above gives us the projective transformation or Homography[40] which is the most general type of transformation with the 3×3 matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

So the output coordinates can be calculated from:

$$x = \frac{x'}{w} = \frac{au + bv + c}{gu + hv + 1} \qquad y = \frac{y'}{w} = \frac{du + ev + f}{gu + hv + 1}$$

Thus with Homography we can change the sizes of the output pixels on the input plane, giving a 'perspective'-like visual impression. This can be quantitatively seen in the two equations above. When $g = h = 0$, the denominator is independent of u or v and thus we have spatial invariance. Homography preserves lines at all orientations. A very useful fact about Homography is that its inverse is also a Homography. These two properties play a very important role in the implementation of this transformation. A short but instructive and illustrated review of affine, projective and also bi-linear mappings is provided in Heckbert 1989[41].

6.4.2 Merging multiple warpings

In Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502, we saw how a basic warp/transformation can be represented with a matrix. To make more complex warpings (for example, to define a translation, rotation and scale as one warp) the individual matrices have to be multiplied through matrix multiplication. However matrix multiplication is not commutative, so the order of the set of matrices you use for the multiplication is going to be very important.

The first warping should be placed as the left-most matrix. The second warping to the right of that and so on. The second transformation is going to occur on the warped coordinates of the first. As an example for merging a few transforms into one matrix, the

[39] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Affine_transformation`

[40] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Homography`

[41] Paul S. Heckbert. 1989. *Fundamentals of Texture mapping and Image Warping*, Master's thesis at University of California, Berkeley. Note that since points are defined as row vectors there, the matrix is the transpose of the one discussed here.

multiplication below represents the rotation of an image about a point $[U \quad V]$ anticlockwise from the horizontal axis by an angle of θ. To do this, first we take the origin to $[U \quad V]$ through translation. Then we rotate the image, then we translate it back to where it was initially. These three operations can be merged in one operation by calculating the matrix multiplication below:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & U \\ 0 & 1 & V \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} cos\theta & -sin\theta & 0 \\ sin\theta & cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -U \\ 0 & 1 & -V \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

6.4.3 Resampling

A digital image is composed of discrete 'picture elements' or 'pixels'. When a real image is created from a camera or detector, each pixel's area is used to store the number of photo-electrons that were created when incident photons collided with that pixel's surface area. This process is called the 'sampling' of a continuous or analog data into digital data.

When we change the pixel grid of an image, or "warp" it, we have to calculate the flux value of each pixel on the new grid based on the old grid, or resample it. Because of the calculation (as opposed to observation), any form of warping on the data is going to degrade the image and mix the original pixel values with each other. So if an analysis can be done on an unwarped data image, it is best to leave the image untouched and pursue the analysis. However as discussed in Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501, this is not possible in some scenarios and re-sampling is necessary.

When the FWHM of the PSF of the camera is much larger than the pixel scale (see Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491) we are sampling the signal in a much higher resolution than the camera can offer. This is usually the case in many applications of image processing (nonastronomical imaging). In such cases, we can consider each pixel to be a point and not an area: the PSF doesn't vary much over a single pixel.

Approximating a pixel's area to a point can significantly speed up the resampling and also the simplicity of the code. Because resampling becomes a problem of interpolation: points of the input grid need to be interpolated at certain other points (over the output grid). To increase the accuracy, you might also sample more than one point from within a pixel giving you more points for a more accurate interpolation in the output grid.

However, interpolation has several problems. The first one is that it will depend on the type of function you want to assume for the interpolation. For example, you can choose a bi-linear or bi-cubic (the 'bi's are for the 2 dimensional nature of the data) interpolation method. For the latter there are various ways to set the constants[42]. Such parametric interpolation functions can fail seriously on the edges of an image, or when there is a sharp change in value (for example, the bleeding saturation of bright stars in astronomical CCDs). They will also need normalization so that the flux of the objects before and after the warping is comparable.

The parametric nature of these methods adds a level of subjectivity to the data (it makes more assumptions through the functions than the data can handle). For most applications this is fine (as discussed above: when the PSF is over-sampled), but in scientific applications

[42] see `http://entropymine.com/imageworsener/bicubic/` for a nice introduction.

where we push our instruments to the limit and the aim is the detection of the faintest possible galaxies or fainter parts of bright galaxies, we cannot afford this loss. Because of these reasons Warp will not use parametric interpolation techniques.

Warp will do interpolation based on "pixel mixing"[43] or "area resampling". This is also similar to what the Hubble Space Telescope pipeline calls "Drizzling"[44]. This technique requires no functions, it is thus non-parametric. It is also the closest we can get (make least assumptions) to what actually happens on the detector pixels.

In pixel mixing, the basic idea is that you reverse-transform each output pixel to find which pixels of the input image it covers, and what fraction of the area of the input pixels are covered by that output pixel. We then multiply each input pixel's value by the fraction of its area that overlaps with the output pixel (between 0 to 1). The output's pixel value is derived by summing all these multiplications for the input pixels that it covers.

Through this process, pixels are treated as an area not as a point (which is how detectors create the image), also the brightness (see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585) of an object will be fully preserved. Since it involves the mixing of the input's pixel values, this pixel mixing method is a form of Section 6.3.1 [Spatial domain convolution], page 480. Therefore, after comparing the input and output, you will notice that the output is slightly smoothed, thus boosting the more diffuse signal, but creating correlated noise. In astronomical imaging the correlated noise will be decreased later when you coadd many exposures[45].

If there are very high spatial-frequency signals in the image (for example, fringes) which vary on a scale *smaller than* your output image pixel size (this is rarely the case in astronomical imaging), pixel mixing can cause ailiasing[46]. Therefore, in case such fringes are present, they have to be calculated and removed separately (which would naturally be done in any astronomical reduction pipeline). Because of the PSF, no astronomical target has a sharp change in their signal. Thus this issue is less important for astronomical applications, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654.

To find the overlap area of the output pixel over the input pixels, we need to define polygons and clip them (find the overlap). Usually, it is sufficient to define a pixel with a four-vertice polygon. However, when a non-linear distortion (for example, `SIP` or `TPV`) is present and the distortion is significant over an output pixel's size (usually far from the reference point), the shadow of the output pixel on the input grid can be curved. To account for such cases (which can only happen when correcting for non-linear distortions), Warp has the `--edgesampling` option to sample the output pixel over more vertices. For more, see the description of this option in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

6.4.4 Invoking Warp

Warp will warp an input image into a new pixel grid by pixel mixing (see Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505). Without any options, Warp will remove any non-linear distortions from the image and align the output pixel coordinates to its WCS coordinates. Any

[43] For a graphic demonstration see `http://entropymine.com/imageworsener/pixelmixing/`.

[44] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Drizzle_(image_processing)`

[45] If you are working on a single exposure image and see pronounced Moiré patterns after Warping, check Section 2.9 [Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction], page 191, for a possible way to reduce them

[46] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aliasing`

homographic warp (for example, scaling, rotation, translation, projection, see Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502) can also be done by calling the relevant option explicitly. The general template for invoking Warp is:

```
$ astwarp [OPTIONS...] InputImage
```

One line examples:

```
## Align image with celestial coordinates and remove any distortion
$ astwarp image.fits

## Align four exposures to same pixel grid and coadd them with
## Arithmetic program's sigma-clipped mean operator (out of many
## coadding operators, see Arithmetic's documentation).
$ grid="--center=1.234,5.678 --width=1001,1001 --widthinpix --cdelt=0.2/3600"
$ astwarp a.fits $grid --output=A.fits
$ astwarp b.fits $grid --output=B.fits
$ astwarp c.fits $grid --output=C.fits
$ astwarp d.fits $grid --output=D.fits
$ astarithmetic A.fits B.fits C.fits D.fits 4 5 0.2 sigclip-mean \
                -g1 --writeall --output=coadd.fits

## Warp a previously created mock image to the same pixel grid as the
## real image (including any distortions).
$ astwarp mock.fits --gridfile=real.fits

## Rotate and then scale input image:
$ astwarp --rotate=37.92 --scale=0.8 image.fits

## Scale, then translate the input image:
$ astwarp --scale 8/3 --translate 2.1 image.fits

## Directly input a custom warping matrix (using fraction):
$ astwarp --matrix=1/5,0,4/10,0,1/5,4/10,0,0,1 image.fits

## Directly input a custom warping matrix, with final numbers:
$ astwarp --matrix="0.7071,-0.7071,  0.7071,0.7071" image.fits
```

If any processing is to be done, Warp needs to be given a 2D FITS image. As in all Gnuastro programs, when an output is not explicitly set with the `--output` option, the output filename will be set automatically based on the operation, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. For the full list of general options to all Gnuastro programs (including Warp), please see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253.

Warp uses pixel mixing to derive the pixel values of the output image, see Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505. To be the most accurate, the input image will be read as a 64-bit double precision floating point dataset and all internal processing is done in this format. Upon writing, by default it will be converted to 32-bit single precision floating point type (actual observational data rarely have such precision!). In case you want a different output type, you can use the `--type` option that is common to several Gnuastro programs. For example, if your input is a mock image without noise, and you want to preserve the 64-bit

precision, use (with `--type=float64`. Just note that the file size will also be double! For more on the precision of various types, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

By default (if no linear operation is requested), Warp will align the pixel grid of the input image to the WCS coordinates it contains. This operation and the the options that govern it are described in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508. You can Warp an input image to the same pixel grid as a reference FITS file using the `--wcsfile` option. In this case, the output image will take all the information needed from the reference WCS file and HDU/extension specified with `--wcshdu`, thus it will discard any other resampling options given.

If you need any custom linear warping (independent of the WCS, see Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502), you need to call the respective operation manually. These are described in Section 6.4.4.2 [Linear warps to be called explicitly], page 514. Please note that you may not use both linear and non-linear modes simultaneously. For example, you cannot scale or rotate the image while removing its non-linear distortions at the same time.

The following options are shared between both modes:

`--hstartwcs=INT`
: Specify the first header keyword number (line) that should be used to read the WCS information, see the full explanation in Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393.

`--hendwcs=INT`
: Specify the last header keyword number (line) that should be used to read the WCS information, see the full explanation in Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393.

`-C FLT`
`--coveredfrac=FLT`
: Depending on the warp, the output pixels that cover pixels on the edge of the input image, or blank pixels in the input image, are not going to be fully covered by input data. With this option, you can specify the acceptable covered fraction of such pixels (any value between 0 and 1). If you only want output pixels that are fully covered by the input image area (and are not blank), then you can set `--coveredfrac=1` (which is the default!). Alternatively, a value of `0` will keep output pixels that are even infinitesimally covered by the input. As a result, with `--coveredfrac=0`, the sum of the pixels in the input and output images will be exactly the same.

6.4.4.1 Align pixels with WCS considering distortions

When none of the linear warps[47] are requested, Warp will align the input's pixel axes with it's WCS axes. In the process, any possibly existing distortion is also removed (such as `TPV` and `SIP`). Usually, the WCS axes are the Right Ascension and Declination in equatorial coordinates. The output image's pixel grid is highly customizable through the options in this section. To learn about Warp's strategy to build the new pixel grid, see Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505. For strong distortions (that produce strong curvatures), you can fine-tune the area-based resampling with `--edgesampling`, as described below.

[47] For linear warps, see Section 6.4.4.2 [Linear warps to be called explicitly], page 514.

On the other hand, sometimes you need to Warp an input image to the exact same grid of an already available reference FITS image with an existing WCS. If that image is already aligned, finding its center, number of pixels and pixel scale can be annoying (and just increase the complexity of your script). On the other hand, if that image is not aligned (for example, has a certain rotation in the sky, and has a different distortion), there are too many WCS parameters to set (some are not yet available explicitly in the options here)! For such scenarios, Warp has the `--gridfile` option. When `--gridfile` is called, the options below that are used to define the output's WCS will be ignored (these options: `--center`, `--widthinpix`, `--cdelt`, `--ctype`). In this case, the output's WCS and pixel grid will exactly match the image given to `--gridfile` (including any rotation, pixel scale, or distortion or projection).

Set `--cdelt` explicitly when you plan to coadd many warped images: To align some images and later coadd them, it is necessary to be sure the pixel sizes of all the images are the same exactly. Most of the time the measured (during astrometry) pixel scale of the separate exposures, will be different in the second or third digit number after the decimal point. It is a normal/statistical error in measuring the astrometry. On a large image, these slight differences can cause different output sizes (of one or two pixels on a very large image).

You can fix this by explicitly setting the pixel scale of each warped exposure with Warp's `--cdelt` option that is described below. For good strategies of setting the pixel scale, see Section 2.9 [Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction], page 191.

Another problem that may arise when aligning images to new pixel grids is the aliasing or visible Moiré patterns on the output image. This artifact should be removed if you are coadding several exposures, especially with a pointing pattern. If not see Section 2.9 [Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction], page 191, for ways to mitigate the visible patterns. See the description of `--gridfile` below for more.

Known issue: Warp's WCS-based aligning works best with WCSLIB version 7.12 (released in September 2022) and above. If you have an older version of WCSLIB, you might get a `wcss2p` error otherwise.

`-c FLT,FLT`
`--center=FLT,FLT`

WCS coordinates of the center of the central pixel of the output image. Since a central pixel is only defined with an odd number of pixels along both dimensions, the output will always have an odd number of pixels. When `--center` or `--gridfile` aren't given, the output will have the same central WCS coordinate as the input.

Usually, the WCS coordinates are Right Ascension and Declination (when the first three characters of `CTYPE1` and `CTYPE2` are respectively `RA-` and `DEC`). For more on the `CTYPEi` keyword values, see `--ctype` below.

`-w INT[,INT]`
`--width=INT[,INT]`
Width and height of the output image in units of WCS (usually degrees). If you want the values to be read as pixels, also call the `--widthinpix` option with `--width`. If a single value is given, Warp will use the same value for the second dimension (creating a square output). When `--width` or `--gridfile` aren't given, Warp will calculate the necessary size of the output pixel grid to fully contain the input image.

Usually the WCS coordinates are in units of degrees (defined by the `CUNITi` keywords of the FITS standard). But entering a certain number of arcseconds or arcminutes for the width can be annoying (you will usually need to go to the calculator!). To simplify such situations, this option also accepts division. For example `--width=1/60,2/60` will make an aligned warp that is 1 arcmin along Right Ascension and 2 arcminutes along the Declination.

With the `--widthinpix` option the values will be interpreted as numbers of pixels. In this scenario, this option should be given *odd* integer(s) that are greater than 1. This ensures that the output image can have a *central* pixel. Recall that through the `--center` option, you specify the WCS coordinate of the center of the central pixel. The central coordinate of an image with an even number of pixels will be on the edge of two pixels, so a "central" pixel is not well defined. If any of the given values are even, Warp will automatically add a single pixel (to make it an odd integer) and print a warning message.

`--widthinpix`
When called, the values given to the `--width` option will be interpreted as the number of pixels along each dimension(s). See the description of `--width` for more.

`-x FLT[,FLT]`
`--cdelt=FLT[,FLT]`
Coordinate deltas or increments (`CDELTi` in the FITS standard), or the pixel scale in both dimensions. If a single value is given, it will be used for both axes. In this way, the output's pixels will be squares on the sky at the reference point (as is usually expected!). When `--cdelt` or `--gridfile` aren't given, Warp will read the input's pixel scale and choose the larger of `CDELT1` or `CDELT2` so the output pixels are square.

Usually (when dealing with RA and Dec, and the `CUNITi`s have a value of `deg`), the units of the given values are degrees/pixel. Warp allows you to easily convert from *arcsec* to *degrees* by simply appending a `/3600` to the value. For example, for an output image of pixel scale `0.27` arcsec/pixel, you can use `--cdelt=0.27/3600`.

`--ctype=STR,STR`
The coordinate types of the output (`CTYPE1` and `CTYPE2` keywords in the FITS standard), separated by a comma. By default the value to this option is '`RA---TAN,DEC--TAN`'. However, if `--gridfile` is given, this option is ignored.

If you don't call `--ctype` or `--gridfile`, the output WCS coordinates will be Right Ascension and Declination, while the output's projection will

be Gnomonic (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gnomonic_projection`), also known as Tangential (TAN). This combination is the most common in extra-galactic imaging surveys. For other coordinates and projections in your output use other values, as described below.

According to the FITS standard version 4.0[48]: `CTYPEi` is the "type for the Intermediate-coordinate Axis i. Any coordinate type that is not covered by this Standard or an officially recognized FITS convention shall be taken to be linear. All non-linear coordinate system names must be expressed in '4–3' form: the first four characters specify the coordinate type, the fifth character is a hyphen (`-`), and the remaining three characters specify an algorithm code for computing the world coordinate value. Coordinate types with names of fewer than four characters are padded on the right with hyphens, and algorithm codes with fewer than three characters are padded on the right with SPACE. Algorithm codes should be three characters" (see list of algorithm codes below).

You can use any of the projection algorithms (last three characters of each coordinate's type) provided by your host WCSLIB (a mandatory dependency of Gnuastro; see Section 3.1.1.3 [WCSLIB], page 214). For a very elaborate and complete description of projection algorithms in the FITS WCS standard, see Calabretta and Greisen 2002 (`https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361:20021327`). Wikipedia also has a nice article on Map projections (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Map_projection`). As an example, WCSLIB 7.12 (released in September 2022) has the following projection algorithms:

`AZP`	Zenithal/azimuthal perspective
`SZP`	Slant zenithal perspective
`TAN`	Gnomonic (tangential)
`STG`	Stereographic
`SIN`	Orthographic/synthesis
`ARC`	Zenithal/azimuthal equidistant
`ZPN`	Zenithal/azimuthal polynomial
`ZEA`	Zenithal/azimuthal equal area
`AIR`	Airy
`CYP`	Cylindrical perspective
`CEA`	Cylindrical equal area
`CAR`	Plate carree
`MER`	Mercator
`SFL`	Sanson-Flamsteed
`PAR`	Parabolic
`MOL`	Mollweide

[48] FITS standard version 4.0: `https://fits.gsfc.nasa.gov/standard40/fits_standard40aa-le.pdf`

`AIT`	Hammer-Aitoff
`COP`	Conic perspective
`COE`	Conic equal area
`COD`	Conic equidistant
`COO`	Conic orthomorphic
`BON`	Bonne
`PCO`	Polyconic
`TSC`	Tangential spherical cube
`CSC`	COBE spherical cube
`QSC`	Quadrilateralized spherical cube
`HPX`	HEALPix
`XPH`	HEALPix polar, aka "butterfly"

`-G`
`--gridfile`

FITS filename containing the final pixel grid and WCS for the output image. The HDU/extension containing should be specified with `--gridhdu` or its short option `-H`. The HDU should contain a WCS, otherwise, Warp will abort with a crash. When this option is used, Warp will read the respective WCS and the size of the image to resample the input. Since this WCS of this HDU contains everything needed to construct the WCS the options above will be ignored when `--gridfile` is called: `--cdelt`, `--center`, and `--widthinpix`.

In the example below, let's use this option to put the image of M51 in one survey (J-PLUS) into the pixel grid of another survey (SDSS) containing M51. The J-PLUS field of view is very large (almost 1.5×1.5 deg^2, in 9500×9500 pixels), while the field of view of SDSS in each filter is small (almost 0.3×0.25 deg^2 in 2048×1489 pixels). With the first two commands, we'll first download the two images, then we'll extract the portion of the J-PLUS image that overlaps with the SDSS image and align it exactly to SDSS's pixel grid. Note that these are the two images that were used in two of Gnuastro's tutorials: Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102, and Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80.

```
## Download the J-PLUS DR2 image of M51 in the r filter.
$ jplusbase="http://archive.cefca.es/catalogues/vo/siap"
$ wget $jplusbase/jplus-dr2/get_fits?id=67510 \
       -O jplus.fits.fz

## Download the SDSS image in r filter and decompress it
## (Bzip2 is not a standard FITS compression algorithm).
$ sdssbase=https://dr12.sdss.org/sas/dr12/boss/photoObj/frames
$ wget $sdssbase/301/3716/6/frame-r-003716-6-0117.fits.bz2 \
       -O sdss.fits.bz2
```

```
$ bunzip2 sdss.fits.bz2

## Warp and crop the J-PLUS image so the output exactly
## matches the SDSS pixel gid.
$ astwarp jplus.fits.fz --gridfile=sdss.fits --gridhdu=0 \
          --output=jplus-on-sdss.fits

## View the two images side-by-side:
$ astscript-fits-view sdss.fits jplus-on-sdss.fits
```

As the example above shows, this option can therefore be very useful when comparing images from multiple surveys. But there are other very interesting use cases also. For example, when you are making a mock dataset and need to add distortion to the image so it matches the distortion of your camera. Through `--gridhdu`, you can easily insert that distortion over the mock image and put the mock image in the pixel grid of an exposure.

`-H`
`--gridhdu`

The HDU/extension of the reference WCS file specified with option `--wcsfile` or its short version `-H` (see the description of `--wcsfile` for more).

`--edgesampling=INT`

Number of extra samplings along the edge of a pixel. By default the value is `0` (the output pixel's polygon over the input will be a quadrilateral (a polygon with four edges/vertices).

Warp uses pixel mixing to derive the output pixel values. For a complete introduction, see Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505, and in particular its later part on distortions. To account for this possible curvature due to distortion, you can use this option. For example, `--edgesampling=1` will add one extra vertice in the middle of each edge of the output pixel, producing an 8-vertice polygon. Similarly, `--edgesampling=5` will put 5 extra vertices along each edge, thus sampling the shape (and possible curvature) of the output pixel over an input pixel with $4+5\times4=24$ vertice polygon. Since the polygon clipping will happen for every output pixel, a higher value to this option can significantly reduce the running speed and increase the RAM usage of Warp; so use it with caution: in most cases the default `--edgesampling=0` is sufficient.

To visually inspect the curvature effect on pixel area of the input image, see option `--pixelareaonwcs` in Section 5.1.1.3 [Pixel information images], page 315.

`--checkmaxfrac`

Check each output pixel's maximum coverage on the input data and append as the '`MAX-FRAC`' HDU/extension to the output aligned image. This option provides an easy visual inspection for possible recurring patterns or fringes caused by aligning to a new pixel grid. For more detail about the origin of these patterns and how to mitigate them see Section 2.9 [Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction], page 191.

Note that the '`MAX-FRAC`' HDU/extension is not showing the patterns themselves; It represents the largest area coverage on the input data for that partic-

ular pixel. The values can be in the range between 0 to 1, where 1 means the pixel is covering at least one complete pixel of the input data. On the other hand, 0 means that the pixel is not covering any pixels of the input at all.

6.4.4.2 Linear warps to be called explicitly

Linear warps include operations like rotation, scaling, sheer, etc. For an introduction, see Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502. These are warps that don't depend on the WCS of the image and should be explicitly requested. To align the input pixel coordinates with the WCS coordinates, see Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

While they will correct any existing WCS based on the warp, they can also operate on images without any WCS. For example, you have a mock image that doesn't (yet!) have its mock WCS, and it has been created on an over-sampled grid and convolved with an over-sampled PSF. In this scenario, you can use the `--scale` option to under-sample it to your desired resolution. This is similar to the Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123, tutorial.

Linear warps must be specified as command-line options, either as (possibly multiple) modular warpings (for example, `--rotate`, or `--scale`), or directly as a single raw matrix (with `--matrix`). If specified together, the latter (direct matrix) will take precedence and all the modular warpings will be ignored. Any number of modular warpings can be specified on the command-line and configuration files. If more than one modular warping is given, all will be merged to create one warping matrix. As described in Section 6.4.2 [Merging multiple warpings], page 504, matrix multiplication is not commutative, so the order of specifying the modular warpings on the command-line, and/or configuration files makes a difference (see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271). The full list of modular warpings and the other options particular to Warp are described below.

The values to the warping options (modular warpings as well as `--matrix`), are a sequence of at least one number. Each number in this sequence is separated from the next by a comma (`,`). Each number can also be written as a single fraction (with a forward-slash `/` between the numerator and denominator). Space and Tab characters are permitted between any two numbers, just do not forget to quote the whole value. Otherwise, the value will not be fully passed onto the option. See the examples above as a demonstration.

Based on the FITS standard, integer values are assigned to the center of a pixel and the coordinate [1.0, 1.0] is the center of the first pixel (bottom left of the image when viewed in SAO DS9). So the coordinate center [0.0, 0.0] is half a pixel away (in each axis) from the bottom left vertex of the first pixel. The resampling that is done in Warp (see Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505) is done on the coordinate axes and thus directly depends on the coordinate center. In some situations this if fine, for example, when rotating/aligning a real image, all the edge pixels will be similarly affected. But in other situations (for example, when scaling an over-sampled mock image to its intended resolution, this is not desired: you want the center of the coordinates to be on the corner of the pixel. In such cases, you can use the `--centeroncorner` option which will shift the center by 0.5 before the main warp, then shift it back by -0.5 after the main warp.

`-r FLT`
`--rotate=FLT`
: Rotate the input image by the given angle in degrees: θ in Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502. Note that commonly, the WCS structure of the image is set such that the RA is the inverse of the image horizontal axis which increases towards the right in the FITS standard and as viewed by SAO DS9. So the default center for rotation is on the right of the image. If you want to rotate about other points, you have to translate the warping center first (with `--translate`) then apply your rotation and then return the center back to the original position (with another call to `--translate`, see Section 6.4.2 [Merging multiple warpings], page 504.

`-s FLT[,FLT]`
`--scale=FLT[,FLT]`
: Scale the input image by the given factor(s): M and N in Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502. If only one value is given, then both image axes will be scaled with the given value. When two values are given (separated by a comma), the first will be used to scale the first axis and the second will be used for the second axis. If you only need to scale one axis, use `1` for the axis you do not need to scale. The value(s) can also be written (on the command-line or in configuration files) as a fraction.

`-f FLT[,FLT]`
`--flip=FLT[,FLT]`
: Flip the input image around the given axis(s). If only one value is given, then both image axes are flipped. When two values are given (separated by acomma), you can choose which axis to flip over. `--flip` only takes values `0` (for no flip), or `1` (for a flip). Hence, if you want to flip by the second axis only, use `--flip=0,1`.

`-e FLT[,FLT]`
`--shear=FLT[,FLT]`
: Shear the input image by the given value(s): A and B in Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502. If only one value is given, then both image axes will be sheared with the given value. When two values are given (separated by a comma), the first will be used to shear the first axis and the second will be used for the second axis. If you only need to shear along one axis, use `0` for the axis that must be untouched. The value(s) can also be written (on the command-line or in configuration files) as a fraction.

`-t FLT[,FLT]`
`--translate=FLT[,FLT]`
: Translate (move the center of coordinates) the input image by the given value(s): c and f in Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502. If only one value is given, then both image axes will be translated by the given value. When two values are given (separated by a comma), the first will be used to translate the first axis and the second will be used for the second axis. If you only need to translate along one axis, use `0` for the axis that must be untouched. The

value(s) can also be written (on the command-line or in configuration files) as a fraction.

`-p FLT[,FLT]`
`--project=FLT[,FLT]`
Apply a projection to the input image by the given values(s): g and h in Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502. If only one value is given, then projection will apply to both axes with the given value. When two values are given (separated by a comma), the first will be used to project the first axis and the second will be used for the second axis. If you only need to project along one axis, use `0` for the axis that must be untouched. The value(s) can also be written (on the command-line or in configuration files) as a fraction.

`-m STR`
`--matrix=STR`
The warp/transformation matrix. All the elements in this matrix must be separated by commas(`,`) characters and as described above, you can also use fractions (a forward-slash between two numbers). The transformation matrix can be either a 2 by 2 (4 numbers), or a 3 by 3 (9 numbers) array. In the former case (if a 2 by 2 matrix is given), then it is put into a 3 by 3 matrix (see Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502).

The determinant of the matrix has to be non-zero and it must not contain any non-number values (for example, infinities or NaNs). The elements of the matrix have to be written row by row. So for the general Homography matrix of Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502, it should be called with `--matrix=a,b,c,d,e,f,g,h,1`.

The raw matrix takes precedence over all the modular warping options listed above, so if it is called with any number of modular warps, the latter are ignored.

`--centeroncorner`
Put the center of coordinates on the corner of the first (bottom-left when viewed in SAO DS9) pixel. This option is applied after the final warping matrix has been finalized: either through modular warpings or the raw matrix. See the explanation above for coordinates in the FITS standard to better understand this option and when it should be used.

`-k`
`--keepwcs`
Do not correct the WCS information of the input image and save it untouched to the output image. By default the WCS (World Coordinate System) information of the input image is going to be corrected in the output image so the objects in the image are at the same WCS coordinates. But in some cases it might be useful to keep it unchanged (for example, to correct alignments).

7 Data analysis

Astronomical datasets (images or tables) contain very valuable information, the tools in this section can help in analyzing, extracting, and quantifying that information. For example, getting general or specific statistics of the dataset (with Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517), detecting signal within a noisy dataset (with Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552), or creating a catalog from an input dataset (with Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582).

7.1 Statistics

The distribution of values in a dataset can provide valuable information about it. For example, in an image, if it is a positively skewed distribution, we can see that there is significant data in the image. If the distribution is roughly symmetric, we can tell that there is no significant data in the image. In a table, when we need to select a sample of objects, it is important to first get a general view of the whole sample.

On the other hand, you might need to know certain statistical parameters of the dataset. For example, if we have run a detection algorithm on an image, and we want to see how accurate it was, one method is to calculate the average of the undetected pixels and see how reasonable it is (if detection is done correctly, the average of undetected pixels should be approximately equal to the background value, see Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528). In a table, you might have calculated the magnitudes of a certain class of objects and want to get some general characteristics of the distribution immediately on the command-line (very fast!), to possibly change some parameters. The Statistics program is designed for such situations.

7.1.1 Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot

Histograms and the cumulative frequency plots are both used to visually study the distribution of a dataset. A histogram shows the number of data points which lie within pre-defined intervals (bins). So on the horizontal axis we have the bin centers and on the vertical, the number of points that are in that bin. You can use it to get a general view of the distribution: which values have been repeated the most? how close/far are the most significant bins? Are there more values in the larger part of the range of the dataset, or in the lower part? Similarly, many very important properties about the dataset can be deduced from a visual inspection of the histogram. In the Statistics program, the histogram can be either output to a table to plot with your favorite plotting program[1], or it can be shown with ASCII characters on the command-line, which is very crude, but good enough for a fast and on-the-go analysis, see the example in Section 7.1.5 [Invoking Statistics], page 534.

The width of the bins is only necessary parameter for a histogram. In the limiting case that the bin-widths tend to zero (while assuming the number of points in the dataset tend to infinity), then the histogram will tend to the probability density function (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Probability_density_function`) of the distribution. When the absolute number of points in each bin is not relevant to the study (only the shape of the histogram is important), you can *normalize* a histogram so like the probability density function, the sum of all its bins will be one.

[1] We recommend PGFPlots (`http://pgfplots.sourceforge.net/`) which generates your plots directly within TEX (the same tool that generates your document).

In the cumulative frequency plot of a distribution, the horizontal axis is the sorted data values and the y axis is the index of each data in the sorted distribution. Unlike a histogram, a cumulative frequency plot does not involve intervals or bins. This makes it less prone to any sort of bias or error that a given bin-width would have on the analysis. When a larger number of the data points have roughly the same value, then the cumulative frequency plot will become steep in that vicinity. This occurs because on the horizontal axis, there is little change while on the vertical axis, the indexes constantly increase. Normalizing a cumulative frequency plot means to divide each index (y axis) by the total number of data points (or the last value).

Unlike the histogram which has a limited number of bins, ideally the cumulative frequency plot should have one point for every data element. Even in small datasets (for example, a 200×200 image) this will result in an unreasonably large number of points to plot (40000)! As a result, for practical reasons, it is common to only store its value on a certain number of points (intervals) in the input range rather than the whole dataset, so you should determine the number of bins you want when asking for a cumulative frequency plot. In Gnuastro (and thus the Statistics program), the number reported for each bin is the total number of data points until the larger interval value for that bin. You can see an example histogram and cumulative frequency plot of a single dataset under the `--asciihist` and `--asciicfp` options of Section 7.1.5 [Invoking Statistics], page 534.

So as a summary, both the histogram and cumulative frequency plot in Statistics will work with bins. Within each bin/interval, the lower value is considered to be within then bin (it is inclusive), but its larger value is not (it is exclusive). Formally, an interval/bin between a and b is represented by [a, b). When the over-all range of the dataset is specified (with the `--greaterequal`, `--lessthan`, or `--qrange` options), the acceptable values of the dataset are also defined with a similar inclusive-exclusive manner. But when the range is determined from the actual dataset (none of these options is called), the last element in the dataset is included in the last bin's count.

7.1.2 2D Histograms

In Section 7.1.1 [Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot], page 517, the concept of histograms were introduced on a single dataset. But they are only useful for viewing the distribution of a single variable (column in a table). In many contexts, the distribution of two variables in relation to each other may be of interest. For example, the color-magnitude diagrams in astronomy, where the horizontal axis is the luminosity or magnitude of an object, and the vertical axis is the color. Scatter plots are useful to see these relations between the objects of interest when the number of the objects is small.

As the density of points in the scatter plot increases, the points will fall over each other and just make a large connected region hide potentially interesting behaviors/correlations in the densest regions. This is where 2D histograms can become very useful. A 2D histogram is composed of 2D bins (boxes or pixels), just as a 1D histogram consists of 1D bins (lines). The number of points falling within each box/pixel will then be the value of that box. Added with a color-bar, you can now clearly see the distribution independent of the density of points (for example, you can even visualize it in log-scale if you want).

Gnuastro's Statistics program has the `--histogram2d` option for this task. It takes a single argument (either `table` or `image`) that specifies the format of the output 2D histogram. The two formats will be reviewed separately in the sub-sections below. But

let's start with the generalities that are common to both (related to the input, not the output).

You can specify the two columns to be shown using the `--column` (or `-c`) option. So if you want to plot the color-magnitude diagram from a table with the `MAG-R` column on the horizontal and `COLOR-G-R` on the vertical column, you can use `--column=MAG-r,COLOR-G-r`. The number of bins along each dimension can be set with `--numbins` (for first input column) and `--numbins2` (for second input column).

Without specifying any range, the full range of values will be used in each dimension. If you only want to focus on a certain interval of the values in the columns in any dimension you can use the `--greaterequal` and `--lessthan` options to limit the values along the first/horizontal dimension and `--greaterequal2` and `--lessthan2` options for the second/vertical dimension.

7.1.2.1 2D histogram as a table for plotting

When called with the `--histogram=table` option, Statistics will output a table file with three columns that have the information of every box as a column. If you asked for `--numbins=N` and `--numbins2=M`, all three columns will have $M \times N$ rows (one row for every box/pixel of the 2D histogram). The first and second columns are the position of the box along the first and second dimensions. The third column has the number of input points that fall within that box/pixel.

For example, you can make high-quality plots within your paper (using the same LaTeX engine, thus blending very nicely with your text) using PGFPlots (`https://ctan.org/pkg/pgfplots`). Below you can see one such minimal example, using your favorite text editor, save it into a file, make the two small corrections in it, then run the commands shown at the top. This assumes that you have LaTeX installed, if not the steps to install a minimally sufficient LaTeX package on your system, see the respective section in Section 3.1.3 [Bootstrapping dependencies], page 218.

The two parts that need to be corrected are marked with '`%% <--`': the first one (`XXXXXXXXX`) should be replaced by the value to the `--numbins` option which is the number of bins along the first dimension. The second one (`FILE.txt`) should be replaced with the name of the file generated by Statistics.

```
%% Replace 'XXXXXXXXX' with your selected number of bins in the first
%% dimension.
%%
%% Then run these commands to build the plot in a LaTeX command.
%%    mkdir tikz
%%    pdflatex --shell-escape --halt-on-error report.tex
\documentclass{article}

%% Load PGFPlots and set it to build the figure separately in a 'tikz'
%% directory (which has to exist before LaTeX is run). This
%% "externalization" is very useful to include the commands of multiple
%% plots in the middle of your paper/report, but also have the plots
%% separately to use in slides or other scenarios.
\usepackage{pgfplots}
\usetikzlibrary{external}
```

```
\tikzexternalize
\tikzsetexternalprefix{tikz/}

%% Define colormap for the PGFPlots 2D histogram
\pgfplotsset{
 /pgfplots/colormap={hsvwhitestart}{
   rgb255(0cm)=(255,255,255)
   rgb255(0.10cm)=(128,0,128)
   rgb255(0.5cm)=(0,0,230)
   rgb255(1.cm)=(0,255,255)
   rgb255(2.5cm)=(0,255,0)
   rgb255(3.5cm)=(255,255,0)
   rgb255(6cm)=(255,0,0)
 }
}

%% Start the prinable document
\begin{document}

  You can write a full paper here and include many figures!
  Describe what the two axes are, and how you measured them.
  Also, do not forget to explain what it shows and how to interpret it.
  You also have separate PDFs for every figure in the `tikz' directory.
  Feel free to change this text.

  %% Draw the plot.
  \begin{tikzpicture}
    \small
    \begin{axis}[
      width=\linewidth,
      view={0}{90},
      colorbar horizontal,
      xlabel=X axis,
      ylabel=Y axis,
      ylabel shift=-0.1cm,
      colorbar style={at={(0,1.01)}, anchor=south west,
                      xticklabel pos=upper},
    ]
      \addplot3[
        surf,
        shader=flat corner,
        mesh/ordering=rowwise,
        mesh/cols=XXXXXXXXX,     %% <-- Number of bins in 1st column.
      ] file {FILE.txt};         %% <-- Name of aststatistics output.

  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
```

```
%% End the printable document.
\end{document}
```

Let's assume you have put the LaTeX source above, into a plain-text file called `report.tex`. The PGFPlots call above is configured to build the plots as separate PDF files in a `tikz/` directory[2]. This allows you to directly load those PDFs in your slides or other reports. Therefore, before building the PDF report, you should first make a `tikz/` directory:

```
$ mkdir tikz
```

To build the final PDF, you should run `pdflatex` with the `--shell-escape` option, so it can build the separate PDF(s) separately. We are also adding the `--halt-on-error` so it immediately aborts in the case of an error (in the case of an error, by default LaTeX will not abort, it will stop and ask for your input to temporarily change things and try fixing the error, but it has a special interface which can be hard to master).

```
$ pdflatex --shell-escape --halt-on-error report.tex
```

You can now open `report.pdf` to see your very high quality 2D histogram within your text. And if you need the plots separately (for example, for slides), you can take the PDF inside the `tikz/` directory.

7.1.2.2 2D histogram as an image

When called with the `--histogram=image` option, Statistics will output a FITS file with an image/array extension. If you asked for `--numbins=N` and `--numbins2=M` the image will have a size of $N \times M$ pixels (one pixel per 2D bin). Also, the FITS image will have a linear WCS that is scaled to the 2D bin size along each dimension. So when you hover your mouse over any part of the image with a FITS viewer (for example, SAO DS9), besides the number of points in each pixel, you can directly also see "coordinates" of the pixels along the two axes. You can also use the optimized and fast FITS viewer features for many aspects of visually inspecting the distributions (which we will not go into further).

For example, let's assume you want to derive the color-magnitude diagram (CMD) of the UVUDF survey (`http://uvudf.ipac.caltech.edu`). You can run the first command below to download the table with magnitudes of objects in many filters and run the second command to see general column metadata after it is downloaded.

```
$ wget http://asd.gsfc.nasa.gov/UVUDF/uvudf_rafelski_2015.fits.gz
$ asttable uvudf_rafelski_2015.fits.gz -i
```

Let's assume you want to find the color to be between the `F606W` and `F775W` filters (roughly corresponding to the g and r filters in ground-based imaging). However, the original table does not have color columns (there would be too many combinations!). Therefore you can use the Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, feature of Gnuastro's Table program for deriving a new table with the `F775W` magnitude in one column and the difference between the `F606W` and `F775W` on the other column. With the second command, you can see the actual values if you like.

```
$ asttable uvudf_rafelski_2015.fits.gz -cMAG_F775W \
           -c'arith MAG_F606W MAG_F775W -' \
```

[2] TiKZ (`https://www.ctan.org/pkg/pgf`) is the name of the lower-level engine behind PGPlots.

```
            --colmetadata=ARITH_1,F606W-F775W,"AB mag" -ocmd.fits
$ asttable cmd.fits
```

You can now construct your 2D histogram as a 100×100 pixel FITS image with this command (assuming you want `F775W` magnitudes between 22 and 30, colors between -1 and 3 and 100 bins in each dimension). Note that without the `--manualbinrange` option the range of each axis will be determined by the values within the columns (which may be larger or smaller than your desired large).

```
aststatistics cmd.fits -cMAG_F775W,F606W-F775W --histogram2d=image \
              --numbins=100  --greaterequal=22  --lessthan=30 \
              --numbins2=100 --greaterequal2=-1 --lessthan2=3 \
              --manualbinrange --output=cmd-2d-hist.fits
```

If you have SAO DS9, you can now open this FITS file as a normal FITS image, for example, with the command below. Try hovering/zooming over the pixels: not only will you see the number of objects in the UVUDF catalog that fall in each bin, but you also see the `F775W` magnitude and color of that pixel also.

```
$ ds9 cmd-2d-hist.fits -cmap sls -zoom to fit
```

With the first command below, you can activate the grid feature of DS9 to actually see the coordinate grid, as well as values on each line. With the second command, DS9 will even read the labels of the axes and use them to generate an almost publication-ready plot.

```
$ ds9 cmd-2d-hist.fits -cmap sls -zoom to fit -grid yes
$ ds9 cmd-2d-hist.fits -cmap sls -zoom to fit -grid yes \
      -grid type publication
```

If you are happy with the grid, coloring and the rest, you can also use ds9 to save this as a JPEG image to directly use in your documents/slides with these extra DS9 options (DS9 will write the image to `cmd-2d.jpeg` and quit immediately afterwards):

```
$ ds9 cmd-2d-hist.fits -cmap sls -zoom 4 -grid yes \
      -grid type publication -saveimage cmd-2d.jpeg -quit
```

This is good for a fast progress update. But for your paper or more official report, you want to show something with higher quality. For that, you can use the PGFPlots package in LaTeX to add axes in the same font as your text, sharp grids and many other elegant/powerful features (like over-plotting interesting points and lines). But to load the 2D histogram into PGFPlots first you need to convert the FITS image into a more standard format, for example, PDF. We will use Gnuastro's Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316, for this, and use the `sls-inverse` color map (which will map the pixels with a value of zero to white):

```
$ astconvertt cmd-2d-hist.fits --colormap=sls-inverse \
              --borderwidth=0 -ocmd-2d-hist.pdf
```

Below you can see a minimally working example of how to add axis numbers, labels and a grid to the PDF generated above. Copy and paste the LaTeX code below into a plain-text file called `cmd-report.tex` Notice the `xmin`, `xmax`, `ymin`, `ymax` values and how they are the same as the range specified above.

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pgfplots}
\dimendef\prevdepth=0
```

```
\begin{document}

You can write all you want here...

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{axis}[
      enlargelimits=false,
      grid,
      axis on top,
      width=\linewidth,
      height=\linewidth,
      xlabel={Magnitude (F775W)},
      ylabel={Color (F606W-F775W)}]

    \addplot graphics[xmin=22, xmax=30, ymin=-1, ymax=3]
             {cmd-2d-hist.pdf};
  \end{axis}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{document}
```

Run this command to build your PDF (assuming you have LaTeX and PGFPlots).

```
$ pdflatex cmd-report.tex
```

The improved quality, blending in with the text, vector-graphics resolution and other features make this plot pleasing to the eye, and let your readers focus on the main point of your scientific argument. PGFPlots can also built the PDF of the plot separately from the rest of the paper/report, see Section 7.1.2.1 [2D histogram as a table for plotting], page 519, for the necessary changes in the preamble.

7.1.3 Least squares fitting

After completing a good observation, doing robust data reduction and finalizing the measurements, it is commonly necessary to parameterize the derived correlations. For example, you have derived the radial profile of the PSF of your image (see Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102). You now want to parameterize the radial profile to estimate the slope. Alternatively, you may have found the star formation rate and stellar mass of your sample of galaxies. Now, you want to derive the star formation main sequence as a parametric relation between the two. The fitting functions below can be used for such purposes.

Gnuastro's least squares fitting features are just wrappers over the least squares fitting methods of the linear (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html`) and nonlinear (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/nls.html`) least-squares fitting functions of the GNU Scientific Library (GSL). For the low-level details and equations of the methods, please see the GSL documentation. The names have been preserved here in Gnuastro to simplify the connection with GSL and follow the details in the detailed documentation there.

GSL is a very low-level library, designed for maximal portability to many scenarios, and power. Therefore calling GSL's functions directly for a fast operation requires a good knowledge of the C programming language and many lines of code. As a low-level library,

GSL is designed to be the back-end of higher-level programs (like Gnuastro). Through the Statistics program, in Gnuastro we provide a high-level interface to access to GSL's very powerful least squares fitting engine to read/write from/to standard data formats in astronomy. A fully working example is shown below.

To activate fitting in Statistics, simply give your desired fitting method to the `--fit` option (for the full list of acceptable methods, see Section 7.1.5.4 [Fitting options], page 546). For example, with the command below, we'll build a fake measurement table (including noise) from the polynomial $y = 1.23 - 4.56x + 7.89x^2$. To understand how this equation translates to the command below (part before `set-y`), see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404, and Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350. We will set the X axis to have values from 0.1 to 2, with steps of 0.01 and let's assume a random Gaussian noise to each y measurement: $\sigma_y = 0.1y$. To make the random number generation exactly reproducible, we are also setting the seed (see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410, which also uses GSL as a backend). To learn more about the `mknoise-sigma` operator, see the Arithmetic program's Section 6.2.4.16 [Random number generators], page 453.

```
$ export GSL_RNG_SEED=1664015492
$ seq 0.1 0.01 2 \
      | asttable --output=noisy.fits --envseed -c1 \
                 -c'arith 1.23 -4.56 $1 x + 7.89 $1 x $1 x + set-y \
                          0.1 y x                           set-yerr \
                          y yerr mknoise-sigma yerr' \
                 --colmetadata=1,X --colmetadata=2,Y \
                 --colmetadata=3,Yerr
```

Let's have a look at the output plot with TOPCAT using the command below.

```
$ astscript-fits-view noisy.fits
```

To see the error-bars, after opening the scatter plot, go into the "Form" tab for that plot. Click on the button with a green "+" sign followed by "Forms" and select "XYError". On the side-menu, in front of "Y Positive Error", select the `Yerr` column of the input table.

As you see, the error bars do indeed increase for higher X axis values. Since we have error bars in this example (as in any measurement), we can use weighted fitting. Also, this isn't a linear relation, so we'll use a polynomial to second order (a maximum power of 2 in the form of $Y = c_0 + c_1X + c_2X^2$):

```
$ aststatistics noisy.fits -cX,Y,Yerr --fit=polynomial-weighted \
                --fitmaxpower=2
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Fitting results (remove extra info with '--quiet' or '-q)
  Input file:    noisy.fits (hdu: 1) with 191 non-blank rows.
  X      column: X
  Y      column: Y
  Weight column: Yerr    [Standard deviation of Y in each row]

Fit function: Y = c0 + (c1 * X^1) + (c2 * X^2) + ... (cN * X^N)
  N:  2
  c0:  +1.2286211608
```

```
  c1:  -4.5127796636
  c2:  +7.8435883943

Covariance matrix:
  +0.0010496001        -0.0039928488        +0.0028367390
  -0.0039928488        +0.0175244127        -0.0138030778
  +0.0028367390        -0.0138030778        +0.0128129806

Reduced chi^2 of fit:
  +0.9740670090
```

As you see from the elaborate message, the weighted polynomial fitting has found return the c_0, c_1 and c_2 of $Y = c_0 + c_1X + c_2X^2$ that best represents the data we inserted. Our input values were $c_0 = 1.23$, $c_1 = -4.56$ and $c_2 = 7.89$, and the fitted values are $c_0 \approx 1.2286$, $c_1 \approx -4.5128$ and $c_2 \approx 7.8436$ (which is statistically a very good fit! given that we knew the original values a-priori!). The covariance matrix is also calculated, it is necessary to calculate error bars on the estimations and contains a lot of information (e.g., possible correlations between parameters). Finally, the reduced χ^2 (or χ^2_{red}) of the fit is also printed (which was the measure to minimize). A $\chi^2_{red} \approx 1$ shows a good fit. This is good for real-world scenarios when you don't know the original values a-priori. For more on interpreting $\chi^2_{red} \approx 1$, see Andrae et al. 2010 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1012.3754`).

The comparison of fitted and input values look pretty good, but nothing beats visual inspection! To see how this looks compared to the data, let's open the table again:

```
$ astscript-fits-view noisy.fits
```

Repeat the steps below to show the scatter plot and error-bars. Then, go to the "Layers" menu and select "Add Function Control". Use the results above to fill the box in front of "Function Expression": `1.2286+(-4.5128*x)+(7.8436*x*x)`. You will see that the second order polynomial falls very nicely over the points[3]. But this fit is not perfect: it also has errors (inherited from the measurement errors). We need the covariance matrix to estimate the errors on each point, and that can be complex to do by hand.

Fortunately GSL has the tools to easily estimate the function at any point and also calculate its corresponding error. To access this feature within Gnuastro's Statistics program, you should use the `--fitestimate` option. You can either give an independent table file name (with `--fitestimatehdu` and `--fitestimatecol` to specify the HDU and column in that file), or just `self` so it uses the same X axis column that was used in this fit. Let's use the easier case:

```
$ aststatistics noisy.fits -cX,Y,Yerr --fit=polynomial-weighted \
                --fitmaxpower=2 --fitestimate=self --output=est.fits

...[[truncated; same as above]]...
```

[3] After plotting, you will notice that the legend made the plot too thin. Fortunately you have a lot of empty space within the plot. To bring the legend in, click on the "Legend" item on the bottom-left menu, in the "Location" tab, click on "Internal" and hold and move it to the top-left in the box below. To make the functional fit more clear, you can click on the "Function" item of the bottom-left menu. In the "Style" tab, change the color and thickness.

```
Requested estimation:
  Written to: est.fits
```

The first lines of the printed text are the same as before. Afterwards, you will see a new line printed in the output, saying that the estimation was written in `est.fits`. You can now inspect the two tables with TOPCAT again with the command below. After TOPCAT opens, plot both scatter plots:

```
$ astscript-fits-view noisy.fits est.fits
```

It is clear that they fall nicely on top of each other. The `est.fits` table also has a third column with error bars. You can follow the same steps before and draw the error bars to see how they compare with the scatter of the measured data. They are much smaller than the error in each point because we had a very good sampling of the function in our noisy data.

Another useful point with the estimated output file is that it contains all the fitting outputs as keywords in the header:

```
$ astfits est.fits -h1
...[[truncated]]...

                      / Fit results
FITTYPE = 'polynomial-weighted' / Functional form of the fitting.
FITMAXP =                     2 / Maximum power of polynomial.
FITIN   = 'noisy.fits'          / Name of file with input columns.
FITINHDU= '1       '            / Name or Number of HDU with input cols.
FITXCOL = 'X       '            / Name or Number of independent (X) col.
FITYCOL = 'Y       '            / Name or Number of measured (Y) column.
FITWCOL = 'Yerr    '            / Name or Number of weight column.
FITWNAT = 'Standard deviation' / Nature of weight column.
FRDCHISQ=    0.974067008958516 / Reduced chi^2 of fit.
FITC0   =     1.22862116084727 / C0: multiple of x^0 in polynomial
FITC1   =    -4.51277966356177 / C1: multiple of x^1 in polynomial
FITC2   =     7.84358839431161 / C2: multiple of x^2 in polynomial
FCOV11  =  0.00104960011629718 / Covariance matrix element (1,1).
FCOV12  = -0.00399284880859776 / Covariance matrix element (1,2).
FCOV13  =  0.00283673901863388 / Covariance matrix element (1,3).
FCOV21  = -0.00399284880859776 / Covariance matrix element (2,1).
FCOV22  =   0.0175244126670659 / Covariance matrix element (2,2).
FCOV23  =  -0.0138030778380786 / Covariance matrix element (2,3).
FCOV31  =  0.00283673901863388 / Covariance matrix element (3,1).
FCOV32  =  -0.0138030778380786 / Covariance matrix element (3,2).
FCOV33  =   0.0128129806394559 / Covariance matrix element (3,3).

...[[truncated]]...
```

In scenarios were you don't want the estimation, but only the fitted parameters, all that verbose, human-friendly text or FITS keywords can be an annoying extra step. For such cases, you should use the `--quiet` option like below. It will print the parameters, rows of the covariance matrix and χ^2_{red} on separate lines with nothing extra. This allows you to parse the values in any way that you would like.

```
$ aststatistics noisy.fits -cX,Y,Yerr --fit=polynomial-weighted \
                --fitmaxpower=2 --quiet
+1.2286211608 -4.5127796636 +7.8435883943
+0.0010496001        -0.0039928488        +0.0028367390
-0.0039928488        +0.0175244127        -0.0138030778
+0.0028367390        -0.0138030778        +0.0128129806
+0.9740670090
```

As a final example, because real data usually have outliers, let's look at the "robust" polynomial fit which has special features to remove outliers. First, we need to add some outliers to the table. To do this, we'll make a plain-text table with `echo`, and use Table's `--catrowfile` to concatenate (or append) those two rows to the original table. Finally, we'll run the same fitting step above:

```
$ echo "0.6  20  0.01"  > outliers.txt
$ echo "0.8  20  0.01" >> outliers.txt

$ asttable noisy.fits --catrowfile=outliers.txt \
           --output=with-outlier.fits

$ aststatistics with-outlier.fits -cX,Y,Yerr --fit=polynomial-weighted \
                --fitmaxpower=2 --fitestimate=self \
                --output=est-out.fits

Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Fitting results (remove extra info with '--quiet' or '-q)
  Input file:    with-outlier.fits (hdu: 1) with 193 non-blank rows.
  X      column: X
  Y      column: Y
  Weight column: Yerr    [Standard deviation of Y in each row]

Fit function: Y = c0 + (c1 * X^1) + (c2 * X^2) + ... (cN * X^N)
  N:  2
  c0:  -13.6446036899
  c1:  +66.8463258547
  c2:  -30.8746303591

Covariance matrix:
  +0.0007889160        -0.0027706310        +0.0022208939
  -0.0027706310        +0.0113922468        -0.0100306732
  +0.0022208939        -0.0100306732        +0.0094087226

Reduced chi^2 of fit:
  +4501.8356719150

Requested estimation:
  Written to: est-out.fit
```

We see that the coefficient values have changed significantly and that χ^2_{red} has increased to 4501! Recall that a good fit should have $\chi^2_{red} \approx 1$. These numbers clearly show that the fit was bad, but again, nothing beats a visual inspection. To visually see the effect of those outliers, let's plot them with the command below. You see that those two points have clearly caused a turn in the fitted result which is terrible.

```
$ astscript-fits-view with-outlier.fits est-out.fits
```

For such cases, GSL has Robust linear regression (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#robust-linear-regression`). In Gnuastro's Statistics, you can access it with `--fit=polynomial-robust`, like the example below. Just note that the robust method doesn't take an error column (because it estimates the errors internally while rejecting outliers, based on the method).

```
$ aststatistics with-outlier.fits -cX,Y --fit=polynomial-robust \
                --fitmaxpower=2 --fitestimate=self \
                --output=est-out.fits --quiet

$ astfits est-out.fits -h1 | grep ^FITC
FITC0   =     1.20422691185238 / C0: multiple of x^0 in polynomial
FITC1   =     -4.4779253576348 / C1: multiple of x^1 in polynomial
FITC2   =     7.84986153686548 / C2: multiple of x^2 in polynomial

$ astscript-fits-view with-outlier.fits est-out.fits
```

It is clear that the coefficients are very similar to the no-outlier scenario above and if you run the second command to view the scatter plots on TOPCAT, you also see that the fit nicely follows the curve and is not affected by those two points. GSL provides many methods to reject outliers. For their full list, see the description of `--fitrobust` in Section 7.1.5.4 [Fitting options], page 546. For a description of the outlier rejection methods, see the GSL manual (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#c.gsl_multifit_robust_workspace`).

You may have noticed that unlike the cases before the last Statistics command above didn't print anything on the standard output. This is becasue `--quiet` and `--fitestimate` were called together. In this case, because all the fitting parameters are written as FITS keywords, because of the `--quiet` option, they are no longer printed on standard output.

7.1.4 Sky value

One of the most important aspects of a dataset is its reference value: the value of the dataset where there is no signal. Without knowing, and thus removing the effect of, this value it is impossible to compare the derived results of many high-level analyses over the dataset with other datasets (in the attempt to associate our results with the "real" world).

In astronomy, this reference value is known as the "Sky" value: the value that noise fluctuates around: where there is no signal from detectable objects or artifacts (for example, galaxies, stars, planets or comets, star spikes or internal optical ghost). Depending on the dataset, the Sky value maybe a fixed value over the whole dataset, or it may vary based on location. For an example of the latter case, see Figure 11 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

Because of the significance of the Sky value in astronomical data analysis, we have devoted this subsection to it for a thorough review. We start with a thorough discussion on its definition (Section 7.1.4.1 [Sky value definition], page 529). In the astronomical literature, researchers use a variety of methods to estimate the Sky value, so in Section 7.1.4.2 [Sky value misconceptions], page 530) we review those and discuss their biases. From the definition of the Sky value, the most accurate way to estimate the Sky value is to run a detection algorithm (for example, Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552) over the dataset and use the undetected pixels. However, there is also a more crude method that maybe useful when good direct detection is not initially possible (for example, due to too many cosmic rays in a shallow image). A more crude (but simpler method) that is usable in such situations is discussed in Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

7.1.4.1 Sky value definition

This analysis is taken from Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). Let's assume that all instrument defects – bias, dark and flat – have been corrected and the magnitude (see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585) of a detected object, O, is desired. The sources of flux on pixel[4] i of the image can be written as follows:

- Contribution from the target object (O_i).
- Contribution from other detected objects (D_i).
- Undetected objects or the fainter undetected regions of bright objects (U_i).
- A cosmic ray (C_i).
- The background flux, which is defined to be the count if none of the others exists on that pixel (B_i).

The total flux in this pixel (T_i) can thus be written as:

$$T_i = B_i + D_i + U_i + C_i + O_i.$$

By definition, D_i is detected and it can be assumed that it is correctly estimated (deblended) and subtracted, we can thus set $D_i = 0$. There are also methods to detect and remove cosmic rays, for example, the method described in van Dokkum (2001)[5], or by comparing multiple exposures. This allows us to set $C_i = 0$. Note that in practice, D_i and U_i are correlated, because they both directly depend on the detection algorithm and its input parameters. Also note that no detection or cosmic ray removal algorithm is perfect. With these limitations in mind, the observed Sky value for this pixel (S_i) can be defined as

$$S_i \equiv B_i + U_i.$$

[4] For this analysis the dimension of the data (image) is irrelevant. So if the data is an image (2D) with width of w pixels, then a pixel located on column x and row y (where all counting starts from zero and (0, 0) is located on the bottom left corner of the image), would have an index: $i = x + y \times w$.

[5] van Dokkum, P. G. (2001). Publications of the Astronomical Society of the Pacific. 113, 1420.

Therefore, as the detection process (algorithm and input parameters) becomes more accurate, or $U_i \to 0$, the Sky value will tend to the background value or $S_i \to B_i$. Hence, we see that while B_i is an inherent property of the data (pixel in an image), S_i depends on the detection process. Over a group of pixels, for example, in an image or part of an image, this equation translates to the average of undetected pixels (Sky= $\sum S_i$). With this definition of Sky, the object flux in the data can be calculated, per pixel, with

$$T_i = S_i + O_i \quad \to \quad O_i = T_i - S_i.$$

In the fainter outskirts of an object, a very small fraction of the photo-electrons in a pixel actually belongs to objects, the rest is caused by random factors (noise), see Figure 1b in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). Therefore even a small over estimation of the Sky value will result in the loss of a very large portion of most galaxies. Besides the lost area/brightness, this will also cause an over-estimation of the Sky value and thus even more under-estimation of the object's magnitude. It is thus very important to detect the diffuse flux of a target, even if they are not your primary target.

In summary, the more accurately the Sky is measured, the more accurately the magnitude (calculated from the sum of pixel values) of the target object can be measured (photometry). Any under/over-estimation in the Sky will directly translate to an over/under-estimation of the measured object's magnitude.

The **Sky value** is only correctly found when all the detected objects (D_i and C_i) have been removed from the data.

7.1.4.2 Sky value misconceptions

As defined in Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528, the sky value is only accurately defined when the detection algorithm is not significantly reliant on the sky value. In particular its detection threshold. However, most signal-based detection tools[6] use the sky value as a reference to define the detection threshold. These older techniques therefore had to rely on approximations based on other assumptions about the data. A review of those other techniques can be seen in Appendix A of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

These methods were extensively used in astronomical data analysis for several decades, therefore they have given rise to a lot of misconceptions, ambiguities and disagreements about the sky value and how to measure it. As a summary, the major methods used until now were an approximation of the mode of the image pixel distribution and σ-clipping.

- To find the mode of a distribution those methods would either have to assume (or find) a certain probability density function (PDF) or use the histogram. But astronomical datasets can have any distribution, making it almost impossible to define a generic function. Also, histogram-based results are very inaccurate (there is a large dispersion) and it depends on the histogram bin-widths. Generally, the mode of a distribution also

[6] According to Akhlaghi and Ichikawa (2015), signal-based detection is a detection process that relies heavily on assumptions about the to-be-detected objects. This method was the most heavily used technique prior to the introduction of NoiseChisel in that paper.

shifts as signal is added. Therefore, even if it is accurately measured, the mode is a biased measure for the Sky value.

- Another approach was to iteratively clip the brightest pixels in the image (which is known as σ-clipping). See Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, for a complete explanation. σ-clipping is useful when there are clear outliers (an object with a sharp edge in an image for example). However, real astronomical objects have diffuse and faint wings that penetrate deeply into the noise, see Figure 1 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

As discussed in Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528, the sky value can only be correctly defined as the average of undetected pixels. Therefore all such approaches that try to approximate the sky value prior to detection are ultimately poor approximations.

7.1.4.3 Quantifying signal in a tile

In order to define detection thresholds on the image, or calibrate it for measurements (subtract the signal of the background sky and define errors), we need some basic measurements. For example, the quantile threshold in NoiseChisel (`--qthresh` option), or the mean of the undetected regions (Sky) and the Sky standard deviation (Sky STD) which are the output of NoiseChisel and Statistics. But astronomical images will contain a lot of stars and galaxies that will bias those measurements if not properly accounted for. Quantifying where signal is present is thus a very important step in the usage of a dataset; for example, if the Sky level is over-estimated, your target object's magnitude will be under-estimated.

Let's start by clarifying some definitions: *Signal* is defined as the non-random source of flux in each pixel (you can think of this as the mean in a Gaussian or Poisson distribution). In astronomical images, signal is mostly photons coming of a star or galaxy, and counted in each pixel. *Noise* is defined as the random source of flux in each pixel (or the standard deviation of a Gaussian or Poisson distribution). Noise is mainly due to counting errors in the detector electronics upon data collection. *Data* is defined as the combination of signal and noise (so a noisy image of a galaxy is one *data*set).

When a dataset does not have any signal (for example, you take an image with a closed shutter, producing an image that only contains noise), the mean, median and mode of the distribution are equal within statistical errors. Signal from emitting objects, like astronomical targets, always has a positive value and will never become negative, see Figure 1 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). Therefore, when signal is added to the data (you take an image with an open shutter pointing to a galaxy for example), the mean, median and mode of the dataset shift to the positive, creating a positively skewed distribution. The shift of the mean is the largest. The median shifts less, since it is defined after ordering all the elements/pixels (the median is the value at a quantile of 0.5), thus it is not affected by outliers. Finally, the mode's shift to the positive is the least.

Inverting the argument above gives us a robust method to quantify the significance of signal in a dataset: when the mean and median of a distribution are approximately equal we can argue that there is no significant signal. In other words: when the quantile of the mean (q_{mean}) is around 0.5. This definition of skewness through the quantile of the mean is further introduced with a real image the tutorials, see Section 2.2.3 [Skewness caused by signal and its measurement], page 88.

However, in an astronomical image, some of the pixels will contain more signal than the rest, so we cannot simply check q_{mean} on the whole dataset. For example, if we only look at the patch of pixels that are placed under the central parts of the brightest stars in the field of view, q_{mean} will be very high. The signal in other parts of the image will be weaker, and in some parts it will be much smaller than the noise (for example, 1/100-th of the noise level). When the signal-to-noise ratio is very small, we can generally assume no signal (because its effectively impossible to measure it) and q_{mean} will be approximately 0.5.

To address this problem, we break the image into a grid of tiles[7] (see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290). For example, a tile can be a square box of size 30×30 pixels. By measuring q_{mean} on each tile, we can find which tiles that contain significant signal and ignore them. Technically, if a tile's $|q_{mean} - 0.5|$ is larger than the value given to the `--meanmedqdiff` option, that tile will be ignored for the next steps. You can read this option as "mean-median-quantile-difference".

The raw dataset's pixel distribution (in each tile) is noisy, to decrease the noise/error in estimating q_{mean}, we convolve the image before tessellation (see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480. Convolution decreases the range of the dataset and enhances its skewness, See Section 3.1.1 and Figure 4 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). This enhanced skewness can be interpreted as an increase in the Signal to noise ratio of the objects buried in the noise. Therefore, to obtain an even better measure of the presence of signal in a tile, the mean and median discussed above are measured on the convolved image.

There is one final hurdle: raw astronomical datasets are commonly peppered with Cosmic rays. Images of Cosmic rays are not smoothed by the atmosphere or telescope aperture, so they have sharp boundaries. Also, since they do not occupy too many pixels, they do not affect the mode and median calculation. But their very high values can greatly bias the calculation of the mean (recall how the mean shifts the fastest in the presence of outliers), for example, see Figure 15 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). The effect of outliers like cosmic rays on the mean and standard deviation can be removed through σ-clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, for a complete explanation.

Therefore, after asserting that the mean and median are approximately equal in a tile (see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290), the Sky and its STD are measured on each tile after σ-clipping with the `--sigmaclip` option (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200). In the end, some of the tiles will pass the test and will be given a value. Others (that had signal in them) will just be assigned a NaN (not-a-number) value. But we need a measurement over each tile (and thus pixel). We will therefore use interpolation to assign a value to the NaN tiles.

However, prior to interpolating over the failed tiles, another point should be considered: large and extended galaxies, or bright stars, have wings which sink into the noise very gradually. In some cases, the gradient over these wings can be on scales that is larger than the tiles (for example, the pixel value changes by 0.1σ after 100 pixels, but the tile has a width of 30 pixels).

In such cases, the q_{mean} test will be successful, even though there is signal. Recall that q_{mean} is a measure of skewness. If we do not identify (and thus set to NaN) such outlier

[7] The options to customize the tessellation are discussed in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257.

tiles before the interpolation, the photons of the outskirts of the objects will leak into the detection thresholds or Sky and Sky STD measurements and bias our result, see Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80. Therefore, the final step of "quantifying signal in a tile" is to look at this distribution of successful tiles and remove the outliers. σ-clipping is a good solution for removing a few outliers, but the problem with outliers of this kind is that there may be many such tiles (depending on the large/bright stars/galaxies in the image). We therefore apply the following local outlier rejection strategy.

For each tile, we find the nearest N_{ngb} tiles that had a usable value (N_{ngb} is the value given to `--outliernumngb`). We then sort them and find the difference between the largest and second-to-smallest elements (The minimum is not used because the scatter can be large). Let's call this the tile's *slope* (measured from its neighbors). All the tiles that are on a region of flat noise will have similar slope values, but if a few tiles fall on the wings of a bright star or large galaxy, their slope will be significantly larger than the tiles with no signal. We just have to find the smallest tile slope value that is an outlier compared to the rest, and reject all tiles with a slope larger than that.

To identify the smallest outlier, we will use the distribution of distances between sorted elements. Let's assume the total number of tiles with a good mean-median quantile difference is N. They are first sorted and searching for the outlier starts on element $N/3$ (integer division). Let's take v_i to be the i-th element of the sorted input (with no blank values) and m and σ as the σ-clipped median and standard deviation from the distances of the previous $N/3-1$ elements (not including v_i). If the value given to `--outliersigma` is displayed with s, the i-th element is considered as an outlier when the condition below is true.

$$\frac{(v_i - v_{i-1}) - m}{\sigma} > s$$

Since i begins from the $N/3$-th element in the sorted array (a quantile of $1/3 = 0.33$), the outlier has to be larger than the 0.33 quantile value of the dataset (this is usually the case; otherwise, it is hard to define it as an "outlier"!).

Once the outlying tiles have been successfully identified and set to NaN, we use nearest-neighbor interpolation to give a value to all tiles in the image. We do not use parametric interpolation methods (like bicubic), because they will effectively extrapolate on the edges, creating strong artifacts. Nearest-neighbor interpolation is very simple: for each tile, we find the N_{ngb} nearest tiles that had a good value, the tile's value is found by estimating the median. You can set N_{ngb} through the `--interpnumngb` option. Once all the tiles are given a value, a smoothing step is implemented to remove the sharp value contrast that can happen on the edges of tiles. The size of the smoothing box is set with the `--smoothwidth` option.

As mentioned above, the process above is used for any of the basic measurements (for example, identifying the quantile-based thresholds in NoiseChisel, or the Sky value in Statistics). You can use the check-image feature of NoiseChisel or Statistics to inspect the steps and visually see each step (all the options that start with `--check`). For example, as mentioned in the Section 2.2.2 [NoiseChisel optimization], page 82, tutorial, when given a dataset from a new instrument (with differing noise properties), we highly recommend to use `--checkqthresh` in your first call and visually inspect how the parameters above

affect the final quantile threshold (e.g., have the wings of bright sources leaked into the threshold?). The same goes for the `--checksky` option of Statistics or NoiseChisel.

7.1.5 Invoking Statistics

Statistics will print statistical measures of an input dataset (table column or image). The executable name is `aststatistics` with the following general template

```
$ aststatistics [OPTION ...] InputImage.fits
```

One line examples:

```
## Print some general statistics of input image:
$ aststatistics image.fits

## Print some general statistics of column named MAG_F160W:
$ aststatistics catalog.fits -h1 --column=MAG_F160W

## Make the histogram of the column named MAG_F160W:
$ aststatistics table.fits -cMAG_F160W --histogram

## Find the Sky value on image with a given kernel:
$ aststatistics image.fits --sky --kernel=kernel.fits

## Print Sigma-clipped results of records with a MAG_F160W
## column value between 26 and 27:
$ aststatistics cat.fits -cMAG_F160W -g26 -l27 --sigmaclip=3,0.2

## Find the polynomial (to third order) that best fits the X and Y
## columns of 'table.fits'. Robust fitting will be used to reject
## outliers. Also, estimate the fitted polynomial on the same input
## column (with errors).
$ aststatistics table.fits --fit=polynomial-robust --fitmaxpower=3 \
                -cX,Y --fitestimate=self --output=estimated.fits

## Print the median value of all records in column MAG_F160W that
## have a value larger than 3 in column PHOTO_Z:
$ aststatistics tab.txt -rPHOTO_Z -g3 -cMAG_F160W --median

## Calculate the median of the third column in the input table, but only
## for rows where the mean of the first and second columns is >5.
$ awk '($1+$2)/2 > 5 {print $3}' table.txt | aststatistics --median
```

Statistics can take its input dataset either from a file (image or table) or the Standard input (see Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266). If any output file is to be created, the value to the `--output` option, is used as the base name for the generated files. Without `--output`, the input name will be used to generate an output name, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. The options described below are particular to Statistics, but for general operations, it shares a large collection of options with the other Gnuastro programs, see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, for the full list. For more on reading from standard input, please see the description of `--stdintimeout` option in Section 4.1.2.1 [In-

put/Output options], page 254. Options can also be given in configuration files, for more, please see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270.

The input dataset may have blank values (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392), in this case, all blank pixels are ignored during the calculation. Initially, the full dataset will be read, but it is possible to select a specific range of data elements to use in the analysis of each run. You can either directly specify a minimum and maximum value for the range of data elements to use (with `--greaterequal` or `--lessthan`), or specify the range using quantiles (with `--qrange`). If a range is specified, all pixels outside of it are ignored before any processing.

When no operation is requested, Statistics will print some general basic properties of the input dataset on the command-line like the example below (ran on one of the output images of `make check`[8]). This default behavior is designed to help give you a general feeling of how the data are distributed and help in narrowing down your analysis.

```
$ aststatistics convolve_spatial_scaled_noised.fits     \
                --greaterequal=9500 --lessthan=11000
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) X.X
-------
Input: convolve_spatial_scaled_noised.fits (hdu: 0)
Range: from (inclusive) 9500, upto (exclusive) 11000.
Unit: counts
-------
  Number of elements:                   9074
  Minimum:                              9622.35
  Maximum:                              10999.7
  Mode:                                 10055.45996
  Mode quantile:                        0.4001983908
  Median:                               10093.7
  Mean:                                 10143.98257
  Standard deviation:                   221.80834
-------
Histogram:
 |                    **
 |                   ******
 |                   *******
 |                  *********
 |               *************
 |               **************
 |             ******************
 |             ********************
 |           ************************** *
 |         ****************************************** ***
 |*  ************************************************************
 |-------------------------------------------------------------
```

[8] You can try it by running the command in the `tests` directory, open the image with a FITS viewer and have a look at it to get a sense of how these statistics relate to the input image/dataset.

Gnuastro's Statistics is a very general purpose program, so to be able to easily understand this diversity in its operations (and how to possibly run them together), we will divided the operations into two types: those that do not respect the position of the elements and those that do (by tessellating the input on a tile grid, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290). The former treat the whole dataset as one and can re-arrange all the elements (for example, sort them), but the former do their processing on each tile independently. First, we will review the operations that work on the whole dataset.

The group of options below can be used to get single value measurement(s) of the whole dataset. They will print only the requested value as one field in a line/row, like the `--mean`, `--median` options. These options can be called any number of times and in any order. The outputs of all such options will be printed on one line following each other (with a space character between them). This feature makes these options very useful in scripts, or to redirect into programs like GNU AWK for higher-level processing. These are some of the most basic measures, Gnuastro is still under heavy development and this list will grow. If you want another statistical parameter, please contact us and we will do out best to add it to this list, see Section 1.10 [Suggest new feature], page 17.

7.1.5.1 Input to Statistics

The following set of options are for specifying the input/outputs of Statistics. There are many other input/output options that are common to all Gnuastro programs including Statistics, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254, for those.

`-c STR/INT`
`--column=STR/INT`
: The column to use when the input file is a table with more than one column. See Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289, for a full description of how to use this option. For more on how tables are read in Gnuastro, please see Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284.

`-g FLT`
`--greaterequal=FLT`
: Limit the range of inputs into those with values greater and equal to what is given to this option. None of the values below this value will be used in any of the processing steps below.

`-l FLT`
`--lessthan=FLT`
: Limit the range of inputs into those with values less-than what is given to this option. None of the values greater or equal to this value will be used in any of the processing steps below.

`-Q FLT[,FLT]`
`--qrange=FLT[,FLT]`
: Specify the range of usable inputs using the quantile. This option can take one or two quantiles to specify the range. When only one number is input (let's call it Q), the range will be those values in the quantile range Q to $1-Q$. So when only one value is given, it must be less than 0.5. When two values are given, the first is used as the lower quantile range and the second is used as the larger quantile range.

The quantile of a given element in a dataset is defined by the fraction of its index to the total number of values in the sorted input array. So the smallest and largest values in the dataset have a quantile of 0.0 and 1.0. The quantile is a very useful non-parametric (making no assumptions about the input) relative measure to specify a range. It can best be understood in terms of the cumulative frequency plot, see Section 7.1.1 [Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot], page 517. The quantile of each horizontal axis value in the cumulative frequency plot is the vertical axis value associate with it.

7.1.5.2 Single value measurements

`-n`
`--number` Print the number of all used (non-blank and in range) elements.

`--minimum`
Print the minimum value of all used elements.

`--maximum`
Print the maximum value of all used elements.

`--sum` Print the sum of all used elements.

`-m`
`--mean` Print the mean (average) of all used elements.

`-t`
`--std` Print the standard deviation of all used elements.

`--mad` Print the median absolute deviation (MAD) of all used elements.

`-E`
`--median` Print the median of all used elements.

`-u FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
`--quantile=FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
Print the values at the given quantiles of the input dataset. Any number of quantiles may be given and one number will be printed for each. Values can either be written as a single number or as fractions, but must be between zero and one (inclusive). Hence, in effect `--quantile=0.25 --quantile=0.75` is equivalent to `--quantile=0.25,3/4`, or `-u1/4,3/4`.

The returned value is one of the elements from the dataset. Taking q to be your desired quantile, and N to be the total number of used (non-blank and within the given range) elements, the returned value is at the following position in the sorted array: $round(q \times N)$.

`--quantfunc=FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
Print the quantiles of the given values in the dataset. This option is the inverse of the `--quantile` and operates similarly except that the acceptable values are within the range of the dataset, not between 0 and 1. Formally it is known as the "Quantile function".

Since the dataset is not continuous this function will find the nearest element of the dataset and use its position to estimate the quantile function.

`--quantofmean`
: Print the quantile of the mean in the dataset. This is a very good measure of detecting skewness or outliers. The concept is used by programs like NoiseChisel to identify the presence of signal in a tile of the image (because signal in noise causes skewness).

  For example, take this simple array: `1 2 20 4 5 6 3`. The mean is `5.85`. The nearest element to this mean is `6` and the quantile of `6` in this distribution is 0.8333. Here is how we got to this: in the sorted dataset (`1 2 3 4 5 6 20`), `6` is the 5-th element (counting from zero, since a quantile of zero corresponds to the minimum, by definition) and the maximum is the 6-th element (again, counting from zero). So the quantile of the mean in this case is $5/6 = 0.8333$.

  In the example above, if we had `7` instead of `20` (which was an outlier), then the mean would be `4` and the quantile of the mean would be 0.5 (which by definition, is the quantile of the median), showing no outliers. As the number of elements increases, the mean itself is less affected by a small number of outliers, but skewness can be nicely identified by the quantile of the mean.

`-O`
`--mode`
: Print the mode of all used elements. The mode is found through the mirror distribution which is fully described in Appendix C of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). See that section for a full description.

  This mode calculation algorithm is non-parametric, so when the dataset is not large enough (larger than about 1000 elements usually), or does not have a clear mode it can fail. In such cases, this option will return a value of `nan` (for the floating point NaN value).

  As described in that paper, the easiest way to assess the quality of this mode calculation method is to use it's symmetricity (see `--modesym` below). A better way would be to use the `--mirror` option to generate the histogram and cumulative frequency tables for any given mirror value (the mode in this case) as a table. If you generate plots like those shown in Figure 21 of that paper, then your mode is accurate.

`--modequant`
: Print the quantile of the mode. You can get the actual mode value from the `--mode` described above. In many cases, the absolute value of the mode is irrelevant, but its position within the distribution is important. In such cases, this option will become handy.

`--modesym`
: Print the symmetricity of the calculated mode. See the description of `--mode` for more. This mode algorithm finds the mode based on how symmetric it is, so if the symmetricity returned by this option is too low, the mode is not too accurate. See Appendix C of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) for a full description. In practice, symmetricity values larger than 0.2 are mostly good.

`--modesymvalue`
: Print the value in the distribution where the mirror and input distributions are no longer symmetric, see `--mode` and Appendix C of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) for more.

`--sigclip-std`
`--sigclip-mad`
`--sigclip-mean`
`--sigclip-number`
`--sigclip-median`
: Calculate the desired statistic after applying σ-clipping (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, part of the tutorial Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196). σ-clipping configuration is done with the `--sclipparams` option.

  Here is one scenario where this can be useful: assume you have a table and you would like to remove the rows that are outliers (not within the σ-clipping range). Let's assume your table is called `table.fits` and you only want to keep the rows that have a value in `COLUMN` within the σ-clipped range (to 3σ, with a tolerance of 0.1). This command will return the σ-clipped median and standard deviation (used to define the range later).

```
$ aststatistics table.fits -cCOLUMN --sclipparams=3,0.1 \
                --sigclip-median --sigclip-std
```

  You can then use the `--range` option of Table (see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344) to select the proper rows. But for that, you need the actual starting and ending values of the range ($m \pm s\sigma$; where m is the median and s is the multiple of sigma to define an outlier). Therefore, the raw outputs of Statistics in the command above are not enough.

  To get the starting and ending values of the non-outlier range (and put a '`,`' between them, ready to be used in `--range`), pipe the result into AWK. But in AWK, we will also need the multiple of σ, so we will define it as a shell variable (`s`) before calling Statistics (note how `$s` is used two times now):

```
$ s=3
$ aststatistics table.fits -cCOLUMN --sclipparams=$s,0.1 \
                --sigclip-median --sigclip-std           \
    | awk '{s='$s'; printf("%f,%f\n", $1-s*$2, $1+s*$2)}'
```

  To pass it onto Table, we will need to keep the printed output from the command above in another shell variable (`r`), not print it. In Bash, can do this by putting the whole statement within a `$()`:

```
$ s=3
$ r=$(aststatistics table.fits -cCOLUMN --sclipparams=$s,0.1 \
                  --sigclip-median --sigclip-std           \
        | awk '{s='$s'; printf("%f,%f\n", $1-s*$2, $1+s*$2)}')
$ echo $r      # Just to confirm.
```

  Now you can use Table with the `--range` option to only print the rows that have a value in `COLUMN` within the desired range:

```
$ asttable table.fits --range=COLUMN,$r
```

To save the resulting table (that is clean of outliers) in another file (for example, named `cleaned.fits`, it can also have a `.txt` suffix), just add `--output=cleaned.fits` to the command above.

`--madclip-std`
`--madclip-mad`
`--madclip-mean`
`--madclip-number`
`--madclip-median`

Calculate the desired statistic after applying median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping (see Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206, part of the tutorial Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196). MAD-clipping configuration is done with the `--mclipparams` option.

This option behaves similarly to `--sigclip-*` options, read their description for usage examples.

`--concentration=FLT[,FLT[,...]]`

Return the "concentration" around the median (see rest of this description for the definition); the input value(s) are the quantile width(s) where it is measured.

For a uniform distribution, the output of this operation will be approximately 1.0. With a higher density of values around the median, the value will be larger for a Gaussian distribution, and even larger for more concentrated distributions (than a Gaussian).

This is the algorithm used to measure this value:

1. Sort the input dataset and remove all blank values. If there is one non-blank value or less, then return NaN.
2. The minimum and maximum are respectively selected to be the second and second-to-last elements in the sorted array. The first and last elements are not selected as minimum and maximum because they are affected too strongly by scatter.
3. Subtract each element from the minimum, and divide it by the difference between the minimum and maximum. After this operation, the input's values[9] will be between 0 and 1.

   This scaling does not change the order of the input elements; instead, each element's value now shows its relation to the range of the whole distribution's values (the minimum and maximum values above).
4. Calculate the scaled values corresponding to quantiles that are defined by the width above. For example, if the given width (value to this option) is 0.2, the quantiles of $0.5 - (0.2/2) = 0.4$ and $0.5 + (0.2/2) = 0.5$ will be measured.
5. The width is divided by the difference between the quantiles and returned as the concentration.

In a uniform distribution, the scaling step will convert each input into its quantile: the spacing between scaled values will be uniform. As a result, the difference between the quantiles measured around the median will be equal to the

[9] Technically, the second sorted value will be 0 and the second-to-last value will be 1.

input width and the result will be approximately 1.0. However, if the distribution is concentrated around the median, the spacing between the scaled values will be much less around the median and the quantile difference will be less than the width. Therefore, when we divide the width by the quantile difference, the value will be larger than one.

The example commands below create two randomly distributed "noisy" images, one with a Gaussian distribution and one with a uniform distribution. We will then run this option on both to see the different concentrations[10]. See Section 7.1.5.3 [Generating histograms and cumulative freq.], page 541, on how you can generate the histogram of these two images on the command-line to visualize the distribution.

```
$ astarithmetic 1000 1000 2 makenew 10 mknoise-sigma \
                --output=gaussian.fits

$ astarithmetic 1000 1000 2 makenew 10 mknoise-uniform \
                --output=uniform.fits

$ aststatistics gaussian.fits --concentration=0.25
3.71347573489440e+00

$ aststatistics uniform.fits  --concentration=0.25
9.99988794452348e-01
```

Note that this option is primarily designed for symmetric distributions, not skewed ones (where the mode and median will be distant). Here, we define the "center" in "concentration" as the median, not the mode. To check if the distribution is symmetric (that the mode and median are similar), you can use the `--quantofmean` option described above. Recall that you can call all the options in this section in one call to the Statistics program like below:

```
$ aststatistics gaussian.fits \
                --quantofmean --concentration=0.25
5.00260500260500e-01    3.71347573489440e+00
```

From the quantile-of-mean value of approximately 0.5, we see that the distribution is symmetric and from the concentration, we see that it is not a uniform one.

7.1.5.3 Generating histograms and cumulative freq.

The list of options below are for those statistical operations that output more than one value. So while they can be called together in one run, their outputs will be distinct (each one's output will usually be printed in more than one line).

`-A`
`--asciihist`
: Print an ASCII histogram of the usable values within the input dataset along with some basic information like the example below (from the UVUDF cata-

[10] The values you get will be slightly different because of the different random seeds. To get a reproducible result, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

log[11]). The width and height of the histogram (in units of character widths and heights on your command-line terminal) can be set with the `--numasciibins` (for the width) and `--asciiheight` options.

For a full description of the histogram, please see Section 7.1.1 [Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot], page 517. An ASCII plot is certainly very crude and cannot be used in any publication, but it is very useful for getting a general feeling of the input dataset very fast and easily on the command-line without having to take your hands off the keyboard (which is a major distraction!). If you want to try it out, you can write it all in one line and ignore the `\` and extra spaces.

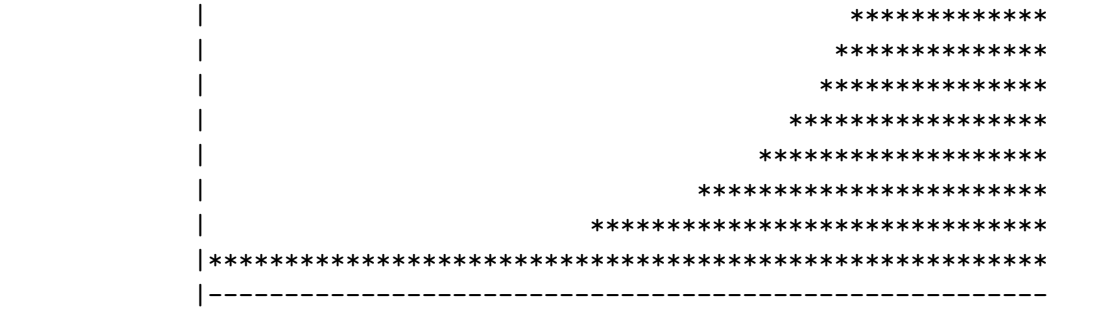
```
$ aststatistics uvudf_rafelski_2015.fits.gz --hdu=1         \
                --column=MAG_F160W --lessthan=40            \
                --asciihist --numasciibins=55
ASCII Histogram:
Number: 8593
Y: (linear: 0 to 660)
X: (linear: 17.7735 -- 31.4679, in 55 bins)
 |                                          ****
 |                                         *****
 |                                        ******
 |                                       ********
 |                                       *********
 |                                     ***********
 |                                   **************
 |                                 ******************
 |                           ************************
 |                     ********************************
 |*** ***************************************************
 |-------------------------------------------------------
```

`--asciicfp`

Print the cumulative frequency plot of the usable elements in the input dataset. Please see descriptions under `--asciihist` for more, the example below is from the same input table as that example. To better understand the cumulative frequency plot, please see Section 7.1.1 [Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot], page 517.

```
$ aststatistics uvudf_rafelski_2015.fits.gz --hdu=1         \
                --column=MAG_F160W --lessthan=40            \
                --asciicfp --numasciibins=55
ASCII Cumulative frequency plot:
Y: (linear: 0 to 8593)
X: (linear: 17.7735 -- 31.4679, in 55 bins)
 |                                                    *******
 |                                                  **********
 |                                                 ***********
```

[11] `https://asd.gsfc.nasa.gov/UVUDF/uvudf_rafelski_2015.fits.gz`



`-H`
`--histogram`
: Save the histogram of the usable values in the input dataset into a table. The first column is the value at the center of the bin and the second is the number of points in that bin. If the `--cumulative` option is also called with this option in a run, then the table will have three columns (the third is the cumulative frequency plot). Through the `--numbins`, `--onebinstart`, or `--manualbinrange`, you can modify the first column values and with `--normalize` and `--maxbinone` you can modify the second columns. See below for the description of each.

  By default (when no `--output` is specified) a plain text table will be created, see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287. If a FITS name is specified, you can use the common option `--tableformat` to have it as a FITS ASCII or FITS binary format, see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253. This table can then be fed into your favorite plotting tool and get a much more clean and nice histogram than what the raw command-line can offer you (with the `--asciihist` option).

`--histogram2d`
: Save the 2D histogram of two input columns into an output file, see Section 7.1.2 [2D Histograms], page 518. The output will have three columns: the first two are the coordinates of each box's center in the first and second dimensions/columns. The third will be number of input points that fall within that box.

`-C`
`--cumulative`
: Save the cumulative frequency plot of the usable values in the input dataset into a table, similar to `--histogram`.

`--madclip`
: Do median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping on the usable pixels of the input dataset. See Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206, for a description on MAD-clipping and Section 2.10 [Clipping outliers], page 196, for a complete tutorial on clipping of outliers. The MAD-clipping parameters can be set through the `--mclipparams` option (see below).

`-s`
`--sigmaclip`
: Do σ-clipping on the usable pixels of the input dataset. See Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, for a full description on σ-clipping and Section 2.10

[Clipping outliers], page 196, for a complete tutorial on clipping of outliers. The σ-clipping parameters can be set through the `--sclipparams` option (see below).

`--mirror=FLT`
Make a histogram and cumulative frequency plot of the mirror distribution for the given dataset when the mirror is located at the value to this option. The mirror distribution is fully described in Appendix C of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) and currently it is only used to calculate the mode (see `--mode`).

Just note that the mirror distribution is a discrete distribution like the input, so while you may give any number as the value to this option, the actual mirror value is the closest number in the input dataset to this value. If the two numbers are different, Statistics will warn you of the actual mirror value used.

This option will make a table as output. Depending on your selected name for the output, it will be either a FITS table or a plain text table (which is the default). It contains three columns: the first is the center of the bins, the second is the histogram (with the largest value set to 1) and the third is the normalized cumulative frequency plot of the mirror distribution. The bins will be positioned such that the mode is on the starting interval of one of the bins to make it symmetric around the mirror. With this output file and the input histogram (that you can generate in another run of Statistics, using the `--onebinvalue`), it is possible to make plots like Figure 21 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

The list of options below allow customization of the histogram and cumulative frequency plots (for the `--histogram`, `--cumulative`, `--asciihist`, and `--asciicfp` options).

`--numbins`
The number of bins (rows) to use in the histogram and the cumulative frequency plot tables (outputs of `--histogram` and `--cumulative`).

`--numasciibins`
The number of bins (characters) to use in the ASCII plots when printing the histogram and the cumulative frequency plot (outputs of `--asciihist` and `--asciicfp`).

`--asciiheight`
The number of lines to use when printing the ASCII histogram and cumulative frequency plot on the command-line (outputs of `--asciihist` and `--asciicfp`).

`-n`
`--normalize`
Normalize the histogram or cumulative frequency plot tables (outputs of `--histogram` and `--cumulative`). For a histogram, the sum of all bins will become one and for a cumulative frequency plot the last bin value will be one.

`--maxbinone`
Divide all the histogram values by the maximum bin value so it becomes one and the rest are similarly scaled. In some situations (for example, if you want

to plot the histogram and cumulative frequency plot in one plot) this can be very useful.

`--onebinstart=FLT`
: Make sure that one bin starts with the value to this option. In practice, this will shift the bins used to find the histogram and cumulative frequency plot such that one bin's lower interval becomes this value.

  For example, when a histogram range includes negative and positive values and zero has a special significance in your analysis, then zero might fall somewhere in one bin. As a result that bin will have counts of positive and negative. By setting `--onebinstart=0`, you can make sure that one bin will only count negative values in the vicinity of zero and the next bin will only count positive ones in that vicinity.

  Note that by default, the first row of the histogram and cumulative frequency plot show the central values of each bin. So in the example above you will not see the 0.000 in the first column, you will see two symmetric values.

  If the value is not within the usable input range, this option will be ignored. When it is, this option is the last operation before the bins are finalized, therefore it has a higher priority than options like `--manualbinrange`.

`--manualbinrange`
: Use the values given to the `--greaterequal` and `--lessthan` to define the range of all bin-based calculations like the histogram. This option itself does not take any value, but just tells the program to use the values of those two options instead of the minimum and maximum values of a plot. If any of the two options are not given, then the minimum or maximum will be used respectively. Therefore, if none of them are called calling this option is redundant.

  The `--onebinstart` option has a higher priority than this option. In other words, `--onebinstart` takes effect after the range has been finalized and the initial bins have been defined, therefore it has the power to (possibly) shift the bins. If you want to manually set the range of the bins *and* have one bin on a special value, it is thus better to avoid `--onebinstart`.

`--numbins2=INT`
: Similar to `--numbins`, but for the second column when a 2D histogram is requested, see `--histogram2d`.

`--greaterequal2=FLT`
: Similar to `--greaterequal`, but for the second column when a 2D histogram is requested, see `--histogram2d`.

`--lessthan2=FLT`
: Similar to `--lessthan`, but for the second column when a 2D histogram is requested, see `--histogram2d`.

`--onebinstart2=FLT`
: Similar to `--onebinstart`, but for the second column when a 2D histogram is requested, see `--histogram2d`.

7.1.5.4 Fitting options

With the options below, you can customize the least squares fitting features of Statistics. For a tutorial of the usage of least squares fitting in Statistics, please see Section 7.1.3 [Least squares fitting], page 523. Here, we will just review the details of each option.

To activate least squares fitting in Statistics, it is necessary to use the `--fit` option to specify the type of fit you want to do. See the description of `--fit` for the various available fitting models. The fitting models that account for weights require three input columns, while the non-weighted ones only take two input columns. Here is a summary of the input columns:

1. The first input column is assumed to be the independent variable (on the horizontal axis of a plot, or X in the equations of each fit).
2. The second input column is assumed to be the measured value (on the vertical axis of a plot, or Y in the equation above).
3. The third input column is only for fittings with a weight. It is assumed to be the "weight" of the measurement column. The nature of the "weight" can be set with the `--fitweight` option, for example, if you have the standard deviation of the error in Y, you can use `--fitweight=std` (which is the default, so unless the default value has been changed, you will not need to set this).

If three columns are given to a model without weight, or two columns are given to a model that requires weights, Statistics will abort and inform you. Below you can see an example of fitting with the same linear model, once weighted and once without weights.

```
$ aststatistics table.fits --column=X,Y      --fit=linear
$ aststatistics table.fits --column=X,Y,Yerr --fit=linear-weighted
```

The output of the fitting can be in three modes listed below. For a complete example, see the tutorial in Section 7.1.3 [Least squares fitting], page 523).

Human friendly format
: By default (for example, the commands above) the output is an elaborate description of the model parameters. For example, c_0 and c_1 in the linear model ($Y = c_0 + c_1 X$). Their covariance matrix and the reduced χ^2 of the fit are also printed on the output.

Raw numbers
: If you don't need the human friendly components of the output (which are annoying when you want to parse the outputs in some scenarios), you can use `--quiet` option. Only the raw output numbers will be printed.

Estimate on a custom X column
: Through the `--fitestimate` option, you can specify an independent table column to estimate the fit (it can also take a single value). See the description of this option for more.

`-f STR`
`--fit=STR`
: The name of the fitting method to use. They are based on the linear (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html`) and nonlinear (`https://`

`www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/nls.html`) least-squares fitting functions of the GNU Scientific Library (GSL).

`linear` $Y = c_0 + c_1X$

`linear-weighted`
$Y = c_0 + c_1X$; accounting for "weights" in Y.

`linear-no-constant`
$Y = c_1X$.

`linear-no-constant-weighted`
$Y = c_1X$; accounting for "weights" in Y.

`polynomial`
$Y = c_0 + c_1X + c_2X^2 + \cdots + c_nX^n$; the maximum required power (n) is specified by `--fitmaxpower`.

`polynomial-weighted`
$Y = c_0 + c_1X + c_2X^2 + \cdots + c_nX^n$; accounting for "weights" in Y. The maximum required power (n) is specified by `--fitmaxpower`.

`polynomial-robust`
$Y = c_0 + c_1X + c_2X^2 + \cdots + c_nX^n$; rejects outliers. The function to use for outlier removal can be specified with the `--fitrobust` option described below. This model doesn't take weights since they are calculated internally based on the outlier removal function (requires two input columns). The maximum required power (n) is specified by `--fitmaxpower`.

For a comprehensive review of "robust" fitting and the available functions, please see the Robust linear regression (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#robust-linear-regression`) section of the GNU Scientific Library.

`--fitweight=STR`
The nature of the "weight" column (when a weight is necessary for the model). It can take one of the following values:

`std` Standard deviation of each Y axis measurement: this is the usual "error" associated with a measurement (for example, in Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582) and is the default value to this option.

`var` Variance of each Y axis measurement. Assuming a Gaussian distribution with standard deviation σ, the variance is σ^2.

`inv-var` Inverse variance of each Y axis measurement. Assuming a Gaussian distribution with standard deviation σ, the variance is $1/\sigma^2$.

`--fitmaxpower=INT`
The maximum power (an integer) in a polynomial (n in $Y = c_0 + c_1X + c_2X^2 + \cdots + c_nX^n$). This is only relevant when one of the polynomial models is given to `--fit`. The fit will return $n + 1$ coefficients.

`--fitrobust=STR`

The function for rejecting outliers in the `polynomial-robust` fitting model. For a comprehensive review of "robust" fitting and the available functions, please see the Robust linear regression (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#robust-linear-regression`) section of the GNU Scientific Library. This function can take the following values:

`bisquare` Tukey's biweight (bisquare) function, this is the default function. According to the GSL manual, this is a good general purpose weight function.

`cauchy` Cauchy's function (also known as the Lorentzian function). It doesn't guarantee a unique solution, so it should be used with care.

`fair` The fair function. It guarantees a unique solution and has continuous derivatives to three orders.

`huber` Huber's ρ function. This is also a good general purpose weight function for rejecting outliers, but can cause difficulty in some special scenarios.

`ols` Ordinary Least Squares (OLS) solution with a constant weight of unity.

`welsch` Welsch function which is useful when the residuals follow an exponential distribution.

`--fitestimate=STR/FLT`

Estimate the fitted function at a single point or a complete column of points. The input X axis positions to estimate the function can be specified in the following ways:

- A real number: the fitted function will be estimated at that X position and the corresponding Y and its error will be printed to standard output.
- `self`: in this mode, the same X axis column that was used in the fit will be used for estimating the fitted function. This can be useful to visually/easily check the fit, see Section 7.1.3 [Least squares fitting], page 523.
- A file name: If the value is none of the above, Statistics expects it to be a file name containing a table. If the file is a FITS file, the HDU containing the table should be specified with the `--fitestimatehdu` option. The column of the table to use for the X axis points should be specified with the `--fitestimatecol` option.

The output in this mode can be customized in the following ways:

- If a single floating point value is given `--fitestimate`, the fitted function will be estimated on that point and printed to standard output.
- When nothing is given to `--output`, the independent column and the estimated values and errors are printed on the standard output.
- If a file name is given to `--output`, the estimated table above is saved in that file. It can have any of the formats in Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285. As a FITS file, all the fit outputs (coefficients,

covariance matrix and reduced χ^2) are kept as FITS keywords in the same HDU of the estimated table. For a complete example, see Section 7.1.3 [Least squares fitting], page 523.

When the covariance matrix (and thus the χ^2) cannot be calculated (for example if you only have two rows!), the printed values on the terminal will be NaN. However, the FITS standard does not allow NaN values in keyword values! Therefore, when writing the χ^2 and covariance matrix elements into the output FITS keywords, the largest value of the 64-bit floating point type will be written: $1.79769313486232 \times 10^{308}$; see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

- When `--quiet` is given with `--fitestimate`, the fitted parameters are no longer printed on the standard output; they are available as FITS keywords in the file given to `--output`.

`--fitestimatehdu=STR/INT`
: HDU name or counter (counting from zero) that contains the table to be used for the estimating the fitted function over many points through `--fitestimate`. For more on selecting a HDU, see the description of `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

`--fitestimatecol=STR/INT`
: Column name or counter (counting from one) that contains the table to be used for the estimating the fitted function over many points through `--fitestimate`. See Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289.

7.1.5.5 Contour options

Contours are useful to highlight the 2D shape of a certain flux level over an image. To derive contours in Statistics, you can use the option below:

`-R FLT[,FLT[,FLT...]]`
`--contour=FLT[,FLT[,FLT...]]`
: Write the contours for the requested levels in a file ending with `_contour.txt`. It will have three columns: the first two are the coordinates of each point and the third is the level it belongs to (one of the input values). Each disconnected contour region will be separated by a blank line. This is the requested format for adding contours with PGFPlots in LaTeX. If any other format can be useful for your work please let us know so we can add it. If the image has World Coordinate System information, the written coordinates will be in RA and Dec, otherwise, they will be in pixel coordinates.

  Note that currently, this is a very crude/simple implementation, please let us know if you find problematic situations so we can fix it.

7.1.5.6 Statistics on tiles

All the options described until now were from the first class of operations discussed above: those that treat the whole dataset as one. However, it often happens that the relative position of the dataset elements over the dataset is significant. For example, you do not want one median value for the whole input image, you want to know how the median changes over the image. For such operations, the input has to be tessellated (see Section 4.8

[Tessellation], page 290). Thus this class of options cannot currently be called along with the options above in one run of Statistics.

`-t`
`--ontile` Do the respective single-valued calculation over one tile of the input dataset, not the whole dataset. This option must be called with at least one of the single valued options discussed above (for example, `--mean` or `--quantile`). The output will be a file in the same format as the input. If the `--oneelempertile` option is called, then one element/pixel will be used for each tile (see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257). Otherwise, the output will have the same size as the input, but each element will have the value corresponding to that tile's value. If multiple single valued operations are called, then for each operation there will be one extension in the output FITS file.

`-y`
`--sky` Estimate the Sky value on each tile as fully described in Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531. As described in that section, several options are necessary to configure the Sky estimation which are listed below. The output file will have two extensions: the first is the Sky value and the second is the Sky standard deviation on each tile. Similar to `--ontile`, if the `--oneelempertile` option is called, then one element/pixel will be used for each tile (see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257).

The parameters for estimating the sky value can be set with the following options, except for the `--sclipparams` option (which is also used by the `--sigmaclip`), the rest are only used for the Sky value estimation.

`-k=FITS`
`--kernel=FITS`
File name of kernel to help in estimating the significance of signal in a tile, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

`--khdu=STR`
Kernel HDU to help in estimating the significance of signal in a tile, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

`--meanmedqdiff=FLT`
The maximum acceptable distance between the quantiles of the mean and median, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531. The initial Sky and its standard deviation estimates are measured on tiles where the quantiles of their mean and median are less distant than the value given to this option. For example, `--meanmedqdiff=0.01` means that only tiles where the mean's quantile is between 0.49 and 0.51 (recall that the median's quantile is 0.5) will be used.

`--sclipparams=FLT,FLT`
The σ-clipping parameters, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200. This option takes two values which are separated by a comma (`,`). Each value can either be written as a single number or as a fraction of two numbers (for example, `3,1/10`). The first value to this option is the multiple of σ that will be clipped (α in that section). The second value is the exit criteria. If it is

less than 1, then it is interpreted as tolerance and if it is larger than one it is a specific number. Hence, in the latter case the value must be an integer.

`--mclipparams=FLT,FLT`
The MAD-clipping parameters. This is very similar to `--sclipparams` above, see there for more.

`--outliersclip=FLT,FLT`
σ-clipping parameters for the outlier rejection of the Sky value (similar to `--sclipparams`).

Outlier rejection is useful when the dataset contains a large and diffuse (almost flat within each tile) signal. The flatness of the profile will cause it to successfully pass the mean-median quantile difference test, so we will need to use the distribution of successful tiles for removing these false positive. For more, see the latter half of Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

`--outliernumngb=INT`
Number of neighboring tiles to use for outlier rejection (mostly the wings of bright stars or galaxies). If this option is given a value of zero, no outlier rejection will take place. For more see the latter half of Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

`--outliersigma=FLT`
Multiple of sigma to define an outlier in the Sky value estimation. If this option is given a value of zero, no outlier rejection will take place. For more see `--outliersclip` and the latter half of Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

`--smoothwidth=INT`
Width of a flat kernel to convolve the interpolated tile values. Tile interpolation is done using the median of the `--interpnumngb` neighbors of each tile (see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257). If this option is given a value of zero or one, no smoothing will be done. Without smoothing, strong boundaries will probably be created between the values estimated for each tile. It is thus good to smooth the interpolated image so strong discontinuities do not show up in the final Sky values. The smoothing is done through convolution (see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480) with a flat kernel, so the value to this option must be an odd number.

`--ignoreblankintiles`
Do not set the input's blank pixels to blank in the tiled outputs (for example, Sky and Sky standard deviation extensions of the output). This is only applicable when the tiled output has the same size as the input, in other words, when `--oneelempertile` is not called.

By default, blank values in the input (commonly on the edges which are outside the survey/field area) will be set to blank in the tiled outputs also. But in other scenarios this default behavior is not desired; for example, if you have masked something in the input, but want the tiled output under that also.

`--checksky`
: Create a multi-extension FITS file showing the steps that were used to estimate the Sky value over the input, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531. The file will have two extensions for each step (one for the Sky and one for the Sky standard deviation).

`--checkskynointerp`
: Similar to `--checksky`, but it will stop as soon as the outlier tiles have been identified and before it interpolates the values to cover the whole image.

  This is useful when you want the good tile values before interpolation, and don't want to slow down your pipeline with the extra computing that interpolation and smoothing require.

7.2 NoiseChisel

Once instrumental signatures are removed from the raw data (image) in the initial reduction process (see Chapter 6 [Data manipulation], page 389). You are naturally eager to start answering the scientific questions that motivated the data collection in the first place. However, the raw dataset/image is just an array of values/pixels, that is all! These raw values cannot directly be used to answer your scientific questions; for example, "how many galaxies are there in the image?" and "What is their magnitude?".

The first high-level step your analysis will therefore be to classify, or label, the dataset elements (pixels) into two classes: 1) Noise, where random effects are the major contributor to the value, and 2) Signal, where non-random factors (for example, light from a distant galaxy) are present. This classification of the elements in a dataset is formally known as *detection*.

In an observational/experimental dataset, signal is always buried in noise: only mock/simulated datasets are free of noise. Therefore detection, or the process of separating signal from noise, determines the number of objects you study and the accuracy of any higher-level measurement you do on them. Detection is thus the most important step of any analysis and is not trivial. In particular, the most scientifically interesting astronomical targets are faint, can have a large variety of morphologies, along with a large distribution in magnitude and size. Therefore when noise is significant, proper detection of your targets is a uniquely decisive step in your final scientific analysis/result.

NoiseChisel is Gnuastro's program for detection of targets that do not have a sharp border (almost all astronomical objects). When the targets have sharp edges/borders (for example, cells in biological imaging), a simple threshold is enough to separate them from noise and each other (if they are not touching). To detect such sharp-edged targets, you can use Gnuastro's Arithmetic program in a command like below (assuming the threshold is `100`, see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403):

```
$ astarithmetic in.fits 100 gt 2 connected-components
```

Since almost no astronomical target has such sharp edges, we need a more advanced detection methodology. NoiseChisel uses a new noise-based paradigm for detection of very extended and diffuse targets that are drowned deeply in the ocean of noise. It was initially introduced in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) and improvements after the first four were published in Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.`

org/abs/1909.11230). Please take the time to go through these papers to most effectively understand the need of NoiseChisel and how best to use it.

The name of NoiseChisel is derived from the first thing it does after thresholding the dataset: to erode it. In mathematical morphology, erosion on pixels can be pictured as carving-off boundary pixels. Hence, what NoiseChisel does is similar to what a wood chisel or stone chisel do. It is just not a hardware, but a software. In fact, looking at it as a chisel and your dataset as a solid cube of rock will greatly help in effectively understanding and optimally using it: with NoiseChisel you literally carve your targets out of the noise. Try running it with the `--checkdetection` option, and open the temporary output as a multi-extension cube, to see each step of the carving process on your input dataset (see Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705).

NoiseChisel's primary output is a binary detection map with the same size as the input but its pixels only have two values: 0 (background) and 1 (foreground). Pixels that do not harbor any detected signal (noise) are given a label (or value) of zero and those with a value of 1 have been identified as hosting signal.

Segmentation is the process of classifying the signal into higher-level constructs. For example, if you have two separate galaxies in one image, NoiseChisel will give a value of 1 to the pixels of both (each forming an "island" of touching foreground pixels). After segmentation, the connected foreground pixels will get separate labels, enabling you to study them individually. NoiseChisel is only focused on detection (separating signal from noise), to *segment* the signal (into separate galaxies for example), Gnuastro has a separate specialized program Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571. NoiseChisel's output can be directly/readily fed into Segment.

For more on NoiseChisel's output format and its benefits (especially in conjunction with Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, and later Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582), please see Akhlaghi 2016 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1611.06387`). Just note that when that paper was published, Segment was not yet spun-off into a separate program, and NoiseChisel done both detection and segmentation.

NoiseChisel's output is designed to be generic enough to be easily used in any higher-level analysis. If your targets are not touching after running NoiseChisel and you are not interested in their sub-structure, you do not need the Segment program at all. You can ask NoiseChisel to find the connected pixels in the output with the `--label` option. In this case, the output will not be a binary image any more, the signal will have counters/labels starting from 1 for each connected group of pixels. You can then directly feed NoiseChisel's output into MakeCatalog for measurements over the detections and the production of a catalog (see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582).

Thanks to the published papers mentioned above, there is no need to provide a more complete introduction to NoiseChisel in this book. However, published papers cannot be updated any more, but the software has evolved/changed. The changes since publication are documented in Section 7.2.1 [NoiseChisel changes after publication], page 554. In Section 7.2.2 [Invoking NoiseChisel], page 555, the details of running NoiseChisel and its options are discussed.

As discussed above, detection is one of the most important steps for your scientific result. It is therefore very important to obtain a good understanding of NoiseChisel (and afterwards Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, and Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582). We

strongly recommend reviewing two tutorials of Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, and Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80. They are designed to show how to most effectively use NoiseChisel for the detection of small faint objects and large extended objects. In the meantime, they also show the modular principle behind Gnuastro's programs and how they are built to complement, and build upon, each other.

Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, culminates in using NoiseChisel to detect galaxies and use its outputs to find the galaxy colors. Defining colors is a very common process in most science-cases. Therefore it is also recommended to (patiently) complete that tutorial for optimal usage of NoiseChisel in conjunction with all the other Gnuastro programs. Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80, shows you can optimize NoiseChisel's settings for very extended objects to successfully carve out to signal-to-noise ratio levels of below 1/10. After going through those tutorials, play a little with the settings (in the order presented in the paper and Section 7.2.2 [Invoking NoiseChisel], page 555) on a dataset you are familiar with and inspect all the check images (options starting with `--check`) to see the effect of each parameter.

Below, in Section 7.2.2 [Invoking NoiseChisel], page 555, we will review NoiseChisel's input, detection, and output options in Section 7.2.2.1 [NoiseChisel input], page 557, Section 7.2.2.2 [Detection options], page 560, and Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569. If you have used NoiseChisel within your research, please run it with `--cite` to list the papers you should cite and how to acknowledge its funding sources.

7.2.1 NoiseChisel changes after publication

NoiseChisel was initially introduced in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) and updates after the first four years were published in Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`). To help in understanding how it works, those papers have many figures showing every step on multiple mock and real examples. We recommended to read these papers for a good understanding of what it does and how each parameter influences the output.

However, the papers cannot be updated anymore, but NoiseChisel has evolved (and will continue to do so): better algorithms or steps have been found and implemented and some options have been added, removed or changed behavior. This book is thus the final and definitive guide to NoiseChisel. The aim of this section is to make the transition from the papers above to the installed version on your system, as smooth as possible with the list below. For a more detailed list of changes in each Gnuastro version, please see the `NEWS` file[12].

- An improved outlier rejection for identifying tiles without any signal has been implemented in the quantile-threshold phase: Prior to version 0.14, outliers were defined globally: the distribution of all tiles with an acceptable `--meanmedqdiff` was inspected and outliers were found and rejected. However, this caused problems when there are strong gradients over the image (for example, an image prior to flat-fielding, or in the presence of a large foreground galaxy). In these cases, the faint wings of galaxies/stars could be mistakenly identified as Sky (leaving a footprint of the object on the Sky output) and wrongly subtracted.

[12] The `NEWS` file is present in the released Gnuastro tarball, see Section 3.2.1 [Release tarball], page 227.

It was possible to play with the parameters to correct this for that particular dataset, but that was frustrating. Therefore from version 0.14, instead of finding outliers from the full tile distribution, we now measure the *slope* of the tile's nearby tiles and find outliers locally. Three options have been added to configure this part of NoiseChisel: `--outliernumngb`, `--outliersclip` and `--outliersigma`. For more on the local outlier-by-distance algorithm and the definition of *slope* mentioned above, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531. In our tests, this gave a much improved estimate of the quantile thresholds and final Sky values with default values.

7.2.2 Invoking NoiseChisel

NoiseChisel will detect signal in noise producing a multi-extension dataset containing a binary detection map which is the same size as the input. Its output can be readily used for input into Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, for higher-level segmentation, or Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, to do measurements and generate a catalog. The executable name is `astnoisechisel` with the following general template

```
$ astnoisechisel [OPTION ...] InputImage.fits
```

One line examples:

```
## Detect signal in input.fits.
$ astnoisechisel input.fits

## Inspect all the detection steps after changing a parameter.
$ astnoisechisel input.fits --qthresh=0.4 --checkdetection

## Detect signal assuming input has 4 amplifier channels along first
## dimension and 1 along the second. Also set the regular tile size
## to 100 along both dimensions:
$ astnoisechisel --numchannels=4,1 --tilesize=100,100 input.fits
```

If NoiseChisel is to do processing (for example, you do not want to get help, or see the values to each input parameter), an input image should be provided with the recognized extensions (see Section 4.1.1.1 [Arguments], page 251). NoiseChisel shares a large set of common operations with other Gnuastro programs, mainly regarding input/output, general processing steps, and general operating modes. To help in a unified experience between all of Gnuastro's programs, these operations have the same command-line options, see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, for a full list/description (they are not repeated here).

As in all Gnuastro programs, options can also be given to NoiseChisel in configuration files. For a thorough description on Gnuastro's configuration file parsing, please see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. All of NoiseChisel's options with a short description are also always available on the command-line with the `--help` option, see Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273. To inspect the option values without actually running NoiseChisel, append your command with `--printparams` (or `-P`).

NoiseChisel's input image may contain blank elements (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). Blank elements will be ignored in all steps of NoiseChisel. Hence if your dataset has bad pixels which should be masked with a mask image, please use Gnuastro's Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403, program (in particular its `where` operator) to convert those pixels

to blank pixels before running NoiseChisel. Gnuastro's Arithmetic program has bitwise operators helping you select specific kinds of bad-pixels when necessary.

A convolution kernel can also be optionally given. If a value (file name) is given to `--kernel` on the command-line or in a configuration file (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270), then that file will be used to convolve the image prior to thresholding. Otherwise a default kernel will be used. For a 2D image, the default kernel is a 2D Gaussian with a FWHM of 2 pixels truncated at 5 times the FWHM. This choice of the default kernel is discussed in Section 3.1.1 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). For a 3D cube, it is a Gaussian with FWHM of 1.5 pixels in the first two dimensions and 0.75 pixels in the third dimension. See Section 6.3.4 [Convolution kernel], page 497, for kernel related options. Passing `none` to `--kernel` will disable convolution. On the other hand, through the `--convolved` option, you may provide an already convolved image, see descriptions below for more.

NoiseChisel defines two tessellations over the input (see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290). This enables it to deal with possible gradients in the input dataset and also significantly improve speed by processing each tile on different threads simultaneously. Tessellation related options are discussed in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257. In particular, NoiseChisel uses two tessellations (with everything between them identical except the tile sizes): a fine-grained one with smaller tiles (used in thresholding and Sky value estimations) and another with larger tiles which is used for pseudo-detections over non-detected regions of the image. The common Tessellation options described in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257, define all parameters of both tessellations. The large tile size for the latter tessellation is set through the `--largetilesize` option. To inspect the tessellations on your input dataset, run NoiseChisel with `--checktiles`.

Usage TIP: Frequently use the options starting with `--check`. Since the noise properties differ between different datasets, you can often play with the parameters/options for a better result than the default parameters. You can start with `--checkdetection` for the main steps. For the full list of NoiseChisel's checking options please run:

```
$ astnoisechisel --help | grep check
```

Not detecting wings of bright galaxies: In such cases, probably the best solution is to increase `--outliernumngb` (to reject tiles that are affected by very flat diffuse signal). For more, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

When working on 3D data cubes, the tessellation options need three values and updating them every time can be annoying/buggy. To simplify the job, NoiseChisel also installs a `astnoisechisel-3d.conf` configuration file (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). You can use this for default values on data cubes. For example, if you installed Gnuastro with the prefix `/usr/local` (the default location, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235), you can benefit from this configuration file by running NoiseChisel like the example below.

```
$ astnoisechisel cube.fits \
                 --config=/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astnoisechisel-3d.conf
```

To further simplify the process, you can define a shell alias in any startup file (for example, `~/.bashrc`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235). Assuming that you installed Gnuastro in `/usr/local`, you can add this line to the startup file (you may put it all in one line, it is broken into two lines here for fitting within page limits).

```
alias astnoisechisel-3d="astnoisechisel \
                --config=/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astnoisechisel-3d.conf"
```

Using this alias, you can call NoiseChisel with the name `astnoisechisel-3d` (instead of `astnoisechisel`). It will automatically load the 3D specific configuration file first, and then parse any other arguments, options or configuration files. You can change the default values in this 3D configuration file by calling them on the command-line as you do with `astnoisechisel`[13]. For example:

```
$ astnoisechisel-3d --numchannels=3,3,1 cube.fits
```

Below, we will discuss NoiseChisel's options, classified into separate sub-sections to help in easy navigation. Section 7.2.2.1 [NoiseChisel input], page 557, discusses the basic options relating to input file(s) and data; these have no effect on the the detection process. Afterwards, Section 7.2.2.2 [Detection options], page 560, fully describes every configuration parameter (option) related to detection and how they affect the final result. The order of options in this section follow the logical order within NoiseChisel. On first reading (while you are still new to NoiseChisel), it is therefore strongly recommended to read the options in the given order below. The output of `--printparams` (or `-P`) also has this order. However, the output of `--help` is sorted alphabetically. Finally, in Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569, the format of NoiseChisel's output is discussed.

7.2.2.1 NoiseChisel input

The options here can be used to configure the inputs and output of NoiseChisel, along with some general processing options. Recall that you can always see the full list of Gnuastro's options with the `--help` (see Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273), or `--printparams` (or `-P`) to see their values (see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259).

`-k FITS`
`--kernel=FITS`

File name of kernel to smooth the image before applying the threshold, see Section 6.3.4 [Convolution kernel], page 497. If no convolution is needed, give this option a value of `none`.

The first step of NoiseChisel is to convolve/smooth the image and use the convolved image in multiple steps including the finding and applying of the quantile threshold (see `--qthresh`). The `--kernel` option is not mandatory. If not called, for a 2D, image a 2D Gaussian profile with a FWHM of 2 pixels truncated at 5 times the FWHM is used. This choice of the default kernel is discussed in Section 3.1.1 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa [2015].

For a 3D cube, when no file name is given to `--kernel`, a Gaussian with FWHM of 1.5 pixels in the first two dimensions and 0.75 pixels in the third dimension will be used. The reason for this particular configuration is that commonly in

[13] Recall that for single-invocation options, the last command-line invocation takes precedence over all previous invocations (including those in the 3D configuration file). See the description of `--config` in Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259.

astronomical applications, 3D datasets do not have the same nature in all three dimensions, commonly the first two dimensions are spatial (RA and Dec) while the third is spectral (for example, wavelength). The samplings are also different, in the default case, the spatial sampling is assumed to be larger than the spectral sampling, hence a wider FWHM in the spatial directions, see Section 6.3.2.7 [Sampling theorem], page 491.

You can use MakeProfiles to build a kernel with any of its recognized profile types and parameters. For more details, please see Section 8.1.4.3 [MakeProfiles output dataset], page 671. For example, the command below will make a Moffat kernel (with $\beta = 2.8$) with FWHM of 2 pixels truncated at 10 times the FWHM.

```
$ astmkprof --oversample=1 --kernel=moffat,2,2.8,10
```

Since convolution can be the slowest step of NoiseChisel, for large datasets, you can convolve the image once with Gnuastro's Convolve (see Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479), and use the `--convolved` option to feed it directly to NoiseChisel. This can help getting faster results when you are playing/testing the higher-level options.

`--khdu=STR`

HDU containing the kernel in the file given to the `--kernel` option.

`--convolved=FITS`

Use this file as the convolved image and do not do convolution (ignore `--kernel`). NoiseChisel will just check the size of the given dataset is the same as the input's size. If a wrong image (with the same size) is given to this option, the results (errors, bugs, etc.) are unpredictable. So please use this option with care and in a highly controlled environment, for example, in the scenario discussed below.

In almost all situations, as the input gets larger, the single most CPU (and time) consuming step in NoiseChisel (and other programs that need a convolved image) is convolution. Therefore minimizing the number of convolutions can save a significant amount of time in some scenarios. One such scenario is when you want to segment NoiseChisel's detections using the same kernel (with Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, which also supports this `--convolved` option). This scenario would require two convolutions of the same dataset: once by NoiseChisel and once by Segment. Using this option in both programs, only one convolution (prior to running NoiseChisel) is enough.

Another common scenario where this option can be convenient is when you are testing NoiseChisel (or Segment) for the best parameters. You have to run NoiseChisel multiple times and see the effect of each change. However, once you are happy with the kernel, re-convolving the input on every change of higher-level parameters will greatly hinder, or discourage, further testing. With this option, you can convolve the input image with your chosen kernel once before running NoiseChisel, then feed it to NoiseChisel on each test run and thus save valuable time for better/more tests.

To build your desired convolution kernel, you can use Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652. To convolve the image with a given kernel you can use Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479. Spatial domain convolution is mandatory: in

the frequency domain, blank pixels (if present) will cover the whole image and gradients will appear on the edges, see Section 6.3.3 [Spatial vs. Frequency domain], page 497.

Below you can see an example of the second scenario: you want to see how variation of the growth level (through the `--detgrowquant` option) will affect the final result. Recall that you can ignore all the extra spaces, new lines, and backslash's ('\') if you are typing in the terminal. In a shell script, remove the `$` signs at the start of the lines.

```
## Make the kernel to convolve with.
$ astmkprof --oversample=1 --kernel=gaussian,2,5

## Convolve the input with the given kernel.
$ astconvolve input.fits --kernel=kernel.fits                \
              --domain=spatial --output=convolved.fits

## Run NoiseChisel with seven growth quantile values.
$ for g in 60 65 70 75 80 85 90; do                          \
    astnoisechisel input.fits --convolved=convolved.fits     \
                   --detgrowquant=0.$g --output=$g.fits;     \
  done
```

`--chdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension containing the convolved image in the file given to `--convolved`.

`-w FITS`
`--widekernel=FITS`
: File name of a wider kernel to use in estimating the difference of the mode and median in a tile (this difference is used to identify the significance of signal in that tile, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531). As displayed in Figure 4 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`), a wider kernel will help in identifying the skewness caused by data in noise. The image that is convolved with this kernel is *only* used for this purpose. Once the mode is found to be sufficiently close to the median, the quantile threshold is found on the image convolved with the sharper kernel (`--kernel`), see `--qthresh`).

  Since convolution will significantly slow down the processing, this feature is optional. When it is not given, the image that is convolved with `--kernel` will be used to identify good tiles *and* apply the quantile threshold. This option is mainly useful in conditions were you have a very large, extended, diffuse signal that is still present in the usable tiles when using `--kernel`. See Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80, for a practical demonstration on how to inspect the tiles used in identifying the quantile threshold.

`--whdu=STR`
: HDU containing the kernel file given to the `--widekernel` option.

`-L INT[,INT]`
`--largetilesize=INT[,INT]`
The size of each tile for the tessellation with the larger tile sizes. Except for the tile size, all the other parameters for this tessellation are taken from the common options described in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257. The format is identical to that of the `--tilesize` option that is discussed in that section.

7.2.2.2 Detection options

Detection is the process of separating the pixels in the image into two groups: 1) Signal, and 2) Noise. Through the parameters below, you can customize the detection process in NoiseChisel. Recall that you can always see the full list of NoiseChisel's options with the `--help` (see Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273), or `--printparams` (or `-P`) to see their values (see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259).

`-Q FLT`
`--meanmedqdiff=FLT`
The maximum acceptable distance between the quantiles of the mean and median in each tile, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531. The quantile threshold estimates are measured on tiles where the quantiles of their mean and median are less distant than the value given to this option. For example, `--meanmedqdiff=0.01` means that only tiles where the mean's quantile is between 0.49 and 0.51 (recall that the median's quantile is 0.5) will be used.

`-a INT`
`--outliernumngb=INT`
Number of neighboring tiles to use for outlier rejection (mostly the wings of bright stars or galaxies). For optimal detection of the wings of bright stars or galaxies, this is **the most important** option in NoiseChisel. This is because the extended wings of bright galaxies or stars (the PSF) can become flat over the tile. In this case, they will satisfy the `--meanmedqdiff` condition and pass that step. Therefore, to correctly identify such bad tiles, we need to look at the neighboring nearby tiles. A tile that is on the wing of a bright galaxy/star will clearly be an outlier when looking at the neighbors. For more on the details of the outlier rejection algorithm, see the latter half of Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531. If this option is given a value of zero, no outlier rejection will take place.

`--outliersclip=FLT,FLT`
σ-clipping parameters for the outlier rejection of the quantile threshold. The format of the given values is similar to `--sigmaclip` below. In NoiseChisel, outlier rejection on tiles is used when identifying the quantile thresholds (`--qthresh`, `--noerodequant`, and `detgrowquant`).

Outlier rejection is useful when the dataset contains a large and diffuse (almost flat within each tile) signal. The flatness of the profile will cause it to successfully pass the mean-median quantile difference test, so we will need to use the distribution of successful tiles for removing these false positives. For more, see the latter half of Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

`--outliersigma=FLT`
: Multiple of sigma to define an outlier. If this option is given a value of zero, no outlier rejection will take place. For more see `--outliersclip` and the latter half of Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531.

`-t FLT`
`--qthresh=FLT`
: The quantile threshold to apply to the convolved image. The detection process begins with applying a quantile threshold to each of the tiles in the small tessellation. The quantile is only calculated for tiles that do not have any significant signal within them, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531. Interpolation is then used to give a value to the unsuccessful tiles and it is finally smoothed.

  The quantile value is a floating point value between 0 and 1. Assume that we have sorted the N data elements of a distribution (the pixels in each mesh on the convolved image). The quantile (q) of this distribution is the value of the element with an index of (the nearest integer to) $q \times N$ in the sorted data set. After thresholding is complete, we will have a binary (two valued) image. The pixels above the threshold are known as foreground pixels (have a value of 1) while those which lie below the threshold are known as background (have a value of 0).

`--smoothwidth=INT`
: Width of flat kernel used to smooth the interpolated quantile thresholds, see `--qthresh` for more.

`--checkqthresh`
: Check the quantile threshold values on the mesh grid. A multi-extension FITS file, suffixed with `_qthresh.fits` will be created showing each step of how the final quantile threshold is found. With this option, NoiseChisel will abort as soon as quantile estimation has been completed, allowing you to inspect the steps leading to the final quantile threshold, this can be disabled with `--continueaftercheck`. By default the output will have the same pixel size as the input, but with the `--oneelempertile` option, only one pixel will be used for each tile (see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257).

  The key things to remember are:

  - The measurements to find the thresholds are done on tiles that cover the whole image in a tessellation. Recall that you can set the size of tiles with `--tilesize` and check them with `--checktiles`. Therefore except for the first and last extensions, the rest only show tiles.
  - NoiseChisel ultimately has three thresholds: the quantile threshold (that you set with `--qthresh`), the no-erode quantile (set with `--noerodequant`) and the growth quantile (set with `--detgrowquant`). Therefore for each step, we have three extensions.

  The output file will have the following extensions. Below, the extensions are put in the same order as you see in the file, with their name.

`CONVOLVED`
: This is the input image after convolution with the kernel (which is a FWHM=2 Gaussian by default, but you can change with `--kernel`). Recall that the thresholds are defined on the convolved image.

`QTHRESH_ERODE`
`QTHRESH_NOERODE`
`QTHRESH_EXPAND`
: In these three extensions, the tiles that have a quantile-of-mean more/less than 0.5 (quantile of median) $\pm d$ are set to NaN (d is the value given to `--meanmedqdiff`, see Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531). Therefore the non-NaN tiles that you see here are the tiles where there is no significant skewness (changing signal) within that tile. The only differing thing between the three extensions is the values of the non-NaN tiles. These values will be used to construct the final threshold map over the whole image.

`VALUE1_NO_OUTLIER`
`VALUE2_NO_OUTLIER`
`VALUE3_NO_OUTLIER`
: All outlier tiles have been masked. The reason for removing outliers is that the quantile-of-mean is only sensitive to signal that varies on a scale that is smaller than the tile size. Therefore the extended wings of large galaxies or bright stars (which vary on scales much larger than the tile size) will pass that test. As described in Section 7.1.4.3 [Quantifying signal in a tile], page 531, outlier rejection is customized through `--outliernumngb`, `--outliersclip` and `--outliersigma`.

`THRESH1_INTERP`
`THRESH2_INTERP`
`THRESH3_INTERP`
: Using the successful values that remain after the previous step, give values to all (interpolate) the tiles in the image. The interpolation is done using the nearest-neighbor method: for each tile, the N nearest neighbors are found and the median of their values is used to fill it. You can set the value of N through the `--interpnumngb` option.

`THRESH1_SMOOTH`
`THRESH2_SMOOTH`
`THRESH3_SMOOTH`
: Smooth the interpolated image to remove the strong differences between touching tiles. Because we used the median value of the N nearest neighbors in the previous step, there can be strong discontinuities on the edges of tiles (which can directly show in the image after applying the threshold). The scale of the smoothing (num-

ber of nearby tiles to smooth with) is set with the `--smoothwidth` option.

`QTHRESH-APPLIED`
The pixels in this image can only have three values:

`0` These pixels had a value below the quantile threshold.

`1` These pixels had a value above the quantile threshold, but below the threshold for no erosion. Therefore in the next step, NoiseChisel will erode (set them to 0) these pixels if they are touching a 0-valued pixel.

`2` These pixels had a value above the no-erosion threshold. So NoiseChisel will not erode these pixels, it will only apply Opening to them afterwards. Recall that this was done to avoid loosing sharp point-sources (like stars in space-based imaging).

`--blankasforeground`
In the erosion and opening steps below, treat blank elements as foreground (regions above the threshold). By default, blank elements in the dataset are considered to be background, so if a foreground pixel is touching it, it will be eroded. This option is irrelevant if the datasets contains no blank elements.

When there are many blank elements in the dataset, treating them as foreground will systematically erode their regions less, therefore systematically creating more false positives. So use this option (when blank values are present) with care.

`-e INT`
`--erode=INT`
The number of erosions to apply to the binary thresholded image. Erosion is simply the process of flipping (from 1 to 0) any of the foreground pixels that neighbor a background pixel. In a 2D image, there are two kinds of neighbors, 4-connected and 8-connected neighbors. In a 3D dataset, there are three: 6-connected, 18-connected, and 26-connected. You can specify which class of neighbors should be used for erosion with the `--erodengb` option, see below.

Erosion has the effect of shrinking the foreground pixels. To put it another way, it expands the holes. This is a founding principle in NoiseChisel: it exploits the fact that with very low thresholds, the holes in the very low surface brightness regions of an image will be smaller than regions that have no signal. Therefore by expanding those holes, we are able to separate the regions harboring signal.

`--erodengb=INT`
The type of neighborhood (structuring element) used in erosion, see `--erode` for an explanation on erosion. If the input is a 2D image, only two integer values are acceptable: 4 or 8. For a 3D input data cube, the acceptable values are: 6, 18 and 26.

In 2D 4-connectivity, the neighbors of a pixel are defined as the four pixels on the top, bottom, right and left of a pixel that share an edge with it. The 8-connected neighbors on the other hand include the 4-connected neighbors along

with the other 4 pixels that share a corner with this pixel. See Figure 6 (a) and (b) in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa (2015) for a demonstration. A similar argument applies to 3D data cubes.

`--noerodequant`
: Pure erosion is going to carve off sharp and small objects completely out of the detected regions. This option can be used to avoid missing such sharp and small objects (which have significant pixels, but not over a large area). All pixels with a value larger than the significance level specified by this option will not be eroded during the erosion step above. However, they will undergo the erosion and dilation of the opening step below.

  Like the `--qthresh` option, the significance level is determined using the quantile (a value between 0 and 1). Just as a reminder, in the normal distribution, 1σ, 1.5σ, and 2σ are approximately on the 0.84, 0.93, and 0.98 quantiles.

`-p INT`
`--opening=INT`
: Depth of opening to be applied to the eroded binary image. Opening is a composite operation. When opening a binary image with a depth of n, n erosions (explained in `--erode`) are followed by n dilations. Simply put, dilation is the inverse of erosion. When dilating an image any background pixel is flipped (from 0 to 1) to become a foreground pixel. Dilation has the effect of fattening the foreground. Note that in NoiseChisel, the erosion which is part of opening is independent of the initial erosion that is done on the thresholded image (explained in `--erode`). The structuring element for the opening can be specified with the `--openingngb` option. Opening has the effect of removing the thin foreground connections (mostly noise) between separate foreground 'islands' (detections) thereby completely isolating them. Once opening is complete, we have *initial* detections.

`--openingngb=INT`
: The structuring element used for opening, see `--erodengb` for more information about a structuring element.

`--skyfracnoblank`
: Ignore blank pixels when estimating the fraction of undetected pixels for Sky estimation. NoiseChisel only measures the Sky over the tiles that have a sufficiently large fraction of undetected pixels (value given to `--minskyfrac`). By default this fraction is found by dividing number of undetected pixels in a tile by the tile's area. But this default behavior ignores the possibility of blank pixels. In situations that blank/masked pixels are scattered across the image and if they are large enough, all the tiles can fail the `--minskyfrac` test, thus not allowing NoiseChisel to proceed. With this option, such scenarios can be fixed: the denominator of the fraction will be the number of non-blank elements in the tile, not the total tile area.

`-B FLT`
`--minskyfrac=FLT`
: Minimum fraction (value between 0 and 1) of Sky (undetected) areas in a tile. Only tiles with a fraction of undetected pixels (Sky) larger than this value will

be used to estimate the Sky value. NoiseChisel uses this option value twice to estimate the Sky value: after initial detections and in the end when false detections have been removed.

Because of the PSF and their intrinsic amorphous properties, astronomical objects (except cosmic rays) never have a clear cutoff and commonly sink into the noise very slowly. Even below the very low thresholds used by NoiseChisel. So when a large fraction of the area of one mesh is covered by detections, it is very plausible that their faint wings are present in the undetected regions (hence causing a bias in any measurement). To get an accurate measurement of the above parameters over the tessellation, tiles that harbor too many detected regions should be excluded. The used tiles are visible in the respective `--check` option of the given step.

`--checkdetsky`
Check the initial approximation of the sky value and its standard deviation in a FITS file ending with `_detsky.fits`. With this option, NoiseChisel will abort as soon as the sky value used for defining pseudo-detections is complete. This allows you to inspect the steps leading to the final quantile threshold, this behavior can be disabled with `--continueaftercheck`. By default the output will have the same pixel size as the input, but with the `--oneelempertile` option, only one pixel will be used for each tile (see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257).

`-s FLT,FLT`
`--sigmaclip=FLT,FLT`
The σ-clipping parameters for measuring the initial and final Sky values from the undetected pixels, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

This option takes two values which are separated by a comma (`,`). Each value can either be written as a single number or as a fraction of two numbers (for example, `3,1/10`). The first value to this option is the multiple of σ that will be clipped (α in that section). The second value is the exit criteria. If it is less than 1, then it is interpreted as tolerance and if it is larger than one it is assumed to be the fixed number of iterations. Hence, in the latter case the value must be an integer.

`-R FLT`
`--dthresh=FLT`
The detection threshold: a multiple of the initial Sky standard deviation added with the initial Sky approximation (which you can inspect with `--checkdetsky`). This flux threshold is applied to the initially undetected regions on the unconvolved image. The background pixels that are completely engulfed in a 4-connected foreground region are converted to background (holes are filled) and one opening (depth of 1) is applied over both the initially detected and undetected regions. The Signal to noise ratio of the resulting 'pseudo-detections' are used to identify true vs. false detections. See Section 3.1.5 and Figure 7 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa (2015) for a very complete explanation.

`--dopening=INT`
: The number of openings to do after applying `--dthresh`.

`--dopeningngb=INT`
: The connectivity used in the opening of `--dopening`. In a 2D image this must be either 4 or 8. The stronger the connectivity, the more smaller regions will be discarded.

`--holengb=INT`
: The connectivity (defined by the number of neighbors) to fill holes after applying `--dthresh` (above) to find pseudo-detections. For example, in a 2D image it must be 4 (the neighbors that are most strongly connected) or 8 (all neighbors). The stronger the connectivity, the stronger the hole will be enclosed. So setting a value of 8 in a 2D image means that the walls of the hole are 4-connected. If standard (near Sky level) values are given to `--dthresh`, setting `--holengb=4`, might fill the complete dataset and thus not create enough pseudo-detections.

`--pseudoconcomp=INT`
: The connectivity (defined by the number of neighbors) to find individual pseudo-detections. If it is a weaker connectivity (4 in a 2D image), then pseudo-detections that are connected on the corners will be treated as separate.

`-m INT`
`--snminarea=INT`
: The minimum area to calculate the Signal to noise ratio on the pseudo-detections of both the initially detected and undetected regions. When the area in a pseudo-detection is too small, the Signal to noise ratio measurements will not be accurate and their distribution will be heavily skewed to the positive. So it is best to ignore any pseudo-detection that is smaller than this area. Use `--detsnhistnbins` to check if this value is reasonable or not.

`--checksn`
: Save the S/N values of the pseudo-detections (and possibly grown detections if `--cleangrowndet` is called) into separate tables. If `--tableformat` is a FITS table, each table will be written into a separate extension of one file suffixed with `_detsn.fits`. If it is plain text, a separate file will be made for each table (ending in `_detsn_sky.txt`, `_detsn_det.txt` and `_detsn_grown.txt`). For more on `--tableformat` see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

  You can use these to inspect the S/N values and their distribution (in combination with the `--checkdetection` option to see where the pseudo-detections are). You can use Gnuastro's Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517, to make a histogram of the distribution or any other analysis you would like for better understanding of the distribution (for example, through a histogram).

`--minnumfalse=INT`
: The minimum number of 'pseudo-detections' over the undetected regions to identify a Signal-to-Noise ratio threshold. The Signal to noise ratio (S/N) of false pseudo-detections in each tile is found using the quantile of the S/N distribution of the pseudo-detections over the undetected pixels in each mesh.

If the number of S/N measurements is not large enough, the quantile will not be accurate (can have large scatter). For example, if you set `--snquant=0.99` (or the top 1 percent), then it is best to have at least 100 S/N measurements.

`-c FLT`
`--snquant=FLT`
The quantile of the Signal to noise ratio distribution of the pseudo-detections in each mesh to use for filling the large mesh grid. Note that this is only calculated for the large mesh grids that satisfy the minimum fraction of undetected pixels (value of `--minbfrac`) and minimum number of pseudo-detections (value of `--minnumfalse`).

`--snthresh=FLT`
Manually set the signal-to-noise ratio of true pseudo-detections. With this option, NoiseChisel will not attempt to find pseudo-detections over the noisy regions of the dataset, but will directly go onto applying the manually input value.

This option is useful in crowded images where there is no blank sky to find the sky pseudo-detections. You can get this value on a similarly reduced dataset (from another region of the Sky with more undetected regions spaces).

`-d FLT`
`--detgrowquant=FLT`
Quantile limit to "grow" the final detections. As discussed in the previous options, after applying the initial quantile threshold, layers of pixels are carved off the objects to identify true signal. With this step you can return those low surface brightness layers that were carved off back to the detections. To disable growth, set the value of this option to `1`.

The process is as follows: after the true detections are found, all the non-detected pixels above this quantile will be put in a list and used to "grow" the true detections (seeds of the growth). Like all quantile thresholds, this threshold is defined and applied to the convolved dataset. Afterwards, the dataset is dilated once (with minimum connectivity) to connect very thin regions on the boundary: imagine building a dam at the point rivers spill into an open sea/ocean. Finally, all holes are filled. In the geography metaphor, holes can be seen as the closed (by the dams) rivers and lakes, so this process is like turning the water in all such rivers and lakes into soil. See `--detgrowmaxholesize` for configuring the hole filling.

Note that since the growth occurs on all neighbors of a data element, the quantile for 3D detection must be must larger than that of 2D detection. Recall that in 2D each element has 8 neighbors while in 3D there are 27 neighbors.

`--detgrowmaxholesize=INT`
The maximum hole size to fill during the final expansion of the true detections as described in `--detgrowquant`. This is necessary when the input contains many smaller objects and can be used to avoid marking blank sky regions as detections.

For example, multiple galaxies can be positioned such that they surround an empty region of sky. If all the holes are filled, the Sky region in between

them will be taken as a detection which is not desired. To avoid such cases, the integer given to this option must be smaller than the hole between such objects. However, we should caution that unless the "hole" is very large, the combined faint wings of the galaxies might actually be present in between them, so be very careful in not filling such holes.

On the other hand, if you have a very large (and extended) galaxy, the diffuse wings of the galaxy may create very large holes over the detections. In such cases, a large enough value to this option will cause all such holes to be detected as part of the large galaxy and thus help in detecting it to extremely low surface brightness limits. Therefore, especially when large and extended objects are present in the image, it is recommended to give this option (very) large values. For one real-world example, see Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80.

`--cleangrowndet`

After dilation, if the signal-to-noise ratio of a detection is less than the derived pseudo-detection S/N limit, that detection will be discarded. In an ideal/clean noise, a true detection's S/N should be larger than its constituent pseudo-detections because its area is larger and it also covers more signal. However, on a false detections (especially at lower `--snquant` values), the increase in size can cause a decrease in S/N below that threshold.

This will improve purity and not change completeness (a true detection will not be discarded). Because a true detection has flux in its vicinity and dilation will catch more of that flux and increase the S/N. So on a true detection, the final S/N cannot be less than pseudo-detections.

However, in many real images bad processing creates artifacts that cannot be accurately removed by the Sky subtraction. In such cases, this option will decrease the completeness (will artificially discard true detections). So this feature is not default and should to be explicitly called when you know the noise is clean.

`--checkdetection`

Every step of the detection process will be added as an extension to a file with the suffix `_det.fits`. Going through each would just be a repeat of the explanations above and also of those in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa (2015). The extension label should be sufficient to recognize which step you are observing. Viewing all the steps can be the best guide in choosing the best set of parameters. With this option, NoiseChisel will abort as soon as a snapshot of all the detection process is saved. This behavior can be disabled with `--continueaftercheck`.

`--checksky`

Check the derivation of the final sky and its standard deviation values on the mesh grid. With this option, NoiseChisel will abort as soon as the sky value is estimated over the image (on each tile). This behavior can be disabled with `--continueaftercheck`. By default the output will have the same pixel size as the input, but with the `--oneelempertile` option, only one pixel will be used for each tile (see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257).

7.2.2.3 NoiseChisel output

NoiseChisel's output is a multi-extension FITS file. The main extension/dataset is a (binary) detection map. It has the same size as the input but with only two possible values for all pixels: 0 (for pixels identified as noise) and 1 (for those identified as signal/detections). The detection map is followed by a Sky and Sky standard deviation dataset (which are calculated from the binary image). By default (when `--rawoutput` is not called), NoiseChisel will also subtract the Sky value from the input and save the sky-subtracted input as the first extension in the output with data. The zero-th extension (that contains no data), contains NoiseChisel's configuration as FITS keywords, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

The name of the output file can be set by giving a value to `--output` (this is a common option between all programs and is therefore discussed in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254). If `--output` is not used, the input name will be suffixed with `_detected.fits` and used as output, see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292. If any of the options starting with `--check*` are given, NoiseChisel will not complete and will abort as soon as the respective check images are created. For more information on the different check images, see the description for the `--check*` options in Section 7.2.2.2 [Detection options], page 560, (this can be disabled with `--continueaftercheck`).

The last two extensions of the output are the Sky and its Standard deviation, see Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528, for a complete explanation. They are calculated on the tile grid that you defined for NoiseChisel. By default these datasets will have the same size as the input, but with all the pixels in one tile given one value. To be more space-efficient (keep only one pixel per tile), you can use the `--oneelempertile` option, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290.

To inspect any of NoiseChisel's output files, assuming you use SAO DS9, you can configure your Graphic User Interface (GUI) to open NoiseChisel's output as a multi-extension data cube. This will allow you to flip through the different extensions and visually inspect the results. This process has been described for the GNOME GUI (most common GUI in GNU/Linux operating systems) in Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705.

NoiseChisel's output configuration options are described in detail below.

`--continueaftercheck`
: Continue NoiseChisel after any of the options starting with `--check` (see Section 7.2.2.2 [Detection options], page 560. NoiseChisel involves many steps and as a result, there are many checks, allowing you to inspect the status of the processing. The results of each step affect the next steps of processing. Therefore, when you want to check the status of the processing at one step, the time spent to complete NoiseChisel is just wasted/distracting time.

  To encourage easier experimentation with the option values, when you use any of the NoiseChisel options that start with `--check`, NoiseChisel will abort once its desired extensions have been written. With `--continueaftercheck` option, you can disable this behavior and ask NoiseChisel to continue with the rest of the processing, even after the requested check files are complete.

`--ignoreblankintiles`
: Do not set the input's blank pixels to blank in the tiled outputs (for example, Sky and Sky standard deviation extensions of the output). This is only applicable when the tiled output has the same size as the input, in other words, when `--oneelempertile` is not called.

  By default, blank values in the input (commonly on the edges which are outside the survey/field area) will be set to blank in the tiled outputs also. But in other scenarios this default behavior is not desired; for example, if you have masked something in the input, but want the tiled output under that also.

`-l`
`--label`
: Run a connected-components algorithm on the finally detected pixels to identify which pixels are connected to which. By default the main output is a binary dataset with only two values: 0 (for noise) and 1 (for signal/detections). See Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569, for more.

  The purpose of NoiseChisel is to detect targets that are extended and diffuse, with outer parts that sink into the noise very gradually (galaxies and stars for example). Since NoiseChisel digs down to extremely low surface brightness values, many such targets will commonly be detected together as a single large body of connected pixels.

  To properly separate connected objects, sophisticated segmentation methods are commonly necessary on NoiseChisel's output. Gnuastro has the dedicated Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, program for this job. Since input images are commonly large and can take a significant volume, the extra volume necessary to store the labels of the connected components in the detection map (which will be created with this `--label` option, in 32-bit signed integer type) can thus be a major waste of space. Since the default output is just a binary dataset, an 8-bit unsigned dataset is enough.

  The binary output will also encourage users to segment the result separately prior to doing higher-level analysis. As an alternative to `--label`, if you have the binary detection image, you can use the `connected-components` operator in Gnuastro's Arithmetic program to identify regions that are connected with each other. For example, with this command (assuming NoiseChisel's output is called `nc.fits`):

```
$ astarithmetic nc.fits 2 connected-components -hDETECTIONS
```

`--rawoutput`
: Do not include the Sky-subtracted input image as the first extension of the output. By default, the Sky-subtracted input is put in the first extension of the output. The next extensions are NoiseChisel's main outputs described above.

  The extra Sky-subtracted input can be convenient in checking NoiseChisel's output and comparing the detection map with the input: visually see if everything you expected is detected (reasonable completeness) and that you do not have too many false detections (reasonable purity). This visual inspection is simplified if you use SAO DS9 to view NoiseChisel's output as a multi-extension data-cube, see Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705.

When you are satisfied with your NoiseChisel configuration (therefore you do not need to check on every run), or you want to archive/transfer the outputs, or the datasets become large, or you are running NoiseChisel as part of a pipeline, this Sky-subtracted input image can be a significant burden (take up a large volume). The fact that the input is also noisy, makes it hard to compress it efficiently.

In such cases, this `--rawoutput` can be used to avoid the extra sky-subtracted input in the output. It is always possible to easily produce the Sky-subtracted dataset from the input (assuming it is in extension `1` of `in.fits`) and the `SKY` extension of NoiseChisel's output (let's call it `nc.fits`) with a command like below (assuming NoiseChisel was not run with `--oneelempertile`, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290):

```
$ astarithmetic in.fits nc.fits - -h1 -hSKY
```

Save space: with the `--rawoutput` and `--oneelempertile`, NoiseChisel's output will only be one binary detection map and two much smaller arrays with one value per tile. Since none of these have noise they can be compressed very effectively (without any loss of data) with exceptionally high compression ratios. This makes it easy to archive, or transfer, NoiseChisel's output even on huge datasets. To compress it with the most efficient method (take up less volume), run the following command:

```
$ gzip --best noisechisel_output.fits
```

The resulting `.fits.gz` file can then be fed into any of Gnuastro's programs directly, or viewed in viewers like SAO DS9, without having to decompress it separately (they will just take a little longer, because they have to internally decompress it before starting). See Section 2.1.12 [NoiseChisel optimization for storage], page 46, for an example on a real dataset.

7.3 Segment

Once signal is separated from noise (for example, with Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552), you have a binary dataset: each pixel is either signal (1) or noise (0). Signal (for example, every galaxy in your image) has been "detected", but all detections have a label of 1. Therefore while we know which pixels contain signal, we still cannot find out how many galaxies they contain or which detected pixels correspond to which galaxy. At the lowest (most generic) level, detection is a kind of segmentation (segmenting the whole dataset into signal and noise, see Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552). Here, we will define segmentation only on signal: to separate sub-structure within the detections.

If the targets are clearly separated, or their detected regions are not touching, a simple connected components[14] algorithm (very basic segmentation) is enough to separate the regions that are touching/connected. This is such a basic and simple form of segmentation that Gnuastro's Arithmetic program has an operator for it: see `connected-components` in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412. Assuming the binary dataset is called `binary.fits`, you can use it with a command like this:

[14] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Connected-component_labeling`

```
$ astarithmetic binary.fits 2 connected-components
```

You can even do a very basic detection (a threshold, say at value `100`) *and* segmentation in Arithmetic with a single command like below:

```
$ astarithmetic in.fits 100 gt 2 connected-components
```

However, in most astronomical situations our targets are not nicely separated or have a sharp boundary/edge (for a threshold to suffice): they touch (for example, merging galaxies), or are simply in the same line-of-sight (which is much more common). This causes their images to overlap.

In particular, when you do your detection with NoiseChisel, you will detect signal to very low surface brightness limits: deep into the faint wings of galaxies or bright stars (which can extend very far and irregularly from their center). Therefore, it often happens that several galaxies are detected as one large detection. Since they are touching, a simple connected components algorithm will not suffice. It is therefore necessary to do a more sophisticated segmentation and break up the detected pixels (even those that are touching) into multiple target objects as accurately as possible.

Segment will use a detection map and its corresponding dataset to find sub-structure over the detected areas and use them for its segmentation. Until Gnuastro version 0.6 (released in 2018), Segment was part of Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552. Therefore, similar to NoiseChisel, the best place to start reading about Segment and understanding what it does (with many illustrative figures) is Section 3.2 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`), and continue with Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`).

As a summary, Segment first finds true *clump*s over the detections. Clumps are associated with local maxima/minima[15] and extend over the neighboring pixels until they reach a local minimum/maximum (*river*/*watershed*). By default, Segment will use the distribution of clump signal-to-noise ratios over the undetected regions as reference to find "true" clumps over the detections. Using the undetected regions can be disabled by directly giving a signal-to-noise ratio to `--clumpsnthresh`.

The true clumps are then grown to a certain threshold over the detections. Based on the strength of the connections (rivers/watersheds) between the grown clumps, they are considered parts of one *object* or as separate *object*s. See Section 3.2 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) for more. Segment's main output are thus two labeled datasets: 1) clumps, and 2) objects. See Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580, for more.

To start learning about Segment, especially in relation to detection (Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552) and measurement (Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582), the recommended references are Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`), Akhlaghi 2016 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1611.06387`) and Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`). If you have used Segment within your research, please run it with `--cite` to list the papers you should cite and how to acknowledge its funding sources.

Those papers cannot be updated any more but the software will evolve. For example, Segment became a separate program (from NoiseChisel) in 2018 (after those papers were

[15] By default the maximum is used as the first clump pixel, to define clumps based on local minima, use the `--minima` option.

published). Therefore this book is the definitive reference. Finally, in Section 7.3.1 [Invoking Segment], page 573, we will discuss Segment's inputs, outputs and configuration options.

7.3.1 Invoking Segment

Segment will identify substructure within the detected regions of an input image. Segment's output labels can be directly used for measurements (for example, with Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582). The executable name is `astsegment` with the following general template

```
$ astsegment [OPTION ...] InputImage.fits
```

One line examples:

```
## Segment NoiseChisel's detected regions.
$ astsegment default-noisechisel-output.fits

## Use a hand-input S/N value for keeping true clumps
## (avoid finding the S/N using the undetected regions).
$ astsegment nc-out.fits --clumpsnthresh=10

## Inspect all the segmentation steps after changing a parameter.
$ astsegment input.fits --snquant=0.9 --checksegmentaion

## Use the fixed value of 0.01 for the input's Sky standard deviation
## (in the units of the input), and assume all the pixels are a
## detection (for example, a large structure extending over the whole
## image), and only keep clumps with S/N>10 as true clumps.
$ astsegment in.fits --std=0.01 --detection=all --clumpsnthresh=10
```

If Segment is to do processing (for example, you do not want to get help, or see the values of each option), at least one input dataset is necessary along with detection and error information, either as separate datasets (per-pixel) or fixed values, see Section 7.3.1.1 [Segment input], page 574. Segment shares a large set of common operations with other Gnuastro programs, mainly regarding input/output, general processing steps, and general operating modes. To help in a unified experience between all of Gnuastro's programs, these common operations have the same names and defined in Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253.

As in all Gnuastro programs, options can also be given to Segment in configuration files. For a thorough description of Gnuastro's configuration file parsing, please see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. All of Segment's options with a short description are also always available on the command-line with the `--help` option, see Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273. To inspect the option values without actually running Segment, append your command with `--printparams` (or `-P`).

To help in easy navigation between Segment's options, they are separately discussed in the three sub-sections below: Section 7.3.1.1 [Segment input], page 574, discusses how you can customize the inputs to Segment. Section 7.3.1.2 [Segmentation options], page 577, is devoted to options specific to the high-level segmentation process. Finally, in Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580, we will discuss options that affect Segment's output.

7.3.1.1 Segment input

Besides the input dataset (for example, astronomical image), Segment also needs to know the Sky standard deviation and the regions of the dataset that it should segment. The values dataset is assumed to be Sky subtracted by default. If it is not, you can ask Segment to subtract the Sky internally by calling `--sky`. For the rest of this discussion, we will assume it is already sky subtracted.

The Sky and its standard deviation can be a single value (to be used for the whole dataset) or a separate dataset (for a separate value per pixel). If a dataset is used for the Sky and its standard deviation, they must either be the size of the input image, or have a single value per tile (generated with `--oneelempertile`, see Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257, and Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290).

The detected regions/pixels can be specified as a detection map (for example, see Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569). If `--detection=all`, Segment will not read any detection map and assume the whole input is a single detection. For example, when the dataset is fully covered by a large nearby galaxy/globular cluster.

When dataset are to be used for any of the inputs, Segment will assume they are multiple extensions of a single file by default (when `--std` or `--detection` are not called). For example, NoiseChisel's default output Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569. When the Sky-subtracted values are in one file, and the detection and Sky standard deviation are in another, you just need to use `--detection`: in the absence of `--std`, Segment will look for both the detection labels and Sky standard deviation in the file given to `--detection`. Ultimately, if all three are in separate files, you need to call both `--detection` and `--std`.

The extensions of the three mandatory inputs can be specified with `--hdu`, `--dhdu`, and `--stdhdu`. For a full discussion on what to give to these options, see the description of `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254. To see their default values (along with all the other options), run Segment with the `--printparams` (or `-P`) option. Just recall that in the absence of `--detection` and `--std`, all three are assumed to be in the same file. If you only want to see Segment's default values for HDUs on your system, run this command:

```
$ astsegment -P | grep hdu
```

By default Segment will convolve the input with a kernel to improve the signal-to-noise ratio of true peaks. If you already have the convolved input dataset, you can pass it directly to Segment for faster processing (using the `--convolved` and `--chdu` options). Just do not forget that the convolved image must also be Sky-subtracted before calling Segment. If a value/file is given to `--sky`, the convolved values will also be Sky subtracted internally. Alternatively, if you prefer to give a kernel (with `--kernel` and `--khdu`), Segment can do the convolution internally. To disable convolution, use `--kernel=none`.

`--sky=STR/FLT`

> The Sky value(s) to subtract from the input. This option can either be given a constant number or a file name containing a dataset (multiple values, per pixel or per tile). By default, Segment will assume the input dataset is Sky subtracted, so this option is not mandatory.
>
> If the value cannot be read as a number, it is assumed to be a file name. When the value is a file, the extension can be specified with `--skyhdu`. When it is

not a single number, the given dataset must either have the same size as the output or the same size as the tessellation (so there is one pixel per tile, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290).

When this option is given, its value(s) will be subtracted from the input and the (optional) convolved dataset (given to `--convolved`) prior to starting the segmentation process.

`--skyhdu=STR/INT`

The HDU/extension containing the Sky values. This is mandatory when the value given to `--sky` is not a number. Please see the description of `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254, for the different ways you can identify a special extension.

`--std=STR/FLT`

The Sky standard deviation value(s) corresponding to the input. The value can either be a constant number or a file name containing a dataset (multiple values, per pixel or per tile). The Sky standard deviation is mandatory for Segment to operate.

If the value cannot be read as a number, it is assumed to be a file name. When the value is a file, the extension can be specified with `--skyhdu`. When it is not a single number, the given dataset must either have the same size as the output or the same size as the tessellation (so there is one pixel per tile, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290).

When this option is not called, Segment will assume the standard deviation is a dataset and in a HDU/extension (`--stdhdu`) of another one of the input file(s). If a file is given to `--detection`, it will assume that file contains the standard deviation dataset, otherwise, it will look into input filename (the main argument, without any option).

`--stdhdu=INT/STR`

The HDU/extension containing the Sky standard deviation values, when the value given to `--std` is a file name. Please see the description of `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254, for the different ways you can identify a special extension.

`--variance`

The input Sky standard deviation value/dataset is actually variance. When this option is called, the square root of input Sky standard deviation (see `--std`) is used internally, not its raw value(s).

`-d FITS`

`--detection=FITS`

Detection map to use for segmentation. If given a value of `all`, Segment will assume the whole dataset must be segmented, see below. If a detection map is given, the extension can be specified with `--dhdu`. If not given, Segment will assume the desired HDU/extension is in the main input argument (input file specified with no option).

The final segmentation (clumps or objects) will only be over the non-zero pixels of this detection map. The dataset must have the same size as the input image.

Only datasets with an integer type are acceptable for the labeled image, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. If your detection map only has integer values, but it is stored in a floating point container, you can use Gnuastro's Arithmetic program (see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403) to convert it to an integer container, like the example below:

```
$ astarithmetic float.fits int32 --output=int.fits
```

It may happen that the whole input dataset is covered by signal, for example, when working on parts of the Andromeda galaxy, or nearby globular clusters (that cover the whole field of view). In such cases, segmentation is necessary over the complete dataset, not just specific regions (detections). By default Segment will first use the undetected regions as a reference to find the proper signal-to-noise ratio of "true" clumps (give a purity level specified with `--snquant`). Therefore, in such scenarios you also need to manually give a "true" clump signal-to-noise ratio with the `--clumpsnthresh` option to disable looking into the undetected regions, see Section 7.3.1.2 [Segmentation options], page 577. In such cases, is possible to make a detection map that only has the value `1` for all pixels (for example, using Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403), but for convenience, you can also use `--detection=all`.

`--dhdu` The HDU/extension containing the detection map given to `--detection`. Please see the description of `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254, for the different ways you can identify a special extension.

`-k FITS`
`--kernel=FITS`
The name of file containing kernel that will be used to convolve the input image. The usage of this option is identical to NoiseChisel's `--kernel` option (Section 7.2.2.1 [NoiseChisel input], page 557). Please see the descriptions there for more. To disable convolution, you can give it a value of `none`.

`--khdu` The HDU/extension containing the kernel used for convolution. For acceptable values, please see the description of `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

`--convolved=FITS`
The convolved image's file name to avoid internal convolution by Segment. The usage of this option is identical to NoiseChisel's `--convolved` option. Please see Section 7.2.2.1 [NoiseChisel input], page 557, for a thorough discussion of the usefulness and best practices of using this option.

If you want to use the same convolution kernel for detection (with Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552) and segmentation, with this option, you can use the same convolved image (that is also available in NoiseChisel) and avoid two convolutions. However, just be careful to use the input to NoiseChisel as the input to Segment also, then use the `--sky` and `--std` to specify the Sky and its standard deviation (from NoiseChisel's output). Recall that when NoiseChisel is not called with `--rawoutput`, the first extension of NoiseChisel's output is the *Sky-subtracted* input (see Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569). So if you use the same convolved image that you fed to NoiseChisel, but use

NoiseChisel's output with Segment's `--convolved`, then the convolved image will not be Sky subtracted.

`--chdu` The HDU/extension containing the convolved image (given to `--convolved`). For acceptable values, please see the description of `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

`-L INT[,INT]`
`--largetilesize=INT[,INT]`
The size of the large tiles to use for identifying the clump S/N threshold over the undetected regions. The usage of this option is identical to NoiseChisel's `--largetilesize` option (Section 7.2.2.1 [NoiseChisel input], page 557). Please see the descriptions there for more.

The undetected regions can be a significant fraction of the dataset and finding clumps requires sorting of the desired regions, which can be slow. To speed up the processing, Segment finds clumps in the undetected regions over separate large tiles. This allows it to have to sort a much smaller set of pixels and also to treat them independently and in parallel. Both these issues greatly speed it up. Just be sure to not decrease the large tile sizes too much (less than 100 pixels in each dimension). It is important for them to be much larger than the clumps.

7.3.1.2 Segmentation options

The options below can be used to configure every step of the segmentation process in the Segment program. For a more complete explanation (with figures to demonstrate each step), please see Section 3.2 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`), and also Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571. By default, Segment will follow the procedure described in the paper to find the S/N threshold based on the noise properties. This can be disabled by directly giving a trustable signal-to-noise ratio to the `--clumpsnthresh` option.

Recall that you can always see the full list of Gnuastro's options with the `--help` (see Section 4.3 [Getting help], page 273), or `--printparams` (or `-P`) to see their values (see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259).

`-B FLT`
`--minskyfrac=FLT`
Minimum fraction (value between 0 and 1) of Sky (undetected) areas in a large tile. Only (large) tiles with a fraction of undetected pixels (Sky) greater than this value will be used for finding clumps. The clumps found in the undetected areas will be used to estimate a S/N threshold for true clumps. Therefore this is an important option (to decrease) in crowded fields. Operationally, this is almost identical to NoiseChisel's `--minskyfrac` option (Section 7.2.2.2 [Detection options], page 560). Please see the descriptions there for more.

`--minima` Build the clumps based on the local minima, not maxima. By default, clumps are built starting from local maxima (see Figure 8 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`)). Therefore, this option can be useful when you are searching for true local minima (for example, absorption features).

`-m INT`
`--snminarea=INT`
: The minimum area which a clump in the undetected regions should have in order to be considered in the clump Signal to noise ratio measurement. If this size is set to a small value, the Signal to noise ratio of false clumps will not be accurately found. It is recommended that this value be larger than the value to NoiseChisel's `--snminarea`. Because the clumps are found on the convolved (smoothed) image while the pseudo-detections are found on the input image. You can use `--checksn` and `--checksegmentation` to see if your chosen value is reasonable or not.

`--checksn`
: Save the S/N values of the clumps over the sky and detected regions into separate tables. If `--tableformat` is a FITS format, each table will be written into a separate extension of one file suffixed with `_clumpsn.fits`. If it is plain text, a separate file will be made for each table (ending in `_clumpsn_sky.txt` and `_clumpsn_det.txt`). For more on `--tableformat` see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

  You can use these tables to inspect the S/N values and their distribution (in combination with the `--checksegmentation` option to see where the clumps are). You can use Gnuastro's Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517, to make a histogram of the distribution (ready for plotting in a text file, or a crude ASCII-art demonstration on the command-line).

  With this option, Segment will abort as soon as the two tables are created. This allows you to inspect the steps leading to the final S/N quantile threshold, this behavior can be disabled with `--continueaftercheck`.

`--minnumfalse=INT`
: The minimum number of clumps over undetected (Sky) regions to identify the requested Signal-to-Noise ratio threshold. Operationally, this is almost identical to NoiseChisel's `--minnumfalse` option (Section 7.2.2.2 [Detection options], page 560). Please see the descriptions there for more.

`-c FLT`
`--snquant=FLT`
: The quantile of the signal-to-noise ratio distribution of clumps in undetected regions, used to define true clumps. After identifying all the usable clumps in the undetected regions of the dataset, the given quantile of their signal-to-noise ratios is used to define the signal-to-noise ratio of a "true" clump. Effectively, this can be seen as an inverse p-value measure. See Figure 9 and Section 3.2.1 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) for a complete explanation. The full distribution of clump signal-to-noise ratios over the undetected areas can be saved into a table with `--checksn` option and visually inspected with `--checksegmentation`.

`-v`
`--keepmaxnearriver`
: Keep a clump whose maximum (minimum if `--minima` is called) flux is 8-connected to a river pixel. By default such clumps over detections are con-

sidered to be noise and are removed irrespective of their significance measure; see Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`). Over large profiles, that sink into the noise very slowly, noise can cause part of the profile (which was flat without noise) to become a very large and with a very high Signal to noise ratio. In such cases, the pixel with the maximum flux in the clump will be immediately touching a river pixel.

`-s FLT`
`--clumpsnthresh=FLT`
The signal-to-noise threshold for true clumps. If this option is given, then the segmentation options above will be ignored and the given value will be directly used to identify true clumps over the detections. This can be useful if you have a large dataset with similar noise properties. You can find a robust signal-to-noise ratio based on a (sufficiently large) smaller portion of the dataset. Afterwards, with this option, you can speed up the processing on the whole dataset. Other scenarios where this option may be useful is when, the image might not contain enough/any Sky regions.

`-G FLT`
`--gthresh=FLT`
Threshold (multiple of the sky standard deviation added with the sky) to stop growing true clumps. Once true clumps are found, they are set as the basis to segment the detected region. They are grown until the threshold specified by this option.

`-y INT`
`--minriverlength=INT`
The minimum length of a river between two grown clumps for it to be considered in signal-to-noise ratio estimations. Similar to `--snminarea`, if the length of the river is too short, the signal-to-noise ratio can be noisy and unreliable. Any existing rivers shorter than this length will be considered as non-existent, independent of their Signal to noise ratio. The clumps are grown on the input image, therefore this value can be smaller than the value given to `--snminarea`. Recall that the clumps were defined on the convolved image so `--snminarea` should be larger.

`-O FLT`
`--objbordersn=FLT`
The maximum Signal to noise ratio of the rivers between two grown clumps in order to consider them as separate 'objects'. If the Signal to noise ratio of the river between two grown clumps is larger than this value, they are defined to be part of one 'object'. Note that the physical reality of these 'objects' can never be established with one image, or even multiple images from one broad-band filter. Any method we devise to define 'object's over a detected region is ultimately subjective.

Two very distant galaxies or satellites in one halo might lie in the same line of sight and be detected as clumps on one detection. On the other hand, the connection (through a spiral arm or tidal tail for example) between two parts of one galaxy might have such a low surface brightness that they are broken

up into multiple detections or objects. In fact if you have noticed, exactly for this purpose, this is the only Signal to noise ratio that the user gives into NoiseChisel. The 'true' detections and clumps can be objectively identified from the noise characteristics of the image, so you do not have to give any hand input Signal to noise ratio.

`--checksegmentation`
A file with the suffix `_seg.fits` will be created. This file keeps all the relevant steps in finding true clumps and segmenting the detections into multiple objects in various extensions. Having read the paper or the steps above. Examining this file can be an excellent guide in choosing the best set of parameters. Note that calling this function will significantly slow NoiseChisel. In verbose mode (without the `--quiet` option, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259) the important steps (along with their extension names) will also be reported.

With this option, NoiseChisel will abort as soon as the two tables are created. This behavior can be disabled with `--continueaftercheck`.

7.3.1.3 Segment output

The main output of Segment are two label datasets (with integer types, separating the dataset's elements into different classes). They have HDU/extension names of `CLUMPS` and `OBJECTS`.

Similar to all Gnuastro's FITS outputs, the zero-th extension/HDU of the main output file only contains header keywords and image or table. It contains the Segment input files and parameters (option names and values) as FITS keywords. Note that if an option name is longer than 8 characters, the keyword name is the second word. The first word is `HIERARCH`. Also note that according to the FITS standard, the keyword names must be in capital letters, therefore, if you want to use Grep to inspect these keywords, use the `-i` option, like the example below.

```
$ astfits image_segmented.fits -h0 | grep -i snquant
```

By default, besides the `CLUMPS` and `OBJECTS` extensions, Segment's output will also contain the (technically redundant) sky-subtracted input dataset (`INPUT-NO-SKY`) and the sky standard deviation dataset (`SKY_STD`, if it was not a constant number). This can help in visually inspecting the result when viewing the images as a "Multi-extension data cube" in SAO DS9 for example, (see Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705). You can simply flip through the extensions and see the same region of the image and its corresponding clumps/object labels. It also makes it easy to feed the output (as one file) into MakeCatalog when you intend to make a catalog afterwards (see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582. To remove these redundant extensions from the output (for example, when designing a pipeline), you can use `--rawoutput`.

The `OBJECTS` and `CLUMPS` extensions can be used as input into Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, to generate a catalog for higher-level analysis. If you want to treat each clump separately, you can give a very large value (or even a NaN, which will always fail) to the `--gthresh` option (for example, `--gthresh=1e10` or `--gthresh=nan`), see Section 7.3.1.2 [Segmentation options], page 577.

For a complete definition of clumps and objects, please see Section 3.2 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`) and Section 7.3.1.2 [Segmentation options], page 577. The clumps are "true" local maxima (minima if `--minima` is called) and their surrounding pixels until a local minimum/maximum (caused by noise fluctuations, or another "true" clump). Therefore it may happen that some of the input detections are not covered by clumps at all (very diffuse objects without any strong peak), while some objects may contain many clumps. Even in those that have clumps, there will be regions that are too diffuse. The diffuse regions (within the input detected regions) are given a negative label (-1) to help you separate them from the undetected regions (with a value of zero).

Each clump is labeled with respect to its host object. Therefore, if an object has three clumps for example, the clumps within it have labels 1, 2 and 3. As a result, if an initial detected region has multiple objects, each with a single clump, all the clumps will have a label of 1. The total number of clumps in the dataset is stored in the `NCLUMPS` keyword of the `CLUMPS` extension and printed in the verbose output of Segment (when `--quiet` is not called).

The `OBJECTS` extension of the output will give a positive counter/label to every detected pixel in the input. As described in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa [2015], the true clumps are grown until a certain threshold. If the grown clumps touch other clumps and the connection is strong enough, they are considered part of the same *object*. Once objects (grown clumps) are identified, they are grown to cover the whole detected area.

The options to configure the output of Segment are listed below:

`--continueaftercheck`
: Do not abort Segment after producing the check image(s). The usage of this option is identical to NoiseChisel's `--continueaftercheck` option (Section 7.2.2.1 [NoiseChisel input], page 557). Please see the descriptions there for more.

`--noobjects`
: Abort Segment after finding true clumps and do not continue with finding options. Therefore, no `OBJECTS` extension will be present in the output. Each true clump in `CLUMPS` will get a unique label, but diffuse regions will still have a negative value.

  To make a catalog of the clumps, the input detection map (where all the labels are one) can be fed into Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, along with the input detection map to Segment (that only had a value of `1` for all detected pixels) with `--clumpscat`. In this way, MakeCatalog will assume all the clumps belong to a single "object".

`--grownclumps`
: In the output `CLUMPS` extension, store the grown clumps. If a detected region contains no clumps or only one clump, then it will be fully given a label of `1` (no negative valued pixels).

`--rawoutput`
: Only write the `CLUMPS` and `OBJECTS` datasets in the output file. Without this option (by default), the first and last extensions of the output will the Sky-subtracted input dataset and the Sky standard deviation dataset (if it was not a number). When the datasets are small, these redundant extensions can make

it convenient to inspect the results visually or feed the output to Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, for measurements. Ultimately both the input and Sky standard deviation datasets are redundant (you had them before running Segment). When the inputs are large/numerous, these extra dataset can be a burden.

Save space: with the `--rawoutput`, Segment's output will only be two labeled datasets (only containing integers). Since they have no noise, such datasets can be compressed very effectively (without any loss of data) with exceptionally high compression ratios. You can use the following command to compress it with the best ratio:

```
$ gzip --best segment_output.fits
```

The resulting `.fits.gz` file can then be fed into any of Gnuastro's programs directly, without having to decompress it separately (it will just take them a little longer, because they have to decompress it internally before use).

When the input is a 2D image, to inspect NoiseChisel's output you can configure SAO DS9 in your Graphic User Interface (GUI) to open NoiseChisel's output as a multi-extension data cube. This will allow you to flip through the different extensions and visually inspect the results. This process has been described for the GNOME GUI (most common GUI in GNU/Linux operating systems) in Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705.

7.4 MakeCatalog

At the lowest level, a dataset (for example, an image) is just a collection of values, placed after each other in any number of dimensions (for example, an image is a 2D dataset). Each data-element (pixel) just has two properties: its position (relative to the rest) and its value. In higher-level analysis, an entire dataset (an image for example) is rarely treated as a singular entity[16]. You usually want to know/measure the properties of the (separate) scientifically interesting targets that are embedded in it. For example, the magnitudes, positions and elliptical properties of the galaxies that are in the image.

MakeCatalog is Gnuastro's program for localized measurements over a dataset. In other words, MakeCatalog is Gnuastro's program to convert low-level datasets (like images), to high level catalogs. The role of MakeCatalog in a scientific analysis and the benefits of its model (where detection/segmentation is separated from measurement) is discussed in Akhlaghi 2016 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1611.06387v1`)[17] and summarized in Section 7.4.1 [Detection and catalog production], page 584. We strongly recommend reading this short paper for a better understanding of this methodology. Understanding the effective usage of MakeCatalog, will thus also help effective use of other (lower-level) Gnuastro's programs like Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, or Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571.

[16] You can derive the over-all properties of a complete dataset (1D table column, 2D image, or 3D datacube) treated as a single entity with Gnuastro's Statistics program (see Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517).

[17] A published paper cannot undergo any more change, so this manual is the definitive guide.

Following the Unix philosophy[18], MakeCatalog is specialized in doing measurements accurately and efficiently, not to do detection, segmentation, or defining apertures on requested positions in your dataset. It is therefore important to define the pixels (of each "object" in the image for example) *before* running MakeCatalog. There are separate, highly specialized and customizable programs in Gnuastro for these other jobs as discussed below, their outputs can be fed into MakeCatalog (for a usage example in a real-world analysis, see Section 2.1 [General program usage tutorial], page 22, and Section 2.2 [Detecting large extended targets], page 80).

- Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403: Detection with a simple threshold.
- Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552: Advanced detection.
- Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571: Segmentation (substructure over detections).
- Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652: Aperture creation for known positions.

To identify which pixels should be measured together, a "label" dataset is necessary (which is the main input to MakeCatalog). The number of labels in the labels dataset will be the number of rows in the output. Having identified which pixels to use for each row of the output catalog, the "values" dataset will be used to read the value of each pixel to use in the measurement. The labeled dataset should have the same size/dimensions as the values image, but with integer valued pixels. Any pixel with the same label/counter for each sub-set of pixels that must be measured together. For example, all the pixels covering one galaxy in an image, get the same label.

The final result is a catalog where each row corresponds to the measurements on pixels with a specific label. For example, the flux weighted average position of all the pixels with a label of 42 will be written into the 42nd row of the output catalog/table's central position column[19]. Similarly, the sum of all these pixels will be the 42nd row in the sum column, etc. Pixels with labels equal to, or smaller than, zero will be ignored by MakeCatalog. In other words, the number of rows in MakeCatalog's output is already known before running it (the maximum value of the labeled dataset).

Before getting into the details of running MakeCatalog (in Section 7.4.8 [Invoking MakeCatalog], page 624, (last sub-section), we will start with some basics that are good to review if you are new to optical/astronomical data analysis. The basics of MakeCatalog's approach to separating detection/segmentation from measurements in is first discussed in Section 7.4.1 [Detection and catalog production], page 584. We then introduce the core units/concepts of brightness measurements in optical astronomy (which inherits a lot from its multi-millennial history) in Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585. Having reviewed the core concepts, Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594, provides a categorized list of all measurements that are currently available in MakeCatalog.

A very important factor in any measurement is understanding its validity range, or limits. Therefore in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615, we will discuss how to estimate the reliability of the detection and basic measurements. This

[18] Make each program do one thing well. To do a new job, build afresh rather than complicate old programs by adding new "features".

[19] See Section 7.4.4.8 [Morphology measurements (elliptical)], page 610, for a discussion on this and the derivation of positional parameters, which includes the center.

section will continue with a derivation of elliptical parameters from the labeled datasets in Section 7.4.4.8 [Morphology measurements (elliptical)], page 610. For those who feel MakeCatalog's existing measurements/columns are not enough and would like to add further measurements, in Section 7.4.7 [Adding new columns to MakeCatalog], page 623, a checklist of steps is provided for readily adding your own new measurements/columns.

7.4.1 Detection and catalog production

Most existing common tools in low-level astronomical data-analysis (for example, SExtractor[20]) merge the two processes of detection and measurement (catalog production) in one program. However, in light of Gnuastro's modularized approach (modeled on the Unix system) detection is separated from measurements and catalog production. This modularity is therefore new to many experienced astronomers and deserves a short review here. Further discussion on the benefits of this methodology can be seen in Akhlaghi 2016 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1611.06387v1`).

As discussed in the introduction of Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, detection (identifying which pixels to do measurements on) can be done with different programs. Their outputs (a labeled dataset) can be directly fed into MakeCatalog to do the measurements and write the result as a catalog/table. Beyond that, Gnuastro's modular approach has many benefits that will become clear as you get more experienced in astronomical data analysis and want to be more creative in using your valuable data for the exciting scientific project you are working on. In short the reasons for this modularity can be classified as below:

- Simplicity/robustness of independent, modular tools: making a catalog is a logically separate process from labeling (detection, segmentation, or aperture production). A user might want to do certain operations on the labeled regions before creating a catalog for them. Another user might want the properties of the same pixels/objects in another image (another filter for example) to measure the colors or SED fittings.

  Here is an example of doing both: suppose you have images in various broad band filters at various resolutions and orientations. The image of one color will thus not lie exactly on another or even be in the same scale. However, it is imperative that the same pixels be used in measuring the colors of galaxies.

  To solve the problem, NoiseChisel can be run on the reference image to generate the labeled detection image. Afterwards, the labeled image can be warped into the grid of the other color (using Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501). MakeCatalog will then generate the same catalog for both colors (with the different labeled images). It is currently customary to warp the images to the same pixel grid, however, modification of the scientific dataset is very harmful for the data and creates correlated noise. It is much more accurate to do the transformations on the labeled image.

- Complexity of a monolith: Adding in a catalog functionality to the detector program will add several more steps (and many more options) to its processing that can equally well be done outside of it. This makes following what the program does harder for the users and developers, it can also potentially add many bugs.

  As an example, if the parameter you want to measure over one profile is not provided by the developers of MakeCatalog. You can simply open this tiny little program and

[20] `https://www.astromatic.net/software/sextractor`

add your desired calculation easily. This process is discussed in Section 7.4.7 [Adding new columns to MakeCatalog], page 623. However, if making a catalog was part of NoiseChisel for example, adding a new column/measurement would require a lot of energy to understand all the steps and internal structures of that huge program. It might even be so intertwined with its processing, that adding new columns might cause problems/bugs in its primary job (detection).

7.4.2 Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness

After taking an image with your camera (or a large telescope), the value in each pixel of the output file is a proxy for the amount of *energy* that accumulated in it (while it was exposed to light). In astrophysics, the centimeter–gram–second (cgs) units are commonly used so energy is commonly reported in units of erg. In an image, the energy of a galaxy for example will be distributed over many pixels. Therefore, the collected energy of an object in the image is the total sum of the values in the pixels associated to the object.

To be able to compare our scientific data with other data, optical astronomers have a unique terminology based on the concept of "Magnitude"s. But before getting to those, let's review the following basic physical concepts first:

Energy (erg; also in *counts* or ADUs)
: Within the electromagnetic regime, we measure the received energy of astronomical source by counting the number of photons that have been converted to electrons (electric potential) in our detectors.

  When counting/measuring the electric potential changes, the optical (but also near ultra-violet and near infra-red) detectors do not actually count individual electrons but bundles/packages of electrons known as the analog-to-digital unit (ADU). The number of electrons in each ADU is known as the *gain* of the instrument and is measured as part of its calibration.

Power (erg/s)
: The amount of energy in a fixed interval of time (1 second) is known as power. Power is used in two contexts within astronomy which are listed below. Both have the same units of energy per time, but their difference is very important to understand in physical interpretation:

  Brightness
  : The *received* power from a source (the thing we measure). To be able to compare data taken with different exposure times, we define the received power of the source in a detector as the *brightness*.

  Luminosity
  : The total *emitted* power of a source in *all directions*.

  Unlike brightness (a measured property), luminosity is an inherent property of the object that is calculated from the combination of multiple measurements (flux and distance; see below).

Flux ($erg/s/cm^2$)
: To be able to compare with data from different telescopes (with different collecting areas), we define the *flux* which is defined by dividing the brightness by the exposed aperture of our telescope. Because we are using the cgs units, the

collecting area is reported in cm^2. Knowing the flux (f) and distance to the object (r), we can derive its *luminosity*: $L = 4\pi r^2 f$.

Spectral flux density ($erg/s/cm^2/Hz$ or $erg/s/cm^2/\mathring{A}$)

To take into account the different spectral coverage of filters and detectors, we define the *spectral flux density*, which is defined in either of these units (based on context): $erg/s/cm^2/Hz$ (frequency-based) $erg/s/cm^2/\mathring{A}$ (wavelength-based).

As in other objects in nature, astronomical objects do not emit or reflect the same flux at all wavelengths. On the other hand, our detector techologies are different for different wavelength ranges. Therefore, even if we wanted to, there is no way to measure the "total" (at all wavelengths; also known as "bolometric") luminosity of an object with a single tool. To be able to analyze objects with different spectral features (compare measurements of the same object taken in different spectral regimes), it is therefore important to account for the wavelength (or frequency) range of the photons that we measured through the spectral flux density.

Jansky ($10^{-23} erg/s/cm^2/Hz$)

A "Jansky" is a predefined/nominal level of frequency flux density that is commonly used in radio astronomy. The AB magnitude system (see below; used in optical astronomy) is also in frequency-based so there is a simple conversion between the two.

Janskys can be converted to wavelength flux density using the `jy-to-wavelength-flux-density` operator of Gnuastro's Arithmetic program, see the derivation under this operator's description in Section 6.2.4.5 [Unit conversion operators], page 420.

Having summarized the relevant basic physical concepts above, let's review the terminology that is used in optical astronomy. The reason optical astronomers don't use modern physical terminology is that optical astronomy precedes modern physical concepts by thousands of years!

Once the modern physical concepts where mature enough, optical astronomers found the correct conversion factors to better define their own terminology (and easily use previous results) instead of abandoning them. Other fields of astronomy (for example X-ray or radio) were discovered in the last century when modern physical concepts had already matured and were being extensively used, so for those fields, the concepts above are enough.

Magnitude

The observed spectral flux density of astronomical objects span over a very large range: the Sun (as the brightest object) is roughly 10^{24} times brighter than the fainter galaxies we can currently detect in our deepest images. Therefore the scale that was originally used from the ancient times to measure the incoming light (used by Hipparchus of Nicaea; 190-120 BC) can be parametrized as a logarithmic function of the spectral flux density.

But the logarithm can only be usable with a value which is always positive and has no units. Fortunately brightness is always positive. To remove the units, we divide the spectral flux density of the object (F) by a reference spectral flux density (F_r). We then define a logarithmic scale through the relation below and

call it the *magnitude*. The -2.5 factor is also a legacy of our ancient origins: was necessary to approximately match the used magnitude system of Hipparchus.

$$m - m_r = -2.5 \log_{10}\left(\frac{F}{F_r}\right)$$

In the equation above, m is the magnitude of the object and m_r is the predefined magnitude of the reference spectral flux density. For estimating the error in measuring a magnitude, see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615. The equation above is ultimately a relative relation. To tie it to physical units, astronomers use the concept of a zero point which is discussed in the next item.

See the `mag-to-luminosity` operator of Arithmetic in Section 6.2.4.5 [Unit conversion operators], page 420, for more on the conversion of the observed magnitudes (described below) of an object to luminosity. The received brightness of two object with the same luminosity but at different distances is going to be different (the closer one will be brighter). Therefore, astronomers have defined the following terminology to help avoid confusing distant-dependent and distance-independent magnitudes.

Apparent magnitude
: The apparent magnitude is directly related (through the equation above) to the received spectral flux density (that we measure in our detectors). Therefore, it depends on the distance to the object (and any absorption that may occur in the light path).

Absolute magnitude
: Knowing the distance of an object and absorptions in the light path, we can obtain the luminosity. From the luminosity, we can measure the apparent magnitude if the object was a point at a nominal (or fixed, or standard, or absolute) distance. The magnitude at this absolute distance is known as the absolute magnitude. The standard (or abstract: just to help in comparisons) distance is historically defined as 10 parsecs. By reporting the magnitude at a fixed distance for all objects, the absolute magnitude therefore helps to compare the intrinsic (independent of distance) magnitude of astronomical objects.

Zero point
: A unique situation in the magnitude equation above occurs when the reference spectral flux density is unity ($F_r = 1$). In other words, the increase in spectral flux density that produces an increment in the detector's native measurement units (ADUs).

  The word "increment" above is used intentionally: because ADUs are discrete and measured as integers. In other words, an increase in spectral flux density that is below F_r will not be measured by the device. The reference magnitde (m_r) that corresponds to F_r is known as the *Zero point* magnitude of that detector + filter + atmosphere (for on-ground observations).

Therefore, the increase in spectral flux density (from an astrophysical source) that produces an increment in ADUs depends on all hardware and observational parameters that the image was taken in. These include the quantum efficiency of the dector, the detector's coating, the filter transmission curve, the transmission of the optical path and the atmospheric absorption (for ground-based images; for example observations at different altitudes from the horizon where the thickness of the atmosphere is different).

The rest of the absoptions (for example due to the interstellar medium, or ISM) are not considered in the zero point definition because for most purposes, they are not related to our observing conditions, but position on the sky. In other words, while ISM absorption should be taken into account when measuring the luminosity of the source for example, ISM absorption is not in the zero point. If we can later observe the universe from outside the MilkyWay, the ISM absorption should also be included (it would become like the atmosphere). But the farthest we have got so far for scientific observations beyond the Solar system is the L2 orbit of Earth (for instruments like Euclid, Gaia or JWST).

The zero point therefore allows us to summarize all these "observational" (non-astrophysical) factors into a single number and compare different observations from different instruments at different observing conditions (which are critical to do science). Defining the zero point magnitude as $m_r = Z$ in the magnitude equation, we can write it in simpler format (recall that $F_r = 1$):

$$m = -2.5 \log_{10}(F) + Z$$

The zero point is found through comparison of measurements with pre-defined standards (in other words, it is a calibration of the pixel values). Gnuastro has an installed script with a complete tutorial to estimate the zero point of any image, see Section 10.5 [Zero point estimation], page 709.

Historically, the reference was defined to be measurements of the star Vega, producing the *vega magnitude* system. In this system, the star Vega had a magnitude of zero (similar to the catalog of Hipparchus of Nicaea). However, this caused many problems because Vega itself has its unique spectral features which are not in other stars and it is a variable star when measured precisely.

Therefore, based on previous efforts, in 1983 Oke & Gunn proposed (`https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/1983ApJ...266..713O`) the AB (absolute) magnitude system from accurate spectroscopy of Vega. To avoid confusion with the "absolute magnitude" of a source (at a fixed distance), this magnitude system is always written as AB magnitude. The AB magnitude zero point (when the input is frequency flux density; F_ν with units of $erg/s/cm^2/Hz$) was defined such that a star with a flat spectra around $5480\mathring{A}$ have a similar magnitude in the AB and Vega-based systems:

$$m_{AB} = -2.5 \log_{10}(F_\nu) + 48.60$$

Reversing this equation and using Janskys, an object with a magnitude of zero ($m_{AB} = 0$) has a spectral flux density of $3631Jy$. Once the AB magnitude zero point of an image is found, you can directly convert any measurement on it from instrument ADUs to Janskys. In Gnuastro, the Arithmetic program has an operator called `counts-to-jy` which will do this though a given AB Magnitude-based zero point like below (SDSS data have a fixed zero point of 22.5 in the AB magnitude system):

```
$ astarithmetic sdss.fits 22.5 counts-to-jy
```

Verify the zero point definition on new databases: observational factors like the exposure time, the gain, telescope aperture, filter transmission curve and other factors are usually taken into account in the reduction pipeline that produces high-level science products. But some reduction pipelines may not account for some of these for special reasons: for example not accounting for the gain or exposure time. To avoid annoyingly strange results, when using a new database, verify (in the documentation of the database) that the zero points they provide directly converts pixel values to Janskys (is an AB magnitude zero point), or not. If they not, you need to apply corrections your self.

Let's look at one example where the given zero point has not accounted for the exposure time (in other words it is only for a fixed exposure time: Z_E), but the pixel values (p) have been corrected for the exposure time. One solution would be to first multiply the pixels by the exposure time, use that zero point to get your desired measurement and delete the temporary file. But a more optimal way (in terms of storage, execution and clean code) would be to correct the zero point. Let's take t to show time in units of seconds and p_E to be the pixel value that would be measured after the fixed exposure time (in other words $p_E = p \times t$). We then have the following:

$$m = -2.5\log_{10}(p_E) + Z_E = -2.5\log_{10}(p \times t) + Z_E$$

From the properties of logarithms, we can then derive the correct zero point (Z) to use directly (without touching the original pixels):

$$m = -2.5\log_{10}(p) + Z \quad \text{where} \quad \mathrm{Z} = \mathrm{Z_E} - 2.5\log_{10}(\mathrm{t})$$

Surface brightness

The definition of magnitude above was for the total spectral flux density coming from an object (recall how we mentioned at the start of this section that the total energy of an object is calculated by summing all its pixels). The total flux is (mostly!) independent of the angular size of your pixels, so we didn't need to account for the pixel area. But when you want to study extended structures where the total magnitude is not desired (for example the sub-structure of a

galaxy, or the brightness of the background sky), you need to report values that are independent of the area that total spectral flux density was measured on.

For this, we define the *surface brightness* to be the magnitude of an object's brightness divided by its solid angle over the celestial sphere (or coverage in the sky, commonly in units of arcsec^2). The solid angle is expressed in units of arcsec^2 because astronomical targets are usually much smaller than one steradian. Recall that the steradian is the dimension-less SI unit of a solid angle and 1 steradian covers $1/4\pi$ (almost 8%) of the full celestial sphere.

Surface brightness is therefore most commonly expressed in units of mag/arcsec^2. For example, when the spectral flux density is measured over an area of A arcsec^2, the surface brightness is calculated by:

$$S = -2.5\log_{10}(F/A) + Z = -2.5\log_{10}(F) + 2.5\log_{10}(A) + Z$$

In other words, the surface brightness (in units of mag/arcsec^2) is related to the object's magnitude (m) and area (A, in units of arcsec^2) through this equation:

$$S = m + 2.5\log_{10}(A)$$

A common mistake is to follow the mag/arcsec^2 unit literally, and divide the object's magnitude by its area. But this is wrong because magnitude is a logarithmic scale while area is linear. It is the spectral flux density that should be divided by the solid angle because both have linear scales. The magnitude of that ratio is then defined to be the surface brightness.

Besides applications in catalogs and the resulting scientific analysis, converting pixels to surface brightness is usually a good way to display a FITS file in a publication! See Section 2.1.20 [FITS images in a publication], page 65, for a fully working tutorial on how to do this.

Do not warp or convolve magnitude or surface brightness images: Warping an image involves calculating new pixel values (of the new pixel grid) from the input grid's pixel values. Convolution is also a process of finding the weighted mean of pixel values. During these processes, many arithmetic operations are done on the original pixel values, for example, addition or multiplication. However, $log_{10}(a+b) \neq log_{10}(a)+log_{10}(b)$. Therefore if you generate color, magnitude or surface brightness images (where pixels are in units of mangnitudes), do not apply any such operations on them! If you need to warp or convolve the image, do it *before* the conversion to magnitude-based units.

7.4.3 Standard deviation vs Standard error

The standard deviation and standard error are different concepts to convey different aspects of a measurement, but they can be easily confused with each other: for example, the standard deviation is also called as the "error". A nice description of this difference is given

in the following quote from Wikipedia. In this section, we'll show the concept described in this quote with a hands-on and practical set of commands to clarify this important distinction.

> The standard deviation of the sample data is a description of the variation in measurements, while the standard error of the mean is a probabilistic statement about how the sample size will provide a better bound on estimates of the population mean, in light of the central limit theorem. Put simply, the *standard error* of the sample mean is an estimate of how far the sample mean is likely to be from the population mean, whereas the *standard deviation* of the sample is the degree to which individuals within the sample differ from the sample mean.
>
> —*Wikipedia page on "Standard error" (retrieved on 2024-08-09)*

Let's simulate an observation of the sky, but without any astronomical sources to simplify the logic. In other words, we only have a background flux level (assume you want to measure the brightness of the twilight sky that is not yet faint enough to let stars be visible). With the first command below, let's make an image called `1.fits` that contains 200×200 pixels that are filled with random noise from a Poisson distribution with a mean of 100 counts (the flux from the background sky). With the second command, we'll have a look at the image. Recall that the Poisson distribution is equal to a normal distribution for large mean values (as in this case).

```
$ astarithmetic 200 200 2 makenew 100 mknoise-poisson \
                --output=1.fits

$ astscript-fits-view 1.fits
```

The standard deviation (σ) of the Poisson distribution is the square root of the mean, see Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408. Note that due to the random nature of the noise, the values reported in the next steps on your computer will be slightly different (which is one of the points of this section!). To reproducible exactly the same values in different runs, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410, and for more on the first command, see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403.

Each pixel shows the result of one sampling from the Poisson distribution. In other words, assuming the sky emission in our simulation is constant over our field of view, each pixel's value shows one measurement of the same sky emission. Statistically speaking, a "measurement" is a sampling from an underlying distribution of values. Through our measurements, we aim to identify that underlying distribution (the "truth")! With the command below, let's look at the pixel statistics of `1.fits` (output is shown immediately under it).

```
$ aststatistics 1.fits
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Input: 1.fits (hdu: 1)
-------
  Number of elements:                   40000
  Minimum:                              61
  Maximum:                              155
  Median:                               100
```

```
  Mean:                                   100.044925
  Standard deviation:                     10.00066032
-------
Histogram:
 |                           *  *
 |                           *  *  *
 |                        *  *  *  *
 |                        *  *  *  *  *
 |                        *  *  *  *  *
 |                     *  * ********  * *
 |                     *  ************* *
 |                  *  ******************  *
 |                  ************************  *
 |               *********************************
 |* ************************************************************ **      *
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

As expected, you see that the ASCII histogram nicely resembles a normal distribution. The measured mean and standard deviation are also very similar to the input (mean of 100, standard deviation of 10). But the measured mean (and standard deviation) aren't exactly equal to the input!

Every time we make a different simulated image from the same distribution, the measured mean and standard deviation will slightly differ. Run the commands above one more time (this time calling the output `2.fits`) and check for your self (actually open the two FITS images and check visually, don't just rely on the statistics).

Now that you have a good feeling of the change, let's automate this and scale it up for some nice statistics. With the commands below, you will build 500 images like above and measure their mean and standard deviation and save each measurment into a file (`mean-stds.txt`. In the first command we are deleting it to make sure we write into an empty file within the first run of the loop. With the third command, let's view the top 10 rows:

```
$ rm -f mean-stds.txt
$ for i in $(seq 500); do \
      astarithmetic 200 200 2 makenew 100 mknoise-poisson \
                    --output=$i.fits --quiet; \
      aststatistics $i.fits --mean --std >> mean-stds.txt; \
      echo "$i: complete"; \
  done

$ asttable mean-stds.txt -Y --head=10
99.989381               9.936407
100.036622              10.059997
100.006054              9.985470
99.944535               9.960069
100.050318              9.970116
100.002718              9.905395
100.067555              9.964038
100.027167              10.018562
```

```
100.051951              9.995859
100.000212              9.970293
```

From this table, you see that each simulation has produced a slightly different measured mean and measured standard deviation. They are just fluctuating around the input mean (which was 100) and input standard deviation (which was 10). Let's have a look at the distribution of mean measurements:

```
$ aststatistics mean-stds.txt -c1
Statistics (GNU Astronomy Utilities) 0.23.84-726fd
-------
Input: mean-stds.txt
Column: 1
-------
  Number of elements:                     500
  Minimum:                                9.98183528700191e+01
  Maximum:                                1.00146490891332e+02
  Mode:                                   99.99709739
  Mode quantile:                          0.49498998
  Median:                                 9.99977393190436e+01
  Mean:                                   99.99891826
  Standard deviation:                     0.04901635275
-------
Histogram:
 |                                    *
 |                                  *   **
 |                               ****** **** * *
 |                               ****** **** * *    *
 |                           *  * ************ *    *
 |                           *  ******************   **
 |                    *      ********************  ***   *
 |                    *   ****************************** ***
 |                    *** ***********************************      *
 |              ***  ********************************************  **
 |            * ************************************************** **    *
 |-----------------------------------------------------------------------
```

The standard deviation you see above (approximately 0.05) shows the scatter in measuring the mean with an image of this size and is different from the standard deviation of the Poisson distribution that the values were drawn from. This is therefore defined as the *standard error of the mean*, or "standard error" for short (since most measurements are actually the mean of a population).

From the example above, you see that the error is smaller than the standard deviation (smaller when you have a larger sample). In fact, it can be shown (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Standard_error#Derivation`) that this "error of the mean" ($\sigma_{\bar{x}}$; recall that $\bar{x}$ represents the mean) is related to the distribution standard deviation (σ) through the following equation. Where N is the number of points used to measure the mean in one sample ($N = 200 \times 200 = 40000$ in this case). Note that the 10.0 below was reported as "standard deviation" in the first run of `aststatistics` on `1.fits` above):

$$\sigma_{\bar{x}} \approx \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{N}} = \frac{10.0}{200} = 0.05$$

Therefore the standard error of the mean is directly related to the number of pixels you used to measure the mean. You can test this by changing the `200`s in the commands above to smaller or larger values. As you make larger and larger images, you will be able to measure the mean much more precisely (the standard error of the mean will go to zero). But no matter how many pixels you use, the standard deviation will always be the same.

Within MakeCatalog, the options related to dispersion/error in the measurements have the following conventions:

`--*std` For example `--std` or `--sigclip-std`. These return the standard deviation of the values within a label. If the underlying object (in the noise) is flat, then this will be the `\sigma` that is mentioned above. However, no object in astronomy is flat! So this option should be used with extreme care! It only makes sense in special contexts like measuring the radial profile where we assume that the values at a certain radius have the same flux (see Section 10.2 [Generate radial profile], page 694).

`--*error` For example `--mag-error`, `--mean-error` or `--sum-error`. These options should be used when when pixel values are different. When the pixels do not have the same value (for example different parts of one galaxy), their standard deviation is meaningless. To measure the total error in such cases, we need to know the standard deviation of each pixel separately. Therefore, for these columns, MakeCatalog needs a separate dataset that contains the underlying sky standard deviation for those pixels. That dataset should have the same size (number and dimension of pixels) as the values dataset. You can use Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, to generate such an image.

If the underlying profile and sky standard deviations is flat, then `--sum-error` will be the standard deviation that we discussed in this section and `--mean-error` will be the standard error. When the values are different, the combined error is calculated by adding the variances (second power of the standard deviation) of each pixel, added with its value. When the values are smaller than one, a correction is applied (that is defined in Section 3.3 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`)).

7.4.4 MakeCatalog measurements on each label

MakeCatalog's output measurements can be classified into two types: columns (independent measurements on each label) or metadata (of the whole image, see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615). The precise measurements that it will actually do is specified using command-line options that are described in the subsections below (Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251).

The majority of the first group are those which only produce a single-valued measurement for each label (for example, its magnitude: a single number for every label/object). There are also multi-valued measurements per label (like spectra on 3D cubes) which keep their values in a single vector column of the same table (see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns],

page 346). Both types of measurements will be written as one column in a final table/catalog that also contains all the other requested columns/measurements. Measurements that produce one value for the whole input (not a specific label/object) are stored as metadata in the 0-th (first) HDU of the output with predefined keywords described in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615.

The majority of this section is devoted to MakeCatalog's single-valued measurements. However, MakeCatalog can also do measurements that produce more than one value for each label. Currently the only such measurement is generation of spectra from 3D cubes with the `--spectrum` option and it is discussed in the end of this section.

Command-line options are used to identify which measurements you want in the final catalog(s) and in what order. If any of the options below is called on the command-line or in any of the configuration files, it will be included as a column in the output catalog. The order of the columns is in the same order as the options were seen by MakeCatalog (see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271). Some of the columns apply to both "objects" and "clumps" and some are particular to only one of them (for the definition of "objects" and "clumps", see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571). Columns/options that are unique to one catalog (only objects, or only clumps), are explicitly marked with [Objects] or [Clumps] to specify the catalog they will be placed in.

7.4.4.1 Identifier columns

The identifier of each row (group of measurements) is usually the first thing you will be requesting from MakeCatalog. Without the identifier, it is not clear which measurement corresponds to which label for the input.

Since MakeCatalog can also optionally take sub-structure label (clumps; see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571), there are various identifiers in general that are listed below. The most generic (and shortest and easiest to type!) is the `--ids` option which can be used in object-only or object-clump catalogs.

`--i`
`--ids` This is a unique option which can add multiple columns to the final catalog(s). Calling this option will put the object IDs (`--obj-id`) in the objects catalog and host-object-ID (`--host-obj-id`) and ID-in-host-object (`--id-in-host-obj`) into the clumps catalog. Hence if only object catalogs are required, it has the same effect as `--obj-id`.

`--obj-id` [Objects] ID of this object.

`-j`
`--host-obj-id`
[Clumps] The ID of the object which hosts this clump.

`--id-in-host-obj`
[Clumps] The ID of this clump in its host object.

7.4.4.2 Position measurements in pixels

The position of a labeled region within your input dataset (in its own units) can be measured with the options in this section. By "in its own units" we mean pixels in a 2D image or voxels in a 3D cube. For example if the flux-weighted center of a label lies 123 pixels on the

horizontal and 456 pixels on the vertical, the `--x` and `--y` options will put a value of 123 and 456 in their respective columns. As you see below, there are various ways to define the "position" of an object, so read the differences carefully to choose the one that corresponds best to your usage.

`-x`
`--x` The flux weighted center of all objects and clumps along the first FITS axis (horizontal when viewed in SAO DS9), see $\overline{x}$ in Section 7.4.4.8 [Morphology measurements (elliptical)], page 610. The weight has to have a positive value (pixel value larger than the Sky value) to be meaningful! Specially when doing matched photometry, this might not happen: no pixel value might be above the Sky value. For such detections, the geometric center will be reported in this column (see `--geo-x`). You can use `--weight-area` to see which was used.

`-y`
`--y` The flux weighted center of all objects and clumps along the second FITS axis (vertical when viewed in SAO DS9). See `--x`.

`-z`
`--z` The flux weighted center of all objects and clumps along the third FITS axis. See `--x`.

`--geo-x` The geometric center of all objects and clumps along the first FITS axis axis. The geometric center is the average pixel positions irrespective of their pixel values.

`--geo-y` The geometric center of all objects and clumps along the second FITS axis axis, see `--geo-x`.

`--geo-z` The geometric center of all objects and clumps along the third FITS axis axis, see `--geo-x`.

`--min-val-x`
Position of pixel with minimum value in objects and clumps, along the first FITS axis.

`--max-val-x`
Position of pixel with maximum value in objects and clumps, along the first FITS axis.

`--min-val-y`
Position of pixel with minimum value in objects and clumps, along the first FITS axis.

`--max-val-y`
Position of pixel with maximum value in objects and clumps, along the first FITS axis.

`--min-val-z`
Position of pixel with minimum value in objects and clumps, along the first FITS axis.

`--max-val-z`
Position of pixel with maximum value in objects and clumps, along the first FITS axis.

`--min-x` The minimum position of all objects and clumps along the first FITS axis.

`--max-x` The maximum position of all objects and clumps along the first FITS axis.

`--min-y` The minimum position of all objects and clumps along the second FITS axis.

`--max-y` The maximum position of all objects and clumps along the second FITS axis.

`--min-z` The minimum position of all objects and clumps along the third FITS axis.

`--max-z` The maximum position of all objects and clumps along the third FITS axis.

`--clumps-x`
[Objects] The flux weighted center of all the clumps in this object along the first FITS axis. See `--x`.

`--clumps-y`
[Objects] The flux weighted center of all the clumps in this object along the second FITS axis. See `--x`.

`--clumps-z`
[Objects] The flux weighted center of all the clumps in this object along the third FITS axis. See `--x`.

`--clumps-geo-x`
[Objects] The geometric center of all the clumps in this object along the first FITS axis. See `--geo-x`.

`--clumps-geo-y`
[Objects] The geometric center of all the clumps in this object along the second FITS axis. See `--geo-x`.

`--clumps-geo-z`
[Objects] The geometric center of all the clumps in this object along the third FITS axis. See `--geo-z`.

7.4.4.3 Position measurements in WCS

The position of a labeled region within your input dataset (in the World Coordinate System, or WCS) can be measured with the options in this section. As you see below, there are various ways to define the "position" of an object, so read the differences carefully to choose the one that corresponds best to your usage.

The most common WCS coordinates are Right Ascension (RA) and Declination in an equatorial system. Therefore, to simplify their usage, we have special `--ra` and `--dec` options. However, the WCS of datasets are in Galactic coordinates, so to be generic, you can use the `--w1`, `--w2` or `--w3` (if you have a 3D cube) options. In case your dataset's WCS is not in your desired system (for example it is Galactic, but you want equatorial 2000), you can use the `--wcscoordsys` option of Gnuastro's Fits program on the labeled image before running MakeCatalog (see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304).

`-r`
`--ra` Flux weighted right ascension of all objects or clumps, see `--x`. This is just an alias for one of the lower-level `--w1` or `--w2` options. Using the FITS WCS

keywords (`CTYPE`), MakeCatalog will determine which axis corresponds to the right ascension. If no `CTYPE` keywords start with `RA`, an error will be printed when requesting this column and MakeCatalog will abort.

`-d`
`--dec` Flux weighted declination of all objects or clumps, see `--x`. This is just an alias for one of the lower-level `--w1` or `--w2` options. Using the FITS WCS keywords (`CTYPE`), MakeCatalog will determine which axis corresponds to the declination. If no `CTYPE` keywords start with `DEC`, an error will be printed when requesting this column and MakeCatalog will abort.

`--w1` Flux weighted first WCS axis of all objects or clumps, see `--x`. The first WCS axis is commonly used as right ascension in images.

`--w2` Flux weighted second WCS axis of all objects or clumps, see `--x`. The second WCS axis is commonly used as declination in images.

`--w3` Flux weighted third WCS axis of all objects or clumps, see `--x`. The third WCS axis is commonly used as wavelength in integral field unit data cubes.

`--geo-w1` Geometric center in first WCS axis of all objects or clumps, see `--geo-x`. The first WCS axis is commonly used as right ascension in images.

`--geo-w2` Geometric center in second WCS axis of all objects or clumps, see `--geo-x`. The second WCS axis is commonly used as declination in images.

`--geo-w3` Geometric center in third WCS axis of all objects or clumps, see `--geo-x`. The third WCS axis is commonly used as wavelength in integral field unit data cubes.

`--clumps-w1`
[Objects] Flux weighted center in first WCS axis of all clumps in this object, see `--x`. The first WCS axis is commonly used as right ascension in images.

`--clumps-w2`
[Objects] Flux weighted declination of all clumps in this object, see `--x`. The second WCS axis is commonly used as declination in images.

`--clumps-w3`
[Objects] Flux weighted center in third WCS axis of all clumps in this object, see `--x`. The third WCS axis is commonly used as wavelength in integral field unit data cubes.

`--clumps-geo-w1`
[Objects] Geometric center right ascension of all clumps in this object, see `--geo-x`. The first WCS axis is commonly used as right ascension in images.

`--clumps-geo-w2`
[Objects] Geometric center declination of all clumps in this object, see `--geo-x`. The second WCS axis is commonly used as declination in images.

`--clumps-geo-w3`
[Objects] Geometric center in third WCS axis of all clumps in this object, see `--geo-x`. The third WCS axis is commonly used as wavelength in integral field unit data cubes.

7.4.4.4 Brightness measurements

Within an image, pixels have both a position and a value. In the sections above all the measurements involved position (see Section 7.4.4.2 [Position measurements in pixels], page 595, or Section 7.4.4.3 [Position measurements in WCS], page 597). The measurements in this section only deal with pixel values and ignore the pixel positions completely. In other words, for the options of this section each labeled region within the input is just a group of values (and their associated error values if necessary), and they let you do various types of measurements on the resulting distribution of values. For more on the difference between the `--*error` or `--*std` columns see Section 7.4.3 [Standard deviation vs Standard error], page 590.

`--sum` The sum of all pixel values associated to this label (object or clump). Note that if a sky value or image has been given, it will be subtracted before any column measurement. For clumps, the ambient values (average of river pixels around the clump, multiplied by the area of the clump) is subtracted, see `--river-mean`. So the sum of all the clump-sums in the clump catalog of one object will be smaller than the `--clumps-sum` column of the objects catalog.

If no usable pixels are present over the clump or object (for example, they are all blank), the returned value will be NaN (note that zero is meaningful).

`--sum-error`
The standard deviation of the sum of values of a label (objects or clumps). The value is calculated by using the values image (for signal above the sky level) and the sky standard deviation image (extension `--stdhdu` of file given to `--instd`); which you can derive for any image using Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552. This column is internally used to measure the signal-to-noise (`--sn`).

For objects this is calculated by adding the sky variance (second power of the sky standard deviation image) of each pixel in the label, with the value of the pixel if the value is not negative (error only increases). This is done to account for brighter pixels which have higher noise in the Poisson distribution (its side effect is that the error will always be slightly over-estimated due to the positive values close to the noise). A correction may be applied if the sky standard deviation is negative; see Section 3.3 of Akhlaghi & Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). For clumps, the variance of the rivers (which are subtracted from the value of pixels in calclulating the sum) are also added to generate the final standard deviation.

The returned value will be NaN when the label covers only NaN pixels in the values image, or a pixel is NaN in the `--instd` image, but non-NaN in the values image. The latter situation usually happens when there is a bug in the previous steps of your analysis. This is because the sky standard deviation should have a value in all pixels. In such cases, it is important to find the cause and fix it because those pixels with a NaN in the `--instd` image may contribute significantly to the final error. If you want to ignore those pixels in the error measurement, set them to zero (which is a meaningful number in such scenarios).

`--clumps-sum`
: [Objects] The total sum of the pixels covered by clumps (before subtracting the river) within each object. This is simply the sum of `--sum-no-river` in the clumps catalog (see below). If no usable pixels are present over the clump or object (for example, they are all blank), the stored value will be NaN (note that zero is meaningful).

`--sum-no-river`
: [Clumps] The sum of Sky (not river) subtracted clump pixel values. By definition, for the clumps, the average value of the rivers surrounding it are subtracted from it for a first order accounting for contamination by neighbors.

  If no usable pixels are present over the clump or object (for example, they are all blank), the stored value will be NaN (note that zero is meaningful).

`--mean`
: The mean sky subtracted value of pixels within the object or clump. For clumps, the average river flux is subtracted from the sky subtracted mean.

`--mean-error`
: The error in measuring the mean; using both the values file and the sky standard deviation image. In case the given standard deviation or variance image already contains the contributions from the pixel values (it is not just the sky standard deviation), use `--novalinerror`).

`--std`
: The standard deviation of the pixels within the object or clump. For clumps, the river pixels are not subtracted because that is a constant (per pixel) value and should not affect the standard deviation.

`--median`
: The median sky subtracted value of pixels within the object or clump. For clumps, the average river flux is subtracted from the sky subtracted median.

`--maximum`
: The maximum value of pixels within the object or clump. When the label (object or clump) is larger than three pixels, the maximum is actually derived by the mean of the brightest three pixels, not the largest pixel value of the same label. This is because noise fluctuations can be very strong in the extreme values of the objects/clumps due to Poisson noise (which gets stronger as the mean gets higher). Simply using the maximum pixel value will create a strong scatter in results that depend on the maximum (for example, the `--fwhm` option also uses this value internally).

`--sigclip-number`
: The number of elements/pixels in the dataset after sigma-clipping the object or clump. The sigma-clipping parameters can be set with the `--sigmaclip` option described in Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625. For more on Sigma-clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`--sigclip-median`
: The sigma-clipped median value of the object of clump's pixel distribution. For more on sigma-clipping and how to define it, see `--sigclip-number`.

`--sigclip-mean`
: The sigma-clipped mean value of the object of clump's pixel distribution. For more on sigma-clipping and how to define it, see `--sigclip-number`.

`--sigclip-std`
: The sigma-clipped standard deviation of the object of clump's pixel distribution. For more on sigma-clipping and how to define it, see `--sigclip-number`.

`-m`
`--magnitude`
: The magnitude of clumps or objects. It is derived through the pixel counts over the label (which you can see in the `--sum` column) and the value given to the `--zeropoint` through the definition of the magnitude described in Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`--magnitude-error`
: The magnitude error of clumps or objects. The method used is described below. As we see there, this error assumes uncorrelated pixel values and also does not include the error in estimating the aperture (or error in generating the labeled image). See the status of implementation of such factors in Task 14124 (`https://savannah.gnu.org/task/index.php?14124`).

  The returned value will be NaN when the label covers only NaN pixels in the values image, or a pixel is NaN in the `--instd` image, but non-NaN in the values image. The latter situation usually happens when there is a bug in the previous steps of your analysis, and is important because those pixels with a NaN in the `--instd` image may contribute significantly to the final error. If you want to ignore those pixels in the error measurement, set them to zero (which is a meaningful number in such scenarios).

  The raw error in measuring the magnitude is only meaningful when the object's magnitude is brighter than the upper-limit magnitude (see below). As discussed in Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, the magnitude (M) of an object with brightness B and zero point magnitude z can be written as:

$$M = -2.5\log_{10}(B) + z$$

  Calculating the derivative with respect to B, we get:

$$\frac{dM}{dB} = \frac{-2.5}{B \times ln(10)}$$

  From the Tailor series ($\Delta M = dM/dB \times \Delta B$), we can write:

$$\Delta M = \left|\frac{-2.5}{ln(10)}\right| \times \frac{\Delta B}{B}$$

  But, $\Delta B/B$ is just the inverse of the Signal-to-noise ratio (S/N), so we can write the error in magnitude in terms of the signal-to-noise ratio:

$$\Delta M = \frac{2.5}{S/N \times ln(10)}$$

MakeCatalog uses this relation to estimate the magnitude errors. The signal-to-noise ratio is calculated in different ways for clumps and objects, see Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`)), but this single equation can be used to estimate the measured magnitude error afterwards for any type of target.

`--clumps-magnitude`
: [Objects] The magnitude of all clumps in this object, see `--clumps-sum`.

`--river-mean`
: [Clumps] The average of the river pixel values around this clump. River pixels were defined in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). In short they are the pixels immediately outside of the clumps. This value is used internally to find the sum (or magnitude) and signal to noise ratio of the clumps. It can generally also be used as a scale to gauge the base (ambient) flux surrounding the clump. In case there was no river pixels, then this column will have the value of the Sky under the clump. So note that this value is *not* sky subtracted.

`--river-num`
: [Clumps] The number of river pixels around this clump, see `--river-mean`.

`--river-min`
: [Clumps] Minimum river value around this clump, see `--river-mean`.

`--river-max`
: [Clumps] Maximum river value around this clump, see `--river-mean`.

`--sn`
: The Signal to noise ratio (S/N) of all clumps or objects. See Akhlaghi and Ichikawa (2015) for the exact equations used.

  The returned value will be NaN when the label covers only NaN pixels in the values image, or a pixel is NaN in the `--instd` image, but non-NaN in the values image. The latter situation usually happens when there is a bug in the previous steps of your analysis, and is important because those pixels with a NaN in the `--instd` image may contribute significantly to the final error. If you want to ignore those pixels in the error measurement, set them to zero (which is a meaningful number).

`--sky`
: The sky flux (per pixel) value under this object or clump. This is actually the mean value of all the pixels in the sky image that lie on the same position as the object or clump.

`--sky-std`
: The sky value standard deviation (per pixel) for this clump or object. This is the square root of the mean variance under the object, or the root mean square.

7.4.4.5 Surface brightness measurements

In astronomy, Surface brightness is most commonly measured in units of magnitudes per arcsec^2 (for the formal definition, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface

brightness], page 585). Therefore it involves both the values of the pixels within each input label (or output row) and their position.

`--sb` The surface brightness (in units of mag/arcsec^2) of the labeled region (objects or clumps). For more on the definition of the surface brightness, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`--sb-error`

Error in measuring the surface brightness (the `--sb` column) as derived below.

We can derive the error in measuring the surface brightness based on the surface brightness (SB) equation of Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, and the generic magnitude error (ΔM) that is described under `--magnitude-error` in Section 7.4.4.4 [Brightness measurements], page 599. Let's set A to represent the area and ΔA to represent the error in measuring the area. For more on ΔA, see the description of `--spatialresolution` in Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625.

$$\Delta(SB) = \Delta M + \left|\frac{-2.5}{ln(10)}\right| \times \frac{\Delta A}{A}$$

In the surface brightness equation mentioned above, A is in units of arcsecond squared and the conversion between arcseconds to pixels is a multiplication factor. Therefore as long as A and ΔA have the same units, it does not matter if they are in arcseconds or pixels. Since the measure of spatial resolution (or area error) is the FWHM of the PSF which is usually defined in terms of pixels, its more intuitive to use pixels for A and ΔA.

`--upperlimit-sb`

The upper-limit surface brightness (in units of mag/arcsec^2) of this labeled region (object or clump). In other words, this option measures the surface brightness of noise within the footprint of each input label.

This is just a simple wrapper over lower-level columns: setting B and A as the value in the columns `--upperlimit` and `--area-arcsec2`, we fill this column by simply use the surface brightness equation of Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`--half-sum-sb`

Surface brightness (in units of mag/arcsec^2) within the area that contains half the total sum of the label's pixels (object or clump). This is useful as a measure of the sharpness of an astronomical object: for example a star will have very few pixels at half the maximum, so its `--half-sum-sb` will be much brighter than a galaxy at the same magnitude. Also consider `--half-max-sb` below.

This column just plugs in the values of half the value of the `--sum` column and the `--half-sum-area` column, into the surface brightness equation. Therefore please see the description in `--half-sum-area` to understand the systematics of this column and potential biases (see Section 7.4.4.7 [Morphology measurements (non-parametric)], page 607).

`--half-max-sb`

The surface brightness (in units of mag/arcsec^2) within the region that contains half the maximum value of the labeled region. Like `--half-sum-sb` this option this is a good way to identify the "central" surface brightness of an object. To know when this measurement is reasonable, see the description of `--fwhm` in Section 7.4.4.7 [Morphology measurements (non-parametric)], page 607.

`--sigclip-mean-sb`

Surface brightness (over 1 pixel's area in arcsec^2) of the sigma-clipped mean value of the pixel values distribution associated to each label (object or clump). This is useful in scenarios where your labels have approximately *constant* surface brightness values *after* after removing outliers: for example in a radial profile, see Section 10.2.1 [Invoking astscript-radial-profile], page 694).

In other scenarios it should be used with extreme care. For example over the full area of a galaxy/star the pixel distribution is not constant (or symmetric after adding noise), their pixel distributions are inherently skewed (with fewer pixels in the center, having a very large value and many pixels in the outer parts having lower values). Therefore, sigma-clipping is not meaningful for such objects! For more on the definition of the surface brightness, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585, for more on sigma-clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

The error in this magnitude can be retrieved from the `--sigclip-mean-sb-delta` column described below, and you can use the `--sigclip-std-sb` column to find when the magnitude has become noise-dominated (signal-to-noise ratio is roughly 1). See the description of these two options for more.

`--sigclip-mean-sb-delta`

Scatter in the `--sigclip-mean-sb` without using the standard deviation of each pixel (that is given by `--instd` in Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625). The scatter here is measured from the values of the label themselves. This measurement is therefore most meaningful when you expect the flux across one label to be constant (as in a radial profile for example).

This is calculated using surface brightness error derived under `--sb-error` in Section 7.4.4.5 [Surface brightness measurements], page 602, but with $\Delta A = 0$ (since sigma-clip is calculated per pixel and there is no error in a single pixel). Within the equation to derive ΔM (the error in magnitude, derived in the description of `--magnitude-error` in Section 7.4.4.4 [Brightness measurements], page 599), the signal-to-noise ratio is defined by dividing the sigma-clipped mean by the sigma-clipped standard deviation.

`--sigclip-std-sb`

The surface brightness of the sigma-clipped standard deviation of all the pixels with the same label. For labels that are expected to have the same value in all their pixels (for example each annulus of a radial profile) this can be used to find the reliable (1σ) surface brightness for that label. In other words, if `--sigclip-mean-sb` is fainter than the value of this column, you know that noise is becoming significant. However, as described in `--sigclip-mean-sb`,

the sigma-clipped measurements of MakeCatalog should only be used in certain situations like radial profiles, see the description there for more.

7.4.4.6 Upper limit measurements

Due to the noisy nature of data, it is possible to get arbitrarily faint magnitudes, especially when you use labels from another image (for example see Section 2.1.15 [Working with catalogs (estimating colors)], page 54). Given the scatter caused by the dataset's noise, values fainter than a certain level are meaningless: another similar depth observation will give a radically different value. In such cases, measurements like the image magnitude limit are not useful because it is estimated for a certain morphology and is given for the whole image (it is a crude generalization; see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615. You want a quality measure that is specific to each object.

For example, assume that you have done your detection and segmentation on one filter and now you do measurements over the same labeled regions, but on other filters to measure colors (as we did in the tutorial Section 2.1.13 [Segmentation and making a catalog], page 47). Some objects are not going to have any significant signal in the other filters, but for example, you measure magnitude of 36 for one of them! This is clearly unreliable (no dataset in current astronomy is able to detect such a faint signal). In another image with the same depth, using the same filter, you might measure a magnitude of 30 for it, and yet another might give you 33. Furthermore, the total sum of pixel values might actually be negative in some images of the same depth (due to noise). In these cases, no magnitude can be defined and MakeCatalog will place a NaN there (recall that a magnitude is a base-10 logarithm).

Using such unreliable measurements will directly affect our analysis, so we must not use the raw measurements. When approaching the limits of your detection method, it is therefore important to be able to identify such cases. But how can we know how reliable a measurement of one object on a given dataset is?

When we confront such unreasonably faint magnitudes, there is one thing we can deduce: that if something actually exists under our labeled pixels (possibly buried deep under the noise), it's inherent magnitude is fainter than an *upper limit magnitude*. To find this upper limit magnitude, we place the object's footprint (segmentation map) over a random part of the image where there are no detections, and measure the sum of pixel values within the footprint. Doing this a large number of times will give us a distribution of measurements of the sum. The standard deviation (σ) of that distribution can be used to quantify the upper limit magnitude for that particular object (given its particular shape and area):

$$M_{up,n\sigma} = -2.5 \times \log_{10}(n\sigma_m) + z \qquad [mag/target]$$

Traditionally, faint/small object photometry was done using fixed circular apertures (for example, with a diameter of N arc-seconds) and there was not much processing involved (to make a deep coadd). Hence, the upper limit was synonymous with the surface brightness limit discussed above: one value for the whole image. The problem with this simplified approach is that the number of pixels in the aperture directly affects the final distribution and thus magnitude. Also the image correlated noise might actually create certain patterns, so the shape of the object can also affect the final result. Fortunately, with the much

more advanced hardware and software of today, we can make customized segmentation maps (footprint) for each object and have enough computing power to actually place that footprint over many random places. As a result, the per-target upper-limit magnitude and general surface brightness limit have diverged.

When any of the upper-limit-related columns requested, MakeCatalog will randomly place each target's footprint over the undetected parts of the dataset as described above, and estimate the required properties. The procedure is fully configurable with the options in Section 7.4.8.2 [Upper-limit settings], page 629. You can get the full list of upper-limit related columns of MakeCatalog with this command (the extra `--` before `--upperlimit` is necessary[21]):

```
$ astmkcatalog --help | grep -- --upperlimit
```

`--upperlimit`
: The upper limit value (in units of the input image) for this object or clump. This is the sigma-clipped standard deviation of the random distribution, multiplied by the value of `--upnsigma`). This is very important for the fainter and smaller objects in the image where the measured magnitudes are not reliable.

`--upperlimit-mag`
: The upper limit magnitude for this object or clump. This is very important for the fainter and smaller objects in the image where the measured magnitudes are not reliable.

`--upperlimit-onesigma`
: The 1σ upper limit value (in units of the input image) for this object or clump. When `--upnsigma=1`, this column's values will be the same as `--upperlimit`.

`--upperlimit-sigma`
: The position of the label's sum measured within the distribution of randomly placed upperlimit measurements in units of the distribution's σ or standard deviation.

`--upperlimit-quantile`
: The position of the label's sum within the distribution of randomly placed upperlimit measurements as a quantile (value between 0 or 1). If the object is brighter than the brightest randomly placed profile, a value of `inf` is returned. If it is less than the minimum, a value of `-inf` is reported.

`--upperlimit-skew`
: This column contains the non-parametric skew of the σ-clipped random distribution that was used to estimate the upper-limit magnitude. Taking μ as the mean, ν as the median and σ as the standard deviation, the traditional definition of skewness is defined as: $(\mu - \nu)/\sigma$.

  This can be a good measure to see how much you can trust the random measurements, or in other words, how accurately the regions with signal have been masked/detected. If the skewness is strong (and to the positive), then you can tell that you have a lot of undetected signal in the dataset, and therefore that the upper-limit measurement (and other measurements) are not reliable.

[21] Without the extra `--`, grep will assume that `--upperlimit` is one of its own options, and will thus abort, complaining that it has no option with this name.

7.4.4.7 Morphology measurements (non-parametric)

Morphology defined as a way to quantify the "shape" of an object in your input image. This includes both the position and value of the pixels within your input labels. There are many ways to define the morphology of an object. In this section, we will review the available non-parametric measures of morphology. By non-parametric, we mean that no functional shape is assumed for the measurement.

In Section 7.4.4.8 [Morphology measurements (elliptical)], page 610, you can see some parametric elliptical measurements (which are only valid when the object is actually an ellipse).

`--num-clumps`
: [Objects] The number of clumps in this object.

`--area`
: The raw area (number of pixels/voxels) in any clump or object independent of what pixel it lies over (if it is NaN/blank or unused for example).

`--arcsec2-area`
: The used (non-blank in values image) area of the labeled region in units of arcseconds squared. This column is just the value of the `--area` column, multiplied by the area of each pixel in the input image (in units of arcsec^2). Similar to the `--ra` or `--dec` columns, for this option to work, the objects extension used has to have a WCS structure.

`--area-min-val`
: The number of pixels that are equal to the minimum value of the labeled region (clump or object).

`--area-max-val`
: The number of pixels that are equal to the maximum value of the labeled region (clump or object).

`--area-xy`
: Similar to `--area`, when the clump or object is projected onto the first two dimensions. This is only available for 3-dimensional datasets. When working with Integral Field Unit (IFU) datasets, this projection onto the first two dimensions would be a narrow-band image.

`--fwhm`
: The full width at half maximum (in units of pixels, along the semi-major axis) of the labeled region (object or clump). The maximum value is estimated from the mean of the top-three pixels with the highest values, see the description under `--maximum`. The number of pixels that have half the value of that maximum are then found (value in the `--half-max-area` column) and a radius is estimated from the area. See the description under `--half-sum-radius` for more on converting area to radius along major axis.

  Because of its non-parametric nature, this column is most reliable on clumps and should only be used in objects with great caution. This is because objects can have more than one clump (peak with true signal) and multiple peaks are not treated separately in objects, so the result of this column will be biased.

  Also, because of its non-parametric nature, this FWHM it does not account for the PSF, and it will be strongly affected by noise if the object is faint/diffuse

So when half the maximum value (which can be requested using the `--maximum` column) is too close to the local noise level (which can be requested using the `--sky-std` column), the value returned in this column is meaningless (its just noise peaks which are randomly distributed over the area). You can therefore use the `--maximum` and `--sky-std` columns to remove, or flag, unreliable FWHMs. For example, if a labeled region's maximum is less than 2 times the sky standard deviation, the value will certainly be unreliable (half of that is 1σ!). For a more reliable value, this fraction should be around 4 (so half the maximum is 2σ).

`--half-max-area`

The number of pixels with values larger than half the maximum flux within the labeled region. This option is used to estimate `--fwhm`, so please read the notes there for the caveats and necessary precautions.

`--half-max-radius`

The radius of region containing half the maximum flux within the labeled region. This is just half the value reported by `--fwhm`.

`--half-max-sum`

The sum of the pixel values containing half the maximum flux within the labeled region (or those that are counted in `--halfmaxarea`). This option uses the pixels within `--fwhm`, so please read the notes there for the caveats and necessary precautions.

`--half-sum-area`

The number of pixels that contain half the object or clump's total sum of pixels (half the value in the `--sum` column). To count this area, all the non-blank values associated with the given label (object or clump) will be sorted and summed in order (starting from the maximum), until the sum becomes larger than half the total sum of the label's pixels.

This option is thus good for clumps (which are defined to have a single peak in their morphology), but for objects you should be careful: if the object includes multiple peaks/clumps at roughly the same level, then the area reported by this option will be distributed over all the peaks.

`--half-sum-radius`

Radius (in units of pixels) derived from the area that contains half the total sum of the label's pixels (value reported by `--halfsumarea`). If the area is A_h and the axis ratio is q, then the value returned in this column is $\sqrt{A_h/(\pi q)}$. This option is a good measure of the concentration of the *observed* (after PSF convolution and noisy) object or clump, But as described below it underestimates the effective radius. Also, it should be used in caution with objects that may have multiple clumps. It is most reliable with clumps or objects that have one or zero clumps, see the note under `--halfsumarea`.

Recall that in general, for an ellipse with semi-major axis a, semi-minor axis b, and axis ratio $q = b/a$ the area (A) is $A = \pi ab = \pi q a^2$. For a circle (where $q = 1$), this simplifies to the familiar $A = \pi a^2$.

This option should not be confused with the *effective radius* for Sérsic profiles, commonly written as r_e. For more on the Sérsic profile and r_e, please see

Section 8.1.1.4 [Galaxies], page 656. Therefore, when r_e is meaningful for the target (the target is elliptically symmetric and can be parameterized as a Sérsic profile), r_e should be derived from fitting the profile with a Sérsic function which has been convolved with the PSF. But from the equation above, you see that this radius is derived from the raw image's labeled values (after convolution, with no parametric profile), so this column's value will generally be (much) smaller than r_e, depending on the PSF, depth of the dataset, the morphology, or if a fraction of the profile falls on the edge of the image.

In other words, this option can only be interpreted as an effective radius if there is no noise and no PSF and the profile within the image extends to infinity (or a very large multiple of the effective radius) and it not near the edge of the image.

`--frac-max1-area`
`--frac-max2-area`
Number of pixels brighter than the given fraction(s) of the maximum pixel value. For the maximum value, see the description of `--maximum` column. The fraction(s) are given through the `--frac-max` option (that can take two values) and is described in Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625. Recall that in `--halfmaxarea`, the fraction is fixed to 0.5. Hence, added with these two columns, you can sample three parts of the profile area.

`--frac-max1-sum`
`--frac-max2-sum`
Sum of pixels brighter than the given fraction(s) of the maximum pixel value. For the maximum value, see the description of `--maximum` column below. The fraction(s) are given through the `--frac-max` option (that can take two values) and is described in Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625. Recall that in `--halfmaxsum`, the fraction is fixed to 0.5. Hence, added with these two columns, you can sample three parts of the profile's sum of pixels.

`--frac-max1-radius`
`--frac-max2-radius`
Radius (in units of pixels) derived from the area that contains the given fractions of the maximum valued pixel(s) of the label's pixels (value reported by `--frac-max1-area` or `--frac-max2-area`). For the maximum value, see the description of `--maximum` column below. The fractions are given through the `--frac-max` option (that can take two values) and is described in Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625. Recall that in `--fwhm`, the fraction is fixed to 0.5. Hence, added with these two columns, you can sample three parts of the profile's radius.

`--clumps-area`
[Objects] The total area of all the clumps in this object.

`--weight-area`
The area (number of pixels) used in the flux weighted position calculations.

`--geo-area`
: The area of all the pixels labeled with an object or clump. Note that unlike `--area`, pixel values are completely ignored in this column. For example, if a pixel value is blank, it will not be counted in `--area`, but will be counted here.

`--geo-area-xy`
: Similar to `--geo-area`, when the clump or object is projected onto the first two dimensions. This is only available for 3-dimensional datasets. When working with Integral Field Unit (IFU) datasets, this projection onto the first two dimensions would be a narrow-band image.

7.4.4.8 Morphology measurements (elliptical)

When your target objects are sufficiently ellipse-like, you can use the measurements below to quantify the various parameters of the ellipse. The derivation of the elliptical parameters are described in detail below and followed by the available MakeCatalog column options.

The shape or morphology of a target is one of the most commonly desired parameters of a target. Here, we will review the derivation of the most basic/simple morphological parameters: the elliptical parameters for a set of labeled pixels. The elliptical parameters are: the (semi-)major axis, the (semi-)minor axis and the position angle along with the central position of the profile. The derivations below follow the SExtractor manual derivations with some added explanations for easier reading.

Let's begin with one dimension for simplicity: Assume we have a set of N values B_i (for example, showing the spatial distribution of a target's brightness), each at position x_i. The simplest parameter we can define is the geometric center of the object (x_g) (ignoring the brightness values): $x_g = (\sum_i x_i)/N$. *Moments* are defined to incorporate both the value (brightness) and position of the data. The first moment can be written as:

$$\overline{x} = \frac{\sum_i B_i x_i}{\sum_i B_i}$$

This is essentially the weighted (by B_i) mean position. The geometric center (x_g, defined above) is a special case of this with all $B_i = 1$. The second moment is essentially the variance of the distribution:

$$\overline{x^2} \equiv \frac{\sum_i B_i(x_i-\overline{x})^2}{\sum_i B_i} = \frac{\sum_i B_i x_i^2}{\sum_i B_i} - 2\overline{x}\frac{\sum_i B_i x_i}{\sum_i B_i} + \overline{x}^2 = \frac{\sum_i B_i x_i^2}{\sum_i B_i} - \overline{x}^2$$

The last step was done from the definition of $\overline{x}$. Hence, the square root of $\overline{x^2}$ is the spatial standard deviation (along the one-dimension) of this particular brightness distribution (B_i). Crudely (or qualitatively), you can think of its square root as the distance (from $\overline{x}$) which contains a specific amount of the flux (depending on the B_i distribution). Similar to the first moment, the geometric second moment can be found by setting all $B_i = 1$. So while the first moment quantified the position of the brightness distribution, the second moment quantifies how that brightness is dispersed about the first moment. In other words, it quantifies how "sharp" the object's image is.

Before continuing to two dimensions and the derivation of the elliptical parameters, let's pause for an important implementation technicality. You can ignore this paragraph and

the next two if you do not want to implement these concepts. The basic definition (first definition of $\overline{x^2}$ above) can be used without any major problem. However, using this fraction requires two runs over the data: one run to find $\overline{x}$ and another run to find $\overline{x^2}$ from $\overline{x}$, this can be slow. The advantage of the last fraction above, is that we can estimate both the first and second moments in one run (since the $-\overline{x}^2$ term can easily be added later).

The logarithmic nature of floating point number digitization creates a complication however: suppose the object is located between pixels 10000 and 10020. Hence the target's pixels are only distributed over 20 pixels (with a standard deviation < 20), while the mean has a value of ~ 10000. The $\sum_i B_i^2 x_i^2$ will go to very very large values while the individual pixel differences will be orders of magnitude smaller. This will lower the accuracy of our calculation due to the limited accuracy of floating point operations. The variance only depends on the distance of each point from the mean, so we can shift all position by a constant/arbitrary K which is much closer to the mean: $\overline{x-K} = \overline{x} - K$. Hence we can calculate the second order moment using:

$$\overline{x^2} = \frac{\sum_i B_i (x_i - K)^2}{\sum_i B_i} - (\overline{x} - K)^2$$

The closer K is to $\overline{x}$, the better (the sums of squares will involve smaller numbers), as long as K is within the object limits (in the example above: $10000 \leq K \leq 10020$), the floating point error induced in our calculation will be negligible. For the most simplest implementation, MakeCatalog takes K to be the smallest position of the object in each dimension. Since K is arbitrary and an implementation/technical detail, we will ignore it for the remainder of this discussion.

In two dimensions, the mean and variances can be written as:

$$\overline{x} = \frac{\sum_i B_i x_i}{B_i}, \quad \overline{x^2} = \frac{\sum_i B_i x_i^2}{\sum_i B_i} - \overline{x}^2$$

$$\overline{y} = \frac{\sum_i B_i y_i}{B_i}, \quad \overline{y^2} = \frac{\sum_i B_i y_i^2}{\sum_i B_i} - \overline{y}^2$$

$$\overline{xy} = \frac{\sum_i B_i x_i y_i}{\sum_i B_i} - \overline{x} \times \overline{y}$$

If an elliptical profile's major axis exactly lies along the x axis, then $\overline{x^2}$ will be directly proportional with the profile's major axis, $\overline{y^2}$ with its minor axis and $\overline{xy} = 0$. However, in reality we are not that lucky and (assuming galaxies can be parameterized as an ellipse) the major axis of galaxies can be in any direction on the image (in fact this is one of the core principles behind weak-lensing by shear estimation). So the purpose of the remainder of this section is to define a strategy to measure the position angle and axis ratio of some randomly positioned ellipses in an image, using the raw second moments that we have calculated above in our image coordinates.

Let's assume we have rotated the galaxy by θ, the new second order moments are:

$$\overline{x_\theta^2} = \overline{x^2}\cos^2\theta + \overline{y^2}\sin^2\theta - 2\overline{xy}\cos\theta\sin\theta$$

$$\overline{y_\theta^2} = \overline{x^2}\sin^2\theta + \overline{y^2}\cos^2\theta + 2\overline{xy}\cos\theta\sin\theta$$

$$\overline{xy_\theta} = \overline{x^2}\cos\theta\sin\theta - \overline{y^2}\cos\theta\sin\theta + \overline{xy}(\cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta)$$

The best θ (θ_0, where major axis lies along the x_θ axis) can be found by:

$$\left.\frac{\partial\overline{x_\theta^2}}{\partial\theta}\right|_{\theta_0} = 0$$

Taking the derivative, we get:

$$2\cos\theta_0\sin\theta_0(\overline{y^2} - \overline{x^2}) + 2(\cos^2\theta_0 - \sin^2\theta_0)\overline{xy} = 0$$

When $\overline{x^2} \neq \overline{y^2}$, we can write:

$$\tan 2\theta_0 = 2\frac{\overline{xy}}{\overline{x^2} - \overline{y^2}}.$$

MakeCatalog uses the standard C math library's `atan2` function to estimate θ_0, which we define as the position angle of the ellipse. To recall, this is the angle of the major axis of the ellipse with the x axis. By definition, when the elliptical profile is rotated by θ_0, then $\overline{xy_{\theta_0}} = 0$, $\overline{x_{\theta_0}^2}$ will be the extent of the maximum variance and $\overline{y_{\theta_0}^2}$ the extent of the minimum variance (which are perpendicular for an ellipse). Replacing θ_0 in the equations above for $\overline{x_\theta}$ and $\overline{y_\theta}$, we can get the semi-major (A) and semi-minor (B) lengths:

$$A^2 \equiv \overline{x_{\theta_0}^2} = \frac{\overline{x^2} + \overline{y^2}}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{\overline{x^2} - \overline{y^2}}{2}\right)^2 + \overline{xy}^2}$$

$$B^2 \equiv \overline{y_{\theta_0}^2} = \frac{\overline{x^2} + \overline{y^2}}{2} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{\overline{x^2} - \overline{y^2}}{2}\right)^2 + \overline{xy}^2}$$

As a summary, it is important to remember that the units of A and B are in pixels (the standard deviation of a positional distribution) and that they represent the spatial light distribution of the object in both image dimensions (rotated by θ_0). When the object cannot be represented as an ellipse, this interpretation breaks down: $\overline{xy_{\theta_0}} \neq 0$ and $\overline{y_{\theta_0}^2}$ will not be the direction of minimum variance.

The list of options/columns to measure the elliptical properties of an object's light distribution is given below. Those that start with `--geo-*` ignore the pixel values and just do the measurements on the label's "geometric" shape.

`--semi-major`
: The pixel-value weighted root mean square (RMS) along the semi-major axis of the profile (assuming it is an ellipse) in units of pixels.

`--semi-minor`
: The pixel-value weighted root mean square (RMS) along the semi-minor axis of the profile (assuming it is an ellipse) in units of pixels.

`--axis-ratio`
: The pixel-value weighted axis ratio (semi-minor/semi-major) of the object or clump.

`--position-angle`
: The pixel-value weighted angle of the semi-major axis with the first FITS axis in degrees.

`--geo-semi-major`
: The geometric (ignoring pixel values) root mean square (RMS) along the semi-major axis of the profile, assuming it is an ellipse, in units of pixels.

`--geo-semi-minor`
: The geometric (ignoring pixel values) root mean square (RMS) along the semi-minor axis of the profile, assuming it is an ellipse, in units of pixels.

`--geo-axis-ratio`
: The geometric (ignoring pixel values) axis ratio of the profile, assuming it is an ellipse.

`--geo-position-angle`
: The geometric (ignoring pixel values) angle of the semi-major axis with the first FITS axis in degrees.

7.4.4.9 Measurements per slice (spectra)

When the input is a 3D data cube, MakeCatalog also has the following multi-valued measurements per label (as well as the single-valued measurements). These will be stored as vector columns (Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346) in the same output table as the single-valued measurements. For a tutorial on how to use these options and interpret their values, see Section 2.5 [Detecting lines and extracting spectra in 3D data], page 134.

These options will do measurements on each 2D slice of the input 3D cube; hence the common the format of `--*-in-slice`. Each slice usually corresponds to a certain wavelength, you can also think of these measurements as spectra.

No in-slice measurement for clumps: Unfortunately due to time-constrains, the columns described in this section are not yet implemented for clumps. For the status of this issue, see bug 66286 (`https://savannah.gnu.org/bugs/?66286`).

For each row (input label), each of the columns described here will contain multiple values as a vector column. The number of measurements in each column is the number of slices in the cube, or the size of the cube along the third dimension. To learn more about vector columns and how to manipulate them, see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346. For example usage of these columns in the tutorial above, see Section 2.5.5 [3D measurements and spectra], page 143, and Section 2.5.6 [Extracting a single spectrum and plotting it], page 147.

There are two ways to do each measurement on a slice for each label:

Only label The measurement will only be done on the voxels in the slice that are associated to that label. These types of per-slice measurement therefore have the following properties:

- This will only be a measurement of that label and will not be affected by any other label.
- The number of voxels used in each slice can be different (usually only one or two voxels at the two extremes of the label (along the third dimension), and many in the middle.
- Since most labels are localized along the third dimension (maybe only covering 20 slices out of thousands!), many of the measurements (on slices where the label doesn't exist) will be NaN (for the sum measurements for example) or 0 (for the area measurements).

Projected label

MakeCatalog will first project the 3D label into a 2D surface (along the third dimension) to get its 2D footprint. Afterwards, all the voxels in that 2D footprint will be measured all slices. All these measurements will have a `-proj-` component in their name. These types of per-slice measurement therefore has the following properties:

- A measurement will be done on each slice of the cube.
- All measurements will be done on the same surface area.
- Labels can overlap when they are projected onto the first two FITS dimensions (the spatial coordinates, not spectral). As a result, other emission lines or objects may contaminate the resulting spectrum for each label.

To help separate other labels, MakeCatalog can do a third type of measurement on each slice: measurements on the voxels that belong to other labels but overlap with the 2D projection. This can be used to see how much your projected measurement is affected by other emission sources (on the projected spectra) and also if multiple lines (labeled regions) belong to the same physical object. These measurements contain `-other-` in their name.

`--sum-in-slice`
[Only label] Sum of values in each slice.

`--sum-err-in-slice`
[Only label] Error in '–sum-in-slice'.

`--area-in-slice`
[Only label] Number of labeled in each slice.

`--sum-proj-in-slice`
[Projected label] Sum of projected area in each slice.

`--area-proj-in-slice:`
[Projected label] Number of voxels that are used in `--sum-proj-in-slice`.

`--sum-proj-err-in-slice`
[Projected label] Error of `--sum-proj-in-slice`.

`--area-other-in-slice`
: [Projected label] Area of other label in projected area on each slice.

`--sum-other-in-slice`
: [Projected label] Sum of other label in projected area on each slice.

`--sum-other-err-in-slice:`
: [Projected label] Area in `--sum-other-in-slice`.

7.4.5 Metameasurements on full input

The data (rows and columns) produced by MakeCatalog are independent measurements of each label and were the focus of Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594. However, to correctly interpret those measurements especially in light of other studies, we also need statistical analysis of the full input or catalog. These metameasurements (measurements on/about independent/individual measurements) are a single value for the whole input and are therefore stored as meta-data (keywords) in the 0th (first) HDU of the MakeCatalog's output. The most common type of such metameasurements are commonly known as "limits" or "depth" of a dataset. These are also the only type that is currently implemented in MakeCatalog; so let's continue with them.

No measurement on a real dataset can be perfect: you can only reach a certain level/limit of accuracy and a meaningful (scientific) analysis on the output catalog requires an understanding of these limits. Different datasets have different noise properties and different detection methods[22] will have different abilities to detect or measure certain kinds of signal (astronomical objects) and their properties in the dataset. Hence, quantifying the detection and measurement limitations with a particular dataset and analysis tool is the most crucial/critical aspect of any high-level analysis. Due to their importance, we have already touched upon some of these in two tutorials on real data: see Section 2.1.14 [Measuring the dataset limits], page 49, and Section 2.2.4 [Image surface brightness limit], page 92.

The sections below describe each of the metameasurements that MakeCatalog will calculate and report when given the `--meta-measures` option. Here, we just focus on the concept behind each measurement and its derviation. The actual keywords that are written for each is described in Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633.

7.4.5.1 Surface brightness limit of image

As we make more observations on one region of the sky and add/combine the observations into one dataset, both the signal and the noise increase. However, the signal increases much faster than the noise: Assuming you add N datasets with equal exposure times, the signal will increases as a multiple of N, while noise increases as $\sqrt{N}$. Therefore the signal-to-noise ratio increases by a factor of $\sqrt{N}$. Visually, fainter (per pixel) parts of the objects/signal in the image will become more visible/detectable. The noise-level is known as the dataset's surface brightness limit.

You can think of the noise as muddy water in a pond (the "sky" will be the bottom of the pond). The signal (coming from astronomical objects in real data) will be the rocks and their peaks can sometimes reach above the muddy water. Let's assume that in your first

[22] A method/algorithm/software that is run with a different set of parameters is considered as a different detection method

observation the muddy water has just been stirred and except a few small peaks, you cannot see anything through the mud. As you wait (and make more observations/exposures), the mud settles down and the *depth* of the transparent water increases. As a result, more and more summits become visible and the lower parts of the rocks (parts with lower surface brightness) can be seen more clearly. In this analogy[23], height (from the ground) is the *surface brightness* and the height of the muddy water at the moment you do your measurements, is your *surface brightness limit*.

On different instruments, pixels cover different spatial angles over the sky. For example, the width of each pixel on the ACS camera on the Hubble Space Telescope (HST) is roughly 0.05 seconds of arc, while the pixels of SDSS are each 0.396 seconds of arc (almost eight times wider[24]). Nevertheless, irrespective of its sky coverage, a pixel is our unit of data collection.

To start with, we define the low-level Surface brightness limit or *depth*, in units of magnitude/pixel with the equation below (assuming the image has zero point magnitude z and we want the nth multiple of σ_p). Where σ_p is the per-pixel standard deviation (for example median of the measured sky standard deviation in the image).

$$SB_{n\sigma,\text{pixel}} = -2.5 \times \log_{10}(n\sigma_p) + z \qquad [mag/pixel]$$

As an example, the XDF survey covers part of the sky that the HST has observed the most (for 85 orbits) and is consequently very small ($\sim$ 4 minutes of arc, squared). On the other hand, the CANDELS survey, is one of the widest multi-color surveys done by the HST covering several fields (about 720 arcmin^2) but its deepest fields have only 9 orbits observation. The 1σ depth of the XDF and CANDELS-deep surveys in the near infrared WFC3/F160W filter are respectively 34.40 and 32.45 magnitudes/pixel. In a single orbit image, this same field has a 1σ depth of 31.32 magnitudes/pixel. Recall that a larger magnitude corresponds to fainter objects, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

The low-level magnitude/pixel measurement above is only useful when all the datasets you want to use, or compare, have the same pixel size. However, you will often find yourself using, or comparing, datasets from various instruments with different pixel scales (projected pixel width, in arc-seconds). If we know the pixel scale, we can obtain a more easily comparable surface brightness limit in units of: magnitude/arcsec^2. But another complication is that astronomical objects are usually larger than 1 arcsec^2. As a result, it is common to measure the surface brightness limit over a larger (but fixed, depending on context) area.

Let's assume that every pixel is p arcsec^2 and we want the surface brightness limit for an object covering A arcsec^2 (so A/p is the number of pixels that cover an area of A arcsec^2). On the other hand, noise is added in RMS[25], hence the noise level in A arcsec^2 is

[23] Note that this muddy water analogy is not perfect, because while the water-level remains the same all over a peak, in data analysis, the Poisson noise increases with the level of data.

[24] Ground-based instruments like the SDSS suffer from strong smoothing due to the atmosphere. Therefore, increasing the pixel resolution (or decreasing the width of a pixel) will not increase the received information).

[25] If you add three datasets with noise σ_1, σ_2 and σ_3, the resulting noise level is $\sigma_t = \sqrt{\sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2 + \sigma_3^2}$, so when $\sigma_1 = \sigma_2 = \sigma_3 \equiv \sigma$, then $\sigma_t = \sigma\sqrt{3}$. In this case, the area A is covered by A/p pixels, so the noise level is $\sigma_t = \sigma\sqrt{A/p}$.

$n\sigma_p\sqrt{A/p}$. But we want the result in units of arcsec^2, so we should divide this by A arcsec^2: $n\sigma_p\sqrt{A/p}/A = n\sigma_p\sqrt{A/(pA^2)} = n\sigma_p/\sqrt{pA}$. Plugging this into the magnitude equation, we get the $n\sigma$ surface brightness limit, over an area of A arcsec^2, in units of magnitudes/arcsec^2 (see the end of this section on how to derive this using Gnuastro):

$$SB_{n\sigma,\text{Aarcsec}^2} = -2.5 \times \log_{10}\left(\frac{n\sigma_p}{\sqrt{pA}}\right) + z \qquad [mag/arcsec^2]$$

As you saw in its derivation, the calculation above extrapolates the noise in one pixel over all the input's pixels! In other words, all pixels are treated independently in the measurement of the standard deviation. It therefore implicitly assumes that the noise is the same in all of the pixels. But this only happens in individual exposures: reduced data will have correlated noise because they are a coadd of many individual exposures that have been warped (thus mixing the pixel values). A more accurate measure which will provide a realistic value for every labeled region is known as the *upper-limit magnitude*, which is discussed in the next section (Section 7.4.6.2 [Upper limit surface brightness of image], page 621).

Within Gnuastro, measuring the surface brighntess limit of the image is very easy: the outputs of NoiseChisel include the Sky standard deviation (σ) on every group of pixels (a tile) that were calculated from the undetected pixels in each tile, see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, and Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569. The σ_p used above is recorded in the `MEDSTD` keyword of the `SKY_STD` extension of NoiseChisel's output. Therefore, the first thing you need to do is to run NoiseChisel on the image.

When MakeCatalog is called with `--meta-measurements`, it will calculate the input dataset's $SB_{n\sigma,\text{Aarcsec}^2}$ and will write it `SBL` keywords the 0th HDU of the output, see Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633. You can set your desired n-th multiple of σ and the A arcsec^2 area using the following two options respectively: `--sbl-sigma` and `--sbl-area` (see Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633). Just note that $SB_{n\sigma,\text{Aarcsec}^2}$ is only calculated if the input has World Coordinate System (WCS). Without WCS, the pixel scale cannot be derived.

In case you just want the surface brightness limit of an image without separating the objects and clumps within the image or doing any measurements, you can use the series of commands below. They assume your image is called `image.fits` and its zero point magnitude is 25. For a more detailed hands-on understanding of the surface brightness limit, see Section 2.2.4 [Image surface brightness limit], page 92, (which is part of a larger tutorial).

```
$ zp=25.0
$ astnoisechisel image.fits -o nc.fits
$ astmkcatalog nc.fits -hDETECTIONS --sn --zeropoint=$zp \
               --output=cat.fits --meta-measures
$ astfits cat.fits --keyvalue=SBL --quiet | asttable -Y
```

Because the surface brightness limit is just an extrapolation of the noise level, we can extend the concept to use a reference surface brightness limit to find the expected surface brightness limit of another telescope (in a similar location), or a different exposure time for the same telescope. This is discussed more fully in Section 7.4.6.1 [Expected surface brightness limit], page 620.

7.4.5.2 Noise based magnitude limit of image

Assuming σ_p to be per-pixel noise level, and we apply a threshold of $n\sigma_p$ on the image, what would be the faintest magnitude of an object that covers more than A square arcseconds? Answering this question is the goal of the noise-based magnitude limit (nML or NML) is defined for (for more on σ_p, see Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615). The commonly used parameters are: $n = 5$ and $A = 7$ square arcseconds (approximate area of a circle with radius 1.5 arcseconds).

Let's show the area of a pixel (in square arcseconds) as p. The arbitrary area A covers A/p pixels (which is just a counter; without any units). On the other hand, $n\sigma_p$ (the threshold we want to apply) is the minimum flux that each pixel should have. Assuming all the pixels above the threshold have the same $n\sigma$ flux, then the total flux above the threshold would be $n\sigma \times A/p$. Plugging this into the definition of magnitudes (see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585), we get the noise based magnitude limit:

$$nML = -2.5 \log_{10} \left(n\sigma_p \times \frac{A}{p} \right) + z$$

There are several caveats to this measure:

- Astronomical objects are not flat! Their flux gradually sinks deeply into the noise; see Figure 1 of Akhlaghi & Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). Therefore, the centers of stars and galaxies will be (much) brighter than the threshold and major fraction of the object's flux will not be counted in this measure (more as n increases).
- The area used in the equation is just a number (without any shape!). In other words, it is an extrapolated/abstract area that is shapeless.
- Since this depends on a per-pixel measurement of σ_p, it does not account for correlated noise. For more on this, see Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615.

Given the caveats above, it may be strage to see that the noise based magnitude limit is still reported in many reports (it is sometimes called simply as "magnitude limit" or even "detection limit"). So let's review the history of this metameasure for a better understanding of its usage. When computers started to enter astronomical data analysis (1970s) their processing powers were very low (compared to today!). Also, images were taken on photographic plates and digitized/scanned later (not too clean noise). Therefore, they needed to apply high thresholds ($+2\sigma_p$), find groups of pixels that were contiguously above that threshold, and define the "real" objects based on their contiguous area above that threshold. Therefore, this limit was also known as "detection limit".

Because this lost flux was a problem, authors like Petrosian 1976 (`https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/1976ApJ...209L...1P`) or Kron `https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/1980ApJS...43..305K` suggested ways of finding the object's "total" flux (accounting for the flux below the threshold also). But with new paradigms to detection coming in the current century (for example Gnuastro's Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552), the "detection limit" name will cause confusion and mis-interpretation. Therefore in Gnuastro we call this

limit the "noise-based magnitude limit" and include it only for legacy/historical reasons (it is just an extrapolatoin).

The reason for the "noise-based" prefix is that the equation above is purely based on the noise (does not depend on the actual signal!). However, different objects have different profiles: some are sharp/concentrated (like stars or elliptical galaxies), others are diffuse (like ultra diffuse galaxies) and others are clumpy (like a globular cluster) and etc. Therefore, we classify the more robust "magnitude limit" (that actually takes morphology into account) as a *manual* metameasurement (that you should do after calling MakeCatalog based on your desired targets/goals), it is described in Section 7.4.6.3 [Magnitude limit for certain objects], page 622.

When MakeCatalog is called with `--meta-measurements`, it will calculate the input dataset's noise-based magnitude limit and will write it `NML` keyword the 0th HDU of the output. You can set your desired n-th multiple of σ and the A arcsec^2 area using the following two options respectively: `--nml-sigma` and `--nml-area`. See Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633, for more.

7.4.5.3 Confusion limit of image

The confusion limit is a measure of density reported in units of distance (pixels or arcseconds): the median distance of all resolved sources with their nearest neighbor in the image. The confusion limit depends on several factors, including the pointing on the sky. For example a shallow image taken from the center of a globular cluster, or close to the disk of the milky way will have a bad confusion limit (resolved sources will be very close to each other). But at exactly the same imaging conditions (depth, PSF and etc), an image of an "empty" region of the sky will have a good/high confusion limit (sources can be more distant).

Therefore, unlike the previously discussed automatic metameasurements like Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615, and Section 7.4.5.2 [Noise based magnitude limit of image], page 618, the confusion limit depends on the pointing on sky. This is because those are defined purely based on the noise of the image, but the confusion limit comes from the signal's distribution in the image. But as we go very deep in extra-galactic fields (high galactic latitudes: away from the disk of the milky wayw) the density of sources as you go deeper should become mostly uniform (assuming a relatively uniform background galaxy population).

To help in interpreting the confusion limit, here is one example: if you take images of the same pointing of the sky but at very different PSFs, the confusion limit will increase (which is bad) as a function of the PSF. This is because the smaller objects that are closer to larger ones get washed-out in the larger PSF of their brighter neighbors.

Technically (when calculating the distance between the clump and its nearest neighbor), it is also important to account for the spherical nature of RA and Dec. Otherwise, distances will have a dependency on the declination and may make it hard to interpret the statistics.

When MakeCatalog is called with `--meta-measurements`, it will find the nearest neighbor to each clump and return information about the distribution of values using the output keywords that start with `CNL` within the 0th HDU of the output. The distribution to the nearest label is by nature a very non-symmetric distribution (skewed to the positive), so it cannot be simply parametrized as in the other metameasures here. As mentioned at the

start, the main parameter that the community uses is the median. But to identify the spread and shape of the distribution, that is not enough.

Therefore as described in Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633, MakeCatalog doesn't just return the median (at quantile of 0.5 or percentile of 50), but several other quantiles. Ultimately, you can see each clump's nearest neighbor as well as the spherical distance to its nearest clump by activating the `--cnl-check` option (see Section 7.4.8.3 [MakeCatalog output HDUs], page 632).

7.4.6 Manual metameasurements

The concept of metameasurements, and the automatically calculated metameasurements of MakeCatalog were introduced in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615. There are other metameasures that cannot (as of this writing) be done automatically in the same run of MakeCatalog and need a customized execution of MakeCatalog. In this section these types of metameasures are introduced.

7.4.6.1 Expected surface brightness limit

The Surface brighntess limit was defined in Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615. As we saw there, it is ultimately a theoretical extrapolation of one pixel's noise level. Therefore, we can use a reference image's surface brightness limit (SB_r) to derive an expected surface brightness limit of another image (on another telescope with another exposure time, but with *the same* filter; let's call it SB_i). Assuming no correlated noise (which is only valid on a single exposure!), the σ_p described above is purely due to the Poisson noise of the background signal (for example Zodiacal light, light pollution or etc). Therefore, taking S to be the exposed surface of the telescope's primary mirror (or lens) and t to be the exposure time, the signal of the background will increase with $S \times t$ and therefore $\sigma_p \propto \sqrt{St}$. Plugging this into two instances of the equation above, allows us to derive SB_i from SB_r

$$SB_i = SB_r + 2.5\log_{10}\left(\frac{n_i}{n_r}\sqrt{\frac{S_i}{S_r}\frac{t_i}{t_r}\frac{A_i}{A_r}}\right)$$

Since almost all mirrors are circular, we can simplify the relation above by replacing the exposed surface with the exposed radius (accounting for the non-exposed area in most reflective telescopes due to the secondary mirror) as shown in the quation below. Note that we didn't simply say "radius" (and the equation does not have r), but "exposed radius" (r_e in the equation). This is a very important factor to have in mind. For example in the Vera C. Rubin Observatory (that will be conducting the LSST survey) the primary mirror has a diameter of 8.4 meters, however, the inner cicular area of radius 5 meters is not used (due to the second and third mirrors)[26]. Therefore, the useful surface of the Vera C. Rubin telescope is $\pi(8.4^2 - 5.0^2) = \pi 45.56 = \pi 6.75^2$, giving it an exposed radius of $r_e = 6.75m$ (for an easy implementation of this equation in Gnuastro, see the `sblim-diff` operator of Section 6.2.4.5 [Unit conversion operators], page 420).

[26] `https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:LSSToptics.jpg`

$$SB_i = SB_r + 2.5\log_{10}\left(\frac{r_{ei}}{r_{er}}\frac{n_i}{n_r}\sqrt{\frac{t_i}{t_r}\frac{A_i}{A_r}}\right)$$

7.4.6.2 Upper limit surface brightness of image

As mentioned in Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615, the surface brightness limit assumes independent pixels when deriving the standard deviation (the main input in the equation). It just extrapolates the standard deviation derived from one pixel to the requested area. But as mentioned at the end of that section, we have correlated noise in our science-ready (deep) images and the noise of the pixels are not independent.

Because of this, the surface brightness limit will always under-estimate the surface brightness (give fainter values than what is statistically possible in the data for the requested area). To account for the correlated noise in the images, we need to derive the standard deviation over a group of pixels that fall within a certain footprint/shape. For example over a circular aperture of radius 5.6419 arcsec, or a square with a side length of 10 arcsec. Depending on the correlated noise systematics, the limit can be (very) different for different shapes, even if they have the same area (as in the circle and square mentioned in the previous sentence: both have an area of 100 arcsec^2).

Therefore we need to derive the standard deviation that goes into the surface brightness limit equation over a certain footprint/shape. To do that, we should:

1. Place the desired footprint many times randomly over all the undetected pixels in an image. In MakeCatalog, the number of these random positions can be configured with `--upnum` and you can check their positions with `--checkuplim`.
2. Calculate the sum of pixel values in each randomly placed footprint.
3. Calculate the sigma-clipped standard deviation of the resulting distribution (of sum of pixel values in the randomly placed apertures). Therefore, each footprint's measurement is independent of the other.
4. Calculate the surface brightness of that standrad deviation (after multiplying it with your desired multiple of sigma). For the definition of surface brightness, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

The measurements over randomly placed apertures may remind you of Section 7.4.4.6 [Upper limit measurements], page 605. Generally, the "upper limit" prefix is given to all measurements with this way of measurement. Therefore this limit is called "Upper limit surface brightness" of an image (for a multiple of sigma, over a certain shape).

Traditionally a circular aperture of a fixed radius (in arcseconds) has been used. In Gnuastro, a labeled image containing the desired shape/aperture can be generated with MakeProfiles. The position of the label is irrelevant because the upper limit measurements are done on the many randomly placed footprints in undetected regions (independent of where the label is positioned). That labeled image should then be given to MakeCatalog, while requesting `--upperlimit-sb`. Of course, all detected signal in the image needs to be masked (set to blank/NaN) so MakeCatalog doesn't use randomly placed apertures that overlap with detected signal in the image.

Going into the implementation details can get pretty hard to follow in English, so a full hands-on tutorial is available in the second half of Section 2.2.4 [Image surface brightness

limit], page 92. Read that tutorial with the same input images and run the commands, and see each output image to get a good understanding of how to properly measure the upper limit surface brightness of your images.

7.4.6.3 Magnitude limit for certain objects

Suppose we have taken two images of the same field of view with the same CCD, once with a smaller telescope, and once with a larger one. Because we used the same CCD, the noise will be very similar. However, the larger telescope has gathered more light, therefore the same star or galaxy will have a higher signal-to-noise ratio (S/N) in the image taken with the larger one. The same applies for a coadded image of the field compared to a single-exposure image of the same telescope.

This concept is used by some researchers to define the "magnitude limit" or "detection limit" at a certain S/N (sometimes 10, 5 or 3 for example, also written as 10σ, 5σ or 3σ). To do this, they measure the magnitude and signal-to-noise ratio of all the objects that have similar within an image and measure the mean (or median) magnitude of objects at the desired S/N. A fully working example of deriving the magnitude limit is available in the tutorials section: Section 2.1.14 [Measuring the dataset limits], page 49.

However, this method should be used with extreme care! This is because the shape of the object becomes important in this method: a sharper object will have a higher *measured* S/N compared to a more diffuse object at the same original magnitude. Besides the inherent shape/sharpness of the object, issues like the PSF also become important in this method (because the finally observed shapes of objects are important here): two surveys with the same surface brightness limit (see Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615) will have different magnitude limits if one is taken from space and the other from the ground.

7.4.6.4 Completeness limit for certain objects

As the surface brightness of the objects decreases, the ability to detect them will also decrease. An important statistic is thus the fraction of objects of similar morphology and magnitude that will be detected with our detection algorithm/parameters in a given image. This fraction is known as *completeness*. -For brighter objects, completeness is 1: all bright objects that might exist over the image will be detected. However, as we go to objects of lower overall surface brightness, we will fail to detect a fraction of them, and fainter than a certain surface brightness level (for each morphology), nothing will be detectable in the image: you will need more data to construct a "deeper" image. For a given profile and dataset, the magnitude where the completeness drops below a certain level (usually above 90%) is known as the completeness limit.

Another important parameter in measuring completeness is purity: the fraction of true detections to all detections. In effect purity is the measure of contamination by false detections: the higher the purity, the lower the contamination. Completeness and purity are anti-correlated: if we can allow a large number of false detections (that we might be able to remove by other means), we can significantly increase the completeness limit.

One traditional way to measure the completeness and purity of a given sample is by embedding mock profiles in regions of the image with no detection. However in such a study we must be really careful to choose model profiles as similar to the target of interest as possible.

7.4.7 Adding new columns to MakeCatalog

MakeCatalog is designed to allow easy addition of different measurements over a labeled image; see Akhlaghi 2016 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1611.06387v1`). A check-list style description of necessary steps to do that is described in this section. The common development characteristics of MakeCatalog and other Gnuastro programs is explained in Chapter 13 [Developing], page 958. We strongly encourage you to have a look at that chapter to greatly simplify your navigation in the code. After adding and testing your column, you are most welcome (and encouraged) to share it with us so we can add to the next release of Gnuastro for everyone else to also benefit from your efforts.

MakeCatalog will first pass over each label's pixels two times and do necessary raw/internal calculations. Once the passes are done, it will use the raw information for filling the final catalog's columns. In the first pass it will gather mainly object information and in the second run, it will mainly focus on the clumps, or any other measurement that needs an output from the first pass. These two passes are designed to be raw summations: no extra processing. This will allow parallel processing and simplicity/clarity. So if your new calculation, needs new raw information from the pixels, then you will need to also modify the respective `mkcatalog_first_pass` and `mkcatalog_second_pass` functions (both in `bin/mkcatalog/mkcatalog.c`) and define new raw table columns in `main.h` (hopefully the comments in the code are clear enough).

In all these different places, the final columns are sorted in the same order (same order as Section 7.4.8 [Invoking MakeCatalog], page 624). This allows a particular column/option to be easily found in all steps. Therefore in adding your new option, be sure to keep it in the same relative place in the list in all the separate places (it does not necessarily have to be in the end), and near conceptually similar options.

`main.h` The `objectcols` and `clumpcols` enumerated variables (`enum`) define the raw/internal calculation columns. If your new column requires new raw calculations, add a row to the respective list. If your calculation requires any other settings parameters, you should add a variable to the `mkcatalogparams` structure.

`ui.c` If the new column needs raw calculations (an entry was added in `objectcols` and `clumpcols`), specify which inputs it needs in `ui_necessary_inputs`, similar to the other options. Afterwards, if your column includes any particular settings (you needed to add a variable to the `mkcatalogparams` structure in `main.h`), you should do the sanity checks and preparations for it here.

`ui.h` The `option_keys_enum` associates a unique value for each option to MakeCatalog. The options that have a short option version, the single character short comment is used for the value. Those that do not have a short option version, get a large integer automatically. You should add a variable here to identify your desired column.

`args.h` This file specifies all the parameters for the GNU C library, Argp structure that is in charge of reading the user's options. To define your new column, just copy an existing set of parameters and change the first, second and 5th values (the only ones that differ between all the columns), you should use the macro you defined in `ui.h` here.

`columns.c`
: This file contains the main definition and high-level calculation of your new column through the `columns_define_alloc` and `columns_fill` functions. In the first, you specify the basic information about the column: its name, units, comments, type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) and how it should be printed if the output is a text file. You should also specify the raw/internal columns that are necessary for this column here as the many existing examples show. Through the types for objects and rows, you can specify if this column is only for clumps, objects or both.

  The second main function (`columns_fill`) writes the final value into the appropriate column for each object and clump. As you can see in the many existing examples, you can define your processing on the raw/internal calculations here and save them in the output.

`mkcatalog.c`
: This file contains the low-level parsing functions. To be optimized, the parsing is done in parallel through the `mkcatalog_single_object` function. This function initializes the necessary arrays and calls the lower-level `parse_objects` and `parse_clumps` for actually going over the pixels. They are all heavily commented, so you should be able to follow where to add your necessary low-level calculations.

`doc/gnuastro.texi`
: Update this manual and add a description for the new column.

7.4.8 Invoking MakeCatalog

MakeCatalog will do measurements and produce a catalog from a labeled dataset and optional values dataset(s). The executable name is `astmkcatalog` with the following general template

```
$ astmkcatalog [OPTION ...] InputImage.fits
```

One line examples:

```
## Create catalog with RA, Dec, Magnitude and Magnitude error,
## from Segment's output:
$ astmkcatalog --ra --dec --magnitude seg-out.fits

## Same catalog as above (using short options):
$ astmkcatalog -rdm seg-out.fits

## Write the catalog to a text table:
$ astmkcatalog -rdm seg-out.fits --output=cat.txt

## Output columns specified in `columns.conf':
$ astmkcatalog --config=columns.conf seg-out.fits

## Use object and clump labels from a K-band image, but pixel values
## from an i-band image.
$ astmkcatalog K_segmented.fits --hdu=DETECTIONS --clumpscat     \
```

```
--clumpsfile=K_segmented.fits --clumpshdu=CLUMPS  \
--valuesfile=i_band.fits
```

If MakeCatalog is to do processing (not printing help or option values), an input labeled image should be provided. The options described in this section are those that are particular to MakeProfiles. For operations that MakeProfiles shares with other programs (mainly involving input/output or general processing steps), see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253. Also see Chapter 4 [Common program behavior], page 249, for some general characteristics of all Gnuastro programs including MakeCatalog.

The various measurements/columns of MakeCatalog are requested as options, either on the command-line or in configuration files, see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. The full list of available columns is available in Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594. Depending on the requested columns, MakeCatalog needs more than one input dataset, for more details, please see Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625. The upper-limit measurements in particular need several configuration options which are thoroughly discussed in Section 7.4.8.2 [Upper-limit settings], page 629. Finally, in Section 7.4.8.3 [MakeCatalog output HDUs], page 632, and Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633, the output HDUs and keywords that are written by MakeCatalog are discussed.

7.4.8.1 MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings

MakeCatalog works by using a localized/labeled dataset (see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582). This dataset maps/labels pixels to a specific target (row number in the final catalog) and is thus the only necessary input dataset to produce a minimal catalog in any situation. Because it only has labels/counters, it must have an integer type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), see below if your labels are in a floating point container. When the requested measurements only need this dataset (for example, `--geo-x`, `--geo-y`, or `--geo-area`), MakeCatalog will not read any more datasets.

Low-level measurements that only use the labeled image are rarely sufficient for any high-level science case. Therefore necessary input datasets depend on the requested columns in each run. For example, let's assume you want the brightness/magnitude and signal-to-noise ratio of your labeled regions. For these columns, you will also need to provide an extra dataset containing values for every pixel of the labeled input (to measure magnitude) and another for the Sky standard deviation (to measure error). All such auxiliary input files have to have the same size (number of pixels in each dimension) as the input labeled image. Their numeric data type is irrelevant (they will be converted to 32-bit floating point internally). For the full list of available measurements, see Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594.

The "values" dataset is used for measurements like brightness/magnitude, or flux-weighted positions. If it is a real image, by default it is assumed to be already Sky-subtracted prior to running MakeCatalog. If it is not, you should use the `--subtractsky` option so MakeCatalog reads and subtracts the Sky dataset before any processing. To obtain the Sky value, you can use the `--sky` option of Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517, but the best recommended method is Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, see Section 7.1.4 [Sky value], page 528.

MakeCatalog can also do measurements on sub-structures of detections. In other words, it can produce two catalogs. Following the nomenclature of Segment (see Section 7.3 [Seg-

ment], page 571), the main labeled input dataset is known as "object" labels and the (optional) sub-structure input dataset is known as "clumps". If MakeCatalog is run with the `--clumpscat` option, it will also need a labeled image containing clumps, similar to what Segment produces (see Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580). Since clumps are defined within detected regions (they exist over signal, not noise), MakeCatalog uses their boundaries to subtract the level of signal under them.

There are separate options to explicitly request a file name and HDU/extension for each of the required input datasets as fully described below (with the `--*file` format). When each dataset is in a separate file, these options are necessary. However, one great advantage of the FITS file format (that is heavily used in astronomy) is that it allows the storage of multiple datasets in one file. So in most situations (for example, if you are using the outputs of Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, or Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571), all the necessary input datasets can be in one file.

When none of the `--*file` options are given (for example `--clumpsfile` or `--valuesfile`), MakeCatalog will assume the necessary input datasets are available as HDUs in the file given as its argument (without any option). When the Sky or Sky standard deviation datasets are necessary and the only `--*file` option called is `--valuesfile`, MakeCatalog will search for these datasets (with the default/given HDUs) in the file given to `--valuesfile` (before looking into the main argument file).

It may happen that your labeled objects image was created with a program that only outputs floating point files. However, you know it only has integer valued pixels that are stored in a floating point container. In such cases, you can use Gnuastro's Arithmetic program (see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403) to change the numerical data type of the image (`float.fits`) to an integer type image (`int.fits`) with a command like below:

```
$ astarithmetic float.fits int32 --output=int.fits
```

To summarize: if the input file to MakeCatalog is the default/full output of Segment (see Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580) you do not have to worry about any of the `--*file` options below. You can just give Segment's output file to MakeCatalog as described in Section 7.4.8 [Invoking MakeCatalog], page 624. To feed NoiseChisel's output into MakeCatalog, just change the labeled dataset's header (with `--hdu=DETECTIONS`). The full list of input dataset options and general setting options are described below.

`-l FITS`
`--clumpsfile=FITS`
: The FITS file containing the labeled clumps dataset when `--clumpscat` is called (see Section 7.4.8.3 [MakeCatalog output HDUs], page 632). When `--clumpscat` is called, but this option is not, MakeCatalog will look into the main input file (given as an argument) for the required extension/HDU (value to `--clumpshdu`).

`--clumpshdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension of the clump labels dataset. Only pixels with values above zero will be considered. The clump labels dataset has to be an integer data type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) and only pixels with a value larger than zero will be used. See Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580, for a description of the expected format.

`-v FITS`
`--valuesfile=FITS`
: The file name of the (sky-subtracted) values dataset. When any of the columns need values to associate with the input labels (for example, to measure the sum of pixel values or magnitude of a galaxy, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585), MakeCatalog will look into a "values" for the respective pixel values. In most common processing, this is the actual astronomical image that the labels were defined, or detected, over. The HDU/extension of this dataset in the given file can be specified with `--valueshdu`. If this option is not called, MakeCatalog will look for the given extension in the main input file.

`--valueshdu=STR/INT`
: The name or number (counting from zero) of the extension containing the "values" dataset, see the descriptions above and those in `--valuesfile` for more.

`-s FITS/FLT`
`--insky=FITS/FLT`
: Sky value as a single number, or the file name containing a dataset (different values per pixel or tile). The Sky dataset is only necessary when `--subtractsky` is called or when a column directly related to the Sky value is requested (currently `--sky`). This dataset may be a tessellation, with one element per tile (see `--oneelempertile` of NoiseChisel's Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257).

  When the Sky dataset is necessary but this option is not called, MakeCatalog will assume it is an HDU/extension (specified by `--skyhdu`) in one of the already given files. First it will look for it in the `--valuesfile` (if it is given) and then the main input file (given as an argument).

  By default the values dataset is assumed to be already Sky subtracted, so this dataset is not necessary for many of the columns.

`--skyhdu=STR`
: HDU/extension of the Sky dataset, see `--skyfile`.

`--subtractsky`
: Subtract the sky value or dataset from the values file prior to any processing.

`-t STR/FLT`
`--instd=STR/FLT`
: Sky standard deviation value as a single number, or the file name containing a dataset (different values per pixel or tile). With the `--variance` option you can tell MakeCatalog to interpret this value/dataset as a variance image, not standard deviation.

  Important note: This must only be the SKY standard deviation or variance (not including the signal's contribution to the error). In other words, the final standard deviation of a pixel depends on how much signal there is in it. MakeCatalog will find the amount of signal within each pixel (while subtracting the Sky, if `--subtractsky` is called) and account for the extra error due to it's value (signal). Therefore if the input standard deviation (or variance)

image also contains the contribution of signal to the error, then the final error measurements will be over-estimated.

`--stdhdu=STR`
The HDU of the Sky value standard deviation image.

`--variance`
The value/file given to `--instd` (and `--stdhdu` has the Sky variance of every pixel, not the Sky standard deviation.

`--novalinerror`
The value/file given to `--instd` is not just due to the sky (noise), but also contains the contribution of the signal to each pixel's standard deviation or variance. If this option is given, the pixel values will be ignored when measuring the `--*-error` columns.

`--forcereadstd`
Read the input STD image even if it is not required by any of the requested columns. This is because some of the output catalog's metadata may need it, for example, to calculate the dataset's surface brightness limit (see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615, configured with `--sbl-area` and `--sbl-sigma` in Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633).

Furthermore, if the input STD image does not have the `MEDSTD` keyword (that is meant to contain the representative standard deviation of the full image), with this option, the median will be calculated and used for the surface brightness limit.

`-z FLT`
`--zeropoint=FLT`
The zero point magnitude for the input image, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`--sigmaclip FLT,FLT`
The sigma-clipping parameters when any of the sigma-clipping related columns are requested (for example, `--sigclip-median` or `--sigclip-number`).

This option takes two values: the first is the multiple of σ, and the second is the termination criteria. If the latter is larger than 1, it is read as an integer number and will be the number of times to clip. If it is smaller than 1, it is interpreted as the tolerance level to stop clipping. See Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, for a complete explanation.

`--frac-max=FLT[,FLT]`
The fractions (one or two) of maximum value in objects or clumps to be used in the related columns, for example, `--frac-max1-area`, `--frac-max1-sum` or `--frac-max1-radius`. For the maximum value, see the description of `--maximum` column below. The value(s) of this option must be larger than 0 and smaller than 1 (they are a fraction). When only `--frac-max1-area` or `--frac-max1-sum` is requested, one value must be given to this option, but if `--frac-max2-area` or `--frac-max2-sum` are also requested, two values must be given to this option. The values can be written as simple floating point numbers, or as fractions, for example, `0.25,0.75` and `0.25,3/4` are the same.

`--spatialresolution=FLT`

The error in measuring spatial properties (for example, the area) in units of pixels. You can think of this as the FWHM of the dataset's PSF and is used in measurements like the error in surface brightness (`--sb-error` described in Section 7.4.4.5 [Surface brightness measurements], page 602).

But because most objects in astronomy are either concentrated (like stars or galaxies) or very large (like interstellar dust filaments, also known as Galactic cirrus), our tests (`https://savannah.gnu.org/task/?16586`) showed that this factor should be set to zero to give a reasonable error measurement.

In summary, this is because in both situations the error in the number of pixels used in the measurement only effects the few pixels in the circumference of the label and they usually have the lowest values (contribute least to the total sum or average). Therefore, the default value to this option is 0. But in case your targets are very small (a handful of pixels wide) and their light profiles are flat (for example a cosmic ray!), it may be necessary to increase the value to this option.

`--inbetweenints`

Output will contain one row for all integers between 1 and the largest label in the input (irrespective of their existance in the input image). By default, MakeCatalog's output will only contain rows with integers that actually corresponded to at least one pixel in the input dataset.

For example, if the input's only labeled pixel values are 11 and 13, MakeCatalog's default output will only have two rows. If you use this option, it will have 13 rows and all the columns corresponding to integer identifiers that did not correspond to any pixel will be 0 or NaN (depending on context).

7.4.8.2 Upper-limit settings

The upper-limit magnitude was discussed in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615. Unlike other measured values/columns in MakeCatalog, the upper limit magnitude needs several extra parameters which are discussed here. All the options specific to the upper-limit measurements start with `up` for "upper-limit". The only exception is `--envseed` that is also present in other programs and is general for any job requiring random number generation in Gnuastro (see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410).

One very important consideration in Gnuastro is reproducibility. Therefore, the values to all of these parameters along with others (like the random number generator type and seed) are also reported in the comments of the final catalog when the upper limit magnitude column is desired. The random seed that is used to define the random positions for each object or clump is unique and set based on the (optionally) given seed, the total number of objects and clumps and also the labels of the clumps and objects. So with identical inputs, an identical upper-limit magnitude will be found. However, even if the seed is identical, when the ordering of the object/clump labels differs between different runs, the result of upper-limit measurements will not be identical.

MakeCatalog will randomly place the object/clump footprint over the dataset. When the randomly placed footprint does not fall on any object or masked region (see `--upmaskfile`)

it will be used in the final distribution. Otherwise that particular random position will be ignored and another random position will be generated. Finally, when the distribution has the desired number of successfully measured random samples (`--upnum`) the distribution's properties will be measured and placed in the catalog.

When the profile is very large or the image is significantly covered by detections, it might not be possible to find the desired number of samplings in a reasonable time. MakeProfiles will continue searching until it is unable to find a successful position (since the last successful measurement[27]), for a large multiple of `--upnum` (currently[28] this is 10). If `--upnum` successful samples cannot be found until this limit is reached, MakeCatalog will set the upper-limit magnitude for that object to NaN (blank).

MakeCatalog will also print a warning if the range of positions available for the labeled region is smaller than double the size of the region. In such cases, the limited range of random positions can artificially decrease the standard deviation of the final distribution. If your dataset can allow it (it is large enough), it is recommended to use a larger range if you see such warnings.

`--upmaskfile=FITS`
: File name of mask image to use for upper-limit calculation. In some cases (especially when doing matched photometry), the object labels specified in the main input and mask image might not be adequate. In other words they do not necessarily have to cover *all* detected objects: the user might have selected only a few of the objects in their labeled image. This option can be used to ignore regions in the image in these situations when estimating the upper-limit magnitude. All the non-zero pixels of the image specified by this option (in the `--upmaskhdu` extension) will be ignored in the upper-limit magnitude measurements.

  For example, when you are using labels from another image, you can give NoiseChisel's objects image output for this image as the value to this option. In this way, you can be sure that regions with data do not harm your distribution. See Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615, for more on the upper limit magnitude.

`--upmaskhdu=STR`
: The extension in the file specified by `--upmask`.

`--upnum=INT`
: The number of random samples to take for all the objects. A larger value to this option will give a more accurate result (asymptotically), but it will also slow down the process. When a randomly positioned sample overlaps with a detected/masked pixel it is not counted and another random position is found until the object completely lies over an undetected region. So you can be sure that for each object, this many samples over undetected objects are made. See the upper limit magnitude discussion in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615, for more.

[27] The counting of failed positions restarts on every successful measurement.

[28] In Gnuastro's source, this constant number is defined as the `MKCATALOG_UPPERLIMIT_MAXFAILS_MULTIP` macro in `bin/mkcatalog/main.h`, see Section 3.2 [Downloading the source], page 227.

`--uprange=INT,INT`

The range/width of the region (in pixels) to do random sampling along each dimension of the input image around each object's position. This is not a mandatory option and if not given (or given a value of zero in a dimension), the full possible range of the dataset along that dimension will be used. This is useful when the noise properties of the dataset vary gradually. In such cases, using the full range of the input dataset is going to bias the result. However, note that decreasing the range of available positions too much will also artificially decrease the standard deviation of the final distribution (and thus bias the upper-limit measurement).

`--envseed`

Read the random number generator type and seed value from the environment (see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410). Random numbers are used in calculating the random positions of different samples of each object.

`--upsigmaclip=FLT,FLT`

The raw distribution of random values will not be used to find the upper-limit magnitude, it will first be σ-clipped (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200) to avoid outliers in the distribution (mainly the faint undetected wings of bright/large objects in the image). This option takes two values: the first is the multiple of σ, and the second is the termination criteria. If the latter is larger than 1, it is read as an integer number and will be the number of times to clip. If it is smaller than 1, it is interpreted as the tolerance level to stop clipping. See Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, for a complete explanation.

`--upnsigma=FLT`

The multiple of the final (σ-clipped) standard deviation (or σ) used to measure the upper-limit sum or magnitude.

`--checkuplim=INT[,INT]`

Write a table of positions and measured values for the full random distribution used in the upper-limit positions for one particular object or clump. The table will be placed as a HDU in the output file with a name of `CHECK-UPPERLIMIT`. If only one integer is given to this option, it is interpreted to be an object's label. If two values are given, the first is the object label and the second is the ID of requested clump within it.

The output is a table with three columns on a 2D image input (and four columns on a 3D cube input). The first two columns are the pixel X,Y positions of the center of each label's tile (see next paragraph), in each random sampling of this particular object/clump (on a 3D cube, the third column will be the position along the third dimension). The final column is the measured flux over that region.

If a randomly placed region overlapped with a detection or masked pixel, its measured value will be a NaN (not-a-number). The total number of rows is thus unknown before running. However, if an upper-limit measurement was made in the main output of MakeCatalog, you can be sure that the number of rows with non-NaN measurements is the number given to the `--upnum` option.

The "tile" of each label is defined by the minimum and maximum positions of each label: values of the `--min-x`, `--max-x`, `--min-y` and `--max-y` columns in the main output table for each label. Therefore, the tile center position that is recorded in the output of this column ignores the distribution of labeled pixels within the tile. Note that this is only about the center position, not the measurement.

Precise interpretation of the position is only relevant when the footprint of your label is highly un-symmetrical and you want to use this catalog to insert your object into the image. In such a case, you can also ask for `--min-x` and `--min-y` and manually calculate their difference with the following two positional measurements of your desired label: `--geo-x` and `--geo-y` (which report the label's "geometric" center; only using the label positions ignoring any "values") or `--x` and `--y` (which report the value-weighted center of the label). Adding the difference with the position reported by this column, will let you define alternative "center"s for your label in particular situations (this will usually not be necessary!). For more on these positional columns, see Section 7.4.4.2 [Position measurements in pixels], page 595.

7.4.8.3 MakeCatalog output HDUs

After it has completed all the requested measurements (see Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594), MakeCatalog writes them in table(s) that are stored into a FITS file. This is necessary because the number of output tables and the metadata that MakeCatalogs provides can be numerous. If any of the output tables are necessary in another format (for example plain-text), you can use Gnuastro's Table program (with executable name `asttable`, see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344).

This section focuses on the HDUs of the output, for the keywords, see Section 7.4.8.4 [MakeCatalog output keywords], page 633. The name of the output FITS table can be given to the `--output` option, with a recognized FITS suffix (as defined in Section 4.1.1.1 [Arguments], page 251). When it is not given, the input name will be appended with a `-cat.fits` suffix (see Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292) and its format (ASCII or Binary FITS table) will be determined from the `--tableformat` option, which is also discussed in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254. By default (when `--spectrum`, `--checkuplim` or `--clumpscat` are not called) only a single catalog/table will be created for the labeled objects.

- When `--clumpscat` is called, a secondary catalog/table HDU will also be created for "clumps" (one of the outputs of the Segment program, for more on "objects" and "clumps", see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571). In short, if you only have one labeled image, you do not have to worry about clumps and just ignore this.
- When `--checkuplim` is called, a HDU is added to the output FITS file and is fully described in the description of this option in Section 7.4.8.2 [Upper-limit settings], page 629.

The full list of MakeCatalog's options relating to the output file format and keywords are listed below. See Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594, for specifying which columns you want in the final catalog.

`-C`
`--clumpscat`
: Do measurements on clumps and produce a second catalog (only devoted to clumps). When this option is given, MakeCatalog will also look for a secondary labeled dataset (identifying substructure) and produce a catalog from that. For more on the definition on "clumps", see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571.

  When the output is a FITS file, the objects and clumps catalogs/tables will be stored as multiple extensions of one FITS file. You can use Section 5.3 [Table], page 344, to inspect the column meta-data and contents in this case. However, in plain text format (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287), it is only possible to keep one table per file. Therefore, if the output is a text file, two output files will be created, ending in `_o.txt` (for objects) and `_c.txt` (for clumps).

`--noclumpsort`
: Do not sort the clumps catalog based on object ID (only relevant with `--clumpscat`). This option will benefit the performance[29] of MakeCatalog when it is run on multiple threads *and* the position of the rows in the clumps catalog is irrelevant (for example, you just want the number-counts).

  MakeCatalog does all its measurements on each *object* independently and in parallel. As a result, while it is writing the measurements on each object's clumps, it does not know how many clumps there were in previous objects. Each thread will just fetch the first available row and write the information of clumps (in order) starting from that row. After all the measurements are done, by default (when this option is not called), MakeCatalog will reorder/permute the clumps catalog to have both the object and clump ID in an ascending order.

  If you would like to order the catalog later (when it is a plain text file), you can run the following command to sort the rows by object ID (and clump ID within each object), assuming they are respectively the first and second columns:

```
$ awk '!/^#/' out_c.txt | sort -g -k1,1 -k2,2
```

`--cnl-check`
: Add an extra HDU to the output of MakeCatalog that contains the positions of every clump as well as the positions of that clump's nearest clump and the distance between the two (in both units of arcseconds and pixels).

7.4.8.4 MakeCatalog output keywords

The columns and rows that include the various measurements for the variuos labels of the input in its HDUs were described separately in Section 7.4.8.3 [MakeCatalog output HDUs], page 632. But those raw numbers are not the only thing that MakeCatalog writes in its output! MakeCatalog will also write metadata (header keywords) in the 0th (first) HDU of the output FITS file which add a lot of value and help to interpret the raw numbers. The only keywords in the other HDUs are the column names, units and comments; generic metadata are written in the 0th HDU.

[29] The performance boost due to `--noclumpsort` can only be felt when there are a huge number of objects. Therefore, by default the output is sorted to avoid miss-understandings or bugs in the user's scripts when the user forgets to sort the outputs.

You can see the full list of keywords written by MakeCatalog in its output with Gnuastro's Fits program, for example `astfits out.fits -h0`. If you only want the value of certain keywords (in a script/pipeline for example), its `--keyvalue` option is pretty convenient see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304.

The keywords are grouped in the output based on context with a title above each group. We'll follow the same structure here, skipping the first three groups (that are generic to all Gnuastro's programs, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293). Some of the values reported below will be repeated (are the same as the respective option keyword in the "Option values" group of keywords). The "Option value" group contains the raw option names and values: the option (keyword) names are just written in full-caps according to the FITS standard. This is done for the following reason: Human readability is important for option names, so they tend to be long and force a `HIERARCH` string at the start of the line. On the contrary, for automatic extraction and human readability, it helps a lot to have all keywords related to a certain metameasure start with the same characters and because the keyword description is written just after it, there is no problem if the name is cryptic.

Input file(s) and HDUs

`INLAB` and `INLABHDU`: main (object) label dataset.
`INCLU` and `INCLUHDU`: clump label dataset.
`INVAL` and `INVALHDU`: value dataset.
`INSTD` and `INSTDHDU`: standard deviation dataset.
`INVAR` and `INVARHDU`: variance dataset.
`INUPM` and `INUPMHDU`: upper-limit mask dataset.

The file name and HDU of all the possible inputs to MakeCatalog. Only the keywords that correspond to inputs which are actually used in a given run of MakeCatalog will be written in the output. This is based on the columns or metameasurements that you request, not if you gave them on the command-line (described in Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625), or the HDUs that exist in the main argument.

For the standard deviation or variance, in case a single number was given (instead of a dataset), that number will be written for `INSTD` or `INVAR` (without any `INSTDHDU` and `INVALHDU`).

Input pixel grid and value properties

Basic information about the pixel values and grid properties of the input:

`PIXWIDTH` The width of one pixel on the sky (in units of arcseconds).

`PIXAREA` The area of one pixel on the sky (in units of arcseconds squared) on the reference point. The difference in pixel area across the image will be negligible in most science images. In case you would like to check this for your input images, use the `--pixelareaonwcs` option of the Fits program (see Section 5.1.1.3 [Pixel information images], page 315).

`ZEROPNT` The zero point of the values image (used to convert This is the same value you gave to the `--zeropoint` option of Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625.

`STDUSED` Per-pixel standard deviation (used in noise-based metameasurements like Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615, and Section 7.4.5.2 [Noise based magnitude limit of image], page 618). This keyword will only be present when a standard deviation image has been loaded (done automatically for any column measurement that involves noise, for example, `--sn`, `--magnitude-error` or `--sky-std`). In case your catalog does not include any such columns and you want this keyword, you can use the `--meta-measures` option (see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615).

If the `MEDSTD` keyword is present in the standard deviation dataset (see Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569), it will be used. Otherwise, the median of the standard deviation input is calculated, used for the metameasures and written in this keyword.

Upper-limit parameters

When any of the upper-limit measurements are requested, the input parameters for the upper-limit measurement are stored in the following keywords (see Section 7.4.4.6 [Upper limit measurements], page 605).

`UPSIGMA` The multiple of sigma to measure the upper-limit. This is the same value given to the `--upnsigma` option of Section 7.4.8.2 [Upper-limit settings], page 629.

`UPNUMBER` The number of random positions with a successful reading. This is the same value given to the `--upnum` option of Section 7.4.8.2 [Upper-limit settings], page 629.

`UPRNGNAM` Name of the random number generator used for finding the random positions; see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

`UPRNGSEE` Seed used for the random number generator. This will be differnet on every run, unless `--envseed` is called. For more details, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410,

`UPSCMLTP` σ-clipping paramter: multiple of sigma. Clipping is necessary to reject strong outliers that can affect the statistics. This is the first value given to the `--upsigmaclip` option of Section 7.4.8.2 [Upper-limit settings], page 629.

`UPSCTOL` σ-clipping paramter: tolerance level. Clipping is necessary to reject strong outliers that can affect the statistics. This is the second value given to the `--upsigmaclip` option of Section 7.4.8.2 [Upper-limit settings], page 629.

Noise-based metameasures

The following metamesurement are calculated purely based on the measured noise level. But they are not written by default, if you want them run with `--meta-measure`.

`SBL` Measured surface brighntess limit (in units of mag/arcsec^2); as described in Section 7.4.5.1 [Surface brightness limit of image], page 615.

`NML` Measured surface brighntess limit (in units of mag/arcsec^2); as described in Section 7.4.5.2 [Noise based magnitude limit of image], page 618.

Confusion limit

The confusion limit is a measure of density in the input image. For a complete review on its goals and how to interpret the values to these keywords, see Section 7.4.5.3 [Confusion limit of image], page 619. In particular, if you would like to see the full distribution of nearest neighbors and their distances, you can use `--cnl-check` as described in Section 7.4.8.3 [MakeCatalog output HDUs], page 632. By default, the clumps catalog is used for the distribution, however if you would like to use the objects for any reason, you can use `--cnl-with-objects` as described below in this section (not recommended unless you understand the risks).

`CNLP05W`
`CNLP25W`
`CNLP50W`
`CNLP75W`
`CNLP95W` Various percentiles of the distribution of distances to the nearest neighbor in units of arcseconds. The `W` suffix is for "WCS" and the `P` after `CNL` is for percentile. Note that a quantile is just the percentile after division by 100. We are using percentiles in the keyword names because they are simple integers and do not need a floating point.

`CNLP05I`
`CNLP25I`
`CNLP50I`
`CNLP75I`
`CNLP95I` Similar to the `CNLP*W` keywords but in units of pixels: the `I` suffix is for "image".

The following MakeCatalog options are specifically related to the various keywords above.

`--sbl-sigma=FLT`

Value to multiply with the median standard deviation (from a `MEDSTD` keyword in the Sky standard deviation image) for estimating the surface brightness limit. Note that the surface brightness limit is only reported when a standard deviation image is read, in other words a column using it is requested (for example, `--sn`) or `--forcereadstd` is called.

This value is a per-pixel value, not per object/clump and is not found over an area or aperture, like the common 5σ values that are commonly reported as a measure of depth or the upper-limit measurements (see Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615).

`--sbl-area=FLT`
: Area (in arc-seconds squared) to convert the per-pixel estimation of `--sbl-sigma` in the comments section of the output tables. Note that the surface brightness limit is only reported when a standard deviation image is read, in other words a column using it is requested (for example, `--sn`) or `--forcereadstd` is called.

  Note that this is just a unit conversion using the World Coordinate System (WCS) information in the input's header. It does not actually do any measurements on this area. For random measurements on any area, please use the upper-limit columns of MakeCatalog (see the discussion on upper-limit measurements in Section 7.4.5 [Metameasurements on full input], page 615).

`--cnl-with-objects`
: Use the object positions instead of clumps for measuing the distance to the nearest label. This is only useful if you have generated your labels image with something other than Gnuastro's Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, and that program doesn't have the capacity to identify individual peaks and extended signal at the same time. Therefore, in case you have generated the input labels with Segment, we do not recommend using this option.

7.5 Match

High-level data (catalogs) of a single astronomical source can come come from different telescopes, filters, software (detection, segmentation and cataloging tools) and even different configurations for a single software. As a result, one of the first things we usually do after generating or querying data (for example, with Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, or Section 5.4 [Query], page 378), is to find which sources in one catalog correspond to which in the other(s). In other words, to 'match' the two catalogs with each other. Within Gnuastro, the Match program is in charge of such operations. The matching rows are defined within an aperture, which can be a circle or an ellipse with any orientation.

Before digging into the usage and command-line execution details of Section 7.5.3 [Invoking Match], page 644, we will first review the Section 7.5.2 [Matching algorithms], page 642, that are currently available. We will then review Section 7.5.1 [Arranging match output], page 637, to fit the output arrangement that will be necessary in different contexts. If this is the first time you are using Match, please take the time to read these three sections. They will help a lot in optimizing your outputs for your needs; especially when the catalogs are large, it does make a difference!

7.5.1 Arranging match output

When we say "match" we mean different things in different contexts. For example, sometimes you exclusively want the matched rows of the two input catalogs. In other times you want to find the nearest row in a reference catalog for every row of a query catalog. Yet other times, you want to merge two catalogs (having all the matched and non-matched rows in one table). Within Match, these are defined as different "arrangements" of the output.

The core matching algorithm (to find the nearest points between two catalogs) is the same (described in Section 7.5.2 [Matching algorithms], page 642). The thing that is different is

how you want to use that information in constructing/arranging the output. The various arrangements (that should be given to the `--arrange` option) are formally defined below.

`inner` The output of an inner match will contain exclusively-matched rows in both catalogs within a given aperture. In other words, the number of rows in the output will be fewer (or equal) to the input with fewest rows, *and* no two rows of any input can be repeated. Another way to say this is that the order of the inputs does not matter for the final number of matched rows in an inner match. An important aspect of an inner match is the necessity of an aperture to define the maximum/largest acceptable distance to have a match. Without an aperture to define a reasonable match, there is always bound to be a "nearest" item in both catalogs!

A real-world example (in astrophysics) of inner matching is when you have two catalogs of galaxies from different filters/telescopes and want to find the same galaxy in both catalogs. The simplified example below shows inner matching in action. The values in each row are intentionally abstract/ideal to help understanding the concept (for example, the first two columns can be the RA and Dec in a real-world catalog). First, let's look at the contents of the two tables we want to match:

```
$ cat a.txt
# Column 1: X    [pix,  f32]   X axis position
# Column 2: Y    [pix,  f32]   Y axis position
# Column 3: MAGa [unit, f32] Electrong counts
1.2   1.2   18.2
3.2   3.2   20.8
8.2   8.2   15.2

$ cat b.txt
# Column 1: X    [pix, f32] X axis position
# Column 2: Y    [pix, f32] Y axis position
# Column 3: MAGb [pix, f32] Radius of object in pixels
1   1   18.5
2   2   23.1
3   3   16.2
4   4   22.7
5   5   23.4
```

In this hypothetical example, the first catalog has the magnitude of three objects in filter a, and the second catalog has the magnitude of 5 objects in filter b. But the coordinates are not identical (which is natural when the catalogs come from different source) and not all of the galaxies in one catalog match the other!

With the first command below, we will find the matching rows with an inner arrangement, and put the radius and magnitude of the matched rows in the same row (using the `--outcols`, see Section 7.5.3 [Invoking Match], page 644). The second command simply prints the contents of the table on the command-line in easy-to-read format (simplified here by removing trailing zeros to help visual comparison with above).

```
$ astmatch a.txt --ccol1=X,Y b.txt --ccol2=X,Y \
           --aperture=0.5 --outcols=a1,b1,a2,b2,a3,b3 \
           --arrange=inner --output=inner.fits

$ asttable inner.fits -Y
1.2    1    1.2    1    18.2    18.5
3.2    3    3.2    3    20.8    16.2
```

As you see, while both inputs had more than two rows, the output of an inner arrangement only contains the rows that matched in both catalogs (two in this case). For inner matching, we rarely need both coordinate columns; instead, we can simply only select the coordinates of the catalog that had a better precision (in other words, a better point spread function, or PSF). For example, assuming that `a.fits` had better precision, we could simplify the output above with `--outcols=a1,a2,a3,b3` (which has removed `b1` and `b2` compared to the one in the example. Try this out for your self as an exercise to visually understand this important feature of inner arrangements.

`full` The output will contain matching and non-matching rows in both catalogs. In other words, when there is a match between the two catalogs, it is exclusive (as in the "Inner" mode above). However, if a row from any of the two inputs does not match, it is still present in the output catalog, but rows that belong to the other input are given blank values for it. In SQL jargon (`https://www.w3schools.com/sql/sql_join.asp`) this is known as "full-outer joining".

A "full" output arrangement is effectively an inner match with the appendage of non-matching rows from both catalogs after it. Therefore, similar to an inner match, the order of inputs is irrelevant in a full arrangement and an aperture is mandatory.

Let's use the same two example demo inputs of the inner arrangement above, but call the Match program with a `--arrange=full` this time:

```
$ astmatch a.txt --ccol1=X,Y b.txt --ccol2=X,Y \
           --aperture=0.5 --outcols=a1,b1,a2,b2,a3,b3 \
           --arrange=full --output=full-raw.fits

$ asttable full-raw.fits -Y
1.2       1       1.2     1       18.2      18.5
3.2       3       3.2     3       20.8      16.2
8.2       nan     8.2     nan     15.2      nan
nan       2       nan     2       nan       23.1
nan       4       nan     4       nan       22.7
nan       5       nan     5       nan       23.4
```

You see that first two rows are the same as the inner example above. But now we have all the non-matching rows of both catalogs also.

In a real world example, the problem with these non-matching rows is that the coordinates are NaN/blank! To fix that, you can use the `where` operator and Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, like the command below (where the coordinates of `b.fits` are put in the first and third columns and the coordinate

columns of `b.fits` are removed). With the last two `--colmetadata` options, we are giving names, units and comments to the newly synthesized columns. This is because after column arithmetic, the metadata is lost by default and it is up to you to set it: always do so (data without metadata is not too useful!):

```
$ asttable full-raw.fits --output=full.fits \
           -c'arith $1 set-i i i isblank $2 where' \
           -c'arith $3 set-i i i isblank $4 where' \
           -cMAGa,MAGb \
           --colmetadata=1,X,pix,"X axis position (merged)" \
           --colmetadata=2,Y,pix,"Y axis position (merged)"

$ asttable full.fits -Y
1.2     1.2     18.2     18.5
3.2     3.2     20.8     16.2
8.2     8.2     15.2     nan
2.0     2.0     nan      23.1
4.0     4.0     nan      22.7
5.0     5.0     nan      23.4
```

The `full.fits` table above now has the matching rows; but it also has entries for the non-matching objects of both catalogs and only one X and Y position. To find objects that were only detected in one or the other filter, the user can simply use the `--noblank` option like the first example below. To get the inner match output, the user of the catalog can simply use the same option with `_all`, like the second example below.

```
$ asttable full.fits --noblank=MAGa
$ asttable full.fits --noblank=_all
```

`outer` An outer row arrangement will produce a table with the same number of rows as the second input to the Match program: every row of the second input is matched with the nearest row of the first. An outer match is useful when you want to find the nearest row of a *reference* catalog (first input) for each of a *query* catalog's entries (second input). In this scenario, if there are multiple entries of the reference catalog in the output, there is no problem (in other words, the match is not exclusive). Also, since you simply want the nearest entry, no aperture is necessary for the matching algorithm itself; but only necessary to optimize the k-d tree construction.

In SQL jargon (`https://www.w3schools.com/sql/sql_join.asp`), there is two types of outer arrangements (or "joining" as SQL calls it): left-outer and right-outer. But in Gnuastro's Match program, we current only have the right-outer join. This is because unlike SQL (that does many more things than matching/joining) Gnuastro's Match program is not a programming language! So the user can always change the order of their inputs to achieve left-outer matching! In other words, within the scope of Gnuastro's Match, there is no need for the extra complexity.

For example, let's assume you want to find the Galactic extinction for the galaxies in your catalog. In this scenario, the reference catalog is a table of

Galactic extinction values for a grid of positions in the sky and the check catalog contains one row for each of your target galaxies. If two or more galaxies are near the same entry in the reference catalog, you expect them to have will have the same extinction column value.

To see it in practice, let's use the `b.fits` of the inner arrangement example above as our query catalog. For the reference catalog, let's make a new `c.fits`; assuming that it has galactic extinction for some points you have already measured:

```
$ cat c.txt
# Column 1: X    [pix, f32] X axis position
# Column 2: Y    [pix, f32] Y axis position
# Column 3: EXT  [mag, f32] Galactic extinction at (X,Y)
1  1  0.04
4  4  0.05

$ astmatch c.txt --ccol1=X,Y b.txt --ccol2=X,Y \
           --aperture=0.5 --outcols=bX,bY,bMAGb,aEXT \
           --arrange=outer --output=outer.fits

$ asttable outer.fits -Y
1   1   18.5   0.04
2   2   23.1   0.04
3   3   16.2   0.05
4   4   22.7   0.05
5   5   23.4   0.05
```

The output has the same number of rows as the query catalog, and rows from the reference catalog are repeated when they are the nearest to each query item.

`outer-within-aperture`

Similar to the outer match described above, with the difference that if the nearest point is farther than `--aperture`, all reference table (first input) columns will be NaN in the output. For more on `--aperture`, see Section 7.5.3 [Invoking Match], page 644. This is useful in scenarios where the distance matters and you do not want reference points that are too distant from the query catalog.

As an example, let's repeat the command from the example for the outer arrangement, but use this arrangement instead:

```
$ astmatch c.txt --ccol1=X,Y b.txt --ccol2=X,Y \
           --aperture=0.5 --outcols=bX,bY,bMAGb,aEXT \
           --arrange=outer-within-aperture \
           --output=outer-wa.fits

$ asttable outer-wa.fits -Y
1   1   18.5   0.040
2   2   23.1   nan
3   3   16.2   nan
4   4   22.7   0.050
```

```
5   5   23.4   nan
```

You can confirm that only the reference rows that were within the given aperture, are not NaN/blank.

7.5.2 Matching algorithms

Matching involves two catalogs, let's call them catalog A (with N rows) and catalog B (with M rows). The most basic matching algorithm that immediately comes to mind is this: for each row in A (let's call it A_i), go over all the rows in B (B_j, where $0 < j < M$) and calculate the distance $d(A_i, B_j)$. Find the B_j that has the smallest distance to A_i, and if that distance is smaller than the acceptable distance threshold (or radius, or aperture), consider A_i and B_j as a match.

However, this basic parsing algorithm is very computationally expensive: $N \times M$ distances have to measured, and calculating the distance requires a square root and power of 2: in 2 dimensions it would be $d(A_i, B_j) = \sqrt{(B_{ix} - A_{ix})^2 + (B_{iy} - A_{iy})^2}$. If an elliptical aperture is necessary, it can even get more complicated (see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652). Such operations are not simple, and will consume many cycles of your CPU! As a result, this basic algorithm will become terribly slow as your datasets grow in size. For example, when N or M exceed hundreds of thousands (which is common in the current days with datasets like the European Space Agency's Gaia mission). Therefore that basic parsing algorithm will take too much time and more efficient ways to *find the nearest neighbor* need to be found. Gnuastro's Match currently has the following algorithms for finding the nearest neighbor:

Sort-based In this algorithm, we will use a moving window over the sorted datasets:

1. Sort the two datasets by their first coordinate. Therefore $A_i < A_j$ (when $i < j$; only in first coordinate), and similarly, sort the elements of B based on the first coordinate.
2. Use the radial distance threshold to define the width of a moving interval over both A and B. Therefore, with a single parsing of both simultaneously, for each A-point, we can find all the elements in B that are sufficiently near to it (within the requested aperture).

You can use this method by disabling the default algorithm that is described next with `--kdtree=disable`. The reason the sort-based algorithm is not the default is that it has some caveats:

- It requires sorting, which can again be slow on large numbers.
- It can only be done on a single thread! So it cannot benefit from the modern CPUs with many threads, or GPUs that have hundreds/thousands of computing units.
- There is no way to preserve intermediate information for future matches (and not have to repeat them).

k-d tree The k-d tree concept is much more abstract, but powerful (addressing all the caveats of the sort-based method described above.). In short a k-d tree is a partitioning of a k-dimensional space ("k" is just a place-holder, so together with "d" for dimension, "k-d" means "any number of dimensions"!).

The k-d tree of table A is another table with the same number of rows, but only two integer columns: the integers contain the row indexs (counting from zero) of the left and right "branch" (in the "tree") of that row. With a k-d tree we can find the nearest point with much fewer checks (statistically: compared to always parsing everything from the top-down). We won't go deeper into the concept of k-d trees here and will focus on the high-level usage in of k-d trees in Match. In case you are interested to learn more on the k-d tree concept and Gnuastro's implementation, please see its Wikipedia page (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/K-d_tree`) and Section 12.3.19 [K-d tree (`kdtree.h`)], page 886.

When given two catalogs (like the command below), Gnuastro's Match will internally construct a k-d tree for catalog A (the first catalog given to it) and use the k-d tree of A, for finding the nearest row in B to each row in A. This is done in parallel on all available threads (unless you specify a certain number of threads to use with `--numthreads`, see Section 4.4 [Multi-threaded operations], page 276)

```
$ astmatch A.fits --ccol1=ra,dec B.fits --ccol2=RA,DEC \
           --aperture=1/3600
```

In scenarios where your reference (A) catalog is the same (and it is large!), you can save time by building the k-d tree of A and saving it into a file once, and simply use that k-d tree in all future matches. The command below shows how to do the first step (to build the k-d tree and keep it in a file).

```
$ astmatch A.fits --ccol1=ra,dec --kdtree=build \
           --output=A-kdtree.fits
```

This external k-d tree (`A-kdtree.fits`) can be fed to Match later (to avoid having to reconstruct it every time you want to match a new catalog with A). The commands below show how to do this by matching both `B.fits` and `C.fits` with `A.fits` using its pre-built k-d tree. Note that the same `--kdtree` option above (which has a value of `build`), is now given the file name of the already-built k-d tree.

```
$ astmatch A.fits --ccol1=ra,dec --kdtree=A-kdtree.fits \
           B.fits --ccol2=RA,DEC --aperture=1/3600 \
           --output=A-B.fits
$ astmatch A.fits --ccol1=ra,dec --kdtree=A-kdtree.fits \
           C.fits --ccol2=RA,DEC --aperture=1/3600 \
           --output=A-C.fits
```

There is just one technical issue however: when there is no neighbor within the acceptable distance of the k-d tree, it is forced to parse all elements to confirm that there is no match! Therefore if one catalog only covers a small portion (in the coordinate space) of the other catalog, the k-d tree algorithm will be forced to parse the full k-d tree for the majority of points! This will dramatically decrease the running speed of Match.

To mitigate this, Match first divides the range of the first input in all its dimensions into bins that have a width of the requested aperture (similar to a

histogram), and will only do the k-d tree based search when the point in catalog B actually falls within a bin that has at least one element in A.

In summary, here are the points to consider when selecting an algorithm, or the order of your inputs (for optimal speed, the match will be the same):

- For larger datasets, the k-d tree based method (when running on all threads possible) is much more faster than the classical sort-based method.
- If you always need to match against one catalog (that is large!), the k-d tree construction itself can take a significant fraction of the running time. In such cases, save the k-d tree into a file and simply give it to later calls (as shown above)
- For the *inner* or *full* arrangement of the output (described in Section 7.5.1 [Arranging match output], page 637), the order of inputs does not matter. But if you put the table with *fewer rows* as the first input, you will gain a lot in processing time (depending on the size of the other table and the number of threads). This is because of the following facts:
  - The k-d tree is constructed for the first input table and the construction of a larger dataset's k-d tree will take longer (as a non-linear function of the number of rows).
  - Multi-threading is done on the rows of the second input table and it scales in a linear way with more rows.

7.5.3 Invoking Match

When given two catalogs, Match finds the rows that are nearest to each other within an input aperture. The executable name is `astmatch` with the following general template

```
$ astmatch [OPTION ...] input-1 input-2
```

One line examples:

```
## 1D wavelength match (within 5 angstroms) of the two inputs.
## The wavelengths are in the 5th and 10th columns respectively.
$ astmatch --aperture=5e-10 --ccol1=5 --ccol2=10 in1.fits in2.txt

## Find the row that is closest to (RA,DEC) of (12.3456,6.7890)
## with a maximum distance of 1 arcseconds (1/3600 degrees).
## The coordinates can also be given in sexagesimal.
$ astmatch input1.txt --ccol1=ra,dec --coord=12.3456,6.7890 \
           --aperture=1/3600

## Find matching rows of two catalogs with a circular aperture
## of width 2 (same unit as position columns: pixels in this case).
$ astmatch input1.txt input2.fits --aperture=2 \
           --ccol1=X,Y --ccol2=IMG_X,IMG_Y

## Similar to before, but the output is created by merging various
## columns from the two inputs: columns 1, RA, DEC from the first
## input, followed by all columns starting with `MAG' and the `BRG'
## column from second input and the 10th column from first input.
```

```
$ astmatch input1.txt input2.fits --aperture=1/3600 \
           --ccol1=ra,dec --ccol2=RAJ2000,DEJ2000 \
           --outcols=a1,aRA,aDEC,b/^MAG/,bBRG,a10

## Assuming both inputs have the same column metadata (same name
## and numeric type), the output will contain all the rows of the
## first input, appended with the non-matching rows of the second
## input (good when you need to merge multiple catalogs that
## may have matching items, which you do not want to repeat).
$ astmatch input1.fits input2.fits --ccol1=RA,DEC --ccol2=RA,DEC \
           --aperture=1/3600 --notmatched --outcols=_all

## Match the two catalogs within an elliptical aperture of 1 and 2
## arc-seconds along RA and Dec respectively.
$ astmatch --aperture=1/3600,2/3600 in1.fits in2.txt

## Match the RA and DEC columns of the first input with the RA_D
## and DEC_D columns of the second within a 0.5 arcseconds aperture.
$ astmatch --ccol1=RA,DEC --ccol2=RA_D,DEC_D --aperture=0.5/3600  \
           in1.fits in2.fits

## Match in 3D (RA, Dec and Wavelength).
$ astmatch --ccol1=2,3,4 --ccol2=2,3,4 -a0.5/3600,0.5/3600,5e-10 \
           in1.fits in2.txt
```

Match will find the rows that are nearest to each other in two catalogs (given some coordinate columns). Alternatively, it can construct the k-d tree of one catalog to save in a FITS file for future matching of the same catalog with many others. To understand the inner working of Match and its algorithms, see Section 7.5.2 [Matching algorithms], page 642.

When matching, two catalogs are necessary for input. But for constructing a k-d tree, only a single catalog should be given. The input tables can be plain text tables or FITS tables, for more see Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284. But other ways of feeding inputs area also supported:

- The *first* catalog can also come from the standard input (for example, a pipe that feeds the output of a previous command to Match, see Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266);
- When you only want to match one point with another catalog, you can use the `--coord` option to avoid creating a file for the *second* input catalog.

Match follows the same basic behavior of all Gnuastro programs as fully described in Chapter 4 [Common program behavior], page 249. If the first input is a FITS file, the common `--hdu` option (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254) should be used to identify the extension. When the second input is FITS, the extension must be specified with `--hdu2`.

When `--quiet` is not called, Match will print its various processing phases (including the number of matches found) in standard output (on the command-line). When matches

are found, by default, two tables will be output (if in FITS format, as two HDUs). Each output table will contain the re-arranged rows of the respective input table. In other words, both tables will have the same number of rows, and row N in both corresponds to the 10th match between the two. If no matches are found, the columns of the output table(s) will have zero rows (with proper meta-data). The output format can be changed with the following options:

- `--outcols`: The output will be a single table with rows chosen from either of the two inputs in any order.
- `--notmatched`: The output tables will contain the rows that did not match between the two tables. If called with `--outcols`, the output will be a single table with all non-matched rows of both tables.
- `--logasoutput`: The output will be a single table with the contents of the log file, see below.

If no output file name is given with the `--output` option, then automatic output Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292, will be used to determine the output name(s). Depending on `--tableformat` (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254), the output will be a (possibly multi-extension) FITS file or (possibly two) plain text file(s). Generally, giving a filename to `--output` is recommended.

When the `--log` option is called (see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259), and there was a match, Match will also create a file named `astmatch.fits` (or `astmatch.txt`, depending on `--tableformat`, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254) in the directory it is run in. This log table will have three columns. The first and second columns show the matching row/record number (counting from 1) of the first and second input catalogs respectively. The third column is the distance between the two matched positions. The units of the distance are the same as the given coordinates (given the possible ellipticity, see description of `--aperture` below). When `--logasoutput` is called, no log file (with a fixed name) will be created. In this case, the output file (possibly given by the `--output` option) will have the contents of this log file.

`--log` **is not thread-safe**: As described above, when `--logasoutput` is not called, the Log file has a fixed name for all calls to Match. Therefore if a separate log is requested in two simultaneous calls to Match in the same directory, Match will try to write to the same file. This will cause problems like unreasonable log file, undefined behavior, or a crash. Remember that `--log` is mainly intended for debugging purposes, if you want the log file with a specific name, simply use `--logasoutput` (which will also be faster, since no arranging of the input columns is necessary).

`-H STR`
`--hdu2=STR`
: The extension/HDU of the second input if it is a FITS file. When it is not a FITS file, this option's value is ignored. For the first input, the common option `--hdu` must be used.

`-A STR`
`--arrange=STR`
The arrangement of rows in the output; for more details, see Section 7.5.1 [Arranging match output], page 637.

`-k STR`
`--kdtree=STR`
Select the algorithm and/or the way to construct or import the k-d tree. A summary of the four acceptable strings for this option are described here for completeness. However, for a much more detailed discussion on Match's algorithms with examples, see Section 7.5.2 [Matching algorithms], page 642.

`internal` Construct a k-d tree for the first input internally (within the same run of Match), and parallelize over the rows of the second to find the nearest points. This is the default algorithm/method used by Match (when this option is not called).

`build` Only construct a k-d tree of a single input and abort. The name of the k-d tree is value to `--output`.

`CUSTOM-FITS-FILE`
Use the given FITS file as a k-d tree (that was previously constructed with Match itself) of the first input, and do not construct any k-d tree internally. The FITS file should have two columns with an unsigned 32-bit integer data type and a `KDTROOT` keyword that contains the index of the root of the k-d tree. For more on Gnuastro's k-d tree format, see Section 12.3.19 [K-d tree (`kdtree.h`)], page 886.

`disable` Do not use the k-d tree algorithm for finding the nearest neighbor, instead, use the sort-based method.

`--kdtreehdu=STR`
The HDU of the FITS file, when a FITS file is given to the `--kdtree` option that was described above.

`--outcols=STR[,STR,[...]]`
Columns (from both inputs) to write into a single matched table output. The value to `--outcols` must be a comma-separated list of column identifiers (number or name, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289). The expected format depends on `--notmatched` and explained below. By default (when `--nomatched` is not called), the number of rows in the output will be equal to the number of matches. However, when `--notmatched` is called, all the rows (from the requested columns) of the first input are placed in the output, and the not-matched rows of the second input are inserted afterwards (useful when you want to merge unique entries of multiple catalogs into one).

Default (only matching rows)
The first character of each string specifies the input catalog: `a` for the first and `b` for the second. The rest of the characters of the string will be directly used to identify the proper column(s) in

the respective table. See Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289, for how columns can be specified in Gnuastro.

For example, the output of `--outcols=a1,bRA,bDEC` will have three columns: the first column of the first input, along with the `RA` and `DEC` columns of the second input.

If the string after `a` or `b` is `_all`, then all the columns of the respective input file will be written in the output. For example, the command below will print all the input columns from the first catalog along with the 5th column from the second:

```
$ astmatch a.fits b.fits --outcols=a_all,b5
```

`_all` can be used multiple times, possibly on both inputs. Tip: if an input's column is called `_all` (an unlikely name!) and you do not want all the columns from that table the output, use its column number to avoid confusion.

Another example is given in the one-line examples above. Compared to the default case (where two tables with all their columns) are saved separately, using this option is much faster: it will only read and re-arrange the necessary columns and it will write a single output table. Combined with regular expressions in large tables, this can be a very powerful and convenient way to merge various tables into one.

When `--coord` is given, no second catalog will be read. The second catalog will be created internally based on the values given to `--coord`. So column names are not defined and you can only request integer column numbers that are less than the number of coordinates given to `--coord`. For example, if you want to find the row matching RA of 1.2345 and Dec of 6.7890, then you should use `--coord=1.2345,6.7890`. But when using `--outcols`, you cannot give `bRA`, or `b25`.

With `--notmatched`

Only the column names/numbers should be given (for example, `--outcols=RA,DEC,MAGNITUDE`). It is assumed that both input tables have the requested column(s) and that the numerical data types of each column in each input (with same name) is the same as the corresponding column in the other. Therefore if one input has a `MAGNITUDE` column with a 32-bit floating point type, but the `MAGNITUDE` column of the other is 64-bit floating point, Match will crash with an error. The metadata of the columns will come from the first input.

As an example, let's assume `input1.txt` and `input2.fits` each have a different number of columns and rows. However, they both have the `RA` (64-bit floating point), `DEC` (64-bit floating point) and `MAGNITUDE` (32-bit floating point) columns. If `input1.txt` has 100 rows and `input2.fits` has 300 rows (such that 50 of them match within 1 arcsec of the first), then the output of the command above

will have $100+(300-50) = 350$ rows and only three columns. Other columns in each catalog, which may be different, are ignored.

```
$ astmatch input1.txt  --ccol1=RA,DEC \
           input2.fits --ccol2=RA,DEC \
           --aperture=1/3600 \
           --notmatched --outcols=RA,DEC,MAGNITUDE
```

`-l`
`--logasoutput`
The output file will have the contents of the log file: indexes in the two catalogs that match with each other along with their distance, see description of the log file above.

When this option is called, a separate log file will not be created and the output will not contain any of the input columns (either as two tables containing the re-arranged columns of each input, or a single table mixing columns), only their indices in the log format.

`--notmatched`
Write the non-matching rows into the outputs, not the matched ones. By default, this will produce two output tables, that will not necessarily have the same number of rows. However, when called with `--outcols`, it is possible to import non-matching rows of the second into the first. See the description of `--outcols` for more.

`-c INT/STR[,INT/STR]`
`--ccol1=INT/STR[,INT/STR]`
The coordinate columns of the first input. The number of dimensions for the match is determined by the number of comma-separated values given to this option. The values can be the column number (counting from 1), exact column name or a regular expression. For more, see Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. See the one-line examples above for some usages of this option.

`-C INT/STR[,INT/STR]`
`--ccol2=INT/STR[,INT/STR]`
The coordinate columns of the second input. See the example in `--ccol1` for more.

`-d FLT[,FLT]`
`--coord=FLT[,FLT]`
Manually specify the coordinates to match against the given catalog. With this option, Match will not look for a second input file/table and will directly use the coordinates given to this option. When the coordinates are RA and Dec, the comma-separated values can either be in degrees (a single number), or sexagesimal (`_h_m_` for RA, `_d_m_` for Dec, or `_:_:_` for both).

When this option is called, the output changes in the following ways: 1) when `--outcols` is specified, for the second input, it can only accept integer numbers that are less than the number of values given to this option, see description of that option for more. 2) By default (when `--outcols` is not used), only the

matching row of the first table will be output (a single file), not two separate files (one for each table).

This option is good when you have a (large) catalog and only want to match a single coordinate to it (for example, to find the nearest catalog entry to your desired point). With this option, you can write the coordinates on the command-line and thus avoid the need to make a single-row file.

`-a FLT[,FLT[,FLT]]`
`--aperture=FLT[,FLT[,FLT]]`

Parameters of the aperture for matching. The values given to this option can be fractions, for example, when the position columns are in units of degrees, `1/3600` can be used to ask for one arc-second. The interpretation of the values depends on the requested dimensions (determined from `--ccol1` and `--ccol2`) and how many values are given to this option.

When multiple objects are found within the aperture, the match is defined as the nearest one. In a multi-dimensional dataset, when the aperture is a general ellipse or ellipsoid (and not a circle or sphere), the distance is calculated in the elliptical space along the major axis. For the defintion of this distance, see r_{el} in Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652.

1D match The aperture/interval can only take one value: half of the interval around each point (maximum distance from each point).

2D match In a 2D match, the aperture can be a circle, an ellipse aligned in the axes or an ellipse with a rotated major axis. To simply the usage, you can determine the shape based on the number of free parameters for each.

1 number For example, `--aperture=2`. The aperture will be a circle of the given radius. The value will be in the same units as the columns in `--ccol1` and `--ccol2`).

2 numbers For example, `--aperture=3,4e-10`. The aperture will be an ellipse (if the two numbers are different) with the respective value along each dimension. The numbers are in units of the first and second axis. In the example above, the semi-axis value along the first axis will be 3 (in units of the first coordinate) and along the second axis will be 4×10^{-10} (in units of the second coordinate). Such values can happen if you are comparing catalogs of a spectra for example. If more than one object exists in the aperture, the nearest will be found along the major axis as described in Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652.

3 numbers For example, `--aperture=2,0.6,30`. The aperture will be an ellipse (if the second value is not 1). The first number is the semi-major axis, the second is the axis ratio and the third is the position angle (in degrees). If multiple matches are found within the ellipse, the

distance (to find the nearest) is calculated along the major axis in the elliptical space, see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652.

3D match The aperture (matching volume) can be a sphere, an ellipsoid aligned on the three axes or a genenral ellipsoid rotated in any direction. To simplifythe usage, the shape can be determined based on the number of values given to this option.

1 number For example, `--aperture=3`. The matching volume will be a sphere of the given radius. The value is in the same units as the input coordinates.

3 numbers For example, `--aperture=4,5,6e-10`. The aperture will be a general ellipsoid with the respective extent along each dimension. The numbers must be in the same units as each axis. This is very similar to the two number case of 2D inputs. See there for more.

6 numbers For example, `--aperture=4,0.5,0.6,10,20,30`. The numbers represent the full general ellipsoid definition (in any orientation). For the definition of a general ellipsoid, see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652. The first number is the semi-major axis. The second and third are the two axis ratios. The last three are the three Euler angles in units of degrees in the ZXZ order as fully described in Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652.

8 Data modeling

In order to fully understand observations after initial analysis on the image, it is very important to compare them with the existing models to be able to further understand both the models and the data. The tools in this chapter create model galaxies and will provide 2D fittings to be able to understand the detections.

8.1 MakeProfiles

MakeProfiles will create mock astronomical profiles from a catalog, either individually or together in one output image. In data analysis, making a mock image can act like a calibration tool, through which you can test how successfully your detection technique is able to detect a known set of objects. There are commonly two aspects to detecting: the detection of the fainter parts of bright objects (which in the case of galaxies fade into the noise very slowly) or the complete detection of an over-all faint object. Making mock galaxies is the most accurate (and idealistic) way these two aspects of a detection algorithm can be tested. You also need mock profiles in fitting known functional profiles with observations.

MakeProfiles was initially built for extra galactic studies, so currently the only astronomical objects it can produce are stars and galaxies. We welcome the simulation of any other astronomical object. The general outline of the steps that MakeProfiles takes are the following:

1. Build the full profile out to its truncation radius in a possibly over-sampled array.
2. Multiply all the elements by a fixed constant so its total magnitude equals the desired total magnitude.
3. If `--individual` is called, save the array for each profile to a FITS file.
4. If `--nomerged` is not called, add the overlapping pixels of all the created profiles to the output image and abort.

Using input values, MakeProfiles adds the World Coordinate System (WCS) headers of the FITS standard to all its outputs (except PSF images!). For a simple test on a set of mock galaxies in one image, there is no need for the third step or the WCS information.

However in complicated simulations like weak lensing simulations, where each galaxy undergoes various types of individual transformations based on their position, those transformations can be applied to the different individual images with other programs. After all the transformations are applied, using the WCS information in each individual profile image, they can be merged into one output image for convolution and adding noise.

8.1.1 Modeling basics

In the subsections below, first a review of some very basic information and concepts behind modeling a real astronomical image is given. You can skip this subsection if you are already sufficiently familiar with these concepts.

8.1.1.1 Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid

The PSF, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654, and galaxy radial profiles are generally defined on an ellipse. Therefore, in this section we will start defining an ellipse on a pixelated 2D surface. Labeling the major axis of an ellipse a, and its minor axis with

b, the *axis ratio* is defined as: $q \equiv b/a$. The major axis of an ellipse can be aligned in any direction, therefore the angle of the major axis with respect to the horizontal axis of the image is defined to be the *position angle* of the ellipse and in this book, we show it with θ.

Our aim is to put a radial profile of any functional form $f(r)$ over an ellipse. Hence we need to associate a radius/distance to every point in space. Let's define the radial distance r_{el} as the distance on the major axis to the center of an ellipse which is located at i_c and j_c (in other words $r_{el} \equiv a$). We want to find r_{el} of a point located at (i, j) (in the image coordinate system) from the center of the ellipse with axis ratio q and position angle θ. First the coordinate system is rotated[1] by θ to get the new rotated coordinates of that point (i_r, j_r):

$$i_r(i,j) = +(i_c - i)\cos\theta + (j_c - j)\sin\theta$$

$$j_r(i,j) = -(i_c - i)\sin\theta + (j_c - j)\cos\theta$$

Recall that an ellipse is defined by $(i_r/a)^2 + (j_r/b)^2 = 1$ and that we defined $r_{el} \equiv a$. Hence, multiplying all elements of the ellipse definition with r_{el}^2 we get the elliptical distance at this point point located: $r_{el} = \sqrt{i_r^2 + (j_r/q)^2}$. To place the radial profiles explained below over an ellipse, $f(r_{el})$ is calculated based on the functional radial profile desired.

An ellipse in 3D, or an ellipsoid (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ellipsoid`), can be defined following similar principles as before. Labeling the major (largest) axis length as a, the second and third (in a right-handed coordinate system) axis lengths can be labeled as b and c. Hence we have two axis ratios: $q_1 \equiv b/a$ and $q_2 \equiv c/a$. The orientation of the ellipsoid can be defined from the orientation of its major axis. There are many ways to define 3D orientation and order matters. So to be clear, here we use the ZXZ (or $Z_1X_2Z_3$) proper Euler angles (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Euler_angles`) to define the 3D orientation. In short, when a point is rotated in this order, we first rotate it around the Z axis (third axis) by α, then about the (rotated) X axis by β and finally about the (rotated) Z axis by γ.

Following the discussion in Section 6.4.2 [Merging multiple warpings], page 504, we can define the full rotation with the following matrix multiplication. However, here we are rotating the coordinates, not the point. Therefore, both the rotation angles and rotation order are reversed. We are also not using homogeneous coordinates (see Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502) since we are not concerned with translation in this context:

$$\begin{bmatrix} i_r \\ j_r \\ k_r \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} cos\gamma & sin\gamma & 0 \\ -sin\gamma & cos\gamma & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & cos\beta & sin\beta \\ 0 & -sin\beta & cos\beta \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} cos\alpha & sin\alpha & 0 \\ -sin\alpha & cos\alpha & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_c - i \\ j_c - j \\ k_c - k \end{bmatrix}$$

Recall that an ellipsoid can be characterized with $(i_r/a)^2 + (j_r/b)^2 + (k_r/c)^2 = 1$, so similar to before ($r_{el} \equiv a$), we can find the ellipsoidal radius at pixel (i, j, k) as: $r_{el} = \sqrt{i_r^2 + (j_r/q_1)^2 + (k_r/q_2)^2}$.

[1] Do not confuse the signs of *sin* with the rotation matrix defined in Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502. In that equation, the point is rotated, here the coordinates are rotated and the point is fixed.

MakeProfiles builds the profile starting from the nearest element (pixel in an image) in the dataset to the profile center. The profile value is calculated for that central pixel using Monte Carlo integration, see Section 8.1.1.5 [Sampling from a function], page 656. The next pixel is the next nearest neighbor to the central pixel as defined by r_{el}. This process goes on until the profile is fully built upto the truncation radius. This is done fairly efficiently using a breadth first parsing strategy[2] which is implemented through an ordered linked list.

Using this approach, we build the profile by expanding the circumference. Not one more extra pixel has to be checked (the calculation of r_{el} from above is not cheap in CPU terms). Another consequence of this strategy is that extending MakeProfiles to three dimensions becomes very simple: only the neighbors of each pixel have to be changed. Everything else after that (when the pixel index and its radial profile have entered the linked list) is the same, no matter the number of dimensions we are dealing with.

8.1.1.2 Point spread function

Assume we have a 'point' source, or a source that is far smaller than the maximum resolution (a pixel). When we take an image of it, it will 'spread' over an area. To quantify that spread, we can define a 'function'. This is how the "point spread function" or the PSF of an image is defined.

This 'spread' can have various causes, for example, in ground-based astronomy, due to the atmosphere. In practice we can never surpass the 'spread' due to the diffraction of the telescope aperture (even in Space!). Various other effects can also be quantified through a PSF. For example, the simple fact that we are sampling in a discrete space, namely the pixels, also produces a very small 'spread' in the image.

Convolution is the mathematical process by which we can apply a 'spread' to an image, or in other words blur the image, see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480. The sum of pixels of an image should remain unchanged after convolution. Therefore, it is important that the sum of all the pixels of the PSF be unity. The PSF image also has to have an odd number of pixels on its sides so one pixel can be defined as the center.

In MakeProfiles, the PSF can be set by the two methods explained below:

Parametric functions

A known mathematical function is used to make the PSF. In this case, only the parameters to define the functions are necessary and MakeProfiles will make a PSF based on the given parameters for each function. In both cases, the center of the profile has to be exactly in the middle of the central pixel of the PSF (which is automatically done by MakeProfiles). When talking about the PSF, usually, the full width at half maximum or FWHM is used as a scale of the width of the PSF.

Gaussian In the older papers, and to a lesser extent even today, some researchers use the 2D Gaussian function to approximate the PSF of ground based images. In its most general form, a Gaussian function can be written as:

$$f(r) = a \exp\left(\frac{-(x-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) + d$$

[2] `http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Breadth-first_search`

Since the center of the profile is pre-defined, μ and d are constrained. a can also be found because the function has to be normalized. So the only important parameter for MakeProfiles is the σ. In the Gaussian function we have this relation between the FWHM and σ:

$$\mathrm{FWHM_g} = 2\sqrt{2\ln 2}\sigma \approx 2.35482\sigma$$

Moffat The Gaussian profile is much sharper than the images taken from stars on photographic plates or CCDs. Therefore in 1969, Moffat proposed this functional form for the image of stars:

$$f(r) = a\left[1 + \left(\frac{r}{\alpha}\right)^2\right]^{-\beta}$$

Again, a is constrained by the normalization, therefore two parameters define the shape of the Moffat function: α and β. The radial parameter is α which is related to the FWHM by

$$\mathrm{FWHM_m} = 2\alpha\sqrt{2^{1/\beta} - 1}$$

Comparing with the PSF predicted from atmospheric turbulence theory with a Moffat function, Trujillo et al.[3] claim that β should be 4.765. They also show how the Moffat PSF contains the Gaussian PSF as a limiting case when $\beta \to \infty$.

An input FITS image

An input image file can also be specified to be used as a PSF. If the sum of its pixels are not equal to 1, the pixels will be multiplied by a fraction so the sum does become 1.

Gnuastro has tools to extract the non-parametric (extended) PSF of any image as a FITS file (assuming there are a sufficient number of stars in it), see Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. This method is not perfect (will have noise if you do not have many stars), but it is the actual PSF of the data that is not forced into any parametric form.

While the Gaussian is only dependent on the FWHM, the Moffat function is also dependent on β. Comparing these two functions with a fixed FWHM gives the following results:

- Within the FWHM, the functions do not have significant differences.
- For a fixed FWHM, as β increases, the Moffat function becomes sharper.
- The Gaussian function is much sharper than the Moffat functions, even when β is large.

[3] Trujillo, I., J. A. L. Aguerri, J. Cepa, and C. M. Gutierrez (2001). "The effects of seeing on Sérsic profiles - II. The Moffat PSF". In: MNRAS 328, pp. 977—985.

8.1.1.3 Stars

In MakeProfiles, stars are generally considered to be a point source. This is usually the case for extra galactic studies, where nearby stars are also in the field. Since a star is only a point source, we assume that it only fills one pixel prior to convolution. In fact, exactly for this reason, in astronomical images the light profiles of stars are one of the best methods to understand the shape of the PSF and a very large fraction of scientific research is preformed by assuming the shapes of stars to be the PSF of the image.

8.1.1.4 Galaxies

Today, most practitioners agree that the flux of galaxies can be modeled with one or a few generalized de Vaucouleur's (or Sérsic) profiles.

$$I(r) = I_e \exp\left(-b_n\left[\left(\frac{r}{r_e}\right)^{1/n} - 1\right]\right)$$

Gérard de Vaucouleurs (1918-1995) was first to show in 1948 that this function resembles the galaxy light profiles, with the only difference that he held n fixed to a value of 4. Twenty years later in 1968, J. L. Sérsic showed that n can have a variety of values and does not necessarily need to be 4. This profile depends on the effective radius (r_e) which is defined as the radius which contains half of the profile's 2-dimensional integral to infinity (see Section 8.1.3 [Profile magnitude], page 658). I_e is the flux at the effective radius. The Sérsic index n is used to define the concentration of the profile within r_e and b_n is a constant dependent on n. MacArthur et al.[4] show that for $n > 0.35$, b_n can be accurately approximated using this equation:

$$b_n = 2n - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{4}{405n} + \frac{46}{25515n^2} + \frac{131}{1148175n^3} - \frac{2194697}{30690717750n^4}$$

8.1.1.5 Sampling from a function

A pixel is the ultimate level of accuracy to gather data, we cannot get any more accurate in one image, this is known as sampling in signal processing. However, the mathematical profiles which describe our models have infinite accuracy. Over a large fraction of the area of astrophysically interesting profiles (for example, galaxies or PSFs), the variation of the profile over the area of one pixel is not too significant. In such cases, the elliptical radius (r_{el}) of the center of the pixel can be assigned as the final value of the pixel, (see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652).

As you approach their center, some galaxies become very sharp (their value significantly changes over one pixel's area). This sharpness increases with smaller effective radius and larger Sérsic values. Thus rendering the central value extremely inaccurate. The first method that comes to mind for solving this problem is integration. The functional form of the profile can be integrated over the pixel area in a 2D integration process. However,

[4] MacArthur, L. A., S. Courteau, and J. A. Holtzman (2003). "Structure of Disk-dominated Galaxies. I. Bulge/Disk Parameters, Simulations, and Secular Evolution". In: ApJ 582, pp. 689—722.

unfortunately numerical integration techniques also have their limitations and when such sharp profiles are needed they can become extremely inaccurate.

The most accurate method of sampling a continuous profile on a discrete space is by choosing a large number of random points within the boundaries of the pixel and taking their average value (or Monte Carlo integration). This is also, generally speaking, what happens in practice with the photons on the pixel. The number of random points can be set with `--numrandom`.

Unfortunately, repeating this Monte Carlo process would be extremely time and CPU consuming if it is to be applied to every pixel. In order to not loose too much accuracy, in MakeProfiles, the profile is built using both methods explained below. The building of the profile begins from its central pixel and continues (radially) outwards. Monte Carlo integration is first applied (which yields F_r), then the central pixel value (F_c) is calculated on the same pixel. If the fractional difference ($|F_r - F_c|/F_r$) is lower than a given tolerance level (specified with `--tolerance`) MakeProfiles will stop using Monte Carlo integration and only use the central pixel value.

The ordering of the pixels in this inside-out construction is based on $r = \sqrt{(i_c - i)^2 + (j_c - j)^2}$, not r_{el}, see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652. When the axis ratios are large (near one) this is fine. But when they are small and the object is highly elliptical, it might seem more reasonable to follow r_{el} not r. The problem is that the gradient is stronger in pixels with smaller r (and larger r_{el}) than those with smaller r_{el}. In other words, the gradient is strongest along the minor axis. So if the next pixel is chosen based on r_{el}, the tolerance level will be reached sooner and lots of pixels with large fractional differences will be missed.

Monte Carlo integration uses a random number of points. Thus, every time you run it, by default, you will get a different distribution of points to sample within the pixel. In the case of large profiles, this will result in a slight difference of the pixels which use Monte Carlo integration each time MakeProfiles is run. To have a deterministic result, you have to fix the random number generator properties which is used to build the random distribution. This can be done by setting the `GSL_RNG_TYPE` and `GSL_RNG_SEED` environment variables and calling MakeProfiles with the `--envseed` option. To learn more about the process of generating random numbers, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

The seed values are fixed for every profile: with `--envseed`, all the profiles have the same seed and without it, each will get a different seed using the system clock (which is accurate to within one microsecond). The same seed will be used to generate a random number for all the sub-pixel positions of all the profiles. So in the former, the sub-pixel points checked for all the pixels undergoing Monte carlo integration in all profiles will be identical. In other words, the sub-pixel points in the first (closest to the center) pixel of all the profiles will be identical with each other. All the second pixels studied for all the profiles will also receive an identical (different from the first pixel) set of sub-pixel points and so on. As long as the number of random points used is large enough or the profiles are not identical, this should not cause any systematic bias.

8.1.1.6 Oversampling

The steps explained in Section 8.1.1.5 [Sampling from a function], page 656, do give an accurate representation of a profile prior to convolution. However, in an actual observation,

the image is first convolved with or blurred by the atmospheric and instrument PSF in a continuous space and then it is sampled on the discrete pixels of the camera.

In order to more accurately simulate this process, the unconvolved image and the PSF are created on a finer pixel grid. In other words, the output image is a certain odd-integer multiple of the desired size, we can call this 'oversampling'. The user can specify this multiple as a command-line option. The reason this has to be an odd number is that the PSF has to be centered on the center of its image. An image with an even number of pixels on each side does not have a central pixel.

The image can then be convolved with the PSF (which should also be oversampled on the same scale). Finally, image can be sub-sampled to get to the initial desired pixel size of the output image. After this, mock noise can be added as explained in the next section. This is because unlike the PSF, the noise occurs in each output pixel, not on a continuous space like all the prior steps.

8.1.2 If convolving afterwards

In case you want to convolve the image later with a given point spread function, make sure to use a larger image size. After convolution, the profiles become larger and a profile that is normally completely outside of the image might fall within it.

On one axis, if you want your final (convolved) image to be m pixels and your PSF is $2n+1$ pixels wide, then when calling MakeProfiles, set the axis size to $m+2n$, not m. You also have to shift all the pixel positions of the profile centers on the that axis by n pixels to the positive.

After convolution, you can crop the outer n pixels with the section crop box specification of Crop: `--section=n+1:*-n,n+1:*-n` (according to the FITS standard, counting is from 1 so we use `n+1`) assuming your PSF is a square, see Section 6.1.2 [Crop section syntax], page 392. This will also remove all discrete Fourier transform artifacts (blurred sides) from the final image. To facilitate this shift, MakeProfiles has the options `--xshift`, `--yshift` and `--prepforconv`, see Section 8.1.4 [Invoking MakeProfiles], page 659.

8.1.3 Profile magnitude

To find the profile's total magnitude, (see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585), it is customary to use the 2D integration of the flux to infinity. However, in MakeProfiles we do not follow this idealistic approach and apply a more realistic method to find the total magnitude: the sum of all the pixels belonging to a profile within its predefined truncation radius. Note that if the truncation radius is not large enough, this can be significantly different from the total integrated light to infinity.

An integration to infinity is not a realistic condition because no galaxy extends indefinitely (important for high Sérsic index profiles), pixelation can also cause a significant difference between the actual total pixel sum value of the profile and that of integration to infinity, especially in small and high Sérsic index profiles. To be safe, you can specify a large enough truncation radius for such compact high Sérsic index profiles.

If oversampling is used then the pixel value is calculated using the over-sampled image, see Section 8.1.1.6 [Oversampling], page 657, which is much more accurate. The profile is first built in an array completely bounding it with a normalization constant of unity (see Section 8.1.1.4 [Galaxies], page 656). Taking V to be the desired pixel value and S to be

the sum of the pixels in the created profile, every pixel is then multiplied by V/S so the sum is exactly V.

If the `--individual` option is called, this same array is written to a FITS file. If not, only the overlapping pixels of this array and the output image are kept and added to the output array.

8.1.4 Invoking MakeProfiles

MakeProfiles will make any number of profiles specified in a catalog either individually or in one image. The executable name is `astmkprof` with the following general template

```
$ astmkprof [OPTION ...] [Catalog]
```

One line examples:

```
## Make an image with profiles in catalog.txt (with default size):
$ astmkprof catalog.txt

## Make the profiles in catalog.txt over image.fits:
$ astmkprof --background=image.fits catalog.txt

## Make a Moffat PSF with FWHM 3pix, beta=2.8, truncation=5
$ astmkprof --kernel=moffat,3,2.8,5 --oversample=1

## Make profiles in catalog, using RA and Dec in the given column:
$ astmkprof --ccol=RA_CENTER --ccol=DEC_CENTER --mode=wcs catalog.txt

## Make a 1500x1500 merged image (oversampled 500x500) image along
## with an individual image for all the profiles in catalog:
$ astmkprof --individual --oversample 3 --mergedsize=500,500 cat.txt
```

The parameters of the mock profiles can either be given through a catalog (which stores the parameters of many mock profiles, see Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660), or the `--kernel` option (see Section 8.1.4.3 [MakeProfiles output dataset], page 671). The catalog can be in the FITS ASCII, FITS binary format, or plain text formats (see Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284). A plain text catalog can also be provided using the Standard input (see Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266). The columns related to each parameter can be determined both by number, or by match/search criteria using the column names, units, or comments, with the options ending in `col`, see below.

Without any file given to the `--background` option, MakeProfiles will make a zero-valued image and build the profiles on that (its size and main WCS parameters can also be defined through the options described in Section 8.1.4.3 [MakeProfiles output dataset], page 671). Besides the main/merged image containing all the profiles in the catalog, it is also possible to build individual images for each profile (only enclosing one full profile to its truncation radius) with the `--individual` option.

If an image is given to the `--background` option, the pixels of that image are used as the background value for every pixel hence flux value of each profile pixel will be added to the pixel in that background value. You can disable this with the `--clearcanvas` option (which will initialize the background to zero-valued pixels and build profiles over that). With the `--background` option, the values to all options relating to the "canvas" (output

size and WCS) will be ignored if specified: `--oversample`, `--mergedsize`, `--prepforconv`, `--crpix`, `--crval`, `--cdelt`, `--cdelt`, `--pc`, `cunit` and `ctype`.

The sections below discuss the options specific to MakeProfiles based on context: the input catalog settings which can have many rows for different profiles are discussed in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660, in Section 8.1.4.2 [MakeProfiles profile settings], page 664, we discuss how you can set general profile settings (that are the same for all the profiles in the catalog). Finally Section 8.1.4.3 [MakeProfiles output dataset], page 671, and Section 8.1.4.4 [MakeProfiles log file], page 675, discuss the outputs of MakeProfiles and how you can configure them. Besides these, MakeProfiles also supports all the common Gnuastro program options that are discussed in Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, so please flip through them is well for a more comfortable usage.

When building 3D profiles, there are more degrees of freedom. Hence, more columns are necessary and all the values related to dimensions (for example, size of dataset in each dimension and the WCS properties) must also have 3 values. To allow having an independent set of default values for creating 3D profiles, MakeProfiles also installs a `astmkprof-3d.conf` configuration file (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270). You can use this for default 3D profile values. For example, if you installed Gnuastro with the prefix `/usr/local` (the default location, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235), you can benefit from this configuration file by running MakeProfiles like the example below. As with all configuration files, if you want to customize a given option, call it before the configuration file.

```
$ astmkprof --config=/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astmkprof-3d.conf \
            catalog.txt
```

To further simplify the process, you can define a shell alias in any startup file (for example, `~/.bashrc`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235). Assuming that you installed Gnuastro in `/usr/local`, you can add this line to the startup file (you may put it all in one line, it is broken into two lines here for fitting within page limits).

```
alias astmkprof-3d="astmkprof \
                --config=/usr/local/etc/gnuastro/astmkprof-3d.conf"
```

Using this alias, you can call MakeProfiles with the name `astmkprof-3d` (instead of `astmkprof`). It will automatically load the 3D specific configuration file first, and then parse any other arguments, options or configuration files. You can change the default values in this 3D configuration file by calling them on the command-line as you do with `astmkprof`[5].

Please see Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123, for a very complete tutorial explaining how one could use MakeProfiles in conjunction with other Gnuastro's programs to make a complete simulated image of a mock galaxy.

8.1.4.1 MakeProfiles catalog

The catalog containing information about each profile can be in the FITS ASCII, FITS binary, or plain text formats (see Section 4.7 [Tables], page 284). The latter can also be provided using standard input (see Section 4.1.4 [Standard input], page 266). Its columns

[5] Recall that for single-invocation options, the last command-line invocation takes precedence over all previous invocations (including those in the 3D configuration file). See the description of `--config` in Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259.

can be ordered in any desired manner. You can specify which columns belong to which parameters using the set of options discussed below. For example, through the `--rcol` and `--tcol` options, you can specify the column that contains the radial parameter for each profile and its truncation respectively. See Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289, for a thorough discussion on the values to these options.

The value for the profile center in the catalog (the `--ccol` option) can be a floating point number so the profile center can be on any sub-pixel position. Note that pixel positions in the FITS standard start from 1 and an integer is the pixel center. So a 2D image actually starts from the position (0.5, 0.5), which is the bottom-left corner of the first pixel. When a `--background` image with WCS information is provided, or you specify the WCS parameters with the respective options[6], you may also use RA and Dec to identify the center of each profile (see the `--mode` option below).

In MakeProfiles, profile centers do not have to be in (overlap with) the final image. Even if only one pixel of the profile within the truncation radius overlaps with the final image size, the profile is built and included in the final image. Profiles that are completely out of the image will not be created (unless you explicitly ask for it with the `--individual` option). You can use the output log file (created with `--log` to see which profiles were within the image, see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253.

If PSF profiles (Moffat or Gaussian, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654) are in the catalog and the profiles are to be built in one image (when `--individual` is not used), it is assumed they are the PSF(s) you want to convolve your created image with. So by default, they will not be built in the output image but as separate files. The sum of pixels of these separate files will also be set to unity (1) so you are ready to convolve, see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480. As a summary, the position and magnitude of PSF profile will be ignored. This behavior can be disabled with the `--psfinimg` option. If you want to create all the profiles separately (with `--individual`) and you want the sum of the PSF profile pixels to be unity, you have to set their magnitudes in the catalog to the zero point magnitude and be sure that the central positions of the profiles do not have any fractional part (the PSF center has to be in the center of the pixel).

The list of options directly related to the input catalog columns is shown below.

`--ccol=STR/INT`

Center coordinate column for each dimension. This option must be called two times to define the center coordinates in an image. For example, `--ccol=RA` and `--ccol=DEC` (along with `--mode=wcs`) will inform MakeProfiles to look into the catalog columns named `RA` and `DEC` for the Right Ascension and Declination of the profile centers.

`--fcol=INT/STR`

The functional form of the profile with one of the values below depending on the desired profile. The column can contain either the numeric codes (for example, '`1`') or string characters (for example, '`sersic`'). The numeric codes are easier to use in scripts which generate catalogs with hundreds or thousands of profiles.

[6] The options to set the WCS are the following: `--crpix`, `--crval`, `--cdelt`, `--cdelt`, `--pc`, `cunit` and `ctype`. Just recall that these options are only used if `--background` is not given: if the image you give to `--background` does not have WCS, these options will not be used and you cannot use WCS-mode coordinates like RA or Dec.

The string format can be easier when the catalog is to be written/checked by hand/eye before running MakeProfiles. It is much more readable and provides a level of documentation. All Gnuastro's recognized table formats (see Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285) accept string type columns. To have string columns in a plain text table/catalog, see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287.

- Sérsic profile with '`sersic`' or '`1`'.
- Moffat profile with '`moffat`' or '`2`'.
- Gaussian profile with '`gaussian`' or '`3`'.
- Point source with '`point`' or '`4`'.
- Flat profile with '`flat`' or '`5`'.
- Circumference profile with '`circum`' or '`6`'. A fixed value will be used for all pixels less than or equal to the truncation radius (r_t) and greater than $r_t - w$ (w is the value to the `--circumwidth`).
- Radial distance profile with '`distance`' or '`7`'. At the lowest level, each pixel only has an elliptical radial distance given the profile's shape and orientation (see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652). When this profile is chosen, the pixel's elliptical radial distance from the profile center is written as its value. For this profile, the value in the magnitude column (`--mcol`) will be ignored.

  You can use this for checks or as a first approximation to define your own higher-level radial function. In the latter case, just note that the central values are going to be incorrect (see Section 8.1.1.5 [Sampling from a function], page 656).
- Custom radial profile with '`custom-prof`' or '`8`'. The values to use for each radial interval should be in the table given to `--customtable`. By default, once the profile is built with the given values, it will be scaled to have a total magnitude that you have requested in the magnitude column of the profile (in `--mcol`). If you want the raw values in the 2D profile (to ignore the magnitude column), use `--mcolnocustprof`. For more, see the description of `--customtable` in Section 8.1.4.2 [MakeProfiles profile settings], page 664.
- Azimuthal angle profile with '`azimuth`' or '`9`'. Every pixel within the truncation radius will be given its azimuthal angle (in degrees, from 0 to 360) from the major axis. In combination with the radial distance profile, you can now create complex features in polar coordinates, such as tidal tails or tidal shocks (using the Arithmetic program to mix the radius and azimuthal angle through a function to create your desired features).
- Custom image with '`custom-img`' or '`10`'. The image(s) to use should be given to the `--customimg` option (which can be called multiple times for multiple images). To identify which one of the images (given to `--customimg`) should be used, you should specify their counter in the "radius" column below. For more, see the description of `custom-img` in Section 8.1.4.2 [MakeProfiles profile settings], page 664.

`--rcol=STR/INT`
: The radius parameter of the profiles. Effective radius (r_e) if Sérsic, FWHM if Moffat or Gaussian.

  For a custom image profile, this option is not interpreted as a radius, but as a counter (identifying which one of the images given to `--customimg` should be used for each row).

`--ncol=STR/INT`
: The Sérsic index (n) or Moffat β.

`--pcol=STR/INT`
: The position angle (in degrees) of the profiles relative to the first FITS axis (horizontal when viewed in SAO DS9). When building a 3D profile, this is the first Euler angle: first rotation of the ellipsoid major axis from the first FITS axis (rotating about the third axis). See Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652.

`--p2col=STR/INT`
: Second Euler angle (in degrees) when building a 3D ellipsoid. This is the second rotation of the ellipsoid major axis (following `--pcol`) about the (rotated) X axis. See Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652. This column is ignored when building a 2D profile.

`--p3col=STR/INT`
: Third Euler angle (in degrees) when building a 3D ellipsoid. This is the third rotation of the ellipsoid major axis (following `--pcol` and `--p2col`) about the (rotated) Z axis. See Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652. This column is ignored when building a 2D profile.

`--qcol=STR/INT`
: The axis ratio of the profiles (minor axis divided by the major axis in a 2D ellipse). When building a 3D ellipse, this is the ratio of the major axis to the semi-axis length of the second dimension (in a right-handed coordinate system). See $q1$ in Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652.

`--q2col=STR/INT`
: The ratio of the ellipsoid major axis to the third semi-axis length (in a right-handed coordinate system) of a 3D ellipsoid. See $q1$ in Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652. This column is ignored when building a 2D profile.

`--mcol=STR/INT`
: The total pixelated magnitude of the profile within the truncation radius, see Section 8.1.3 [Profile magnitude], page 658.

`--tcol=STR/INT`
: The truncation radius of this profile. By default it is in units of the radial parameter of the profile (the value in the `--rcol` of the catalog). If `--tunitinp` is given, this value is interpreted in units of pixels (prior to oversampling) irrespective of the profile.

8.1.4.2 MakeProfiles profile settings

The profile parameters that differ between each created profile are specified through the columns in the input catalog and described in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660. Besides those there are general settings for some profiles that do not differ between one profile and another, they are a property of the general process. For example, how many random points to use in the monte-carlo integration, this value is fixed for all the profiles. The options described in this section are for configuring such properties.

`--mode=STR`
: Interpret the center position columns (`--ccol` in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660) in image or WCS coordinates. This option thus accepts only two values: `img` and `wcs`. It is mandatory when a catalog is being used as input.

`-r`
`--numrandom`
: The number of random points used in the central regions of the profile, see Section 8.1.1.5 [Sampling from a function], page 656.

`-e`
`--envseed`
: Use the value to the `GSL_RNG_SEED` environment variable to generate the random Monte Carlo sampling distribution, see Section 8.1.1.5 [Sampling from a function], page 656, and Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

`-t FLT`
`--tolerance=FLT`
: The tolerance to switch from Monte Carlo integration to the central pixel value, see Section 8.1.1.5 [Sampling from a function], page 656.

`-p`
`--tunitinp`
: The truncation column of the catalog is in units of pixels. By default, the truncation column is considered to be in units of the radial parameters of the profile (`--rcol`). Read it as 't-unit-in-p' for 'truncation unit in pixels'.

`-f`
`--mforflatpix`
: When making fixed value profiles ("flat", "circumference" or "point" profiles, see '`--fcol`'), do not use the value in the column specified by '`--mcol`' as the magnitude. Instead use it as the exact value that all the pixels of these profiles should have. This option is irrelevant for other types of profiles. This option is very useful for creating masks, or labeled regions in an image. Any integer, or floating point value can used in this column with this option, including `NaN` (or '`nan`', or '`NAN`', case is irrelevant), and infinities (`inf`, `-inf`, or `+inf`).

  For example, with this option if you set the value in the magnitude column (`--mcol`) to `NaN`, you can create an elliptical or circular mask over an image (which can be given as the argument), see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392. Another useful application of this option is to create labeled elliptical or circular apertures in an image. To do this, set the value in the magnitude column

to the label you want for this profile. This labeled image can then be used in combination with NoiseChisel's output (see Section 7.2.2.3 [NoiseChisel output], page 569) to do aperture photometry with MakeCatalog (see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582).

Alternatively, if you want to mark regions of the image (for example, with an elliptical circumference) and you do not want to use NaN values (as explained above) for some technical reason, you can get the minimum or maximum value in the image[7] using Arithmetic (see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403), then use that value in the magnitude column along with this option for all the profiles.

Please note that when using MakeProfiles on an already existing image, you have to set '`--oversample=1`'. Otherwise all the profiles will be scaled up based on the oversampling scale in your configuration files (see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270) unless you have accounted for oversampling in your catalog.

`--mcolissum`

The value given in the "magnitude" column (specified by `--mcol`, see Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660) must be interpreted as total sum of pixel values, not magnitude (which is measured from the total sum and zero point, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585). When this option is called, the zero point magnitude (value to the `--zeropoint` option) is ignored and the given value must have the same units as the input dataset's pixels.

Recall that the total profile magnitude that is specified with in the `--mcol` column of the input catalog is not an integration to infinity, but the actual sum of pixels in the profile (until the desired truncation radius). See Section 8.1.3 [Profile magnitude], page 658, for more on this point.

`--mcolnocustprof`

Do not touch (re-scale) the custom profile that should be inserted in `custom-prof` profile (see the description of `--fcol` in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660, or the description of `--customtable` below). By default, MakeProfiles will scale (multiply) the custom image's pixels to have the desired magnitude (or sum of pixels if `--mcolissum` is called) in that row.

`--mcolnocustimg`

Do not touch (re-scale) the custom image that should be inserted in `custom-img` profile (see the description of `--fcol` in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660). By default, MakeProfiles will scale (multiply) the custom image's pixels to have the desired magnitude (or sum of pixels if `--mcolissum` is called) in that row.

`--magatpeak`

The magnitude column in the catalog (see Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660) will be used to set the value only for the profile's peak (maximum)

[7] The minimum will give a better result, because the maximum can be too high compared to most pixels in the image, making it harder to display.

pixel, not the full profile. Note that this is the flux of the profile's peak (maximum) pixel in the final output of MakeProfiles. So beware of the oversampling, see Section 8.1.1.6 [Oversampling], page 657.

This option can be useful if you want to check a mock profile's total magnitude at various truncation radii. Without this option, no matter what the truncation radius is, the total magnitude will be the same as that given in the catalog. But with this option, the total magnitude will become brighter as you increase the truncation radius.

In sharper profiles, sometimes the accuracy of measuring the peak profile flux is more than the overall object sum or magnitude. In such cases, with this option, the final profile will be built such that its peak has the given magnitude, not the total profile.

CAUTION: If you want to use this option for comparing with observations, please note that MakeProfiles does not do convolution. Unless you have deconvolved your data, your images are convolved with the instrument and atmospheric PSF, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654. Particularly in sharper profiles, the flux in the peak pixel is strongly decreased after convolution. Also note that in such cases, besides deconvolution, you will have to set `--oversample=1` otherwise after resampling your profile with Warp (see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501), the peak flux will be different.

`--customtable FITS/TXT`

The filename of the table to use in the custom radial profiles (see description of `--fcol` in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660. This can be a plain-text table, or FITS table, see Section 4.7.1 [Recognized table formats], page 285, if it is a FITS table, you can use `--customtablehdu` to specify which HDU should be used (described below).

A custom radial profile can have any value you want for a given radial profile (including NaN/blank values). Each interval is defined by its minimum (inclusive) and maximum (exclusive) radius, when a pixel center falls within a radius interval, the value specified for that interval will be used. If a pixel is not in the given intervals, a value of 0.0 will be used for that pixel.

The table should have 3 columns as shown below. If the intervals are contiguous (the maximum value of the previous interval is equal to the minimum value of an interval) and the intervals all have the same size (difference between minimum and maximum values) the creation of these profiles will be fast. However, if the intervals are not sorted and contiguous, MakeProfiles will parse the intervals from the top of the table and use the first interval that contains the pixel center (this may slow it down).

Column 1: The interval's minimum radius.

Column 2: The interval's maximum radius.

Column 3: The value to be used for pixels within the given interval (including NaN/blank).

Gnuastro's column arithmetic in the Table program has the `sorted-to-interval` operator that will generate the first two columns from a single column (your radial profile). See the description of that operator in Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350, and the example below.

By default, once a 2D image is constructed for the radial profile, it will be scaled such that its total magnitude corresponds to the value in the magnitude column (`--mcol`) of the main input catalog. If you want to disable the scaling and use the raw values in your custom profile (in other words: you want to ignore the magnitude column) you need to call `--mcolnocustprof` (see above).

In the example below, we'll start with a certain radial profile, and use this option to build its 2D representation in an image (recall that you can build radial profiles with Section 10.2 [Generate radial profile], page 694). But first, we will need to use the `sorted-to-interval` to build the necessary input format (see Section 5.3.3 [Column arithmetic], page 350).

```
$ cat radial.txt
# Column 1: RADIUS [pix        ,f32,] Radial distance
# Column 2: MEAN   [input-units,f32,] Mean of values.
0.0       1.00000
1.0       0.50184
1.4       0.37121
2.0       0.26414
2.2       0.23427
2.8       0.17868
3.0       0.16627
3.1       0.15567
3.6       0.13132
4.0       0.11404

## Convert the radius in each row to an interval
$ asttable radial.txt --output=interval.fits \
           -c'arith RADIUS sorted-to-interval',MEAN

## Inspect the table containing intervals
$ asttable interval.fits -ffixed
-0.500000     0.500000      1.000000
0.500000      1.200000      0.501840
1.200000      1.700000      0.371210
1.700000      2.100000      0.264140
2.100000      2.500000      0.234270
2.500000      2.900000      0.178680
2.900000      3.050000      0.166270
3.050000      3.350000      0.155670
3.350000      3.800000      0.131320
3.800000      4.200000      0.114040

## Build the 2D image of the profile from the interval.
```

```
$ echo "1 7 7 8 10 2.5 0 1 1 2" \
       | astmkprof --mergedsize=13,13 --oversample=1 \
                   --customtable=interval.fits \
                   --output=image.fits

## View the created FITS image.
$ astscript-fits-view image.fits --ds9scale=minmax
```

Recall that if you want your image pixels to have the same values as the `MEAN` column in your profile, you should run MakeProfiles with `--mcolnocustprof`.

In case you want to build the profile using Section 10.2 [Generate radial profile], page 694, be sure to use the `--oversample` option of `astscript-radial-profile`. The higher the oversampling, the better your result will be. For example you can run the following script to see the effect (also see bug 65106 (`https://savannah.gnu.org/bugs/?65106`)). But don't take the oversampling too high: both the radial profile script and MakeProfiles will become slower and the precision of your results will decrease.

```
#!/bin/bash

# Function to avoid repeating code: first generate a radial profile
# with a certain oversampling, then build a 2D profile from it):
# The first argument is the oversampling, the second is the suffix.
gen_rad_make_2dprf () {

    # Generate the radial profile
    radraw=$bdir/radial-profile-$2.fits
    astscript-radial-profile $prof -o$radraw \
                             --oversample=$1 \
                             --zeroisnotblank

    # Generate the custom table format
    custraw=$bdir/customtable-$2.fits
    asttable $radraw --output=interval.fits \
             -c'arith RADIUS sorted-to-interval',MEAN \
             -o$custraw

    # Build the 2D profile.
    prof2draw=$bdir/prof2d-$2.fits
    echo "1 $xc $yc 8 30 0 0 1 0 1" \
        | astmkprof --customtable=$custraw \
                    --mergedsize=$xw,$yw \
                    --output=$prof2draw \
                    --mcolnocustprof \
                    --oversample=1 \
                    --clearcanvas \
                    --mode=img
}
```

```
# Directory to hold built files
bdir=build
if ! [ -d $bdir ]; then mkdir $bdir; fi

# Build a Gaussian profile in the center of an image to start with.
prof=$bdir/prof.fits
astmkprof --kernel=gaussian,2,5 -o$prof

# Find the center pixel of the image
xw=$(astfits $prof --keyvalue=NAXIS1 --quiet)
yw=$(astfits $prof --keyvalue=NAXIS2 --quiet)
xc=$(echo $xw | awk '{print int($1/2)+1}')
yc=$(echo $yw| awk '{print int($1/2)+1}')

# Generate two 2D radial profiles, one with an oversampling of 1
# and another with an oversampling of 5.
gen_rad_make_2dprf 1 "raw"
gen_rad_make_2dprf 5 "oversample"

# View the two images beside each other:
astscript-fits-view $bdir/prof2d-raw.fits \
                    $bdir/prof2d-oversample.fits
```

`--customtablehdu INT/STR`
: The HDU/extension in the FITS file given to `--customtable`.

`--customimg=STR[,STR]`
: A custom FITS image that should be used for the `custom-img` profiles (see the description of `--fcol` in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660). Multiple files can be given to this option (separated by a comma), and this option can be called multiple times itself (useful when many custom image profiles should be added). If the HDU of the images are different, you can use `--customimghdu` (described below).

  Through the "radius" column, MakeProfiles will know which one of the images given to this option should be used in each row. For example, let's assume your input catalog (`cat.fits`) has the following contents (output of first command below), and you call MakeProfiles like the second command below to insert four profiles into the background `back.fits` image.

  The first profile below is Sersic (with an `--fcol`, or 4-th column, code of `1`). So MakeProfiles builds the pixels of the first profile, and all column values are meaningful. However, the second, third and fourth inserted objects are custom images (with an `--fcol` code of `10`). For the custom image profiles, you see that the radius column has values of `1` or `2`. This tells MakeProfiles to use the first image given to `--customimg` (or `gal-1.fits`) for the second and fourth inserted objects. The second image given to `--customimage` (or `gal-2.fits`) will be used for the third inserted object. Finally, all three custom image profiles have

different magnitudes, and the values in `--ncol`, `--pcol`, `--qcol` and `--tcol` are ignored.

```
$ cat cat.fits
1 53.15506 -27.785165 1  20 1 20 0.6 25 5
2 53.15602 -27.777887 10 1  0 0  0   22 0
3 53.16440 -27.775876 10 2  0 0  0   24 0
4 53.16849 -27.787406 10 1  0 0  0   23 0

$ astmkprof cat.fits --mode=wcs --zeropoint=25.68 \
            --background=back.fits --output=out.fits \
            --customimg=gal-1.fits --customimg=gal-2.fits
```

`--customimghdu=INT/STR`
: The HDU(s) of the images given to `--customimghdu`. If this option is only called once, but `--customimg` is called many times, MakeProfiles will assume that all images given to `--customimg` have the same HDU. Otherwise (if the number of HDUs is equal to the number of images), then each image will use its corresponding HDU.

`-X INT,INT`
`--shift=INT,INT`
: Shift all the profiles and enlarge the image along each dimension. To better understand this option, please see n in Section 8.1.2 [If convolving afterwards], page 658. This is useful when you want to convolve the image afterwards. If you are using an external PSF, be sure to oversample it to the same scale used for creating the mock images. If a background image is specified, any possible value to this option is ignored.

`-c`
`--prepforconv`
: Shift all the profiles and enlarge the image based on half the width of the first Moffat or Gaussian profile in the catalog, considering any possible oversampling see Section 8.1.2 [If convolving afterwards], page 658. `--prepforconv` is only checked and possibly activated if `--xshift` and `--yshift` are both zero (after reading the command-line and configuration files). If a background image is specified, any possible value to this option is ignored.

`-z FLT`
`--zeropoint=FLT`
: The zero point magnitude of the input. For more on the zero point magnitude, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`-w FLT`
`--circumwidth=FLT`
: The width of the circumference if the profile is to be an elliptical circumference or annulus. See the explanations for this type of profile in `--fcol`.

`-R`
`--replace`

Do not add the pixels of each profile over the background, or other profiles. But replace the values.

By default, when two profiles overlap, the final pixel value is the sum of all the profiles that overlap on that pixel. This is the expected situation when dealing with physical object profiles like galaxies or stars/PSF. However, when MakeProfiles is used to build integer labeled images (for example, in Section 2.1.17 [Aperture photometry], page 61), this is not the expected situation: the sum of two labels will be a new label. With this option, the pixels are not added but the largest (maximum) value over that pixel is used. Because the maximum operator is independent of the order of values, the output is also thread-safe.

8.1.4.3 MakeProfiles output dataset

MakeProfiles takes an input catalog uses basic properties that are defined there to build a dataset, for example, a 2D image containing the profiles in the catalog. In Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660, and Section 8.1.4.2 [MakeProfiles profile settings], page 664, the catalog and profile settings were discussed. The options of this section, allow you to configure the output dataset (or the canvas that will host the built profiles).

`-k FITS`
`--background=FITS`

A background image FITS file to build the profiles on. The extension that contains the image should be specified with the `--backhdu` option, see below. When a background image is specified, it will be used to derive all the information about the output image. Hence, the following options will be ignored: `--mergedsize`, `--oversample`, `--crpix`, `--crval` (generally, all other WCS related parameters) and the output's data type (see `--type` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

The background image will act like a canvas to build the profiles on: profile pixel values will be summed with the background image pixel values. With the `--replace` option you can disable this behavior and replace the profile pixels with the background pixels. If you want to use all the image information above, except for the pixel values (you want to have a blank canvas to build the profiles on, based on an input image), you can call `--clearcanvas`, to set all the input image's pixels to zero before starting to build the profiles over it (this is done in memory after reading the input, so nothing will happen to your input file).

`-B STR/INT`
`--backhdu=STR/INT`

The header data unit (HDU) of the file given to `--background`.

`-C`
`--clearcanvas`

When an input image is specified (with the `--background` option, set all its pixels to 0.0 immediately after reading it into memory. Effectively, this will allow you to use all its properties (described under the `--background` option), without having to worry about the pixel values.

`--clearcanvas` can come in handy in many situations, for example, if you want to create a labeled image (segmentation map) for creating a catalog (see Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582). In other cases, you might have modeled the objects in an image and want to create them on the same frame, but without the original pixel values.

`-E STR/INT,FLT[,FLT,[...]]`
`--kernel=STR/INT,FLT[,FLT,[...]]`

Only build one kernel profile with the parameters given as the values to this option. The different values must be separated by a comma (`,`). The first value identifies the radial function of the profile, either through a string or through a number (see description of `--fcol` in Section 8.1.4.1 [MakeProfiles catalog], page 660). Each radial profile needs a different total number of parameters: Sérsic and Moffat functions need 3 parameters: radial, Sérsic index or Moffat β, and truncation radius. The Gaussian function needs two parameters: radial and truncation radius. The point function does not need any parameters and flat and circumference profiles just need one parameter (truncation radius).

The PSF or kernel is a unique (and highly constrained) type of profile: the sum of its pixels must be one, its center must be the center of the central pixel (in an image with an odd number of pixels on each side), and commonly it is circular, so its axis ratio and position angle are one and zero respectively. Kernels are commonly necessary for various data analysis and data manipulation steps (for example, see Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479, and Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552. Because of this it is inconvenient to define a catalog with one row and many zero valued columns (for all the non-necessary parameters). Hence, with this option, it is possible to create a kernel with MakeProfiles without the need to create a catalog. Here are some examples:

`--kernel=moffat,3,2.8,5`
: A Moffat kernel with FWHM of 3 pixels, $\beta = 2.8$ which is truncated at 5 times the FWHM.

`--kernel=gaussian,2,3`
: A circular Gaussian kernel with FWHM of 2 pixels and truncated at 3 times the FWHM.

This option may also be used to create a 3D kernel. To do that, two small modifications are necessary: add a `-3d` (or `-3D`) to the profile name (for example, `moffat-3d`) and add a number (axis-ratio along the third dimension) to the end of the parameters for all profiles except `point`. The main reason behind providing an axis ratio in the third dimension is that in 3D astronomical datasets, commonly the third dimension does not have the same nature (units/sampling) as the first and second.

For example, in IFU (optical) or Radio data cubes, the first and second dimensions are commonly spatial/angular positions (like RA and Dec) but the third dimension is wavelength or frequency (in units of Angstroms for Herz). Because of this different nature (which also affects the processing), it may be necessary for the kernel to have a different extent in that direction.

If the 3rd dimension axis ratio is equal to 1.0, then the kernel will be a spheroid. If it is smaller than 1.0, the kernel will be button-shaped: extended less in the third dimension. However, when it islarger than 1.0, the kernel will be bullet-shaped: extended more in the third dimension. In the latter case, the radial parameter will correspond to the length along the 3rd dimension. For example, let's have a look at the two examples above but in 3D:

`--kernel=moffat-3d,3,2.8,5,0.5`
: An ellipsoid Moffat kernel with FWHM of 3 pixels, $\beta = 2.8$ which is truncated at 5 times the FWHM. The ellipsoid is circular in the first two dimensions, but in the third dimension its extent is half the first two.

`--kernel=gaussian-3d,2,3,1`
: A spherical Gaussian kernel with FWHM of 2 pixels and truncated at 3 times the FWHM.

Of course, if a specific kernel is needed that does not fit the constraints imposed by this option, you can always use a catalog to define any arbitrary kernel. Just call the `--individual` and `--nomerged` options to make sure that it is built as a separate file (individually) and no "merged" image of the input profiles is created.

`-x INT,INT`
`--mergedsize=INT,INT`
: The number of pixels along each axis of the output, in FITS order. This is before over-sampling. For example, if you call MakeProfiles with `--mergedsize=100,150 --oversample=5` (assuming no shift due for later convolution), then the final image size along the first axis will be 500 by 750 pixels. Fractions are acceptable as values for each dimension, however, they must reduce to an integer, so `--mergedsize=150/3,300/3` is acceptable but `--mergedsize=150/4,300/4` is not.

  When viewing a FITS image in DS9, the first FITS dimension is in the horizontal direction and the second is vertical. As an example, the image created with the example above will have 500 pixels horizontally and 750 pixels vertically.

  If a background image is specified, this option is ignored.

`-s INT`
`--oversample=INT`
: The scale to over-sample the profiles and final image. If not an odd number, will be added by one, see Section 8.1.1.6 [Oversampling], page 657. Note that this `--oversample` will remain active even if an input image is specified. If your input catalog is based on the background image, be sure to set `--oversample=1`.

`--psfinimg`
: Build the possibly existing PSF profiles (Moffat or Gaussian) in the catalog into the final image. By default they are built separately so you can convolve your images with them, thus their magnitude and positions are ignored. With this option, they will be built in the final image like every other galaxy profile.

To have a final PSF in your image, make a point profile where you want the PSF and after convolution it will be the PSF.

`-i`
`--individual`
If this option is called, each profile is created in a separate FITS file within the same directory as the output and the row number of the profile (starting from zero) in the name. The file for each row's profile will be in the same directory as the final combined image of all the profiles and will have the final image's name as a suffix. So for example, if the final combined image is named `./out/fromcatalog.fits`, then the first profile that will be created with this option will be named `./out/0_fromcatalog.fits`.

Since each image only has one full profile out to the truncation radius the profile is centered and so, only the sub-pixel position of the profile center is important for the outputs of this option. The output will have an odd number of pixels. If there is no oversampling, the central pixel will contain the profile center. If the value to `--oversample` is larger than unity, then the profile center is on any of the central `--oversample`'d pixels depending on the fractional value of the profile center.

If the fractional value is larger than half, it is on the bottom half of the central region. This is due to the FITS definition of a real number position: The center of a pixel has fractional value 0.00 so each pixel contains these fractions: .5 – .75 – .00 (pixel center) – .25 – .5.

`-m`
`--nomerged`
Do not make a merged image. By default after making the profiles, they are added to a final image with side lengths specified by `--mergedsize` if they overlap with it.

The options below can be used to define the world coordinate system (WCS) properties of the MakeProfiles outputs. The option names are deliberately chosen to be the same as the FITS standard WCS keywords. See Section 8 of Pence et al [2010] (`https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361/201015362`) for a short introduction to WCS in the FITS standard[8].

If you look into the headers of a FITS image with WCS for example, you will see all these names but in uppercase and with numbers to represent the dimensions, for example, `CRPIX1` and `PC2_1`. You can see the FITS headers with Gnuastro's Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, program using a command like this: `$ astfits -p image.fits`.

If the values given to any of these options does not correspond to the number of dimensions in the output dataset, then no WCS information will be added. Also recall that if you use the `--background` option, all of these options are ignored. Such that if the image

[8] The world coordinate standard in FITS is a very beautiful and powerful concept to link/associate datasets with the outside world (other datasets). The description in the FITS standard (link above) only touches the tip of the ice-burg. To learn more please see Greisen and Calabretta [2002] (`https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361:20021326`), Calabretta and Greisen [2002] (`https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361:20021327`), Greisen et al. [2006] (`https://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361:20053818`), and Calabretta et al. (`http://www.atnf.csiro.au/people/mcalabre/WCS/dcs_20040422.pdf`)

given to `--background` does not have any WCS, the output of MakeProfiles will also not have any WCS, even if these options are given[9].

`--crpix=FLT,FLT`
: The pixel coordinates of the WCS reference point. Fractions are acceptable for the values of this option.

`--crval=FLT,FLT`
: The WCS coordinates of the Reference point. Fractions are acceptable for the values of this option. The comma-separated values can either be in degrees (a single number), or sexagesimal (`_h_m_` for RA, `_d_m_` for Dec, or `_:_:_` for both). In any case, the final value that will be written in the `CRVAL` keyword will be a floating point number in degrees (according to the FITS standard).

`--cdelt=FLT,FLT`
: The resolution (size of one data-unit or pixel in WCS units) of the non-oversampled dataset. Fractions are acceptable for the values of this option.

`--pc=FLT,FLT,FLT,FLT`
: The PC matrix of the WCS rotation, see the FITS standard (link above) to better understand the PC matrix.

`--cunit=STR,STR`
: The units of each WCS axis, for example, `deg`. Note that these values are part of the FITS standard (link above). MakeProfiles will not complain if you use non-standard values, but later usage of them might cause trouble.

`--ctype=STR,STR`
: The type of each WCS axis, for example, `RA---TAN` and `DEC--TAN`. Note that these values are part of the FITS standard (link above). MakeProfiles will not complain if you use non-standard values, but later usage of them might cause trouble.

8.1.4.4 MakeProfiles log file

Besides the final merged dataset of all the profiles, or the individual datasets (see Section 8.1.4.3 [MakeProfiles output dataset], page 671), if the `--log` option is called MakeProfiles will also create a log file in the current directory (where you run MockProfiles). See Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253, for a full description of `--log` and other options that are shared between all Gnuastro programs. The values for each column are explained in the first few commented lines of the log file (starting with `#` character). Here is a more complete description.

- An ID (row number of profile in input catalog).
- The total magnitude of the profile in the output dataset. When the profile does not completely overlap with the output dataset, this will be different from your input magnitude.

[9] If you want to add profiles *and* WCS over the background image (to produce your output), you need more than one command: 1. You should use `--mergedsize` in MakeProfiles to manually set the output number of pixels equal to your desired background image (so the background is zero). In this mode, you can use these WCS-related options to define the WCS. 2. Then use Arithmetic to add the pixels of your mock image to the background (see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403.

- The number of pixels (in the oversampled image) which used Monte Carlo integration and not the central pixel value, see Section 8.1.1.5 [Sampling from a function], page 656.
- The fraction of flux in the Monte Carlo integrated pixels.
- If an individual image was created, this column will have a value of `1`, otherwise it will have a value of `0`.

9 High-level calculations

After the reduction of raw data (for example, with the programs in Chapter 6 [Data manipulation], page 389) you will have reduced images/data ready for processing/analyzing (for example, with the programs in Chapter 7 [Data analysis], page 517). But the processed/analyzed data (or catalogs) are still not enough to derive any scientific result. Even higher-level analysis is still needed to convert the observed magnitudes, sizes or volumes into physical quantities that we associate with each catalog entry or detected object which is the purpose of the tools in this section.

9.1 CosmicCalculator

To derive higher-level information regarding our sources in extra-galactic astronomy, cosmological calculations are necessary. In Gnuastro, CosmicCalculator is in charge of such calculations. Before discussing how CosmicCalculator is called and operates (in Section 9.1.3 [Invoking CosmicCalculator], page 682), it is important to provide a rough but mostly self sufficient review of the basics and the equations used in the analysis. In Section 9.1.1 [Distance on a 2D curved space], page 677, the basic idea of understanding distances in a curved and expanding 2D universe (which we can visualize) are reviewed. Having solidified the concepts there, in Section 9.1.2 [Extending distance concepts to 3D], page 682, the formalism is extended to the 3D universe we are trying to study in our research.

The focus here is obtaining a physical insight into these equations (mainly for the use in real observational studies). There are many books thoroughly deriving and proving all the equations with all possible initial conditions and assumptions for any abstract universe, interested readers can study those books.

9.1.1 Distance on a 2D curved space

The observations to date (for example, the Planck 2015 results), have not measured[1] the presence of significant curvature in the universe. However to be generic (and allow its measurement if it does in fact exist), it is very important to create a framework that allows non-zero uniform curvature. However, this section is not intended to be a fully thorough and mathematically complete derivation of these concepts. There are many references available for such reviews that go deep into the abstract mathematical proofs. The emphasis here is on visualization of the concepts for a beginner.

As 3D beings, it is difficult for us to mentally create (visualize) a picture of the curvature of a 3D volume. Hence, here we will assume a 2D surface/space and discuss distances on that 2D surface when it is flat and when it is curved. Once the concepts have been created/visualized here, we will extend them, in Section 9.1.2 [Extending distance concepts to 3D], page 682, to a real 3D spatial *slice* of the Universe we live in and hope to study.

To be more understandable (actively discuss from an observer's point of view) let's assume there's an imaginary 2D creature living on the 2D space (which *might* be curved in 3D). Here, we will be working with this creature in its efforts to analyze distances in its 2D universe. The start of the analysis might seem too mundane, but since it is difficult to

[1] The observations are interpreted under the assumption of uniform curvature. For a relativistic alternative to dark energy (and maybe also some part of dark matter), non-uniform curvature may be even be more critical, but that is beyond the scope of this brief explanation.

imagine a 3D curved space, it is important to review all the very basic concepts thoroughly for an easy transition to a universe that is more difficult to visualize (a curved 3D space embedded in 4D).

To start, let's assume a static (not expanding or shrinking), flat 2D surface similar to Figure 9.1 and that the 2D creature is observing its universe from point A. One of the most basic ways to parameterize this space is through the Cartesian coordinates (x, y). In Figure 9.1, the basic axes of these two coordinates are plotted. An infinitesimal change in the direction of each axis is written as dx and dy. For each point, the infinitesimal changes are parallel with the respective axes and are not shown for clarity. Another very useful way of parameterizing this space is through polar coordinates. For each point, we define a radius (r) and angle (ϕ) from a fixed (but arbitrary) reference axis. In Figure 9.1 the infinitesimal changes for each polar coordinate are plotted for a random point and a dashed circle is shown for all points with the same radius.

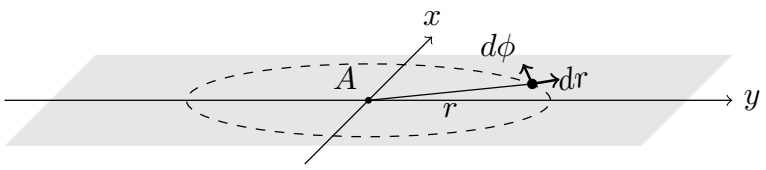


Figure 9.1: Two dimensional Cartesian and polar coordinates on a flat plane.

Assuming an object is placed at a certain position, which can be parameterized as (x, y), or (r, ϕ), a general infinitesimal change in its position will place it in the coordinates $(x+dx, y+dy)$, or $(r+dr, \phi+d\phi)$. The distance (on the flat 2D surface) that is covered by this infinitesimal change in the static universe (ds_s, the subscript signifies the static nature of this universe) can be written as:

$$ds_s^2 = dx^2 + dy^2 = dr^2 + r^2 d\phi^2$$

The main question is this: how can the 2D creature incorporate the (possible) curvature in its universe when it's calculating distances? The universe that it lives in might equally be a curved surface like Figure 9.2. The answer to this question but for a 3D being (us) is the whole purpose to this discussion. Here, we want to give the 2D creature (and later, ourselves) the tools to measure distances if the space (that hosts the objects) is curved.

Figure 9.2 assumes a spherical shell with radius R as the curved 2D plane for simplicity. The 2D plane is tangent to the spherical shell and only touches it at A. This idea will be generalized later. The first step in measuring the distance in a curved space is to imagine a third dimension along the z axis as shown in Figure 9.2. For simplicity, the z axis is assumed to pass through the center of the spherical shell. Our imaginary 2D creature cannot visualize the third dimension or a curved 2D surface within it, so the remainder of this discussion is purely abstract for it (similar to us having difficulty in visualizing a 3D curved space in 4D). But since we are 3D creatures, we have the advantage of visualizing the following steps. Fortunately the 2D creature is already familiar with our mathematical constructs, so it can follow our reasoning.

With the third axis added, a generic infinitesimal change over *the full* 3D space corresponds to the distance:

$$ds_s^2 = dx^2 + dy^2 + dz^2 = dr^2 + r^2 d\phi^2 + dz^2.$$

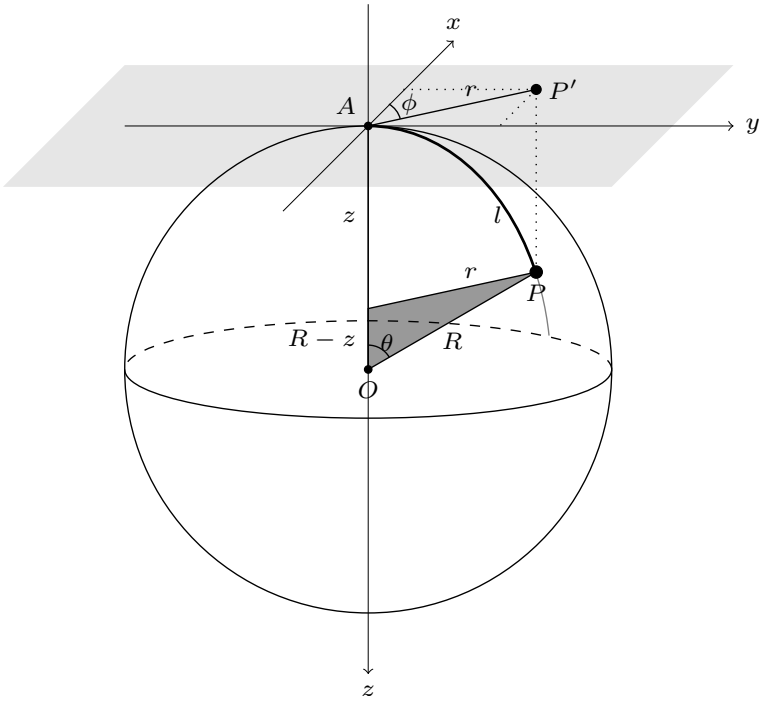


Figure 9.2: 2D spherical shell (centered on O) and flat plane (light gray) tangent to it at point A.

It is very important to recognize that this change of distance is for *any* point in the 3D space, not just those changes that occur on the 2D spherical shell of Figure 9.2. Recall that our 2D friend can only do measurements on the 2D surfaces, not the full 3D space. So we have to constrain this general change to any change on the 2D spherical shell. To do that, let's look at the arbitrary point P on the 2D spherical shell. Its image (P') on the flat plain is also displayed. From the dark gray triangle, we see that

$$\sin\theta = \frac{r}{R}, \quad \cos\theta = \frac{R-z}{R}.$$

These relations allow the 2D creature to find the value of z (an abstract dimension for it) as a function of r (distance on a flat 2D plane, which it can visualize) and thus eliminate z. From $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$, we get $z^2 - 2Rz + r^2 = 0$ and solving for z, we find:

$$z = R\left(1 \pm \sqrt{1 - \frac{r^2}{R^2}}\right).$$

The $\pm$ can be understood from Figure 9.2: For each r, there are two points on the sphere, one in the upper hemisphere and one in the lower hemisphere. An infinitesimal change in r, will create the following infinitesimal change in z:

$$dz = \frac{\mp r}{R}\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-r^2/R^2}}\right)dr.$$

Using the positive signed equation instead of dz in the ds_s^2 equation above, we get:

$$ds_s^2 = \frac{dr^2}{1-r^2/R^2} + r^2 d\phi^2.$$

The derivation above was done for a spherical shell of radius R as a curved 2D surface. To generalize it to any surface, we can define $K = 1/R^2$ as the curvature parameter. Then the general infinitesimal change in a static universe can be written as:

$$ds_s^2 = \frac{dr^2}{1-Kr^2} + r^2 d\phi^2.$$

Therefore, when $K > 0$ (and curvature is the same everywhere), we have a finite universe, where r cannot become larger than R as in Figure 9.2. When $K = 0$, we have a flat plane (Figure 9.1) and a negative K will correspond to an imaginary R. The latter two cases may be infinite in area (which is not a simple concept, but mathematically can be modeled with r extending infinitely), or finite-area (like a cylinder is flat everywhere with $ds_s^2 = dx^2 + dy^2$, but finite in one direction in size).

A very important issue that can be discussed now (while we are still in 2D and can actually visualize things) is that $\overrightarrow{r}$ is tangent to the curved space at the observer's position. In other words, it is on the gray flat surface of Figure 9.2, even when the universe if curved: $\overrightarrow{r} = P' - A$. Therefore for the point P on a curved space, the raw coordinate r is the distance to P', not P. The distance to the point P (at a specific coordinate r on the flat plane) over the curved surface (thick line in Figure 9.2) is called the *proper distance* and is displayed with l. For the specific example of Figure 9.2, the proper distance can be calculated with: $l = R\theta$ (θ is in radians). Using the $\sin\theta$ relation found above, we can find l as a function of r:

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{r}{R}\right) \quad \rightarrow \quad l(r) = R\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{r}{R}\right)$$

R is just an arbitrary constant and can be directly found from K, so for cleaner equations, it is common practice to set $R = 1$, which gives: $l(r) = \sin^{-1} r$. Also note that when $R = 1$, then $l = \theta$. Generally, depending on the curvature, in a *static* universe the proper distance can be written as a function of the coordinate r as (from now on we are assuming $R = 1$):

$$l(r) = \sin^{-1}(r) \quad (K > 0), \qquad l(r) = r \quad (K = 0), \qquad l(r) = \sinh^{-1}(r) \quad (K < 0).$$

With l, the infinitesimal change of distance can be written in a more simpler and abstract form of

$$ds_s^2 = dl^2 + r^2 d\phi^2.$$

Until now, we had assumed a static universe (not changing with time). But our observations so far appear to indicate that the universe is expanding (it is not static). Since there is no reason to expect the observed expansion is unique to our particular position of the universe, we expect the universe to be expanding at all points with the same rate at the same time. Therefore, to add a time dependence to our distance measurements, we can include a multiplicative scaling factor, which is a function of time: $a(t)$. The functional form of $a(t)$ comes from the cosmology, the physics we assume for it: general relativity, and the choice of whether the universe is uniform ('homogeneous') in density and curvature or inhomogeneous. In this section, the functional form of $a(t)$ is irrelevant, so we can avoid these issues.

With this scaling factor, the proper distance will also depend on time. As the universe expands, the distance between two given points will shift to larger values. We thus define a distance measure, or coordinate, that is independent of time and thus does not 'move'. We call it the *comoving distance* and display with χ such that: $l(r,t) = \chi(r)a(t)$. We have therefore, shifted the r dependence of the proper distance we derived above for a static universe to the comoving distance:

$$\chi(r) = \sin^{-1}(r) \quad (K > 0), \qquad \chi(r) = r \quad (K = 0), \qquad \chi(r) = \sinh^{-1}(r) \quad (K < 0).$$

Therefore, $\chi(r)$ is the proper distance to an object at a specific reference time: $t = t_r$ (the r subscript signifies "reference") when $a(t_r) = 1$. At any arbitrary moment ($t \neq t_r$) before or after t_r, the proper distance to the object can be scaled with $a(t)$.

Measuring the change of distance in a time-dependent (expanding) universe only makes sense if we can add up space and time[2]. But we can only add bits of space and time together if we measure them in the same units: with a conversion constant (similar to how 1000 is used to convert a kilometer into meters). Experimentally, we find strong support for the hypothesis that this conversion constant is the speed of light (or gravitational waves[3]) in a vacuum. This speed is postulated to be constant[4] and is almost always written as c. We can thus parameterize the change in distance on an expanding 2D surface as

$$ds^2 = c^2 dt^2 - a^2(t) ds_s^2 = c^2 dt^2 - a^2(t)(d\chi^2 + r^2 d\phi^2).$$

[2] In other words, making our space-time consistent with Minkowski space-time geometry. In this geometry, different observers at a given point (event) in space-time split up space-time into 'space' and 'time' in different ways, just like people at the same spatial position can make different choices of splitting up a map into 'left–right' and 'up–down'. This model is well supported by twentieth and twenty-first century observations.

[3] The speed of gravitational waves was recently found to be very similar to that of light in vacuum, see LIGO Collaboration 2017 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1710.05834`).

[4] In *natural units*, speed is measured in units of the speed of light in vacuum.

9.1.2 Extending distance concepts to 3D

The concepts of Section 9.1.1 [Distance on a 2D curved space], page 677, are here extended to a 3D space that *might* be curved. We can start with the generic infinitesimal distance in a static 3D universe, but this time in spherical coordinates instead of polar coordinates. θ is shown in Figure 9.2, but here we are 3D beings, positioned on O (the center of the sphere) and the point O is tangent to a 4D-sphere. In our 3D space, a generic infinitesimal displacement will correspond to the following distance in spherical coordinates:

$$ds_s^2 = dx^2 + dy^2 + dz^2 = dr^2 + r^2(d\theta^2 + \sin^2\theta d\phi^2).$$

Like the 2D creature before, we now have to assume an abstract dimension which we cannot visualize easily. Let's call the fourth dimension w, then the general change in coordinates in the *full* four dimensional space will be:

$$ds_s^2 = dr^2 + r^2(d\theta^2 + \sin^2\theta d\phi^2) + dw^2.$$

But we can only work on a 3D curved space, so following exactly the same steps and conventions as our 2D friend, we arrive at:

$$ds_s^2 = \frac{dr^2}{1 - Kr^2} + r^2(d\theta^2 + \sin^2\theta d\phi^2).$$

In a non-static universe (with a scale factor a(t)), the distance can be written as:

$$ds^2 = c^2dt^2 - a^2(t)[d\chi^2 + r^2(d\theta^2 + \sin^2\theta d\phi^2)].$$

9.1.3 Invoking CosmicCalculator

CosmicCalculator will calculate cosmological variables based on the input parameters. The executable name is `astcosmiccal` with the following general template

```
$ astcosmiccal [OPTION...] ...
```

One line examples:

```
## Print basic cosmological properties at redshift 2.5:
$ astcosmiccal -z2.5

## Only print Comoving volume over 4pi stradian to z (Mpc^3):
$ astcosmiccal --redshift=0.8 --volume

## Print redshift and age of universe when Lyman-alpha line is
## at 6000 angstrom (another way to specify redshift).
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=Ly-alpha,6000 --age

## Print luminosity distance, angular diameter distance and age
```

```
## of universe in one row at redshift 0.4
$ astcosmiccal -z0.4 -LAg

## Assume Lambda and matter density of 0.7 and 0.3 and print
## basic cosmological parameters for redshift 2.1:
$ astcosmiccal -l0.7 -m0.3 -z2.1

## Print wavelength of all pre-defined spectral lines when
## Lyman-alpha is observed at 4000 Angstroms.
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=Ly-alpha,4000 --listlinesatz
```

The input parameters (current matter density, etc.) can be given as command-line options or in the configuration files, see Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270. For a definition of the different parameters, please see the sections prior to this. If no redshift is given, CosmicCalculator will just print its input parameters and abort. For a full list of the input options, please see Section 9.1.3.1 [CosmicCalculator input options], page 683.

Without any particular output requested (and only a given redshift), CosmicCalculator will print all basic cosmological calculations (one per line) with some explanations before each. This can be good when you want a general feeling of the conditions at a specific redshift. Alternatively, if any specific calculation(s) are requested (its possible to call more than one), only the requested value(s) will be calculated and printed with one character space between them. In this case, no description or units will be printed. See Section 9.1.3.2 [CosmicCalculator basic cosmology calculations], page 684, for the full list of these options along with some explanations how when/how they can be useful.

Another common operation in observational cosmology is dealing with spectral lines at different redshifts. CosmicCalculator also has features to help in such situations, please see Section 9.1.3.3 [CosmicCalculator spectral line calculations], page 688.

9.1.3.1 CosmicCalculator input options

The inputs to CosmicCalculator can be specified with the following options:

`-z FLT`
`--redshift=FLT`
: The redshift of interest. There are two other ways that you can specify the target redshift: 1) Spectral lines and their observed wavelengths, see `--obsline`. 2) Velocity, see `--velocity`. Hence this option cannot be called with `--obsline` or `--velocity`.

`-y FLT`
`--velocity=FLT`
: Input velocity in km/s. The given value will be converted to redshift internally, and used in any subsequent calculation. This option is thus an alternative to `--redshift` or `--obsline`, it cannot be used with them. The conversion will be done with the more general and accurate relativistic equation of $1 + z = \sqrt{(c+v)/(c-v)}$, not the simplified $z \approx v/c$.

`-H FLT`
`--H0=FLT`
: Current expansion rate (in km $\sec^{-1}$ Mpc^{-1}).

`-l FLT`
`--olambda=FLT`
Cosmological constant density divided by the critical density in the current Universe ($\Omega_{\Lambda,0}$).

`-m FLT`
`--omatter=FLT`
Matter (including massive neutrinos) density divided by the critical density in the current Universe ($\Omega_{m,0}$).

`-r FLT`
`--oradiation=FLT`
Radiation density divided by the critical density in the current Universe ($\Omega_{r,0}$).

`-O STR/FLT,FLT`
`--obsline=STR/FLT,FLT`
Find the redshift to use in next steps based on the rest-frame and observed wavelengths of a line. This option is thus an alternative to `--redshift` or `--velocity`, it cannot be used with them.

The first argument identifies the line. It can be one of the standard names, or any rest-frame wavelength in Angstroms. The second argument is the observed wavelength of that line. For example, `--obsline=Ly-alpha,6000` is the same as `--obsline=1215.64,6000`. Wavelengths are assumed to be in Angstroms by default (other units can be selected with `--lineunit`, see Section 9.1.3.3 [CosmicCalculator spectral line calculations], page 688).

The list of pre-defined names for the lines in Gnuastro's database is available by running

```
$ astcosmiccal --listlines
```

9.1.3.2 CosmicCalculator basic cosmology calculations

By default, when no specific calculations are requested, CosmicCalculator will print a complete set of all its calculators (one line for each calculation, see Section 9.1.3 [Invoking CosmicCalculator], page 682). The full list of calculations can be useful when you do not want any specific value, but just a general view. In other contexts (for example, in a batch script or during a discussion), you know exactly what you want and do not want to be distracted by all the extra information.

You can use any number of the options described below in any order. When any of these options are requested, CosmicCalculator's output will just be a single line with a single space between the (possibly) multiple values. In the example below, only the tangential distance along one arc-second (in kpc), absolute magnitude conversion, and age of the universe at redshift 2 are printed (recall that you can merge short options together, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251).

```
$ astcosmiccal -z2 -sag
8.585046 44.819248 3.289979
```

Here is one example of using this feature in scripts: by adding the following two lines in a script to keep/use the comoving volume with varying redshifts:

```
z=3.12
```

```
vol=$(astcosmiccal --redshift=$z --volume)
```

In a script, this operation might be necessary for a large number of objects (several of galaxies in a catalog for example). So the fact that all the other default calculations are ignored will also help you get to your result faster.

If you are indeed dealing with many (for example, thousands) of redshifts, using CosmicCalculator is not the best/fastest solution. Because it has to go through all the configuration files and preparations for each invocation. To get the best efficiency (least overhead), we recommend using Gnuastro's cosmology library (see Section 12.3.35 [Cosmology library (`cosmology.h`)], page 938). CosmicCalculator also calls the library functions defined there for its calculations, so you get the same result with no overhead. Gnuastro also has libraries for easily reading tables into a C program, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816. Afterwards, you can easily build and run your C program for the particular processing with Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760.

If you just want to inspect the value of a variable visually, the description (which comes with units) might be more useful. In such cases, the following command might be better. The other calculations will also be done, but they are so fast that you will not notice on modern computers (the time it takes your eye to focus on the result is usually longer than the processing: a fraction of a second).

```
$ astcosmiccal --redshift=0.832 | grep volume
```

The full list of CosmicCalculator's specific calculations is present below in two groups: basic cosmology calculations and those related to spectral lines. In case you have forgot the units, you can use the `--help` option which has the units along with a short description.

`-e`
`--usedredshift`
: The redshift that was used in this run. In many cases this is the main input parameter to CosmicCalculator, but it is useful in others. For example, in combination with `--obsline` (where you give an observed and rest-frame wavelength and would like to know the redshift) or with `--velocity` (where you specify the velocity instead of redshift). Another example is when you run CosmicCalculator in a loop, while changing the redshift and you want to keep the redshift value with the resulting calculation.

`-Y`
`--usedvelocity`
: The velocity (in km/s) that was used in this run. The conversion from redshift will be done with the more general and accurate relativistic equation of $1+z=\sqrt{(c+v)/(c-v)}$, not the simplified $z\approx v/c$.

`-G`
`--agenow`
: The current age of the universe (given the input parameters) in Ga (Giga annum, or billion years).

`-C`
`--criticaldensitynow`
: The current critical density (given the input parameters) in grams per cubic centimeter (g/cm^3).

`-d`
`--properdistance`
: The proper distance (at the current time, i.e. in comoving units) to an object at the given redshift in Megaparsecs (Mpc). See Section 9.1.1 [Distance on a 2D curved space], page 677, for a description of the proper distance.

`-A`
`--angulardiamdist`
: The angular diameter distance to an object at a given redshift in Megaparsecs (Mpc).

`-s`
`--arcsectandist`
: The tangential distance covered by 1 arc-second at a given redshift in physical (not comoving) kilo-parsecs (kpc). This can be useful when trying to estimate the resolution or pixel scale of an instrument (usually in units of arc-seconds) required for a galaxy of a given physical size at a given redshift.

  For an arc subtending one degree at a high redshift z, multiplying the result by 3600 will, of course, give the (tangential) length of an arc subtending one degree, but it will still be in physical units. However, at one degree, the comoving separation for redshifts from 1 to 10 is about 100 Mpc give or take 50% or so for nearly ΛCDM models. In other words, this is the cosmic web scale, where comoving units usually make more sense than physical units, e.g. for large-scale structure correlation functions or the baryon acoustic oscillation scale. If comoving units are appropriate, as will typically be the case for the degree scale, you must also multiply by $(1+z)$.

`-L`
`--luminositydist`
: The luminosity distance to object at given redshift in Megaparsecs (Mpc).

`-u`
`--distancemodulus`
: The bolometric (across the full electromagnetic spectrum) distance modulus (DM) at the given redshift assuming no intermediate absorption. The distance modulus allows the conversion of observed (m, distance dependent) to absolute (M, independent of distance; or the same distance of 10 parsecs for all objects) magnitudes. In other words, $DM = m - M$, or $M = m - DM$. From the absolute magnitude, we can derive the luminosity of the source; see `mag-to-luminosity` in Section 6.2.4.5 [Unit conversion operators], page 420.

  The two conditions above are very important to remember when using this option:

  - In practice we do not observe the bolometric magnitude of an object: any instrument's hardware is limited to a certain wavelength range and incoming photons outside that range will not be measured. Therefore, as regards the filter and spectrum, the distance modulus can be used in the following two cases:
    - At smaller distances (where the filter on the observed spectrum covers approximately the same region on the rest frame spectrum).

- The observed bolometric magnitude of the source has been calculated (based on model-fitting, or combining data from many surveys to cover the whole electromagnetic spectrum) and is being used as input

At higher distances, it is important to account for "K-correction" because the filter's rest frame coverage over the rest frame spectrum of the source will decrease (compared to the filter's observed coverage in the source's observed spectrum). For details see Hogg et al. 2002 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/astro-ph/0210394`) and Blanton and Roweis 2007 (`https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2007AJ....133..734B`). A *simplified* correction (assuming a flat SED) to the distance modulus is available in the `--absmagconv` option below.

- Intermediate absorption (from the source to your telescope) can happen in multiple stages. For example, the Earth is located inside the Milky-Way which has an interstellar medium (ISM) that will absorb some of the flux coming from extra-galactic sources behind them. After measuring the magnitude of your source, it is therefore important to find the MilkyWay extinction in the direction of your source and add it to your source's flux. Inside Gnuastro, the Query program gives you direct access to the NED Extinction Calculator as described in Section 5.4.1 [Available databases], page 379.

`-a`
`--absmagconv`
Corrected distance modulus: accounting for the thinner width of the filter at higher redshift by subtracting $2.5\log(1+z)$ from the distance modulus (assuming a flat SED for the galaxy). However, no astronomical object has a flat SED across all wavelengths, so this should be taken as a zero-th order K-correction: just a crude statistical approximate that may under/over-estimate the actual value badly in special cases (for example when the omitted region has/misses a strong spectral feature). See the description of `--distancemodulus` for more.

`-g`
`--age` Age of the universe at given redshift in Ga (Giga-annum, or billion years).

`-b`
`--lookbacktime`
The look-back time to a given redshift in Ga (Giga annum, or billion years). The look-back time at a given redshift is defined as the current age of the universe (`--agenow`) minus the age of the universe at the given redshift.

`-c`
`--criticaldensity`
The critical density at given redshift in grams per centimeter-cube (g/cm^3).

`-v`
`--onlyvolume`
The comoving volume in cubic Megaparsecs (Mpc^3) through to the desired redshift, based on the input parameters.

9.1.3.3 CosmicCalculator spectral line calculations

At different redshifts, observed spectral lines are shifted compared to their rest frame wavelengths with this simple relation: $\lambda_{obs} = \lambda_{rest}(1 + z)$. Although this relation is very simple and can be done for one line in the head (or a simple calculator!), it slowly becomes tiring when dealing with a lot of lines or redshifts, or some precision is necessary. The options in this section are thus provided to greatly simplify usage of this simple equation, and also helping by storing a list of pre-defined spectral line wavelengths.

For example, if you want to know the wavelength of the $H\alpha$ line (at 6562.8 Angstroms in rest frame), when $Ly\alpha$ is at 8000 Angstroms, you can call CosmicCalculator like the first example below. And if you want the wavelength of all pre-defined spectral lines at this redshift, you can use the second command.

```
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=lyalpha,8000 --lineatz=halpha
$ astcosmiccal --obsline=lyalpha,8000 --listlinesatz
```

Bellow you can see the printed/output calculations of CosmicCalculator that are related to spectral lines. Note that `--obsline` is an input parameter, so it is discussed (with the full list of known lines) in Section 9.1.3.1 [CosmicCalculator input options], page 683.

`--listlines`

List the pre-defined rest frame spectral line wavelengths and their names on standard output, then abort CosmicCalculator. The units of the displayed wavelengths for each line can be determined with `--lineunit` (see below).

When this option is given, other operations on the command-line will be ignored. This is convenient when you forget the specific name of the spectral line used within Gnuastro, or when you forget the exact wavelength of a certain line.

These names can be used with the options that deal with spectral lines, for example, `--obsline` and `--lineatz` (Section 9.1.3.2 [CosmicCalculator basic cosmology calculations], page 684).

The format of the output list is a two-column table, with Gnuastro's text table format (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287). Therefore, if you are only looking for lines in a specific range, you can pipe the output into Gnuastro's table program and use its `--range` option on the `wavelength` (first) column. For example, if you only want to see the lines between 4000 and 6000 Angstroms, you can run this command:

```
$ astcosmiccal --listlines \
               | asttable --range=wavelength,4000,6000
```

And if you want to use the list later and have it as a table in a file, you can easily add the `--output` (or `-o`) option to the `asttable` command, and specify the filename, for example, `--output=lines.fits` or `--output=lines.txt`.

`--listlinesatz`

Similar to `--listlines` (above), but the printed wavelength is not in the rest frame, but redshifted to the given redshift. Recall that the redshift can be specified by `--redshift` directly or by `--obsline`, see Section 9.1.3.1 [CosmicCalculator input options], page 683. For an example usage of this option, see Section 2.5.1 [Viewing spectra and redshifted lines], page 135.

`-i STR/FLT`
`--lineatz=STR/FLT`
: The wavelength of the specified line at the redshift given to CosmicCalculator. The line can be specified either by its name or directly as a number (its wavelength). The units of the displayed wavelengths for each line can be determined with `--lineunit` (see below).

  To get the list of pre-defined names for the lines and their wavelength, you can use the `--listlines` option, see Section 9.1.3.1 [CosmicCalculator input options], page 683. In the former case (when a name is given), the returned number is in units of Angstroms. In the latter (when a number is given), the returned value is the same units of the input number (assuming it is a wavelength).

`--lineunit=STR`
: The units to display line wavelengths above. It can take the following four values. If you need any other unit, please contact us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`.

  `m` Meter.

  `micro-m` Micrometer or $10^{-6}m$.

  `nano-m` Nanometer, or $10^{-9}m$.

  `angstrom` Angstrom or $10^{-10}m$; the default unit when this option is not called.

10 Installed scripts

Gnuastro's programs (introduced in previous chapters) are designed to be highly modular and thus contain lower-level operations on the data. However, in many contexts, certain higher-level are also shared between many contexts. For example, a sequence of calls to multiple Gnuastro programs, or a special way of running a program and treating the output. To facilitate such higher-level data analysis, Gnuastro also installs some scripts on your system with the (`astscript-`) prefix (in contrast to the other programs that only have the `ast` prefix).

Like all of Gnuastro's source code, these scripts are also heavily commented. They are written in portable shell scripts (command-line environments), which does not need compilation. Therefore, if you open the installed scripts in a text editor, you can actually read them[1]. For example, with this command (just replace `nano` with your favorite text editor, like `emacs` or `vim`):

```
$ nano $(which astscript-NAME)
```

Shell scripting is the same language that you use when typing on the command-line. Therefore shell scripting is much more widely known and used compared to C (the language of other Gnuastro programs). Because Gnuastro's installed scripts do higher-level operations, customizing these scripts for a special project will be more common than the programs.

These scripts also accept options and are in many ways similar to the programs (see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253) with some minor differences:

- Currently they do not accept configuration files themselves. However, the configuration files of the Gnuastro programs they call are indeed parsed and used by those programs.

  As a result, they do not have the following options: `--checkconfig`, `--config`, `--lastconfig`, `--onlyversion`, `--printparams`, `--setdirconf` and `--setusrconf`.
- They do not directly allocate any memory, so there is no `--minmapsize`.
- They do not have an independent `--usage` option: when called with `--usage`, they just recommend running `--help`.
- The output of `--help` is not configurable like the programs (see Section 4.3.2 [`--help`], page 274).
- The scripts will commonly use your installed shell and other basic command-line tools (for example, AWK or SED). Different systems have different versions and implementations of these basic tools (for example, GNU/Linux systems use GNU Bash, GNU AWK and GNU SED which are far more advanced and up to date then the minimalist AWK and SED of most other systems). Therefore, unexpected errors in these tools might come up when you run these scripts on non-GNU/Linux operating systems. If you do confront such strange errors, please submit a bug report so we fix it as soon as possible (see Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15).

[1] Gnuastro's installed programs (those only starting with `ast`) are not human-readable. They are written in C and need to be compiled before execution. Compilation optimizes the steps into the low-level hardware CPU instructions/language to improve efficiency. Because compiled programs do not need an interpreter like Bash on every run, they are much faster and more independent than scripts. To read the source code of the programs, look into the `bin/progname` directory of Gnuastro's source (Section 3.2 [Downloading the source], page 227). If you would like to read more about why C was chosen for the programs, please see Section 13.1 [Why C programming language?], page 958.

10.1 Sort FITS files by night

FITS images usually contain (several) keywords for preserving important dates. In particular, for lower-level data, this is usually the observation date and time (for example, stored in the `DATE-OBS` keyword value). When analyzing observed datasets, many calibration steps (like the dark, bias or flat-field), are commonly calculated on a per-observing-night basis.

However, the FITS standard's date format (`YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.ddd`) is based on the western (Gregorian) calendar. Dates that are stored in this format are complicated for automatic processing: a night starts in the final hours of one calendar day, and extends to the early hours of the next calendar day. As a result, to identify datasets from one night, we commonly need to search for two dates. However calendar peculiarities can make this identification very difficult. For example, when an observation is done on the night separating two months (like the night starting on March 31st and going into April 1st), or two years (like the night starting on December 31st 2018 and going into January 1st, 2019). To account for such situations, it is necessary to keep track of how many days are in a month, and leap years, etc.

Gnuastro's `astscript-sort-by-night` script is created to help in such important scenarios. It uses Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, to convert the FITS date format into the Unix epoch time (number of seconds since 00:00:00 of January 1st, 1970), using the `--datetosec` option. The Unix epoch time is a single number (integer, if not given in sub-second precision), enabling easy comparison and sorting of dates after January 1st, 1970.

You can use this script as a basis for making a much more highly customized sorting script. Here are some examples

- If you need to copy the files, but only need a single extension (not the whole file), you can add a step just before the making of the symbolic links, or copies, and change it to only copy a certain extension of the FITS file using the Fits program's `--copy` option, see Section 5.1.1.1 [HDU information and manipulation], page 301.
- If you need to classify the files with finer detail (for example, the purpose of the dataset), you can add a step just before the making of the symbolic links, or copies, to specify a file-name prefix based on other certain keyword values in the files. For example, when the FITS files have a keyword to specify if the dataset is a science, bias, or flat-field image. You can read it and to add a `sci-`, `bias-`, or `flat-` to the created file (after the `--prefix`) automatically.

  For example, let's assume the observing mode is stored in the hypothetical `MODE` keyword, which can have three values of `BIAS-IMAGE`, `SCIENCE-IMAGE` and `FLAT-EXP`. With the step below, you can generate a mode-prefix, and add it to the generated link/copy names (just correct the filename and extension of the first line to the script's variables):

```
modepref=$(astfits infile.fits -h1 \
                   | sed -e"s/'/ /g" \
                   | awk '$1=="MODE"{ \
                       if($3=="BIAS-IMAGE") print "bias-"; \
                       else if($3=="SCIENCE-IMAGE") print "sci-"; \
                       else if($3==FLAT-EXP) print "flat-"; \
                       else print $3, "NOT recognized"; exit 1}')
```

  Here is a description of it. We first use `astfits` to print all the keywords in extension `1` of `infile.fits`. In the FITS standard, string values (that we are assuming here) are

placed in single quotes (') which are annoying in this context/use-case. Therefore, we pipe the output of `astfits` into `sed` to remove all such quotes (substituting them with a blank space). The result is then piped to AWK for giving us the final mode-prefix: with `$1=="MODE"`, we ask AWK to only consider the line where the first column is `MODE`. There is an equal sign between the key name and value, so the value is the third column (`$3` in AWK). We thus use a simple `if-else` structure to look into this value and print our custom prefix based on it. The output of AWK is then stored in the `modepref` shell variable which you can add to the link/copy name.

With the solution above, the increment of the file counter for each night will be independent of the mode. If you want the counter to be mode-dependent, you can add a different counter for each mode and use that counter instead of the generic counter for each night (based on the value of `modepref`). But we will leave the implementation of this step to you as an exercise.

10.1.1 Invoking astscript-sort-by-night

This installed script will read a FITS date formatted value from the given keyword, and classify the input FITS files into individual nights. For more on installed scripts please see (see Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690). This script can be used with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-sort-by-night [OPTION...] FITS-files
```

One line examples:

```
## Use the DATE-OBS keyword
$ astscript-sort-by-night --key=DATE-OBS /path/to/data/*.fits

## Make links to the input files with the `img-' prefix
$ astscript-sort-by-night --link --prefix=img- /path/to/data/*.fits
```

This script will look into a HDU/extension (`--hdu`) for a keyword (`--key`) in the given FITS files and interpret the value as a date. The inputs will be separated by "night"s (11:00a.m to next day's 10:59:59a.m, spanning two calendar days, exact hour can be set with `--hour`).

The default output is a list of all the input files along with the following two columns: night number and file number in that night (sorted by time). With `--link` a symbolic link will be made (one for each input) that contains the night number, and number of file in that night (sorted by time), see the description of `--link` for more. When `--copy` is used instead of a link, a copy of the inputs will be made instead of symbolic link.

Below you can see one example where all the `target-*.fits` files in the `data` directory should be separated by observing night according to the `DATE-OBS` keyword value in their second extension (number `1`, recall that HDU counting starts from 0). You can see the output after the `ls` command.

```
$ astscript-sort-by-night -pimg- -h1 -kDATE-OBS data/target-*.fits
$ ls
img-n1-1.fits img-n1-2.fits img-n2-1.fits ...
```

The outputs can be placed in a different (already existing) directory by including that directory's name in the `--prefix` value, for example, `--prefix=sorted/img-` will put them all under the `sorted` directory.

This script can be configured like all Gnuastro's programs (through command-line options, see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253), with some minor differences that are described in Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690. The particular options to this script are listed below:

`-h STR`
`--hdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension to use in all the given FITS files. All of the given FITS files must have this extension.

`-k STR`
`--key=STR`
: The keyword name that contains the FITS date format to classify/sort by.

`-H FLT`
`--hour=FLT`
: The hour that defines the next "night". By default, all times before 11:00a.m are considered to belong to the previous calendar night. If a sub-hour value is necessary, it should be given in units of hours, for example, `--hour=9.5` corresponds to 9:30a.m.

> **Dealing with time zones:** The time that is recorded in `--key` may be in UTC (Universal Time Coordinate). However, the organization of the images taken during the night depends on the local time. It is possible to take this into account by setting the `--hour` option to the local time in UTC.
>
> For example, consider a set of images taken in Auckland (New Zealand, UTC+12) during different nights. If you want to classify these images by night, you have to know at which time (in UTC time) the Sun rises (or any other separator/definition of a different night). For example, if your observing night finishes before 9:00a.m in Auckland, you can use `--hour=21`. Because in Auckland the local time of 9:00 corresponds to 21:00 UTC.

`-l`
`--link`
: Create a symbolic link for each input FITS file. This option cannot be used with `--copy`. The link will have a standard name in the following format (variable parts are written in `CAPITAL` letters and described after it):

  `PnN-I.fits`

  `P`
  : This is the value given to `--prefix`. By default, its value is `./` (to store the links in the directory this script was run in). See the description of `--prefix` for more.

  `N`
  : This is the night-counter: starting from 1. `N` is just incremented by 1 for the next night, no matter how many nights (without any dataset) there are between two subsequent observing nights (its just an identifier for each night which you can easily map to different calendar nights).

  `I`
  : File counter in that night, sorted by time.

`-c`
`--copy` Make a copy of each input FITS file with the standard naming convention described in `--link`. With this option, instead of making a link, a copy is made. This option cannot be used with `--link`.

`-p STR`
`--prefix=STR`
Prefix to append before the night-identifier of each newly created link or copy. This option is thus only relevant with the `--copy` or `--link` options. See the description of `--link` for how it is used. For example, with `--prefix=img-`, all the created file names in the current directory will start with `img-`, making outputs like `img-n1-1.fits` or `img-n3-42.fits`.

`--prefix` can also be used to store the links/copies in another directory relative to the directory this script is being run (it must already exist). For example, `--prefix=/path/to/processing/img-` will put all the links/copies in the `/path/to/processing` directory, and the files (in that directory) will all start with `img-`.

`--stdintimeout=INT`
Number of micro-seconds to wait for standard input within this script. This does not correspond to general inputs into the script, inputs to the script should always be given as a file. However, within the script, pipes are often used to pass the output of one program to another. The value given to this option will be passed to those internal pipes. When running this script, if you confront an error, saying "No input!", you should be able to fix it by giving a larger number to this option (the default value is 10000000 micro-seconds or 10 seconds).

10.2 Generate radial profile

The 1 dimensional radial profile of an object is an important parameter in many aspects of astronomical image processing. For example, you want to study how the light of a galaxy is distributed as a function of the radial distance from the center. In other cases, the radial profile of a star can show the PSF (see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654). Gnuastro's `astscript-radial-profile` script is created to obtain such radial profiles for one object within an image. This script uses Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652, to generate elliptical apertures with the values equal to the distance from the center of the object and Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, for measuring the values over the apertures.

10.2.1 Invoking astscript-radial-profile

This installed script will measure the radial profile of an object within an image. A general overview of this script has been published in Infante-Sainz et al. 2024) (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.05303`); please cite it if this script proves useful in your research. For more on installed scripts please see (see Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690). This script can be used with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-radial-profile [OPTION...] FITS-file
```

Examples:

```
## Generate the radial profile with default options (assuming the
```

```
## object is in the center of the image, and using the mean).
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits

## Generate the radial profile centered at x=44 and y=37 (in pixels),
## up to  a radial distance of 19 pixels, use the mean value.
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits --center=44,37 --rmax=19

## Generate a 2D polar plot with the same properties as above:
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits --center=44,37 --rmax=19 \
                           --polar

## Generate the radial profile centered at x=44 and y=37 (in pixels),
## up to a radial distance of 100 pixels, compute sigma clipped
## mean and standard deviation (sigclip-mean and sigclip-std) using
## 5 sigma and 0.1 tolerance (default is 3 sigma and 0.2 tolerance).
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits --center=44,37 --rmax=100 \
                           --sigmaclip=5,0.1 \
                           --measure=sigclip-mean,sigclip-std

## Generate the radial profile centered at RA=20.53751695,
## DEC=0.9454292263, up to a radial distance of 88 pixels,
## axis ratio equal to 0.32, and position angle of 148 deg.
## Name the output table as `radial-profile.fits'
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits --mode=wcs \
                           --center=20.53751695,0.9454292263 \
                           --rmax=88 --axis-ratio=0.32 \
                           --position-angle=148 -oradial-profile.fits

## Generate the radial profile centered at RA=40.062675270971,
## DEC=-8.1511992735126, up to a radial distance of 20 pixels,
## and calculate the SNR using the INPUT-NO-SKY and SKY-STD
## extensions of the NoiseChisel output file.
$ astscript-radial-profile image_detected.fits -hINPUT-NO-SKY \
                           --mode=wcs --measure=sn \
                           --center=40.062675270971,-8.1511992735126 \
                           --rmax=20 --stdhdu=SKY_STD

## Generate the radial profile centered at RA=40.062675270971,
## DEC=-8.1511992735126, up to a radial distance of 20 pixels,
## and compute the SNR with a fixed value for std, std=10.
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits -h1 --mode=wcs --rmax=20 \
                           --center=40.062675270971,-8.1511992735126 \
                           --measure=sn --instd=10

## Generate the radial profile centered at X=1201, Y=1201 pixels, up
## to a radial distance of 20 pixels and compute the median and the
## SNR using the first extension of sky-std.fits as the dataset for std
```

```
## values.
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits -h1 --mode=img --rmax=20 \
                           --center=1201,1201 --measure=median,sn \
                           --instd=sky-std.fits
```

This installed script will read a FITS image and will use it as the basis for constructing the radial profile. The output radial profile is a table (FITS or plain-text) containing the radial distance from the center in the first row and the specified measurements in the other columns (mean, median, sigclip-mean, sigclip-median, etc.).

To measure the radial profile, this script needs to generate temporary files. All these temporary files will be created within the directory given to the `--tmpdir` option. When `--tmpdir` is not called, a temporary directory (with a name based on the inputs) will be created in the running directory. If the directory does not exist at run-time, this script will create it. After the output is created, this script will delete the directory by default, unless you call the `--keeptmp` option.

With the default options, the script will generate a circular radial profile using the mean value and centered at the center of the image. In order to have more flexibility, several options are available to configure for the desired radial profile. In this sense, you can change the center position, the maximum radius, the axis ratio and the position angle (elliptical apertures are considered), the operator for obtaining the profiles, and others (described below).

Debug your profile: to debug your results, especially close to the center of your object, you can see the radial distance associated to every pixel in your input. To do this, use `--keeptmp` to keep the temporary files, and compare `crop.fits` (crop of your input image centered on your desired coordinate) with `apertures.fits` (radial distance of each pixel).

Finding properties of your elliptical target: you want to measure the radial profile of a galaxy, but do not know its exact location, position angle or axis ratio. To obtain these values, you can use Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, to detect signal in the image, feed it to Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, to do basic segmentation, then use Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, to measure the center (`--x` and `--y` in MakeCatalog), axis ratio (`--axis-ratio`) and position angle (`--position-angle`).

Masking other sources: The image of an astronomical object will usually have many other sources with your main target. A crude solution is to use sigma-clipped measurements for the profile. However, sigma-clipped measurements can easily be biased when the number of sources at each radial distance increases at larger distances. Therefore a robust solution is to mask all other detections within the image. You can use Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552, and Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571, to detect and segment the sources, then set all pixels that do not belong to your target to blank using Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403, (in particular, its `where` operator).

`-h STR`
`--hdu=STR`
The HDU/extension of the input image to use.

`-o STR`
`--output=STR`
Filename of measured radial profile. It can be either a FITS table, or plain-text table (determined from your given file name suffix).

`-c FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
`--center=FLT[,FLT[,...]]`
The central position of the radial profile. This option is used for placing the center of the profiles. This parameter is used in Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389, to center and crop the region. The positions along each dimension must be separated by a comma (`,`) and fractions are also acceptable. The number of values given to this option must be the same as the dimensions of the input dataset. The units of the coordinates are read based on the value to the `--mode` option, see below.

`-O STR`
`--mode=STR`
Interpret the center position of the object (values given to `--center`) in image or WCS coordinates. This option thus accepts only two values: `img` or `wcs`. By default, it is `--mode=img`.

`-R FLT`
`--rmax=FLT`
Maximum radius for the radial profile (in pixels). By default, the radial profile will be computed up to a radial distance equal to the maximum radius that fits into the image (assuming circular shape).

`-P INT`
`--precision=INT`
The precision (number of digits after the decimal point) in resolving the radius. The default value is `--precision=0` (or `-P0`), and the value cannot be larger than `6`. A higher precision is primarily useful when the very central few pixels are important for you. A larger precision will over-resolve larger radial regions, causing scatter to significantly affect the measurements.

For example, in the command below, we will generate the radial profile of an imaginary source (at RA,DEC of 1.23,4.567) and check the output without setting a precision:

```
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits --center=1.23,4.567 \
            --mode=wcs --measure=mean,area --rmax=10 \
            --output=radial.fits --quiet
$ asttable radial.fits --head=10 -ffixed -p4
0.0000        0.0139        1
1.0000        0.0048        8
2.0000        0.0023        16
3.0000        0.0015        20
```

```
4.0000        0.0011        24
5.0000        0.0008        40
6.0000        0.0006        36
7.0000        0.0005        48
8.0000        0.0004        56
9.0000        0.0003        56
```

Let's repeat the command above, but use a precision of 3 to resolve more finer details of the radial profile, while only printing the top 10 rows of the profile:

```
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits --center=1.23,4.567 \
            --mode=wcs --measure=mean,area --rmax=10 \
            --precision=3 --output=radial.fits --quiet
$ asttable radial.fits --head=10 -ffixed -p4
0.0000        0.0139        1
1.0000        0.0056        4
1.4140        0.0040        4
2.0000        0.0027        4
2.2360        0.0024        8
2.8280        0.0018        4
3.0000        0.0017        4
3.1620        0.0016        8
3.6050        0.0013        8
4.0000        0.0011        4
```

Do you see how many more radii have been added? Between 1.0 and 2.0, we now have one extra radius, between 2.0 to 3.0, we have two new radii and so on. If you go to larger and larger radii, you will notice that they get resolved into many sub-components and the number of pixels used in each measurement will not be significant (you can already see that in the comparison above). This has two problems: 1. statistically, the scatter in larger radii (where the signal-to-noise ratio is usually low will make it hard to interpret the profile. 2. technically, the output table will have many more rows!

Use higher precision only for small radii: If you want to look at the whole profile (or the outer parts!), don't set the precision, the default mode is usually more than enough! But when you are targeting the very central few pixels (usually less than a pixel radius of 5), use a higher precision.

`-v INT`
`--oversample=INT`
Oversample the input dataset to the fraction given to this option. Therefore if you set `--rmax=20` for example, and `--oversample=5`, your output will have 100 rows (without `--oversample` it will only have 20 rows). Unless the object is heavily undersampled (the pixels are larger than the actual object), this method provides a much more accurate result and there are sufficient number of pixels to get the profile accurately.

Due to the discrete nature of pixels, if you use this option to oversample your profile, set `--precision=0`. Otherwise, your profile will become step-like (with several radii having a single value).

`-u INT`
`--undersample=INT`
Undersample the input dataset by the number given to this option. This option is for considering larger apertures than the original pixel size (aperture size is equal to 1 pixel). For example, if a radial profile computed by default has 100 different radii (apertures of 1 pixel width), by considering `--undersample=2` the radial profile will be computed over apertures of 2 pixels, so the final radial profile will have 50 different radii. This option is good to measure over a larger number of pixels to improve the measurement.

`-Q FLT`
`--axis-ratio=FLT`
The axis ratio of the apertures (minor axis divided by the major axis in a 2D ellipse). By default (when this option is not given), the radial profile will be circular (axis ratio of 1). This parameter is used as the option `--qcol` in the generation of the apertures with `astmkprof`.

`-p FLT`
`--position-angle=FLT`
The position angle (in degrees) of the profiles relative to the first FITS axis (horizontal when viewed in SAO DS9). By default, it is `--position-angle=0`, which means that the semi-major axis of the profiles will be parallel to the first FITS axis.

`-a FLT,FLT`
`--azimuth=FLT,FLT`
Limit the profile to the given azimuthal angle range (in degrees, from 0 to 360) from the major axis (defined by `--position-angle`) of each call to this option. The radial profile will therefore be created on a wedge-like shape, not the full circle/ellipse. The pixel containing the center of the profile will always be included in the profile (because it contains all azimuthal angles!).

If the first angle is *smaller* than the second (for example, `--azimuth=10,80`), the region between, or *inside*, the two angles will be used. Otherwise (for example, `--azimuth=80,10`), the region *outside* the two angles will be used. The latter case can be useful when you want to ignore part of the 2D shape (for example, due to a bright star that can be contaminating it).

This option can be called more than once; for example, `--azimuth=80,100 --azimuth=260,280`. In such cases, all given azimuthal ranges will be used. In the example above, two wedge-like shapes will be used to construct the profile: between angles of 80 to 100 degrees, and between 260 and 280 degrees.

You can see the shape of the region used by adding the `--keeptmp` option. Afterwards, you can view the `values.fits` and `apertures.fits` files of the temporary directory with a FITS image viewer like Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989. You can use Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705, to open them together in one instance of DS9, with both

frames matched and locked (for easy comparison in case you want to zoom-in or out). For example, see the commands below (based on your target object, just change the image name, center, position angle, etc.):

```
## Generate the radial profile
$ astscript-radial-profile image.fits --center=1.234,6.789 \
            --mode=wcs --rmax=50 --position-angle=20 \
            --axis-ratio=0.8 --azimuth=95,150 --keeptmp \
            --tmpdir=radial-tmp

## Visually check the values and apertures used.
$ astscript-fits-view radial-tmp/values.fits \
                      radial-tmp/apertures.fits
```

`-g`
`--polar` Generate a 2D polar-plot image in the second HDU of the output (called `POLAR-PLOT`). A polar plot is a projection of the original pixel grid into polar coordinates (where the horizontal axis is the azimuthal angle and the vertical axis is the radius).

By default it assumes the full azimuthal range (from 0 to 360 degrees); if a narrower azimuthal range is desired, use `--azimuth` (for example `--azimuth=30,50` to only generate the polar plot between 30 and 50 degrees of azimuth).

The output image contains WCS information to map the pixel coordinates into the polar coordinates. This is especially useful when the azimuthal range is not the full range: the first pixel in the horizontal axis is not 0 degrees.

Currently, the polar plot cannot to be used with `--oversample` and `--undersample` options (please get in touch with us if you need it). Until it is implemented, you can use the `--scale` option of Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501, to do the oversampling of the input image yourself and generate the polar plot from that. A comprehensive overview of this option has been published in Eskandarlou et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2406.14619`). If this script yields useful results in your research, please be sure to cite it.

`-m STR`
`--measure=STR`
The operator for measuring the values over each radial distance. The values given to this option will be directly passed to Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582. As a consequence, all MakeCatalog measurements like the magnitude, magnitude error, median, mean, signal-to-noise ratio (S/N), std, surface brightness, sigclip-mean, and sigclip-number can be used here. For a full list of MakeCatalog's measurements, please run `astmkcatalog --help` or see Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594. Multiple values can be given to this option, each separated by a comma. This option can also be called multiple times.

Masking background/foreground objects: For crude rejection of outliers, you can use sigma-clipping using MakeCatalog measurements like `--sigclip-mean` or `--sigclip-mean-sb` (see Section 7.4.4 [MakeCatalog measurements on each label], page 594). To properly mask the effect of background/foreground objects from your target object's radial profile, you can use `astscript-psf-stamp` script, see Section 10.8.3 [Invoking astscript-psf-stamp], page 730, and feed it the output of Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571. This script will mask unwanted objects from the image that is later used to measure the radial profile.

Some measurements by MakeCatalog require a per-pixel sky standard deviation (for example, magnitude error or S/N). Therefore when asking for such measurements, use the `--instd` option (described below) to specify the per-pixel sky standard deviation over each pixel. For other measurements like the magnitude or surface brightness, MakeCatalog will need a Zero point, which you can set with the `--zeropoint` option.

For example, by setting `--measure=mean,sigclip-mean --measure=median`, the mean, sigma-clipped mean and median values will be computed. The output radial profile will have 4 columns in this order: radial distance, mean, sigma-clipped and median. By default (when this option is not given), the mean of all pixels at each radial position will be computed.

`-s FLT,FLT`
`--sigmaclip=FLT,FLT`
Sigma clipping parameters: only relevant if sigma-clipping operators are requested by `--measure`. For more on sigma-clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200. If given, the value to this option is directly passed to the `--sigmaclip` option of Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, see Section 7.4.8.1 [MakeCatalog inputs and basic settings], page 625. By default (when this option is not given), the default values within MakeCatalog will be used. To see the default value of this option in MakeCatalog, you can run this command:

```
$ astmkcatalog -P | grep " sigmaclip "
```

`-z FLT`
`--zeropoint=FLT`
The Zero point of the input dataset. This is necessary when you request measurements like magnitude, or surface brightness.

`-Z`
`--zeroisnotblank`
Account for zero-valued pixels in the profile. By default, such pixels are not considered (when this script crops the necessary region of the image before generating the profile). The long format of this option is identical to a similarly named option in Crop (see Section 6.1.4 [Invoking Crop], page 393). When this option is called, it is passed directly to Crop, therefore the zero-valued pixels are not considered as blank and used in the profile creation.

`-i FLT/STR`
`--instd=FLT/STR`
Sky standard deviation as a single number (FLT) or as the filename (STR) containing the image with the std value for each pixel (the HDU within the file should be given to the `--stdhdu` option mentioned below). This is only necessary when the requested measurement (value given to `--measure`) by MakeCatalog needs the Standard deviation (for example, the signal-to-noise ratio or magnitude error). If your measurements do not require a standard deviation, it is best to ignore this option (because it will slow down the script).

`-d INT/STR`
`--stdhdu=INT/STR`
HDU/extension of the sky standard deviation image specified with `--instd`.

`-t STR`
`--tmpdir=STR`
Several intermediate files are necessary to obtain the radial profile. All of these temporal files are saved into a temporal directory. With this option, you can directly specify this directory. By default (when this option is not called), it will be built in the running directory and given an input-based name. If the directory does not exist at run-time, this script will create it. Once the radial profile has been obtained, this directory is removed. You can disable the deletion of the temporary directory with the `--keeptmp` option.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
Do not delete the temporary directory (see description of `--tmpdir` above). This option is useful for debugging. For example, to check that the profiles generated for obtaining the radial profile have the desired center, shape and orientation.

`--cite` Give BibTeX and acknowledgment information for citing this script within your paper. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

10.3 SAO DS9 region files from table

Once your desired catalog (containing the positions of some objects) is created (for example, with Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582, Section 7.5 [Match], page 637, or Section 5.3 [Table], page 344) it often happens that you want to see your selected objects on an image for a feeling of the spatial properties of your objects. For example, you want to see their positions relative to each other.

In this section we describe a simple installed script that is provided within Gnuastro for converting your given columns to an SAO DS9 region file to help in this process. SAO DS9[2] is one of the most common FITS image visualization tools in astronomy and is free software.

[2] `http://ds9.si.edu`

10.3.1 Invoking astscript-ds9-region

This installed script will read two positional columns within an input table and generate an SAO DS9 region file to visualize the position of the given objects over an image. For more on installed scripts please see (see Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690). This script can be used with the following general template:

```
## Use the RA and DEC columns of 'table.fits' for the region file.
$ astscript-ds9-region table.fits --column=RA,DEC \
                      --output=ds9.reg

## Select objects with a magnitude between 18 to 20, and generate the
## region file directly (through a pipe), each region with radius of
## 0.5 arcseconds.
$ asttable table.fits --range=MAG,18:20 --column=RA,DEC \
      | astscript-ds9-region --column=1,2 --radius=0.5

## With the first command, select objects with a magnitude of 25 to 26
## as red regions in 'bright.reg'. With the second command, select
## objects with a magnitude between 28 to 29 as a green region and
## show both.
$ asttable cat.fits --range=MAG_F160W,25:26 -cRA,DEC \
      | astscript-ds9-region -c1,2 --color=red -obright.reg
$ asttable cat.fits --range=MAG_F160W,28:29 -cRA,DEC \
      | astscript-ds9-region -c1,2 --color=green \
                    --command="ds9 image.fits -regions bright.reg"
```

The input can either be passed as a named file, or from standard input (a pipe). Only the `--column` option is mandatory (to specify the input table columns): two columns from the input table must be specified, either by name (recommended) or number. You can optionally also specify the region's radius, width and color of the regions with the `--radius`, `--width` and `--color` options, otherwise default values will be used for these (described under each option).

The created region file will be written into the file name given to `--output`. When `--output` is not called, the default name of `ds9.reg` will be used (in the running directory). If the file exists before calling this script, it will be overwritten, unless you pass the `--dontdelete` option. Optionally you can also use the `--command` option to give the full command that should be run to execute SAO DS9 (see example above and description below). In this mode, the created region file will be deleted once DS9 is closed (unless you pass the `--dontdelete` option). A full description of each option is given below.

`-h INT/STR`
`--hdu INT/STR`
: The HDU of the input table when a named FITS file is given as input. The HDU (or extension) can be either a name or number (counting from zero). For more on this option, see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

`-c STR,STR`
`--column=STR,STR`
: Identifiers of the two positional columns to use in the DS9 region file from the table. They can either be in WCS (RA and Dec) or image (pixel) coordinates. The mode can be specified with the `--mode` option, described below.

`-n STR`
`--namecol=STR`
: The column containing the name (or label) of each region. The type of the column (numeric or a character-based string) is irrelevant: you can use both types of columns as a name or label for the region. This feature is useful when you need to recognize each region with a certain ID or property (for example, magnitude or redshift).

`-m wcs|img`
`--mode=wcs|org`
: The coordinate system of the positional columns (can be either `--mode=wcs` and `--mode=img`). In the WCS mode, the values within the columns are interpreted to be RA and Dec. In the image mode, they are interpreted to be pixel X and Y positions. This option also affects the interpretation of the value given to `--radius`. When this option is not explicitly given, the columns are assumed to be in WCS mode.

`-C STR`
`--color=STR`
: The color to use for created regions. These will be directly interpreted by SAO DS9 when it wants to open the region file so it must be recognizable by SAO DS9. As of SAO DS9 8.2, the recognized color names are `black`, `white`, `red`, `green`, `blue`, `cyan`, `magenta` and `yellow`. The default color (when this option is not called) is `green`

`-w INT`
`--width=INT`
: The line width of the regions. These will be directly interpreted by SAO DS9 when it wants to open the region file so it must be recognizable by SAO DS9. The default value is `1`.

`-r FLT`
`--radius=FLT`
: The radius of all the regions. In WCS mode, the radius is assumed to be in arc-seconds, in image mode, it is in pixel units. If this option is not explicitly given, in WCS mode the default radius is 1 arc-seconds and in image mode it is 3 pixels.

`--dontdelete`
: If the output file name exists, abort the program and do not over-write the contents of the file. This option is thus good if you want to avoid accidentally writing over an important file. Also, do not delete the created region file when `--command` is given (by default, when `--command` is given, the created region file will be deleted after SAO DS9 closes).

`-o STR`
`--output=STR`
: Write the created SAO DS9 region file into the name given to this option. If not explicitly given on the command-line, a default name of `ds9.reg` will be used. If the file already exists, it will be over-written, you can avoid the deletion (or over-writing) of an existing file with the `--dontdelete`.

`--command="STR"`
: After creating the region file, run the string given to this option as a command-line command. The SAO DS9 region command will be appended to the end of the given command. Because the command will mostly likely contain white-space characters it is recommended to put the given string in double quotations.

  For example, let's assume `--command="ds9 image.fits -zscale"`. After making the region file (assuming it is called `ds9.reg`), the following command will be executed:

  ```
  ds9 image.fits -zscale -regions ds9.reg
  ```

  You can customize all aspects of SAO DS9 with its command-line options, therefore the value of this option can be as long and complicated as you like. For example, if you also want the image to fit into the window, this option will be: `--command="ds9 image.fits -zscale -zoom to fit"`. You can see the SAO DS9 command-line descriptions by clicking on the "Help" menu and selecting "Reference Manual". In the opened window, click on "Command Line Options".

10.4 Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT

The FITS definition allows for multiple extensions (or HDUs) inside one FITS file. Each HDU can have a completely independent dataset inside of it. One HDU can be a table, another can be an image and another can be another independent image. For example, each image HDU can be one CCD of a multi-CCD camera, or in processed images one can be the deep science image and the next can be its weight map, alternatively, one HDU can be an image, and another can be the catalog/table of objects within it.

The most common software for viewing FITS images is SAO DS9 (see Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989) and for plotting tables, TOPCAT is the most commonly used tool in astronomy (see Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990). After installing them (as described in the respective appendix linked in the previous sentence), you can open any number of FITS images or tables with DS9 or TOPCAT with the commands below:

```
$ ds9 image-a.fits image-b.fits
$ topcat table-a.fits table-b.fits
```

But usually the default mode is not enough. For example, in DS9, the window can be too small (not covering the height of your monitor), you probably want to match and lock multiple images, you have a favorite color map that you prefer to use, or you may want to open a multi-extension FITS file as a cube.

Using the simple commands above, you need to manually do all these in the DS9 window once it opens and this can take several tens of seconds (which is enough to distract you from what you wanted to inspect). For example, if you have a multi-extension file containing

2D images, one way to load and switch between each 2D extension is to take the following steps in the SAO DS9 window: "File"→"Open Other"→"Open Multi Ext Cube" and then choose the Multi extension FITS file in your computer's file structure.

The method above is a little tedious to do every time you want view a multi-extension FITS file. A different series of steps is also necessary if you the extensions are 3D data cubes (since they are already cubes, and should be opened as multi-frame). Furthermore, if you have multiple images and want to "match" and "lock" them (so when you zoom-in to one, all get zoomed-in) you will need several other sequence of menus and clicks.

Fortunately SAO DS9 also provides command-line options that you can use to specify a particular behavior before/after opening a file. One of those options is `-mecube` which opens a FITS image as a multi-extension data cube (treating each 2D extension as a slice in a 3D cube). This allows you to flip through the extensions easily while keeping all the settings similar. Just to avoid confusion, note that SAO DS9 does not follow the GNU style of separating long and short options as explained in Section 4.1.1 [Arguments and options], page 250. In the GNU style, this 'long' (multi-character) option should have been called like `--mecube`, but SAO DS9 follows its own conventions.

For example, try running `$ds9 -mecube foo.fits` to see the effect (for example, on the output of Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552). If the file has multiple extensions, a small window will also be opened along with the main DS9 window. This small window allows you to slide through the image extensions of `foo.fits`. If `foo.fits` only consists of one extension, then SAO DS9 will open as usual.

On the other hand, for visualizing the contents of tables (that are also commonly stored in the FITS format), you need to call a different software (most commonly, people use TOPCAT, see Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990). And to make things more inconvenient, by default both of these are only installed as command-line software, so while you are navigating in your GUI, you need to open a terminal there, and run these commands. All of the issues above are the founding purpose of the installed script that is introduced in Section 10.4.1 [Invoking astscript-fits-view], page 706.

10.4.1 Invoking astscript-fits-view

Given any number of FITS files, this script will either open SAO DS9 (for images or cubes) or TOPCAT (for tables) to visualize their contents in a graphic user interface (GUI). For more on installed scripts please see (see Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690). This script can be used with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-fits-view [OPTION] input.fits [input-b.fits ...]
```

One line examples

```
## Call TOPCAT to load all the input FITS tables.
$ astscript-fits-view table-*.fits

## Call SAO DS9 to open all the input FITS images.
$ astscript-fits-view image-*.fits
```

This script will use Gnuastro's Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, program to see if the file is a table or image. If the first input file contains an image HDU, then the sequence of files will be given to Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989. Otherwise, the input(s) will be given to Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990, to visualize (plot) as tables. When opening DS9 it will

also inspect the dimensionality of the first image HDU of the first input and open it slightly differently when the input is 2D or 3D:

2D DS9's `-mecube` will be used to open all the 2D extensions of each input file as a "Multi-extension cube". A "Cube" window will also be opened with DS9 that can be used to slide/flip through each extensions. When multiple files are given, each file will be in one "frame".

3D DS9's `-multiframe` option will be used to open all the extensions in a separate "frame" (since each input is already a 3D cube, the `-mecube` option can be confusing). To flip through the extensions (while keeping the slice fixed), click the "frame" button on the top row of buttons, then use the last four buttons of the bottom row (`"first"`, `"previous"`, `"next"` and `"last"`) to change between the extensions. If multiple files are given, there will be a separate frame for each HDU of each input (each HDU's name or number will be put in square brackets after its name).

Double-clicking on FITS file to open DS9 or TOPCAT: for those graphic user interface (GUI) that follow the freedesktop.org standards (including GNOME, KDS Plasma, or Xfce) Gnuastro installs a `fits-view.desktop` file to instruct your GUI to call this script for opening FITS files when you click on them. To activate this feature take the following steps:

1. Run the following command, while replacing `PREFIX`. If you do not know what to put in `PREFIX`, run `which astfits` on the command-line, and extract `PREFIX` from the output (the string before `/bin/astfits`). For more, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

```
ln -sf PREFIX/share/gnuastro/astscript-fits-view.desktop \
       ~/.local/share/applications/
```

2. Right-click on a FITS file, and choose these items in order (based on GNOME, may be different in KDE or Xfce): "Open with other application"→"View all applications"→"astscript-fits-view".

TOPCAT on 4K GUI: by default, the desktop file that you install for this script (to be able to double click on a FITS file and open it in DS9 or TOPCAT) doesn't include the `--topcat4k` option. If you want to have this option when double-clicking on a FITS file, open `~/.local/share/applications/astscript-fits-view.desktop` in your favorite text editor, comment the default `Exec` file and un-comment the line with this option.

This script takes the following options

`-h STR`
`--hdu=STR`

The HDU(s), or extension(s), of the input dataset(s) to display. The value can be the HDU name (a string) or number (the first HDU is counted from 0). If there are multiple inputs, this option needs to be called multiple times: the first input will be opened with the first call to this option, the second input with

the second call and etc. If you want to open the same HDU of all your inputs, you don't need to repeat this option, use `--globalhdu` instead.

`-g STR`
`--globalhdu=STR`
The HDU/extension name or number to use for all inputs. Note that HDU counting starts from 0. If `--hdu` called, it takes precedence over this.

`-p STR`
`--prefix=STR`
Directory to search for SAO DS9 or TOPCAT's executables (assumed to be `ds9` and `topcat`). If not called they will be assumed to be present in your `PATH` (see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235). If you do not have them already installed, their installation directories are available in Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989, and Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990, (they can be installed in non-system-wide locations that do not require administrator/root permissions).

`-s STR`
`--ds9scale=STR`
The string to give to DS9's `-scale` option. You can use this option to use a different scaling. The Fits-view script will place `-scale` before your given string when calling DS9. If you do not call this option, the default behavior is to cal DS9 with: `-scale mode zscale` or `--ds9scale="mode zscale"` when using this script.

The Fits-view script has the following aliases to simplify the calling of this option (and avoid the double-quotations and `mode` in the example above):

`zscale` or `--ds9scale=zscale` equivalent to `--ds9scale="mode zscale"`.

`minmax` or `--ds9scale=minmax` equivalent to `--ds9scale="mode minmax"`.

`-c=FLT,FLT`
`--ds9center=FLT,FLT`
The central coordinate for DS9's view of the FITS image after it opens. This is equivalent to the "Pan" button in DS9. The nature of the coordinates will be determined by the `--ds9mode` option that is described below.

`-r=STR[,STR[,STR]]`
`--ds9region=STR[,STR[,STR]]`
Name of DS9 region file(s) to load within the DS9 window once it opens. Any number of region files can be loaded with a single call to this command (separated by comas).

`-O img/wcs`
`--ds9mode=img/wcs`
The coordinate system (or mode) to interpret the values given to `--ds9center`. This can either be `img` (or DS9's "Image" coordinates) or `wcs` (or DS9's "wcs fk5" coordinates).

`-g INTxINT`
`--ds9geometry=INTxINT`
The initial DS9 window geometry (value to DS9's `-geometry` option).

`-m`
`--ds9colorbarmulti`
: Do not show a single color bar for all the loaded images. By default this script will call DS9 in a way that a single color bar is shown for any number of images. A single color bar is preferred for two reasons: 1) when there are a lot of images, they consume a large fraction of the display area. 2) the color-bars are locked by this script, so there is no difference between! With this option, you can have separate color bars under each image.

`-e STR`
`--ds9extra=STR`
: Any other custom options you would like to directly pass to DS9. This option can be called multiple times. The string(s) given to this option will be the final component of the DS9 command that this script generates. This allows you to over-ride/customize previously set options (for example in large scripts).

  Besides enabling all DS9 options that don't have a high-level wrapper in this script, you can also use this option to re-order the way the options of this script call DS9. This is because this script ignores the order that you have requested options and will always put the high-level functions in a fixed order. Before calling DS9, this script will print the command that it executes so you can see the order explicitly before DS9 opens.

  Since DS9 does not recognize a `=` between the option name and value, a `SPACE` is usually necessary. Therefore, be sure to put them in a single string within double quotes (so the spaces are preserved and passed to DS9 correctly). For example usage of this option within this manual, see Section 2.1.16 [Column statistics (color-magnitude diagram)], page 59, or Section 2.3.7 [Subtracting the PSF], page 118.

`-k`

`--topcat4k`
: Scale the TOPCAT window by 2 so it becomes easily usable on smaller 4K monitors (for example laptops). By default, TOPCAT will use the native pixels, which can become prohibitively small on such monitors.

10.5 Zero point estimation

Through the "zero point", we are able to give physical units to the pixel values of an image (often in units of "counts" or ADUs) and thus compare them with other images (as well as measurements that are done on them). The zero point is therefore an important calibration of pixel values (as astromerty is a calibration of the pixel positions). The fundamental concepts behind the zero point are described in Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585. We will therefore not go deeper into the basics here and stick to the practical aspects of it.

The purpose of Gnuastro's `astscript-zeropoint` script is to obtain the zero point of an image by considering another image (where the zero point is already known), or a catalog. In the The operation involves multiple lower-level programs in a standard series of steps. For example, when using another image, the script will take the following steps:

1. Download the Gaia catalog that overlaps with the input image using Gnuastro's Query program (see Section 5.4 [Query], page 378). This is done to determine the stars within the image[3].
2. Perform aperture photometry[4] with Section 8.1 [MakeProfiles], page 652, Section 7.4 [MakeCatalog], page 582. We will assume a zero point of 0 for the input image. If the reference is an image, then we should perform aperture photometry also in that image.
3. Match the two catalogs[5] with Section 7.5 [Match], page 637.
4. The difference between the input and reference magnitudes should be independent of the magnitude of the stars. This does not hold when the stars are saturated in one/both the images (giving us a bright-limit for the magnitude range to use) or for stars fainter than a certain magnitude, where the signal-to-noise ratio drops significantly in one/both images (giving us a faint limit for the magnitude range to use).
5. Since a zero point of 0 was used for the input image, the magnitude difference above (in the reliable magnitude range) is the zero point of the input image.

In the "Tutorials" chapter of this Gnuastro book, there are two tutorials dedicated to the usage of this script. The first uses an image as a reference (Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167) and the second uses a catalog (Section 2.7.2 [Zero point tutorial with reference catalog], page 175). For the full set of options an a detailed description of each, see Section 10.5.1 [Invoking astscript-zeropoint], page 710.

10.5.1 Invoking astscript-zeropoint

This installed script will calculate the zero point of an input image to calibrate it. A general overview of this script has been published in Eskandarlou et al. 2023 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2312.04263`); please cite it if this script proves useful in your research. The reference can be an image or catalog (which have been previously calibrated) The executable name is `astscript-zeropoint`, with the following general template:

```
## Using a reference image in four apertures.
$ astscript-zeropoint image.fits --hdu=1 \
                      --refimgs=ref-img1.fits,ref-img2.fits \
                      --refimgshdu=1,1 \
                      --refimgszp=22.5,22.5 \
                      --aperarcsec=1.5,2,2.5,3 \
                      --magnituderange=16,18 \
                      --output=output.fits

## Using a reference catalog
$ astscript-zeropoint image.fits --hdu=1 \
                      --refcat=cat.fits \
                      --refcathdu=1 \
                      --aperarcsec=1.5,2,2.5,3 \
                      --magnituderange=16,18 \
```

[3] Stars have an almost identical shape in the image (as opposed to galaxies for example), using confirmed stars will produce a more reliable result.

[4] For a complete tutorial on aperture photometry, see Section 2.1.17 [Aperture photometry], page 61.

[5] For a tutorial on matching catalogs, see Section 2.1.18 [Matching catalogs], page 62).

```
--output=output.fits
```

To learn more about the core concepts behind the zero point, please see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585. For a practical review of how to optimally use this script and ways to interpret its results, we have two tutorials: Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167, and Section 2.7.2 [Zero point tutorial with reference catalog], page 175.

To find the zero point of your input image, this script can use a reference image (that already has a zero point) or a reference catalog (that just has magnitudes). In any case, it is mandatory to identify at least one aperture for aperture photometry over the image (using `--aperarcsec`). If reference image(s) is(are) given, it is mandatory to specify its(their) zero point(s) using the `--refimgszp` option (it can take a separate value for each reference image). When a catalog is given, it should already contain the magnitudes of the object (you can specify which column to use).

This script will not estimate the zero point based on all the objects in the reference image or catalog. It will first query Gaia database and only select objects have a significant parallax (because Gaia's algorithms sometimes confuse galaxies and stars based on pure morphology). You can bypass this step (which needs internet connection and can only be used on real data, not simulations) using the `--starcat` option described in Section 10.5.1.2 [astscript-zeropoint options], page 712. This script will then match the catalog of stars (either through Gaia or `--starcat`) with the reference catalog and only use them. If the reference is an image, it will simply use the stars catalog to do aperture photometry.

By default, this script will estimate the number of available threads and run all independent steps in parallel on those threads. To control this behavior (and allow it to only run on a certain number of threads), you can use the `--numthreads` option.

During its operation, this script will build a temporary file in the running directory that will be deleted once it is finished. The `--tmpdir` option can be used to manually set the temporary directory's location at any location in your file system. The `--keeptmp` option can be used to stop the deletion of that directory (useful for when you want to debug the script or better understand what it does).

10.5.1.1 astscript-zeropoint output

The output will be a multi-extension FITS table. The first table in the output gives the zero point and its standard deviation for all the requested apertures. This gives you the ability to inspect them and select the best. The other table(s) give the exact measurements for each star that was used (if you use `--keepzpap`, it will be for all your apertures, if not, only for the aperture with the smallest standard deviation). For a full tutorial on how to interpret the output of this script, see Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167,

If you just want the estimated zero point with the least standard deviation, this script will write it as a FITS keyword in the first table of the output.

`ZPAPER` Read as "Zero Point APERture". This shows the aperture radius (in arcseconds) that had the smallest standard deviation in the estimated zero points.

`ZPVALUE` The zero point estimation for the aperture of `ZPAPER`.

`ZPSTD` The standard deviation of the zero point (for all the stars used, within the aperture of `ZPAPER`).

`ZPMAGMIN` The minimum (brightest) magnitude used to estimate the zero point.

`ZPMAGMAX` The maximum (faintest) magnitude used to estimate the zero point.

A simple way to see these keywords, or read the value of one is shown below. For more on viewing and manipulating FITS keywords, see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304.

```
## See all the keywords written by this script (that start with 'ZP')
$ astfits out.fits -h1 | grep ^ZP

## If you just want the zero point
$ astfits jplus-zeropoint.fits -h1 --keyvalue=ZPVALUE
```

10.5.1.2 astscript-zeropoint options

All the operating phases of the this script can be customized through the options below.

`-h STR/INT`
`--hdu=STR/INT`
: The HDU/extension of the input image to use.

`-o STR`
`--output=STR`
: The name of the output file produced by this script. See Section 10.5.1.1 [astscript-zeropoint output], page 711, for the format of its contents.

`-N INT`
`--numthreads=INT`
: The number of threads to use. By default this script will attempt to find the number of available threads at run-time and will use them.

`-a FLT,[FLT]`
`--aperarcsec=FLT,[FLT]`
: The radius/radii (in arc seconds) of aperture(s) used in aperture photometry of the input image. This option can take many values (to check different apertures and find the best for a more accurate zero point estimation). If a reference image is used, the same aperture radii will be used for aperture photometry there.

`-M FLT,FLT`
`--magnituderange=FLT,FLT`
: Range of the magnitude for finding the best aperture and zero point. Very bright stars get saturated and fainter stars are affected too much by noise. Therefore, it is important to limit the range of magnitudes used in estimating the zero point. A full tutorial is given in Section 2.7.1 [Zero point tutorial with reference image], page 167.

`-S STR`
`--starcat=STR`
: Name of catalog containing the RA and Dec of positions for aperture photometry in the input image and reference (catalog or image). If not given, the Gaia database will be queried for all stars that overlap with the input image (see Section 5.4.1 [Available databases], page 379).

This option is therefore useful in the following scenarios (among others):

- No internet connection.
- Many images having a major overlap in the sky, making it inefficient to query Gaia for every image separately: you can query the larger area (containing all the images) once, and directly give the downloaded table to all the separate runs of this script. Especially if the field is wide, the download time can be the slowest part of this script.
- In simulations (where you have a pre-defined list of stars).

Through the `--starcathdu`, `--starcatra` and `--starcatdec` options described below, you can specify the HDU, RA column and Dec Column within this file.

The reference image or catalog probably have many objects that are not stars. But it is only stars that have the same shape (the PSF) across the image[6]. Therefore

`--starcathdu=STR/INT`
: The HDU name or number in file given to `--starcat` (described above) that contains the table of RA and Dec positions for aperture photometry. If not given, it is assumed that the table is in HDU number 1 (counting from 0).

`--starcatra=STR/INT`
: The column name or number (in the table given to `--starcat`) that contains the Right Ascension.

`--starcatdec=STR/INT`
: The column name or number (in the table given to `--starcat`) that contains the Declination.

`-c STR`
`--refcat=STR`
: Reference catalog used to estimate the zero point of the input image. This option is mutually exclusive with (cannot be given at the same time as) `--refimgs`. This catalog should have RA, Dec and Magnitude of the stars (that match with Gaia or `--starcat`).

`-C STR/INT`
`--refcathdu=STR/INT`
: The HDU/extension of the reference catalog will be calculated.

`-r STR`
`--refcatra=STR`
: Right Ascension column name of the reference catalog.

`-d STR`
`--refcatdec=STR`
: Declination column name of the reference catalog.

`-m STR`
`--refcatmag=STR`
: Magnitude column name of the reference catalog.

[6] The PSF itself can vary across the field of view; but that is second-order for this analysis.

`-s FLT`
`--matchradius=FLT`
: Matching radius of stars (in arc seconds) and reference catalog in arc-seconds. By default it is 0.2 arc seconds.

`-R STR,[STR]`
`--refimgs=STR,[STR]`
: Reference image(s) for estimating the zero point. This option can take any number of separate file names, separated by a comma. The HDUs of each reference image should be given to the `refimgshdu` option. In case the images are in separate HDUs of the same file, you need to repeat the file name here. This option is mutually exclusive with (cannot be given at the same time as) `--refimgs`.

`-H STR/INT`
`--refimgshdu=STR/INT`
: HDU/Extension name of number of the reference files. The number of values given to this option should be the same as the number of reference image(s).

`-z FLT,[FLT]`
`--refimgszp=FLT,[FLT]`
: Zero point of the reference image(s). The number of values given to this should be the same as the number of names given to `--refimgs`.

`-K`
`--keepzpap`
: Keep the table of separate zero points found for each star for all apertures. By default, this table is only present for the aperture that had the least standard deviation in the estimated zero point.

`-t`
`--tmpdir` Directory to keep temporary files during the execution of the script. If the directory does not exist at run$-$time, this script will create it. By default, upon completion of the script, this directory will be deleted. However, if you would like to keep the intermediate files, you can use the `--keeptmp` option.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
: Its recommended to not remove the temporary directory (see description of `--keeptmp`). This option is useful for debugging and checking the outputs of internal steps.

`--mksrc=STR`
: Use a non-standard Makefile for the Makefile to call. This option is primarily useful during the development of this script and its Makefile, not for normal/regular user. So if you are not developing this script, you can safely ignore this option. When this option is given, the default installed Makefile will not be used: the file given to this option will be read by `make` (within the script) instead.

`--cite` Give BibTeX and acknowledgment information for citing this script within your paper. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

10.6 Pointing pattern simulation

Astronomical images are often composed of many single exposures. When the science topic does not depend on the time of observation (for example galaxy evolution), after completing the observations, we coadd those single exposures into one "deep" image. Designing the strategy to take those single exposures is therefore a very important aspect of planning your astronomical observation. There are many reasons for taking many short exposures instead of one long exposure:

- Modern astronomical telescopes have very high precision (with pixels that are often much smaller than an arc-second or 1/3600 degrees. However, the Earth is orbiting the Sun at a very high speed of roughly 15 degrees every hour! Keeping the (often very large!) telescopes in track with this fast moving sky is not easy; such that most cannot continue accurate tracking more than 10 minutes.
- For ground-based observations, the turbulence of the atmosphere changes very fast (on the scale of minutes!). So if you plan to observe at 10 minutes and at the start of your observations the seeing is good, it may happen that on the 8th minute, it becomes bad. This will affect the quality of your final exposure!
- When an exposure is taken, the instrument/environment imprint a lot of artifacts on it. One common example that we also see in normal cameras is vignetting (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vignetting`); where the center receives a larger fraction of the incoming light than the periphery). In order to characterize and remove such artifacts (which depend on many factors at the precision that we need in astronomy!), we need to take many exposures of our science target.
- By taking many exposures we can build a coadd that has a higher resolution; this is often done in under-sampled data, like those in the Hubble Space Telescope (HST) or James Webb Space Telescope (JWST).
- The scientific target can be larger than the field of view of your telescope and camera.

In the jargon of observational astronomers, each exposure is also known as a "dither" (literally/generally meaning "trembling" or "vibration"). This name was chosen because two exposures are not usually taken on exactly the same position of the sky (known as "pointing"). In order to improve all the item above, we often move the center of the field of view from one exposure to the next. In most cases this movement is small compared to the field of view, so most of the central part of the final coadd has a fixed depth, but the edges are shallower (conveying a sense of vibration). When the spacing between pointings is large, they are known as an "offset". A "pointing" is used to refer to either a dither or an offset.

For example see Figures 3 and 4 of Illingworth et al. 2013 (`https://arxiv.org/pdf/1305.1931.pdf`) which show the exposures that went into the XDF survey. The pointing pattern can also be large compared to the field of view, for example see Figure 1 of Trujillo et al. 2021 (`https://arxiv.org/pdf/2109.07478.pdf`), which show the pointing strategy for the LIGHTS survey. These types of images (where each pixel contains the number of exposures, or time, that were used in it) are known as exposure maps.

The pointing pattern therefore is strongly defined by the science case (high-level purpose of the observation) and your telescope's field of view. For example in the XDF survey is focused on very high redshift (most distant!) galaxies. These are very small objects and

within that small footprint (of just 1 arcmin) we have thousands of them. However, the LIGHTS survey is focused on the halos of large nearby galaxies (that can be more than 10 arcminutes wide!).

In Section 10.6.1 [Invoking astscript-pointing-simulate], page 716, of Gnuastro's Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690, is described in detail. This script is designed to simplify the process of selecting the best pointing pattern for your observation strategy. For a practical tutorial on using this script, see Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177.

10.6.1 Invoking astscript-pointing-simulate

This installed script will simulate a final coadded image from a certain pointing pattern (given as a table). A general overview of this script has been published in Akhlaghi (2023) (`https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2023RNAAS...7..211A`); please cite it if this script proves useful in your research. The executable name is `astscript-pointing-simulate`, with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-pointing-simulate [OPTION...] pointings.fits
```

Examples (for a tutorial, see Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177):

```
$ astscript-pointing-simulate pointing.fits --output=coadd.fits \
          --img=image.fits --center=10,10 --width=1,1
```

The default output of this script is a coadded image that results from placing the given image (given to `--img`) in the pointings of a pointing pattern. The Right Ascension (RA) and Declination (Dec) of each pointing is given in the main input catalog (`pointing.fits` in the example above). The center and width of the final coadd (both in degrees by default) should be specified using the `--width` option. Therefore, in order to successfully run, this script at least needs the following four inputs:

Pointing positions
: A table containing the RA and Dec of each pointing (the only input argument). The actual column names that contain them can be set with the `--racol` and `--deccol` options (see below).

An image
: This is used for its distortion and rotation, its pixel values and position on the sky will be ignored. The file containing the image should be given to the `--img` option.

Coadd's central coordinate
: The central RA and Dec of the finally produced coadd (given to the `--center` option).

Coadd's width
: The width (in degrees) of the final coadd (given to the `--width` option).

This script will ignore the pixel values of the reference image (given to `--img`) and the Reference coordinates (values to `CRVAL1` and `CRVAL2` in its WCS keywords). For each pointing pointing, this script will put the given RA and Dec into the `CRVAL1` and `CRVAL2` keywords of a copy of the input (not changing the input in anyway), and reset that input's pixel values to 1. The script will then warp the modified copy into the final pixel grid (correcting any rotation and distortions that are used from the original input). This process is done for all the pointing points in parallel. Finally, all the exposures in the pointing list

are coadded together to produce an exposure map (showing how many exposures go into each pixel of the final coadd.

Except for the table of pointing positions, the rest of the inputs and settings are configured through Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251, just note the restrictions in Chapter 10 [Installed scripts], page 690.

`-o STR`
`--output=STR`
: Name of the output. The output is an image of the requested size (`--width`) and position (`--center`) in the sky, but each pixel will contain the number of exposures that go into it after the pointing has been done. See description above for more.

`-h STR/INT`
`--hdu=STR/INT`
: The name or counter (counting from zero; from the FITS standard) of HDU containing the table of pointing pointing positions (the file name of this table is the main input argument to this script). For more, see the description of this option in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

`-i STR`
`--img=STR`
: The references image. The pixel values and central location in this image will be ignored by the script. The only relevant information within this script are the WCS properties (except for `CRVAL1` and `CRVAL2`, which connect it to a certain position on the sky) and image size. See the description above for more.

`-H STR/INT`
`--imghdu=STR/INT`
: The name or counter (counting from zero; from the FITS standard) of the HDU containing the reference image (file name should be given to the `--img` option). If not given, a default value of `1` is assumed; so this is not a mandatory option.

`-r STR/INT`
`--racol=STR/INT`
: The name or counter (counting from 1; from the FITS standard) of the column containing the Right Ascension (RA) of each pointing to be used in the pointing pattern. The file containing the table is given to this script as its only argument.

`-d STR/INT`
`--deccol=STR/INT`
: The name or counter (counting from 1; from the FITS standard) of the column containing the Declination (Dec) of each pointing to be used in the pointing pattern. The file containing the table is given to this script as its only argument.

`-C FLT,FLT`
`--center=FLT,FLT`
: The central RA and Declination of the final coadd in degrees.

`-w FLT,FLT`
`--width=FLT,FLT`
The width of the final coadd in degrees. If `--widthinpix` is given, the two values given to this option will be interpreted as degrees.

`--widthinpix`
Interpret the values given to `--width` as number of pixels along each dimension), and not as degrees.

`--ctype=STR,STR`
The projection of the output coadd (`CTYPEi` keyword in the FITS WCS standard). For more, see the description of the same option in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

`--hook-warp-before='STR'`
Command to run before warping each exposure into the output pixel grid. By default, the exposure is immediately warped to the final pixel grid, but in some scenarios it is necessary to do some operations on the exposure before warping (for example account for vignetting; see Section 2.8.6 [Accounting for non-exposed pixels], page 189). The warping of each exposure is done in parallel by default; therefore there are pre-defined variables that you should use for the input and output file names of your command:

`$EXPOSURE`
Input: name of file with the same size as the reference image with all pixels having a fixed value of 1. The WCS has also been corrected based on the pointing pattern.

`$TOWARP` Output: name of the expected output of your hook. If it is not created by your script, the script will complain and abort. This file will be given to Warp to be warped into the output pixel grid.

For an example of using hooks with an extended discussion, see Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177, and Section 2.8.6 [Accounting for non-exposed pixels], page 189.

To develop your command, you can use `--hook-warp-before='...; echo GOOD; exit 1'` (where `...` can be replaced by any command) and run the script on a single thread (with `--numthreads=1`) to produce a single file and simplify the checking that your desired operation works as expected. All the files will be within the temporary directory (see `--tmpdir`).

`--hook-warp-after='STR'`
Command to run after the warp of each exposure into the output pixel grid, but before the coadding of all exposures. For more on hooks, see the description of `--hook-warp-before`, Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177, and Section 2.8.6 [Accounting for non-exposed pixels], page 189.

`$WARPED` Input: name of file containing the warped exposure in the output pixel grid.

`$TOWARP` Output: name of the expected output of your hook. If it is not created by your script, the script will complain and abort. This file

will be coadded from the same file for all exposures into the final output.

`--coadd-operator="STR"`
: The operator to use for coadding the warped individual exposures into the final output of this script. For the full list, see Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428. By default it is the `sum` operator (to produce an output exposure map). For an example usage, see the tutorial in Section 2.8 [Pointing pattern design], page 177.

`--mksrc=STR`
: Use a non-standard Makefile for the Makefile to call. This option is primarily useful during the development of this script and its Makefile, not for normal/regular usage. So if you are not developing this script, you can safely ignore this option. When this option is given, the default installed Makefile will not be used: the file given to this option will be read by `make` (within the script) instead.

`-t STR`
`--tmpdir=STR`
: Name of directory containing temporary files. If not given, a temporary directory will be created in the running directory with a long name using some of the input options. By default, this temporary directory will be deleted after the output is created. You can disable the deletion of the temporary directory (useful for debugging!) with the `--keeptmp` option.

  Using this option has multiple benefits in larger pipelines:

  - You can avoid conflicts in case the used inputs in the default name are the same.
  - You can put this directory somewhere else in the running file system to avoid mixing output files with your source, or to use other storage hardware that are mounted on the running file system.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
: Keep the temporary directory (and do not delete it).

`-?`
`--help`
: Print a list of all the options, along with a short description and context for the program. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

`-N INT`
`--numthreads=INT`
: The number of threads to use for parallel operations (warping the input into the different pointing points). If not given (by default), the script will try to find the number of available threads on the running system and use that. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

`--cite`
: Give BibTeX and acknowledgment information for citing this script within your paper. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

`-q`
`--quiet` Do not print the series of commands or their outputs in the terminal. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

`-V`
`--version`
Print the version of the running Gnuastro along with a copyright notice and list of authors that contributed to this script. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

10.7 Color images with gray faint regions

Typical astronomical images have a very wide range of pixel values and generally, it is difficult to show the entire dynamical range in a color image. For example, by using Section 5.2 [ConvertType], page 316, it is possible to obtain a color image with three FITS images as each of the Red-Green-Blue (or RGB) color channels. However, depending on the pixel distribution, it could be very difficult to see the different regions together (faint and bright objects at the same time). In something like DS9, you end up changing the color map parameters to see the regions you are most interested in.

The reason is that images usually have a lot of faint pixels (near to the sky background or noise values), and few bright pixels (corresponding to the center of stars, galaxies, etc.) that can be millions of times brighter! As a consequence, by considering the images without any modification, it is extremely hard to visualize the entire range of values in a color image. This is because standard color formats like JPEG, TIFF or PDF are defined as 8-bit integer precision, while astronomical data are usually 32-bit floating point! To solve this issue, it is possible to perform some transformations of the images and then obtain the color image.

This is actually what the current script does: it makes some non-linear transformations and then uses Gnuastro's ConvertType to generate the color image. There are several parameters and options in order to change the final output that are described in Section 10.7.1 [Invoking astscript-color-faint-gray], page 720. A full tutorial describing this script with actual data is available in Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152. A general overview of this script is published in Infante-Sainz et al. 2024 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2401.03814`); please cite it if this script proves useful in your research.

10.7.1 Invoking astscript-color-faint-gray

This installed script will consider several images to combine them into a single color image to visualize the full dynamic range. The executable name is `astscript-color-faint-gray`, with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-color-faint-gray [OPTION...] r.fits g.fits b.fits
```

Examples (for a tutorial, see Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152):

```
## Generate a color image from three images with default options.
$ astscript-color-faint-gray r.fits g.fits b.fits -g1 --output color.pdf

## Generate a color image, consider the minimum value to be zero.
$ astscript-color-faint-gray r.fits g.fits b.fits -g1 \
                             --minimum=0.0 --output=color.jpg
```

```
## Generate a color image considering different zero points, minimum
## values, weights, and also increasing the contrast.
$ astscript-color-faint-gray r.fits g.fits b.fits -g1 \
                      -z=22.4 -z=25.5 -z=24.6 \
                      -m=-0.1 -m=0.0 -m=0.1 \
                      -w=1 -w=2 -w=3 \
                      --contrast=3 \
                      --output=color.tiff
```

This script takes three inputs images to generate a RGB color image as the output. The order of the images matters, reddest (longest wavelength) filter (R), green (an intermediate wavelength) filter (G) and bluest (shortest wavelength). In astronomy, these can be any filter (for example from infra-red, radio, optical or x-ray); the "RGB" designation is from the general definition of colors (see `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RGB_color_spaces`) These images are internally manipulated by a series of non-linear transformations and normalized to homogenize and finally combine them into a color image. In general, for typical astronomical images, the default output is an image with bright pixels in color and noise pixels in black.

The option `--minimum` sets the minimum value to be shown and it is a key parameter, it uses to be a value close to the sky background level. The current non-linear transformation is from Lupton et al. 2004 (`https://ui.adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/2004PASP..116..133L`), which we call the "asinh" transformation. The two important parameters that control this transformation are `--qthresh` and `--stretch`. With the option `--coloronly`, it is possible to generate a color image with the background in black: bright pixels in color and the sky background (or noise) values in black. It is possible to provide a fourth image (K) that will be used for showing the gray region: R, G, B, K

The generation of a good color image is something that requires several trials, so we encourage the user to play with the different parameters cleverly. After some testing, we find it useful to follow the steps. For a more complete description of the logic of the process, see the dedicated tutorial in Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152.

1. Use the default options to estimate the parameters. By running the script with no options at all, it will estimate the parameters and they will be printed on the command-line.
2. Select a good sky background value of the images. If the sky background has been subtracted, a minimum value of zero could be a good option: `--minimum=0.0`.
3. Focus on the bright regions to tweak `--qbright` and `--stretch`. First, try low values of `--qbright` to show the bright parts. Then, adjust `--stretch` to show the fainter regions around bright parts. Overall, play with these two parameters to show the color regions appropriately.
4. Change `--colorval` to separate the color and black regions. This is the lowest value of the threshold image that is shown in color.
5. Change `--grayval` to separate the black and gray regions. This is highest value of the threshold image that is shown in gray.
6. Use `--checkparams` to check the pixel value distributions.

7. Use `--keeptmp` to not remove the threshold image and check it.

A full description of each option is given below:

`-h`
`--hdu=STR/INT`
: Input HDU name or counter (counting from 0) for each input FITS file. If the same HDU should be used from all the FITS files, you can use the `--globalhdu` option described below to avoid repeating this option.

`-g`
`--globalhdu=STR/INT`
: Use the value given to this option (a HDU name or a counter, starting from 0) for the HDU identifier of all the input FITS files. This is useful when all the inputs are distributed in different files, but have the same HDU in those files.

`-o`
`--output`
: Output color image name. The output can be in any of the recognized output formats of ConvertType (including PDF, JPEG and TIFF).

`-m`
`--minimum=FLT`
: Minimum value to be mapped for each R, G, B, and K FITS images. If a single value is given to this option it will be used for all the input images.

  This parameter controls the smallest visualized pixel value. In general, it is a good decision to set this value close to the sky background level. This value can dramatically change the output color image (especially when there are large negative values in the image that you do not intend to visualize).

`-Z`
`--zeropoint=FLT`
: Zero point value for each R, G, B, and K FITS images. If a single value is given, it is used for all the input images.

  Internally, the zero point values are used to transform the pixel values in units of Janskys. The units are not important for a color image, but the fact that the images are photometrically calibrated is important for obtaining an output color image whose color distribution is realistic.

`-w`
`--weight=FLT`
: Relative weight for each R, G, B channel. With this parameter, it is possible to change the importance of each channel to modify the color balance of the image.

  For example, `-w=1 -w=2 -w=5` indicates that the B band will be 5 times more important than the R band, and that the G band is 2 times more important than the R channel. In this particular example, the combination will be done as colored $= (1\times\mathrm{R}+2\times\mathrm{G}+5\times\mathrm{B})/(1+2+5) = 0.125\times\mathrm{R}+0.250\times\mathrm{G}+0.625\times\mathrm{B}$.

  In principle, a color image should recreate "real" colors, but "real" is a very subjective matter and with this option, it is possible to change the color balance and make it more aesthetically interesting. However, be careful to avoid

confusing the viewers of your image and report the weights with the filters you used for each channel. It is up to the user to use this parameter carefully.

`-Q`
`--qbright=FLT`
It is one of the parameters that control the asinh transformation. It should be used in combination with `--stretch`. In general, it has to be set to low values to better show the brightest regions. Afterwards, adjust `--stretch` to set the linear stretch (show the intermediate/faint structures).

`-s`
`--stretch=FLT`
It is one of the parameters that control the asinh transformation. It should be used in combination with `--qbright`. It is used for bringing out the faint/intermediate bright structures of the image that are shown linearly. In general, this parameter is chosen after setting `--qbright` to a low value.

The asinh transformation. The asinh transformation is done on the coadded R, G, B image. It consists in the modification of the coadded image (I) in order to show the entire dynamical range appropriately following the expression: $f(I) = asinh($ `qbright` $\cdot$ `stretch` $\cdot I)/$ `qbright`. See Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152, for a complete tutorial that shows the intricacies of this transformation with step-by-step examples.

`--coloronly`
By default, the fainter parts of the image are shown in grayscale (not color, since colored noise is not too informative). With this option, the output image will be fully in color with the background (noise pixels) in black.

`--colorval=FLT`
The value that separates the color and black regions. By default, it ranges from 100 (all pixels becoming in color) to 0 (all pixels becoming black). Check the histogram `FOR COLOR and GRAY THRESHOLDS` with the option `--checkparams` for selecting a good value.

`--grayval=FLT`
This parameter defines the value that separates the black and gray regions. It ranges from 100 (all pixels becoming black) to 0 (all pixels becoming white). Check the histogram `FOR COLOR and GRAY THRESHOLDS` with the option `--checkparams` to select the value.

`--regions=STR`
Labeled image, identifying the pixels to use for color (value 2), those to use for black (value 1) and those to use for gray (value 0). When this option is given the `--colorval` and `--grayval` options will be ignored. This gives you the freedom to select the pixels to show in color, black or gray based on any criteria that is relevant for your purpose. For an example of using this option to get a physically motivated threshold, see Section 2.6.4 [Manually setting color-black-gray regions], page 162.

`-r`
`--reghdu=STR/INT`
HDU name or counter (counting from 0) of the region image given to `--regions`.

> **IMPORTANT NOTE.** The options `--colorval` and `--grayval` are related one to each other. They are defined from the threshold image (an image generated in the temporary directory) named `colorgray_threshold.fits`. By default, this image is computed from the coadd and later asinh-transformation of the three R, G, B channels. Its pixel values range between 100 (brightest) to 0 (faintest). The `--colorval` value computed by default is the median of this image. Pixels above this value are shown in color. Pixels below this value are shown in gray. Regions of pure black color can be defined with the `--grayval` option if this value is between 0 and `--colorval`. In other words. Color region are defined by those pixels between 100 and `--colorval`. Pure black region are defined by those pixels between `--colorval` to `grayval`. Gray region are defined by those pixels between `--grayval` to 0.
>
> If a fourth image is provided as the "K" channel, then this image is used as the threshold image. See Section 2.6 [Color images with full dynamic range], page 152, for a complete tutorial.

`--colorkernelfwhm=FLT`
Gaussian kernel FWHM (in pixels) for convolving the color regions. Sometimes, a convolution of the color regions (bright pixels) is desired to further increase their signal-to-noise ratio (but make them look smoother). With this option, the kernel will be created internally and convolved with the colored regions.

`--graykernelfwhm=FLT`
Gaussian kernel FWHM (in pixels) for convolving the background image. Sometimes, a convolution of the background image is necessary to smooth the noisier regions and increase their signal-to-noise ratios. With this option, the kernel will be created internally and convolved with the colored regions.

`-b`
`--bias=FLT`
Change the brightness of the final image. By increasing this value, a pedestal value will be added to the color image. This option is rarely useful, it is most common to use `--contrast`, see below.

`-c`
`--contrast=FLT`
Change the contrast of the final image. The transformation is: output = contrast $\times$ image + brightness.

`-G`
`--gamma=FLT`
Gamma exponent value for a gamma transformation. This transformation is not linear: output = image$^{\text{gamma}}$. This option overrides `--bias` or `--contrast`.

`--markoptions=STR`
: Options to draw marks on the final output image. Anything given to this option is passed directly to ConvertType in order to draw marks on the output image. For example, if you construct a table named `marks.txt` that contains the column names: x, y, shape, size, axis ratio, angle, color; you will execute the script with the following option: `--markoptions="--marks=markers.txt --markcoords=x,y --markshape=shape --marksize=size,axisratio --markrotate=angle --markcolor=color"`. See Section 5.2.5.3 [Drawing with vector graphics], page 338, for more information on how to draw markers and Section 2.6.5 [Weights, contrast, markers and other customizations], page 163, for a tutorial.

`--checkparams`
: Print the statistics of intermediate images that are used for estimating the parameters. This option is useful to decide the optimum set of parameters.

`--keeptmp`
: Do not remove the temporary directory. This is useful for debugging and checking the outputs of internal steps.

`--cite` Give BibTeX and acknowledgment information for citing this script within your paper. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

`-q`
`--quiet` Do not print the series of commands or their outputs in the terminal. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

`-V`
`--version`
: Print the version of the running Gnuastro along with a copyright notice and list of authors that contributed to this script. For more, see `Operating mode options`.

10.8 PSF construction and subtraction

The point spread function (PSF) describes how the light of a point-like source is affected by several optical scattering effects (atmosphere, telescope, instrument, etc.). Since the light of all astrophysical sources undergoes all these effects, characterizing the PSF is key in astronomical analysis (for small and large objects). Consequently, having a good characterization of the PSF is fundamental to any analysis.

In some situations[7] a parametric (analytical) model is sufficient for the PSF (such as Gaussian or Moffat, see Section 8.1.1.2 [Point spread function], page 654). However, once you are interested in objects that are larger than a handful of pixels, it is almost impossible to find an analytic function to adequately characterize the PSF. Therefore, it is necessary to obtain an empirical (non-parametric) and extended PSF. In this section we describe a set of installed scrips in Gnuastro that will let you construct the non-parametric PSF using point-like sources. They allow you to derive the PSF from the same astronomical images that the science is derived from (without assuming any analytical function).

[7] An example scenario where a parametric PSF may be enough: you are only interested in very small, high redshift objects that only extended a handful of pixels.

The scripts are based on the concepts described in Infante-Sainz et al. 2020 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1911.01430`). But to be complete, we first give a summary of the logic and overview of their combined usage in Section 10.8.1 [Overview of the PSF scripts], page 726. Furthermore, before going into the technical details of each script, we encourage you to go through the tutorial that is devoted to this at Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. The tutorial uses a real dataset and includes all the logic and reasoning behind every step of the usage in every installed script.

10.8.1 Overview of the PSF scripts

To obtain an extended and non-parametric PSF, several steps are necessary and we will go through them here. The fundamental ideas of the following methodology are thoroughly described in Infante-Sainz et al. 2020 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1911.01430`). A full tutorial is also available in Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. The tutorial will go through the full process on a pre-selected dataset, but will describe the logic behind every step in away that can easily be modified/generalized to other datasets.

This section is basically just a summary of that tutorial. We could have put all these steps into one large program (installed script), however this would introduce several problems. The most prominent of these problems are:

- The command would require *many* options, making it very complex to run every time.
- You usually have many stars in an image, and many of the steps can be optimized or parallelized depending on the particular analysis scenario. Predicting all the possible optimizations for all the possible usage scenarios would make the code extremely complex (filled with many unforeseen bugs!).

Therefore, following the modularity principle of software engineering, after several years of working on this, we have broken the full job into the smallest number of independent steps as separate scripts. All scripts are independent of each other, meaning this that you are free to use all of them as you wish (for example, only some of them, using another program for a certain step, using them for other purposes, or running independent parts in parallel).

For constructing the PSF from your dataset, the first step is to obtain a catalog of stars within it (you cannot use galaxies to build the PSF!). But you cannot blindly use all the stars either! For example, we do not want contamination from other bright, and nearby objects. The first script below is therefore designed for selecting only good star candidates in your image. It will use different criteria, for example, good parallax (where available, to avoid confusion with galaxies), not being near to bright stars, axis ratio, etc. For more on this script, see Section 10.8.2 [Invoking astscript-psf-select-stars], page 727.

Once the catalog of stars is constructed, another script is in charge of making appropriate stamps of the stars. Each stamp is a cropped image of the star with the desired size, normalization of the flux, and mask of the contaminant objects. For more on this script, see Section 10.8.3 [Invoking astscript-psf-stamp], page 730, After obtaining a set of star stamps, they can be coadded for obtaining the combined PSF from many stars (for example, with Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428).

In the combined PSF, the masked background objects of each star's image will be covered and the signal-to-noise ratio will increase, giving a very nice view of the "clean" PSF. However, it is usually necessary to obtain different regions of the same PSF from different

stars. For example, to construct the far outer wings of the PSF, it is necessary to consider very bright stars. However, these stars will be saturated in the most inner part, and immediately outside of the saturation level, they will be deformed due to non-linearity effects. Consequently, fainter stars are necessary for the inner regions.

Therefore, you need to repeat the steps above for certain stars (in a certain magnitude range) to obtain the PSF in certain radial ranges. For example, in Infante-Sainz et al. 2020 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1911.01430`), the final PSF was constructed from three regions (and thus, using stars from three ranges in magnitude). In other cases, we even needed four groups of stars! But in the example dataset from the tutorial, only two groups are necessary (see Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102).

Once clean coadds of different parts of the PSF have been constructed through the steps above, it is therefore necessary to blend them all into one. This is done by finding a common radial region in both, and scaling the inner region by a factor to add with the outer region. This is not trivial, therefore, a third script is in charge of it, see Section 10.8.4 [Invoking astscript-psf-unite], page 734.

Having constructed the PSF as described above (or by any other procedure), it can be scaled to the magnitude of the various stars in the image to get subtracted (and thus remove the extended/bright wings; better showing the background objects of interest). Note that the absolute flux of a PSF is meaningless (and in fact, it is usually normalized to have a total sum of unity!), so it should be scaled. We therefore have another script that will calculate the scale (multiplication) factor of the PSF for each star. For more on the scaling script, see Section 10.8.5 [Invoking astscript-psf-scale-factor], page 736.

Once the flux factor has been computed, a final script is in charge of placing the scaled PSF over the proper location in the image, and subtracting it. It is also possible to only obtain the modeled star by the PSF. For more on the scaling and positioning script, see Section 10.8.6 [Invoking astscript-psf-subtract], page 739.

As mentioned above, in the following sections, each script has its own documentation and list of options for very detailed customization (if necessary). But if you are new to these scripts, before continuing, we recommend that you do the tutorial Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. Just do not forget to run every command, and try to tweak its steps based on the logic to nicely understand it.

10.8.2 Invoking astscript-psf-select-stars

This installed script will select good star candidates for constructing a PSF. It will consider stars within a given range of magnitudes without nearby contaminant objects. To do that, it allows to the user to specify different options described here. A complete tutorial is available to show the operation of this script as a modular component to extract the PSF of a dataset: Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. The executable name is `astscript-psf-select-stars`, with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-psf-select-stars [OPTION...] FITS-file
```

Examples:

```
## Select all stars within 'image.fits' with magnitude in range
## of 6 to 10; only keeping those that are less than 0.02 degrees
## from other nearby stars.
$ astscript-psf-select-stars image.fits \
```

```
--magnituderange=6,10 --mindistdeg=0.02
```

The input of this script is an image, and the output is a catalog of stars with magnitude in the requested range of magnitudes (provided with `--magnituderange`). The output catalog will also only contain stars that are sufficiently distant (`--mindistdeg`) from all other brighter, and some fainter stars. It is possible to consider different datasets with the option `--dataset` (by default, Gaia DR3 dataset is considered) All stars that are `--faintmagdiff` fainter than the faintest limit will also be accounted for, when selecting good stars. The `--magnituderange`, and `--mindistdeg` are mandatory: if not specified the code will abort.

The output of this script is a file whose name can be specified with the (optional) `--output` option. If not given, an automatically generated name will be used for the output. A full description of each option is given below.

`-h STR/INT`
`--hdu=STR/INT`
: The HDU/extension of the input image to use.

`-S STR`
`--segmented=STR`
: Optional segmentation file obtained by Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571. It should have two extensions (`CLUMPS` and `OBJECTS`). If given, a catalog of `CLUMPS` will be computed and matched with the Gaia catalog to reject those objects that are too elliptical (see `--minaxisratio`). The matching will occur on an aperture (in degrees) specified by `--matchaperturedeg`.

`-a FLT`
`--matchaperturedeg=FLT`
: This option determines the aperture (in degrees) for matching the catalog from gaia with the clumps catalog that is produced by the segmentation image given to `--segmented`. The default value is 10 arc-seconds.

`-c STR`
`--catalog=STR`
: Optional reference catalog to use for selecting stars (instead of querying an external catalog like Gaia). When this option is given, `--dataset` (described below) will be ignored and no internet connection will be necessary.

`-d STR`
`--dataset=STR`
: Optional dataset to query (see Section 5.4 [Query], page 378). It should contain the database and dataset entries to Query. Its value will be immediately given to `astquery`. By default, its value is `gaia --dataset=dr3` (so it connects to the Gaia database and requests the data release 3). For example, if you want to use VizieR's Gaia DR3 instead (for example due to a maintenance on ESA's Gaia servers), you should use `--dataset="vizier --dataset=gaiadr3"`.

  It is possible to specify a different dataset from which the catalog is downloaded. In that case, the necessary column names may also differ, so you also have to set `--refcatra`, `--refcatdec` and `--field`. See their description for more.

`-r STR`
`--refcatra=STR`
: The name of the column containing the Right Ascension (RA) in the requested dataset (`--dataset`). If the user does not determine this option, the default value is assumed to be `ra`.

`-d STR`
`--refcatdec=STR`
: The name of the column containing the Declination (Dec) in the requested dataset (`--dataset`). If the user does not determine this option, the default value is assumed to be `dec`.

`-f STR`
`--field=STR`
: The name of the column containing the magnitude in the requested dataset (`--dataset`). The output will only contain stars that have a value in this column, between the values given to `--magnituderange` (see below). By default, the value of this option is `phot_g_mean_mag` (that corresponds to the name of the magnitude of the G-band in the Gaia catalog).

`-m FLT,FLT`
`--magnituderange=FLT,FLT`
: The acceptable range of values for the column in `--field`. This option is mandatory and no default value is assumed.

`-p STR,STR`
`--parallaxanderrorcolumn=STR,STR`
: With this option the user can provide the parallax and parallax error column names in the requested dataset. When given, the output will only contain stars for which the parallax value is smaller than three times the parallax error. If the user does not provide this option, the script will not use parallax information for selecting the stars. In the case of Gaia, if you want to use parallax to further limit the good stars, you can pass `parallax,parallax_error`.

`-D FLT`
`--mindistdeg=FLT`
: Stars with nearby bright stars closer than this distance are rejected. The default value is 1 arc minute. For fainter stars (when constructing the center of the PSF), you should decrease the value.

`-b INT`
`--brightmag=INT`
: The brightest star magnitude to avoid (should be brighter than the brightest of `--magnituderange`). The basic idea is this: if a user asks for stars with magnitude 6 to 10 and one of those stars is near a magnitude 3 star, that star (with a magnitude of 6 to 10) should be rejected because it is contaminated. But since the catalog is constrained to stars of magnitudes 6-10, the star with magnitude 3 is not present and cannot be compared with! Therefore, when considering proximity to nearby stars, it is important to use a larger magnitude range than the user's requested magnitude range for good stars. The acceptable proximity is defined by `--mindistdeg`.

With this option, you specify the brightest limit for the proximity check. The default value is a magnitude of -10, so you'll rarely need to change or customize this option!

The faint limit of the proximity check is specified by `--faintmagdiff`. As the name suggests, this is a "diff" or relative value. The default value is 4. Therefore if the user wants to build the PSF with stars in the magnitude range of 6 to 10, the faintest stars used for the proximity check will have a magnitude of 14: $10 + 4$. In summary, by default, the proximity check will be done with stars in the magnitude range -10 to 14.

`-F INT`
`--faintmagdiff`
The magnitude difference of the faintest star used for proximity checks to the faintest limit of `--magnituderange`. For more, see the description of `--brightmag`.

`-Q FLT`
`--minaxisratio=FLT`
Minimum acceptable axis ratio for the selected stars. In other words, only stars with axis ratio between `--minaxisratio` to 1.0 will be selected. Default value is `--minaxisratio=0.9`. Recall that the axis ratio is only used when you also give a segmented image with `--segmented`.

`-t`
`--tmpdir` Directory to keep temporary files during the execution of the script. If the directory does not exist at run-time, this script will create it. By default, upon completion of the script, this directory will be deleted. However, if you would like to keep the intermediate files, you can use the `--keeptmp` option.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
Do not remove the temporary directory (see description of `--keeptmp`). This option is useful for debugging and checking the outputs of internal steps.

`-o STR`
`--output=STR`
The output name of the final catalog containing good stars.

10.8.3 Invoking astscript-psf-stamp

This installed script will generate a stamp of fixed size, centered at the provided coordinates (performing sub-pixel re-gridding if necessary) and normalized at a certain normalization radius. Optionally, it will also mask all the other background sources. A complete tutorial is available to show the operation of this script as a modular component to extract the PSF of a dataset: Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. The executable name is `astscript-psf-stamp`, with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-psf-stamp [OPTION...] FITS-file
```

Examples:

```
## Make a stamp around (x,y)=(53,69) of width=151 pixels.
## Normalize the stamp within the radii 20 and 30 pixels.
```

```
$ astscript-psf-stamp image.fits --mode=img \
      --center=53,69 --widthinpix=151,151 --normradii=20,30 \
      --output=stamp.fits

## Iterate over a catalog with positions of stars that are
## in the input image. Use WCS coordinates.
$ asttable catalog.fits | while read -r ra dec mag; do \
    astscript-psf-stamp image.fits \
        --mode=wcs \
        --center=$ra,$dec \
        --normradii=20,30 \
        --widthinpix=150,150 \
        --output=stamp-"$ra"-"$dec".fits; done
```

The input is an image from which the stamp of the stars are constructed. The output image will have the following properties:

- A certain width (specified by `--widthinpix` in pixels).
- Centered at the coordinate specified by the option `--center` (it can be in image/pixel or WCS coordinates, see `--mode`). If no center is specified, then it is assumed that the object of interest is already in the center of the image.
- If the given coordinate has sub-pixel elements (for example, pixel coordinates 1.234,4.567), the pixel grid of the output will be warped so your given coordinate falls in the center of the central pixel of the final output. This is very important for building the central parts of the PSF, but not too effective for the middle or outer parts (to speed up the program in such cases, you can disable it with the `--nocentering` option).
- Normalized "normalized" by the value computed within the ring around the center (at a radial distance between the two radii specified by the option `--normradii`). If no normalization ring is considered, the output will not be normalized.

In the following cases, this script will produce a fully NaN-valued stamp (of the size given to `--widthinpix`). A fully NaN image can safely be used with the coadding operators of Arithmetic (see Section 6.2.4.7 [Coadding operators], page 428) because they will be ignored. In case you do not want to waste storage with fully NaN images, you can compress them with `gzip --best output.fits`, and give the resulting `.fits.gz` file to Arithmetic.

- The requested box (center coordinate with desired width) is not within the input image at all.
- If a normalization radius is requested, and all the pixels within the normalization radii are NaN. Here are some scenarios that this can happen: 1) You have a saturated star (where the saturated pixels are NaN), and your normalization radius falls within the saturated region. 2) The star is outside the image by more than your larger normalization radius (so there are no pixels for doing normalization), but the full stamp width still overlaps part of the image.

The full set of options are listed below for optimal customization in different scenarios:

`-h STR`
`--hdu=STR`
The HDU/extension of the input image to use.

`-O STR`
`--mode=STR`
Interpret the center position of the object (values given to `--center`) in image or WCS coordinates. This option thus accepts only two values: `img` or `wcs`.

`-c FLT,FLT`
`--center=FLT,FLT`
The central position of the object. This option is used for placing the center of the stamp. This parameter is used in Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389, to center and crop the image. The positions along each dimension must be separated by a comma (`,`). The units of the coordinates are read based on the value to the `--mode` option, see the examples above.

The given coordinate for the central value can have sub-pixel elements (for example, it falls on coordinate 123.4,567.8 of the input image pixel grid). In such cases, after cropping, this script will use Gnuastro's Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501, to shift (or translate) the pixel grid by -0.4 pixels along the horizontal and $1 - 0.8 = 0.2$ pixels along the vertical. Finally the newly added pixels (due to the warping) will be trimmed to have your desired coordinate exactly in the center of the central pixel of the output. This is very important (critical!) when you are constructing the central part of the PSF. But for the outer parts it is not too effective, so to avoid wasting time for the warping, you can simply use `--nocentering` to disable it.

`-d`
`--nocentering`
Do not do the sub-pixel centering to a new pixel grid. See the description of the `--center` option for more.

`-W INT,INT`
`--widthinpix=INT,INT`
Size (width) of the output image stamp in pixels. The size of the output image will be always an odd number of pixels. As a consequence, if the user specify an even number, the final size will be the specified size plus 1 pixel. This is necessary to place the specified coordinate (given to `--center`) in the center of the central pixel. This is very important (and necessary) in the case of the centers of stars, therefore a sub-pixel translation will be performed internally to ensure this.

`-n FLT,FLT`
`--normradii=FLT,FLT`
Minimum and maximum radius of ring to normalize the image. This option takes two values, separated by a comma (`,`). The first value is the inner radius, the second is the outer radius.

`-S STR`
`--segment=STR`
: Optional filename of a segmentation image from Segment's output (must contain the `CLUMPS` and `OBJECT` HDUs). For more on the definition of "objects" and "clumps", see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571. If given, Segment's output is used to mask all background sources from the large foreground object (a bright star):

  - Objects that are not the central object.
  - Clumps (within the central object) that are not the central clump.

  The result is that all objects and clumps that contaminate the central source are masked, while the diffuse flux of the central object remains. The non masked object and clump labels are kept into the header of the output image. The keywords are `CLABEL` and `OLABEL`. If no segmentation image is used, then their values are set to `none`.

`-T FLT`
`--snthresh=FLT`
: Mask all the pixels below the given signal-to-noise ratio (S/N) threshold. This option is only valid with the `--segment` option (it will use the `SKY_STD` extension of the Section 7.3.1.3 [Segment output], page 580. This threshold is applied prior to the possible normalization or centering of the stamp. After all pixels below the given threshold are masked, the mask is also dilated by one level to avoid single pixels above the threshold (which are mainly due to noise when the threshold is lower).

  After applying the signal-to-noise threshold (if it is requested), any extra pixels that are not connected to the central target are also masked. Such pixels can remain in rivers between bright clumps and will cause problem in the final coadd, if they are not masked.

  This is useful for increasing the S/N of inner parts of each region of the finally coadded PSF. As the stars (that are to be coadded) become fainter, the S/N of their outer parts (at a fixed radius) decreases. The coadd of a higher-S/N image with a lower-S/N image will have an S/N that is lower than the higher one. But we can still use the inner parts of those fainter stars (that have sufficiently high S/N).

`-N STR`
`--normop=STR`
: The operator for measuring the values within the ring defined by the option `--normradii`. The operator given to this option will be directly passed to the radial profile script `astscript-radial-profile`, see Section 10.2 [Generate radial profile], page 694. As a consequence, all MakeCatalog measurements (median, mean, sigclip-mean, sigclip-number, etc.) can be used here. For a full list of MakeCatalog's measurements, please run `astmkcatalog --help`. The final normalization value is saved into the header of the output image with the keyword `NORMVAL`. If no normalization is done, then the value is set to `1.0`.

`-Q FLT`
`--axis-ratio=FLT`
: The axis ratio of the radial profiles for computing the normalization value. By default (when this option is not given), the radial profile will be circular (axis ratio of 1). This parameter is used directly in the `astscript-radial-profile` script.

`-p FLT`
`--position-angle=FLT`
: The position angle (in degrees) of the profiles relative to the first FITS axis (horizontal when viewed in SAO DS9). By default, it is `--position-angle=0`, which means that the semi-major axis of the profiles will be parallel to the first FITS axis. This parameter is used directly in the `astscript-radial-profile` script.

`-s FLT,FLT`
`--sigmaclip=FLT,FLT`
: Sigma clipping parameters: only relevant if sigma-clipping operators are requested by `--normop`. For more on sigma-clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`-t`
`--tmpdir` Directory to keep temporary files during the execution of the script. If the directory does not exist at run-time, this script will create it. By default, upon completion of the script, this directory will be deleted. However, if you would like to keep the intermediate files, you can use the `--keeptmp` option.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
: Do not remove the temporary directory (see description of `--keeptmp`). This option is useful for debugging and checking the outputs of internal steps.

`-o STR`
`--output=STR`
: Filename of stamp image. By default the name of the stamp will be a combination of the input image name, the name of the script, and the coordinates of the center. For example, if the input image is named image.fits and the center is `--center=33,78`, then the output name wil be: image_stamp_33_78.fits The main reason of setting this name is to have an unique name for each stamp by default.

10.8.4 Invoking astscript-psf-unite

This installed script will join two PSF images at a given radius. This operation is commonly used when merging (uniting) the inner and outer parts of the PSF. A complete tutorial is available to show the operation of this script as a modular component to extract the PSF of a dataset: Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. The executable name is `astscript-psf-unite`, with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-psf-unite [OPTION...] FITS-file
```

Examples:

```
## Multiply inner.fits by 3 and put it in the center (within a radius of
```

```
## 25 pixels) of outer.fits. The core goes up to a radius of 25 pixels.
$ astscript-psf-unite outer.fits \
           --core=inner.fits --scale=3 \
           --radius=25 --output=joined.fits

## Same example than the above, but considering an
## ellipse (instead of a circle).
$ astscript-psf-unite outer.fits \
           --core=inner.fits --scale=3 \
           --radius=25 --axis-ratio=0.5 \
           --position-angle=40 --output=joined.fits
```

The junction is done by considering the input image as the outer part. The central part is specified by FITS image given to `--inner` and it is multiplied by the factor `--scale`. All pixels within `--radius` (in pixels) of the center of the outer part are then replaced with the inner image.

The scale factor to multiply with the inner part has to be explicitly provided (see the description of `--scale` below). Note that this script assumes that PSF is centered in both images. More options are available with the goal of obtaining a good junction. A full description of each option is given below.

`-h STR`
`--hdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension of the input image to use.

`-i STR`
`--inner=STR`
: Filename of the inner PSF. This image is considered to be the central part of the PSF. It will be cropped at the radius specified by the option `--radius`, and multiplied by the factor specified by `--scale`. After that, it will be appended to the outer part (input image).

`-I STR`
`--innerhdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension of the inner PSF (option `--inner`).

`-f FLT`
`--scale=FLT`
: Factor by which the inner part (`--inner`) is multiplied. This factor is necessary to put the two different parts of the PSF at the same flux level. A convenient way of obtaining this value is by using the script `astscript-model-scale-factor`, see Section 10.8.5 [Invoking astscript-psf-scale-factor], page 736. There is also a full tutorial on using all the `astscript-psf-*` installed scripts together, see Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. We recommend doing that tutorial before starting to work on your own datasets.

`-r FLT`
`--radius=FLT`
: Radius (in pixels) at which the junction of the images is done. All pixels in the outer image within this radius (from its center) will be replaced with the pixels

of the inner image (that has been scaled). By default, a circle is assumed for the shape of the inner region, but this can be tweaked with `--axis-ratio` and `--position-angle` (see below).

`-Q FLT`
`--axisratio=FLT`
Axis ratio of ellipse to define the inner region. By default this option has a value of 1.0, so all central pixels (of the outer image) within a circle of radius `--radius` are replaced with the scaled inner image pixels. With this option, you can customize the shape of pixels to take from the inner and outer profiles.

For a PSF, it will usually not be necessary to change this option: even if the PSF is non-circular, the inner and outer parts will both have the same ellipticity. So if the scale factor is chosen accurately, using a circle to select which pixels from the inner image to use in the outer image will be irrelevant.

`-p FLT`
`--position-angle=FLT`
Position angle of the ellipse (in degrees) to define which central pixels of the outer image to replace with the scaled inner image. Similar to `--axis-ratio` (see above).

`-t`
`--tmpdir` Directory to keep temporary files during the execution of the script. If the directory does not exist at run-time, this script will create it. By default, upon completion of the script, this directory will be deleted. However, if you would like to keep the intermediate files, you can use the `--keeptmp` option.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
Do not remove the temporary directory (see description of `--keeptmp`). This option is useful for debugging and checking the outputs of internal steps.

10.8.5 Invoking astscript-psf-scale-factor

This installed script will compute the multiplicative factor (scale) that is necessary to match the PSF to a given star. The match in flux is done within a ring of pixels. The standard deviation of that ring of pixels is also provided as an output. It can also be used to compute the scale factor to multiply the inner part of the PSF with the outer part during the creation of a PSF. A complete tutorial is available to show the operation of this script as a modular component to extract the PSF of a dataset: Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. The executable name is `astscript-psf-scale-factor`, with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-psf-scale-factor [OPTION...] FITS-file
```

Examples:

```
## Compute the scale factor for the object at (x,y)=(53,69) for
## the PSF (psf.fits). Compute it in the ring 20-30 pixels.
$ astscript-psf-scale-factor image.fits --mode=img \
      --center=53,69 --normradii=20,30 --psf=psf.fits
```

```
## Iterate over a catalog with RA,Dec positions of stars that are in
## the input image to compute their scale factors.
$ asttable catalog.fits | while read -r ra dec mag; do \
    astscript-psf-scale-factor image.fits \
        --mode=wcs \
        --psf=psf.fits \
        --center=$ra,$dec --quiet \
        --normradii=20,30 > scale-"$ra"-"$dec".txt; done
```

The input should be an image containing the star that you want to match in flux with the PSF. The output will be two numbers that are printed on the command-line. The first number is the multiplicative factor to scale the PSF image (given to `--psf`) to match in flux with the given star (which is located in `--center` coordinate of the input image). The scale factor will be calculated within the ring of pixels specified by the option `--normradii`. The second number is the standard deviation value (sigma-clipped) of such a ring of pixels.

All the pixels within this ring will be separated from both the PSF and input images. For the input image, around the selected coordinate; while masking all other sources (see `--segment`). The finally selected pixels of the input image will then be divided by those of the PSF image. This gives us an image containing one scale factor per pixel. The finally reported value is the sigma-clipped median of all the scale factors in the finally-used pixels. To fully understand the process on first usage, we recommend that you run this script with `--keeptmp` and inspect the files inside of the temporary directory.

The most common use-cases of this scale factor are:

1. To find the factor for joining two different parts of the same PSF, see Section 10.8.4 [Invoking astscript-psf-unite], page 734.
2. When modeling a star in order to subtract it using the PSF, see Section 10.8.6 [Invoking astscript-psf-subtract], page 739.

For a full tutorial on how to use this script along with the other `astscript-psf-*` scripts in Gnuastro, please see Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. To allow full customizability, the following options are available with this script.

`-h STR`
`--hdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension of the input image to use.

`-p STR`
`--psf=STR`
: Filename of the PSF image. The PSF is assumed to be centered in this image.

`-P STR`
`--psfhdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension of the PSF image.

`-c FLT,FLT`
`--center=FLT,FLT`
: The central position of the object to scale with the PSF. This parameter is passed to Gnuastro's Crop program make a crop for further processing (see Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389). The positions along each dimension must be

separated by a comma (`,`). The units of the coordinates are interpreted based on the value to the `--mode` option (see below).

The given coordinate for the central value can have sub-pixel elements (for example, it falls on coordinate 123.4,567.8 of the input image pixel grid). In such cases, after cropping, this script will use Gnuastro's Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501, to shift (or translate) the pixel grid by -0.4 pixels along the horizontal and $1 - 0.8 = 0.2$ pixels along the vertical. Finally the newly added pixels (due to the warping) will be trimmed to have your desired coordinate exactly in the center of the central pixel of the output. This is very important (critical!) when you are constructing the central part of the PSF. But for the very far outer parts it may not too effective (should be checked), or the target object may have already been centered at the requested coordinate. In such cases, to avoid wasting time for the warping, you can simply use `--nocentering` to disable sub-pixel centering.

`-d`
`--nocentering`
Do not do the sub-pixel centering to a new pixel grid. See the description of the `--center` option for more.

`-O STR`
`--mode=STR`
Interpret the center position of the object (values given to `--center`) in image or WCS coordinates. This option thus accepts only two values: `img` or `wcs`.

`-n INT,INT`
`--normradii=INT,INT`
Inner (inclusive) and outer (exclusive) radii (in units of pixels) around the central position in which the scale factor is computed. The option takes two values separated by a comma (`,`). The first value is the inner radius, the second is the outer radius. These two radii define a ring of pixels around the center that is used for obtaining the scale factor value.

`-W INT,INT`
`--widthinpix=INT,INT`
Size (width) of the image stamp in pixels. This is an intermediate product computed internally by the script. By default, the size of the stamp is automatically set to be as small as possible (i.e., two times the external radius of the ring specified by `--normradii`) to make the computation fast. As a consequence, this option is only relevant for checking and testing that everything is fine (debugging; it will usually not be necessary).

`-S STR`
`--segment=STR`
Optional filename of a segmentation image from Segment's output (must contain the `CLUMPS` and `OBJECT` HDUs). For more on the definition of "objects" and "clumps", see Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571. If given, Segment's output is used to mask all background sources from the large foreground object (a bright star):

- Objects that are not the central object.

- Clumps (within the central object) that are not the central clump.

The result is that all objects and clumps that contaminate the central source are masked, while the diffuse flux of the central object remains.

`-s FLT,FLT`
`--sigmaclip=FLT,FLT`
Sigma clipping parameters used in the end to find the final scale factor from the distribution of all pixels used. For more on sigma-clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`-t`
`--tmpdir` Directory to keep temporary files during the execution of the script. If the directory does not exist at run-time, this script will create it. By default, upon completion of the script, this directory will be deleted. However, if you would like to keep the intermediate files, you can use the `--keeptmp` option.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
Do not remove the temporary directory (see description of `--keeptmp`). This option is useful for debugging and checking the outputs of internal steps.

10.8.6 Invoking astscript-psf-subtract

This installed script will put the provided PSF into a given position within the input image (implementing sub-pixel adjustments where necessary), and then it will subtract it. It is aimed at modeling and subtracting the scattered light field of an input image. It is also possible to obtain the modeled star with the PSF (and not make the subtraction of it from the original image).

A complete tutorial is available to show the operation of this script as a modular component to extract the PSF of a dataset: Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102. The executable name is `astscript-psf-subtract`, with the following general template:

```
$ astscript-psf-subtract [OPTION...] FITS-file
```

Examples:

```
## Multiply the PSF (psf.fits) by 3 and subtract it from the
## input image (image.fits) at the pixel position (x,y)=(53,69).
$ astscript-psf-subtract image.fits \
    --psf=psf.fits \
    --mode=img \
    --scale=3 \
    --center=53,69 \
    --output=star-53_69.fits

## Iterate over a catalog with positions of stars that are
## in the input image. Use WCS coordinates.
$ asttable catalog.fits | while read -r ra dec mag; do
        scale=$(cat scale-"$ra"_"$dec".txt)
        astscript-psf-subtract image.fits \
            --mode=wcs \
```

```
    --psf=psf.fits \
    --scale=$scale \
    --center=$ra,$dec; done
```

The input is an image from which the star is considered. The result is the same image but with the star subtracted (modeled by the PSF). The modeling of the star is done with the PSF image specified with the option `--psf`, and flux-scaled with the option `--scale` at the position defined by `--center`. Instead of obtaining the PSF-subtracted image, it is also possible to obtain the modeled star by the PSF. To do that, use the option `--modelonly`. With this option, the output will be an image with the same size as the original one with the PSF situated in the star coordinates and flux-scaled. In this case, the region not covered by the PSF are set to zero values.

Note that this script works over individual objects. As a consequence, to generate a scattered light field of many stars, it is necessary to make multiple calls. A full description of each option is given below.

`-h STR`
`--hdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension of the input image to use.

`-p STR`
`--psf=STR`
: Filename of the PSF image. The PSF is assumed to be centered in this image.

`-P STR`
`--psfhdu=STR`
: The HDU/extension of the PSF image.

`-O STR`
`--mode=STR`
: Interpret the center position of the object (values given to `--center`) in image or WCS coordinates. This option thus accepts only two values: `img` or `wcs`.

`-c FLT,FLT`
`--center=FLT,FLT`
: The central position of the object. This parameter is used in Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389, to center and crop the image. The positions along each dimension must be separated by a comma (`,`). The number of values given to this option must be the same as the dimensions of the input dataset. The units of the coordinates are read based on the value to the `--mode` option, see above.

  If the central position does not fall in the center of a pixel in the input image, the PSF is resampled with sub-pixel change in the pixel grid before subtraction.

`-s FLT`
`--scale=FLT`
: Factor by which the PSF (`--psf`) is multiplied. This factor is necessary to put the PSF with the desired flux level. A convenient way of obtaining this value is by using the script `astscript-scale-factor`, see Section 10.8.5 [Invoking astscript-psf-scale-factor], page 736. For a full tutorial on using the `astscript-psf-*` scripts together, see Section 2.3 [Building the extended PSF], page 102.

`-t`
`--tmpdir` Directory to keep temporary files during the execution of the script. If the directory does not exist at run-time, this script will create it. By default, upon completion of the script, this directory will be deleted. However, if you would like to keep the intermediate files, you can use the `--keeptmp` option.

`-k`
`--keeptmp`
Do not remove the temporary directory (see description of `--keeptmp`). This option is useful for debugging and checking the outputs of internal steps.

`-m`
`--modelonly`
Do not make the subtraction of the modeled star by the PSF. This option is useful when the user wants to obtain the scattered light field given by the PSF modeled star.

11 Makefile extensions (for GNU Make)

Make (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Make_(software)`) is a build automation tool. It can greatly help manage your analysis workflow, even very complex projects with thousands of files and hundreds of processing steps. In this book, we have discussed Make previously in the context of parallelization (see Section 4.4.2 [How to run simultaneous operations], page 278). For example, Maneage (`http://maneage.org`) uses Make to organize complex and reproducible workflows, see Akhlaghi et al. 2021 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/2006.03018`).

GNU Make is the most common and powerful implementation of Make, with many unique additions to the core POSIX standard of Make. One of those features is the ability to add extensions using a dynamic library (that Gnuastro provides). For the details of this feature from GNU Make's own manual, see its Loading dynamic objects (`https://www.gnu.org/software/make/manual/html_node/Loading-Objects.html`) section. Through this feature, Gnuastro provides additional Make functions that are useful in the context of data analysis.

To use this feature, Gnuastro has to be built in shared library more. Gnuastro's Make extensions will not work if you build Gnuastro without shared libraries (for example, when you configure Gnuastro with `--disable-shared` or `--debug`).

11.1 Loading the Gnuastro Make functions

To load Gnuastro's Make functions in your Makefile, you should use the `load` command of GNU Make in your Makefile. The load command should be given Gnuastro's `libgnuastro_make.so` dynamic library, which has been specifically written for being called by GNU Make. The generic command looks like this (the `/PATH/TO` part should be changed):

```
load /PATH/TO/lib/libgnuastro_make.so
```

Here are the possible replacements of the `/PATH/TO` component:

`/usr/local`
: If you installed Gnuastro from source and did not use the `--prefix` option at configuration time, you should use this base directory.

`/usr/`
: If you installed Gnuastro through your operating system's package manager, it is highly likely that Gnuastro's library is here.

`~/.local`
: If you installed Gnuastro from source, but used `--prefix` to install Gnuastro in your home directory (as described in Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235).

If you cannot find `libgnuastro_make.so` in the locations above, the command below should give you its location. It assumes that the libraries are in the same base directory as the programs (which is usually the case).

```
$ which astfits | sed -e's|bin/astfits|lib/libgnuastro_make.so|'
```

The problem with the command above is that it is not in the Makefile and has to be run by the user when running it (adding more complexity and therefore potential for bugs). Therefore a more generic way to have a portable Makefile (that will run independent of

where the host's Gnuastro is installed), you can implement the command above in Make like below. For the `:=`, see Section 11.2 [Makefile functions of Gnuastro], page 743.

```
gnuastro-prefix := $(subst bin/astfits,,$(shell which astfits))
load $(gnuastro-prefix)/lib/libgnuastro_make.so
```

11.2 Makefile functions of Gnuastro

All Gnuastro Make functions start with the `ast-` prefix (similar to the programs on the command-line, but with a dash). After you have loaded Gnuastro's shared library for Makefiles within your Makefile, you can call these functions just like any Make function. For instructions on how to load Gnuastro's Make functions, see Section 11.1 [Loading the Gnuastro Make functions], page 742.

There are two types of Make functions in Gnuastro's Make extensions: 1) Basic operations on text which is more general than astronomy or Gnuastro, see Section 11.2.1 [Text functions for Makefiles], page 743). 2) Operations that are directly related to astronomy (mostly FITS files) and Gnuastro, see Section 11.2.2 [Astronomy functions for Makefiles], page 749).

Difference between '=' or ':=' for variable definition When you define a variable with '=', its value is expanded only when used, not when defined. However, when you use ':=', it is immediately expanded when defined. Therefore the location of a ':=' variable in the Makefile matters: if used before its definition, it will be empty! Those defined by '=' can be used even before they are defined! On the other hand, if your variable invokes functions (like `foreach` or `wildcard`), it is better to use ':='. Otherwise, each time the value is used, the function will be expanded (possibly may times) and this will reduce the speed of your pipeline. For more, see the The two flavors of variables (`https://www.gnu.org/software/make/manual/html_node/Flavors.html`) in the GNU Make manual.

11.2.1 Text functions for Makefiles

The functions described below operate on simple strings (plain text). They are therefore generic (not limited to astronomy/FITS), but because they are commonly necessary in astronomical data analysis pipelines and are not available anywhere else, we have included them in Gnuastro. The names of these functions start with `ast-text-*` and each has a fully working example to demonstrate its usage.

`$(ast-text-to-upper STRING)`

Returns the input string but with all characters in UPPER-CASE. For example, the following minimal Makefile will print `FOOO BAAR UGGH` word of the list.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

list   = fOOo bAar UggH
ulist := $(ast-text-to-upper $(list))
all:; echo $(ulist)
```

`$(ast-text-to-lower STRING)`

Returns the input string but with all characters in lower-case. For example, the following minimal Makefile will print `fooo baar uggh` word of the list.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

list  = fOOo bAar UggH
llist := $(ast-text-to-lower $(list))
all:; echo $(llist)
```

`$(ast-text-contains STRING, TEXT)`

Returns all white-space-separated words in `TEXT` that contain the `STRING`, removing any words that *do not* match. For example, the following minimal Makefile will only print the `bAaz Aah` word of the list.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

list = fooo baar bAaz uggh Aah
all:
     echo $(ast-text-contains Aa, $(list))
```

This can be thought of as Make's own `filter` function, but if it would accept two patterns in a format like this `$(filter %Aa%,$(list))` (for the example above). In fact, the first sentence describing this function is taken from the Make manual's first sentence that describes the `filter` function! However, unfortunately Make's `filter` function only accepts a single `%`, not two!

`$(ast-text-not-contains STRING, TEXT)`

Returns all white-space-separated words in `TEXT` that *do not* contain the `STRING`, removing any words that *do not* match. This is the inverse of the `ast-text-contains` function. For example, the following minimal Makefile will print `fooo baar uggh` word of the list.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

list = fooo baar bAaz uggh Aah
all:
     echo $(ast-text-not-contains Aa, $(list))
```

`$(ast-text-prev TARGET, LIST)`

Returns the word in `LIST` that is previous to `TARGET`. If `TARGET` is the first word of the list, or is not within it at all, this function will return an empty string (nothing). If any of the arguments are an empty string (or only contain space characters like '`SPACE`', '`TAB`', new-line and etc), this function will return an empty string (having no effect in Make). The simple example below shows a minimal usage scenario where the output will be `fooo`.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

list = fooo baar bAaz uggh Aah
all:
     echo $(ast-text-prev baar, $(list))
```

This function is useful in many other scenarios. For example, one scenario when this function can be useful is when you want a list of higher-level targets to always be executed in sequence (even when Make is run in parallel). But you want their lower-level prerequisites to be executed in parallel.

The fully working example below shows this in practice: the "final" target depends on the sub-components `a.fits`, `b.fits`, `c.fits` and `d.fits`. But each one of these has seven dependencies (for example `a.fits` depends on the sub-sub-components `a-1.fits`, `a-2.fits`, `a-3.fits`, ...). Without this function, Make will first build all the sub-sub-components first, then the sub-components and ultimately the final target.

When the files are small and there aren't too many of them, this is not a problem. But when you hundreds/thousands of sub-sub-components, your computer may not have the capacity to hold them all in storage or RAM (during processing). In such cases, you want to build the sub-components to built in series, but the sub-sub-components of each sub-component to be built in parallel. This function allows just this in an easy manner as below: the sub-sub-components of each sub-component depend on the previous sub-component.

To see the effect of this function put the example below in a `Makefile` and run `make -j12` (to simultaneously execute 12 jobs); then comment/remove this function (so there is no prerequisite in `$(subsubs)`) and re-run `make -j12`.

```
# Basic settings
all: final
.SECONDEXPANSION:
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

# 4 sub-components (alphabetic), each with 7
# sub-sub-components (numeric).
subids = a b c d
subsubids = 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
subs := $(foreach s, $(subids), $(s).fits)
subsubs := $(foreach s, $(subids), \
             $(foreach ss, $(subsubids), \
               $(s)-$(ss).fits))

# Build the sub-components:
$(subsubs): %.fits: $$(ast-text-prev \
                       $$(word 1, $$(subst -, ,%)).fits, \
                       $(subs))
        @echo "$@: $^"

# Build the final components
$(subs): %.fits: $$(foreach s, $(subsubids), %-$$(s).fits)
        @echo "$@: $^"

# Final
final: $(subs)
        @echo "$@: $^"
```

As you see, when this function is present, the sub-sub-components of each sub-component are executed in parallel, while at each moment, only a single sub-component's prerequisites are being made. Without this function, make first

builds all the sub-sub-components, then goes to the sub-components. There can be any level of components between these, allowing this operation to be as complex as necessary in your data analysis pipeline. Unfortunately the `.NOTPARALLEL` target of GNU Make doesn't allow this level of customization.

`$(ast-text-prev-batch TARGET, NUM, LIST)`

Returns the previous batch of `NUM` words in `LIST` (in relation to the batch containing `TARGET`). `NUM` will be interpreted as an unsigned integer and cannot be zero. If any of the arguments are an empty string (or only contain space characters like '`SPACE`', '`TAB`', new-line and etc), this function will return an empty string (having no effect in Make). In the special case that `NUM=1`, this is equivalent to the `ast-text-prev` function that is described above.

Here is one scenario where this function is useful: in astronomy datasets are can easily be very large. Therefore, some Make recipes in your pipeline may require a lot of memory; such that executing them on all the available threads (for example 12 threads with `-j12`) will immediately occupy all your RAM, causing a crash in your pipeline. However, let's assume that you have sufficient RAM to execute 4 targets of those recipes in parallel. Therefore while you want all the other steps of your pipeline to be using all 12 threads, you want one rule to only build 4 targets at any time. But before starting to use this function, also see `ast-text-prev-batch-by-ram`.

The example below demonstrates the usage of this function in a minimal working example of the scenario above: we want to build 15 targets, but in batches of 4 target at a time, irrespective of how many threads Make was executed with.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

.SECONDEXPANSION:

targets := $(foreach i,$(shell seq 15),a-$(i).fits)

all: $(targets)

$(targets): $$(ast-text-prev-batch $$@,4,$(targets))
        @echo "$@: $^"
```

If you place the example above in a plain-text file called `Makefile` (correcting for the TAB at the start of the recipe), and run Make on 12 threads like below, you will see the following output. The targets in each batch are not ordered (and the order may change in different runs) because they have been run in parallel.

```
$ make -j12
a-1.fits:
a-3.fits:
a-2.fits:
a-4.fits:
a-5.fits: a-1.fits a-2.fits a-3.fits a-4.fits
a-6.fits: a-1.fits a-2.fits a-3.fits a-4.fits
```

```
a-8.fits: a-1.fits a-2.fits a-3.fits a-4.fits
a-7.fits: a-1.fits a-2.fits a-3.fits a-4.fits
a-9.fits: a-5.fits a-6.fits a-7.fits a-8.fits
a-11.fits: a-5.fits a-6.fits a-7.fits a-8.fits
a-12.fits: a-5.fits a-6.fits a-7.fits a-8.fits
a-10.fits: a-5.fits a-6.fits a-7.fits a-8.fits
a-13.fits: a-9.fits a-10.fits a-11.fits a-12.fits
a-15.fits: a-9.fits a-10.fits a-11.fits a-12.fits
a-14.fits: a-9.fits a-10.fits a-11.fits a-12.fits
```

Any other rule that is later added to this make file (as a prerequisite/parent of `targets` or as a child of `targets`) will be run on 12 threads.

`$(ast-text-prev-batch-by-ram TARGET, NEEDED_RAM_GB, LIST)`

Similar to `ast-text-prev-batch`, but instead of taking the number of words/files in each batch, this function takes the maximum amount of RAM that is needed by one instance of the recipe. Through the `NEEDED_RAM_GB` argument, you should specify the amount of ram that a *single* instance of the recipe in this rule needs. If any of the arguments are an empty string (or only contain space characters like '`SPACE`', '`TAB`', new-line and etc), this function will return an empty string (having no effect in Make). When the needed RAM is larger than the available RAM only one job will be done at a time (similar to `ast-text-prev`).

The number of files in each batch is calculated internally by reading the available RAM on the system at the moment Make calls this function. Therefore this function is more generalizable to different computers (with very different RAM and/or CPU threads). But to avoid overlapping with other rules that may consume a lot of RAM, it is better to design your Makefile such that other rules are only executed once all instances of this rule have been completed.

For example, assume every instance of one rule in your Makefile requires a maximum of 5.2 GB of RAM during its execution, and your computer has 32 GB of RAM and 2 threads. In this case, you do not need to manage the targets at all: at the worst moment your pipeline will consume 10.4GB of RAM (much smaller than the 32GB of RAM that you have). However, you later run the same pipeline on another machine with identical RAM, but 12 threads! In this case, you will need $5.2 \times 12 = 62.4$GB of RAM; but the new system doesn't have that much RAM, causing your pipeline to crash. If you used `ast-text-prev-batch` function (described above) to manage these hardware limitations, you would have to manually change the number on every new system; this is inconvenient, can cause many bugs, and requires manual intervention (not making your pipeline automatic).

The `ast-text-prev-batch-by-ram` function was designed as a solution to the problem above: it will read the amount of available RAM at the time that Make starts (before the recipes in your pipeline are actually executed). From the value to `NEEDED_RAM_GB`, it will then estimate how many instances of that recipe can be executed in parallel without breaching the available RAM of the system. Therefore it is important to not run another heavy RAM consumer on the system while your pipeline is being executed. Note that this function reads

the available RAM, not total RAM; it therefore accounts for the background operations of the operating system or graphic user environment that are running in parallel to your pipeline; and assumes they will remain at the same level.

The fully working example below shows the usage of this function in a scenario where we assume the recipe requires 4.2GB of RAM for each target.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

.SECONDEXPANSION:

targets := $(foreach i,$(shell seq 13),$(i).fits)

all: $(targets)

$(targets): $$(ast-text-prev-batch-by-ram $$@,4.2,$(targets))
        @echo "$@: $^"
```

Once the contents above are placed in a `Makefile` and you execute the command below in a system with about 27GB of available RAM (total RAM is 32GB; the 5GB difference is used by the operating system and other background programs), you will get an output like below.

```
$ make -j12
1.fits:
2.fits:
3.fits:
4.fits:
5.fits:
6.fits:
7.fits: 1.fits 2.fits 3.fits 4.fits 5.fits 6.fits
8.fits: 1.fits 2.fits 3.fits 4.fits 5.fits 6.fits
11.fits: 1.fits 2.fits 3.fits 4.fits 5.fits 6.fits
10.fits: 1.fits 2.fits 3.fits 4.fits 5.fits 6.fits
9.fits: 1.fits 2.fits 3.fits 4.fits 5.fits 6.fits
12.fits: 1.fits 2.fits 3.fits 4.fits 5.fits 6.fits
13.fits: 7.fits 8.fits 9.fits 10.fits 11.fits 12.fits
```

Depending on the amount of available RAM on your system, you will get a different output. To see the effect, you can decrease or increase the amount of required RAM (`4.2` in the example above).

What is the maximum RAM required by my command? Put a '`/usr/bin/time --format=%M`' prefix behind your full command (including any options and arguments). For example like this for a call to Gnuastro's Warp program:

```
/usr/bin/time --format=%M astwarp image.fits
```

After the regular outputs of the program, you will see a number on the last line. This number is the maximum used RAM (in *kilobytes*) during the execution of the program. Later, you can convert this to Gigabytes (to feed into this function) by dividing it to 10^6.

`$(ast-text-next TARGET, LIST)`

Returns the word in `LIST` that is next to `TARGET`. Its operation is very similar to the `ast-text-prev` function defined above. The output of the example below (that uses this function) is `bAaz`.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

list = fooo baar bAaz uggh Aah
all:
     echo $(ast-text-next baar, $(list))
```

`$(ast-text-next-words TARGET, NUM, LIST)`

Returns the next `NUM` words in `LIST` (after `TARGET`). The output of the example below (that uses this function) is `bAaz uggh`.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

list = fooo baar bAaz uggh Aah
all:
     echo $(ast-text-next baar, 2, $(list))
```

11.2.2 Astronomy functions for Makefiles

FITS files (the standard data format in astronomy) have unique features (header keywords and HDUs) that can greatly help designing workflows in Makefiles. The Makefile extension functions of this section allow you to optimally use those features within your pipelines. Besides FITS, when designing your workflow/pipeline with Gnuastro, there are also special features like version checking that simplify your design.

`$(ast-version-is STRING)`

Returns `1` if the version of the used Gnuastro is equal to `STRING`, and `0` otherwise. This is useful/critical for obtaining reproducible results on different systems. It can be used in combination with Conditionals in Make (`https://www.gnu.org/software/make/manual/html_node/Conditionals.html`) to ensure the required version of Gnuastro is going to be used in your workflow.

For example, in the minimal working Makefile below, we are using it to specify if the default (first) target (`all`) should have any prerequisites (and let the

workflow start), or if it should simply print a message (that the required version of Gnuastro isn't installed) and abort (without any prerequisites).

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

gnuastro-version = 0.19
ifeq ($(ast-version-is $(gnuastro-version)),1)
all: paper.pdf
else
all:; @echo "Please use Gnuastro $(gnuastro-version)"
endif

result.fits: input.fits
        astnoisechisel $< --output=$@

paper.pdf: result.fits
        pdflatex --halt-on-error paper.tex
```

`$(ast-fits-with-keyvalue KEYNAME, KEYVALUES, HDU, FITS_FILES)`

Will select only the FITS files (from a list of many in `FITS_FILES`, non-FITS files are ignored), where the `KEYNAME` keyword has the value(s) given in `KEYVALUES`. Only the HDU given in the `HDU` argument will be checked. According to the FITS standard, the keyword name is not case sensitive, but the keyword value is.

For example, if you have many FITS files in the `/datasets/images` directory, the minimal Makefile below will put those with a value of `BAR` or `BAZ` for the `FOO` keyword in HDU number `1` in the `selected` Make variable. Notice how there is no comma between `BAR` and `BAZ`: you can specify any series of values.

```
load /usr/local/lib/libgnuastro_make.so

files := $(wildcard /datasets/images/*.fits)
selected := $(ast-fits-with-keyvalue FOO, BAR BAZ, 1, $(files))

all:
        echo "Full:     $(words $(files)) files";
        echo "Selected: $(words $(selected)) files"
```

`$(ast-fits-unique-keyvalues KEYNAME, HDU, FITS_FILES)`

Will return the unique values given to the given FITS keyword (`KEYNAME`) in the given HDU of all the input FITS files (non-FITS files are ignored). For example, after the commands below, the `keyvalues` variable will contain the unique values given to the `FOO` keyword in HDU number 1 of all the FITS files in `/datasets/images/*.fits`.

```
files := $(wildcard /datasets/images/*.fits)
keyvalues := $(ast-fits-unique-keyvalues FOO, 1, $(files))
```

This is useful when you do not know the full range of values a-priori. For example, let's assume that you are looking at a night's observations with a telescope and the purpose of the FITS image is written in the `OBJECT` keyword

of the image (which we can assume is in HDU number 1). This keyword can have the name of the various science targets (for example, `NGC123` and `M31`) and calibration targets (for example, `BIAS` and `FLAT`). The list of science targets is different from project to project, such that in one night, you can observe multiple projects. But the calibration frames have unique names. Knowing the calibration keyword values, you can extract the science keyword values of the night with the command below (feeding the output of this function to Make's `filter-out` function).

```
calib = BIAS FLAT
files := $(wildcard /datasets/images/*.fits)
science := $(filter-out $(calib), \
             $(ast-fits-unique-keyvalues OBJECT, 1, $(files)))
```

The `science` variable will now contain the unique science targets that were observed in your selected FITS images. You can use it to group the various exposures together in the next stages to make separate coadds of deep images for each science target (you can select FITS files based on their keyword values using the `ast-fits-with-keyvalue` function, which is described separately in this section).

12 Library

Each program in Gnuastro that was discussed in the prior chapters (or any program in general) is a collection of functions that is compiled into one executable file which can communicate directly with the outside world. The outside world in this context is the operating system. By communication, we mean that control is directly passed to a program from the operating system with a (possible) set of inputs and after it is finished, the program will pass control back to the operating system. For programs written in C and C++, the unique `main` function is in charge of this communication.

Similar to a program, a library is also a collection of functions that is compiled into one executable file. However, unlike programs, libraries do not have a `main` function. Therefore they cannot communicate directly with the outside world. This gives you the chance to write your own `main` function and call library functions from within it. After compiling your program into a binary executable, you just have to *link* it to the library and you are ready to run (execute) your program. In this way, you can use Gnuastro at a much lower-level, and in combination with other libraries on your system, you can significantly boost your creativity.

This chapter starts with a basic introduction to libraries and how you can use them in Section 12.1 [Review of library fundamentals], page 752. The separate functions in the Gnuastro library are then introduced (classified by context) in Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764. If you end up routinely using a fixed set of library functions, with a well-defined input and output, it will be much more beneficial if you define a program for the job. Therefore, in its Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228, Gnuastro comes with the Section 13.4.2 [The TEMPLATE program], page 968, to easily define your own programs(s).

12.1 Review of library fundamentals

Gnuastro's libraries are written in the C programming language. In Section 13.1 [Why C programming language?], page 958, we have thoroughly discussed the reasons behind this choice. C was actually created to write Unix, thus understanding the way C works can greatly help in effectively using programs and libraries in all Unix-like operating systems. Therefore, in the following subsections some important aspects of C, as it relates to libraries (and thus programs that depend on them) on Unix are reviewed. First we will discuss header files in Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753, and then go onto Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756. This section finishes with Section 12.1.3 [Summary and example on libraries], page 759. If you are already familiar with these concepts, please skip this section and go directly to Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764.

In theory, a full operating system (or any software) can be written as one function. Such a software would not need any headers or linking (that are discussed in the subsections below). However, writing that single function and maintaining it (adding new features, fixing bugs, documentation, etc.) would be a programmer or scientist's worst nightmare! Furthermore, all the hard work that went into creating it cannot be reused in other software: every other programmer or scientist would have to re-invent the wheel. The ultimate purpose behind libraries (which come with headers and have to be linked) is to address this problem and increase modularity: "the degree to which a system's components may be separated and

recombined" (from Wikipedia). The more modular the source code of a program or library, the easier maintaining it will be, and all the hard work that went into creating it can be reused for a wider range of problems.

12.1.1 Headers

C source code is read from top to bottom in the source file, therefore program components (for example, variables, data structures and functions) should all be *defined* or *declared* closer to the top of the source file: before they are used. *Defining* something in C or C++ is jargon for providing its full details. *Declaring* it, on the other-hand, is jargon for only providing the minimum information needed for the compiler to pass it temporarily and fill in the detailed definition later.

For a function, the *declaration* only contains the inputs and their data-types along with the output's type[1]. The *definition* adds to the declaration by including the exact details of what operations are done to the inputs to generate the output. As an example, take this simple summation function:

```
double
sum(double a, double b)
{
  return a + b;
}
```

What you see above is the *definition* of this function: it shows you (and the compiler) exactly what it does to the two `double` type inputs and that the output also has a `double` type. Note that a function's internal operations are rarely so simple and short, it can be arbitrarily long and complicated. This unreasonably short and simple function was chosen here for ease of reading. The declaration for this function is:

```
double
sum(double a, double b);
```

You can think of a function's declaration as a building's address in the city, and the definition as the building's complete blueprints. When the compiler confronts a call to a function during its processing, it does not need to know anything about how the inputs are processed to generate the output. Just as the postman does not need to know the inner structure of a building when delivering the mail. The declaration (address) is enough. Therefore by *declaring* the functions once at the start of the source files, we do not have to worry about *defining* them after they are used.

Even for a simple real-world operation (not a simple summation like above!), you will soon need many functions (for example, some for reading/preparing the inputs, some for the processing, and some for preparing the output). Although it is technically possible, managing all the necessary functions in one file is not easy and is contrary to the modularity principle (see Section 12.1 [Review of library fundamentals], page 752), for example, the functions for preparing the input can be usable in your other projects with a different processing. Therefore, as we will see later (in Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756), the functions do not necessarily need to be defined in the source file where they are used. As long as their definitions are ultimately linked to the final executable, everything will be fine. For now, it is just important to remember that the functions that are called within

[1] Recall that in C, functions only have one output.

one source file must be declared within the source file (declarations are mandatory), but not necessarily defined there.

In the spirit of modularity, it is common to define contextually similar functions in one source file. For example, in Gnuastro, functions that calculate the median, mean and other statistical functions are defined in `lib/statistics.c`, while functions that deal directly with FITS files are defined in `lib/fits.c`.

Keeping the definition of similar functions in a separate file greatly helps their management and modularity, but this fact alone does not make things much easier for the caller's source code: recall that while definitions are optional, declarations are mandatory. So if this was all, the caller would have to manually copy and paste (*include*) all the declarations from the various source files into the file they are working on now. To address this problem, programmers have adopted the header file convention: the header file of a source code contains all the declarations that a caller would need to be able to use any of its functions. For example, in Gnuastro, `lib/statistics.c` (file containing function definitions) comes with `lib/gnuastro/statistics.h` (only containing function declarations).

The discussion above was mainly focused on functions, however, there are many more programming constructs such as preprocessor macros and data structures. Like functions, they also need to be known to the compiler when it confronts a call to them. So the header file also contains their definitions or declarations when they are necessary for the functions.

Preprocessor macros (or macros for short) are replaced with their defined value by the preprocessor before compilation. Conventionally they are written only in capital letters to be easily recognized. It is just important to understand that the compiler does not see the macros, it sees their fixed values. So when a header specifies macros you can do your programming without worrying about the actual values. The standard C types (for example, `int`, or `float`) are very low-level and basic. We can collect multiple C types into a *structure* for a higher-level way to keep and pass-along data. See Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784, for some examples of macros and data structures.

The contents in the header need to be *include*d into the caller's source code with a special preprocessor command: `#include <path/to/header.h>`. As the name suggests, the *preprocessor* goes through the source code prior to the processor (or compiler). One of its jobs is to include, or merge, the contents of files that are mentioned with this directive in the source code. Therefore the compiler sees a single entity containing the contents of the main file and all the included files. This allows you to include many (sometimes thousands of) declarations into your code with only one line. Since the headers are also installed with the library into your system, you do not even need to keep a copy of them for each separate program, making things even more convenient.

Try opening some of the `.c` files in Gnuastro's `lib/` directory with a text editor to check out the include directives at the start of the file (after the copyright notice). Let's take `lib/fits.c` as an example. You will notice that Gnuastro's header files (like `gnuastro/fits.h`) are indeed within this directory (the `fits.h` file is in the `gnuastro/` directory). You will notice that files like `stdio.h`, or `string.h` are not in this directory (or anywhere within Gnuastro).

On most systems the basic C header files (like `stdio.h` and `string.h` mentioned above) are located in `/usr/include/`[2]. Your compiler is configured to automatically search that directory (and possibly others), so you do not have to explicitly mention these directories. Go ahead, look into the `/usr/include` directory and find `stdio.h` for example. When the necessary header files are not in those specific libraries, the preprocessor can also search in places other than the current directory. You can specify those directories with this preprocessor option[3]:

`-I DIR` "Add the directory `DIR` to the list of directories to be searched for header files. Directories named by '-I' are searched before the standard system include directories. If the directory `DIR` is a standard system include directory, the option is ignored to ensure that the default search order for system directories and the special treatment of system headers are not defeated..." (quoted from the GNU Compiler Collection manual). Note that the space between `I` and the directory is optional and commonly not used.

If the preprocessor cannot find the included files, it will abort with an error. In fact a common error when building programs that depend on a library is that the compiler does not know where a library's header is (see Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246). So you have to manually tell the compiler where to look for the library's headers with the `-I` option. For a small software with one or two source files, this can be done manually (see Section 12.1.3 [Summary and example on libraries], page 759). However, to enhance modularity, Gnuastro (and most other bin/libraries) contain many source files, so the compiler is invoked many times[4]. This makes manual addition or modification of this option practically impossible.

To solve this problem, in the GNU build system, there are conventional environment variables for the various kinds of compiler options (or flags). These environment variables are used in every call to the compiler (they can be empty). The environment variable used for the C preprocessor (or CPP) is `CPPFLAGS`. By giving `CPPFLAGS` a value once, you can be sure that each call to the compiler will be affected. See Section 3.3.5 [Known issues], page 246, for an example of how to set this variable at configure time.

As described in Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235, you can select the top installation directory of a software using the GNU build system, when you `./configure` it. All the separate components will be put in their separate sub-directory under that, for example, the programs, compiled libraries and library headers will go into `$prefix/bin` (replace `$prefix` with a directory), `$prefix/lib`, and `$prefix/include` respectively. For enhanced modularity, libraries that contain diverse collections of functions (like GSL, WCSLIB, and Gnuastro), put their header files in a sub-directory unique to themselves. For example, all Gnuastro's header files are installed in `$prefix/include/gnuastro`. In your source code, you need to keep the library's sub-directory when including the headers from such libraries, for example, `#include <gnuastro/fits.h>`[5]. Not all libraries need to follow this convention, for example, CFITSIO only has one header (`fitsio.h`) which is directly installed in `$prefix/include`.

[2] The `include/` directory name is taken from the pre-processor's `#include` directive, which is also the motivation behind the 'I' in the `-I` option to the pre-processor.

[3] Try running Gnuastro's `make` and find the directories given to the compiler with the `-I` option.

[4] Nearly every command you see being executed after running `make` is one call to the compiler.

[5] the top `$prefix/include` directory is usually known to the compiler

12.1.2 Linking

To enhance modularity, similar functions are defined in one source file (with a `.c` suffix, see Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753, for more). After running `make`, each human-readable, `.c` file is translated (or compiled) into a computer-readable "object" file (ending with `.o`). Note that object files are also created when building programs, they are not particular to libraries. Try opening Gnuastro's `lib/` and `bin/progname/` directories after running `make` to see these object files[6]. Afterwards, the object files are *linked* together to create an executable program or a library.

The object files contain the full definition of the functions in the respective `.c` file along with a list of any other function (or generally "symbol") that is referenced there. To get a list of those functions you can use the `nm` program which is part of GNU Binutils. For example, from the top Gnuastro directory, run:

```
$ nm bin/arithmetic/arithmetic.o
```

This will print a list of all the functions (more generally, 'symbols') that were called within `bin/arithmetic/arithmetic.c` along with some further information (for example, a `T` in the second column shows that this function is actually defined here, `U` says that it is undefined here). Try opening the `.c` file to check some of these functions for yourself. Run `info nm` for more information.

To recap, the *compiler* created the separate object files mentioned above for each `.c` file. The *linker* will then combine all the symbols of the various object files (and libraries) into one program or library. In the case of Arithmetic (a program) the contents of the object files in `bin/arithmetic/` are copied (and re-ordered) into one final executable file which we can run from the operating system.

There are two ways to *link* all the necessary symbols: static and dynamic/shared. When the symbols (computer-readable function definitions in most cases) are copied into the output, it is called *static* linking. When the symbols are kept in their original file and only a reference to them is kept in the executable, it is called *dynamic*, or *shared* linking.

Let's have a closer look at the executable to understand this better: we will assume you have built Gnuastro without any customization and installed Gnuastro into the default `/usr/local/` directory (see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235). If you tried the `nm` command on one of Arithmetic's object files above, then with the command below you can confirm that all the functions that were defined in the object file above (had a `T` in the second column) are also defined in the `astarithmetic` executable:

```
$ nm /usr/local/bin/astarithmetic
```

These symbols/function have been statically linked (copied) in the final executable. But you will notice that there are still many undefined symbols in the executable (those with a `U` in the second column). One class of such functions are Gnuastro's own library functions that start with '`gal_`':

```
$ nm /usr/local/bin/astarithmetic | grep gal_
```

These undefined symbols (functions) are present in another file and will be linked to the Arithmetic program every time you run it. Therefore they are known as dynamically

[6] Gnuastro uses GNU Libtool for portable library creation. Libtool will also make a `.lo` file for each `.c` file when building libraries (`.lo` files are human-readable).

linked libraries[7]. As we saw above, static linking is done when the executable is being built. However, when a program is dynamically linked to a library, at build-time, the library's symbols are only checked with the available libraries: they are not actually copied into the program's executable. Every time you run the program, the (dynamic) linker will be activated and will try to link the program to the installed library before the program starts.

If you want all the libraries to be statically linked to the executables, you have to tell Libtool (which Gnuastro uses for the linking) to disable shared libraries at configure time[8]:

```
$ configure --disable-shared
```

Try configuring Gnuastro with the command above, then build and install it (as described in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1). Afterwards, check the `gal_` symbols in the installed Arithmetic executable like before. You will see that they are actually copied this time (have a `T` in the second column). If the second column does not convince you, look at the executable file size with the following command:

```
$ ls -lh /usr/local/bin/astarithmetic
```

It should be around 4.2 Megabytes with this static linking. If you configure and build Gnuastro again with shared libraries enabled (which is the default), you will notice that it is roughly 100 Kilobytes!

This huge difference would have been very significant in the old days, but with the roughly Terabyte storage drives commonly in use today, it is negligible. Fortunately, output file size is not the only benefit of dynamic linking: since it links to the libraries at run-time (rather than build-time), you do not have to rebuild a higher-level program or library when an update comes for one of the lower-level libraries it depends on. You just install the new low-level library and it will automatically be used/linked next time in the programs that use it. To be fair, this also creates a few complications[9]:

- Reproducibility: Even though your high-level tool has the same version as before, with the updated library, you might not get the same results.
- Broken links: if some functions have been changed or removed in the updated library, then the linker will abort with an error at run-time. Therefore you need to rebuild your higher-level program or library.

To see a list of all the shared libraries that are needed for a program or a shared library to run, you can use GNU C library's `ldd`[10] program, for example:

```
$ ldd /usr/local/bin/astarithmetic
```

Library file names (in their installation directory) start with a `lib` and their ending (suffix) shows if they are static (`.a`) or dynamic (`.so`), as described below. The name of the library is in the middle of these two, for example, `libgsl.a` or `libgnuastro.a` (GSL

[7] Do not confuse dynamically *linked* libraries with dynamically *loaded* libraries. The former (that is discussed here) are only loaded once at the program startup. However, the latter can be loaded anytime during the program's execution, they are also known as plugins.

[8] Libtool is very common and is commonly used. Therefore, you can use this option to configure on most programs using the GNU build system if you want static linking.

[9] Both of these can be avoided by joining the mailing lists of the lower-level libraries and checking the changes in newer versions before installing them. Updates that result in such behaviors are generally heavily emphasized in the release notes.

[10] If your operating system is not using the GNU C library, you might need another tool.

and Gnuastro's static libraries), and `libgsl.so.23.0.0` or `libgnuastro.so.4.0.0` (GSL and Gnuastro's shared library, the numbers may be different).

- A static library is known as an archive file and has the `.a` suffix. A static library is not an executable file.
- A shared library ends with the `.so.X.Y.Z` suffix and is executable. The three numbers in the suffix, describe the version of the shared library. Shared library versions are defined to allow multiple versions of a shared library simultaneously on a system and to help detect possible updates in the library and programs that depend on it by the linker.

  It is very important to mention that this version number is different from the software version number (see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11), so do not confuse the two. See the "Library interface versions" chapter of GNU Libtool for more.

  For each shared library, we also have two symbolic links ending with `.so.X` and `.so`. They are automatically set by the installer, but you can change them (point them to another version of the library) when you have multiple versions of a library on your system.

Libraries that are built with GNU Libtool (including Gnuastro and its dependencies), build both static and dynamic libraries by default and install them in `prefix/lib/` directory (for more on `prefix`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235). In this way, programs depending on the libraries can link with them however they prefer. See the contents of `/usr/local/lib` with the command below to see both the static and shared libraries available there, along with their executable nature and the symbolic links:

```
$ ls -l /usr/local/lib/
```

To link with a library, the linker needs to know where to find the library. *At compilation time*, these locations can be passed to the linker with two separate options (see Section 12.1.3 [Summary and example on libraries], page 759, for an example) as described below. You can see these options and their usage in practice while building Gnuastro (after running `make`):

`-L DIR` Will tell the linker to look into `DIR` for the libraries. For example, `-L/usr/local/lib`, or `-L/home/yourname/.local/lib`. You can make multiple calls to this option, so the linker looks into several directories at compilation time. Note that the space between `L` and the directory is optional and commonly ignored (written as `-LDIR`).

`-lLIBRARY`

Specify the unique library identifier/name (not containing directory or shared/dynamic nature) to be linked with the executable. As discussed above, library file names have fixed parts which must not be given to this option. So `-lgsl` will guide the linker to either look for `libgsl.a` or `libgsl.so` (depending on the type of linking it is suppose to do). You can link many libraries by repeated calls to this option.

Very important: The place of this option on the compiler's command matters. This is often a source of confusion for beginners, so let's assume you have asked the linker to link with library A using this option. As soon as the linker confronts this option, it looks into the list of the undefined symbols it has found until that

point and does a search in library A for any of those symbols. If any pending undefined symbol is found in library A, it is used. After the search in undefined symbols is complete, the contents of library A are completely discarded from the linker's memory. Therefore, if a later object file or library uses an unlinked symbol in library A, the linker will abort after it has finished its search in all the input libraries or object files.

As an example, Gnuastro's `gal_fits_img_read` function depends on the `fits_read_pix` function of CFITSIO (specified with `-lcfitsio`, which in turn depends on the cURL library, called with `-lcurl`). So the proper way to link something that uses this function is `-lgnuastro -lcfitsio -lcurl`. If instead, you give: `-lcfitsio -lgnuastro` the linker will complain and abort. To avoid such linking complexities when using Gnuastro's library, we recommend using Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760.

If you have compiled and linked your program with a dynamic library, then the dynamic linker also needs to know the location of the libraries after building the program: *every time* the program is run afterwards. Therefore, it may happen that you do not get any errors when compiling/linking a program, but are unable to run your program because of a failure to find a library. This happens because the dynamic linker has not found the dynamic library *at run time*.

To find the dynamic libraries at run-time, the linker looks into the paths, or directories, in the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable. For a discussion on environment variables, especially search paths like `LD_LIBRARY_PATH`, and how you can add new directories to them, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

12.1.3 Summary and example on libraries

After the mostly abstract discussions of Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753, and Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756, we will give a small tutorial here. But before that, let's recall the general steps of how your source code is prepared, compiled and linked to the libraries it depends on so you can run it:

1. The **preprocessor** includes the header (`.h`) files into the function definition (`.c`) files, expands preprocessor macros. Generally the preprocessor prepares the human-readable source for compilation (reviewed in Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753).
2. The **compiler** will translate (compile) the human-readable contents of each source (merged `.c` and the `.h` files, or generally the output of the preprocessor) into the computer-readable code of `.o` files.
3. The **linker** will link the called function definitions from various compiled files to create one unified object. When the unified product has a `main` function, this function is the product's only entry point, enabling the operating system or user to directly interact with it, so the product is a program. When the product does not have a `main` function, the linker's product is a library and it is exported functions can be linked to other executables (it has many entry points).

The GNU Compiler Collection (or GCC for short) will do all three steps. So as a first example, from Gnuastro's source, go to `tests/lib/`. This directory contains the library tests, you can use these as some simple tutorials. For this demonstration, we will compile and run the `arraymanip.c`. This small program will call Gnuastro library for some simple

operations on an array (open it and have a look). To compile this program, run this command inside the directory containing it.

```
$ gcc arraymanip.c -lgnuastro -lm -o arraymanip
```

The two `-lgnuastro` and `-lm` options (in this order) tell GCC to first link with the Gnuastro library and then with C's math library. The `-o` option is used to specify the name of the output executable, without it the output file name will be `a.out` (on most OSs), independent of your input file name(s).

If your top Gnuastro installation directory (let's call it `$prefix`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235) is not recognized by GCC, you will get preprocessor errors for unknown header files. Once you fix it, you will get linker errors for undefined functions. To fix both, you should run GCC as follows: additionally telling it which directories it can find Gnuastro's headers and compiled library (see Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753, and Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756):

```
$ gcc -I$prefix/include -L$prefix/lib arraymanip.c -lgnuastro -lm     \
      -o arraymanip
```

This single command has done all the preprocessor, compilation and linker operations. Therefore no intermediate files (object files in particular) were created, only a single output executable was created. You are now ready to run the program with:

```
$ ./arraymanip
```

The Gnuastro functions called by this program only needed to be linked with the C math library. But if your program needs WCS coordinate transformations, needs to read a FITS file, needs special math operations (which include its linear algebra operations), or you want it to run on multiple CPU threads, you also need to add these libraries in the call to GCC: `-lgnuastro -lwcs -lcfitsio -lgsl -lgslcblas -pthread -lm`. In Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764, where each function is documented, it is mentioned which libraries (if any) must also be linked when you call a function. If you feel all these linkings can be confusing, please consider Gnuastro's Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, program.

12.2 BuildProgram

The number and order of libraries that are necessary for linking a program with Gnuastro library might be too confusing when you need to compile a small program for one particular job (with one source file). BuildProgram will use the information gathered during configuring Gnuastro and link with all the appropriate libraries on your system. This will allow you to easily compile, link and run programs that use Gnuastro's library with one simple command and not worry about which libraries to link to, or the linking order.

BuildProgram uses GNU Libtool to find the necessary libraries to link against (GNU Libtool is the same program that builds all of Gnuastro's libraries and programs when you run `make`). So in the future, if Gnuastro's prerequisite libraries change or other libraries are added, you do not have to worry, you can just run BuildProgram and internal linking will be done correctly.

BuildProgram requires GNU Libtool: BuildProgram depends on GNU Libtool, other implementations do not have some necessary features. If GNU Libtool is not available at Gnuastro's configure time, you will get a notice at the end of the configuration step and BuildProgram will not be built or installed. Please see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215, for more information.

12.2.1 Invoking BuildProgram

BuildProgram will compile and link a C source program with Gnuastro's library and all its dependencies, greatly facilitating the compilation and running of small programs that use Gnuastro's library. The executable name is `astbuildprog` with the following general template:

```
$ astbuildprog [OPTION...] C_SOURCE_FILE
```

One line examples:

```
## Compile, link and run `myprogram.c':
$ astbuildprog myprogram.c

## Similar to previous, but with optimization and compiler warnings:
$ astbuildprog -Wall -O2 myprogram.c

## Compile and link `myprogram.c', then run it with `image.fits'
## as its argument:
$ astbuildprog myprogram.c image.fits

## Also look in other directories for headers and linking:
$ astbuildprog -Lother -Iother/dir myprogram.c

## Just build (compile and link) `myprogram.c', do not run it:
$ astbuildprog --onlybuild myprogram.c
```

If BuildProgram is to run, it needs a C programming language source file as input. By default it will compile and link the given source into a final executable program and run it. The built executable name can be set with the optional `--output` option. When no output name is set, BuildProgram will use Gnuastro's Section 4.9 [Automatic output], page 292, system to remove the suffix of the input source file (usually `.c`) and use the resulting name as the built program name.

For the full list of options that BuildProgram shares with other Gnuastro programs, see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253. You may also use Gnuastro's Section 4.2 [Configuration files], page 270, to specify other libraries/headers to use for special directories and not have to type them in every time.

The C compiler can be chosen with the `--cc` option, or environment variables, please see the description of `--cc` for more. The two common `LDFLAGS` and `CPPFLAGS` environment variables are also checked and used in the build by default. Note that they are placed after the values to the corresponding options `--includedir` and `--linkdir`. Therefore BuildProgram's own options take precedence. Using environment variables can be disabled

with the `--noenv` option. Just note that BuildProgram also keeps the important flags in these environment variables in its configuration file. Therefore, in many cases, even though you may needed them to build Gnuastro, you will not need them in BuildProgram.

The first argument is considered to be the C source file that must be compiled and linked. Any other arguments (non-option tokens on the command-line) will be passed onto the program when BuildProgram wants to run it. Recall that by default BuildProgram will run the program after building it. This behavior can be disabled with the `--onlybuild` option.

When the `--quiet` option (see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259) is not called, BuildPrograms will print the compilation and running commands. Once your program grows and you break it up into multiple files (which are much more easily managed with Make), you can use the linking flags of the non-quiet output in your `Makefile`.

`-c STR`
`--cc=STR` C compiler to use for the compilation, if not given environment variables will be used as described in the next paragraph. If the compiler is in your system's search path, you can simply give its name, for example, `--cc=gcc`. If it is not in your system's search path, you can give its full path, for example, `--cc=/path/to/your/custom/cc`.

If this option has no value after parsing the command-line and all configuration files (see Section 4.2.2 [Configuration file precedence], page 271), then BuildProgram will look into the following environment variables in the given order `CC` and `GCC`. If they are also not defined, BuildProgram will ultimately default to the `gcc` command which is present in many systems (sometimes as a link to other compilers).

`-I STR`
`--includedir=STR`
Directory to search for files that you `#include` in your C program. Note that headers relating to Gnuastro and its dependencies do not need this option. This is only necessary if you want to use other headers. It may be called multiple times and order matters. This directory will be searched before those of Gnuastro's build and also the system search directories. See Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753, for a thorough introduction.

From the GNU C preprocessor manual: "Add the directory `STR` to the list of directories to be searched for header files. Directories named by `-I` are searched before the standard system include directories. If the directory `STR` is a standard system include directory, the option is ignored to ensure that the default search order for system directories and the special treatment of system headers are not defeated".

`-L STR`
`--linkdir=STR`
Directory to search for compiled libraries to link the program with. Note that all the directories that Gnuastro was built with will already be used by BuildProgram (GNU Libtool). This option is only necessary if your libraries are in other directories. Multiple calls to this option are possible and order matters. This directory will be searched before those of Gnuastro's build and also the

system search directories. See Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756, for a thorough introduction.

`-l STR`
`--linklib=STR`
Library to link with your program. Note that all the libraries that Gnuastro was built with will already be linked by BuildProgram (GNU Libtool). This option is only necessary if you want to link with other directories. Multiple calls to this option are possible and order matters. This library will be linked before Gnuastro's library or its dependencies. See Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756, for a thorough introduction.

`-O INT/STR`
`--optimize=INT/STR`
Compiler optimization level: 0 (for no optimization, good debugging), 1, 2, 3 (for the highest level of optimizations). From the GNU Compiler Collection (GCC) manual: "Without any optimization option, the compiler's goal is to reduce the cost of compilation and to make debugging produce the expected results. Statements are independent: if you stop the program with a break point between statements, you can then assign a new value to any variable or change the program counter to any other statement in the function and get exactly the results you expect from the source code. Turning on optimization flags makes the compiler attempt to improve the performance and/or code size at the expense of compilation time and possibly the ability to debug the program." Please see your compiler's manual for the full list of acceptable values to this option.

`-g`
`--debug` Emit extra information in the compiled binary for use by a debugger. When calling this option, it is best to explicitly disable optimization with `-O0`. To combine both options you can run `-gO0` (see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251, for how short options can be merged into one).

`-W STR`
`--warning=STR`
Print compiler warnings on command-line during compilation. "Warnings are diagnostic messages that report constructions that are not inherently erroneous but that are risky or suggest there may have been an error." (from the GCC manual). It is always recommended to compile your programs with warnings enabled.

All compiler warning options that start with `W` are usable by this option in BuildProgram also, see your compiler's manual for the full list. Some of the most common values to this option are: `pedantic` (Warnings related to standard C) and `all` (all issues the compiler confronts).

`-t`
`--tag=STR`
The language configuration information. Libtool can build objects and libraries in many languages. In many cases, it can identify the language automatically, but when it does not you can use this option to explicitly notify Libtool of the

language. The acceptable values are: `CC` for C, `CXX` for C++, `GCJ` for Java, `F77` for Fortran 77, `FC` for Fortran, `GO` for Go and `RC` for Windows Resource. Note that the Gnuastro library is not yet fully compatible with all these languages.

`-b`
`--onlybuild`
Only build the program, do not run it. By default, the built program is immediately run afterwards.

`-d`
`--deletecompiled`
Delete the compiled binary file after running it. This option is only relevant when the compiled program is run after being built. In other words, it is only relevant when `--onlybuild` is not called. It can be useful when you are busy testing a program or just want a fast result and the actual binary/compiled file is not of later use.

`-a STR`
`--la=STR` Use the given `.la` file (Libtool control file) instead of the one that was produced from Gnuastro's configuration results. The Libtool control file keeps all the necessary information for building and linking a program with a library built by Libtool. The default `prefix/lib/libgnuastro.la` keeps all the information necessary to build a program using the Gnuastro library gathered during configure time (see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235, for prefix). This option is useful when you prefer to use another Libtool control file.

`-e`
`--noenv` Do not use environment variables in the build, just use the values given to the options. As described above, environment variables like `CC`, `GCC`, `LDFLAGS`, `CPPFLAGS` will be read by default and used in the build if they have been defined.

12.3 Gnuastro library

Gnuastro library's programming constructs (function declarations, macros, data structures, or global variables) are classified by context into multiple header files (see Section 12.1.1 [Headers], page 753)[11]. In this section, the functions in each header will be discussed under a separate sub-section, which includes the name of the header. Assuming a function declaration is in `headername.h`, you can include its declaration in your source code with:

```
# include <gnuastro/headername.h>
```

The names of all constructs in `headername.h` are prefixed with `gal_headername_` (or `GAL_HEADERNAME_` for macros). The `gal_` prefix stands for *G*NU *A*stronomy *L*ibrary.

Gnuastro library functions are compiled into a single file which can be linked on the command-line with the `-lgnuastro` option. See Section 12.1.2 [Linking], page 756, and Section 12.1.3 [Summary and example on libraries], page 759, for an introduction on linking and some fully working examples of the libraries.

[11] Within Gnuastro's source, all installed `.h` files in `lib/gnuastro/` are accompanied by a `.c` file in `/lib/`.

Gnuastro's library is a high-level library which depends on lower level libraries for some operations (see Section 3.1 [Dependencies], page 212). Therefore if at least one of Gnuastro's functions in your program use functions from the dependencies, you will also need to link those dependencies after linking with Gnuastro. See Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, for a convenient way to deal with the dependencies. BuildProgram will take care of the libraries to link with your program (which uses the Gnuastro library), and can even run the built program afterwards. Therefore it allows you to conveniently focus on your exciting science/research when using Gnuastro's libraries.

Libraries are still under heavy development: Gnuastro was initially created to be a collection of command-line programs. However, as the programs and their the shared functions grew, internal (not installed) libraries were added. Since the 0.2 release, the libraries are install-able. Hence the libraries are currently under heavy development and will significantly evolve between releases and will become more mature and stable in due time. It will stabilize with the removal of this notice. Check the `NEWS` file for interface changes. If you use the Info version of this manual (see Section 4.3.4 [Info], page 275), you do not have to worry: the documentation will correspond to your installed version.

12.3.1 Configuration information (`config.h`)

The `gnuastro/config.h` header contains information about the full Gnuastro installation on your system. Gnuastro developers should note that this is the only header that is not available within Gnuastro, it is only available to a Gnuastro library user *after* installation. Within Gnuastro, `config.h` (which is included in every Gnuastro `.c` file, see Section 13.3 [Coding conventions], page 961) has more than enough information about the overall Gnuastro installation.

`GAL_CONFIG_VERSION` [Macro]

This macro can be used as a string literal[12] containing the version of Gnuastro that is being used. See Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11, for the version formats. For example:

```
printf("Gnuastro version: %s\n", GAL_CONFIG_VERSION);
```

or

```
char *gnuastro_version=GAL_CONFIG_VERSION;
```

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_GSL_INTERP_STEFFEN` [Macro]

GNU Scientific Library (GSL) is a mandatory dependency of Gnuastro (see Section 3.1.1.1 [GNU Scientific Library], page 213). The Steffen interpolation function that can be used in Gnuastro was introduced in GSL version 2.0 (released in October 2015). This macro will have a value of `1` if the host GSL contains this feature at configure time, and `0` otherwise.

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_FITS_IS_REENTRANT` [Macro]

This macro will have a value of 1 when the CFITSIO of the host system has the `fits_is_reentrant` function (available from CFITSIO version 3.30). This function is used

[12] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/String_literal`

to see if CFITSIO was configured to read a FITS file simultaneously on different threads.

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_VERSION` [Macro]
WCSLIB is the reference library for world coordinate system transformation (see Section 3.1.1.3 [WCSLIB], page 214, and Section 12.3.13 [World Coordinate System (`wcs.h`)], page 846). However, only more recent versions of WCSLIB also provide its version number. If the WCSLIB that is installed on the system provides its version (through the possibly existing `wcslib_version` function), this macro will have a value of one, otherwise it will have a value of zero.

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_DIS_H` [Macro]
This macro has a value of 1 if the host's WCSLIB has the `wcslib/dis.h` header for distortion-related operations.

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_MJDREF` [Macro]
This macro has a value of 1 if the host's WCSLIB reads and stores the `MJDREF` FITS header keyword as part of its core `wcsprm` structure.

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_OBSFIX` [Macro]
This macro has a value of 1 if the host's WCSLIB supports the `OBSFIX` feature (used by `wcsfix` function to parse the input WCS for known errors).

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_PTHREAD_BARRIER` [Macro]
The POSIX threads standard define barriers as an optional requirement. Therefore, some operating systems choose to not include it. As one of the `./configure` step checks, Gnuastro we check if your system has this POSIX thread barriers. If so, this macro will have a value of `1`, otherwise it will have a value of `0`. see Section 12.3.2.1 [Implementation of `pthread_barrier`], page 768, for more.

`GAL_CONFIG_SIZEOF_LONG` [Macro]
`GAL_CONFIG_SIZEOF_SIZE_T` [Macro]
The size of (number of bytes in) the system's `long` and `size_t` types. Their values are commonly either 4 or 8 for 32-bit and 64-bit systems. You can also get this value with the expression '`sizeof size_t`' for example, without having to include this header.

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_LIBGIT2` [Macro]
Libgit2 is an optional dependency of Gnuastro (see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215). When it is installed and detected at configure time, this macro will have a value of `1` (one). Otherwise, it will have a value of `0` (zero). Gnuastro also comes with some wrappers to make it easier to use libgit2 (see Section 12.3.31 [Git wrappers (`git.h`)], page 927).

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_PYTHON` [Macro]
Gnuastro can optionally provide a set of basic functions to facilitate wrapper libraries in Python (see Section 12.3.32 [Python interface (`python.h`)], page 928). If a version of Python 3.X was found on the host system that has the necessary Numpy headers, this macro will be given a value of `1`. Otherwise, it will be given a value of `0` and the the Python interface functions won't be available in the host's Gnuastro library.

`GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_GNUMAKE_H` [Macro]
Gnuastro provides a set of GNU Make extension functions (see Chapter 11 [Makefile extensions (for GNU Make)], page 742). In order to use those, the host should have `gnumake.h` in its include paths. This check is done at Gnuastro's configuration time. If it was found, this macro is given a value of `1`, otherwise, it will have a value of `0`.

12.3.2 Multithreaded programming (`threads.h`)

In recent years, newer CPUs do not have significantly higher frequencies any more. However, CPUs are being manufactured with more cores, enabling more than one operation (thread) at each instant. This can be very useful to speed up many aspects of processing and in particular image processing.

Most of the programs in Gnuastro utilize multi-threaded programming for the CPU intensive processing steps. This can potentially lead to a significant decrease in the running time of a program, see Section 4.4.1 [A note on threads], page 277. In terms of reading the code, you do not need to know anything about multi-threaded programming. You can simply follow the case where only one thread is to be used. In these cases, threads are not used and can be completely ignored.

When the C language was defined (the K&R's book was written), using threads was not common, so C's threading capabilities are not introduced there. Gnuastro uses POSIX threads for multi-threaded programming, defined in the `pthread.h` system wide header. There are various resources for learning to use POSIX threads. An excellent tutorial (`https://computing.llnl.gov/tutorials/pthreads/`) is provided by the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory, with abundant figures to better understand the concepts, it is a very good start. The book 'Advanced programming in the Unix environment'[13], by Richard Stevens and Stephen Rago, Addison-Wesley, 2013 (Third edition) also has two chapters explaining the POSIX thread constructs which can be very helpful.

An alternative to POSIX threads was OpenMP, but POSIX threads are low level, allowing much more control, while being easier to understand, see Section 13.1 [Why C programming language?], page 958. All the situations where threads are used in Gnuastro currently are completely independent with no need of coordination between the threads. Such problems are known as "embarrassingly parallel" problems. They are some of the simplest problems to solve with threads and are also the ones that benefit most from them, see the LLNL introduction[14].

One very useful POSIX thread concept is `pthread_barrier`. Unfortunately, it is only an optional feature in the POSIX standard, so some operating systems do not include it. Therefore in Section 12.3.2.1 [Implementation of `pthread_barrier`], page 768, we introduce our own implementation. This is a rather technical section only necessary for more technical readers and you can safely ignore it. Following that, we describe the helper functions in this header that can greatly simplify writing a multi-threaded program, see Section 12.3.2.2 [Gnuastro's thread related functions], page 768, for more.

[13] Do not let the title scare you! The two chapters on Multi-threaded programming are very self-sufficient and do not need any more knowledge than K&R.

[14] `https://computing.llnl.gov/tutorials/parallel_comp/`

12.3.2.1 Implementation of `pthread_barrier`

One optional feature of the POSIX Threads standard is the `pthread_barrier` concept. It is a very useful high-level construct that allows for independent threads to "wait" behind a "barrier" for the rest after they finish. Barriers can thus greatly simplify the code in a multi-threaded program, so they are heavily used in Gnuastro. However, since it is an optional feature in the POSIX standard, some operating systems do not include it. So to make Gnuastro portable, we have written our own implementation of those `pthread_barrier` functions.

At `./configure` time, Gnuastro will check if `pthread_barrier` constructs are available on your system or not. If `pthread_barrier` is not available, our internal implementation will be compiled into the Gnuastro library and the definitions and declarations below will be usable in your code with `#include <gnuastro/threads.h>`.

`pthread_barrierattr_t` [Type]
: Type to specify the attributes of a POSIX threads barrier.

`pthread_barrier_t` [Type]
: Structure defining the POSIX threads barrier.

`int` [Function]
`pthread_barrier_init (pthread_barrier_t *b, pthread_barrierattr_t *attr, unsigned int limit)`
: Initialize the barrier `b`, with the attributes `attr` and total `limit` (a number of) threads that must wait behind it. This function must be called before spinning off threads.

`int` [Function]
`pthread_barrier_wait (pthread_barrier_t *b)`
: This function is called within each thread, just before it is ready to return. Once a thread's function hits this, it will "wait" until all the other functions are also finished.

`int` [Function]
`pthread_barrier_destroy (pthread_barrier_t *b)`
: Destroy all the information in the barrier structure. This should be called by the function that spun-off the threads after all the threads have finished.

> **Destroy a barrier before re-using it:** It is very important to destroy the barrier before (possibly) reusing it. This destroy function not only destroys the internal structures, it also waits (in 1 microsecond intervals, so you will not notice!) until all the threads do not need the barrier structure any more. If you immediately start spinning off new threads with a not-destroyed barrier, then the internal structure of the remaining threads will get mixed with the new ones and you will get very strange and apparently random errors that are extremely hard to debug.

12.3.2.2 Gnuastro's thread related functions

The POSIX Threads functions offered in the C library are very low-level and offer a great range of control over the properties of the threads. So if you are interested in customizing your tools for complicated thread applications, it is strongly encouraged to get a nice

familiarity with them. Some resources were introduced in Section 12.3.2 [Multithreaded programming (`threads.h`)], page 767.

However, in many cases used in astronomical data analysis, you do not need communication between threads and each target operation can be done independently. Since such operations are very common, Gnuastro provides the tools below to facilitate the creation and management of jobs without any particular knowledge of POSIX Threads for such operations. The most interesting high-level functions of this section are the `gal_threads_number` and `gal_threads_spin_off` that identify the number of threads on the system and spin-off threads. You can see a demonstration of using these functions in Section 12.4.3 [Library demo - multi-threaded operation], page 944.

`gal_threads_params` [C `struct`]

Structure keeping the parameters of each thread. When each thread is created, a pointer to this structure is passed to it. The `params` element can be the pointer to a structure defined by the user which contains all the necessary parameters to pass onto the worker function. The rest of the elements within this structure are set internally by `gal_threads_spin_off` and are relevant to the worker function.

```
struct gal_threads_params
{
  size_t            id; /* Id of this thread.                  */
  void         *params; /* User-identified pointer.            */
  size_t       *indexs; /* Target indices given to this thread. */
  pthread_barrier_t *b; /* Barrier for all threads.            */
};
```

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_threads_number ()`

Return the number of threads that the operating system has available for your program. This number is usually fixed for a single machine and does not change. So this function is useful when you want to run your program on different machines (with different CPUs).

`void` [Function]
`gal_threads_spin_off (void *(*worker)(void *), void *caller_params, size_t numactions, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Distribute `numactions` jobs between `numthreads` threads and spin-off each thread by calling the `worker` function. The `caller_params` pointer will also be passed to `worker` as part of the `gal_threads_params` structure. For a fully working example of this function, please see Section 12.4.3 [Library demo - multi-threaded operation], page 944.

If there are many jobs (millions or billions) to organize, memory issues may become important. With `minmapsize` you can specify the minimum byte-size to allocate the necessary space in a memory-mapped file or alternatively in RAM. If `quietmmap` is non-zero, then a warning will be printed upon creating a memory-mapped file. For more on Gnuastro's memory management, see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281.

`void` [Function]
`gal_threads_attr_barrier_init (pthread_attr_t *attr, pthread_barrier_t *b, size_t limit)`

This is a low-level function in case you do not want to use `gal_threads_spin_off`. It will initialize the general thread attribute `attr` and the barrier `b` with `limit` threads to wait behind the barrier. For maximum efficiency, the threads initialized with this function will be detached. Therefore no communication is possible between these threads and in particular `pthread_join` will not work on these threads. You have to use the barrier constructs to wait for all threads to finish.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_threads_dist_in_threads (size_t numactions, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, size_t **indexs, size_t *icols)`

This is a low-level function in case you do not want to use `gal_threads_spin_off`. The job of this function is to distribute `numactions` jobs/actions in `numthreads` threads. To do this, it will assign each job an ID, ranging from 0 to `numactions`-1. The output is the allocated `*indexs` array and the `*icols` number. In memory, it is just a simple 1D array that has `numthreads` × `*icols` elements. But you can visualize it as a 2D array with `numthreads` rows and `*icols` columns. For more on the logic of the distribution, see below.

When you have millions/billions of jobs to distribute, `indexs` will become very large. For memory management (when to use a memory-mapped file, and when to use RAM), you need to specify the `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` arguments. For more on memory management, see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. In general, if your distributed jobs will not be on the scale of billions (and you want everything to always be written in RAM), just set `minmapsize=-1` and `quietmmap=1`.

When `indexs` is actually in a memory-mapped file, this function will return a string containing the name of the file (that you can later give to `gal_pointer_mmap_free` to free/delete). When `indexs` is in RAM, this function will return a `NULL` pointer. So after you are finished with `indexs`, you can free it like this:

```
char *mmapname;
int quietmmap=1;
size_t *indexs, thrdcols;
size_t numactions=5000, minmapsize=-1;
size_t numthreads=gal_threads_number();

/* Distribute the jobs. */
mmapname=gal_threads_dist_in_threads(numactions, numthreads,
                                     minmapsize, quietmmap,
                                     &indexs, &thrdcols);

/* Do any processing you want... */

/* Free the 'indexs' array. */
if(mmapname) gal_pointer_mmap_free(&mmapname, quietmmap);
else         free(indexs);
```

Here is a brief description of the reasoning behind the `indexs` array and how the jobs are distributed. Let's assume you have A actions (where there is only one function and the input values differ for each action) and T threads available to the system with $A > T$ (common values for these two would be $A > 1000$ and $T < 10$). Spinning off a thread is not a cheap job and requires a significant number of CPU cycles. Therefore, creating A threads is not the best way to address such a problem. The most efficient way to manage the actions is such that only T threads are created, and each thread works on a list of actions identified for it in series (one after the other). This way your CPU will get all the actions done with minimal overhead.

The purpose of this function is to do what we explained above: each row in the `indexs` array contains the indices of actions which must be done by one thread (so it has `numthreads` rows with `*icols` columns). However, when using `indexs`, you do not have to know the number of columns. It is guaranteed that all the rows finish with `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T` (see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779). The `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T` macro plays a role very similar to a string's `\0`: every row finishes with this macro, so can easily stop parsing the indexes in the row as soon as you confront `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T`. For some real examples, please see the example program in `tests/lib/multithread.c` for a demonstration.

12.3.3 Library data types (`type.h`)

Data in astronomy can have many types, numeric (numbers) and strings (names, identifiers). The former can also be divided into integers and floats, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, for a thorough discussion of the different numeric data types and which one is useful for different contexts.

To deal with the very large diversity of types that are available (and used in different contexts), in Gnuastro each type is identified with global integer variable with a fixed name, this variable is then passed onto functions that can work on any type or is stored in Gnuastro's Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784, as one piece of meta-data.

The actual values within these integer constants is irrelevant and you should never rely on them. When you need to check, explicitly use the named variable in the table below. If you want to check with more than one type, you can use C's `switch` statement.

Since Gnuastro heavily deals with file input-output, the types it defines are fixed width types, these types are portable to all systems and are defined in the standard C header `stdint.h`. You do not need to include this header, it is included by any Gnuastro header that deals with the different types. However, the most commonly used types in a C (or C++) program (for example, `int` or `long`) are not defined by their exact width (storage size), but by their minimum storage. So for example, on some systems, `int` may be 2 bytes (16-bits, the minimum required by the standard) and on others it may be 4 bytes (32-bits, common in modern systems).

With every type, a unique "blank" value (or place-holder showing the absence of data) can be defined. Please see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779, for constants that Gnuastro recognizes as a blank value for each type. See Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, for more explanation on the limits and particular aspects of each type.

`GAL_TYPE_INVALID` [Global integer]
This is just a place-holder to specifically mark that no type has been set.

`GAL_TYPE_BIT` [Global integer]
Identifier for a bit-stream. Currently no program in Gnuastro works directly on bits, but features will be added in the future.

`GAL_TYPE_UINT8` [Global integer]
Identifier for an unsigned, 8-bit integer type: `uint8_t` (from `stdint.h`), or an `unsigned char` in most modern systems.

`GAL_TYPE_INT8` [Global integer]
Identifier for a signed, 8-bit integer type: `int8_t` (from `stdint.h`), or an `signed char` in most modern systems.

`GAL_TYPE_UINT16` [Global integer]
Identifier for an unsigned, 16-bit integer type: `uint16_t` (from `stdint.h`), or an `unsigned short` in most modern systems.

`GAL_TYPE_INT16` [Global integer]
Identifier for a signed, 16-bit integer type: `int16_t` (from `stdint.h`), or a `short` in most modern systems.

`GAL_TYPE_UINT32` [Global integer]
Identifier for an unsigned, 32-bit integer type: `uint32_t` (from `stdint.h`), or an `unsigned int` in most modern systems.

`GAL_TYPE_INT32` [Global integer]
Identifier for a signed, 32-bit integer type: `int32_t` (from `stdint.h`), or an `int` in most modern systems.

`GAL_TYPE_UINT64` [Global integer]
Identifier for an unsigned, 64-bit integer type: `uint64_t` (from `stdint.h`), or an `unsigned long` in most modern 64-bit systems.

`GAL_TYPE_INT64` [Global integer]
Identifier for a signed, 64-bit integer type: `int64_t` (from `stdint.h`), or an `long` in most modern 64-bit systems.

`GAL_TYPE_INT` [Global integer]
Identifier for a `int` type. This is just an alias to `int16`, or `int32` types, depending on the system.

`GAL_TYPE_UINT` [Global integer]
Identifier for a `unsigned int` type. This is just an alias to `uint16`, or `uint32` types, depending on the system.

`GAL_TYPE_ULONG` [Global integer]
Identifier for a `unsigned long` type. This is just an alias to `uint32`, or `uint64` types for 32-bit, or 64-bit systems respectively.

`GAL_TYPE_LONG` [Global integer]
Identifier for a `long` type. This is just an alias to `int32`, or `int64` types for 32-bit, or 64-bit systems respectively.

`GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T` [Global integer]
Identifier for a `size_t` type. This is just an alias to `uint32`, or `uint64` types for 32-bit, or 64-bit systems respectively.

`GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32` [Global integer]
Identifier for a 32-bit single precision floating point type or `float` in C.

`GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64` [Global integer]
Identifier for a 64-bit double precision floating point type or `double` in C.

`GAL_TYPE_COMPLEX32` [Global integer]
Identifier for a complex number composed of two `float` types. Note that the complex type is not yet fully implemented in all Gnuastro's programs.

`GAL_TYPE_COMPLEX64` [Global integer]
Identifier for a complex number composed of two `double` types. Note that the complex type is not yet fully implemented in all Gnuastro's programs.

`GAL_TYPE_STRING` [Global integer]
Identifier for a string of characters (`char *`).

`GAL_TYPE_STRLL` [Global integer]
Identifier for a linked list of string of characters (`gal_list_str_t`, see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801).

The functions below are defined to make working with the integer constants above easier. In the functions below, the constants above can be used for the `type` input argument.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_type_sizeof (uint8_t type)`
Return the number of bytes occupied by `type`. Internally, this function uses C's `sizeof` operator to measure the size of each type. For strings, this function will return the size of `char *`.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_type_name (uint8_t type, int long_name)`
Return a string literal that contains the name of `type`. It can return both short and long formats of the type names (for example, `f32` and `float32`). If `long_name` is non-zero, the long format will be returned, otherwise the short name will be returned. The output string is statically allocated, so it should not be freed. This function is the inverse of the `gal_type_from_name` function. For the full list of names/strings that this function will return, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_type_from_name (char *str)`
Return the Gnuastro integer constant that corresponds to the string `str`. This function is the inverse of the `gal_type_name` function and accepts both the short and long formats of each type. For the full list of names/strings that this function will return, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

`void` [Function]
`gal_type_min (uint8_t type, void *in)`
Put the minimum possible value of `type` in the space pointed to by `in`. Since the value can have any type, this function does not return anything, it assumes the space for the given type is available to `in` and writes the value there. Here is one example

```
int32_t min;
gal_type_min(GAL_TYPE_INT32, &min);
```

Note: Do not use the minimum value for a blank value of a general (initially unknown) type, please use the constants/functions provided in Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779, for the definition and usage of blank values.

`void` [Function]
`gal_type_max (uint8_t type, void *in)`
Put the maximum possible value of `type` in the space pointed to by `in`. Since the value can have any type, this function does not return anything, it assumes the space for the given type is available to `in` and writes the value there. Here is one example

```
uint16_t max;
gal_type_max(GAL_TYPE_INT16, &max);
```

Note: Do not use the maximum value for a blank value of a general (initially unknown) type, please use the constants/functions provided in Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779, for the definition and usage of blank values.

`int` [Function]
`gal_type_is_int (uint8_t type)`
Return 1 if the type is an integer (any width and any sign).

`int` [Function]
`gal_type_is_list (uint8_t type)`
Return 1 if the type is a linked list and zero otherwise.

`int` [Function]
`gal_type_out (int first_type, int second_type)`
Return the larger of the two given types which can be used for the type of the output of an operation involving the two input types.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_type_bit_string (void *in, size_t size)`
Return the bit-string in the `size` bytes that `in` points to. The string is dynamically allocated and must be freed afterwards. You can use it to inspect the bits within one region of memory. Here is one short example:

```
int32_t a=2017;
char *bitstr=gal_type_bit_string(&a, 4);
printf("%d: %s (%X)\n", a, bitstr, a);
free(bitstr);
```

which will produce:

```
2017: 11100001000001110000000000000000  (7E1)
```

As the example above shows, the bit-string is not the most efficient way to inspect bits. If you are familiar with hexadecimal notation, it is much more compact, see `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hexadecimal`. You can use `printf`'s `%x` or `%X` to print integers in hexadecimal format.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_type_to_string (void *ptr, uint8_t type, int quote_if_str_has_space);`

Read the contents of the memory that `ptr` points to (assuming it has type `type` and print it into an allocated string which is returned.

If the memory is a string of characters and `quote_if_str_has_space` is non-zero, the output string will have double-quotes around it if it contains space characters. Also, note that in this case, `ptr` must be a pointer to an array of characters (or `char **`), as in the example below (which will put `"sample string"` into `out`):

```
char *out, *string="sample string"
out = gal_type_to_string(&string, GAL_TYPE_STRING, 1);
```

`int` [Function]
`gal_type_from_string (void **out, char *string, uint8_t type)`

Read a string as a given data type and put a pointer to it in `*out`. When `*out!=NULL`, then it is assumed to be already allocated and the value will be simply put there. If `*out==NULL`, then space will be allocated for the given type and the string will be read into that type.

Note that when we are dealing with a string type, `*out` should be interpreted as `char **` (one element in an array of pointers to different strings). In other words, `out` should be `char ***`.

This function can be used to fill in arrays of numbers from strings (in an already allocated data structure), or add nodes to a linked list (if the type is a list type). For an array, you have to pass the pointer to the `i`th element where you want the value to be stored, for example, `&(array[i])`.

If the string was successfully parsed to the requested type, this function will return a `0` (zero), otherwise it will return `1` (one). This output format will help you check the status of the conversion in a code like the example below where we will try reading a string as a single precision floating point number.

```
float out;
void *outptr=&out;
if( gal_type_from_string(&outptr, string, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32) )
  {
    fprintf(stderr, "%s could not be read as float32\n", string);
    exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
  }
```

When you need to read many numbers into an array, `out` would be an array, and you can simply increment `outptr=out+i` (where you increment `i`).

`void *` [Function]
`gal_type_string_to_number (char *string, uint8_t *type)`

Read `string` into smallest type that can host the number, the allocated space for the number will be returned and the type of the number will be put into the memory that `type` points to. If `string` could not be read as a number, this function will return `NULL`.

This function first calls the C library's `strtod` function to read `string` as a double-precision floating point number. When successful, it will check the value to put it in the smallest numerical data type that can handle it; for example, `120` and `50000` will be read as a signed 8-bit integer and unsigned 16-bit integer types. When reading as an integer, the C library's `strtol` function is used (in base-10) to parse the string again. This re-parsing as an integer is necessary because integers with many digits (for example, the Unix epoch seconds) will not be accurately stored as a floating point and we cannot use the result of `strtod`.

When `string` is successfully parsed as a number *and* there is `.` in `string`, it will force the number into floating point types. For example, `"5"` is read as an integer, while `"5."` or `"5.0"`, or `"5.00"` will be read as a floating point (single-precision).

For floating point types, this function will count the number of significant digits and determine if the given string is single or double precision as described in Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

For integers, negative numbers will always be placed in signed types (as expected). If a positive integer falls below the maximum of a signed type of a certain width, it will be signed (for example, `10` and `150` will be defined as a signed and unsigned 8-bit integer respectively). In other words, even though `10` can be unsigned, it will be read as a signed 8-bit integer. This is done to respect the C implicit type conversion in binary operators, where signed integers will be interpreted as unsigned, when the other operand is an unsigned integer of the same width.

For example, see the short program below. It will print `-50 is larger than 100000` (which is wrong!). This happens because when a negative number is parsed as an unsigned, the value is effectively subtracted from the maximum and $4294967295 - 50$ is indeed larger than 100000 (recall that 4294967295 is the largest unsigned 32-bit integer, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <stdint.h>

int
main(void)
{
  int32_t  a=-50;
  uint32_t b=100000;
  printf("%d is %s than %d\n", a,
         a>b ? "larger" : "less or equal", b);
  return 0;
}
```

However, if we read 100000 as a signed 32-bit integer, there will not be any problem and the printed sentence will be logically correct (for someone who does not know anything about numeric data types: users of your programs). For the advantages of integers, see Section 6.2.2 [Integer benefits and pitfalls], page 406.

12.3.4 Pointers (`pointer.h`)

Pointers play an important role in the C programming language. As the name suggests, they *point* to a byte in memory (like an address in a city). The C programming language gives you complete freedom in how to use the byte (and the bytes that follow it). Pointers are thus a very powerful feature of C. However, as the saying goes: "With great power comes great responsibility", so they must be approached with care. The functions in this header are not very complex, they are just wrappers over some basic pointer functionality regarding pointer arithmetic and allocation (in memory or HDD/SSD).

`void *` [Function]
`gal_pointer_increment (void *pointer, size_t increment, uint8_t type)`

Return a pointer to an element that is `increment` elements ahead of `pointer`, assuming each element has type of `type`. For the type codes, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771.

When working with the `array` elements of `gal_data_t`, we are actually dealing with `void *` pointers. However, pointer arithmetic does not apply to `void *`, because the system does not know how many bytes there are in each element to increment the pointer respectively. This function will use the given `type` to calculate where the incremented element is located in memory.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_pointer_num_between (void *earlier, void *later, uint8_t type)`

Return the number of elements (in the given `type`) between `earlier` and `later`. For the type codes, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771).

`void *` [Function]
`gal_pointer_allocate (uint8_t type, size_t size, int clear, const char *funcname, const char *varname)`

Allocate an array of type `type` with `size` elements in RAM (for the type codes, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771). If `clear!=0`, then the allocated space is set to zero (cleared).

This is effectively just a wrapper around C's `malloc` or `calloc` functions but takes Gnuastro's integer type codes and will also abort with a clear error if there the allocation was not successful. The number of allocated bytes is the value given to `size` that is multiplied by the returned value of `gal_type_sizeof` for the given type. So if you want to allocate space for an array of strings you should pass the type `GAL_TYPE_STRING`. Otherwise, if you just want space for one string (for example, 6 bytes for `hello`, including the string-termination character), you should set the type `GAL_TYPE_UINT8`.

When space cannot be allocated, this function will abort the program with a message containing the reason for the failure. `funcname` (name of the function calling this function) and `varname` (name of variable that needs this space) will be used in this

error message if they are not `NULL`. In most modern compilers, you can use the generic `__func__` variable for `funcname`. In this way, you do not have to manually copy and paste the function name or worry about it changing later (`__func__` was standardized in C99). To use this function effectively and avoid memory leaks, make sure to free the allocated array after you are done with it. Also, be mindful of any functions that make use of this function as they should also free any allocated arrays to maintain memory management and prevent issues with the system.

```
void *                                                          [Function]
gal_pointer_allocate_ram_or_mmap (uint8_t type, size_t size, int
        clear, size_t minmapsize, char **mmapname, int quietmmap,
        const char *funcname, const char *varname)
```

Allocate the given space either in RAM or in a memory-mapped file. This function is just a high-level wrapper to `gal_pointer_allocate` (to allocate in RAM) or `gal_pointer_mmap_allocate` (to use a memory-mapped file). For more on memory management in Gnuastro, please see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. The various arguments are more fully explained in the two functions above.

```
void *                                                          [Function]
gal_pointer_mmap_allocate (size_t size, uint8_t type, int clear, char
        **mmapname, int allocfailed)
```

Allocate the necessary space to keep `size` elements of type `type` in HDD/SSD (a file, not in RAM). For the type codes, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771. If `clear!=0`, then the allocated space will also be cleared. The allocation is done using C's `mmap` function. The name of the file containing the allocated space is an allocated string that will be put in `*mmapname`.

Note that the kernel does not allow an infinite number of memory mappings to files. So it is not recommended to use this function with every allocation. The best-case scenario to use this function is for arrays that are very large and can fill up the RAM. Keep the smaller arrays in RAM, which is faster and can have a (theoretically) unlimited number of allocations.

When you are done with the dataset and do not need it anymore, do not use `free` (the dataset is not in RAM). Just delete the file (and the allocated space for the filename) with the commands below, or simply use `gal_pointer_mmap_free`.

```
remove(mmapname);
free(mmapname);
```

If `allocfailed!=0` and the memory mapping attempt fails, the warning message will say something like this (assuming you have tried something like `malloc` before calling this function): even though there was enough space in RAM, the previous attempts at allocation in RAM failed, so we tried memory mapping, but that also failed.

```
void                                                            [Function]
gal_pointer_mmap_free (char **mmapname, int quietmmap)
```

"Free" (actually delete) the memory-mapped file that is named `*mmapname`, then free the string. If `quietmmap` is non-zero, then a warning will be printed for the user to know that the given file has been deleted.

12.3.5 Library blank values (`blank.h`)

When the position of an element in a dataset is important (for example, a pixel in an image), a place-holder is necessary for the element if we do not have a value to fill it with (for example, the CCD cannot read those pixels). We cannot simply shift all the other pixels to fill in the one we have no value for. In other cases, it often occurs that the field of sky that you are studying is not a clean rectangle to nicely fit into the boundaries of an image. You need a way to separate the pixels outside your scientific field from those inside it. Blank values act as these place holders in a dataset. They have no usable value but they have a position.

Every type needs a corresponding blank value (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, and Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771). Floating point types have a unique value identified by IEEE known as Not-a-Number (or NaN) which is a unique value that is recognized by the compiler. However, integer and string types do not have any standard value. For integers, in Gnuastro we take an extremum of the given type: for signed types (that allow negatives), the minimum possible value is used as blank and for unsigned types (that only accept positives), the maximum possible value is used. To be generic and easy to read/write we define a macro for these blank values and strongly encourage you only use these, and never make any assumption on the value of a type's blank value.

The IEEE NaN blank value type is defined to fail on any comparison, so if you are dealing with floating point types, you cannot use equality (a NaN will *not* be equal to a NaN). If you know your dataset is floating point, you can use the `isnan` function in C's `math.h` header. For a description of numeric data types see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. For the constants identifying integers, please see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771.

`GAL_BLANK_UINT8` [Global integer]
: Blank value for an unsigned, 8-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_INT8` [Global integer]
: Blank value for a signed, 8-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_UINT16` [Global integer]
: Blank value for an unsigned, 16-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_INT16` [Global integer]
: Blank value for a signed, 16-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_UINT32` [Global integer]
: Blank value for an unsigned, 32-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_INT32` [Global integer]
: Blank value for a signed, 32-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_UINT64` [Global integer]
: Blank value for an unsigned, 64-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_INT64` [Global integer]
: Blank value for a signed, 64-bit integer.

`GAL_BLANK_INT` [Global integer]
Blank value for `int` type (`int16_t` or `int32_t` depending on the system.

`GAL_BLANK_UINT` [Global integer]
Blank value for `int` type (`int16_t` or `int32_t` depending on the system.

`GAL_BLANK_LONG` [Global integer]
Blank value for `long` type (`int32_t` or `int64_t` in 32-bit or 64-bit systems).

`GAL_BLANK_ULONG` [Global integer]
Blank value for `unsigned long` type (`uint32_t` or `uint64_t` in 32-bit or 64-bit systems).

`GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T` [Global integer]
Blank value for `size_t` type (`uint32_t` or `uint64_t` in 32-bit or 64-bit systems).

`GAL_BLANK_FLOAT32` [Global integer]
Blank value for a single precision, 32-bit floating point type (IEEE NaN value).

`GAL_BLANK_FLOAT64` [Global integer]
Blank value for a double precision, 64-bit floating point type (IEEE NaN value).

`GAL_BLANK_STRING` [Global integer]
Blank value for string types (this is itself a string, it is not the `NULL` pointer).

The functions below can be used to work with blank pixels.

`void` [Function]
`gal_blank_write (void *pointer, uint8_t type)`
Write the blank value for the given `type` into the space that `pointer` points to. This can be used when the space is already allocated (for example, one element in an array or a statically allocated variable).

`void *` [Function]
`gal_blank_alloc_write (uint8_t type)`
Allocate the space required to keep the blank for the given data type `type`, write the blank value into it and return the pointer to it.

`void` [Function]
`gal_blank_initialize (gal_data_t *input)`
Initialize all the elements in the `input` dataset to the blank value that corresponds to its type. If `input` is not a string, and is a tile over a larger dataset, only the region that the tile covers will be set to blank. For strings, the full dataset will be initialized.

`void` [Function]
`gal_blank_initialize_array (void *array, size_t size, uint8_t type)`
Initialize all the elements in the `array` to the blank value that corresponds to its type (identified with `type`), assuming the array has `size` elements.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_blank_as_string (uint8_t type, int width)`

Write the blank value for the given data type `type` into a string and return it. The space for the string is dynamically allocated so it must be freed after you are done with it. If `width!=0`, then the final string will be padded with white space characters to have the requested width if it is smaller.

`int` [Function]
`gal_blank_is (void *pointer, uint8_t type)`

Return 1 if the contents of `pointer` (assuming a type of `type`) is blank. Otherwise, return 0. Note that this function only works on one element of the given type. So if `pointer` is an array, only its first element will be checked. Therefore for strings, the type of `pointer` is assumed to be `char *`. To check if an array/dataset has blank elements or to find which elements in an array are blank, you can use `gal_blank_present` or `gal_blank_flag` respectively (described below).

`int` [Function]
`gal_blank_present (gal_data_t *input, int updateflag)`

Return 1 if the dataset has a blank value and zero if it does not. Before checking the dataset, this function will look at `input`'s flags. If the `GAL_DATA_FLAG_BLANK_CH` bit of `input->flag` is on, this function will not do any check and will just use the information in the flags. This can greatly speed up processing when a dataset needs to be checked multiple times.

When the dataset's flags were not used and `updateflags` is non-zero, this function will set the flags appropriately to avoid having to re-check the dataset in future calls. When `updateflags==0`, this function has no side-effects on the dataset: it will not toggle the flags.

If you want to re-check a dataset with the blank-value-check flag already set (for example, if you have made changes to it), then explicitly set the `GAL_DATA_FLAG_BLANK_CH` bit to zero before calling this function. When there are no other flags, you can just set the flags to zero (`input->flag=0`), otherwise you can use this expression:

```
input->flag &= ~GAL_DATA_FLAG_BLANK_CH;
```

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_blank_number (gal_data_t *input, int updateflag)`

Return the number of blank elements in `input`. If `updateflag!=0`, then the dataset blank keyword flags will be updated. See the description of `gal_blank_present` (above) for more on these flags. If `input==NULL`, then this function will return `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_blank_flag (gal_data_t *input)`

Return a "flag" dataset with the same size as the input, but with an `uint8_t` type that has a value of 1 for data elements that are blank and 0 for those that are not.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_blank_flag_not (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a "flag" dataset with the same size as the input, but with an `uint8_t` type that has a value of 1 for data elements that are *not* blank and 0 for those that are blank.

`size_t *` [Function]
`gal_blank_not_minmax_coords (gal_data_t *input)`
Find the minimum and maximum coordinates of the non-blank regions within the input dataset. The coordinates are in C order: starting from 0, and with the slowest dimension being first. The output is an allocated array (that should be freed later) with $2 \times N$ elements (N is the number of dimensions). The first two elements contain the minimum and maximum of regions containing non-blank elements along the 0-th dimension (the slowest), the second two elements contain the next dimension's extrema; and so on.

When all the elements/pixels of the input are blank, the all the elements of the output will have a value of 0.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_blank_trim (gal_data_t *input, int inplace)`
Trim all the outer layers of blank values from the input dataset. For example in the 2D image, "layers" would correspond to columns or rows that are fully blank and touching the edge of the image. For a more complete description, see the description of the `trim` operator in Section 6.2.4.11 [Dimensionality changing operators], page 439.

`void` [Function]
`gal_blank_flag_apply (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *flag)`
Set all non-zero and non-blank elements of `flag` to blank in `input`. `flag` has to have an unsigned 8-bit type and be the same size as `input`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_blank_flag_remove (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *flag)`
Remove all elements within `input` that are flagged, convert it to a 1D dataset and adjust the size properly (the number of non-flagged elements). In practice this function does not`realloc` the input array (see `gal_blank_remove_realloc` for shrinking/reallocating also), it just shifts the blank elements to the end and adjusts the size elements of the `gal_data_t`, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

Note that elements that are blank, but not flagged will not be removed. This function will only remove flagged elements.

If all the elements were flagged, then `input->size` will be zero. This is thus a good parameter to check after calling this function to see if there actually were any non-flagged elements in the input or not and take the appropriate measure. This check is highly recommended because it will avoid strange bugs in later steps.

`void` [Function]
`gal_blank_remove (gal_data_t *input, int free_if_all_blank)`
Remove blank elements from a dataset, convert it to a 1D dataset, adjust the size properly (the number of non-blank elements), and toggle the blank-value-related bit-

flags. In practice this function does notrealloc the input array (see gal_blank_remove_realloc for shrinking/re-allocating also), it just shifts the blank elements to the end and adjusts the size elements of the gal_data_t, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (gal_data_t)], page 784.

If all the elements were blank, then input->size will be zero. In case free_if_all_blank==1 is also zero, then input->array will also be freed and set to NULL. To see if there actually were any non-blank elements in the input or not and take the appropriate measure, the most generic parameter to check after calling this function is therefore input->size. This check is highly recommended in followup functions because it will avoid strange bugs in later steps of your code (reading a possibly freed space!).

void [Function]
gal_blank_remove_realloc (gal_data_t *input)

Similar to gal_blank_remove, but also shrinks/re-allocates the dataset's allocated memory.

gal_data_t * [Function]
gal_blank_remove_rows (gal_data_t *columns, gal_list_sizet_t *column_indexs, int onlydim0)

Remove (in place) any row that has at least one blank value in any of the input columns and return a "flag" dataset (that should be freed later). The input columns is a list of gal_data_ts (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of gal_data_t], page 812). When onlydim0!=0 the vector columns (with 2 dimensions) will not be checked for the presence of blank values.

After this function, all the elements in columns will still have the same size as each other, but if any of the searched columns has blank elements, all their sizes will decrease together.

The returned flag dataset has the same size as the original input dataset, with a type of uint8_t. Every row that has been removed from the original dataset has a value of 1, and the rest have a value of 0.

When column_indexs!=NULL, only the columns whose index (counting from zero) is in column_indexs will be used to check for blank values (see Section 12.3.8.3 [List of size_t], page 804. Therefore, if you want to check all columns, just set this to NULL. In any case (no matter which columns are checked for blanks), the selected rows from all columns will be removed.

12.3.6 Data container (data.h)

Astronomical datasets have various dimensions, for example, 1D spectra or table columns, 2D images, or 3D Integral field data cubes. Datasets can also have various numeric data types, depending on the operation/purpose, for example, processed images are commonly stored in floating point format, but their mask images are integers (allowing bitwise flags to identify certain classes of pixels to keep or mask, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). Certain other information about a dataset are also commonly necessary, for example, the units of the dataset, the name of the dataset and some comments. To deal with any generic dataset, Gnuastro defines the gal_data_t as input or output.

12.3.6.1 Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)

To be able to deal with any dataset (various dimensions, numeric data types, units and higher-level structures), Gnuastro defines the `gal_data_t` type which is the input/output container of choice for many of Gnuastro library's functions. It is defined in `gnuastro/data.h`. If you will be using ('`# include`'ing) those libraries, you do not need to include this header explicitly, it is already included by any library header that uses `gal_data_t`.

`gal_data_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

The main container for datasets in Gnuastro. It can host data of any dimensions, with any numeric data type. It is actually a structure, but `typedef`'d as a new type to avoid having to write the `struct` before any declaration. The actual structure is shown below which is followed by a description of each element.

```
typedef struct gal_data_t
{
  void     *restrict array;  /* Basic array information.   */
  uint8_t             type;
  size_t              ndim;
  size_t            *dsize;
  size_t              size;
  int            quietmmap;
  char           *mmapname;
  size_t        minmapsize;

  int                 nwcs;  /* WCS information.           */
  struct wcsprm       *wcs;

  uint8_t             flag;  /* Content description.       */
  int               status;
  char               *name;
  char               *unit;
  char            *comment;

  int              disp_fmt;  /* For text printing.         */
  int            disp_width;
  int       disp_precision;

  struct gal_data_t  *next;  /* For higher-level datasets. */
  struct gal_data_t *block;
} gal_data_t;
```

The list below contains a description for each `gal_data_t` element.

`void *restrict array`

This is the pointer to the main array of the dataset containing the raw data (values). All the other elements in this data-structure are actually meta-data enabling us to use/understand the series of values in this array. It must allow data of any type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), so it is defined

as a `void *` pointer. A `void *` array is not directly usable in C, so you have to cast it to proper type before using it, please see Section 12.4.1 [Library demo - reading a FITS image], page 941, for a demonstration.

The `restrict` keyword was formally introduced in C99 and is used to tell the compiler that at any moment only this pointer will modify what it points to (a pixel in an image for example)[15]. This extra piece of information can greatly help in compiler optimizations and thus the running time of the program. But older compilers might not have this capability, so at `./configure` time, Gnuastro checks this feature and if the user's compiler does not support `restrict`, it will be removed from this definition.

`uint8_t type`
: A fixed code (integer) used to identify the type of data in `array` (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). For the list of acceptable values to this variable, please see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771.

`size_t ndim`
: The dataset's number of dimensions.

`size_t *dsize`
: The size of the dataset along each dimension. This is an array (with `ndim` elements), of positive integers in row-major order[16] (based on C). When a data file is read into memory with Gnuastro's libraries, this array is dynamically allocated based on the number of dimensions that the dataset has.

  It is important to remember that C's row-major ordering is the opposite of the FITS standard which is in column-major order: in the FITS standard the fastest dimension's size is specified by `NAXIS1`, and slower dimensions follow. The FITS standard was defined mainly based on the FORTRAN language which is the opposite of C's approach to multi-dimensional arrays (and also starts counting from 1 not 0). Hence if a FITS image has `NAXIS1==20` and `NAXIS2==50`, the `dsize` array must be filled with `dsize[0]==50` and `dsize[1]==20`.

  The fastest dimension is the one that is contiguous in memory: to increment by one along that dimension, just go to the next element in the array. As we go to slower dimensions, the number of memory cells we have to skip for an increment along that dimension becomes larger.

`size_t size`
: The total number of elements in the dataset. This is actually a multiplication of all the values in the `dsize` array, so it is not an independent parameter. However, low-level operations with the dataset (irrespective of its dimensions) commonly need this number, so this element is designed to avoid calculating it every time.

`int quietmmap`
: When this value is zero, and the dataset must not be allocated in RAM (see `mmapname` and `minmapsize` below), a warning will be printed to inform the

[15] Also see `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Restrict`.

[16] Also see `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Row-_and_column-major_order`.

user when the file is created and when it is deleted. The warning includes the filename, the size in bytes, and the fact that they can toggle this behavior through `--minmapsize` option in Gnuastro's programs.

`char *mmapname`
: Name of file hosting the `mmap`'d contents of `array`. If the value of this variable is `NULL`, then the contents of `array` are actually stored in RAM, not in a file on the HDD/SSD. See the description of `minmapsize` below for more.

  If a file is used, it will be kept in the `gnuastro_mmap` directory of the running directory. Its name is randomly selected to allow multiple arrays at the same time, see description of `--minmapsize` in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257. When `gal_data_free` is called the randomly named file will be deleted.

`size_t minmapsize`
: The minimum size of an array (in bytes) to store the contents of `array` as a file (on the non-volatile HDD/SSD), not in RAM. This can be very useful for large datasets which can be very memory intensive and the user's RAM might not be sufficient to keep/process it. A random filename is assigned to the array which is available in the `mmapname` element of `gal_data_t` (above), see there for more. `minmapsize` is stored in each `gal_data_t`, so it can be passed on to subsequent/derived datasets.

  See the description of the `--minmapsize` option in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257, for more on using this value.

`nwcs`
: The number of WCS coordinate representations (for WCSLIB).

`struct wcsprm *wcs`
: The main WCSLIB structure keeping all the relevant information necessary for WCSLIB to do its processing and convert data-set positions into real-world positions. When it is given a `NULL` value, all possible WCS calculations/measurements will be ignored.

`uint8_t flag`
: Bitwise flags to describe general properties of the dataset. The number of bytes available in this flag is stored in the `GAL_DATA_FLAG_SIZE` macro. Note that you should use bitwise operators[17] to check these flags. The currently recognized bits are stored in these macros:

  `GAL_DATA_FLAG_BLANK_CH`
  : Marking that the dataset has been checked for blank values or not. When a dataset does not have any blank values, the `GAL_DATA_FLAG_HASBLANK` bit will be zero. But upon initialization, all bits also get a value of zero. Therefore, a checker needs this flag to see if the value in `GAL_DATA_FLAG_HASBLANK` is reliable (dataset has actually been parsed for a blank value) or not.

    Also, if it is necessary to re-check the presence of flags, you just have to set this flag to zero and call `gal_blank_present` for example,

[17] See `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bitwise_operations_in_C`.

to parse the dataset and check for blank values. Note that for improved efficiency, when this flag is set, `gal_blank_present` will not actually parse the dataset, it will just use `GAL_DATA_FLAG_HASBLANK`.

`GAL_DATA_FLAG_HASBLANK`
This bit has a value of `1` when the given dataset has blank values. If this bit is `0` and `GAL_DATA_FLAG_BLANK_CH` is `1`, then the dataset has been checked and it did not have any blank values, so there is no more need for further checks.

`GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORT_CH`
Marking that the dataset is already checked for being sorted or not and thus that the possible `0` values in `GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORTED_I` and `GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORTED_D` are meaningful. The logic behind this is similar to that in `GAL_DATA_FLAG_BLANK_CH`.

`GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORTED_I`
This bit has a value of `1` when the given dataset is sorted in an increasing manner. If this bit is `0` and `GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORT_CH` is `1`, then the dataset has been checked and was not sorted (increasing), so there is no more need for further checks.

`GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORTED_D`
This bit has a value of `1` when the given dataset is sorted in a decreasing manner. If this bit is `0` and `GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORT_CH` is `1`, then the dataset has been checked and was not sorted (decreasing), so there is no more need for further checks.

The macro `GAL_DATA_FLAG_MAXFLAG` contains the largest internally used bit-position. Higher-level flags can be defined with the bitwise shift operators using this macro to define internal flags for libraries/programs that depend on Gnuastro without causing any possible conflict with the internal flags discussed above or having to check the values manually on every release.

`int status`
A context-specific status values for this data-structure. This integer will not be set by Gnuastro's libraries. You can use it keep some additional information about the dataset (with integer constants) depending on your applications.

`char *name`
The name of the dataset. If the dataset is a multi-dimensional array and read/written as a FITS image, this will be the value in the `EXTNAME` FITS keyword. If the dataset is a one-dimensional table column, this will be the column name. If it is set to `NULL` (by default), it will be ignored.

`char *unit`
The units of the dataset (for example, `BUNIT` in the standard FITS keywords) that will be read from or written to files/tables along with the dataset. If it is set to `NULL` (by default), it will be ignored.

`char *comment`
: Any further explanation about the dataset which will be written to any output file if present.

`disp_fmt` Format to use for printing each element of the dataset to a plain text file, the acceptable values to this element are defined in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816. Based on C's `printf` standards.

`disp_width`
: Width of printing each element of the dataset to a plain text file, the acceptable values to this element are defined in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816. Based on C's `printf` standards.

`disp_precision`
: Precision of printing each element of the dataset to a plain text file, the acceptable values to this element are defined in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816. Based on C's `printf` standards.

`gal_data_t *next`
: Through this pointer, you can link a `gal_data_t` with other datasets related datasets, for example, the different columns in a dataset each have one `gal_data_t` associate with them and they are linked to each other using this element. There are several functions described below to facilitate using `gal_data_t` as a linked list. See Section 12.3.8 [Linked lists (`list.h`)], page 800, for more on these wonderful high-level constructs.

`gal_data_t *block`
: Pointer to the start of the complete allocated block of memory. When this pointer is not `NULL`, the dataset is not treated as a contiguous patch of memory. Rather, it is seen as covering only a portion of the larger patch of memory that `block` points to. See Section 12.3.15 [Tessellation library (`tile.h`)], page 867, for a more thorough explanation and functions to help work with tiles that are created from this pointer.

12.3.6.2 Dataset allocation

Gnuastro's main data container was defined in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. The functions listed in this section describe the most basic operations on `gal_data_t`: those related to allocation and freeing. These functions are declared in `gnuastro/data.h` which is also visible from the function names (see Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_data_alloc (void *array, uint8_t type, size_t ndim, size_t *dsize, struct wcsprm *wcs, int clear, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *name, char *unit, char *comment)`

Dynamically allocate a `gal_data_t` and initialize it will all the given values. See the description of `gal_data_initialize` and Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784, for more information. This function will often be the most frequently used because it allocates the `gal_data_t` hosting all the values *and* initializes it. Once you are done with the dataset, be sure to clean up all the allocated spaces with `gal_data_free`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_data_initialize (gal_data_t *data, void *array, uint8_t type, size_t ndim, size_t *dsize, struct wcsprm *wcs, int clear, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *name, char *unit, char *comment)`

Initialize the given data structure (`data`) with all the given values. Note that the raw input `gal_data_t` must already have been allocated before calling this function. For a description of each variable see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. It will set the values and do the necessary allocations. If they are not `NULL`, all input arrays (`dsize`, `wcs`, `name`, `unit`, `comment`) are separately copied (allocated) by this function for usage in `data`, so you can safely use one value to initialize many datasets or use statically allocated variables in this function call. Once you are done with the dataset, you can free all the allocated spaces with `gal_data_free_contents`.

If `array` is not `NULL`, it will be directly copied into `data->array` (based on the total number of elements calculated from `dsize`) and no new space will be allocated for the array of this dataset, this has many low-level advantages and can be used to work on regions of a dataset instead of the whole allocated array (see the description under `block` in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784, for one example). If the given pointer is not the start of an allocated block of memory or it is used in multiple datasets, be sure to set it to `NULL` (with `data->array=NULL`) before cleaning up with `gal_data_free_contents`.

`ndim` may be zero. In this case no allocation will occur, `data->array` and `data->dsize` will be set to `NULL` and `data->size` will be zero. However (when necessary) `dsize` must not have any zero values (a dimension of length zero is not defined).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_data_alloc_empty (size_t ndim, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Allocate an empty dataset with a certain number of dimensions, but no 'array' component. The `size` element will be set to zero and the `dsize` array will be properly allocated (based on the number of dimensions), but all elements will be zero. This is useful in scenarios where you just need a `gal_data_t` for metadata.

`void` [Function]
`gal_data_free_contents (gal_data_t *data)`

Free all the non-`NULL` pointers in `gal_data_t` except for `next` and `block`. All freed arrays are set to `NULL`. If `data` is actually a tile (`data->block!=NULL`, see Section 12.3.15 [Tessellation library (`tile.h`)], page 867), then `data->array` is not freed. For a complete description of `gal_data_t` and its contents, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

`void` [Function]
`gal_data_free (gal_data_t *data)`

Free all the non-`NULL` pointers in `gal_data_t`, then free the actual data structure.

12.3.6.3 Arrays of datasets

Gnuastro's generic data container (`gal_data_t`) is a very versatile structure that can be used in many higher-level contexts. One such higher-level construct is an array of `gal_`

`data_t` structures to simplify the allocation (and later cleaning) of several `gal_data_t`s that are related.

For example, each column in a table is usually represented by one `gal_data_t` (so it has its own name, data type, units, etc.). A table (with many columns) can be seen as an array of `gal_data_t`s (when the number of columns is known a-priori). The functions below are defined to create a cleared array of data structures and to free them when none are necessary any more. These functions are declared in `gnuastro/data.h` which is also visible from the function names (see Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_data_array_calloc (size_t size)`

Allocate an array of `gal_data_t` with `size` elements. This function will also initialize all the values (`NULL` for pointers and 0 for other types). You can use `gal_data_initialize` to fill each element of the array afterwards. The following code snippet is one example of doing this.

```
size_t i;
gal_data_t *dataarr;
dataarr=gal_data_array_calloc(10);
for(i=0;i<10;++i) gal_data_initialize(&dataarr[i], ...);
...
gal_data_array_free(dataarr, 10, 1);
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_data_array_free (gal_data_t *dataarr, size_t num, int free_array)`

Free all the `num` elements within `dataarr` and the actual allocated array. If `free_array` is not zero, then the `array` element of all the datasets will also be freed, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

`gal_data_t **` [Function]
`gal_data_array_ptr_calloc (size_t size)`

Allocate an array of pointers to Gnuastro's generic data structure and initialize all pointers to `NULL`. This is useful when you want to allocate individual datasets later (for example, with `gal_data_alloc`).

`void` [Function]
`gal_data_array_ptr_free (gal_data_t **dataptr, size_t size, int free_array);`

Free all the individual datasets within the elements of `dataptr`, then free `dataptr` itself (the array of pointers that was probably allocated with `gal_data_array_ptr_calloc`.

12.3.6.4 Copying datasets

The functions in this section describes Gnuastro's facilities to copy a given dataset into another. The new dataset can have a different type (including a string), it can be already allocated (in which case only the values will be written into it). In all these cases, if the input dataset is a tile or a list, only the data within the given tile, or the given node in a list, are copied. If the input is a list, the `next` pointer will also be copied to the output, see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812.

In many of the functions here, it is possible to copy the dataset to a new numeric data type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. In such cases, Gnuastro's library is going to use the native conversion by C. So if you are converting to a smaller type, it is up to you to make sure that the values fit into the output type.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_data_copy (gal_data_t *in)`
Return a new dataset that is a copy of `in`, all of `in`'s meta-data will also copied into the output, except for `block`. If the dataset is a tile/list, only the given tile/node will be copied, the `next` pointer will also be copied however.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_data_copy_to_new_type (gal_data_t *in, uint8_t newtype)`
Return a copy of the dataset `in`, converted to `newtype`, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771, for Gnuastro library's type identifiers. The returned dataset will have all meta-data except their type and `block` equal to the input's metadata. If the dataset is a tile/list, only the given tile/node will be copied, the `next` pointer will also be copied however.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_data_copy_to_new_type_free (gal_data_t *in, uint8_t newtype)`
Return a copy of the dataset `in` that is converted to `newtype` and free the input dataset. See Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771, for Gnuastro library's type identifiers. The returned dataset will have all meta-data, except their type, equal to the input's metadata (including `next`). Note that if the input is a tile within a larger block, it will not be freed. This function is similar to `gal_data_copy_to_new_type`, except that it will free the input dataset.

`void` [Function]
`gal_data_copy_to_allocated (gal_data_t *in, gal_data_t *out)`
Copy the contents of the array in `in` into the already allocated array in `out`. The types of the input and output may be different, type conversion will be done internally. When `in->size != out->size` this function will behave as follows:

`out->size < in->size`
This function will not re-allocate the necessary space, it will abort with an error, so please check before calling this function.

`out->size > in->size`
This function will write the values in `out->size` and `out->dsize` from the same values of `in`. So if you want to use a pre-allocated space/dataset multiple times with varying input sizes, be sure to reset `out->size` before every call to this function.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_data_copy_string_to_number (char *string)`
Read `string` into the smallest type that can store the value (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). This function is just a wrapper for the `gal_type_string_to_number`, but will put the value into a single-element dataset.

`void` [Function]
`gal_data_append_second_array_to_first_free (gal_data_t *a, gal_data_t *b)`

Append the contents of `a->array` and `b->array` into an internal array, and replace it with `a->array`. Finally, free `b`. Both inputs have to have the same type and have to have a single dimension.

12.3.7 Dimensions (`dimension.h`)

An array is a contiguous region of memory. Hence, at the lowest level, every element of an array just has one single-valued position: the number of elements that lie between it and the first element in the array. This is also known as the *index* of the element within the array. A dataset's number of dimensions is high-level abstraction (meta-data) that we project onto that contiguous patch of memory. When the array is interpreted as a one-dimensional dataset, this index is also the *coordinate* of the element. But once we associate the patch of memory with a higher dimension, there must also be one coordinate for each dimension.

The functions and macros in this section provide you with the tools to convert an index into a coordinate and vice-versa along with several other issues for example, issues with the neighbors of an element in a multi-dimensional context.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_dimension_total_size (size_t ndim, size_t *dsize)`

Return the total number of elements for a dataset with `ndim` dimensions that has `dsize` elements along each dimension.

`int` [Function]
`gal_dimension_is_different (gal_data_t *first, gal_data_t *second)`

Return `1` (one) if the two datasets do not have the same size along all dimensions. This function will also return `1` when the number of dimensions of the two datasets are different.

`size_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_increment (size_t ndim, size_t *dsize)`

Return an allocated array that has the number of elements necessary to increment an index along every dimension. For example, along the fastest dimension (last element in the `dsize` and returned arrays), the value is `1` (one).

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_dimension_num_neighbors (size_t ndim)`

The maximum number of neighbors (any connectivity) that a data element can have in `ndim` dimensions. Effectively, this function just returns $3^n - 1$ (where n is the number of dimensions).

`GAL_DIMENSION_FLT_TO_INT (FLT)` [Function-like macro]

Calculate the integer pixel position that the floating point `FLT` number belongs to. In the FITS format (and thus in Gnuastro), the center of each pixel is allocated on an integer (not it edge), so the pixel which hosts a floating point number cannot simply be found with internal type conversion.

`void` [Function]
`gal_dimension_add_coords (size_t *c1, size_t *c2, size_t *out, size_t ndim)`

For every dimension, add the coordinates in `c1` with `c2` and put the result into `out`. In other words, for dimension `i` run `out[i]=c1[i]+c2[i];`. Hence `out` may be equal to any one of `c1` or `c2`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_dimension_coord_to_index (size_t ndim, size_t *dsize, size_t *coord)`

Return the index (counting from zero) from the coordinates in `coord` (counting from zero) assuming the dataset has `ndim` elements and the size of the dataset along each dimension is in the `dsize` array.

`void` [Function]
`gal_dimension_index_to_coord (size_t index, size_t ndim, size_t *dsize, size_t *coord)`

Fill in the `coord` array with the coordinates that correspond to `index` assuming the dataset has `ndim` elements and the size of the dataset along each dimension is in the `dsize` array. Note that both `index` and each value in `coord` are assumed to start from `0` (zero). Also that the space which `coord` points to must already be allocated before calling this function.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_dimension_dist_manhattan (size_t *a, size_t *b, size_t ndim)`

Return the manhattan distance (see Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Taxicab_geometry`)) between the two coordinates `a` and `b` (each an array of `ndim` elements).

`float` [Function]
`gal_dimension_dist_radial (size_t *a, size_t *b, size_t ndim)`

Return the radial distance between the two coordinates `a` and `b` (each an array of `ndim` elements).

`float` [Function]
`gal_dimension_dist_elliptical (double *center, double *pa_deg, double *q, size_t ndim, double *point)`

Return the elliptical/ellipsoidal distance of the single point `point` (containing `ndim` values: coordinates of the point in each dimension) from an ellipse that is defined by `center`, `pa_deg` and `q`. `center` is the coordinates of the ellipse center (also with `ndim` elements). `pa` is the position-angle in degrees (the angle of the semi-major axis from the first dimension in a 2D ellipse) and `q` is the axis ratio.

In a 2D ellipse, `pa` and `q` are a single-element array. However, in a 3D ellipsoid, `pa` must have three elements, and `q` must have 2 elements. For more see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sum (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, gal_data_t *weight)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by summing all elements in that direction. If `weight!=NULL`, it must be a single-dimensional array, with the same size as the dimension to be collapsed. The respective weight will be multiplied to each element during the collapse.

For generality, the returned dataset will have a `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64` type. See Section 12.3.6.4 [Copying datasets], page 790, for converting the returned dataset to a desired type. Also, for more on the application of this function, see the Arithmetic program's `collapse-sum` operator (which uses this function) in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_mean (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, gal_data_t *weight)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_sum` (above), but the collapse will be done by calculating the mean along the requested dimension, not summing over it.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_number (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by counting how many non-blank elements there are along that dimension.

For generality, the returned dataset will have a `GAL_TYPE_INT32` type. See Section 12.3.6.4 [Copying datasets], page 790, for converting the returned dataset to a desired type. Also, for more on the application of this function, see the Arithmetic program's `collapse-number` operator (which uses this function) in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_minmax (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, int max1_min0)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by using the largest/smallest non-blank value along that dimension. If `max1_min0` is non-zero, then the collapsed dataset will have the maximum value along the given dimension and if it is zero, the minimum.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_median (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the median non-blank value along that dimension. Since the median involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_std (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the standard deviation of pixels along that dimension after sigma-clipping. Since sigma-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on sigma clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_std (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_std`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_mad (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the median absolute deviation (MAD) of pixels along that dimension after sigma-clipping. Since sigma-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on sigma clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_mad (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_mad`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_mean (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the mean of pixels along that dimension after sigma-clipping. Since sigma-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on sigma clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_mean (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_mean`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_median (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the median of pixels along that dimension after sigma-clipping. Since sigma-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on sigma clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_median (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_median`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_number (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the number of pixels along that dimension after sigma-clipping. Since sigma-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on sigma clipping, see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_number (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_number`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_std (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the standard deviation of

pixels along that dimension after median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping. Since MAD-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on MAD-clipping, see Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206.

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_std (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim,
        float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t
        minmapsize, int quietmmap)
```

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_std`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_mad (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float
        multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize,
        int quietmmap)
```

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the median absolute deviation (MAD) of pixels along that dimension after median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping. Since MAD-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on MAD-clipping, see Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206.

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_mad (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim,
        float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t
        minmapsize, int quietmmap)
```

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_mad`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_mean (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim,
        float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t
        minmapsize, int quietmmap)
```

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the mean of pixels along that dimension after median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping. Since MAD-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on MAD-clipping, see Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_mean (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_mean`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_median (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the median of pixels along that dimension after median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping. Since MAD-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on MAD-clipping, see Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_median (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_median`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_number (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Collapse the input dataset (`in`) along the given dimension (`c_dim`, in C definition: starting from zero, from the slowest dimension), by finding the number of pixels along that dimension after median absolute deviation (MAD) clipping. Since MAD-clipping involves sorting, this operator benefits from many threads (which needs to be set with `numthreads`). For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281. For more on MAD-clipping, see Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_number (gal_data_t *in, size_t c_dim, float multip, float param, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Similar to `gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_number`, but with filled re-clipping (see Section 2.10.4 [Contiguous outliers], page 209).

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_dimension_remove_extra (size_t ndim, size_t *dsize, struct wcsprm *wcs)`

Remove extra dimensions (those that only have a length of 1) from the basic size information of a dataset. If the total number of elements (in all dimensions) is 1, this function will not remove anything (because an "extra" is only meaningful when some dimensions have more than one element length).

`ndim` is the number of dimensions and `dsize` is an array with `ndim` elements containing the size along each dimension in the C dimension order. When `wcs!=NULL`, the respective dimension will also be removed from the WCS.

This function will return the new number of dimensions and the `dsize` elements will contain the length along each new dimension.

`GAL_DIMENSION_NEIGHBOR_OP (index, ndim, dsize, connectivity, dinc, operation)` [Function-like macro]

Parse the neighbors of the element located at `index` and do the requested operation on them. This is defined as a macro to allow easy definition of any operation on the neighbors of a given element without having to use loops within your source code (the loops are implemented by this macro). For an example of using this function, please see Section 12.4.2 [Library demo - inspecting neighbors], page 942. The input arguments to this function-like macro are described below:

`index` Distance of this element from the first element in the array on a contiguous patch of memory (starting from 0), see the discussion above.

`ndim` The number of dimensions associated with the contiguous patch of memory.

`dsize` The full array size along each dimension. This must be an array and is assumed to have the same number elements as `ndim`. See the discussion under the same element in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

`connectivity`
Most distant neighbors to consider. Depending on the number of dimensions, different neighbors may be defined for each element. This function-like macro distinguish between these different neighbors with this argument. It has a value between `1` (one) and `ndim`. For example, in a 2D dataset, 4-connected neighbors have a connectivity of `1` and 8-connected neighbors have a connectivity of `2`. Note that this is inclusive, so in this example, a connectivity of `2` will also include connectivity `1` neighbors.

`dinc` An array keeping the length necessary to increment along each dimension. You can make this array with the following function. Just do not forget to free the array after you are done with it:

```
size_t *dinc=gal_dimension_increment(ndim, dsize);
free(dinc);
```

`dinc` depends on `ndim` and `dsize`, but it must be defined outside this function-like macro since it involves allocation to help in performance.

`operation`

Any C operation that you would like to do on the neighbor. This macro will fill the `nind` variable that can be used as the index of the neighbor that is currently being studied. It is defined as '`size_t nind;`'. Your given `operation` will be repeated the number of times there is a neighbor for this element. See the example in Section 12.4.2 [Library demo - inspecting neighbors], page 942, for a fully working demo.

This macro works fully within its own `{}` block and except for the `nind` variable that shows the neighbor's index, all the variables within this macro's block start with `gdn_`.

12.3.8 Linked lists (`list.h`)

An array is a contiguous region of memory that is very efficient and easy to use for recording and later accessing any random element as fast as any other. This makes array the primary data container when you have many elements (for example, an image which has millions of pixels). One major problem with an array is that the number of elements that go into it must be known in advance and adding or removing an element will require a re-set of all the other elements. For example, if you want to remove the 3rd element in a 1000 element array, all 997 subsequent elements have to pulled back by one position, the reverse will happen if you need to add an element.

In many contexts such situations never come up, for example, you do not want to shift all the pixels in an image by one or two pixels from some random position in the image: their positions have scientific value. But in other contexts you will find yourself frequently adding/removing an a-priori unknown number of elements. Linked lists (or *lists* for short) are the data-container of choice in such situations. As in a chain, each *node* in a list is an independent C structure, keeping its own data along with pointer(s) to its immediate neighbor(s). Below, you can see one simple linked list node structure along with an ASCII art schematic of how we can use the `next` pointer to add any number of elements to the list that we want. By convention, a list is terminated when `next` is the `NULL` pointer.

```
struct list_float          /*     ---------    ---------           */
{                          /*     | Value |    | Value |           */
  float             value; /*     |  ---  |    |  ---  |           */
  struct list_float *next;  /*     |  next-|--> |  next-|--> NULL   */
}                          /*     ---------    ---------           */
```

The schematic shows another great advantage of linked lists: it is very easy to add or remove/pop a node anywhere in the list. If you want to modify the first node, you just have to change one pointer. If it is in the middle, you just have to change two. You initially define a variable of this type with a `NULL` pointer as shown below:

```
struct list_float *list=NULL;
```

To add or remove/pop a node from the list you can use functions provided for the respective type in the sections below.

When you add an element to the list, it is conventionally added to the "top" of the list: the general list pointer will point to the newly created node, which will point to the previously created node and so on. So when you "pop" from the top of the list, you are actually retrieving the last value you put in and changing the list pointer to the next youngest node. This is thus known as a "last-in-first-out" list. This is the most efficient type of linked list

(easier to implement and faster to process). Alternatively, you can add each newly created node at the end of the list. If you do that, you will get a "first-in-first-out" list. But that will force you to go through the whole list for each new element that is created (this will slow down the processing)[18].

The node example above creates the simplest kind of a list. We can define each node with two pointers to both the next and previous neighbors, this is called a "Doubly linked list". In general, lists are very powerful and simple constructs that can be very useful. But going into more detail would be out of the scope of this short introduction in this book. Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Linked_list`) has a nice and more thorough discussion of the various types of lists. To appreciate/use the beauty and elegance of these powerful constructs even further, see Chapter 2 (Information Structures, in volume 1) of Donald Knuth's "The art of computer programming".

In this section we will review the functions and structures that are available in Gnuastro for working on lists. They differ by the type of data that each node can keep. For each linked-list node structure, we will first introduce the structure, then the functions for working on the structure. All these structures and functions are defined and declared in `gnuastro/list.h`.

12.3.8.1 List of strings

Probably one of the most common lists you will be using are lists of strings. They are the best tools when you are reading the user's inputs, or when adding comments to the output files. Below you can see Gnuastro's string list type and several functions to help in adding, removing/popping, reversing and freeing the list.

`gal_list_str_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

A single node in a list containing a string of characters.

```
typedef struct gal_list_str_t
{
  char *v;
  struct gal_list_str_t *next;
} gal_list_str_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_str_add (gal_list_str_t **list, char *value, int allocate)`

Add a new node to the list of strings (`list`) and update it. The new node will contain the string `value`. If `allocate` is not zero, space will be allocated specifically for the string of the new node and the contents of `value` will be copied into it. This can be useful when your string may be changed later in the program, but you want your list to remain. Here is one short/simple example of initializing and adding elements to a string list:

```
gal_list_str_t *list=NULL;
gal_list_str_add(&list, "bottom of list.", 1);
gal_list_str_add(&list, "second last element of list.", 1);
```

[18] A better way to get a first-in-first-out is to first keep the data as last-in-first-out until they are all read. Afterwards, reverse the list by popping each node and immediately add it to the new list. This practically reverses the last-in-first-out list to a first-in-first-out one. All the list types discussed in this chapter have a function with a `_reverse` suffix for this job.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_list_str_pop (gal_list_str_t **list)`
Pop the top element of `list`, change `list` to point to the next node in the list, and return the string that was in the popped node. If `*list==NULL`, then this function will also return a `NULL` pointer.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_str_number (gal_list_str_t *list)`
Return the number of nodes in `list`.

`gal_list_str_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_str_last (gal_list_str_t *list)`
Return a pointer to the last node in `list`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_str_print (gal_list_str_t *list)`
Print the strings within each node of `*list` on the standard output in the same order that they are stored. Each string is printed on one line. This function is mainly good for checking/debugging your program. For program outputs, it is best to make your own implementation with a better, more user-friendly, format. For example, the following code snippet.

```
size_t i=0;
gal_list_str_t *tmp;
for(tmp=list; tmp!=NULL; tmp=tmp->next)
  printf("String %zu: %s\n", ++i, tmp->v);
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_str_reverse (gal_list_str_t **list)`
Reverse the order of the list such that the top node in the list before calling this function becomes the bottom node after it.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_str_free (gal_list_str_t *list, int freevalue)`
Free every node in `list`. If `freevalue` is not zero, also free the string within the nodes.

`gal_list_str_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_str_extract (char *string)`
Extract space-separated components of the input string. If any space element should be kept (and not considered as a delimiter between two tokens), precede it with a backslash (\). Be aware that in C programming, when including a backslash character within a string literal, the correct format is indeed to use two backslashes (`"\\"`) to represent a single backslash:

```
gal_list_str_extract("bottom of\\ list");
```

`char *` [Function]
`gal_list_str_cat (gal_list_str_t *list, char delimiter)`
Concatenate (append) the input list of strings into a single string where each node is separated from the next with the given `delimiter`. The space for the output string is allocated by this function and should be freed when you have finished with it.

If there is any delimiter characters are present in any of the elements, a backslash (\) will be printed before the SPACE character. This is necessary, otherwise, a function like `gal_list_str_extract` will not be able to extract the elements back into separate elements in a list.

12.3.8.2 List of `int32_t`

Signed integers are the best types when you are dealing with a positive or negative integers. The are generally useful in many contexts, for example when you want to keep the order of a series of states (each state stored as a given number in an `enum` for example). On many modern systems, `int32_t` is just an alias for `int`, so you can use them interchangeably. To make sure, check the size of `int` on your system:

`gal_list_i32_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

A single node in a list containing a 32-bit signed integer (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

```
typedef struct gal_list_i32_t
{
  int32_t v;
  struct gal_list_i32_t *next;
} gal_list_i32_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_add (gal_list_i32_t **list, int32_t value)`

Add a new node (containing `value`) to the top of the `list` of `int32_t`s (`uint32_t` is equal to `int` on many modern systems), and update `list`. Here is one short example of initializing and adding elements to a string list:

```
gal_list_i32_t *list=NULL;
gal_list_i32_add(&list, 52);
gal_list_i32_add(&list, -4);
```

`int32_t` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_pop (gal_list_i32_t **list)`

Pop the top element of `list` and return the value. This function will also change `list` to point to the next node in the list. If `*list==NULL`, then this function will also return `GAL_BLANK_INT32` (see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779).

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_number (gal_list_i32_t *list)`

Return the number of nodes in `list`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_last (gal_list_i32_t *list)`

Return a pointer to the last node in `list`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_print (gal_list_i32_t *list)`

Print the integers within each node of `*list` on the standard output in the same order that they are stored. Each integer is printed on one line. This function is

mainly good for checking/debugging your program. For program outputs, it is best to make your own implementation with a better, more user-friendly format. For example, the following code snippet. You can also modify it to print all values in one line, etc., depending on the context of your program.

```
size_t i=0;
gal_list_i32_t *tmp;
for(tmp=list; tmp!=NULL; tmp=tmp->next)
  printf("Number %zu: %s\n", ++i, tmp->v);
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_reverse (gal_list_i32_t **list)`

Reverse the order of the list such that the top node in the list before calling this function becomes the bottom node after it.

`int32_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_to_array (gal_list_i32_t *list, int reverse, size_t *num)`

Dynamically allocate an array and fill it with the values in `list`. The function will return a pointer to the allocated array and put the number of elements in the array into the `num` pointer. If `reverse` has a non-zero value, the array will be filled in the opposite order of elements in `list`. This function can be useful after you have finished reading an initially unknown number of values and want to put them in an array for easy random access.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_i32_free (gal_list_i32_t *list)`

Free every node in `list`.

12.3.8.3 List of `size_t`

The `size_t` type is a unique type in C: as the name suggests it is defined to store sizes, or more accurately, the distances between memory locations. Hence it is always positive (an `unsigned` type) and it is directly related to the address-able spaces on the host system: on 32-bit and 64-bit systems it is an alias for `uint32_t` and `uint64_t`, respectively (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

`size_t` is the default compiler type to index an array (recall that an array index in C is just a pointer increment of a given *size*). Since it is unsigned, it is a great type for counting (where negative is not defined), you are always sure it will never exceed the system's (virtual) memory and since its name has the word "size" inside it, it provides a good level of documentation[19]. In Gnuastro, we do all counting and array indexing with this type, so this list is very handy. As discussed above, `size_t` maps to different types on different machines, so a portable way to print them with `printf` is to use C99's `%zu` format.

`gal_list_sizet_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

A single node in a list containing a `size_t` value (which maps to `uint32_t` or `uint64_t` on 32-bit and 64-bit systems), see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

```
typedef struct gal_list_sizet_t
```

[19] So you know that a variable of this type is not used to store some generic state for example.

```
{
  size_t v;
  struct gal_list_sizet_t *next;
} gal_list_sizet_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_add (gal_list_sizet_t **list, size_t value)`
Add a new node (containing `value`) to the top of the `list` of `size_t`s and update `list`. Here is one short example of initializing and adding elements to a string list:

```
gal_list_sizet_t *list=NULL;
gal_list_sizet_add(&list, 45493);
gal_list_sizet_add(&list, 930484);
```

`sizet_t` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_pop (gal_list_sizet_t **list)`
Pop the top element of `list` and return the value. This function will also change `list` to point to the next node in the list. If `*list==NULL`, then this function will also return `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T` (see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779).

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_number (gal_list_sizet_t *list)`
Return the number of nodes in `list`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_last (gal_list_sizet_t *list)`
Return a pointer to the last node in `list`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_print (gal_list_sizet_t *list)`
Print the values within each node of `*list` on the standard output in the same order that they are stored. Each integer is printed on one line. This function is mainly good for checking/debugging your program. For program outputs, it is best to make your own implementation with a better, more user-friendly format. For example, the following code snippet. You can also modify it to print all values in one line, etc., depending on the context of your program.

```
size_t i=0;
gal_list_sizet_t *tmp;
for(tmp=list; tmp!=NULL; tmp=tmp->next)
  printf("Number %zu: %zu\n", ++i, tmp->v);
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_reverse (gal_list_sizet_t **list)`
Reverse the order of the list such that the top node in the list before calling this function becomes the bottom node after it.

`size_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_to_array (gal_list_sizet_t *list, int reverse, size_t *num)`
Dynamically allocate an array and fill it with the values in `list`. The function will return a pointer to the allocated array and put the number of elements in the array into the `num` pointer. If `reverse` has a non-zero value, the array will be filled in the inverse of the order of elements in `list`. This function can be useful after you have finished reading an initially unknown number of values and want to put them in an array for easy random access.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_sizet_free (gal_list_sizet_t *list)`
Free every node in `list`.

12.3.8.4 List of `float`

Single precision floating point numbers can accurately store real number until 7.2 decimals and only consume 4 bytes (32-bits) of memory, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. Since astronomical data rarely reach that level of precision, single precision floating points are the type of choice to keep and read data. However, when processing the data, it is best to use double precision floating points (since errors propagate).

`gal_list_f32_t` [Type (C `struct`)]
A single node in a list containing a 32-bit single precision `float` value: see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

```
typedef struct gal_list_f32_t
{
  float v;
  struct gal_list_f32_t *next;
} gal_list_f32_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_add (gal_list_f32_t **list, float value)`
Add a new node (containing `value`) to the top of the `list` of `float`s and update `list`. Here is one short example of initializing and adding elements to a string list:

```
gal_list_f32_t *list=NULL;
gal_list_f32_add(&list, 3.89);
gal_list_f32_add(&list, 1.23e-20);
```

`float` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_pop (gal_list_f32_t **list)`
Pop the top element of `list` and return the value. This function will also change `list` to point to the next node in the list. If `*list==NULL`, then this function will return `GAL_BLANK_FLOAT32` (NaN, see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779).

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_number (gal_list_f32_t *list)`
Return the number of nodes in `list`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_last (gal_list_f32_t *list)`
Return a pointer to the last node in `list`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_print (gal_list_f32_t *list)`
Print the values within each node of `*list` on the standard output in the same order that they are stored. Each floating point number is printed on one line. This function is mainly good for checking/debugging your program. For program outputs, it is best to make your own implementation with a better, more user-friendly format. For example, in the following code snippet. You can also modify it to print all values in one line, etc., depending on the context of your program.

```
size_t i=0;
gal_list_f32_t *tmp;
for(tmp=list; tmp!=NULL; tmp=tmp->next)
  printf("Number %zu: %f\n", ++i, tmp->v);
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_reverse (gal_list_f32_t **list)`
Reverse the order of the list such that the top node in the list before calling this function becomes the bottom node after it.

`float *` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_to_array (gal_list_f32_t *list, int reverse, size_t *num)`
Dynamically allocate an array and fill it with the values in `list`. The function will return a pointer to the allocated array and put the number of elements in the array into the `num` pointer. If `reverse` has a non-zero value, the array will be filled in the inverse of the order of elements in `list`. This function can be useful after you have finished reading an initially unknown number of values and want to put them in an array for easy random access.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f32_free (gal_list_f32_t *list)`
Free every node in `list`.

12.3.8.5 List of `double`

Double precision floating point numbers can accurately store real number until 15.9 decimals and consume 8 bytes (64-bits) of memory, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279. This level of precision makes them very good for serious processing in the middle of a program's execution: in many cases, the propagation of errors will still be insignificant compared to actual observational errors in a data set. But since they consume 8 bytes and more CPU processing power, they are often not the best choice for storing and transferring of data.

`gal_list_f64_t` [Type (C `struct`)]
A single node in a list containing a 64-bit double precision `double` value: see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

```
typedef struct gal_list_f64_t
```

```
{
  double v;
  struct gal_list_f64_t *next;
} gal_list_f64_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_add (gal_list_f64_t **list, double value)`
Add a new node (containing `value`) to the top of the `list` of `double`s and update `list`. Here is one short example of initializing and adding elements to a string list:

```
gal_list_f64_t *list=NULL;
gal_list_f64_add(&list, 3.8129395763193);
gal_list_f64_add(&list, 1.239378923931e-20);
```

`double` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_pop (gal_list_f64_t **list)`
Pop the top element of `list` and return the value. This function will also change `list` to point to the next node in the list. If `*list==NULL`, then this function will return `GAL_BLANK_FLOAT64` (NaN, see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779).

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_number (gal_list_f64_t *list)`
Return the number of nodes in `list`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_last (gal_list_f64_t *list)`
Return a pointer to the last node in `list`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_print (gal_list_f64_t *list)`
Print the values within each node of `*list` on the standard output in the same order that they are stored. Each floating point number is printed on one line. This function is mainly good for checking/debugging your program. For program outputs, it is best to make your own implementation with a better, more user-friendly format. For example, in the following code snippet. You can also modify it to print all values in one line, etc., depending on the context of your program.

```
size_t i=0;
gal_list_f64_t *tmp;
for(tmp=list; tmp!=NULL; tmp=tmp->next)
  printf("Number %zu: %f\n", ++i, tmp->v);
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_reverse (gal_list_f64_t **list)`
Reverse the order of the list such that the top node in the list before calling this function becomes the bottom node after it.

`double *` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_to_array (gal_list_f64_t *list, int reverse, size_t *num)`

Dynamically allocate an array and fill it with the values in `list`. The function will return a pointer to the allocated array and put the number of elements in the array into the `num` pointer. If `reverse` has a non-zero value, the array will be filled in the inverse of the order of elements in `list`. This function can be useful after you have finished reading an initially unknown number of values and want to put them in an array for easy random access.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_to_data (gal_list_f64_t *list, uint8_t type, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Write the values in the given `list` into a `gal_data_t` dataset of the requested `type`. The order of the values in the dataset will be the same as the order from the top of the list.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_f64_free (gal_list_f64_t *list)`

Free every node in `list`.

12.3.8.6 List of `void *`

In C, `void *` is the most generic pointer. Usually pointers are associated with the type of content they point to. For example, `int *` means a pointer to an integer. This ancillary information about the contents of the memory location is very useful for the compiler, catching bad errors and also documentation (it helps the reader see what the address in memory actually contains). However, `void *` is just a raw address (pointer), it contains no information on the contents it points to.

These properties make the `void *` very useful when you want to treat the contents of an address in different ways. You can use the `void *` list defined in this section and its function on any kind of data: for example, you can use it to keep a list of custom data structures that you have built for your own separate program. Each node in the list can keep anything and this gives you great versatility. But in using `void *`, please beware that "with great power comes great responsibility".

`gal_list_void_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

A single node in a list containing a `void *` pointer.

```
typedef struct gal_list_void_t
{
  void *v;
  struct gal_list_void_t *next;
} gal_list_void_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_void_add (gal_list_void_t **list, void *value)`

Add a new node (containing `value`) to the top of the `list` of `void *`s and update `list`. Here is one short example of initializing and adding elements to a string list:

```
gal_list_void_t *list=NULL;
```

```
gal_list_f64_add(&list, some_pointer);
gal_list_f64_add(&list, another_pointer);
```

`void *` [Function]
`gal_list_void_pop (gal_list_void_t **list)`
Pop the top element of `list` and return the value. This function will also change `list` to point to the next node in the list. If `*list==NULL`, then this function will return `NULL`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_void_number (gal_list_void_t *list)`
Return the number of nodes in `list`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_void_last (gal_list_void_t *list)`
Return a pointer to the last node in `list`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_void_reverse (gal_list_void_t **list)`
Reverse the order of the list such that the top node in the list before calling this function becomes the bottom node after it.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_void_free (gal_list_void_t *list)`
Free every node in `list`.

12.3.8.7 Ordered list of `size_t`

Positions/sizes in a dataset are conventionally in the `size_t` type (see Section 12.3.8.3 [List of `size_t`], page 804) and it sometimes occurs that you want to parse and read the values in a specific order. For example, you want to start from one pixel and add pixels to the list based on their distance to that pixel. So that ever time you pop an element from the list, you know it is the nearest that has not yet been studied. The `gal_list_osizet_t` type and its functions in this section are designed to facilitate such operations.

`gal_list_osizet_t` [Type (C `struct`)]
Each node in this singly-linked list contains a `size_t` value and a floating point value. The floating point value is used as a reference to add new nodes in a sorted manner. At any moment, the first popped node in this list will have the smallest `tosort` value, and subsequent nodes will have larger to values.

```
typedef struct gal_list_osizet_t
{
  size_t v;                     /* The actual value. */
  float  s;                     /* The parameter to sort by. */
  struct gal_list_osizet_t *next;
} gal_list_osizet_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_osizet_add (gal_list_osizet_t **list, size_t value, float tosort)`

Allocate space for a new node in `list`, and store `value` and `tosort` into it. The new node will not necessarily be at the "top" of the list. If `*list!=NULL`, then the `tosort` values of existing nodes is inspected and the given node is placed in the list such that the top element (which is popped with `gal_list_osizet_pop`) has the smallest `tosort` value.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_osizet_pop (gal_list_osizet_t **list, float *sortvalue)`

Pop a node from the top of `list`, return the node's `value` and put its sort value in the space that `sortvalue` points to. This function will also free the allocated space for the popped node and after this function, `list` will point to the next node (which has a larger `tosort` element).

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_osizet_to_sizet_free (gal_list_osizet_t *in, gal_list_sizet_t **out)`

Convert the ordered list of `size_t`s into an ordinary `size_t` linked list. This can be useful when all the elements have been added and you just need to pop-out elements and do not care about the sorting values any more. After the conversion is done, this function will free the input list. Note that the `out` list does not have to be empty. If it already contains some nodes, the new nodes will be added on top of them.

12.3.8.8 Doubly linked ordered list of `size_t`

An ordered list of indices is required in many contexts, one example was discussed at the beginning of Section 12.3.8.7 [Ordered list of `size_t`], page 810. But the list that was introduced there only has one point of entry: you can always only parse the list from smallest to largest. In this section, the doubly-linked `gal_list_dosizet_t` node is defined which will allow us to parse the values in ascending or descending order.

`gal_list_dosizet_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

Doubly-linked, ordered `size_t` list node structure. Each node in this Doubly-linked list contains a `size_t` value and a floating point value. The floating point value is used as a reference to add new nodes in a sorted manner. In the functions here, this linked list can be pointed to by two pointers (largest and smallest) with the following format:

```
                largest pointer
                |
       NULL <-- (v0,s0) <--> (v1,s1) <--> ... (vn,sn) --> NULL
                                              |
                                   smallest pointer
```

At any moment, the two pointers will point to the nodes containing the "largest" and "smallest" values and the rest of the nodes will be sorted. This is useful when an unknown number of nodes are being added continuously and during the operations it is important to have the nodes in a sorted format.

```
typedef struct gal_list_dosizet_t
```

```
{
  size_t v;                       /* The actual value. */
  float s;                        /* The parameter to sort by. */
  struct gal_list_dosizet_t *prev;
  struct gal_list_dosizet_t *next;
} gal_list_dosizet_t;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_dosizet_add (gal_list_dosizet_t **largest, gal_list_dosizet_t **smallest, size_t value, float tosort)`
Allocate space for a new node in `list`, and store `value` and `tosort` into it. If the list is empty, both `largest` and `smallest` must be `NULL`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_dosizet_pop_smallest (gal_list_dosizet_t **largest, gal_list_dosizet_t **smallest, float tosort)`
Pop the value with the smallest reference from the doubly linked list and store the reference into the space pointed to by `tosort`. Note that even though only the smallest pointer will be popped, when there was only one node in the list, the `largest` pointer also has to change, so we need both.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_dosizet_print (gal_list_dosizet_t *largest, gal_list_dosizet_t *smallest)`
Print the largest and smallest values sequentially until the list is parsed.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_dosizet_to_sizet (gal_list_dosizet_t *in, gal_list_sizet_t **out)`
Convert the doubly linked, ordered `size_t` list into a singly-linked list of `size_t`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_dosizet_free (gal_list_dosizet_t *largest)`
Free the doubly linked, ordered `sizet_t` list.

12.3.8.9 List of `gal_data_t`

Gnuastro's generic data container has a `next` element which enables it to be used as a singly-linked list (see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784). The ability to connect the different data containers offers great advantages. For example, each column in a table in an independent dataset: with its own name, units, numeric data type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). Another application is in Tessellating an input dataset into separate tiles or only studying particular regions, or tiles, of a larger dataset (see Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, and Section 12.3.15 [Tessellation library (`tile.h`)], page 867). Each independent tile over the dataset can be connected to the others as a linked list and thus any number of tiles can be represented with one variable.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_data_add (gal_data_t **list, gal_data_t *newnode)`
Add an already allocated dataset (`newnode`) to top of `list`. Note that if `newnode->next!=NULL` (`newnode` is itself a list), then `list` will be added to its end.

In this example multiple images are linked together as a list:

```
int quietmmap=1;
size_t minmapsize=-1;
gal_data_t *tmp, *list=NULL;
tmp = gal_fits_img_read("file1.fits", "1", minmapsize, quietmmap,
                        NULL);
gal_list_data_add( &list, tmp );
tmp = gal_fits_img_read("file2.fits", "1", minmapsize, quietmmap,
                        NULL);
gal_list_data_add( &list, tmp );
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_data_add_alloc (gal_data_t **list, void *array, uint8_t type, size_t ndim, size_t *dsize, struct wcsprm *wcs, int clear, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *name, char *unit, char *comment)`

Allocate a new dataset (with `gal_data_alloc` in Section 12.3.6.2 [Dataset allocation], page 788) and put it as the first element of `list`. Note that if this is the first node to be added to the list, `list` must be `NULL`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_data_pop (gal_data_t **list)`

Pop the top node from `list` and return it.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_data_remove (gal_data_t **list, gal_data_t *node)`

Remove `node` from the given `list`. After finding the given node, this function will just set `node->next=NULL` and correct the `next` node of its previous element to its next element (thus "removing" it from the list). If `node` doesn't exist in the list, this function won't make any change to list.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_data_select_by_name (gal_data_t *list, char *name)`

Select the dataset within the list, that has a `name` element that is identical (case-sensitive) to the given `name`. If not found, a `NULL` pointer will be returned.

Note that this dataset will not be popped from the list, only a pointer to it will be returned and if you free it or change its `next` element, it may harm your original list.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_data_select_by_id (gal_data_t *table, char *idstr, size_t *index)`

Select the dataset within the list that can be identified with the string given to `idstr` (which can be a counter, starting from 1, or a name). If not found, a `NULL` pointer will be returned.

Note that this dataset will not be popped from the list, only a pointer to it will be returned and if you free it or change its `next` element, it may harm your original list.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_data_reverse (gal_data_t **list)`
Reverse the order of the list such that the top node in the list before calling this function becomes the bottom node after it.

`gal_data_t **` [Function]
`gal_list_data_to_array_ptr (gal_data_t *list, size_t *num)`
Allocate and return an array of `gal_data_t *` pointers with the same number of elements as the nodes in `list`. The pointers will be put in the same order that the list is parsed. Hence the N-th element in the array will point to the same dataset that the N-th node in the list points to.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_list_data_number (gal_data_t *list)`
Return the number of nodes in `list`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_list_data_last (gal_data_t *list)`
Return a pointer to the last node in `list`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_list_data_free (gal_data_t *list)`
Free all the datasets in `list` along with all the allocated spaces in each.

12.3.9 Array input output

Getting arrays (commonly images or cubes) from a file into your program or writing them after the processing into an output file are some of the most common operations. The functions in this section are designed for such operations with the known file types. The functions here are thus just wrappers around functions of lower-level file type functions of this library, for example, Section 12.3.11 [FITS files (`fits.h`)], page 821, or Section 12.3.12.2 [TIFF files (`tiff.h`)], page 841. If the file type of the input/output file is already known, you can use the functions in those sections respectively.

`int` [Function]
`gal_array_name_recognized (char *filename)`
Return 1 if the given file name corresponds to one of the recognized file types for reading arrays.

`int` [Function]
`gal_array_name_recognized_multiext (char *filename)`
Return 1 if the given file name corresponds to one of the recognized file types for reading arrays which may contain multiple extensions (for example FITS or TIFF) formats.

`int` [Function]
`gal_array_file_recognized (char *filename)`
Similar to `gal_array_name_recognized`, but for FITS files, it will also check the contents of the file if the recognized file name suffix is not found. See the description of `gal_fits_file_recognized` for more (Section 12.3.11.1 [FITS Macros, errors and filenames], page 822).

`gal_data_t` [Function]
`gal_array_read (char *filename, char *extension, gal_list_str_t *lines, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Read the array within the given extension (`extension`) of `filename`, or the `lines` list (see below). If the array is larger than `minmapsize` bytes, then it will not be read into RAM, but a file on the HDD/SSD (no difference for the programmer). Messages about the memory-mapped file can be disabled with `quietmmap`.

`extension` will be ignored for files that do not support them (for example JPEG or text). For FITS files, `extension` can be a number or a string (name of the extension), but for TIFF files, it has to be number. In both cases, counting starts from zero.

For multi-channel formats (like RGB images in JPEG or TIFF), this function will return a Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812: one data structure per channel. Thus if you just want a single array (and want to check if the user has not given a multi-channel input), you can check the `next` pointer of the returned `gal_data_t`.

`lines` is a list of strings with each node representing one line (including the new-line character), see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801. It will mostly be the output of `gal_txt_stdin_read`, which is used to read the program's input as separate lines from the standard input (see Section 12.3.12.1 [Text files (`txt.h`)], page 837). Note that `filename` and `lines` are mutually exclusive and one of them must be `NULL`.

`hdu_option_name` is used in error messages related to extensions (e.g., HDUs in FITS) and is expected to be the command-line option name that users of your program can specify to select an input HDU for this particular input; for example, if the kernel is used as the input, users should determine `--khdu` for this option. If the given `extension` doesn't exist in `filename`, a descriptive error message is printed instructing the users how to find and fix the problem. This error message also suggests the option to use in order to help users of your program to inform them what option they should give a HDU to. If you don't have an option that is configured by the users of your program, you can set this to `NONE` or `NULL`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_array_read_to_type (char *filename, char *extension, gal_list_str_t *lines, uint8_t type, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Similar to `gal_array_read`, but the output data structure(s) will have a numeric data type of `type`, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

`void` [Function]
`gal_array_read_one_ch (char *filename, char *extension, gal_list_str_t *lines, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Read the dataset within `filename` (extension/hdu/dir `extension`) and make sure it is only a single channel. This is just a simple wrapper around `gal_array_read` that checks if there was more than one dataset and aborts with an informative error if there is more than one channel in the dataset.

Formats like JPEG or TIFF support multiple channels per input, but it may happen that your program only works on a single dataset. This function can be a convenient way to make sure that the data that comes into your program is only one channel.

Regarding `*hdu_option_name`, see the description for the same argument in the description of `gal_array_read`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_array_read_one_ch_to_type (char *filename, char *extension, gal_list_str_t *lines, uint8_t type, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Similar to `gal_array_read_one_ch`, but the output data structure will has a numeric data type of `type`, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279.

12.3.10 Table input output (`table.h`)

Tables are a collection of one dimensional datasets that are packed together into one file. They are the single most common format to store high-level (processed) information, hence they play a very important role in Gnuastro. For a more thorough introduction, please see Section 5.3 [Table], page 344. Gnuastro's Table program, and all the other programs that can read from and write into tables, use the functions of this section for reading and writing their input/output tables. For a simple demonstration of using the constructs introduced here, see Section 12.4.4 [Library demo - reading and writing table columns], page 948.

Currently only plain text (see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287) and FITS (ASCII and binary) tables are supported by Gnuastro. However, the low-level table infra-structure is written such that accommodating other formats is also possible and in future releases more formats will hopefully be supported. Please do not hesitate to suggest your favorite format so it can be implemented when possible.

`GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_STR` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_INT` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_LINT` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_FLT` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_DBL` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DEF_PRECISION_INT` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DEF_PRECISION_FLT` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DEF_PRECISION_DBL` [Macro]

The default width and precision for generic types to use in writing numeric types into a text file (plain text and FITS ASCII tables). When the dataset does not have any pre-set width and precision (see `disp_width` and `disp_precision` in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784) these will be directly used in C's `printf` command to write the number as a string.

`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_STRING` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_DECIMAL` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_UDECIMAL` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_OCTAL` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_HEX` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_FIXED` [Macro]

`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_EXP` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_GENERAL` [Macro]

The display format used in C's `printf` to display data of different types. The `_STRING` and `_DECIMAL` are unique for printing strings and signed integers, they are mainly here for completeness. However, unsigned integers and floating points can be displayed in multiple formats:

Unsigned integer

For unsigned integers, it is possible to choose from `_UDECIMAL` (unsigned decimal), `_OCTAL` (octal notation, for example, `125` in decimal will be displayed as `175`), and `_HEX` (hexadecimal notation, for example, `125` in decimal will be displayed as `7D`).

Floating point

For floating point, it is possible to display the number in `_FLOAT` (floating point, for example, `1500.345`), `_EXP` (exponential, for example, `1.500345e+03`), or `_GENERAL` which is the best of the two for the given number.

`GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_INVALID` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_TXT` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_AFITS` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_BFITS` [Macro]

All the current acceptable table formats to Gnuastro. The `AFITS` and `BFITS` represent FITS ASCII tables and FITS Binary tables. You can use these anywhere you see the `tableformat` variable.

`GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_INVALID` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_NAME` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_UNIT` [Macro]
`GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_COMMENT` [Macro]

When the desired column is not a number, these values determine if the string to match, or regular expression to search, be in the *name*, *units* or *comments* of the column metadata. These values should be used for the `searchin` variables of the functions.

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_table_displayflt_from_str (char *string)`

Convert the input `string` into one of the `GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_FIXED` (for fixed-point notation) or `GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_EXP` (for exponential notation).

`char *` [Function]
`gal_table_displayflt_to_str (uint8_t id)`

Convert the input identifier (one of the `GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_FIXED`; for fixed-point notation, or `GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_EXP`; for exponential notation) into a standard string that is used to identify them.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_table_info (char *filename, char *hdu, gal_list_str_t *lines, size_t *numcols, size_t *numrows, int *tableformat)`

Store the information of each column of a table into an array of meta-data `gal_data_t`s. In a metadata `gal_data_t`, the size elements are zero (`ndim=size=0` and `dsize=NULL`) but other relevant elements are filled). See the end of this description for the exact components of each `gal_data_t` that are filled.

The returned array of `gal_data_t`s has `numcols` datasets (one data structure for each column). The number of rows in each dataset is stored in `numrows` (in a table, all the columns have the same number of rows). The format of the table (e.g., ASCII text file, or FITS binary or ASCII table) will be put in `tableformat` (macros defined above). If the `filename` is not a FITS file, then `hdu` will not be used (can be `NULL`).

The input must be either a file (specified by `filename`) or a list of strings (`lines`). `lines` is a list of strings with each node representing one line (including the new-line character), see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801. It will mostly be the output of `gal_txt_stdin_read`, which is used to read the program's input as separate lines from the standard input (see Section 12.3.12.1 [Text files (`txt.h`)], page 837). Note that `filename` and `lines` are mutually exclusive and one of them must be `NULL`.

In the output datasets, only the meta-data strings (column name, units and comments), will be allocated and set as shown below. This function is just for column information (meta-data), not column contents.

```
*restrict array  ->  Blank value (if present, in col's own type).
          type   ->  Type of column data.
          ndim   ->  0
         *dsize  ->  NULL
          size   ->  0
     quietmmap   ->  ------------
     *mmapname   ->  ------------
    minmapsize   ->  Repeat (length of vector; 1 if not vector).
          nwcs   ->  ------------
          *wcs   ->  ------------
          flag   ->  'GAL_TABLEINTERN_FLAG_*' macros.
        status   ->  ------------
         *name   ->  Column name.
         *unit   ->  Column unit.
      *comment   ->  Column comments.
      disp_fmt   ->  'GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT' macros.
    disp_width   ->  Width of string columns.
 disp_precision  ->  ------------
         *next   ->  Pointer to next column's metadata
        *block   ->  ------------
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_table_print_info (gal_data_t *allcols, size_t numcols, size_t numrows, char *hdu_option_name)`

Print the column information for all the columns (output of `gal_table_info`) to standard output. The output is in the same format as this command with Gnuastro Table program (see Section 5.3.5 [Invoking Table], page 362):

```
$ asttable --info table.fits
```

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_table_read (char *filename, char *hdu, gal_list_str_t *lines, gal_list_str_t *cols, int searchin, int ignorecase, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, size_t *colmatch, char *hdu_option_name)`

Read the specified columns in a file (named `filename`), or list of strings (`lines`) into a linked list of data structures. If the file is FITS, then `hdu` will also be used, otherwise, `hdu` is ignored. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

`lines` is a list of strings with each node representing one line (including the new-line character), see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801. It will mostly be the output of `gal_txt_stdin_read`, which is used to read the program's input as separate lines from the standard input (see Section 12.3.12.1 [Text files (`txt.h`)], page 837). Note that `filename` and `lines` are mutually exclusive and one of them must be `NULL`.

The information to search for columns should be specified by the `cols` list of strings (see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801). The string in each node of the list may be a number, an exact match to a column name, or a regular expression (in GNU AWK format) enclosed in `/ /`. The `searchin` value must be one of the macros defined above. If `cols` is NULL, then this function will read the full table. Also, the `ignorecase` value should be 1 if you want to ignore the case of alphabetic characters while matching/searching column meta-data (see Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254).

For FITS tables, each column will be read independently. Therefore they will be read in `numthreads` CPU threads to greatly speed up the reading when there are many columns and rows. However, this only happens if CFITSIO was configured with `--enable-reentrant`. This test has been done at Gnuastro's configuration time; if so, `GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_FITS_IS_REENTRANT` will have a value of 1, otherwise, it will have a value of 0. For more on this macro, see Section 12.3.1 [Configuration information (`config.h`)], page 765). Multi-threaded table reading is not currently applicable to other table formats (only for FITS tables).

The output is an individually allocated list of datasets (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812) with the same order of the `cols` list. Note that one column node in the `cols` list might give multiple columns (for example, from regular expressions), in this case, the order of output columns that correspond to that one input, are in order of the table (which column was read first). So the first requested column is the first popped data structure and so on.

if `colmatch!=NULL`, it is assumed to be an array that has at least the same number of elements as nodes in the `cols` list. The number of columns that matched each input column will be stored in each element.

`gal_list_sizet_t *` [Function]
`gal_table_list_of_indexs (gal_list_str_t *cols, gal_data_t *allcols, size_t numcols, int searchin, int ignorecase, char *filename, char *hdu, size_t *colmatch)`

Returns a list of indices (starting from 0) of the input columns that match the names/numbers given to `cols`. This is a low-level operation which is called by `gal_table_read` (described above), see there for more on each argument's description. `allcols` is the returned array of `gal_table_info`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_table_comments_add_intro (gal_list_str_t **comments, char *program_string, time_t *rawtime)`

Add some basic information to the list of `comments`. This basic information includes the following information

- If the program is run in a Git version controlled directory, Git's description is printed (see description under `COMMIT` in Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293).
- The calendar time that is stored in `rawtime` (`time_t` is C's calendar time format defined in `time.h`). You can calculate the time in this format with the following expressions:

```
time_t rawtime;
time(&rawtime);
```

- The name of your program in `program_string`. If it is `NULL`, this line is ignored.

`void` [Function]
`gal_table_write (gal_data_t *cols, struct gal_fits_list_key_t **keylist, gal_list_str_t *comments, int tableformat, char *filename, char *extname, uint8_t colinfoinstdout, int freekeys)`

Write `cols` (a list of datasets, see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812) into a table stored in `filename`. The format of the table can be determined with `tableformat` that accepts the macros defined above. When `filename==NULL`, the column information will be printed on the standard output (command-line).

If `comments!=NULL`, the list of comments (see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801) will also be printed into the output table. When the output table is a plain text file, every node of `comments` will be printed after a `#` (so it can be considered as a comment) and in FITS table they will follow a `COMMENT` keyword.

If a file named `filename` already exists, the operation depends on the type of output. When `filename` is a FITS file, the table will be added as a new extension after all existing extensions. If `filename` is a plain text file, this function will abort with an error.

If `filename` is a FITS file, the table extension will have the name `extname`.

When `colinfoinstdout!=0` and `filename==NULL` (columns are printed in the standard output), the dataset metadata will also printed in the standard output. When printing to the standard output, the column information can be piped into another program for further processing and thus the meta-data (lines starting with a `#`) must be ignored. In such cases, you only print the column values by passing `0` to `colinfoinstdout`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_table_write_log (gal_data_t *logll, char *program_string, time_t *rawtime, gal_list_str_t *comments, char *filename, int quiet, int format)`

Write the `logll` list of datasets into a table in `filename` (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812). This function is just a wrapper around `gal_table_comments_add_intro` and `gal_table_write` (see above). The `format` should be one of the `GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_*` macros above. If `quiet` is non-zero, this function will print a message saying that the `filename` has been created.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_table_col_vector_extract (gal_data_t *vector, gal_list_sizet_t *indexs)`

Given the "vector" column `vector` (which is assumed to be a 2D dataset), extract the tokens that are identified in the `indexs` list into a list of one dimensional datasets. For more on vector columns in tables, see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_table_cols_to_vector (gal_data_t *list)`

Merge the one-dimensional datasets in the given list into one 2-dimensional dataset that can be treated as a vector column. All the input datasets have to have the same size and type. For more on vector columns in tables, see Section 5.3.2 [Vector columns], page 346.

`void` [Function]
`gal_table_sort (gal_data_t *table, gal_data_t *sortcol, uint8_t descending)`

Sort the given `table` by the `sortcol` column in ascending order (descending, if `descending` is non-zero). To sort only a single column in place, see `gal_statistics_sort_*` of Section 12.3.22 [Statistical operations (`statistics.h`)], page 894.

12.3.11 FITS files (`fits.h`)

The FITS format is the most common format to store data (images and tables) in astronomy. The CFITSIO library already provides a very good low-level collection of functions for manipulating FITS data. The low-level nature of CFITSIO is defined for versatility and portability. As a result, even a simple and basic operation, like reading an image or table column into memory, will require a special sequence of CFITSIO function calls which can be inconvenient and buggy to manage in separate locations. To ease this process, Gnuastro's library provides wrappers for CFITSIO functions. With these, it much easier to read, write, or modify FITS file data, header keywords and extensions. Hence, if you feel these functions do not exactly do what you want, we strongly recommend reading the CFITSIO manual to

use its great features directly (afterwards, send us your wrappers so we can include it here for others to benefit also).

All the functions and macros introduced in this section are declared in `gnuastro/fits.h`. When you include this header, you are also including CFITSIO's `fitsio.h` header. So you do not need to explicitly include `fitsio.h` anymore and can freely use any of its macros or functions in your code along with those discussed here.

12.3.11.1 FITS Macros, errors and filenames

Some general constructs provided by Gnuastro's FITS handling functions are discussed here. In particular there are several useful functions about FITS file names.

`GAL_FITS_MAX_NDIM` [Macro]
: The maximum number of dimensions a dataset can have in FITS format, according to the FITS standard this is 999.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_io_error (int status, char *message)`
: If `status` is non-zero, this function will print the CFITSIO error message corresponding to status, print `message` (optional) in the next line and abort the program. If `message==NULL`, it will print a default string after the CFITSIO error.

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_name_is_fits (char *name)`
: If the `name` is an acceptable CFITSIO FITS filename return `1` (one), otherwise return `0` (zero). The currently acceptable FITS suffixes are `.fits`, `.fit`, `.fits.gz`, `.fits.Z`, `.imh`, `.fits.fz`. IMH is the IRAF format which is acceptable to CFITSIO.

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_suffix_is_fits (char *suffix)`
: Similar to `gal_fits_name_is_fits`, but only for the suffix. The suffix does not have to start with '`.`': this function will return `1` (one) for both `fits` and `.fits`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_file_recognized (char *name)`
: Return `1` if the given file name (possibly including its contents) is a FITS file. This is necessary when the contents of a FITS file do follow the FITS standard, but the file does not have a Gnuastro-recognized FITS suffix. Therefore, it will first call `gal_fits_name_is_fits`, if the result is negative, then this function will attempt to open the file with CFITSIO and if it works, it will close it again and return 1. In the process of opening the file, CFITSIO will just open the file, and no reading will take place, so it should have a minimal CPU footprint.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_fits_name_save_as_string (char *filename, char *hdu)`
: If the name is a FITS name, then put a `(hdu: ...)` after it and return the string. If it is not a FITS file, just print the name, if `filename==NULL`, then return the string `stdin`. Note that the output string's space is allocated.

This function is useful when you want to report a random file to the user which may be FITS or not (for a FITS file, simply the filename is not enough, the HDU is also necessary).

12.3.11.2 CFITSIO and Gnuastro types

Both Gnuastro and CFITSIO have special and different identifiers for each type that they accept. Gnuastro's type identifiers are fully described in Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771, and are usable for all kinds of datasets (images, table columns, etc) as part of Gnuastro's Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. However, following the FITS standard, CFITSIO has different identifiers for images and tables. Following CFITSIO's own convention, we will use `bitpix` for image type identifiers and `datatype` for its internal identifiers (and mainly used in tables). The functions introduced in this section can be used to convert between CFITSIO and Gnuastro's type identifiers.

One important issue to consider is that CFITSIO's types are not fixed width (for example, `long` may be 32-bits or 64-bits on different systems). However, Gnuastro's types are defined by their width. These functions will use information on the host system to do the proper conversion. To have a portable (usable on different systems) code, is thus recommended to use these functions and not to assume a fixed correspondence between CFITSIO and Gnuastro's types.

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_fits_bitpix_to_type (int bitpix)`
Return the Gnuastro type identifier that corresponds to CFITSIO's `bitpix` on this system.

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_type_to_bitpix (uint8_t type)`
Return the CFITSIO `bitpix` value that corresponds to Gnuastro's `type`.

`char` [Function]
`gal_fits_type_to_bin_tform (uint8_t type)`
Return the FITS standard binary table `TFORM` character that corresponds to Gnuastro's `type`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_type_to_datatype (uint8_t type)`
Return the CFITSIO `datatype` that corresponds to Gnuastro's `type` on this machine.

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_fits_datatype_to_type (int datatype, int is_table_column)`
Return Gnuastro's type identifier that corresponds to the CFITSIO `datatype`. Note that when dealing with CFITSIO's `TLONG`, the fixed width type differs between tables and images. So if the corresponding dataset is a table column, put a non-zero value into `is_table_column`.

12.3.11.3 FITS HDUs

A FITS file can contain multiple HDUs/extensions. The functions in this section can be used to get basic information about the extensions or open them. Note that `fitsfile` is defined in CFITSIO's `fitsio.h` which is automatically included by Gnuastro's `gnuastro/fits.h`.

`fitsfile *` [Function]
`gal_fits_open_to_write (char *filename)`
If `filename` exists, open it and return the `fitsfile` pointer that corresponds to it. If `filename` does not exist, the file will be created which contains a blank first extension and the pointer to its next extension will be returned.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_num (char *filename)`
Return the number of HDUs/extensions in `filename`.

`unsigned long` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_datasum (char *filename, char *hdu, char *hdu_option_name)`
Return the `DATASUM` of the given HDU in the given FITS file. For more on `DATASUM` in the FITS standard, see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304, (under the `checksum` component of `--write`). For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

`unsigned long` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_datasum_encoded (char *filename, char *hdu, char *hdu_option_name)`
Similar to `gal_fits_hdu_datasum`, but the returned value is always a 16-character string following the encoding that is described in the FITS standard (primarily for the `CHECKSUM` keyword, but can also be used for `DATASUM`.

`unsigned long` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_datasum_ptr (fitsfile *fptr)`
Return the `DATASUM` of the already opened HDU in `fptr`. For more on `DATASUM` in the FITS standard, see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304, (under the `checksum` component of `--write`).

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_format (char *filename, char *hdu, char *hdu_option_name)`
Return the format of the HDU as one of CFITSIO's recognized macros: `IMAGE_HDU`, `ASCII_TBL`, or `BINARY_TBL`. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_is_healpix (fitsfile *fptr)`
Return `1` if the dataset may be a HEALpix grid and `0` otherwise. Technically, it is considered to be a HEALPix if the HDU is not an ASCII table, and has the `NSIDE`, `FIRSTPIX` and `LASTPIX`.

`fitsfile *` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_open (char *filename, char *hdu, int iomode, int exitonerror, char *hdu_option_name)`

Open the HDU/extension `hdu` from `filename` and return a pointer to CFITSIO's `fitsfile`. `iomode` determines how the FITS file will be opened using CFITSIO's macros: `READONLY` or `READWRITE`.

The string in `hdu` will be appended to `filename` in square brackets so CFITSIO only opens this extension. You can use any formatting for the `hdu` that is acceptable to CFITSIO. See the description under `--hdu` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254, for more.

If `exitonerror!=0` and the given HDU cannot be opened for any reason, the function will exit the program, and print an informative message. Otherwise, when the HDU cannot be opened, it will just return a NULL pointer. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

`fitsfile *` [Function]
`gal_fits_hdu_open_format (char *filename, char *hdu, int img0_tab1, char *hdu_option_name)`

Open (in read-only format) the `hdu` HDU/extension of `filename` as an image or table. When `img0_tab1` is `0`(zero) but the HDU is a table, this function will abort with an error. It will also abort with an error when `img0_tab1` is `1` (one), but the HDU is an image. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

A FITS HDU may contain both tables or images. When your program needs one of these formats, you can call this function so if the user provided the wrong HDU/file, it will abort and inform the user that the file/HDU is has the wrong format.

12.3.11.4 FITS header keywords

Each FITS extension/HDU contains a raw dataset which can either be a table or an image along with some header keywords. The keywords can be used to store meta-data about the actual dataset. The functions in this section describe Gnuastro's high-level functions for reading and writing FITS keywords. Similar to all Gnuastro's FITS-related functions, these functions are all wrappers for CFITSIO's low-level functions.

The necessary meta-data (header keywords) for a particular dataset are commonly numerous, it is much more efficient to list them in one variable and call the reading/writing functions once. Hence the functions in this section use linked lists, a thorough introduction to them is given in Section 12.3.8 [Linked lists (`list.h`)], page 800. To reading FITS keywords, these functions use a list of Gnuastro's generic dataset format that is discussed in Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812. To write FITS keywords we define the `gal_fits_list_key_t` node that is defined below.

`gal_fits_list_key_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

Structure for writing FITS keywords. This structure is used for one keyword and you do not need to set all elements. With the `next` element, you can link it to another keyword thus creating a linked list to add any number of keywords easily and at any

step during your program (see Section 12.3.8 [Linked lists (`list.h`)], page 800, for an introduction on lists). See the functions below for adding elements to the list.

```
typedef struct gal_fits_list_key_t
{
  int                      tfree; /* ==1, free title string.  */
  int                      kfree; /* ==1, free keyword name.  */
  int                      vfree; /* ==1, free keyword value. */
  int                      cfree; /* ==1, free comment.       */
  int                      ufree; /* ==1, free unit.          */
  uint8_t                   type; /* Keyword value type.      */
  char                     *title; /* !=NULL, only print title.*/
  char                   *keyname; /* Keyword Name.            */
  void                     *value; /* Keyword value.           */
  char                   *comment; /* Keyword comment.         */
  char                      *unit; /* Keyword unit.            */
  struct gal_fits_list_key_t *next; /* Pointer next keyword.    */
} gal_fits_list_key_t;
```

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_exists_fptr (fitsfile *fptr, char *keyname)`

Return 1 (true) if the opened FITS file pointer contains the requested keyword and 0 (false) otherwise.

`void *` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_img_blank (uint8_t type)`

Returns a pointer to an allocated space containing the value to the FITS `BLANK` header keyword, when the input array has a type of `type`. This is useful when you want to write the `BLANK` keyword using CFITSIO's `fits_write_key` function.

According to the FITS standard: "If the `BSCALE` and `BZERO` keywords do not have the default values of 1.0 and 0.0, respectively, then the value of the `BLANK` keyword must equal the actual value in the FITS data array that is used to represent an undefined pixel and not the corresponding physical value". Therefore a special `BLANK` value is needed for datasets containing signed 8-bit, unsigned 16-bit, unsigned 32-bit, and unsigned 64-bit integers (types that are defined with `BSCALE` and `BZERO` in the FITS standard).

Not usable when reading a dataset: As quoted from the FITS standard above, the value returned by this function can only be generically used for the writing of the `BLANK` keyword header. It *must not* be used as the blank pointer when when reading a FITS array using CFITSIO. When reading an array with CFITSIO, you can use `gal_blank_alloc_write` to generate the necessary pointer.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_clean_str_value (char *string)`

Remove the single quotes and possible extra spaces around the keyword values that CFITSIO returns when reading a string keyword. CFITSIO does not remove the two

single quotes around the string value of a keyword. Hence the strings it reads are like: `'value '`, or `'some_very_long_value'`. To use the value during your processing, it is commonly necessary to remove the single quotes (and possible extra spaces). This function will do this within the allocated space of the string.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_date_to_struct_tm (char *fitsdate, struct tm *tp)`

Parse `fitsdate` as a FITS date format string (most generally: `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.ddd...`) into the C library's broken-down time structure, or `struct tm` (declared in `time.h`) and return a pointer to a newly allocated array for the sub-second part of the format (`.ddd...`). Therefore it needs to be freed afterwards (if it is not `NULL`) When there is no sub-second portion, this pointer will be `NULL`.

This is a relatively low-level function, an easier function to use is `gal_fits_key_date_to_seconds` which will return the sub-seconds as double precision floating point.

Note that the FITS date format mentioned above is the most complete representation. The following two formats are also acceptable: `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss` and `YYYY-MM-DD`. This option can also interpret the older FITS date format where only two characters are given to the year and the date format is reversed (`DD/MM/YYThh:mm:ss.ddd...`). In this case (following the GNU C Library), this option will make the following assumption: values 68 to 99 correspond to the years 1969 to 1999, and values 0 to 68 as the years 2000 to 2068.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_date_to_seconds (char *fitsdate, char **subsecstr, double *subsec)`

Return the Unix epoch time (number of seconds that have passed since 00:00:00 Thursday, January 1st, 1970) corresponding to the FITS date format string `fitsdate` (see description of `gal_fits_key_date_to_struct_tm` above). This function will return `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T` if the broken-down time could not be converted to seconds.

The Unix epoch time is in units of seconds, but the FITS date format allows sub-second accuracy. The last two arguments are for the optional sub-second portion. If you do not want sub-second information, just set the second argument to `NULL`.

If `fitsdate` contains sub-second accuracy and `subsecstr!=NULL`, then the starting of the sub-second part's string is stored in `subsecstr` (malloc'ed), and `subsec` will be the corresponding numerical value (between 0 and 1, in double precision floating point). So to avoid leaking memory, if a sub-second string is requested, it must be freed after calling this function. When a sub-second string does not exist (and it is requested), then a value of `NULL` and NaN will be written in `*subsecstr` and `*subsec` respectively.

This is a very useful function for operations on the FITS date values, for example, sorting FITS files by their dates, or finding the time difference between two FITS files. The advantage of working with the Unix epoch time is that you do not have to worry about calendar details (such as the number of days in different months or leap years).

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_read_from_ptr (fitsfile *fptr, gal_data_t *keysll, int readcomment, int readunit)`

Read the list of keyword values from a FITS pointer. The input should be a linked list of Gnuastro's generic data container (`gal_data_t`). Before calling this function, you just have to set the `name`, and optionally, the desired `type` of the value of each keyword. The given `name` value will be directly passed to CFITSIO to read the desired keyword name. This function will allocate space to keep the value. If no pre-defined type is requested for a certain keyword's value, the smallest possible type to host the value will be found and used. If `readcomment` and `readunit` are non-zero, this function will also try to read the possible comments and units of the keyword.

Here is one example of using this function:

```
/* Allocate an array of datasets. */
gal_data_t *keysll=gal_data_array_calloc(N);

/* Make the array usable as a list too (by setting `next'). */
for(i=0;i<N-1;++i) keysll[i].next=&keysll[i+1];

/* Fill the datasets with a `name' and a `type'. */
keysll[0].name="NAME1";     keysll[0].type=GAL_TYPE_INT32;
keysll[1].name="NAME2";     keysll[1].type=GAL_TYPE_STRING;
...
...

/* Call this function. */
gal_fits_key_read_from_ptr(fptr, keysll, 0, 0);

/* Use the values as you like... */

/* Free all the allocated spaces. Note that `name' was not
   allocated in this example, so we should explicitly set
   it to NULL before calling `gal_data_array_free'. */
for(i=0;i<N;++i) keysll[i].name=NULL;
gal_data_array_free(keysll, N, 1);
```

If the `array` pointer of each keyword's dataset is not `NULL`, then it is assumed that the space to keep the value has already been allocated. If it is `NULL`, space will be allocated for the value by this function.

Strings need special consideration: the reason is that generally, `gal_data_t` needs to also allow for array of strings (as it supports arrays of integers for example). Hence when reading a string value, two allocations may be done by this function (one if `array!=NULL`).

Therefore, when using the values of strings after this function, `keysll[i].array` must be interpreted as `char **`: one allocation for the pointer, one for the actual characters. If you use something like the example, above you do not have to worry about the freeing, `gal_data_array_free` will free both allocations. So to read a string, one easy way would be the following:

```
char *str, **strarray;
strarr = keysll[i].array;
str    = strarray[0];
```

If CFITSIO is unable to read a keyword for any reason the `status` element of the respective `gal_data_t` will be non-zero. If it is zero, then the keyword was found and successfully read. Otherwise, it is a CFITSIO status value. You can use CFITSIO's error reporting tools or `gal_fits_io_error` (see Section 12.3.11.1 [FITS Macros, errors and filenames], page 822) for reporting the reason of the failure. A tip: when the keyword does not exist, CFITSIO's status value will be `KEY_NO_EXIST`.

CFITSIO will start searching for the keywords from the last place in the header that it searched for a keyword. So it is much more efficient if the order that you ask for keywords is based on the order they are stored in the header.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_read (char *filename, char *hdu, gal_data_t *keysll, int readcomment, int readunit, char *hdu_option_name)`

Same as `gal_fits_read_keywords_fptr` (see above), but accepts the filename and HDU as input instead of an already opened CFITSIO `fitsfile` pointer.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_add (gal_fits_list_key_t **list, uint8_t type, char *keyname, int kfree, void *value, int vfree, char *comment, int cfree, char *unit, int ufree)`

Add a keyword to the top of list of header keywords that need to be written into a FITS file. In the end, the keywords will have to be freed, so it is important to know beforehand if they were allocated or not (hence the presence of the arguments ending in `free`). If the space for the respective element is not allocated, set these arguments to `0` (zero).

You can call this function multiple times on a single list add several keys that will be written in one call to `gal_fits_key_write` or `gal_fits_key_write_in_ptr`. However, the resulting list will be a last-in-first-out list (for more on lists, see Section 12.3.8 [Linked lists (`list.h`)], page 800). Hence, the written keys will have the inverse order of your calls to this function. To avoid this problem, you can either use `gal_fits_key_list_add_end` instead (which will add each key to the end of the list, not to the top like this function). Alternatively, you can use `gal_fits_key_list_reverse` after adding all the keys with this function.

Important note for strings: the value should be the pointer to the string itself (`char *`), not a pointer to a pointer (`char **`).

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_add_end (gal_fits_list_key_t **list, uint8_t type, char *keyname, int kfree, void *value, int vfree, char *comment, int cfree, char *unit, int ufree)`

Similar to `gal_fits_key_list_add`, but add the given keyword to the end of the list, see the description of `gal_fits_key_list_add` for more. Use this function if you want the keywords to be written in the same order that you add nodes to the list of keywords.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_title_add (gal_fits_list_key_t **list, char *title, int tfree)`

Add a special "title" keyword (with the `title` string) to the top of the keywords list. If `cfree` is non-zero, the space allocated for `comment` will be freed immediately after writing the keyword (in another function).

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_title_add_end (gal_fits_list_key_t **list, char *title, int tfree)`

Similar to `gal_fits_key_list_title_add`, but put the comments at the end of the list.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_fullcomment_add (gal_fits_list_key_t **list, char *comment, int fcfree)`

Add a `COMMENT` keyword to the top of the keywords list. If the comment is longer than 70 characters, CFITSIO will automatically break it into multiple `COMMENT` keywords. If `fcfree` is non-zero, the space allocated for `comment` will be freed immediately after writing the keyword (in another function).

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_fullcomment_add_end (gal_fits_list_key_t **list, char *comment, int fcfree)`

Similar to `gal_fits_key_list_comment_add`, but put the comments at the end of the list.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_add_date (gal_fits_list_key_t **keylist, char *comment)`

Add a `DATE` keyword to the input list of keywords containing the date this function was activated in the format of `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss`. This function will also add a `DATEUTC` keyword that specifies if the date is in UTC or local time (this depends on CFITSIO being able to detect UTC in the running operating system or not).

The comment of the keyword should also be specified as the second argument. The comment is useful to inform users what this date refers to; for example the program starting time, its ending time, or etc. For more, see the description under `DATE` in Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_add_software_versions (gal_fits_list_key_t **keylist)`

Add the version of Gnuastro Section 3.1.1 [Mandatory dependencies], page 213, to the list of keywords. Each software's keyword has the same name as the software itself (for example `GNUASTRO` or `GSL`. For the full list of software, see Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_add_git_commit (gal_fits_list_key_t **keylist)`
If the optional libgit2 dependency is installed and your program is being run in a directory that is under version control, a `COMMIT` keyword will be added on the top of the list of keywords. For more, see the description of `COMMIT` in Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_list_reverse (gal_fits_list_key_t **list)`
Reverse the input list of keywords.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_write_title_in_ptr (char *title, fitsfile *fptr)`
Add two lines of "title" keywords to the given CFITSIO `fptr` pointer. The first line will be blank and the second will have the string in `title` roughly in the middle of the line (a fixed distance from the start of the keyword line). A title in the list of keywords helps in classifying the keywords into groups and inspecting them by eye. If `title==NULL`, this function will not do anything.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_write_filename (char *keynamebase, char *filename, gal_fits_list_key_t **list, int top1end0, int quiet)`
Put `filename` into the `gal_fits_list_key_t` list (possibly broken up into multiple keywords) to later write into a HDU header. The `keynamebase` string will be appended with a `_N` (N>0) and used as the keyword name. If `top1end0!=0`, then the keywords containing the filename will be added to the top of the list.

The FITS standard sets a maximum length of 69 characters for the string values of a keyword[20]. This creates problems with file names (which include directories) because file names/addresses can become longer than the maximum number of characters in a FITS keyword (around 70 characters). Therefore, when `filename` is longer than the maximum length of a FITS keyword value, this function will break it into several keywords (breaking up the string on directory separators). So the full file/directory address (including directories) can be longer than 69 characters. However, if a single file or directory name (within a larger address) is longer than 69 characters, this function will truncate the name and print a warning. If `quiet!=0`, then the warning will not be printed.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_write_wcsstr (fitsfile *fptr, struct wcsprm wcs, char *wcsstr, int nkeyrec)`
Write the WCS header string (produced with WCSLIB's `wcshdo` function) into the CFITSIO `fitsfile` pointer. `nkeyrec` is the number of FITS header keywords in `wcsstr`. This function will put a few blank keyword lines along with a comment `WCS information` before writing each keyword record.

[20] The limit is actually 71 characters (which is the full 80 character length, subtracted by 8 for the keyword name and one character for the `=`). However, for strings, FITS also requires two single quotes.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_write (gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist, char *filename, char *hdu, char *hdu_option_name, int freekeys, int create_fits_not_exists)`

Write the list of keywords in `keylist` into the `hdu` extension of the file called `filename`. If the file may not exist before this function is activated, set `create_fits_not_exists` to non-zero and set the HDU to `"0"`. If the keywords should be freed after they are written, set the `freekeys` value to non-zero. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

The list nodes are meant to be dynamically allocated (because they will be freed after being written). We thus recommend using the `gal_fits_key_list_add` or `gal_fits_key_list_add_end` to create and fill the list. Below is one fully working example of using this function to write a keyword into an existing FITS file.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <gnuastro/fits.h>

int main()
{
  char *filename="test.fits";
  gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist=NULL;

  char *unit="unit";
  float value=123.456;
  char *keyname="MYKEY";
  char *comment="A good description of the key";
  gal_fits_key_list_add_end(&keylist, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32, keyname, 0,
                            &value, 0, comment, 0, unit, 0);
  gal_fits_key_list_title_add(&keylist, "Matching metadata", 0);
  gal_fits_key_write(keylist, filename, "1", "NONE", 1, 0);
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_key_write_in_ptr (gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist, fitsfile *fptr, int freekeys)`

Write the list of keywords in `keylist` into the given CFITSIO `fitsfile` pointer and free keylist. For more on the input `keylist`, see the description and example for `gal_fits_key_write`, above.

`gal_list_str_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_with_keyvalue (gal_list_str_t *files, char *hdu, char *name, gal_list_str_t *values, char *hdu_option_name)`

Given a list of FITS file names (`files`), a certain HDU (`hdu`), a certain keyword name (`name`), and a list of acceptable values (`values`), return the subset of file names where the requested keyword name has one of the acceptable values. For more on

`hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

`gal_list_str_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_unique_keyvalues (gal_list_str_t *files, char *hdu, char *name, char *hdu_option_name)`

Given a list of FITS file names (`files`), a certain HDU (`hdu`), a certain keyword name (`name`), return the list of unique values to that keyword name in all the files. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

12.3.11.5 FITS arrays (images)

Images (or multi-dimensional arrays in general) are one of the common data formats that is stored in FITS files. Only one image may be stored in each FITS HDU/extension. The functions described here can be used to get the information of, read, or write images in FITS files.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_info (fitsfile *fptr, int *type, size_t *ndim, size_t **dsize, char **name, char **unit)`

Read the type (see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771), number of dimensions, and size along each dimension of the CFITSIO `fitsfile` into the `type`, `ndim`, and `dsize` pointers respectively. If `name` and `unit` are not `NULL` (point to a `char *`), then if the image has a name and units, the respective string will be put in these pointers.

`size_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_info_dim (char *filename, char *hdu, size_t *ndim, char *hdu_option_name)`

Put the number of dimensions in the `hdu` extension of `filename` in the space that `ndim` points to and return the size of the dataset along each dimension as an allocated array with `*ndim` elements. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_read (char *filename, char *hdu, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Read the contents of the `hdu` extension/HDU of `filename` into a Gnuastro generic data container (see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784) and return it. If the necessary space is larger than `minmapsize`, then do not keep the data in RAM, but in a file on the HDD/SSD. For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` see the description under the same name in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

Note that this function only reads the main data within the requested FITS extension, the WCS will not be read into the returned dataset. To read the WCS, you can use `gal_wcs_read` function as shown below. Afterwards, the `gal_data_free` function will free both the dataset and any WCS structure (if there are any).

```
data=gal_fits_img_read(filename, hdu, -1, 1, NULL);
data->wcs=gal_wcs_read(filename, hdu, 0, 0, 0, &data->wcs->nwcs,
                       NULL);
```

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_read_to_type (char *inputname, char *inhdu, uint8_t type, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Read the contents of the `hdu` extension/HDU of `filename` into a Gnuastro generic data container (see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784) of type `type` and return it.

This is just a wrapper around `gal_fits_img_read` (to read the image/array of any type) and `gal_data_copy_to_new_type_free` (to convert it to `type` and free the initially read dataset). See the description there for more.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_read_kernel (char *filename, char *hdu, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Read the `hdu` of `filename` as a convolution kernel. A convolution kernel must have an odd size along all dimensions, it must not have blank (NaN in floating point types) values and must be flipped around the center to make the proper convolution (see Section 6.3.1.1 [Convolution process], page 480). If there are blank values, this function will change the blank values to `0.0`. If the input image does not have the other two requirements, this function will abort with an error describing the condition to the user. The finally returned dataset will have a `float32` type.

For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

`fitsfile *` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_write_to_ptr (gal_data_t *input, char *filename, gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist, int freekeys)`

Write the `input` dataset into a FITS file named `filename` and return the corresponding CFITSIO `fitsfile` pointer. This function will not close `fitsfile`, so you can still add other extensions to it after this function or make other modifications.

In case you want to add keywords into the HDU that contain the data, you can use the second two arguments (see the description of `gal_fits_key_write`). These keywords will be written into the HDU before writing the data: when there are more than roughly 5 keywords (assuming your dataset has WCS) and your dataset is large, this can result in significant optimization of the running time (because adding a keyword beyond the 36 key slots will cause the whole data to shift for another block of 36 keywords).

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_write (gal_data_t *input, char *filename, gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist, int freekeys)`

Write the `input` dataset into the FITS file named `filename`. Also add the list of header keywords (`keylist`) to the newly created HDU/extension The list of keywords

will be freed after writing into the HDU, if you need them later, keep a separate copy of the list before calling this function.

For the importance of why it is better to add your keywords in this function (before writing the data) or after it, see the description of `gal_fits_img_write_to_ptr`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_write_to_type (gal_data_t *input, char *filename, gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist, int type, int freekeys)`

Convert the `input` dataset into `type`, then write it into the FITS file named `filename`. Also add the `keylist` keywords to the newly created HDU/extension along with your program's name (`program_string`). After the FITS file is written, this function will free the copied dataset (with type `type`) from memory.

For the importance of why it is better to add your keywords in this function (before writing the data) or after it, see the description of `gal_fits_img_write_to_ptr`. This is just a wrapper for the `gal_data_copy_to_new_type` and `gal_fits_img_write` functions.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_img_write_corr_wcs_str (gal_data_t *input, char *filename, char *wcsstr, int nkeyrec, double *crpix, gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist, int freekeys)`

Write the `input` dataset into `filename` using the `wcsstr` while correcting the `CRPIX` values. For the importance of why it is better to add your keywords in this function (before writing the data) or after it, see the description of `gal_fits_img_write_to_ptr`.

This function is mainly useful when you want to make FITS files in parallel (from one main WCS structure, with just a differing CRPIX), for more on the arguments, see the description of `gal_fits_img_write`. This can happen in the following cases for example:

- When a large number of FITS images (with WCS) need to be created in parallel, it can be much more efficient to write the header's WCS keywords once at first, write them in the FITS file, then just correct the CRPIX values.
- WCSLIB's header writing function is not thread safe. So when writing FITS images in parallel, we cannot write the header keywords in each thread.

12.3.11.6 FITS tables

Tables are one of the common formats of data that is stored in FITS files. Only one table may be stored in each FITS HDU/extension, but each table column must be viewed as a different dataset (with its own name, units and numeric data type for example). The only constraint of the column datasets in a table is that they must be one-dimensional and have the same number of elements as the other columns. The functions described here can be used to get the information of, read, or write columns into FITS tables.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_tab_size (fitsfile *fitsptr, size_t *nrows, size_t *ncols)`

Read the number of rows and columns in the table within CFITSIO's `fitsptr`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_fits_tab_format (fitsfile *fitsptr)`

Return the format of the FITS table contained in CFITSIO's `fitsptr`. Recall that FITS tables can be in binary or ASCII formats. This function will return `GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_AFITS` or `GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_BFITS` (defined in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816). If the `fitsptr` is not a table, this function will abort the program with an error message informing the user of the problem.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_tab_info (char *filename, char *hdu, size_t *numcols, size_t *numrows, int *tableformat, char *hdu_option_name)`

Store the information of each column in `hdu` of `filename` into an array of data structures with `numcols` elements (one data structure for each column) see Section 12.3.6.3 [Arrays of datasets], page 789. The total number of rows in the table is also put into the memory that `numrows` points to. The format of the table (e.g., FITS binary or ASCII table) will be put in `tableformat` (macros defined in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816). For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

This function is just for column information. Therefore it only stores meta-data like column name, units and comments. No actual data (contents of the columns for example, the `array` or `dsize` elements) will be allocated by this function. This is a low-level function particular to reading tables in FITS format. To be generic, it is recommended to use `gal_table_info` which will allow getting information from a variety of table formats based on the filename (see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fits_tab_read (char *filename, char *hdu, size_t numrows, gal_data_t *colinfo, gal_list_sizet_t *indexll, size_t numthreads, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, char *hdu_option_name)`

Read the columns given in the list `indexll` from a FITS table (in `filename` and HDU/extension `hdu`) into the returned linked list of data structures, see Section 12.3.8.3 [List of `size_t`], page 804, and Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

Each column will be read independently, therefore they will be read in `numthreads` CPU threads to greatly speed up the reading when there are many columns and rows. However, this only happens if CFITSIO was configured with `--enable-reentrant`. This test has been done at Gnuastro's configuration time; if so, `GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_FITS_IS_REENTRANT` will have a value of 1, otherwise, it will have a value of 0. For more on this macro, see Section 12.3.1 [Configuration information (`config.h`)], page 765).

If the necessary space for each column is larger than `minmapsize`, do not keep it in the RAM, but in a file in the HDD/SSD. For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap`, see the description under the same name in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

Each column will have `numrows` rows and `colinfo` contains any further information about the columns (returned by `gal_fits_tab_info`, described above). Note that this is a low-level function, so the output data linked list is the inverse of the input indexes linked list. It is recommended to use `gal_table_read` for generic reading of tables, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

`void` [Function]
`gal_fits_tab_write (gal_data_t *cols, gal_list_str_t *comments, int tableformat, char *filename, char *extname, gal_fits_list_key_t *keywords, int freekeys)`

Write the list of datasets in `cols` (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812) as separate columns in a FITS table in `filename`. If `filename` already exists then this function will write the table as a new extension called `extname`, after all existing ones. The format of the table (ASCII or binary) may be specified with the `tableformat` (see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816). If `comments!=NULL`, each node of the list of strings will be written as a `COMMENT` keywords in the output FITS file (see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801.

In case your table needs metadata keywords, you can use the `listkeys` and `freekeys`. For more on these, see the description of `gal_fits_key_write_in_ptr`.

This is a low-level function for tables. It is recommended to use `gal_table_write` for generic writing of tables in a variety of formats, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

12.3.12 File input output

The most commonly used file format in astronomical data analysis is the FITS format (see Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, for an introduction), therefore Gnuastro's library provides a large and separate collection of functions to read/write data from/to them (see Section 12.3.11 [FITS files (`fits.h`)], page 821). However, FITS is not well recognized outside the astronomical community and cannot be imported into documents or slides. Therefore, in this section, we discuss the other different file formats that Gnuastro's library recognizes.

12.3.12.1 Text files (`txt.h`)

The most universal and portable format for data storage are plain text files. They can be viewed and edited on any text editor or even on the command-line. This section are describes some functions that help in reading from and writing to plain text files.

Lines are one of the most basic building blocks (delimiters) of a text file. Some operating systems like Microsoft Windows, terminate their ASCII text lines with a carriage return character and a new-line character (two characters, also known as CRLF line terminators). While Unix-like operating systems just use a single new-line character. The functions below that read an ASCII text file are able to identify lines with both kinds of line terminators.

Gnuastro defines a simple format for metadata of table columns in a plain text file that is discussed in Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287. The functions to get information from, read from and write to plain text files also follow those conventions.

`GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_INVALID` [Macro]
`GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_BLANK` [Macro]

`GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_COMMENT` [Macro]
`GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_DATAROW` [Macro]

Status codes for lines in a plain text file that are returned by `gal_txt_line_stat`. Lines which have a `#` character as their first non-white character are considered to be comments. Lines with nothing but white space characters are considered blank. The remaining lines are considered as containing data.

```
int                                                          [Function]
gal_txt_line_stat (char *line)
```

Check the contents of `line` and see if it is a blank, comment, or data line. The returned values are the macros that start with `GAL_TXT_LINESTAT`.

```
char *                                                       [Function]
gal_txt_trim_space (char *str)
```

Trim the white space characters before and after the given string. The operation is done within the allocated space of the string, so if you need the string untouched, please pass an allocated copy of the string to this function. The returned pointer is within the input string. If the input pointer is `NULL`, or the string only has white-space characters, the returned pointer will be `NULL`.

```
int                                                          [Function]
gal_txt_contains_string (char *full, char *match)
```

Return 1 if the string that `match` points to, can be exactly found within the string that `full` points to (character by character). The to-match string can be in any part of the full string. If any of the two strings have zero length or are a `NULL` pointer, this function will return 0.

```
gal_data_t *                                                 [Function]
gal_txt_table_info (char *filename, gal_list_str_t *lines, size_t
        *numcols, size_t *numrows)
```

Store the information of each column in a text file `filename`, or list of strings (`lines`) into an array of data structures with `numcols` elements (one data structure for each column) see Section 12.3.6.3 [Arrays of datasets], page 789. The total number of rows in the table is also put into the memory that `numrows` points to.

`lines` is a list of strings with each node representing one line (including the new-line character), see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801. It will mostly be the output of `gal_txt_stdin_read`, which is used to read the program's input as separate lines from the standard input (see below). Note that `filename` and `lines` are mutually exclusive and one of them must be `NULL`.

This function is just for column information. Therefore it only stores meta-data like column name, units and comments. No actual data (contents of the columns for example, the `array` or `dsize` elements) will be allocated by this function. This is a low-level function particular to reading tables in plain text format. To be generic, it is recommended to use `gal_table_info` which will allow getting information from a variety of table formats based on the filename (see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816).

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_txt_table_read (char *filename, gal_list_str_t *lines, size_t
        numrows, gal_data_t *colinfo, gal_list_sizet_t *indexll,
        size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)
```

Read the columns given in the list `indexll` from a plain text file (`filename`) or list of strings (`lines`), into a linked list of data structures (see Section 12.3.8.3 [List of `size_t`], page 804, and Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812). If the necessary space for each column is larger than `minmapsize`, do not keep it in the RAM, but in a file on the HDD/SSD. For more one `minmapsize` and `quietmmap`, see the description under the same name in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

`lines` is a list of strings with each node representing one line (including the new-line character), see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801. It will mostly be the output of `gal_txt_stdin_read`, which is used to read the program's input as separate lines from the standard input (see below). Note that `filename` and `lines` are mutually exclusive and one of them must be `NULL`.

Note that this is a low-level function, so the output data list is the inverse of the input indices linked list. It is recommended to use `gal_table_read` for generic reading of tables in any format, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_txt_image_read (char *filename, gal_list_str_t *lines, size_t
        minmapsize, int quietmmap)
```

Read the 2D plain text dataset in file (`filename`) or list of strings (`lines`) into a dataset and return the dataset. If the necessary space for the image is larger than `minmapsize`, do not keep it in the RAM, but in a file on the HDD/SSD. For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap`, see the description under the same name in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

`lines` is a list of strings with each node representing one line (including the new-line character), see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801. It will mostly be the output of `gal_txt_stdin_read`, which is used to read the program's input as separate lines from the standard input (see below). Note that `filename` and `lines` are mutually exclusive and one of them must be `NULL`.

```
gal_list_str_t *                                                [Function]
gal_txt_stdin_read (long timeout_microsec)
```

Read the complete standard input and return a list of strings with each line (including the new-line character) as one node of that list. If the standard input is already filled (for example, connected to another program's output with a pipe), then this function will parse the whole stream.

If Standard input is not pre-configured and the *first line* is typed/written in the terminal before `timeout_microsec` micro-seconds, it will continue parsing until reaches an end-of-file character (`CTRL-D` after a new-line on the keyboard) with no time limit. If nothing is entered before `timeout_microsec` micro-seconds, it will return `NULL`.

All the functions that can read plain text tables will accept a filename as well as a list of strings (intended to be the output of this function for using Standard input).

The reason for keeping the standard input is that once something is read from the standard input, it is hard to put it back. We often need to read a text file several times: once to count how many columns it has and which ones are requested, and another time to read the desired columns. So it easier to keep it all in allocated memory and pass it on from the start for each round.

`gal_list_str_t *` [Function]
`gal_txt_read_to_list (char *filename)`

Read the contents of the given plain-text file and put each word (separated by a SPACE character, into a new node of the output list. The order of nodes in the output is the same as the input. Any new-line character at the end of a word is removed in the output list.

`void` [Function]
`gal_txt_write (gal_data_t *cols, struct gal_fits_list_key_t **keylist, gal_list_str_t *comment, char *filename, uint8_t colinfoinstdout, int tab0_img1, int freekeys)`

Write `cols` in a plain text file `filename` (table when `tab0_img1==0` and image when `tab0_img1==1`). `cols` may have one or two dimensions which determines the output:

1D `cols` is treated as a column and a list of datasets (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812): every node in the list is written as one column in a table.

2D `cols` is a two dimensional array, it cannot be treated as a list (only one 2D array can currently be written to a text file). So if `cols->next!=NULL` the next nodes in the list are ignored and will not be written.

This is a low-level function for tables. It is recommended to use `gal_table_write` for generic writing of tables in a variety of formats, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

It is possible to add two types of metadata to the printed table: comments and keywords. Each string in the list given to `comments` will be printed into the file as a separate line, starting with `#`. Keywords have a more specific and computer-parsable format and are passed through `keylist`. Each keyword is also printed in one line, but with the format below. Because of the various components in a keyword, it is thus necessary to use the `gal_fits_list_key_t` data structure. For more, see Section 12.3.11.4 [FITS header keywords], page 825.

```
# [key] NAME: VALUE / [UNIT] KEYWORD COMMENT.
```

If `filename` already exists this function will abort with an error and will not write over the existing file. Before calling this function make sure if the file exists or not. If `comments!=NULL`, a `#` will be put at the start of each node of the list of strings and will be written in the file before the column meta-data in `filename` (see Section 12.3.8.1 [List of strings], page 801).

When `filename==NULL`, the column information will be printed on the standard output (command-line). When `colinfoinstdout!=0` and `filename==NULL` (columns are printed in the standard output), the dataset metadata will also printed in the standard output. When printing to the standard output, the column information can

be piped into another program for further processing and thus the meta-data (lines starting with a `#`) must be ignored. In such cases, you only print the column values by passing `0` to `colinfoinstdout`.

12.3.12.2 TIFF files (`tiff.h`)

Outside of astronomy, the TIFF standard is arguably the most commonly used format to store high-precision data/images. Unlike FITS however, the TIFF standard only supports images (not tables), but like FITS, it has support for all standard data types (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) which is the primary reason other fields use it.

Another similarity of the TIFF and FITS standards is that TIFF supports multiple images in one file. The TIFF standard calls each one of these images (and their accompanying meta-data) a 'directory' (roughly equivalent to the FITS extensions). Unlike FITS however, the directories can only be identified by their number (counting from zero), recall that in FITS you can also use the extension name to identify it.

The functions described here allow easy reading (and later writing) of TIFF files within Gnuastro or for users of Gnuastro's libraries. Currently only reading is supported, but if you are interested, please get in touch with us.

`int` [Function]
`gal_tiff_name_is_tiff (char *name)`
Return `1` if `name` has a TIFF suffix. This can be used to make sure that a given input file is TIFF. See `gal_tiff_suffix_is_tiff` for a list of recognized suffixes.

`int` [Function]
`gal_tiff_suffix_is_tiff (char *name)`
Return `1` if `suffix` is a recognized TIFF suffix. The recognized suffixes are `tif`, `tiff`, `TIFF` and `TIFF`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_tiff_dir_string_read (char *string)`
Return the number within `string` as a `size_t` number to identify a TIFF directory. Note that the directories start counting from zero.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_tiff_read (char *filename, size_t dir, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`
Read the `dir` directory within the TIFF file `filename` and return the contents of that TIFF directory as `gal_data_t`. If the directory's image contains multiple channels, the output will be a list (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812).

`void` [Function]
`gal_tiff_write (gal_data_t *in, char *filename, int widthinpx, int heightinpix, int bitspersample, int numimg)`
Write the given dataset (`in`) into `filename` (a TIFF file) with the specified image width in pixels (`widthinpix`),height in pixels (`heightinpix`), bits per sample (`bitspersample`), and number of images (`numimg`).

12.3.12.3 JPEG files (jpeg.h)

The JPEG file format is one of the most common formats for storing and transferring images, recognized by almost all image rendering and processing programs. In particular, because of its lossy compression algorithm, JPEG files can have low volumes, making it used heavily on the internet. For more on this file format, and a comparison with others, please see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317.

For scientific purposes, the lossy compression and very limited dynamic range (8-bit integers) make JPEG very unattractive for storing of valuable data. However, because of its commonality, it will inevitably be needed in some situations. The functions here can be used to read and write JPEG images into Gnuastro's Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (gal_data_t)], page 784. If the JPEG file has more than one color channel, each channel is treated as a separate node in a list of datasets (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of gal_data_t], page 812).

int [Function]
gal_jpeg_name_is_jpeg (char *name)
: Return 1 if name has a JPEG suffix. This can be used to make sure that a given input file is JPEG. See gal_jpeg_suffix_is_jpeg for a list of recognized suffixes.

int [Function]
gal_jpeg_suffix_is_jpeg (char *name)
: Return 1 if suffix is a recognized JPEG suffix. The recognized suffixes are .jpg, .JPG, .jpeg, .JPEG, .jpe, .jif, .jfif and .jfi.

gal_data_t * [Function]
gal_jpeg_read (char *filename, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)
: Read the JPEG file filename and return the contents as gal_data_t. If the directory's image contains multiple colors/channels, the output will be a list with one node per color/channel (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of gal_data_t], page 812).

void [Function]
gal_jpeg_write (gal_data_t *in, char *filename, uint8_t quality,
float widthincm)
: Write the given dataset (in) into filename (a JPEG file). If in is a list, then each node in the list will be a color channel, therefore there can only be 1, 3 or 4 nodes in the list. If the number of nodes is different, then this function will abort the program with a message describing the cause. The lossy JPEG compression level can be set through quality which is a value between 0 and 100 (inclusive, 100 being the best quality). The display width of the JPEG file in units of centimeters (to suggest to viewers/users, only a meta-data) can be set through widthincm.

12.3.12.4 EPS files (eps.h)

The Encapsulated PostScript (EPS) format is commonly used to store images (or individual/single-page parts of a document) in the PostScript documents. For a more complete introduction, please see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317. To provide high quality graphics, the Postscript language is a vectorized format, therefore pixels (elements of a "rasterized" format) are not defined in their context.

To display rasterized images, PostScript does allow arrays of pixels. However, since the over-all EPS file may contain many vectorized elements (for example, borders, text, or other lines over the text) and interpreting them is not trivial or necessary within Gnuastro's scope, Gnuastro only provides some functions to write a dataset (in the `gal_data_t` format, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784) into EPS.

`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_TEXT` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_FONT` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_XPIX` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_YPIX` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_SHAPE` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_COLOR` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_SIZE1` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_SIZE2` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_ROTATE` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_FONTSIZE` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_LINEWIDTH` [Macro]
Name of column that the required property will be read from.

`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SHAPE` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_COLOR` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SIZE1` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SIZE2` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SIZE2_ELLIPSE` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_ROTATE` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_LINEWIDTH` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_FONT` [Macro]
`GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_FONTSIZE` [Macro]
Default values for the various mark properties. These constants will be used if the caller has not provided any of the given property.

`int` [Function]
`gal_eps_name_is_eps (char *name)`
Return `1` if `name` has an EPS suffix. This can be used to make sure that a given input file is EPS. See `gal_eps_suffix_is_eps` for a list of recognized suffixes.

`int` [Function]
`gal_eps_suffix_is_eps (char *name)`
Return `1` if `suffix` is a recognized EPS suffix. The recognized suffixes are `.eps`, `.EPS`, `.epsf`, `.epsi`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_eps_to_pt (float widthincm, size_t *dsize, size_t *w_h_in_pt)`
Given a specific width in centimeters (`widthincm` and the number of he dataset's pixels in each dimension (`dsize`) calculate the size of he output in PostScript points. The output values are written in the `w_h_in_pt` array (which has to be allocated before calling this unction). The first element in `w_h_in_pt` is the width and the second is the height of the image.

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_eps_shape_name_to_id (char *name)`
Return the shape ID of a mark from its name (which is not case-sensitive).

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_eps_shape_id_to_name (uint8_t id)`
Return the shape name from its ID.

`void` [Function]
`gal_eps_write (gal_data_t *in, char *filename, float widthincm, uint32_t borderwidth, uint8_t bordercolor, int hex, int dontoptimize, int forps, gal_data_t *marks)`
Write the `in` dataset into an EPS file called `filename`. `in` has to be an unsigned 8-bit character type `GAL_TYPE_UINT8`, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The desired width of the image in human/non-pixel units can be set with he `widthincm` argument. If `borderwidth` is non-zero, it is interpreted as the width (in points) of a solid black border around the mage. A border can helpful when importing the EPS file into a document. The color of the border can be set with `bordercolor`, use the macros in Section 12.3.30 [Color functions (`color.h`)], page 927. If `forpdf` is not zero, the output can be imported into a Postscript file directly (not as an "encapsulated" postscript, which is the default).

EPS files are plain-text (can be opened/edited in a text editor), therefore there are different encodings to store the data (pixel values) within them. Gnuastro supports the Hexadecimal and ASCII85 encoding. ASCII85 is more efficient (producing small file sizes), so it is the default encoding. To use Hexadecimal encoding, set `hex` to a non-zero value.

By default, when the dataset only has two values, this function will use the PostScript optimization that allows setting the pixel values per bit, not byte (Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317). This can greatly help reduce the file size. However, when `dontoptimize!=0`, this optimization is disabled: even though there are only two values (is binary), the difference between them does not correspond to the full contrast of black and white.

If `marks!=NULL`, it is assumed to contain multiple columns of information to draw marks over the background image. The multiple columns are a linked list of 1D `gal_data_t` of the same size (number of rows) that are connected to each other through the `next` element (this is the same format that Gnuastro's library uses for tables, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816, or Section 12.4.4 [Library demo - reading and writing table columns], page 948).

The macros defined above that have the format of `GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_*` show all the possible columns that you can provide in this linked list. Only the two coordinate columns are mandatory (`GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_XPIX` and `GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_YPIX`. If any of the other properties is not in the linked list, then the default properties of the `GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_*` macros will be used (also defined above.

The columns are identified based on the `name` element of Gnuastro's generic data structure (see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784). The names must have the pre-defined names of the `GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_*` macros (case sensitive). Therefore, the order of columns in the list is irrelevant!

12.3.12.5 PDF files (`pdf.h`)

The portable document format (PDF) has arguably become the most common format used for distribution of documents. In practice, a PDF file is just a compiled PostScript file. For a more complete introduction, please see Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317. To provide high quality graphics, the PDF is a vectorized format, therefore pixels (elements of a "rasterized" format) are not defined in their context. As a result, similar to Section 12.3.12.4 [EPS files (`eps.h`)], page 842, Gnuastro only writes datasets to a PDF file, not vice-versa.

`int` [Function]
`gal_pdf_name_is_pdf (char *name)`
Return `1` if `name` has an PDF suffix. This can be used to make sure that a given input file is PDF. See `gal_pdf_suffix_is_pdf` for a list of recognized suffixes.

`int` [Function]
`gal_pdf_suffix_is_pdf (char *name)`
Return `1` if `suffix` is a recognized PDF suffix. The recognized suffixes are `.pdf` and `.PDF`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_pdf_write (gal_data_t *in, char *filename, float widthincm, uint32_t borderwidth, uint8_t bordercolor, int dontoptimize, gal_data_t *marks)`
Write the `in` dataset into an EPS file called `filename`. `in` has to be an unsigned 8-bit character type (`GAL_TYPE_UINT8`, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). The desired width of the image in human/non-pixel units can be set with the `widthincm` argument. If `borderwidth` is non-zero, it is interpreted as the width (in points) of a solid black border around the image. A border can helpful when importing the PDF file into a document. The color of the border can be set with `bordercolor`, use the macros in Section 12.3.30 [Color functions (`color.h`)], page 927.

This function is just a wrapper for the `gal_eps_write` function in Section 12.3.12.4 [EPS files (`eps.h`)], page 842. After making the EPS file, Ghostscript (with a version of 9.10 or above, see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215) will be used to compile the EPS file to a PDF file. Therefore if Ghostscript does not exist, does not have the proper version, or fails for any other reason, the EPS file will remain. It can be used to find the cause, or use another converter or PostScript compiler.

By default, when the dataset only has two values, this function will use the PostScript optimization that allows setting the pixel values per bit,not byte (Section 5.2.2 [Recognized file formats], page 317). This can greatly help reduce the file size. However, when `dontoptimize!=0`, this optimization is disabled: even though there are only two values (is binary), the difference between them does not correspond to the full contrast of black and white.

If `marks!=NULL`, it is assumed to contain information on how to draw marks over the image. This is directly fed to the `gal_eps_write` function, so for more on how to provide the mark information, see the description of `gal_eps_write` in Section 12.3.12.4 [EPS files (`eps.h`)], page 842.

12.3.13 World Coordinate System (`wcs.h`)

The FITS standard defines the world coordinate system (WCS) as a mechanism to associate physical values to positions within a dataset. For example, it can be used to convert pixel coordinates in an image to celestial coordinates like the right ascension and declination. The functions in this section are mainly just wrappers over CFITSIO, WCSLIB and GSL library functions to help in common applications.

[**Tread safety**] Since WCSLIB version 5.18 (released in January 2018), most WCSLIB functions are thread safe[21]. Gnuastro has high-level functions to easily spin-off threads and speed up your programs. For a fully working example see Section 12.4.3 [Library demo - multi-threaded operation], page 944. However you still need to be cautious in the following scenarios below.

- Many users or operating systems may still use an older version.
- The `wcsprm` structure of WCSLIB is not thread-safe: you can't use the same pointer on multiple threads. For example, if you use `gal_wcs_img_to_world` simultaneously on multiple threads, you shouldn't pass the same `wcsprm` structure pointer. You can use `gal_wcs_copy` to keep and use separate copies the main structure within each thread, and later free the copies with `gal_wcs_free`.

The full set of functions and global constants that are defined by Gnuastro's `gnuastro/wcs.h` are described below.

`GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_TPD` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_SIP` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_TPV` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_DSS` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_WAT` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_INVALID` [Global integer]
Gnuastro identifiers of the various WCS distortion conventions, for more, see Calabretta et al. (2004, preprint)[22]. Among these, SIP is a prior distortion, the rest other are sequent distortions. TPD is a superset of all these, hence it has both prior and sequeal distortion coefficients. More information is given in the documentation of `dis.h`, from the WCSLIB manual[23].

`GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_EQB1950` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_EQJ2000` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_ECB1950` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_ECJ2000` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_GALACTIC` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_SUPERGALACTIC` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_INVALID` [Global integer]
Recognized WCS coordinate systems in Gnuastro. `EQ` and `EC` stand for the EQuatorial and ECliptic coordinate systems. In the equatorial and ecliptic coordinates, `B1950` stands for the Besselian 1950 epoch and `J2000` stands for the Julian 2000 epoch.

[21] `https://www.atnf.csiro.au/people/mcalabre/WCS/wcslib/threads.html`
[22] `https://www.atnf.csiro.au/people/mcalabre/WCS/dcs_20040422.pdf`
[23] `https://www.atnf.csiro.au/people/mcalabre/WCS/wcslib/dis_8h.html`

`GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_PC` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_CD` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_INVALID` [Global integer]
Identifiers of the linear transformation matrix: either in the `PCi_j` or the `CDi_j` formalism. For more, see the description of `--wcslinearmatrix` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_AZP` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_SZP` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_TAN` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_STG` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_SIN` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_ARC` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_ZPN` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_ZEA` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_AIR` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CYP` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CEA` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CAR` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_MER` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_SFL` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_PAR` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_MOL` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_AIT` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COP` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COE` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COD` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COO` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_BON` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_PCO` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_TSC` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CSC` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_QSC` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_HPX` [Global integer]
`GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_XPH` [Global integer]
The various types of recognized FITS WCS projections; for more details see Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

`GAL_WCS_FLTERROR` [Macro]
Limit of rounding for floating point errors.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_distortion_name_to_id (char *name)`
Convert the given string (assumed to be a FITS-standard, string-based distortion identifier) to a Gnuastro's integer-based distortion identifier (one of the `GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_*` macros defined above). The sting-based distortion identifiers have three characters and are all in capital letters.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_distortion_name_from_id (int id)`
Convert the given Gnuastro integer-based distortion identifier (one of the `GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_*` macros defined above) to the string-based distortion identifier) of the FITS standard. The sting-based distortion identifiers have three characters and are all in capital letters.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_coordsys_name_to_id (char *name)`
Convert the given string to Gnuastro's integer-based WCS coordinate system identifier (one of the `GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_*`, listed above). The expected strings can be seen in the description of the `--wcscoordsys` option of the Fits program, see Section 5.1.1.2 [Keyword inspection and manipulation], page 304.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_distortion_name_to_id (char *name)`
Convert the given string (assumed to be a FITS-standard, string-based distortion identifier) to a Gnuastro's integer-based distortion identifier (one of the `GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_*` macros defined above). The sting-based distortion identifiers have three characters and are all in capital letters.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_projection_name_from_id (int id)`
Convert the given Gnuastro integer-based projection identifier (one of the `GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_*` macros defined above) to the string-based distortion identifier) of the FITS standard. The string-based projection identifiers have three characters and are all in capital letters. For a description of the various projections, see Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_projection_name_to_id (char *name)`
Convert the given string (assumed to be a FITS-standard, string-based projection identifier) to a Gnuastro's integer-based projection identifier (one of the `GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_*` macros defined above). The string-based projection identifiers have three characters and are all in capital letters. For a description of the various projections, see Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

`struct wcsprm *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_create (double *crpix, double *crval, double *cdelt, double *pc, char **cunit, char **ctype, size_t ndim, int linearmatrix)`
Given all the most common standard components of the WCS standard, construct a `struct wcsprm`, initialize and set it for future processing. See the FITS WCS standard for more on these keywords. All the arrays must have `ndim` elements with them except for `pc` which should have `ndim*ndim` elements (a square matrix). Also, `cunit` and `ctype` are arrays of strings. If `GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_CD` is passed to `linearmatrix` then the output WCS structure will have a CD matrix (even though you have given a PC and CDELT matrix as input to this function). Otherwise, the

output will have a PC and CDELT matrix (which is the recommended format by WCSLIB).

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <gnuastro/wcs.h>

int
main(void)
{
  int status;
  size_t ndim=2;
  struct wcsprm *wcs;
  double crpix[]={50, 50};
  double pc[]={-1, 0, 0, 1};
  double cdelt[]={0.4, 0.4};
  double crval[]={178.23, 36.98};
  char   *cunit[]={"deg", "deg"};
  char   *ctype[]={"RA---TAN", "DEC--TAN"};
  int linearmatrix = GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_PC;

  /* Allocate and fill the 'wcsprm' structure. */
  wcs=gal_wcs_create(crpix, crval, cdelt, pc, cunit,
                     ctype, ndim, linearmatrix);
  printf("WCS structure created.\n");

  /*... Add any operation with the WCS structure here ...*/

  /* Free the WCS structure. */
  gal_wcs_free(wcs);
  printf("WCS structure freed.\n");

  /* Return successfully. */
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

`struct wcsprm *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_read_fitsptr (fitsfile *fptr, int linearmatrix, size_t hstartwcs, size_t hendwcs, int *nwcs)`

Return the WCSLIB `wcsprm` structure that is read from the CFITSIO `fptr` pointer to an opened FITS file. With older WCSLIB versions (in particular below version 5.18) this function may not be thread-safe.

Also put the number of coordinate representations found into the space that `nwcs` points to. To read the WCS structure directly from a filename, see `gal_wcs_read` below. After processing has finished, you should free the WCS structure that this function returns with `gal_wcs_free`.

The `linearmatrix` argument takes one of three values: `0`, `GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_PC` and `GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_CD`. It will determine the format of the WCS when

it is later written to file with `gal_wcs_write` or `gal_wcs_write_in_fitsptr` (which is called by `gal_fits_img_write`) So if you do not want to write the WCS into a file later, just give it a value of `0`. For more on the difference between these modes, see the description of `--wcslinearmatrix` in Section 4.1.2.1 [Input/Output options], page 254.

If you do not want to search the full FITS header for WCS-related FITS keywords (for example, due to conflicting keywords), but only a specific range of the header keywords you can use the `hstartwcs` and `hendwcs` arguments to specify the keyword number range (counting from zero). If `hendwcs` is larger than `hstartwcs`, then only keywords in the given range will be checked. Hence, to ignore this feature (and search the full FITS header), give both these arguments the same value.

If the WCS information could not be read from the FITS file, this function will return a `NULL` pointer and put a zero in `nwcs`. A WCSLIB error message will also be printed in `stderr` if there was an error.

This function is just a wrapper over WCSLIB's `wcspih` function which is not thread-safe. Therefore, be sure to not call this function simultaneously (over multiple threads).

`struct wcsprm *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_read (char *filename, char *hdu, int linearmatrix, size_t hstartwcs, size_t hendwcs, int *nwcs, char *hdu_option_name)`

[**Not thread-safe**] Return the WCSLIB structure that is read from the HDU/extension `hdu` of the file `filename`. Also put the number of coordinate representations found into the space that `nwcs` points to. Please see `gal_wcs_read_fitsptr` for more. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

After processing has finished, you should free the WCS structure that this function returns with `gal_wcs_free`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_free (struct wcsprm *wcs)`

Free the contents *and* the space that `wcs` points to. WCSLIB's `wcsfree` function only frees the contents of the `wcsprm` structure, not the actual pointer. However, Gnuastro's `wcsprm` creation and reading functions allocate the structure also. This higher-level function therefore simplifies the processing. A complete working example is given in the description of `gal_wcs_create`.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_dimension_name (struct wcsprm *wcs, size_t dimension)`

Return an allocated string array (that should be freed later) containing the first part of the `CTYPEi` FITS keyword (which contains the dimension name in the FITS standard). For example, if `CTYPE1` is `RA---TAN`, the string that function returns will be `RA`. Recall that the second component of `CTYPEi` contains the type of projection.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_write_wcsstr (struct wcsprm *wcs, int *nkeyrec)`

Return an allocated string which contains the respective FITS keywords for the given WCS structure into it. The number of keywords is written in the space pointed by

`nkeyrec`. Each FITS keyword is 80 characters wide (according to the FITS standard), and the next one is placed immediately after it, so the full string has `80*nkeyrec` bytes. The output of this function can later be written into an opened FITS file using `gal_fits_key_write_wcsstr` (see Section 12.3.11.4 [FITS header keywords], page 825).

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_write (struct wcsprm *wcs, char *filename, char *extname, gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist, int freekeys)`

Write the given WCS structure into the second extension of an empty FITS header. The first/primary extension will be empty like the default format of all Gnuastro outputs. When `extname!=NULL` it will be used as the FITS extension name. Any set of extra headers can also be written through the `keylist` list. If `freekeys!=0` then the list of keywords will be freed after they are written.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_write_in_fitsptr (fitsfile *fptr, struct wcsprm *wcs)`

Convert the input `wcs` structure (keeping the WCS programmatically) into FITS keywords and write them into the given FITS file pointer. This is a relatively low-level function which assumes the FITS file has already been opened with CFITSIO. If you just want to write the WCS into an empty file, you can use `gal_wcs_write` (which internally calls this function after creating the FITS file and later closes it safely).

`struct wcsprm *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_copy (struct wcsprm *wcs)`

Return a fully allocated (independent) copy of `wcs`.

`struct wcsprm *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_copy_new_crval (struct wcsprm *wcs, double *crval)`

Return a fully allocated (independent) copy of `wcs` with a new set of `CRVAL` values. WCSLIB keeps a lot of extra information within `wcsprm` and for optimizations, those extra information are used in its calculations. Therefore, if you want to change parameters like the reference point's sky coordinate values (`CRVAL`), simply changing the values in `wcs->crval[0]` or `wcs->crval[1]` will not affect WCSLIB's calculations; you need to call this function.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_remove_dimension (struct wcsprm *wcs, size_t fitsdim)`

Remove the given FITS dimension from the given `wcs` structure.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_on_tile (gal_data_t *tile)`

Create a WCSLIB `wcsprm` structure for `tile` using WCS parameters of the tile's allocated block dataset, see Section 12.3.15 [Tessellation library (`tile.h`)], page 867, for the definition of tiles. If `tile` already has a WCS structure, this function will not do anything.

In many cases, tiles are created for internal/low-level processing. Hence for performance reasons, when creating the tiles they do not have any WCS structure. When

needed, this function can be used to add a WCS structure to each tile tile by copying the WCS structure of its block and correcting the reference point's coordinates within the tile.

`double *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_warp_matrix (struct wcsprm *wcs)`
Return the Warping matrix of the given WCS structure as an array of double precision floating points. This will be the final matrix, irrespective of the type of storage in the WCS structure. Recall that the FITS standard has several methods to store the matrix. The output is an allocated square matrix with each side equal to the number of dimensions.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_clean_small_errors (struct wcsprm *wcs)`
Errors can make small differences between the pixel-scale elements (`CDELT`) and can also lead to extremely small values in the `PC` matrix. With this function, such errors will be "cleaned" as follows: 1) if the maximum difference between the `CDELT` elements is smaller than the reference error, it will be set to the mean value. When the FITS keyword `CRDER` (optional) is defined it will be used as a reference, if not the default value is `GAL_WCS_FLTERROR`. 2) If any of the PC elements differ from 0, 1 or -1 by less than `GAL_WCS_FLTERROR`, they will be rounded to the respective value.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_decompose_pc_cdelt (struct wcsprm *wcs)`
Decompose the `PCi_j` and `CDELTi` elements of `wcs`. According to the FITS standard, in the `PCi_j` WCS formalism, the rotation matrix elements m_{ij} are encoded in the `PCi_j` keywords and the scale factors are encoded in the `CDELTi` keywords. There is also another formalism (the `CDi_j` formalism) which merges the two into one matrix.

However, WCSLIB's internal operations are apparently done in the `PCi_j` formalism. So its outputs are also all in that format by default. When the input is a `CDi_j`, WCSLIB will still read the matrix directly into the `PCi_j` matrix and the `CDELTi` values are set to `1` (one). This function is designed to correct such issues: after it is finished, the `CDELTi` values in `wcs` will correspond to the pixel scale, and the `PCi_j` will correction show the rotation.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_to_cd (struct wcsprm *wcs)`
Make sure that the WCS structure's `PCi_j` and `CDi_j` keywords have the same value and that the `CDELTi` keywords have a value of 1.0. Also, set the `wcs->altlin=2` (for the `CDi_j` formalism). With these changes `gal_wcs_write_in_fitsptr` (and thus `gal_wcs_write` and `gal_fits_img_write` and its derivatives) will have an output file in the format of `CDi_j`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_coordsys_identify (struct wcsprm *wcs)`
Read the given WCS structure and return its coordinate system as one of Gnuastro's WCS coordinate system identifiers (the macros `GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_*`, listed above).

`struct wcsprm *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_coordsys_convert (struct wcsprm *inwcs, int coordsysid)`
Return a newly allocated WCS structure with the `coordsysid` coordinate system identifier. The Gnuastro WCS distortion identifiers are defined in the `GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_*` macros mentioned above. Since the returned dataset is newly allocated, if you do not need the original dataset after this, use the WCSLIB library function `wcsfree` to free the input, for example, `wcsfree(inwcs)`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_coordsys_convert_points (int sys1, double *lng1_d, double *lat1_d, int sys2, double *lng2_d, double *lat2_d, size_t number)`
Convert the input set of longitudes (`lng1_d`, in degrees) and latitudes (`lat1_d`, in degrees) within a recognized coordinate system (`sys1`; one of the `GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_*` macros above) into an output coordinate system (`sys2`). The output values are written in `lng2_d` and `lng2_d`. The total number of points should be given in `number`. If you want the operation to be done in place (without allocating a new dataset), give the same pointers to the coordinate arguments.

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_coordsys_sys1_ref_in_sys2 (int sys1, int sys2, double *lng2, double *lat2)`
Return the longitude and latitude of the reference point (on the equator) of the first coordinate system (`sys1`) within the second system (`sys2`). Coordinate systems are identified by the `GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_*` macros above.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_distortion_identify (struct wcsprm *wcs)`
Returns the Gnuastro identifier for the distortion of the input WCS structure. The returned value is one of the `GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_*` macros defined above. When the input pointer to a structure is `NULL`, or it does not contain a distortion, the returned value will be `GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_INVALID`.

`struct wcsprm *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_distortion_convert(struct wcsprm *inwcs, int outdisptype, size_t *fitsize)`
Return a newly allocated WCS structure, where the distortion is implemented in a different standard, identified by the identifier `outdisptype`. The Gnuastro WCS distortion identifiers are defined in the `GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_*` macros mentioned above.

The available conversions in this function will grow. Currently it only supports converting TPV to SIP and vice versa, following the recipe of Shupe et al. (2012)[24]. Please get in touch with us if you need other types of conversions.

For some conversions, direct analytical conversions do not exist. It is thus necessary to model and fit the two types. In such cases, it is also necessary to specify the

[24] Proc. of SPIE Vol. 8451 84511M-1. `https://doi.org/10.1117/12.925460`, also available at `http://web.ipac.caltech.edu/staff/shupe/reprints/SIP_to_PV_SPIE2012.pdf`.

`fitsize` array that is the size of the array along each C-ordered dimension, so you can simply pass the `dsize` element of your `gal_data_t` dataset, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. Currently this is only necessary when converting TPV to SIP. For other conversions you may simply pass a `NULL` pointer.

For example, if you want to convert the TPV coefficients of your input `image.fits` to SIP coefficients, you can use the following functions (which are also available as a command-line operation in Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297).

```
int nwcs;
gal_data_t *data=gal_fits_img_read("image.fits", "1", -1, 1, NULL);
inwcs=gal_wcs_read("image.fits", "1", 0, 0, 0, &nwcs, NULL);
data->wcs=gal_wcs_distortion_convert(inwcs, GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_TPV,
                                     NULL);
wcsfree(inwcs);
gal_fits_img_write(data, "tpv.fits", NULL, 0);
```

`double` [Function]
`gal_wcs_angular_distance_deg (double r1, double d1, double r2, double d2)`

Return the angular distance (in degrees) between a point located at (`r1`, `d1`) to (`r2`, `d2`). All input coordinates are in degrees. The distance (along a great circle) on a sphere between two points is calculated with the equation below.

$$\cos(d) = \sin(d_1)\sin(d_2) + \cos(d_1)\cos(d_2)\cos(r_1 - r_2)$$

However, since the pixel scales are usually very small numbers, this function will not use that direct formula. It will be use the Haversine formula (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Haversine_formula`) which is better considering floating point errors:

$$\frac{\sin^2(d)}{2} = \sin^2\left(\frac{d_1 - d_2}{2}\right) + \cos(d_1)\cos(d_2)\sin^2\left(\frac{r_1 - r_2}{2}\right)$$

`void` [Function]
`gal_wcs_box_vertices_from_center (double ra_center, double dec_center, double ra_delta, double dec_delta, double *out)`

Calculate the vertices of a rectangular box given the central RA and Dec and delta of each. The vertice coordinates are written in the space that `out` points to (assuming it has space for eight `doubles`).

Given the spherical nature of the coordinate system, the vertice lengths can't be calculated with a simple addition/subtraction. For the declination, a simple addition/subtraction is enough. Also, on the equator (where the RA is defined), a simple addition/subtraction along the RA is fine. However, at other declinations, the new RA after a shift needs special treatment, such that close to the poles, a shift of 1 degree can correspond to a new RA that is much more distant than the original RA.

Assuming a point at Right Ascension (RA) and Declination of α and δ, a shift of R degrees along the positive RA direction corresponds to a right ascension of $\alpha + \frac{R}{\cos(\delta)}$. For more, see the description of `box-vertices-on-sphere` in Section 6.2.4.17 [Coordinate and border operators], page 462.

The 8 coordinates of the 4 vertices of the box are written in the order below. Where "bottom" corresponds to a lower declination and "top" to higher declination, "left" corresponds to a larger RA and "right" corresponds to lower RA.

```
out[0]: bottom-left  RA
out[1]: bottom-left  Dec
out[2]: bottom-right RA
out[3]: bottom-right Dec
out[4]: top-right    RA
out[5]: top-right    Dec
out[6]: top-left     RA
out[7]: top-left     Dec
```

`double *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_pixel_scale (struct wcsprm *wcs)`

Return the pixel scale for each dimension of `wcs` in degrees. The output is an allocated array of double precision floating point type with one element for each dimension. If it is not successful, this function will return `NULL`.

`double` [Function]
`gal_wcs_pixel_area_arcsec2 (struct wcsprm *wcs)`

Return the pixel area of `wcs` in arc-second squared. This only works when the input dataset has at least two dimensions and the units of the first two dimensions (`CUNIT` keywords) are `deg` (for degrees). In other cases, this function will return a NaN.

`int` [Function]
`gal_wcs_coverage (char *filename, char *hdu, size_t *ondim, double **ocenter, double **owidth, double **omin, double **omax, char *hdu_option_name)`

Find the sky coverage of the image HDU (`hdu`) within `filename`. The number of dimensions is written into `ndim`, and space for the various output arrays is internally allocated and filled with the respective values. Therefore you need to free them afterwards. For more on `hdu_option_name` see the description of `gal_array_read` in Section 12.3.9 [Array input output], page 814.

Currently this function only supports images that are less than 180 degrees in width (which is usually the case!). This requirement has been necessary to account for images that cross the RA=0 hour circle on the sky. Please get in touch with us at `mailto:bug-gnuastro@gnu.org` if you have an image that is larger than 180 degrees so we try to find a solution based on need.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_wcs_world_to_img (gal_data_t *coords, struct wcsprm *wcs, int inplace)`

Convert the linked list of world coordinates in `coords` to a linked list of image coordinates given the input WCS structure. `coords` must be a linked list of data structures

of float64 ('double') type, seeSection 12.3.8 [Linked lists (`list.h`)], page 800, and Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812. The top (first popped/read) node of the linked list must be the first WCS coordinate (RA in an image usually) etc. Similarly, the top node of the output will be the first image coordinate (in the FITS standard). In case WCSLIB fails to convert any of the coordinates (for example, the RA of one coordinate is given as 400!), the respective element in the output will be written as NaN.

If `inplace` is zero, then the output will be a newly allocated list and the input list will be untouched. However, if `inplace` is non-zero, the output values will be written into the input's already allocated array and the returned pointer will be the same pointer to `coords` (in other words, you can ignore the returned value). Note that in the latter case, only the values will be changed, things like units or name (if present) will be untouched.

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_wcs_img_to_world (gal_data_t *coords, struct wcsprm *wcs, int
        inplace)
```

Convert the linked list of image coordinates in `coords` to a linked list of world coordinates given the input WCS structure. See the description of `gal_wcs_world_to_img` for more details.

12.3.14 Arithmetic on datasets (`arithmetic.h`)

When the dataset's type and other information are already known, any programming language (including C) provides some very good tools for various operations (including arithmetic operations like addition) on the dataset with a simple loop. However, as an author of a program, making assumptions about the type of data, its dimensions and other basic characteristics will come with a large processing burden.

For example, if you always read your data as double precision floating points for a simple operation like addition with an integer constant, you will be wasting a lot of CPU and memory when the input dataset is `int32` type for example, (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). This overhead may be small for small images, but as you scale your process up and work with hundred/thousands of files that can be very large, this overhead will take a significant portion of the processing power. The functions and macros in this section are designed precisely for this purpose: to allow you to do any of the defined operations on any dataset with no overhead (in the native type of the dataset).

Gnuastro's Arithmetic program uses the functions and macros of this section, so please also have a look at the Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403, program and in particular Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412, for a better description of the operators discussed here.

The main function of this library is `gal_arithmetic` that is described below. It can take an arbitrary number of arguments as operands (depending on the operator, similar to `printf`). Its first two arguments are integers specifying the flags and operator. So first we will review the constants for the recognized flags and operators and discuss them, then introduce the actual function.

```
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_INPLACE                                     [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_FREE                                        [Macro]
```

GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_NUMOK [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_ENVSEED [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_QUIET [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAGS_BASIC [Macro]

Bitwise flags to pass onto `gal_arithmetic` (see below). To pass multiple flags, use the bitwise OR operator. For example, if you pass `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_INPLACE | GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_NUMOK`, then the operation will be done in-place (without allocating a new array), and a single number will also be acceptable (that will be applied to all the pixels). Each flag is described below:

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_INPLACE`
: Do the operation in-place (in the input dataset, thus modifying it) to improve CPU and memory usage. If this flag is used, after `gal_arithmetic` finishes, the input dataset will be modified. It is thus useful if you have no more need for the input after the operation.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_FREE`
: Free (all the) input dataset(s) after the operation is done. Hence the inputs are no longer usable after `gal_arithmetic`.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_NUMOK`
: It is acceptable to use a number and an array together. For example, if you want to add all the pixels in an image with a single number you can pass this flag to avoid having to allocate a constant array the size of the image (with all the pixels having the same number).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_ENVSEED`
: Use the pre-defined environment variable for setting the random number generator seed when an operator needs it (for example, `mknoise-sigma`). For more on random number generation in Gnuastro see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_QUIET`
: Do not print any warnings or messages for operators that may benefit from it. For example, by default the `mknoise-sigma` operator prints the random number generator function and seed that it used (in case the user wants to reproduce this result later). By activating this bit flag to the call, that extra information is not printed on the command-line.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAGS_BASIC`
: A wrapper for activating the three "basic" operations that are commonly necessary together: `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_INPLACE`, `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_FREE` and `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_NUMOK`.

GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PLUS [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MINUS [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MULTIPLY [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DIVIDE [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LT [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LE [Macro]
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GT [Macro]

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GE` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQ` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NE` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AND` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_OR` [Macro]

Binary operators (requiring two operands) that accept datasets of any recognized type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). When `gal_arithmetic` is called with any of these operators, it expects two datasets as arguments. For a full description of these operators with the same name, see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412. The first dataset/operand will be put on the left of the operator and the second will be put on the right. The output type of the first four is determined from the input types (largest type of the inputs). The rest (which are all conditional operators) will output a binary `uint8_t` (or `unsigned char`) dataset with values of either `0` (zero) or `1` (one).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NOT` [Macro]

The logical NOT operator. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with this operator, it only expects one operand (dataset), since this is a unary operator. The output is `uint8_t` (or `unsigned char`) dataset of the same size as the input. Any non-zero element in the input will be `0` (zero) in the output and any `0` (zero) will have a value of `1` (one).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ISBLANK` [Macro]

A unary operator with output that is `1` for any element in the input that is blank, and `0` for any non-blank element. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with this operator, it will only expect one input dataset. The output dataset will have `uint8_t` (or `unsigned char`) type.

`gal_arithmetic` with this operator is just a wrapper for the `gal_blank_flag` function of Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779, and this operator is just included for completeness in arithmetic operations. So in your program, it might be easier to just call `gal_blank_flag`.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_WHERE` [Macro]

The three-operand *where* operator thoroughly discussed in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with this operator, it will only expect three input datasets: the first (which is the same as the returned dataset) is the array that will be modified. The second is the condition dataset (that must have a `uint8_t` or `unsigned char` type), and the third is the value to be used if condition is non-zero.

As a result, note that the order of operands when calling `gal_arithmetic` with `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_WHERE` is the opposite of running Gnuastro's Arithmetic program with the `where` operator (see Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403). This is because the latter uses the reverse-Polish notation which is not necessary when calling a function (see Section 6.2.1 [Reverse polish notation], page 404).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SQRT` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LOG` [Macro]

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LOG10` [Macro]

Unary operator functions for calculating the square root ($\sqrt{i}$), $ln(i)$ and $log(i)$ mathematical operators on each element of the input dataset. The returned dataset will have a floating point type, but its precision is determined from the input: if the input is a 64-bit floating point, the output will also be 64-bit. Otherwise, the returned dataset will be 32-bit floating point: you do not gain precision by using these operators, but you gain in operating speed if you use the sufficient precision. See Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, for more on the precision of floating point numbers to help in selecting your required floating point precision.

If you want your output to be 64-bit floating point but your input is a different type, you can convert the input to a 64-bit floating point type with `gal_data_copy_to_new_type` or `gal_data_copy_to_new_type_free`(see Section 12.3.6.4 [Copying datasets], page 790). Alternatively, you can use the `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_FLOAT64` operators in the arithmetic library.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COS` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TAN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ASIN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ACOS` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ATAN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ATAN2` [Macro]

Trigonometric functions (and their inverse). All the angles, either inputs or outputs, are in units of degrees.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SINH` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COSH` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TANH` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ASINH` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ACOSH` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ATANH` [Macro]

Hyperbolic functions (and their inverse).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_RA_TO_DEGREE` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DEC_TO_DEGREE` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DEGREE_TO_RA` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DEGREE_TO_DEC` [Macro]

Unary operators to convert between degrees (as a single floating point number) to the sexagesimal Right Ascension and Declination format (as strings, respectively in the format of `_h_m_s` and `_d_m_s`). The first two operators expect a string operand (in the sexagesimal formats mentioned above, but also in the `_:_:_`) and will return a double-precision floating point operand. The latter two are the opposite.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTS_TO_MAG` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_COUNTS` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_SB` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SB_TO_MAG` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTS_TO_JY` [Macro]

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_JY_TO_COUNTS` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_JY` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_JY_TO_MAG` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_NANOMAGGY` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NANOMAGGY_TO_MAG` [Macro]

Binary operators for converting brightness and surface brightness units to and from each other. The first operand to all of them are the values in the input unit (left of the `-TO-`, for example counts in `COUNTS_TO_MAG`). The second popped operand is the zero point (right of the `-TO-`, for example magnitudes in `COUNTS_TO_MAG`). The exceptions are the operators that involve surface brightness (those with `SB`). For the surface brightness related operators, the second popped operand is the area in units of arcsec^2 and the third popped operand is the final unit.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTS_TO_SB` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SB_TO_COUNTS` [Macro]

Operators for converting counts to surface brightness and vice-versa. These operators take three operands: 1) the input dataset in units of counts or surface brightness (depending on the operator), 2) the zero point, 3) the area in units of arcsec^2.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AU_TO_PC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PC_TO_AU` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LY_TO_PC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PC_TO_LY` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LY_TO_AU` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AU_TO_LY` [Macro]

Unary operators to convert various distance units to and from each other: Astronomical Units (AU), Parsecs (PC) and Light years (LY).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MINVAL` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAXVAL` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NUMBERVAL` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUMVAL` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEANVAL` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_STDVAL` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEDIANVAL` [Macro]

Unary operand statistical operators that will return a single value for datasets of any size. These are just wrappers around similar functions in Section 12.3.22 [Statistical operations (`statistics.h`)], page 894, and are included in `gal_arithmetic` only for completeness (to use easily in Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403). In your programs, it will probably be easier if you use those `gal_statistics_` functions directly.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_UNIQUE` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NOBLANK` [Macro]

Unary operands that will remove some elements from the input dataset. The first will return the unique elements, and the second will return the non-blank elements. Due to the removal of elements, the dimensionality of the output will be lost.

These are just wrappers over the `gal_statistics_unique` and `gal_blank_remove`. These are just wrappers around similar functions in Section 12.3.22 [Statistical operations (`statistics.h`)], page 894, and are included in `gal_arithmetic` only for

completeness (to use easily in Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403). In your programs, it will probably be easier if you use those `gal_statistics_` functions directly.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ABS` [Macro]
Unary operand absolute-value operator.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MIN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAX` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NUMBER` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUM` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEAN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_STD` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEDIAN` [Macro]
Multi-operand statistical operations. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with any of these operators, it will expect only a single operand that will be interpreted as a list of datasets (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812). These operators can work on multiple threads using the `numthreads` argument. See the discussion under the `min` operator in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

The output will be a single dataset with each of its elements replaced by the respective statistical operation on the whole list. The type of the output is determined from the operator (irrespective of the input type): for `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MIN` and `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAX`, it will be the same type as the input, for `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NUMBER`, the output will be `GAL_TYPE_UINT32` and for the rest, it will be `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32`.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_QUANTILE` [Macro]
Similar to the operands above (including `GAL_ARITHMETIC_MIN`), except that when `gal_arithmetic` is called with these operators, it requires two arguments. The first is the list of datasets like before, and the second is the 1-element dataset with the quantile value. The output type is the same as the inputs.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_STD` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_MEAN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_MEDIAN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_NUMBER` [Macro]
Similar to the operands above (including `GAL_ARITHMETIC_MIN`), except that when `gal_arithmetic` is called with these operators, it requires two arguments. The first is the list of datasets like before, and the second is the 2-element list of σ-clipping parameters. The first element in the parameters list is the multiple of sigma and the second is the termination criteria (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200). The output type of `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_NUMBER` will be `GAL_TYPE_UINT32` and for the rest it will be `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32`.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MKNOISE_SIGMA` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MKNOISE_POISSON` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MKNOISE_UNIFORM` [Macro]
Add noise to the input dataset. These operators take two arguments: the first is the input data set (can have any dimensionality or number of elements. The second

argument is the noise specifier (a single element, of any type): for a fixed-sigma noise, it is the Gaussian standard deviation, for the Poisson noise, it is the background (see Section 6.2.3.1 [Photon counting noise], page 408) and for the uniform distribution it is the width of the interval around each element of the input dataset.

By default, a separate random number generator seed will be used on each separate run of these operators. Therefore two identical runs on the same input will produce different results. You can get reproducible results by setting the `GAL_RNG_SEED` environment variable and activating the `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_ENVSEED` flag. For more on random number generation in Gnuastro, see Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

By default these operators will print the random number generator function and seed (in case the user wants to reproduce the result later), but this can be disabled by activating the bit-flag `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_QUIET` described above.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_RANDOM_FROM_HIST` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_RANDOM_FROM_HIST_RAW` [Macro]
Select random values from a custom distribution (defined by a histogram). For more, see the description of the respective operators in Section 6.2.3.4 [Generating random numbers], page 410.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_STITCH` [Macro]
Stitch a list of input datasets along the requested dimension. See the description of the `stitch` operator in Arithmetic (Section 6.2.4.11 [Dimensionality changing operators], page 439).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_POW` [Macro]
Binary operator to-power operator. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with any of these operators, it will expect two operands: raising the first by the second (returning a floating point, inputs can be integers).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITAND` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITOR` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITXOR` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITLSH` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITRSH` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MODULO` [Macro]
Binary integer-only operand operators. These operators are only defined on integer data types. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with any of these operators, it will expect two operands: the first is put on the left of the operator and the second on the right. The ones starting with `BIT` are the respective bitwise operators in C and `MODULO` is the modulo/remainder operator. For a discussion on these operators, please see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

The output type is determined from the input types and C's internal conversions: it is strongly recommended that both inputs have the same type (any integer type), otherwise the bitwise behavior will be determined by your compiler.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITNOT` [Macro]
: The unary bitwise NOT operator. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with any of these operators, it will expect one operand of an integer type and preform the bitwise NOT operation on it. The output will have the same type as the input.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT8` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT8` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT16` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT16` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT32` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT32` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT64` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT64` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_FLOAT32` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_FLOAT64` [Macro]
: Unary type-conversion operators. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with any of these operators, it will expect one operand and convert it to the requested type. Note that with these operators, `gal_arithmetic` is just a wrapper over the `gal_data_copy_to_new_type` or `gal_data_copy_to_new_type_free` that are discussed in `Copying datasets`. It accepts these operators only for completeness and easy usage in Section 6.2 [Arithmetic], page 403. So in your programs, it might be preferable to directly use those functions.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_E` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_C` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_G` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_H` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AU` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LY` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PI` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AVOGADRO` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_FINESTRUCTURE` [Macro]
: Return the respective mathematical constant. For their description please see Section 6.2.4.3 [Constants], page 416. The constant values are taken from the GNU Scientific Library's headers (defined in `gsl/gsl_math.h`).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BOX_AROUND_ELLIPSE` [Macro]
: Return the width (along horizontal) and height (along vertical) of a box that encompasses an ellipse with the same center point. For more on the three input operands to this operator see the description of `box-around-ellipse`. This function returns two datasets as a `gal_data_t` linked list. The top element of the list is the height and its next element is the width.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BOX_VERTICES_ON_SPHERE` [Macro]
: Return the vertices of a (possibly rectangular) box on a sphere, given its center RA, Dec and the width of the box along the two dimensions. It will take the spherical nature of the coordinate system into account (for more, see the description of `gal_wcs_box_vertices_from_center` in Section 12.3.13 [World Coordinate System

(`wcs.h`)], page 846). This function returns 8 datasets as a `gal_data_t` linked list in the following order: bottom-left RA, bottom-left Dec, bottom-right RA, bottom-right Dec, top-right RA, top-right Dec, top-left RA, top-left Dec.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAKENEW` [Macro]
Create a new, zero-valued dataset with an unsigned 8-bit data type. The length along each dimension of the dataset should be given as a single list of `gal_data_t`s. The number of dimensions is derived from the number of nodes in the list and the length along each dimension is the single-valued element within that list. Just note that the list should be in the reverse of the desired dimensions.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAKENEW` [Macro]
Given a dataset and a constant,

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_HDU` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_FILE` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_PREFIX` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_HDU_LEN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_FILE_LEN` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_PREFIX_LEN` [Macro]
Constant components of the `load-col-` operator (see Section 6.2.4.18 [Loading external columns], page 465). These are just fixed strings (and their lengths) that are placed in between the various components of that operator to allow choosing a certain column of a certain HDU of a certain file.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_INDEX` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTER` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_INDEXONLY` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTERONLY` [Macro]
Return a dataset with the same number of elements and dimensionality as the first (and only!) input dataset. But each output pixel's value will be replaced by its index (counting from 0) or counter (counting from 1). Note that the `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_INDEX` and `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_INDEXONLY` operators are identical within the library (same for the counter operators). They are given separate macros here to help the higher-level callers to manage their inputs separately (see Section 6.2.4.19 [Size and position operators], page 466).

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIZE` [Macro]
Size operator that will return a single value for datasets of any kind. When `gal_arithmetic` is called with this operator, it requires two arguments. The first is the dataset, and the second is a single integer value. The output type is a single integer.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SWAP` [Macro]
Return the first dataset, but with the second dataset being placed in the `next` element of the first. This is useful to swap the operators on the coadds of the higher-level programs that call the arithmetic library.

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_EQJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_ECB1950` [Macro]

`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_ECJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_GALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_SUPERGALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_EQB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_ECB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_ECJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_GALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_SUPERGALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_EQB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_EQJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_ECJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_GALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_SUPERGALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_EQB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_EQJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_ECB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_GALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_SUPERGALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_EQB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_EQJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_ECB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_ECJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_SUPERGALACTIC` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_EQB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_EQJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_ECB1950` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_ECJ2000` [Macro]
`GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_GALACTIC` [Macro]

Operators that convert recognized celestial coordinates to and from each other. They all take two operands and return two `gal_data_t`s (as a list). For more on celestial coordinate conversion, see Section 6.2.4.4 [Coordinate conversion operators], page 417.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_arithmetic (int operator, size_t numthreads, int flags, ...)`

Apply the requested arithmetic operator on the operand(s). The *operator* is identified through the macros above (that start with `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_`). The number of necessary operands (number of arguments to replace '`...`' in the declaration of this function, above) depends on the operator and is described under each operator, above. Each operand has a type of '`gal_data_t *`' (see last paragraph with example).

If the operator can work on multiple threads, the number of threads can be specified with `numthreads`. When the operator is single-threaded, `numthreads` will be ignored. Special conditions can also be specified with the `flag` operator (a bit-flag with bits described above, for example, `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_INPLACE` or `GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_FREE`).

`gal_arithmetic` is a multi-argument function (like C's `printf`). In other words, the number of necessary arguments is not fixed and depends on the value to `operator`.

Below, you can see a minimal, fully working example, showing how different operators need different numbers of arguments.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <gnuastro/fits.h>
#include <gnuastro/arithmetic.h>

int
main(void)
{
  /* Define the datasets and flag. */
  gal_data_t *in1, *in2, *out1, *out2;
  int flag=GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAGS_BASIC;

  /* Read the input images. */
  in1=gal_fits_img_read("image1.fits", "1", -1, 1, NULL);
  in2=gal_fits_img_read("image2.fits", "1", -1, 1, NULL);

  /* Take the logarithm (base-e) of the first input. */
  out1=gal_arithmetic(GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LOG, 1, flag, in1);

  /* Add the second input with the logarithm of the first. */
  out2=gal_arithmetic(GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PLUS, 1, flag, in2, out1);

  /* Write the output into a file. */
  gal_fits_img_write(out2, "out.fits", NULL, 0);

  /* Clean up. Due to the in-place flag (in
   * 'GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAGS_BASIC'), 'out1' and 'out2' point to the
   * same array in memory and due to the freeing flag, any input
   * dataset(s) that were not returned have been freed internally
   * by 'gal_arithmetic'. Therefore it is only necessary to free
   * 'out2': all other allocated spaces have been freed internally.
   * before reaching this point. */
  gal_data_free(out2);

  /* Return control back to the OS (saying that we succeeded). */
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

As you see above, you can feed the returned dataset from one call of `gal_arithmetic` to another call. The advantage of using `gal_arithmetic` (as opposed to manually writing a `for` or `while` loop and doing the operation with the `+` operator and `log()` function yourself), is that you do not have to worry about the type of the input data (for a list of acceptable data types in Gnuastro, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (type.h)], page 771). Arithmetic will automatically deal with the data types internally and choose the best output type depending on the operator.

`int` [Function]
`gal_arithmetic_set_operator (char *string, size_t *num_operands)`

Return the operator macro/code that corresponds to `string`. The number of operands that it needs are written into the space that `*num_operands` points to. If the string could not be interpreted as an operator, this function will return `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_INVALID`.

This function will check `string` with the fixed human-readable names (using `strcmp`) for the operators and return the two numbers. Note that `string` must only contain the single operator name and nothing else (not even any extra white space).

`char *` [Function]
`gal_arithmetic_operator_string (int operator)`

Return the human-readable standard string that corresponds to the given operator. For example, when the input is `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PLUS` or `GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEAN`, the strings `+` or `mean` will be returned.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_arithmetic_load_col (char *str, int searchin, int ignorecase, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

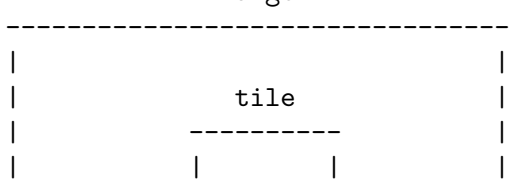
Return the column that corresponds to the identifier in the input string (`str`). `str` is expected to be in the format of the `load-col-` operator (see Section 6.2.4.18 [Loading external columns], page 465). This function will extract the column identifier, the file name and the HDU (if necessary) from the string, read the requested column in memory and return it.

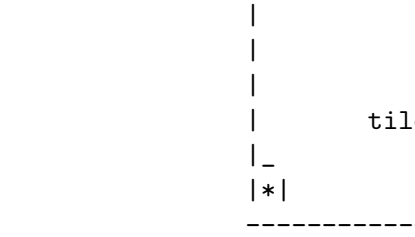
See Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816, for the macros that can be given to `searchin` and `ignorecase` and Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784, for the definitions of `minmapsize` and `quietmmap`.

12.3.15 Tessellation library (`tile.h`)

In many contexts, it is desirable to slice the dataset into subsets or tiles (overlapping or not). In such a way that you can work on each tile independently. One method would be to copy that region to a separate allocated space, but in many contexts this is not necessary and in fact can be a big burden on CPU/Memory usage. The `block` pointer in Gnuastro's Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784, is defined for such situations: where allocation is not necessary. You just want to read the data or write to it independently (or in coordination with) other regions of the dataset. Added with parallel processing, this can greatly improve the time/memory consumption.

See the figure below for example: assume the `larger` dataset is a contiguous block of memory that you are interpreting as a 2D array. But you only want to work on the smaller `tile` region.





To use `gal_data_t`'s `block` concept, you allocate a `gal_data_t *tile` which is initialized with the pointer to the first element in the sub-array (as its `array` argument). Note that this is not necessarily the first element in the larger array. You can set the size of the tile along with the initialization as you please. Recall that, when given a non-`NULL` pointer as `array`, `gal_data_initialize` (and thus `gal_data_alloc`) do not allocate any space and just uses the given pointer for the new `array` element of the `gal_data_t`. So your `tile` data structure will not be pointing to a separately allocated space.

After the allocation is done, you just point `tile->block` to the `larger` dataset which hosts the full block of memory. Where relevant, Gnuastro's library functions will check the `block` pointer of their input dataset to see how to deal with dimensions and increments so they can always remain within the tile. The tools introduced in this section are designed to help in defining and working with tiles that are created in this manner.

Since the block structure is defined as a pointer, arbitrary levels of tessellation/grid-ing are possible (`tile->block` may itself be a tile in an even larger allocated space). Therefore, just like a linked-list (see Section 12.3.8 [Linked lists (`list.h`)], page 800), it is important to have the `block` pointer of the largest (allocated) dataset set to `NULL`. Normally, you will not have to worry about this, because `gal_data_initialize` (and thus `gal_data_alloc`) will set the `block` element to `NULL` by default, just remember not to change it. You can then only change the `block` element for the tiles you define over the allocated space.

Below, we will first review constructs for Section 12.3.15.1 [Independent tiles], page 868, and then define the current approach to fully tessellating a dataset (or covering every pixel/data-element with a non-overlapping tile grid in Section 12.3.15.2 [Tile grid], page 874. This approach to dealing with parts of a larger block was inspired from a similarly named concept in the GNU Scientific Library (GSL), see its "Vectors and Matrices" chapter for their implementation.

12.3.15.1 Independent tiles

The most general application of tiles is to treat each independently, for example they may overlap, or they may not cover the full image. This section provides functions to help in checking/inspecting such tiles. In Section 12.3.15.2 [Tile grid], page 874, we will discuss functions that define/work-with a tile grid (where the tiles do not overlap and fully cover the input dataset). Therefore, the functions in this section are general and can be used for the tiles produced by that section also.

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_start_coord (gal_data_t *tile, size_t *start_coord)`
Calculate the starting coordinates of a tile in its allocated block of memory and write them in the memory that `start_coord` points to (which must have `tile->ndim` elements).

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_start_end_coord (gal_data_t *tile, size_t *start_end, int rel_block)`

Put the starting and ending (end point is not inclusive) coordinates of `tile` into the `start_end` array. It is assumed that a space of `2*tile->ndim` has been already allocated (static or dynamic) for `start_end` before this function is called.

`rel_block` (or relative-to-block) is only relevant when `tile` has an intermediate tile between it and the allocated space (like a channel, see `gal_tile_full_two_layers`). If it does not (`tile->block` points the allocated dataset), then the value to `rel_block` is irrelevant.

When `tile->block` is itself a larger block and `rel_block` is set to 0, then the starting and ending positions will be based on the position within `tile->block`, not the allocated space.

`void *` [Function]
`gal_tile_start_end_ind_inclusive (gal_data_t *tile, gal_data_t *work, size_t *start_end_inc)`

Put the indices of the first/start and last/end pixels (inclusive) in a tile into the `start_end` array (that must have two elements). NOTE: this function stores the index of each point, not its coordinates. It will then return the pointer to the start of the tile in the `work` data structure (which does not have to be equal to `tile->block`.

The outputs of this function are defined to make it easy to parse over an n-dimensional tile. For example, this function is one of the most important parts of the internal processing of in `GAL_TILE_PARSE_OPERATE` function-like macro that is described below.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_tile_series_from_minmax (gal_data_t *block, size_t *minmax, size_t number)`

Construct a list of tile(s) given coordinates of the minimum and maximum of each tile. The minimum and maximums are assumed to be inclusive and in C order (slowest dimension first). The returned pointer is an allocated `gal_data_t` array that can later be freed with `gal_data_array_free` (see Section 12.3.6.3 [Arrays of datasets], page 789). Internally, each element of the output array points to the next element, so the output may also be treated as a list of datasets (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812) and passed onto the other functions described in this section.

The array keeping the minimum and maximum coordinates for each tile must have the following format. So in total `minmax` must have `2*ndim*number` elements.

```
 | min0_d0 | min0_d1 | max0_d0 | max0_d1 | ...
                  ... | minN_d0 | minN_d1 | maxN_d0 | maxN_d1 |
```

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_tile_per_label (gal_data_t *labels, size_t maxlabel, uint8_t inbetweenints, gal_data_t **rows_to_remove, size_t *numunique)`

Create a series of tiles (the returned linked list) that enclose each label (a non-zero and positive integer identifier for a group of pixels) within `labels`.

If you already have the value of the largest label of the input, you can pass it onto `maxlabel`, otherwise, set `maxlabel` to `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T` (so this function finds the maximum label itself). We have defined this argument because functions like `gal_binary_connected_components` that create labeled images also return the maximum label, so it may not be necessary for this function to find it (and decrease performance).

The three last arguments are related to cases when the label values in the image can be non-contiguous. For example when you have cropped a region within a larger labeled image. In such cases, if you want an empty tile for a non-existant label (a value between 1 and the maximum label, but with no associated pixels), `inbetweenints` should not be zero and the extra two output pointers/arguments will be created by this function:

`rows_to_remove`
: This is a one-dimensional binary (`GAL_TYPE_UINT8`) dataset, that has `maxlabel` rows. For every label that does not exist in the image, it will have a value of 1 (and for labels that do exist a value of zero). You can use this to manage your future operations with the tiles.

`numunique`
: The value that will be written in this pointer is the number of unique labels in the image.

In other words, if you would like to make sure that the label values in the image are contiguous or not, you can set `inbetweenints` to non-zero and check the pointer of `rows_to_remove`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_tile_block (gal_data_t *tile)`
Return the dataset that contains `tile`'s allocated block of memory. If tile is immediately defined as part of the allocated block, then this is equivalent to `tile->block`. However, it is possible to have multiple layers of tiles (where `tile->block` is itself a tile). So this function is the most generic way to get to the actual allocated dataset.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_tile_block_increment (gal_data_t *block, size_t *tsize, size_t num_increment, size_t *coord)`
Return the increment necessary to start at the next contiguous patch memory associated with a tile. `block` is the allocated block of memory and `tsize` is the size of the tile along every dimension. If `coord` is `NULL`, it is ignored. Otherwise, it will contain the coordinate of the start of the next contiguous patch of memory.

This function is intended to be used in a loop and `num_increment` is the main variable to this function. For the first time you call this function, it should be `1`. In subsequent calls (while you are parsing a tile), it should be increased by one.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_tile_block_write_const_value (gal_data_t *tilevalues, gal_data_t *tilesll, int withblank, int initialize)`

Write a constant value for each tile over the area it covers in an allocated dataset that is the size of `tile`'s allocated block of memory (found through `gal_tile_block` described above). The arguments to this function are:

`tilevalues`
: This must be an array that has the same number of elements as the nodes in in `tilesll` and in the same order that 'tilesll' elements are parsed (from top to bottom, see Section 12.3.8 [Linked lists (`list.h`)], page 800). As a result the array's number of dimensions is irrelevant, it will be parsed contiguously.

`tilesll`
: The list of input tiles (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812). Internally, it might be stored as an array (for example, the output of `gal_tile_series_from_minmax` described above), but this function does not care, it will parse the `next` elements to go to the next tile. This function will not pop-from or free the `tilesll`, it will only parse it from start to end.

`withblank`
: If the block containing the tiles has blank elements, those blank elements will be blank in the output of this function also, hence the array will be initialized with blank values when this option is called (see below).

`initialize`
: Initialize the allocated space with blank values before writing in the constant values. This can be useful when the tiles do not cover the full allocated block.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_tile_block_check_tiles (gal_data_t *tilesll)`

Make a copy of the memory block and fill it with the index of each tile in `tilesll` (counting from 0). The non-filled areas will have blank values. The output dataset will have a type of `GAL_TYPE_INT32` (see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771).

This function can be used when you want to check the coverage of each tile over the allocated block of memory. It is just a wrapper over the `gal_tile_block_write_const_value` (with `withblank` set to zero).

`void *` [Function]
`gal_tile_block_relative_to_other (gal_data_t *tile, gal_data_t *other)`

Return the pointer corresponding to the start of the region covered by `tile` over the `other` dataset. See the examples in `GAL_TILE_PARSE_OPERATE` for some example applications of this function.

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_block_blank_flag (gal_data_t *tilell, size_t numthreads)`

Check if each tile in the list has blank values and update its `flag` to mark this check and its result (see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784). The operation will be done on `numthreads` threads.

`GAL_TILE_PARSE_OPERATE (IN, OTHER, PARSE_OTHER, CHECK_BLANK, OP)` [Function-like macro]

Parse `IN` (which can be a tile or a fully allocated block of memory) and do the `OP` operation on it. `OP` can be any combination of C expressions. If `OTHER!=NULL`, `OTHER` will be interpreted as a dataset and this macro will allow access to its element(s) and it can optionally be parsed while parsing over `IN`.

If `OTHER` is a fully allocated block of memory (not a tile), then the same region that is covered by `IN` within its own block will be parsed (the same starting pixel with the same number of pixels in each dimension). Hence, in this case, the blocks of `OTHER` and `IN` must have the same size. When `OTHER` is a tile it must have the same size as `IN` and parsing will start from its starting element/pixel. Also, the respective allocated blocks of `OTHER` and `IN` (if different) may have different sizes. Using `OTHER` (along with `PARSE_OTHER`), this function-like macro will thus enable you to parse and define your own operation on two fixed size regions in one or two blocks of memory. In the latter case, they may have different numeric data types, see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

The input arguments to this macro are explained below, the expected type of each argument are also written following the argument name:

`IN (gal_data_t)`
: Input dataset, this can be a tile or an allocated block of memory.

`OTHER (gal_data_t)`
: Dataset (`gal_data_t`) to parse along with `IN`. It can be `NULL`. In that case, `o` (see description of `OP` below) will be `NULL` and should not be used. If `PARSE_OTHER` is zero, only its first element will be used and the size of this dataset is irrelevant.

  When `OTHER` is a block of memory, it has to have the same size as the allocated block of `IN`. When it s a tile, it has to have the same size as `IN`.

`PARSE_OTHER (int)`
: Parse the other dataset along with the input. When this is non-zero and `OTHER!=NULL`, then the `o` pointer will be incremented to cover the `OTHER` tile at the same rate as `i`, see description of `OP` for `i` and `o`.

`CHECK_BLANK (int)`
: If it is non-zero, then the input will be checked for blank values and `OP` will only be called when we are not on a blank element.

`OP`
: Operator: this can be any number of C expressions. This macro is going to define a `itype *i` variable which will increment over each element of the input array/tile. `itype` will be replaced with the C type that corresponds to the type of `INPUT`. As an example, if `INPUT`'s type is

`GAL_DATA_UINT16` or `GAL_DATA_FLOAT32`, `i` will be defined as `uint16` or `float` respectively.

This function-like macro will also define an `otype *o` which you can use to access an element of the `OTHER` dataset (if `OTHER!=NULL`). `o` will correspond to the type of `OTHER` (similar to `itype` and `INPUT` discussed above). If `PARSE_OTHER` is non-zero, then `o` will also be incremented to the same index element but in the other array. You can use these along with any other variable you define before this macro to process the input and/or the other.

All variables within this function-like macro begin with `tpo_` except for the three variables listed below. Therefore, as long as you do not start the names of your variables with this prefix everything will be fine. Note that `i` (and possibly `o`) will be incremented once by this function-like macro, so do not increment them within `OP`.

`i` Pointer to the element of `INPUT` that is being parsed with the proper type.

`o` Pointer to the element of `OTHER` that is being parsed with the proper type. `o` can only be used if `OTHER!=NULL` and it will be parsed/incremented if `PARSE_OTHER` is non-zero.

`b` Blank value in the type of `INPUT`.

You can use a given tile (`tile` on a dataset that it was not initialized with but has the same size, let's call it `new`) with the following steps:

```
void *tarray;
gal_data_t *tblock;

/* `tile->block' must be corrected AFTER `tile->array'. */
tarray      = tile->array;
tblock      = tile->block;
tile->array = gal_tile_block_relative_to_other(tile, new);
tile->block = new;

/* Parse and operate over this region of the `new' dataset. */
GAL_TILE_PARSE_OPERATE(tile, NULL, 0, 0, {
    YOUR_PROCESSING;
  });

/* Reset `tile->block' and `tile->array'. */
tile->array=tarray;
tile->block=tblock;
```

You can work on the same region of another block in one run of this function-like macro. To do that, you can make a fake tile and pass that as the `OTHER` argument. Below is a demonstration, `tile` is the actual tile that you start with and `new` is the other block of allocated memory.

```
size_t zero=0;
```

```
gal_data_t *faketile;

/* Allocate the fake tile, these can be done outside a loop
 * (over many tiles). */
faketile=gal_data_alloc(NULL, new->type, 1, &zero,
                        NULL, 0, -1, 1, NULL, NULL, NULL);
free(faketile->array);               /* To keep things clean. */
free(faketile->dsize);               /* To keep things clean. */
faketile->block = new;
faketile->ndim  = new->ndim;

/* These can be done in a loop (over many tiles). */
faketile->size  = tile->size;
faketile->dsize = tile->dsize;
faketile->array = gal_tile_block_relative_to_other(tile, new);

/* Do your processing.... in a loop (over many tiles). */
GAL_TILE_PARSE_OPERATE(tile, faketile, 1, 1, {
    YOUR_PROCESSING_EXPRESSIONS;
  });

/* Clean up (outside the loop). */
faketile->array=NULL;
faketile->dsize=NULL;
gal_data_free(faketile);
```

12.3.15.2 Tile grid

One very useful application of tiles is to completely cover an input dataset with tiles. Such that you know every pixel/data-element of the input image is covered by only one tile. The constructs in this section allow easy definition of such a tile structure. They will create lists of tiles that are also usable by the general tools discussed in Section 12.3.15.1 [Independent tiles], page 868.

As discussed in Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, (mainly raw) astronomical images will mostly require two layers of tessellation, one for amplifier channels which all have the same size and another (smaller tile-size) tessellation over each channel. Hence, in this section we define a general structure to keep the main parameters of this two-layer tessellation and help in benefiting from it.

`gal_tile_two_layer_params` [Type (C `struct`)]

The general structure to keep all the necessary parameters for a two-layer tessellation.

```
struct gal_tile_two_layer_params
{
  /* Inputs */
  size_t             *tilesize;  /*******************************/
  size_t          *numchannels;  /* These parameters have to be */
  float          remainderfrac;  /* filled manually before      */
  uint8_t           workoverch;  /* calling the functions in    */
```

```
  uint8_t           checktiles;  /* this section.               */
  uint8_t       oneelempertile;  /*******************************/

  /* Internal parameters. */
  size_t                  ndim;
  size_t              tottiles;
  size_t          tottilesinch;
  size_t           totchannels;
  size_t          *channelsize;
  size_t             *numtiles;
  size_t         *numtilesinch;
  char          *tilecheckname;
  size_t          *permutation;
  size_t           *firsttsize;

  /* Tile and channel arrays (which are also lists). */
  gal_data_t            *tiles;
  gal_data_t         *channels;
};
```

`size_t *` [Function]
`gal_tile_full (gal_data_t *input, size_t *regular, float remainderfrac, gal_data_t **out, size_t multiple, size_t **firsttsize)`

Cover the full dataset with (mostly) identical tiles and return the number of tiles created along each dimension. The regular tile size (along each dimension) is determined from the `regular` array. If `input`'s size is not an exact multiple of `regular` for each dimension, then the tiles touching the edges in that dimension will have a different size to fully cover every element of the input (depending on `remainderfrac`).

The output is an array with the same dimensions as `input` which contains the number of tiles along each dimension. See Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, for a description of its application in Gnuastro's programs and `remainderfrac`, just note that this function defines only one layer of tiles.

This is a low-level function (independent of the `gal_tile_two_layer_params` structure defined above). If you want a two-layer tessellation, directly call `gal_tile_full_two_layers` that is described below. The input arguments to this function are:

`input` The main dataset (allocated block) which you want to create a tessellation over (only used for its sizes). So `input` may be a tile also.

`regular` The size of the regular tiles along each of the input's dimensions. So it must have the same number of elements as the dimensions of `input` (or `input->ndim`).

`remainderfrac`
The significant fraction of the remainder space to see if it should be split into two and put on both sides of a dimension or not. This is thus

only relevant `input` length along a dimension is not an exact multiple of the regular tile size along that dimension. See Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, for a more thorough discussion.

`out` Pointer to the array of data structures that will keep all the tiles (see Section 12.3.6.3 [Arrays of datasets], page 789). If `*out==NULL`, then the necessary space to keep all the tiles will be allocated. If not, then all the tile information will be filled from the dataset that `*out` points to, see `multiple` for more.

`multiple` When `*out==NULL` (and thus will be allocated by this function), allocate space for `multiple` times the number of tiles needed. This can be very useful when you have several more identically sized `inputs`, and you want all their tiles to be allocated (and thus indexed) together, even though they have different `block` datasets (that then link to one allocated space). See the definition of channels in Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, and `gal_tile_full_two_layers` below.

`firsttsize`
The size of the first tile along every dimension. This is only different from the regular tile size when `regular` is not an exact multiple of `input`'s length along every dimension. This array is allocated internally by this function.

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_full_sanity_check (char *filename, char *hdu, gal_data_t *input, struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl)`
Make sure that the input parameters (in `tl`, short for two-layer) correspond to the input dataset. `filename` and `hdu` are only required for error messages. Also, allocate and fill the `tl->channelsize` array.

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_full_two_layers (gal_data_t *input, struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl)`
Create the two layered tessellation in `tl`. The general set of steps you need to take to define the two-layered tessellation over an image can be seen in the example code below.

```
gal_data_t *input;
struct gal_tile_two_layer_params tl;
char *filename="input.fits", *hdu="1";

/* Set all the inputs shown in the structure definition. */
...

/* Read the input dataset. */
input=gal_fits_img_read(filename, hdu, -1, 1, NULL);

/* Do a sanity check and preparations. */
gal_tile_full_sanity_check(filename, hdu, input, &tl);
```

```
/* Build the two-layer tessellation*/
gal_tile_full_two_layers(input, &tl);

/* `tl.tiles' and `tl.channels' are now a lists of tiles.*/
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_full_permutation (struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl)`

Make a permutation to allow the conversion of tile location in memory to its location in the full input dataset and put it in `tl->permutation`. If a permutation has already been defined for the tessellation, this function will not do anything. If permutation will not be necessary (there is only one channel or one dimension), then this function will not do anything (`tl->permutation` must have been initialized to `NULL`).

When there is only one channel OR one dimension, the tiles are allocated in memory in the same order that they represent the input data. However, to make channel-independent processing possible in a generic way, the tiles of each channel are allocated contiguously. So, when there is more than one channel AND more than one dimension, the index of the tile does not correspond to its position in the grid covering the input dataset.

The example below may help clarify: assume you have a 6x6 tessellation with two channels in the horizontal and one in the vertical. On the left you can see how the tile IDs correspond to the input dataset. NOTE how '03' is on the second row, not on the first after '02'. On the right, you can see how the tiles are stored in memory (and shown if you simply write the array into a FITS file for example).

```
Corresponding to input              In memory
----------------------             --------------
  15 16 17 33 34 35                30 31 32 33 34 35
  12 13 14 30 31 32                24 25 26 27 28 29
  09 10 11 27 28 29                18 19 20 21 22 23
  06 07 08 24 25 26      <--       12 13 14 15 16 17
  03 04 05 21 22 23                06 07 08 09 10 11
  00 01 02 18 19 20                00 01 02 03 04 05
```

As a result, if your values are stored in same order as the tiles, and you want them in over-all memory (for example, to save as a FITS file), you need to permute the values:

```
gal_permutation_apply(values, tl->permutation);
```

If you have values over-all and you want them in tile-order, you can apply the inverse permutation:

```
gal_permutation_apply_inverse(values, tl->permutation);
```

Recall that this is the definition of permutation in this context:

```
permute:    IN_ALL[ i       ]   =   IN_MEMORY[ perm[i] ]
inverse:    IN_ALL[ perm[i] ]   =   IN_MEMORY[ i       ]
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_permutation_apply_onlydim0 (gal_data_t *input, size_t *permutation)`

Similar to `gal_permutation_apply`, but when the dataset is 2-dimensional, permute each row (dimension 1 in C) as one element. In other words, only permute along dimension 0. The `permutation` array should therefore only have `input->dsize[0]` elements.

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_full_values_write (gal_data_t *tilevalues, struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl, int withblank, char *filename, gal_fits_list_key_t *keys, int freekeys)`

Write one value for each tile into a file. It is important to note that the values in `tilevalues` must be ordered in the same manner as the tiles, so `tilevalues->array[i]` is the value that should be given to `tl->tiles[i]`. The `tl->permutation` array must have been initialized before calling this function with `gal_tile_full_permutation`.

If `withblank` is non-zero, then block structure of the tiles will be checked and all blank pixels in the block will be blank in the final output file also.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_tile_full_values_smooth (gal_data_t *tilevalues, struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl, size_t width, size_t numthreads)`

Smooth the given values with a flat kernel of the given `width`. This cannot be done manually because if `tl->workoverch==0`, tiles in different channels must not be mixed/smoothed. Also the tiles are contiguous within the channel, not within the image, see the description under `gal_tile_full_permutation`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_tile_full_id_from_coord (struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl, size_t *coord)`

Return the ID of the tile that corresponds to the coordinates `coord`. Having this ID, you can use the `tl->tiles` array to get to the proper tile or read/write a value into an array that has one value per tile.

`void` [Function]
`gal_tile_full_free_contents (struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl)`

Free all the allocated arrays within `tl`.

12.3.16 Bounding box (`box.h`)

Functions related to reporting the bounding box of certain inputs are declared in `gnuastro/box.h`. All coordinates in this header are in the FITS format (first axis is the horizontal and the second axis is vertical).

`void` [Function]
`gal_box_bound_ellipse_extent (double a, double b, double theta_deg, double *extent)`

Return the maximum extent along each dimension of the given ellipse from the center of the ellipse. Therefore this is half the extent of the box in each dimension. `a` is the ellipse semi-major axis, `b` is the semi-minor axis, `theta_deg` is the position angle in degrees. The extent in each dimension is in floating point format and stored in `extent` which must already be allocated before this function.

`void` [Function]
`gal_box_bound_ellipse (double a, double b, double theta_deg, long *width)`

Any ellipse can be enclosed into a rectangular box. This function will write the height and width of that box where `width` points to. It assumes the center of the ellipse is located within the central pixel of the box. `a` is the ellipse semi-major axis length, `b` is the semi-minor axis, `theta_deg` is the position angle in degrees. The `width` array will contain the output size in long integer type. `width[0]`, and `width[1]` are the number of pixels along the first and second FITS axis. Since the ellipse center is assumed to be in the center of the box, all the values in `width` will be an odd integer.

`void` [Function]
`gal_box_bound_ellipsoid_extent (double *semiaxes, double *euler_deg, double *extent)`

Return the maximum extent along each dimension of the given ellipsoid from its center. Therefore this is half the extent of the box in each dimension. The semi-axis lengths of the ellipsoid must be present in the 3 element `semiaxis` array. The `euler_deg` array contains the three ellipsoid Euler angles in degrees. For a description of the Euler angles, see description of `gal_box_bound_ellipsoid` below. The extent in each dimension is in floating point format and stored in `extent` which must already be allocated before this function.

`void` [Function]
`gal_box_bound_ellipsoid (double *semiaxes, double *euler_deg, long *width)`

Any ellipsoid can be enclosed into a rectangular volume/box. The purpose of this function is to give the integer size/width of that box. The semi-axes lengths of the ellipse must be in the `semiaxes` array (with three elements). The major axis length must be the first element of `semiaxes`. The only other condition is that the next two semi-axes must both be smaller than the first. The orientation of the major axis is defined through three proper Euler angles (ZXZ order in degrees) that are given in the `euler_deg` array. The `width` array will contain the output size in long integer type (in FITS axis order). Since the ellipsoid center is assumed to be in the center of the box, all the values in `width` will be an odd integer.

The proper Euler angles can be defined in many ways (which axes to rotate about). For a full description of the Euler angles, please see Wikipedia (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Euler_angles`). Here we adopt the ZXZ (or $Z_1X_2Z_3$) proper Euler angles were the first rotation is done around the Z axis, the second one about the (rotated) X axis and the third about the (rotated) Z axis.

`void` [Function]
`gal_box_border_from_center (double center, size_t ndim, long *width, long *fpixel, long *lpixel)`

Given the center coordinates in `center` and the `width` (along each dimension) of a box, return the coordinates of the first (`fpixel`) and last (`lpixel`) pixels. All arrays must have `ndim` elements (one for each dimension).

`void` [Function]
`gal_box_border_rotate_around_center (long *fpixel, long *lpixel, size_t ndim, float rotate_deg)`

Modify the input first and last pixels (`fpixel` and `lpixel`, that you can estimate with `gal_box_border_from_center`) to account for the given rotation (in units of degrees) in 2D (currently `ndim` can only have a value of `2`).

`int` [Function]
`gal_box_overlap (long *naxes, long *fpixel_i, long *lpixel_i, long *fpixel_o, long *lpixel_o, size_t ndim)`

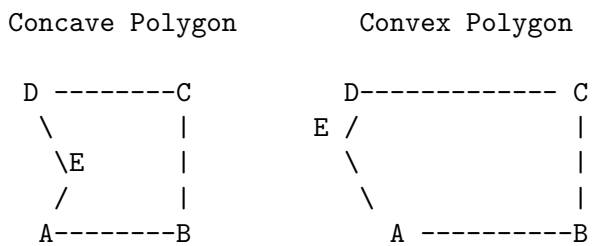
An `ndim`-dimensional dataset of size `naxes` (along each dimension, in FITS order) and a box with first and last (inclusive) coordinate of `fpixel_i` and `lpixel_i` is given. This box does not necessarily have to lie within the dataset, it can be outside of it, or only partially overlap. This function will change the values of `fpixel_i` and `lpixel_i` to exactly cover the overlap in the input dataset's coordinates.

This function will return 1 if there is an overlap and 0 if there is not. When there is an overlap, the coordinates of the first and last pixels of the overlap will be put in `fpixel_o` and `lpixel_o`.

12.3.17 Polygons (`polygon.h`)

Polygons are commonly necessary in image processing. For example, in Crop they are used for cutting out non-rectangular regions of a image (see Section 6.1 [Crop], page 389), and in Warp, for mapping different pixel grids over each other (see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501).

Polygons come in two classes: convex and concave (or generally, non-convex!), see below for a demonstration. Convex polygons are those where all inner angles are less than 180 degrees. By contrast, a convex polygon is one where an inner angle may be more than 180 degress.



In all the functions here the vertices (and points) are defined as an array. So a polygon with 4 vertices will be identified with an array of 8 elements with the first two elements keeping the 2D coordinates of the first vertice and so on.

`GAL_POLYGON_MAX_CORNERS` [Macro]

The largest number of vertices a polygon can have in this library.

`GAL_POLYGON_ROUND_ERR` [Macro]

We have to consider floating point round-off errors when dealing with polygons. For example, we will take `A` as the maximum of `A` and `B` when `A>B-GAL_POLYGON_ROUND_ERR`.

`void` [Function]
`gal_polygon_vertices_sort_convex (double *in, size_t n, size_t *ordinds)`

We have a simple polygon (that can result from projection, so its edges do not collide or it does not have holes) and we want to order its corners in an anticlockwise fashion. This is necessary for clipping it and finding its area later. The input vertices can have practically any order.

The input (`in`) is an array containing the coordinates (two values) of each vertice. `n` is the number of corners. So `in` should have `2*n` elements. The output (`ordinds`) is an array with `n` elements specifying the indices in order. This array must have been allocated before calling this function. The indexes are output for more generic usage, for example, in a homographic transform (necessary in warping an image, see Section 6.4.1 [Linear warping basics], page 502), the necessary order of vertices is the same for all the pixels. In other words, only the positions of the vertices change, not the way they need to be ordered. Therefore, this function would only be necessary once.

As a summary, the input is unchanged, only `n` values will be put in the `ordinds` array. Such that calling the input coordinates in the following fashion will give an anti-clockwise order when there are 4 vertices:

```
1st vertice: in[ordinds[0]*2], in[ordinds[0]*2+1]
2nd vertice: in[ordinds[1]*2], in[ordinds[1]*2+1]
3rd vertice: in[ordinds[2]*2], in[ordinds[2]*2+1]
4th vertice: in[ordinds[3]*2], in[ordinds[3]*2+1]
```

The implementation of this is very similar to the Graham scan in finding the Convex Hull. However, in projection we will never have a concave polygon (the left condition below, where this algorithm will get to E before D), we will always have a convex polygon (right case) or E will not exist! This is because we are always going to be calculating the area of the overlap between a quadrilateral and the pixel grid or the quadrilateral itself.

The `GAL_POLYGON_MAX_CORNERS` macro is defined so there will be no need to allocate these temporary arrays separately. Since we are dealing with pixels, the polygon cannot really have too many vertices.

`int` [Function]
`gal_polygon_is_convex (double *v, size_t n)`

Returns `1` if the polygon is convex with vertices defined by `v` and `0` if it is a concave polygon. Note that the vertices of the polygon should be sorted in an anti-clockwise manner.

`double` [Function]
`gal_polygon_area_flat (double *v, size_t n)`

Find the area of a polygon with vertices defined in `v` on a euclidian (flat) coordinate system. `v` points to an array of doubles which keep the positions of the vertices such that `v[0]` and `v[1]` are the positions of the first vertice to be considered.

`double` [Function]
`gal_polygon_area_sky (double *v, size_t n)`

Find the area of a polygon with vertices defined in `v` on a celestial coordinate system. This is a coordinate system where the first coordinate goes from 0 to 360 (increasing to the right), while the second coordinate ranges from -90 to +90 (on the poles). `v` points to an array of doubles which keep the positions of the vertices such that `v[0]` and `v[1]` are the positions of the first vertice to be considered.

This function uses an approximation to account for the curvature of the sky and the different nature of spherical coordinates with respect to the flat coordinate system. Bug 64617 (`https://savannah.gnu.org/bugs/index.php?64617`) has been defined in Gnuastro to address this problem. Please check that bug in case it has been fixed. Until this bug is fixed, here are some tips:

- Subtract the RA and Dec of all the vertice coordinates from a constant so the center of the polygon falls on (RA, Dec) of (180,0). The sphere has a similar nature everywhere on it, so shifting the polygon vertices will not change its area; this also removes issues with the RA=0 or RA=360 coordinate and decrease issues caused by RA depending on declination.
- These approximations should not cause any statistically significant error on normal (less than a few degrees) scales. But it won't hurt to do a small sanity check for your particular usage scenario.
- Any help (even in the mathematics of the problem; not necessary programming) would be appreciated (we didn't have time to derive the necessary equations), so if you have some background in this and can prepare the mathematical description of the problem, please get in touch.

`int` [Function]
`gal_polygon_is_inside (double *v, double *p, size_t n)`

Returns `0` if point `p` in inside a polygon, either convex or concave. The vertices of the polygon are defined by `v` and `0` otherwise, they have to be ordered in an anti-clockwise manner. This function uses the winding number algorithm (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Point_in_polygon#Winding_number_algorithm`), to check the points. Note that this is a generic function (working on both concave and convex polygons, so if you know before-hand that your polygon is convex, it is much more efficient to use `gal_polygon_is_inside_convex`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_polygon_is_inside_convex (double *v, double *p, size_t n)`

Return `1` if the point `p` is within the polygon whose vertices are defined by `v`. The polygon is assumed to be convex, for a more generic function that deals with concave and convex polygons, see `gal_polygon_is_inside`. Note that the vertices of the polygon have to be sorted in an anti-clock-wise manner.

`int` [Function]
`gal_polygon_ppropin (double *v, double *p, size_t n)`

Similar to `gal_polygon_is_inside_convex`, except that if the point `p` is on one of the edges of a polygon, this will return `0`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_polygon_is_counterclockwise (double *v, size_t n)`

Returns `1` if the sorted polygon has a counter-clockwise orientation and `0` otherwise. This function uses the concept of "winding", which defines the relative order in which the vertices of a polygon are listed to determine the orientation of vertices. For complex polygons (where edges, or sides, intersect), the most significant orientation is returned. In a complex polygon, when the alternative windings are equal (for example, an 8-shape) it will return `1` (as if it was counter-clockwise). Note that the polygon vertices have to be sorted before calling this function.

`int` [Function]
`gal_polygon_to_counterclockwise (double *v, size_t n)`

Arrange the vertices of the sorted polygon in place, to be in a counter-clockwise direction. If the input polygon already has a counter-clockwise direction it will not touch the input. The return value is `1` on successful execution. This function is just a wrapper over `gal_polygon_is_counterclockwise`, and will reverse the order of the vertices when necessary.

`void` [Function]
`gal_polygon_clip (double *s, size_t n, double *c, size_t m, double *o, size_t *numcrn)`

Clip (find the overlap of) two polygons. This function uses the Sutherland-Hodgman (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sutherland%E2%80%93Hodgman_algorithm`) polygon clipping algorithm. Note that the vertices of both polygons have to be sorted in an anti-clock-wise manner.

The Pseudocode from Wikipedia:

```
List outputList = subjectPolygon;
for (Edge clipEdge in clipPolygon) do
  List inputList = outputList;
  outputList.clear();
  Point S = inputList.last;
  for (Point E in inputList) do
     if (E inside clipEdge) then
        if (S not inside clipEdge) then
           outputList.add(ComputeIntersection(S,E,clipEdge));
        end if
        outputList.add(E);
     else if (S inside clipEdge) then
        outputList.add(ComputeIntersection(S,E,clipEdge));
     end if
     S = E;
  done
```

```
done
```

The difference is that we are not using lists, but arrays to keep polygon vertices. The two polygons are called Subject `s` and Clip `c` with `n` and `m` vertices respectively. The output is stored in `o` and the number of elements in the output are stored in what `*numcrn` (for number of corners) points to.

`void` [Function]
`gal_polygon_vertices_sort (double *vertices, size_t n, size_t *ordinds)`

Sort the indices of the un-ordered `vertices` array to a counter-clockwise polygon in the already allocated space of `ordinds`. It is assumed that there are `n` vertices, and thus that `vertices` contains `2*n` elements where the two coordinates of the first vertice occupy the first two elements of the array and so on.

The polygon can be both concave and convex (see the start of this section). However, note that for concave polygons there is no unique sort from an un-ordered set of vertices. So after this function you may want to use `gal_polygon_is_convex` and print a warning to check the output if the polygon was concave.

Note that the contents of the `vertices` array are left untouched by this function. If you want to write the ordered vertice coordinates in another array with the same size, you can use a loop like this:

```
for(i=0;i<n;++i)
{
  ordered[i*2  ] = vertices[ ordinds[i]*2    ];
  ordered[i*2+1] = vertices[ ordinds[i]*2 + 1];
}
```

In this algorithm, we find the rightmost and leftmost points (based on their x-coordinate) and use the diagonal vector between those points to group the points in arrays based on their position with respect to this vector. For anticlockwise sorting, all the points below the vector are sorted by their ascending x-coordinates and points above the vector are sorted in decreasing order using `qsort`. Finally, both these arrays are merged together to get the final sorted array of points, from which the points are indexed into the `ordinds` using linear search.

12.3.18 Qsort functions (`qsort.h`)

When sorting a dataset is necessary, the C programming language provides the `qsort` (Quick sort) function. `qsort` is a generic function which allows you to sort any kind of data structure (not just a single array of numbers). To define "greater" and "smaller" (for sorting), `qsort` needs another function, even for simple numerical types. The functions introduced in this section are to passed onto `qsort`.

Note that larger and smaller operators are not defined on NaN elements. Therefore, if the input array is a floating point type, and contains NaN values, the relevant functions of this section are going to put the NaN elements at the end of the list (after the sorted non-NaN elements), irrespective of the requested sorting order (increasing or decreasing).

The first class of functions below (with `TYPE` in their names) can be used for sorting a simple numeric array. Just replace `TYPE` with the dataset's numeric datatype. The second

set of functions can be used to sort indices (leave the actual numbers untouched). To use the second set of functions, a global variable or structure are also necessary as described below.

`gal_qsort_index_single` [Global variable]
: Pointer to an array (for example, `float *` or `int *`) to use as a reference in `gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_d` or `gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_i`, see the explanation of these functions for more. Note that if *more than one* array is to be sorted in a multi-threaded operation, these functions will not work as expected. However, when all the threads just sort the indices based on a *single array*, this global variable can safely be used in a multi-threaded scenario.

`gal_qsort_index_multi` [Type (C `struct`)]
: Structure to get the sorted indices of multiple datasets on multiple threads with `gal_qsort_index_multi_d` or `gal_qsort_index_multi_i`. Note that the `values` array will not be changed by these functions, it is only read. Therefore all the `values` elements in the (to be sorted) array of `gal_qsort_index_multi` must point to the same place.

```
struct gal_qsort_index_multi
{
  float *values;         /* Array of values (same in all).      */
  size_t  index;         /* Index of each element to be sorted. */
};
```

`int` [Function]
`gal_qsort_TYPE_d (const void *a, const void *b)`
: When passed to `qsort`, this function will sort a `TYPE` array in decreasing order (first element will be the largest). Please replace `TYPE` (in the function name) with one of the Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, for example, `gal_qsort_int32_d`, or `gal_qsort_float64_d`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_qsort_TYPE_i (const void *a, const void *b)`
: When passed to `qsort`, this function will sort a `TYPE` array in increasing order (first element will be the smallest). Please replace `TYPE` (in the function name) with one of the Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279, for example, `gal_qsort_int32_i`, or `gal_qsort_float64_i`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_d (const void *a, const void *b)`
: When passed to `qsort`, this function will sort a `size_t` array based on decreasing values in the `gal_qsort_index_single`. The global `gal_qsort_index_single` pointer has a `void *` pointer which will be cast to the proper type based on this function: for example `gal_qsort_index_single_uint16_d` will cast the array to an unsigned 16-bit integer type. The array that `gal_qsort_index_single` points to will not be changed, it is only read. For example, see this demo program:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>           /* qsort is defined in stdlib.h. */
```

```
#include <gnuastro/qsort.h>

int
main (void)
{
  size_t s[4]={0, 1, 2, 3};
  float f[4]={1.3,0.2,1.8,0.1};
  gal_qsort_index_single=f;
  qsort(s, 4, sizeof(size_t), gal_qsort_index_single_float32_d);
  printf("%zu, %zu, %zu, %zu\n", s[0], s[1], s[2], s[3]);
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

The output will be: `2, 0, 1, 3`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_i (const void *a, const void *b)`

Similar to `gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_d`, but will sort the indexes such that the values of `gal_qsort_index_single` can be parsed in increasing order.

`int` [Function]
`gal_qsort_index_multi_d (const void *a, const void *b)`

When passed to `qsort` with an array of `gal_qsort_index_multi`, this function will sort the array based on the values of the given indices. The sorting will be ordered according to the `values` pointer of `gal_qsort_index_multi`. Note that `values` must point to the same place in all the structures of the `gal_qsort_index_multi` array.

This function is only useful when the indices of multiple arrays on multiple threads are to be sorted. If your program is single threaded, or all the indices belong to a single array (sorting different sub-sets of indices in a single array on multiple threads), it is recommended to use `gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_d`.

`int` [Function]
`gal_qsort_index_multi_i (const void *a, const void *b)`

Similar to `gal_qsort_index_multi_d`, but the result will be sorted in increasing order (first element will have the smallest value).

12.3.19 K-d tree (`kdtree.h`)

K-d tree is a space-partitioning binary search tree for organizing points in a k-dimensional space. They are a very useful data structure for multidimensional searches like range searches and nearest neighbor searches. For a more formal and complete introduction see the Wikipedia page (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/K-d_tree`).

Each non-leaf node in a k-d tree divides the space into two parts, known as half-spaces. To select the top/root node for partitioning, we find the median of the points and make a hyperplane normal to the first dimension. The points to the left of this space are represented by the left subtree of that node and points to the right of the space are represented by the right subtree. This is then repeated for all the points in the input, thus associating a “left” and “right” branch for each input point.

Gnuastro uses the standard algorithms of the k-d tree with one small difference that makes it much more memory and CPU optimized. The set of input points that define the tree nodes are given as a list of Gnuastro's data container type, see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812. Each `gal_data_t` in the list represents the point's coordinate in one dimension, and the first element in the list is the first dimension. Hence the number of data values in each `gal_data_t` (which must be equal in all of them) represents the number of points. This is the same format that Gnuastro's Table reading/writing functions read/write columns in tables, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

The output k-d tree is a list of two `gal_data_t`s, representing the input's row-number (or index, counting from 0) of the left and right subtrees of each row. Each `gal_data_t` thus has the same number of rows (or points) as the input, but only containing integers with a type of `uint32_t` (unsigned 32-bit integer). If a node has no left, or right subtree, then `GAL_BLANK_UINT32` will be used. Below you can see the simple tree for 2D points from Wikipedia. The input point coordinates are represented as two input `gal_data_t`s (`X` and `Y`, where `X->next=Y` and `Y->next=NULL`). If you had three dimensional points, you could define an extra `gal_data_t` such that `Y->next=Z` and `Z->next=NULL`. The output is always a list of two `gal_data_t`s, where the first one contains the index of the left sub-tree in the input, and the second one, the index of the right subtree. The index of the root node (`0` in the case below[25]) is also returned as a single number.

```
INDEX         INPUT             OUTPUT             K-D Tree
(as guide)    X --> Y        LEFT --> RIGHT       (visualized)
----------    -------        --------------    ------------------
0             5     4        1        2              (5,4)
1             2     3        BLANK    4              /   \
2             7     2        5        3           (2,3)   \
3             9     6        BLANK    BLANK          \    (7,2)
4             4     7        BLANK    BLANK        (4,7)  /   \
5             8     1        BLANK    BLANK               (8,1) (9,6)
```

This format is therefore scalable to any number of dimensions: the number of dimensions are determined from the number of nodes in the input list of `gal_data_t`s (for example, using `gal_list_data_number`). In Gnuastro's k-d tree implementation, there are thus no special structures to keep every tree node (which would take extra memory and would need to be moved around as the tree is being created). Everything is done internally on the index of each point in the input dataset: the only thing that is flipped/sorted during tree creation is the index to the input row for any number of dimensions. As a result, Gnuastro's k-d tree implementation is very memory and CPU efficient and its two output columns can directly be written into a standard table (without having to define any special binary format).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_kdtree_create (gal_data_t *coords_raw, size_t *root)`

Create a k-d tree in a bottom-up manner (from leaves to the root). This function returns two `gal_data_t`s connected as a list, see description above. The first dataset

[25] This example input table is the same as the example in Wikipedia (as of December 2020). However, on the Wikipedia output, the root node is (7,2), not (5,4). The difference is primarily because there are 6 rows and the median element of an even number of elements can vary by integer calculation strategies. Here we use 0-based indexes for finding median and round to the smaller integer.

contains the indexes of left and right nodes of the subtrees for each input node. The index of the root node is written into the memory that `root` points to. `coords_raw` is the list of the input points (one `gal_data_t` per dimension, see above). If the input dataset has no data (`coords_raw->size==0`), this function will return a `NULL` pointer.

For example, assume you have the simple set of points below (from the visualized example at the start of this section) in a plain-text file called `coordinates.txt`:

```
$ cat coordinates.txt
5     4
2     3
7     2
9     6
4     7
8     1
```

With the program below, you can calculate the kd-tree, and write it in a FITS file (while keeping the root index as a FITS keyword inside of it).

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <gnuastro/table.h>
#include <gnuastro/kdtree.h>

int
main (void)
{
  gal_data_t *input, *kdtree;
  char kdtreefile[]="kd-tree.fits";
  char inputfile[]="coordinates.txt";

  /* To write the root within the saved file. */
  size_t root;
  char *unit="index";
  char *keyname="KDTROOT";
  gal_fits_list_key_t *keylist=NULL;
  char *comment="k-d tree root index (counting from 0).";

  /* Read the input table. Note: this assumes the table only
   * contains your input point coordinates (one column for each
   * dimension). If it contains more columns with other properties
   * for each point, you can specify which columns to read by
   * name or number, see the documentation of 'gal_table_read'. */
  input=gal_table_read(inputfile, "1", NULL, NULL,
                       GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_NAME, 0, -1, 0, NULL);

  /* Construct a k-d tree. The index of root is stored in `root` */
  kdtree=gal_kdtree_create(input, &root);

  /* Write the k-d tree to a file and write root index and input
```

```
     * name as FITS keywords ('gal_table_write' frees 'keylist').*/
    gal_fits_key_list_title_add(&keylist, "k-d tree parameters", 0);
    gal_fits_key_write_filename("KDTIN", inputfile, &keylist, 0, 1);
    gal_fits_key_list_add_end(&keylist, GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T, keyname, 0,
                              &root, 0, comment, 0, unit, 0);
    gal_table_write(kdtree, &keylist, NULL, GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_BFITS,
                    kdtreefile, "kdtree", 0, 1);

    /* Clean up and return. */
    gal_list_data_free(input);
    gal_list_data_free(kdtree);
    return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

You can inspect the saved k-d tree FITS table with Gnuastro's Section 5.3 [Table], page 344, (first command below), and you can see the keywords containing the root index with Section 5.1 [Fits], page 297, (second command below):

```
asttable kd-tree.fits
astfits kd-tree.fits -h1
```

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_kdtree_nearest_neighbour (gal_data_t *coords_raw, gal_data_t *kdtree, size_t root, double *point, double *least_dist, uint8_t nosamenode)`

Returns the index of the nearest input point to the query point (`point`, assumed to be an array with same number of elements as `gal_data_t`s in `coords_raw`). If `nosamenode` is not zero, exact matches are discarded. This is useful for instance when we want to search the nearest neighbour within the same dataset. The distance between the query point and its nearest neighbor is stored in the space that `least_dist` points to. This search is efficient due to the constant checking for the presence of possible best points in other branches. If it is not possible for the other branch to have a better nearest neighbor, that branch is not searched.

As an example, let's use the k-d tree that was created in the example of `gal_kdtree_create` (above) and find the nearest row to a given coordinate (`point`). This will be a very common scenario, especially in large and multi-dimensional datasets where the k-d tree creation can take long and you do not want to re-create the k-d tree every time. In the `gal_kdtree_create` example output, we also wrote the k-d tree root index as a FITS keyword (`KDTROOT`), so after loading the two table data (input coordinates and k-d tree), we will read the root from the FITS keyword. This is a very simple example, but the scalability is clear: for example, it is trivial to parallelize (see Section 12.4.3 [Library demo - multi-threaded operation], page 944).

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <gnuastro/table.h>
#include <gnuastro/kdtree.h>

int
main (void)
```

```
{
  /* INPUT: desired point. */
  double point[2]={8.9,5.9};

  /* Same as example in description of 'gal_kdtree_create'. */
  gal_data_t *input, *kdtree;
  char kdtreefile[]="kd-tree.fits";
  char inputfile[]="coordinates.txt";

  /* Processing variables of this function. */
  char kdtreehdu[]="1";
  double *in_x, *in_y, least_dist;
  size_t root, nkeys=1, nearest_index;
  gal_data_t *rkey, *keysll=gal_data_array_calloc(nkeys);

  /* Read the input coordinates, see comments in example of
   * 'gal_kdtree_create' for more. */
  input=gal_table_read(inputfile, "1", NULL, NULL,
                       GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_NAME, 0, -1, 0, NULL);

  /* Read the k-d tree contents (created before). */
  kdtree=gal_table_read(kdtreefile, "1", NULL, NULL,
                        GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_NAME, 0, -1, 0, NULL);

  /* Read the k-d tree root index from the header keyword.
   * See example in description of 'gal_fits_key_read_from_ptr'.*/
  keysll[0].name="KDTROOT";
  keysll[0].type=GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T;
  gal_fits_key_read(kdtreefile, kdtreehdu, keysll, 0, 0, NULL);
  keysll[0].name=NULL; /* Since we did not allocate it. */
  rkey=gal_data_copy_to_new_type(&keysll[0], GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T);
  root=((size_t *)(rkey->array))[0];

  /* Find the nearest neighbour of the point. */
  nearest_index=gal_kdtree_nearest_neighbour(input, kdtree, root,
                                             point, &least_dist);

  /* Print the results. */
  in_x=input->array;
  in_y=input->next->array;
  printf("(%g, %g): nearest is (%g, %g), with a distance of %g\n",
         point[0], point[1], in_x[nearest_index],
         in_y[nearest_index], least_dist);

  /* Clean up and return. */
  gal_data_free(rkey);
  gal_list_data_free(input);
```

```
  gal_list_data_free(kdtree);
  gal_data_array_free(keysll, nkeys, 1);
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

12.3.20 Permutations (`permutation.h`)

Permutation is the technical name for re-ordering of values. The need for permutations occurs a lot during (mainly low-level) processing. To do permutation, you must provide two inputs: an array of values (that you want to re-order in place) and a permutation array which contains the new index of each element (let's call it `perm`). The diagram below shows the input array before and after the re-ordering.

```
permute:    AFTER[ i       ] = BEFORE[ perm[i] ]     i = 0 .. N-1
inverse:    AFTER[ perm[i] ] = BEFORE[ i       ]     i = 0 .. N-1
```

The functions here are a re-implementation of the GNU Scientific Library's `gsl_permute` function. The reason we did not use that function was that it uses system-specific types (like `long` and `int`) which can have different widths on different systems, hence are not easily convertible to Gnuastro's fixed width types (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). There is also a separate function for each type, heavily using macros to allow a `base` function to work on all the types. Thus it is hard to read/understand. Hence, Gnuastro contains a re-write of their steps in a new type-agnostic method which is a single function that can work on any type.

As described in GSL's source code and manual, this implementation comes from Donald Knuth's *Art of computer programming* book, in the "Sorting and Searching" chapter of Volume 3 (3rd ed). Exercise 10 of Section 5.2 defines the problem and in the answers, Knuth describes the solution. So if you are interested, please have a look there for more.

We are in contact with the GSL developers and in the future[26] we will submit these implementations to GSL. If they are finally incorporated there, we will delete this section in future versions.

`void` [Function]
`gal_permutation_check (size_t *permutation, size_t size)`

Print how `permutation` will re-order an array that has `size` elements for each element in one one line.

`void` [Function]
`gal_permutation_apply (gal_data_t *input, size_t *permutation)`

Apply `permutation` on the `input` dataset (can have any type), see above for the definition of permutation.

`void` [Function]
`gal_permutation_apply_inverse (gal_data_t *input, size_t *permutation)`

Apply the inverse of `permutation` on the `input` dataset (can have any type), see above for the definition of permutation.

[26] Gnuastro's Task 14497 (`http://savannah.gnu.org/task/?14497`). If this task is still "postponed" when you are reading this and you are interested to help, your contributions would be very welcome. Both Gnuastro and GSL developers are very busy, hence both would appreciate your help.

`void` [Function]
`gal_permutation_transpose_2d (gal_data_t *input)`

Transpose an input 2D matrix into a new dataset. If the input is not a square, this function will change the `input->array` element to a newly allocated array (the old one will be freed internally). Therefore, in case you have already stored `input->array` for other usage *before* this function, and the input is not a square, be sure to update the previously stored pointer if the input is not a square.

12.3.21 Matching (`match.h`)

Matching is often necessary when two measurements of the same points have been done using different instruments (or hardware), different software or different configurations of the same software. In other words, you have two catalogs or tables, and each has N columns containing the N-dimensional "coordinate" values of each point. Each table can have other columns too, for example, one can have magnitudes in one filter, and another can have morphology measurements.

The matching functions here will use the coordinate columns of the two tables to find a permutation for each, and the total number of matched rows (N_{match}). This will enable you to match by the positions if you like. At a higher level, you can apply the permutation to the magnitude or morphology columns to merge the catalogs over the N_{match} rows. The input and output data formats of the functions are the some and described below before the actual functions. Each function also has extra arguments due to the particular algorithm it uses for the matching.

The two inputs of the functions (`coord1` and `coord2`) must be Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812. Each `gal_data_t` node in `coord1` or `coord2` should be a single dimensional dataset (column in a table) and all the nodes (in each) must have the same number of elements (rows). In other words, each column can be visualized as having the coordinates of each point in its respective dimension. The dimensions of the coordinates is determined by the number of `gal_data_t` nodes in the two input lists (which must be equal). The number of rows (or the number of elements in each `gal_data_t`) in the columns of `coord1` and `coord2` can (and, usually will!) be different. In summary, these functions will be happy if you use `gal_table_read` to read the two coordinate columns from a file, see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

The functions below return a simply-linked list of three 1D datasets (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812), let's call the returned dataset `ret`. The first two (`ret` and `ret->next`) are permutations. In other words, the `array` elements of both have a type of `size_t`, see Section 12.3.20 [Permutations (`permutation.h`)], page 891. The third node (`ret->next->next`) is the calculated distance for that match and its array has a type of `double`. The number of matches will be put in the space pointed by the `nummatched` argument. If there was not any match, this function will return `NULL`.

The two permutations can be applied to the rows of the two inputs: the first one (`ret`) should be applied to the rows of the table containing `coord1` and the second one (`ret->next`) to the table containing `coord2`. After applying the returned permutations to the inputs, the top `nummatched` elements of both will match with each other. The ordering of the rest of the elements is undefined (depends on the matching function used). The third node is the distances between the respective match (which may be elliptical distance, see discussion of "aperture" below).

The functions will not simply return the nearest neighbor as a match. This is because the nearest neighbor may be too far to be a meaningful! They will check the distance between the nearest neighbor of each point and only return a match if it is within an acceptable N-dimensional distance (or "aperture"). The matching aperture is defined by the `aperture` array that is an input argument to the functions.

If several points of one catalog lie within this aperture of a point in the other catalog, the nearest is defined as the match. In a 2D situation (where the input lists have two nodes), for the most generic case, `aperture` must have three elements: the major axis length, axis ratio and position angle (see Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652). If `aperture[1]==1`, the aperture will be a circle of radius `aperture[0]` and the third value will not be used. When the aperture is an ellipse, distances between the points are also calculated in the respective elliptical distances (r_{el} in Section 8.1.1.1 [Defining an ellipse and ellipsoid], page 652).

Output permutations ignore internal sorting: the output permutations will correspond to the initial inputs. Therefore, even when `inplace!=0` (and this function re-arranges the inputs in place), the output permutation will correspond to original (possibly non-sorted) inputs. The reason for this is that you rarely want to permute the actual positional columns after the match. Usually, you also have other columns (such as the magnitude and morphology) and you want to find how they differ between the objects that match. Once you have the permutations, they can be applied to those other columns (see Section 12.3.20 [Permutations (`permutation.h`)], page 891) and the higher-level processing can continue. So if you do not need the coordinate columns for the rest of your analysis, it is better to set `inplace=1`.

`GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_FULL` [Macro]
`GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_INNER` [Macro]
`GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_OUTER` [Macro]
`GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_INVALID` [Macro]
`GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_OUTERWITHINAPERTURE` [Macro]

The arrangement of the match output; for a description of the various match arrangements, see Section 7.5.1 [Arranging match output], page 637. The invalid keyword is useful when you need to initialize values (and later make sure that your users have actually given a value.

```
gal_data_t *                                                    [Function]
gal_match_sort_based (gal_data_t *coord1, gal_data_t *coord2, double
        *aperture, int sorted_by_first, int inplace, size_t
        minmapsize, int quietmmap, size_t *nummatched)
```

Use a basic sort-based match to find the matching points of two input coordinates. See the descriptions above on the format of the inputs and outputs. To speed up the search, this function will sort the input coordinates by their first column (first axis). If *both* are already sorted by their first column, you can avoid the sorting step by giving a non-zero value to `sorted_by_first`.

When sorting is necessary and `inplace` is non-zero, the actual input columns will be sorted. Otherwise, an internal copy of the inputs will be made, used (sorted) and later freed before returning. Therefore, when `inplace==0`, inputs will remain untouched, but this function will take more time and memory. If internal allocation is necessary

and the space is larger than `minmapsize`, the space will be not allocated in the RAM, but in a file, see description of `--minmapsize` and `--quietmmap` in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_match_kdtree (gal_data_t *coord1,`
gal_data_t `*coord2`, gal_data_t `*coord1_kdtree`, size_t `kdtree_root`, uint8_t `arrange`, double `*aperture`, size_t `numthreads`, size_t `minmapsize`, int `quietmmap`, size_t `*nummatched`, uint8_t `nosamenode`)

Use the k-d tree algorithm for finding matches between two catalogs. The `arrange`-ment of the match output should be set with one of the `GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_*` macros described above. The k-d tree of the first input (`coord1_kdtree`), and its root index (`kdtree_root`), should be constructed and found before calling this function, to do this, you can use the `gal_kdtree_create` of Section 12.3.19 [K-d tree (`kdtree.h`)], page 886. The desired `aperture` array is the same as `gal_match_sort_based` and described at the top of this section, but the appreture array can be `NULL` for an outer arrangement (it will not be used). If `coord1_kdtree==NULL`, this function will return a `NULL` pointer and write a value of `0` in the space that `nummatched` points to. If `nosamenode` is not zero, exact matches are discarded. This is useful for instance when we want to search the nearest neighbour within the same dataset. If `numthreads` threads is larger than one, the matching will be done in parallel.

The final number of matches is returned in `nummatched` and the format of the returned dataset (three columns) is described above. If internal allocation is necessary and the space is larger than `minmapsize`, the space will be not allocated in the RAM, but in a file, see description of `--minmapsize` and `--quietmmap` in Section 4.1.2.2 [Processing options], page 257.

When `arrange` is outer or outer-within-aperture, the output is only a two column table (list of 1D `gal_data_t`s). The first one is the permutation that that should be applied to the first input and the second one is the distance between the match. This is because in these types of arrangements, the second output is not changed or permuted).

12.3.22 Statistical operations (`statistics.h`)

After reading a dataset into memory from a file or fully simulating it with another process, the most common processes that will be done on it are statistical operations to let you quantify different aspects of the data. the functions in this section describe Gnuastro's current set of tools for this job. All these functions can work on any numeric data type natively (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279) and can also work on tiles over a dataset. Hence the inputs and outputs are in Gnuastro's Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

`GAL_STATISTICS_SIG_CLIP_MAX_CONVERGE` [Macro]
The maximum number of clips, when σ-clipping should be done by convergence. If the clipping does not converge before making this many clips, all σ-clipping outputs will be NaN.

`GAL_STATISTICS_MODE_GOOD_SYM` [Macro]
The minimum acceptable symmetricity of the mode calculation. If the symmetricity of the derived mode is less than this value, all the returned values by `gal_statistics_mode` will have a value of NaN.

`GAL_STATISTICS_BINS_INVALID` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_BINS_REGULAR` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_BINS_IRREGULAR` [Macro]
Macros used to identify if the regularity of the bins when defining bins.

`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_STD` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MAD` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MEAN` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MEDIAN` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_NUMBER_USED` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_NUMBER_CLIPS` [Macro]
Macros containing the index of the clipping outputs, see the descriptions of `gal_statistics_clip_sigma` below.

`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_STD` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_MAD` [Macro]
`GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_MEAN` [Macro]
Macros containing bit flags for optional clipping outputs, see the descriptions of `gal_statistics_clip_sigma` below.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_number (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a single-element dataset with type `size_t` which contains the number of non-blank elements in `input`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_minimum (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a single-element dataset containing the minimum non-blank value in `input`. The numerical datatype of the output is the same as `input`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_maximum (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a single-element dataset containing the maximum non-blank value in `input`. The numerical datatype of the output is the same as `input`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_range_double (gal_data_t *input)`
return the difference between the minimum and maximum as a double-precision floating point of a dataset (with any type).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_sum (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a single-element (`double` or `float64`) dataset containing the sum of the non-blank values in `input`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_mean (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a single-element (`double` or `float64`) dataset containing the mean of the non-blank values in `input`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_std (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a single-element (`double` or `float64`) dataset containing the standard deviation of the non-blank values in `input`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_mean_std (gal_data_t *input)`
Return a two-element (`double` or `float64`) dataset containing the mean and standard deviation of the non-blank values in `input`. The first element of the returned dataset is the mean and the second is the standard deviation.

This function will calculate both values in one pass over the dataset. Hence when both the mean and standard deviation of a dataset are necessary, this function is much more efficient than calling `gal_statistics_mean` and `gal_statistics_std` separately.

`double` [Function]
`gal_statistics_std_from_sums (double sum, double sump2, size_t num)`
Return the standard deviation from the values that can be obtained in a single pass through the distribution: `sum`: the sum of the elements, `sump2`: the sum of the power-of-2 of each element, and `num`: the number of elements.

This is a low-level function that is only useful after the distribution of values has been parsed (and the three input arguments are calculated). It is the lower-level function that is used in functions like `gal_statistics_std`, or other components of Gnuastro that measure the standard deviation (for example, MakeCatalog's `--std` column).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_median (gal_data_t *input, int inplace)`
Return a single-element dataset containing the median of the non-blank values in `input`. The numerical datatype of the output is the same as `input`.

Calculating the median involves sorting the dataset and removing blank values, for better performance (and less memory usage), you can give a non-zero value to the `inplace` argument. In this case, the sorting and removal of blank elements will be done directly on the input dataset. However, after this function the original dataset may have changed (if it was not sorted or had blank values).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_mad (gal_data_t *input, int inplace)`
Return a single-element dataset with same type as input, containing the median absolute deviation (MAD) of the non-blank values in `input`.

If `inplace==0`, the input dataset will remain untouched. Otherwise, the MAD calculation will be done on the input dataset without allocating a new one (its values will be changed after this function). This is good when you do not need the input after this function and avoid taking extra RAM and CPU.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_median_mad (gal_data_t *input, int inplace)`

Return a two-element dataset with same type as input, containing the median and median absolute deviation (MAD) of the non-blank values in `input`.

If `inplace==0`, the input dataset will remain untouched. Otherwise, the MAD calculation will be done on the input dataset without allocating a new one (its values will be changed after this function). This is good when you do not need the input after this function and avoid taking extra RAM and CPU.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_statistics_quantile_index (size_t size, double quantile)`

Return the index of the element that has a quantile of `quantile` assuming the dataset has `size` elements.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_quantile (gal_data_t *input, double quantile, int inplace)`

Return a single-element dataset containing the value with in a quantile `quantile` of the non-blank values in `input`. The numerical datatype of the output is the same as `input`. See `gal_statistics_median` for a description of `inplace`.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_statistics_quantile_function_index (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *value, int inplace)`

Return the index of the quantile function (inverse quantile) of `input` at `value`. In other words, this function will return the index of the nearest element (of a sorted and non-blank) `input` to `value`. If the value is outside the range of the input, then this function will return `GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_quantile_function (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *value, int inplace)`

Return a single-element dataset containing the quantile function of the non-blank values in `input` at `value` (a single-element dataset). The numerical data type is of the returned dataset is `float64` (or `double`). In other words, this function will return the quantile of `value` in `input`. `value` has to have the same type as `input`. See `gal_statistics_median` for a description of `inplace`.

When all elements are blank, the returned value will be NaN. If the value is smaller than the input's smallest element, the returned value will be negative infinity. If the value is larger than the input's largest element, then the returned value will be positive infinity

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_unique (gal_data_t *input, int inplace)`

Return a 1D dataset with the same numeric data type as the input, but only containing its unique elements and without any (possible) blank/NaN elements. Note that the input's number of dimensions is irrelevant for this function. If `inplace` is not zero, then the unique values will over-write the allocated space of the input, otherwise a new space will be allocated and the input will not be touched.

`int` [Function]
`gal_statistics_has_negative (gal_data_t *input)`

Return `1` if the input dataset contains a negative number and `0` otherwise. If the dataset doesn't have a numeric type (as in a string), this function will abort with, saying that it does not recognize the file type.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_mode (gal_data_t *input, float mirrordist, int inplace)`

Return a four-element (`double` or `float64`) dataset that contains the mode of the `input` distribution. This function implements the non-parametric algorithm to find the mode that is described in Appendix C of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

In short it compares the actual distribution and its "mirror distribution" to find the mode. In order to be efficient, you can determine how far the comparison goes away from the mirror through the `mirrordist` parameter (think of it as a multiple of sigma/error). See `gal_statistics_median` for a description of `inplace`.

The output array has the following elements (in the given order, note that counting in C starts from 0).

```
array[0]: mode
array[1]: mode quantile.
array[2]: symmetricity.
array[3]: value at the end of symmetricity.
```

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_mode_mirror_plots (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *value, size_t numbins, int inplace, double *mirror_val)`

Make a mirrored histogram and cumulative frequency plot (with `numbins`) with the mirror distribution of the `input` having a value in `value`. If all the input elements are blank, or the mirror value is outside the range of the input, this function will return a `NULL` pointer.

The output is a list of data structures (see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812): the first is the bins with one bin at the mirror point, the second is the histogram with a maximum of one and the third is the cumulative frequency plot (with a maximum of one).

`int` [Function]
`gal_statistics_is_sorted (gal_data_t *input, int updateflags)`

Return `0` if the input is not sorted, if it is sorted, this function will return `1` and `2` if it is increasing or decreasing, respectively. This function will abort with an error if `input` has zero elements and will return `1` (sorted, increasing) when there is only one element. This function will only look into the dataset if the `GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORT_CH` bit of `input->flag` is `0`, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784.

When the flags do not indicate a previous check *and* `updateflags` is non-zero, this function will set the flags appropriately to avoid having to re-check the dataset in future calls (this can be very useful when repeated checks are necessary). When

`updateflags==0`, this function has no side-effects on the dataset: it will not toggle the flags.

If you want to re-check a dataset with the blank-value-check flag already set (for example, if you have made changes to it), then explicitly set the `GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORT_CH` bit to zero before calling this function. When there are no other flags, you can simply set the flags to zero (with `input->flag=0`), otherwise you can use this expression:

```
input->flag &= ~GAL_DATA_FLAG_SORT_CH;
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_statistics_sort_increasing (gal_data_t *input)`

Sort the input dataset (in place) in an increasing order and toggle the sort-related bit flags accordingly. To sort a table (many columns) based on one column, see `gal_table_sort` in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

`void` [Function]
`gal_statistics_sort_decreasing (gal_data_t *input)`

Sort the input dataset (in place) in a decreasing order and toggle the sort-related bit flags accordingly. To sort a table (many columns) based on one column, see `gal_table_sort` in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_no_blank_sorted (gal_data_t *input, int inplace)`

Remove all the blanks and sort the input dataset. If `inplace` is non-zero this will happen on the input dataset (in the allocated space of the input dataset). However, if `inplace` is zero, this function will allocate a new copy of the dataset and work on that. Therefore if `inplace==0`, the input dataset will be modified.

This function uses the bit flags of the input, so if you have modified the dataset, set `input->flag=0` before calling this function. Also note that `inplace` is only for the dataset elements. Therefore even when `inplace==0`, if the input is already sorted *and* has no blank values, then the flags will be updated to show this.

If all the elements were blank, then the returned dataset's `size` will be zero. This is thus a good parameter to check after calling this function to see if there actually were any non-blank elements in the input or not and take the appropriate measure. This can help avoid strange bugs in later steps. The flags of a zero-sized returned dataset will indicate that it has no blanks and is sorted in an increasing order. Even if having blank values or being sorted is not defined on a zero-element dataset, it is up to the caller to choose what they will do with a zero-element dataset. The flags have to be set after this function any way.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_regular_bins (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *inrange, size_t numbins, double onebinstart)`

Generate an array of regularly spaced elements as a 1D array (column) of type `double` (i.e., `float64`, it has to be double to account for small differences on the bin edges). The input arguments are described below

`input` The dataset you want to apply the bins to. This is only necessary if the range argument is not complete, see below. If `inrange` has all the necessary information, you can pass a `NULL` pointer for this.

`inrange` This dataset keeps the desired range along each dimension of the input data structure, it has to be in `float` (i.e., `float32`) type.

- If you want the full range of the dataset (in any dimensions, then just set `inrange` to `NULL` and the range will be specified from the minimum and maximum value of the dataset (`input` cannot be `NULL` in this case).
- If there is one element for each dimension in range, then it is viewed as a quantile (Q), and the range will be: 'Q to 1-Q'.
- If there are two elements for each dimension in range, then they are assumed to be your desired minimum and maximum values. When either of the two are NaN, the minimum and maximum will be calculated for it.

`numbins` The number of bins: must be larger than 0.

`onebinstart`
A desired value to start one bin. Note that with this option, the bins will not start and end exactly on the given range values, it will be slightly shifted to accommodate this request (enough for the bin containing the value to start at it). If you do not have any preference on where to start a bin, set this to NAN.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_histogram (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *bins, int normalize, int maxone)`

Make a histogram of all the elements in the given dataset with bin values that are defined in the `bins` structure (see `gal_statistics_regular_bins`, they currently have to be equally spaced). The returned histogram is a 1-D `gal_data_t` of type `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32`, with the same number of elements as `bins`. For each bin, it will contain the number of input elements that fell inside of that bin.

Let's write the center of the ith element of the bin array as b_i, and the fixed half-bin width as h. Then element j of the input array (in_j) will be counted in b_i if $(b_i - h) \leq in_j < (b_i + h)$. However, if in_j is somewhere in the last bin, the condition changes to $(b_i - h) \leq in_j \leq (b_i + h)$.

If `normalize!=0`, the histogram will be "normalized" such that the sum of the counts column will be one. In other words, all the counts in every bin will be divided by the total number of counts. If `maxone!=0`, the histogram's maximum count will be 1. In other words, the counts in every bin will be divided by the value of the maximum. In both of these cases, the output dataset will have a `GAL_DATA_FLOAT32` datatype.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_histogram2d (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *bins)`

This function is very similar to `gal_statistics_histogram`, but will build a 2D histogram (count how many of the elements of `input` are a within a 2D box. The

bins comprising the first dimension of the 2D box are defined by `bins`. The bins of the second dimension are defined by `bins->next` (`bins` is a Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812). Both the `bin` and `bin->next` can be created with `gal_statistics_regular_bins`.

This function returns a list of `gal_data_t` with three nodes/columns, so you can directly write them into a table (see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816). Assuming `bins` has $N1$ bins and `bins->next` has $N2$ bins, each node/column of the returned output is a 1D array with $N1 \times N2$ elements. The first and second columns are the center of the 2D bin along the first and second dimensions and have a `double` data type. The third column is the 2D histogram (the number of input elements that have a value within that 2D bin) and has a `uint32` data type (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_cfp (gal_data_t *input, gal_data_t *bins, int normalize)`

Make a cumulative frequency plot (CFP) of all the elements in `input` with bin values that are defined in the `bins` structure (see `gal_statistics_regular_bins`).

The CFP is built from the histogram: in each bin, the value is the sum of all previous bins in the histogram. Thus, if you have already calculated the histogram before calling this function, you can pass it onto this function as the data structure in `bins->next` (see `List of gal_data_t`). If `bin->next!=NULL`, then it is assumed to be the histogram. If it is `NULL`, then the histogram will be calculated internally and freed after the job is finished.

When a histogram is given and it is normalized, the CFP will also be normalized (even if the normalized flag is not set here): note that a normalized CFP's maximum value is 1.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_concentration (gal_data_t *input, double width, int inplace)`

Return the concentration around the median for the input distribution. For more on the algorithm and `width`, see the description of `--concentration` in Section 7.1.5.2 [Single value measurements], page 537.

If `inplace!=0`, then this function will use the actual allocated space of the input data and will not internally allocate a new dataset (which can have memory and CPU benefits); but will alter (sort and remove blank elements from) your input dataset.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_clip_sigma (gal_data_t *input, float multip, float param, float extrastats, int inplace, int quiet)`

Apply σ-clipping on a given dataset and return a dataset that contains the results. For a description of σ-clipping see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200. `multip` is the multiple of the standard deviation (or σ, that is used to define outliers in each round of clipping).

The role of `param` is determined based on its value. If `param` is larger than `1` (one), it must be an integer and will be interpreted as the number clips to do. If it is less than `1` (one), it is interpreted as the tolerance level to stop the iteration.

The returned dataset (let's call it `out`) contains a 6-element array with type `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32`. Through the `GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_*` macros below, you can access any particular measurement.

```
out=gal_statistics_clip_sigma(input, ....);
float *array=out->array;

array[ GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_NUMBER_USED  ]
array[ GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MEAN         ]
array[ GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_STD          ]
array[ GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MEDIAN       ]
array[ GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MAD          ]
array[ GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_NUMBER_CLIPS ]
```

However, note that all are not measured by default! Since the mean and MAD are not necessary during sigma-clipping, if you want them, you have to set the following two bit flags in the `extrastats` argument as below.

```
int extrastats=0;       /* To initialize all bits */

/* If you want the sigma-clipped MAD. */
extrastats |= GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_MAD;

/* If you want the sigma-clipped mean. */
extrastats |= GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_MEAN;
```

If the σ-clipping does not converge or all input elements are blank, then this function will return NaN values for all the elements above.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_clip_mad (gal_data_t *input, float multip, float param, uint8_t extrastats, int inplace, int quiet)`

Similar to `gal_statistics_clip_sigma`, but will do median absolute deviation (MAD) based clipping, see Section 2.10.3 [MAD clipping], page 206.

The only difference is that for this function the MAD is automatically calculated during clipping. It is the mean and standard deviation that will not be calculated unless requested with the `GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_MEAN` and `GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_STD` bit flats respectively.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_outlier_bydistance (int pos1_neg0, gal_data_t *input, size_t window_size, float sigma, float sigclip_multip, float sigclip_param, int inplace, int quiet)`

Find the first positive outlier (if `pos1_neg0!=0`) in the `input` distribution. When `pos1_neg0==0`, the same algorithm goes to the start of the dataset. The returned dataset contains a single element: the first positive outlier. It is one of the dataset's elements, in the same type as the input. If the process fails for any reason (for example, no outlier was found), a `NULL` pointer will be returned.

All (possibly existing) blank elements are first removed from the input dataset, then it is sorted. A sliding window of `window_size` elements is parsed over the dataset. Starting from the `window_size`-th element of the dataset, in the direction of increasing values. This window is used as a reference. The first element where the distance to the previous (sorted) element is `sigma` units away from the distribution of distances in its window is considered an outlier and returned by this function.

Formally, if we assume there are N non-blank elements. They are first sorted. Searching for the outlier starts on element W. Let's take v_i to be the i-th element of the sorted input (with no blank values) and m and σ as the σ-clipped median and standard deviation from the distances of the previous W elements (not including v_i). If the value given to `sigma` is displayed with s, the i-th element is considered as an outlier when the condition below is true.

$$\frac{(v_i - v_{i-1}) - m}{\sigma} > s$$

The `sigclip_multip` and `sigclip_param` arguments specify the properties of the σ-clipping (see Section 2.10.2 [Sigma clipping], page 200, for more). You see that by this definition, the outlier cannot be any of the lower half elements. The advantage of this algorithm compared to σ-clippign is that it only looks backwards (in the sorted array) and parses it in one direction.

If `inplace!=0`, the removing of blank elements and sorting will be done within the input dataset's allocated space. Otherwise, this function will internally allocate (and later free) the necessary space to keep the intermediate space that this process requires.

If `quiet!=0`, this function will report the parameters every time it moves the window as a separate line with several columns. The first column is the value, the second (in square brackets) is the sorted index, the third is the distance of this element from the previous one. The Fourth and fifth (in parenthesis) are the median and standard deviation of the σ-clipped distribution within the window and the last column is the difference between the third and fourth, divided by the fifth.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_statistics_outlier_flat_cfp (gal_data_t *input, size_t numprev, float sigclip_multip, float sigclip_param, float thresh, size_t numcontig, int inplace, int quiet, size_t *index)`

Return the first element in the given dataset where the cumulative frequency plot first becomes significantly flat for a sufficient number of elements. The returned dataset only has one element (with the same type as the input). If `index!=NULL`, the index (counting from zero, after sorting the dataset and removing any blanks) is written in the space that `index` points to. If no sufficiently flat portion is found, the returned pointer will be `NULL`.

The flatness on the cumulative frequency plot is defined like this (see Section 7.1.1 [Histogram and Cumulative Frequency Plot], page 517): on the sorted dataset, for every point (a_i), we calculate $d_i = a_{i+2} - a_{i-2}$. This done on the first N elements (value of `numprev`). After element a_{N+2}, we start estimating the flatness as follows:

for every element we use the N, d_i measurements before it as the reference. Let's call this set D_i for element i. The σ-clipped median (m) and standard deviation (s) of D_i are then calculated. The σ-clipping can be configured with the two `sigclip_param` and `sigclip_multip` arguments.

Taking t as the significance threshold (value to `thresh`), a point is considered flat when $a_i > m + t\sigma$. But a single point satisfying this condition will probably just be due to noise. To make a more robust estimate, this significance/condition has to hold for `numcontig` contiguous elements after a_i. When this is satisfied, a_i is returned as the point where the distribution's cumulative frequency plot becomes flat.

To get a good estimate of m and s, it is thus recommended to set `numprev` as large as possible. However, be careful not to set it too high: the checks in the paragraph above are not done on the first `numprev` elements and this function assumes the flatness occurs after them. Also, be sure that the value to `numcontig` is much less than `numprev`, otherwise σ-clipping may not be able to remove the immediate outliers in D_i near the boundary of the flat region.

When `quiet==0`, the basic measurements done on each element are printed on the command-line (good for finding the best parameters). When `inplace!=0`, the sorting and removal of blank elements is done on the input dataset, so the input may be altered after this function.

12.3.23 Fitting functions (`fit.h`)

After doing a measurement, it is usually necessary to parameterize the relation that has been found. The functions in this section are wrappers over the GNU Scientific Library (GSL) Linear Least-Squares Fitting (`https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html`), to make them easily accessible using Gnuastro's Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. The respective GSL function is mentioned under each function.

`GAL_FIT_INVALID` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_LINEAR` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_LINEAR_WEIGHTED` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_LINEAR_NO_CONSTANT` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_LINEAR_NO_CONSTANT_WEIGHTED` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_POLYNOMIAL` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_POLYNOMIAL_WEIGHTED` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_POLYNOMIAL_NUMBER` [Global integer]

Identifiers for the various types of fitting functions. These can be used by the callers of these functions to select between various fitting types. They can easily be converted to, and from, fixed human-readable strings using the `gal_fit_name_*` functions below. The last one `GAL_FIT_ROBUST_NUMBER` is the total number of available fitting methods (can be used to add more macros in the calling program and to avoid overlaps with existing codes).

`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_INVALID` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_DEFAULT` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_BISQUARE` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_CAUCHY` [Global integer]

`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_FAIR` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_HUBER` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_OLS` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_WELSCH` [Global integer]
`GAL_FIT_ROBUST_NUMBER` [Global integer]

Identifiers for the various types of robust polynomial fitting functions. For a description of each, see `https://www.gnu.org/s/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#c.gsl_multifit_robust_alloc`. The last one `GAL_FIT_ROBUST_NUMBER` is the total number of available functions (can be used to add more macros in the calling program and to avoid overlaps with existing codes).

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_fit_name_to_id (char *name)`

Return the internal code of a standard human-readable name for the various fitting functions. If the name is not recognized, the returned value will be `GAL_FIT_INVALID`.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_fit_name_from_id (uint8_t fitid)`

Return a standard human-readable name for the fitting function identified with the `fitid` (read as "fitting ID"). If the fitting ID couldn't be recognized, a NULL pointer is returned.

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_fit_name_robust_to_id (char *name)`

Return the internal code of a standard human-readable name for the various robust fitting types. If the name is not recognized, the returned value will be `GAL_FIT_INVALID`.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_fit_name_robust_from_id (uint8_t robustid)`

Return a standard human-readable name for the input robust fitting type. If the fitting ID couldn't be recognized, a NULL pointer is returned.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fit_1d_linear (gal_data_t *xin, gal_data_t *yin, gal_data_t *ywht)`

Preform a 1D linear regression fit with a constant term[27] in the form of $Y = c_0 + c_1 X$. The input `xin` contains the independent variable values and `yin` contains the measured variable values for each independent variable. When `ywht!=NULL`, it is assumed to contain the "weight" of each Y measurement (if you don't have weights on your measured values, simply set this to `NULL`). The weight of each measurement is the inverse of its variance. For a Gaussian error distribution with standard deviation σ, the weight is therefore $1/\sigma^2$.

If any of the values in any of the inputs is blank (NaN in floating point), the final fitted parameters will all be NaN. To remove rows with a NaN/blank, you can use `gal_blank_remove_rows` (which will remove all rows with a blank values in any of the columns with a single call).

[27] `https://www.gnu.org/s/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#linear-regression-with-a-constant-term`

The output is a single dataset with a `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64` type with 6 elements:

1. c_0: the constant in $Y = c_0 + c_1 X$.
2. c_1: the multiple in $Y = c_0 + c_1 X$.
3. First element of variance-covariance matrix.
4. Second and third (which are equal) elements of the variance-covariance matrix.
5. Fourth element of the variance-covariance matrix.
6. The reduced χ^2 of the fit.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fit_1d_linear_no_constant (gal_data_t *xin, gal_data_t *yin, gal_data_t *ywht)`

Preform a 1D linear regression fit *without* a constant term[28], formally: $Y = c_1 X$. The input `xin` contains the independent variable values and `yin` contains the measured variable values for each independent variable. When `ywht!=NULL`, it is assumed to contain the "weight" of each Y measurement (if you don't have weights on your measured values, simply set this to `NULL`). The weight of each measurement is the inverse of its variance. For a Gaussian error distribution with standard deviation σ, the weight is therefore $1/\sigma^2$.

If any of the values in any of the inputs is blank (NaN in floating point), the final fitted parameters will all be NaN. To remove rows with a NaN/blank, you can use `gal_blank_remove_rows` (which will remove all rows with a blank values in any of the columns with a single call).

The output is a single dataset with a `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64` type with 3 elements:

1. c_1: the multiple in $Y = c_0 + c_1 X$.
2. Variance of c_1.
3. The reduced χ^2 of the fit.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fit_1d_linear_estimate (gal_data_t *fit, gal_data_t *xin)`

Given a linear least squares fit output (`fit`), estimate the fit on an arbitrary number of independent variable (horizontal axis, or X, in an X-Y plot) within `xin`. `fit` is assumed to be the output of either `gal_fit_1d_linear` or `gal_fit_1d_linear_no_constant`. In case you haven't used those functions to obtain the constants and covariance matrix elements, see the description of those functions for the expected format of `fit`.

This function returns two columns (as a Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812): The top node of the list is the estimated values at the input X-axis positions, and the next node is the errors in the estimation. Naturally, both have the same number of elements as `xin`. Being a list, helps in easily printing the output columns to a table (see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816).

[28] `https://www.gnu.org/s/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#linear-regression-without-a-constant-term`

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fit_1d_polynomial (gal_data_t *xin, gal_data_t *yin, gal_data_t *ywht, size_t maxpower, double *redchisq)`

Preform a 1D polynomial fit, formally: $Y = c + 0 + c_1X + c_2X^2 + \cdots + c_nX^n$ (using GSL's multi-parameter regression[29]). The largest power of X is determined with the `maxpower` argument (which is n in the equation above). The reduced χ^2 of the fit is written in the space that `*redchisq` points to.

The input `xin` contains the independent variable values and the input `yin` contains the measured variable values for each independent variable. When `ywht!=NULL`, it is assumed to contain the "weight" of each Y measurement (if you don't have weights on your measured values, simply set this to `NULL`). The weight of each measurement is the inverse of its variance. For a Gaussian error distribution with standard deviation σ, the weight is therefore $1/\sigma^2$.

If any of the values in any of the inputs is blank (NaN in floating point), the final fitted parameters will all be NaN. To remove rows with a NaN/blank, you can use `gal_blank_remove_rows` (which will remove all rows with a blank values in any of the columns with a single call).

The output of this function is a list of two datasets, linked as a list (as a Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812). Both have a `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64` type, and are described below (in order).

1. A one dimensional and contains $n+1$ elements (for the $n+1$ constants that have been found $(c_0, c_1, c_2, \cdots, c_n)$.
2. A two dimensional variance-covariance matrix with $(n+1) \times (n+1)$ elements.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fit_1d_polynomial_robust (gal_data_t *xin, gal_data_t *yin, size_t maxpower, uint8_t robustid, double *redchisq)`

Preform a 1D robust polynomial fit, formally: $Y = c + 0 + c_1X + c_2X^2 + \cdots + c_nX^n$ (using GSL's robust linear regression[30]). See the description there for the details.

The inputs and outputs of this function are almost identical to `gal_fit_1d_polynomial`, with the difference that you need to specify the function to reject outliers through the `robustid` input argument. You can pass any of the `GAL_FIT_ROBUST_*` codes defined at the top of this section to this (the names are identical to the names in GSL).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_fit_1d_polynomial_estimate (gal_data_t *fit, gal_data_t *xin)`

Given a 1D polynomial fit output (`fit`), estimate the fit on an arbitrary number of independent variable (horizontal axis, or X, in an X-Y plot) within `xin`. `fit` is assumed to be the output of `gal_fit_1d_polynomial`. In case you haven't used this function to obtain the constants and covariance matrix, see the description of that function for the expected format of `fit`.

This function returns two columns (as a Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812): The top node of the list is the estimated values at the input X-axis

[29] https://www.gnu.org/s/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#multi-parameter-regression

[30] https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/doc/html/lls.html#robust-linear-regression

positions, and the next node is the errors in the estimation. Naturally, both have the same number of elements as `xin`. Being a list, helps in easily printing the output columns to a table (see Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816).

12.3.24 Binary datasets (`binary.h`)

Binary datasets only have two (usable) values: 0 (also known as background) or 1 (also known as foreground). They are created after some binary classification is applied to the dataset. The most common is thresholding: for example, in an image, pixels with a value above the threshold are given a value of 1 and those with a value less than the threshold are assigned a value of 0.

Since there is only two values, in the processing of binary images, you are usually concerned with the positioning of an element and its vicinity (neighbors). When a dataset has more than one dimension, multiple classes of immediate neighbors (that are touching the element) can be defined for each data-element. To separate these different classes of immediate neighbors, we define *connectivity*.

The classification is done by the distance from element center to the neighbor's center. The nearest immediate neighbors have a connectivity of 1, the second nearest class of neighbors have a connectivity of 2 and so on. In total, the largest possible connectivity for data with `ndim` dimensions is `ndim`. For example, in a 2D dataset, 4-connected neighbors (that share an edge and have a distance of 1 pixel) have a connectivity of 1. The other 4 neighbors that only share a vertice (with a distance of $\sqrt{2}$ pixels) have a connectivity of 2. Conventionally, the class of connectivity-2 neighbors also includes the connectivity 1 neighbors, so for example, we call them 8-connected neighbors in 2D datasets.

Ideally, one bit is sufficient for each element of a binary dataset. However, CPUs are not designed to work on individual bits, the smallest unit of memory addresses is a byte (containing 8 bits on modern CPUs). Therefore, in Gnuastro, the type used for binary dataset is `uint8_t` (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279). Although it does take 8-times more memory, this choice offers much better performance and the some extra (useful) features.

The advantage of using a full byte for each element of a binary dataset is that you can also have other values (that will be ignored in the processing). One such common "other" value in real datasets is a blank value (to mark regions that should not be processed because there is no data). The constant `GAL_BLANK_UINT8` value must be used in these cases (see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779). Another is some temporary value(s) that can be given to a processed pixel to avoid having another copy of the dataset as in `GAL_BINARY_TMP_VALUE` that is described below.

`GAL_BINARY_TMP_VALUE` [Macro]

The functions described below work on a `uint8_t` type dataset with values of 1 or 0 (no other pixel will be touched). However, in some cases, it is necessary to put temporary values in each element during the processing of the functions. This temporary value has a special meaning for the operation and will be operated on. So if your input datasets have values other than 0 and 1 that you do not want these functions to work on, be sure they are not equal to this macro's value. Note that this value is also different from `GAL_BLANK_UINT8`, so your input datasets may also contain blank elements.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_erode (gal_data_t *input, size_t num, int connectivity, int inplace)`

Do `num` erosions on the `connectivity`-connected neighbors of `input` (see above for the definition of connectivity).

If `inplace` is non-zero *and* the input's type is `GAL_TYPE_UINT8`, then the erosion will be done within the input dataset and the returned pointer will be `input`. Otherwise, `input` is copied (and converted if necessary) to `GAL_TYPE_UINT8` and erosion will be done on this new dataset which will also be returned. This function will only work on the elements with a value of 1 or 0. It will leave all the rest unchanged.

Erosion (inverse of dilation) is an operation in mathematical morphology where each foreground pixel that is touching a background pixel is flipped (changed to background). The `connectivity` value determines the definition of "touching". Erosion will thus decrease the area of the foreground regions by one layer of pixels.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_dilate (gal_data_t *input, size_t num, int connectivity, int inplace)`

Do `num` dilations on the `connectivity`-connected neighbors of `input` (see above for the definition of connectivity). For more on `inplace` and the output, see `gal_binary_erode`.

Dilation (inverse of erosion) is an operation in mathematical morphology where each background pixel that is touching a foreground pixel is flipped (changed to foreground). The `connectivity` value determines the definition of "touching". Dilation will thus increase the area of the foreground regions by one layer of pixels.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_open (gal_data_t *input, size_t num, int connectivity, int inplace)`

Do `num` openings on the `connectivity`-connected neighbors of `input` (see above for the definition of connectivity). For more on `inplace` and the output, see `gal_binary_erode`.

Opening is an operation in mathematical morphology which is defined as erosion followed by dilation (see above for the definitions of erosion and dilation). Opening will thus remove the outer structure of the foreground. In this implementation, `num` erosions are going to be applied on the dataset, then `num` dilations.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_number_neighbors (gal_data_t *input, int connectivity, int inplace)`

Return an image of the same size as the input, but where each non-zero and non-blank input pixel is replaced with the number of its non-zero and non-blank neighbors. The input dataset is assumed to be binary (having an unsigned, 8-bit dataset). The neighbors are defined through the `connectivity` argument (see above) and if `inplace!=0`, then the output will be written into the input.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_binary_connected_components (gal_data_t *binary, gal_data_t **out, int connectivity)`

Return the number of connected components in `binary` through the breadth first search algorithm (finding all pixels belonging to one component before going on to the next). Connection between two pixels is defined based on the value to `connectivity`. `out` is a dataset with the same size as `binary` with `GAL_TYPE_INT32` type. Every pixel in `out` will have the label of the connected component it belongs to. The labeling of connected components starts from 1, so a label of zero is given to the input's background pixels.

When `*out!=NULL` (its space is already allocated), it will be cleared (to zero) at the start of this function. Otherwise, when `*out==NULL`, the necessary dataset to keep the output will be allocated by this function.

`binary` must have a type of `GAL_TYPE_UINT8`, otherwise this function will abort with an error. Other than blank pixels (with a value of `GAL_BLANK_UINT8` defined in Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (`blank.h`)], page 779), all other non-zero pixels in `binary` will be considered as foreground (and will be labeled). Blank pixels in the input will also be blank in the output.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_connected_indexs(gal_data_t *binary, int connectivity)`

Build a `gal_data_t` linked list, where each node of the list contains an array with indices of the connected regions. Therefore the arrays of each node can have a different size. Note that the indices will only be calculated on the pixels with a value of 1 and internally, it will temporarily change the values to 2 (and return them back to 1 in the end).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_connected_adjacency_matrix (gal_data_t *adjacency, size_t *numconnected)`

Find the number of connected labels and new labels based on an adjacency matrix, which must be a square binary array (type `GAL_TYPE_UINT8`). The returned dataset is a list of new labels for each old label. In other words, this function will find the objects that are connected (possibly through a third object) and in the output array, the respective elements for all input labels is going to have the same value. The total number of connected labels is put into the space that `numconnected` points to.

An adjacency matrix defines connection between two labels. For example, let's assume we have 5 labels and we know that labels 1 and 5 are connected to label 3, but are not connected with each other. Also, labels 2 and 4 are not touching any other label. So in total we have 3 final labels: one combined object (merged from labels 1, 3, and 5) and the initial labels 2 and 4. The input adjacency matrix would look like this (note the extra row and column for a label 0 which is ignored):

```
  INPUT                          OUTPUT
  =====                          ======
in_lab  1  2  3  4  5   |
                        |      numconnected = 3
    0   0  0  0  0  0   |
```

```
in_lab 1 -->   0  0  0  1  0  0   |
in_lab 2 -->   0  0  0  0  0  0   |  Returned: new labels for the
in_lab 3 -->   0  1  0  0  0  1   |       5 initial objects
in_lab 4 -->   0  0  0  0  0  0   |   | 0 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 1 |
in_lab 5 -->   0  0  0  1  0  0   |
```

Although the adjacency matrix as used here is symmetric, currently this function assumes that it is filled on both sides of the diagonal.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_connected_adjacency_list (gal_list_sizet_t **listarr, size_t number, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap, size_t *numconnected)`

Find the number of connected labels and new labels based on an adjacency list. The output of this function is identical to that of `gal_binary_connected_adjacency_matrix`. But the major difference is that it uses a list of connected labels to each label instead of a square adjacency matrix. This is done because when the number of labels becomes very large (for example, on the scale of 100,000), the adjacency matrix can consume more than 10GB of RAM!

The input list has the following format: it is an array of pointers to `gal_list_sizet_t *` (or `gal_list_sizet_t **`). The array has `number` elements and each `listarr[i]` is a linked list of `gal_list_sizet_t *`. As a demonstration, the input of the same example in `gal_binary_connected_adjacency_matrix` would look like below and the output of this function will be identical to there.

```
listarr[0] = NULL
listarr[1] = 3
listarr[2] = NULL
listarr[3] = 1 -> 5
listarr[4] = NULL
listarr[5] = 3
```

From this example, it is already clear that this method will consume far less memory. But because it needs to parse lists (and not easily jump between array elements), it can be slower. But in scenarios where there are too many objects (that may exceed the whole system's RAM+SWAP), this option is a good alternative and the drop in processing speed is worth getting the job done.

Similar to `gal_binary_connected_adjacency_matrix`, this function will write the final number of connected labels in `numconnected`. But since it takes no `gal_data_t *` argument (where it can inherit the `minmapsize` and `quietmmap` parameters), it also needs these as input. For more on `minmapsize` and `quietmmap`, see Section 4.6 [Memory management], page 281.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_binary_holes_label (gal_data_t *input, int connectivity, size_t *numholes)`

Label all the holes in the foreground (non-zero elements in input) as independent regions. Holes are background regions (zero-valued in input) that are fully surrounded by the foreground, as defined by `connectivity`. The returned dataset has a 32-bit signed integer type with the size of the input. All holes in the input will have

labels/counters greater or equal to `1`. The rest of the background regions will still have a value of `0` and the initial foreground pixels will have a value of `-1`. The total number of holes will be written where `numholes` points to.

`void` [Function]
`gal_binary_holes_fill (gal_data_t *input, int connectivity, size_t maxsize)`

Fill all the holes (0 valued pixels surrounded by 1 valued pixels) of the binary `input` dataset. The connectivity of the holes can be set with `connectivity`. Holes larger than `maxsize` are not filled. This function currently only works on a 2D dataset.

12.3.25 Labeled datasets (`label.h`)

A labeled dataset is one where each element/pixel has an integer label (or counter). The label identifies the group/class that the element belongs to. This form of labeling allows the higher-level study of all pixels within a certain class.

For example, to detect objects/targets in an image/dataset, you can apply a threshold to separate the noise from the signal (to detect diffuse signal, a threshold is useless and more advanced methods are necessary, for example Section 7.2 [NoiseChisel], page 552). But the output of detection is a binary dataset (which is just a very low-level labeling of `0` for noise and `1` for signal).

The raw detection map is therefore hardly useful for any kind of analysis on objects/targets in the image. One solution is to use a connected-components algorithm (see `gal_binary_connected_components` in Section 12.3.24 [Binary datasets (`binary.h`)], page 908). It is a simple and useful way to separate/label connected patches in the foreground. This higher-level (but still elementary) labeling therefore allows you to count how many connected patches of signal there are in the dataset and is a major improvement compared to the raw detection.

However, when your objects/targets are touching, the simple connected components algorithm is not enough and a still higher-level labeling mechanism is necessary. This brings us to the necessity of the functions in this part of Gnuastro's library. The main inputs to the functions in this section are already labeled datasets (for example, with the connected components algorithm above).

Each of the labeled regions are independent of each other (the labels specify different classes of targets). Therefore, especially in large datasets, it is often useful to process each label on independent CPU threads in parallel rather than in series. Therefore the functions of this section actually use an array of pixel/element indices (belonging to each label/class) as the main identifier of a region. Using indices will also allow processing of overlapping labels (for example, in deblending problems). Just note that overlapping labels are not yet implemented, but planned. You can use `gal_label_indexs` to generate lists of indices belonging to separate classes from the labeled input.

`GAL_LABEL_INIT` [Macro]
`GAL_LABEL_RIVER` [Macro]
`GAL_LABEL_TMPCHECK` [Macro]

Special negative integer values used internally by some of the functions in this section. Recall that meaningful labels are considered to be positive integers (≥ 1). Zero is

conventionally kept for regions with no labels, therefore negative integers can be used for any extra classification in the labeled datasets.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_label_indexs (gal_data_t *labels, size_t numlabs, size_t minmapsize, int quietmmap)`

Return an array of `gal_data_t` containers, each containing the pixel indices of the respective label (see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784). `labels` contains the label of each element and has to have an `GAL_TYPE_INT32` type (see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771). Only positive (greater than zero) values in `labels` will be used/indexed, other elements will be ignored.

Meaningful labels start from `1` and not `0`, therefore the output array of `gal_data_t` will contain `numlabs+1` elements. The first (zero-th) element of the output (`indexs[0]` in the example below) will be initialized to a dataset with zero elements. This will allow easy (non-confusing) access to the indices of each (meaningful) label.

`numlabs` is the number of labels in the dataset. If it is given a value of zero, then the maximum value in the input (largest label) will be found and used. Therefore if it is given, but smaller than the actual number of labels, this function may/will crash (it will write in un-allocated space). `numlabs` is therefore useful in a highly optimized/checked environment.

For example, if the returned array is called `indexs`, then `indexs[10].size` contains the number of elements that have a label of `10` in `labels` and `indexs[10].array` is an array (after casting to `size_t *`) containing the indices of each one of those elements/pixels.

By *index* we mean the 1D position: the input number of dimensions is irrelevant (any dimensionality is supported). In other words, each element's index is the number of elements/pixels between it and the dataset's first element/pixel. Therefore it is always greater or equal to zero and stored in `size_t` type.

`size_t` [Function]
`gal_label_watershed (gal_data_t *values, gal_data_t *indexs, gal_data_t *label, size_t *topinds, int min0_max1)`

Use the watershed algorithm[31] to "over-segment" the pixels in the `indexs` dataset based on values in the `values` dataset. Internally, each local extrema (maximum or minimum, based on `min0_max1`) and its surrounding pixels will be given a unique label. For demonstration, see Figures 8 and 9 of Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`http://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`). If `topinds!=NULL`, it is assumed to point to an already allocated space to write the index of each clump's local extrema, otherwise, it is ignored.

The `values` dataset must have a 32-bit floating point type (`GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32`, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771) and will only be read by this function. `indexs` must contain the indices of the elements/pixels that will be over-segmented by this function and have a `GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T` type, see the description of

[31] The watershed algorithm was initially introduced by Vincent and Soille (`https://doi.org/10.1109/34.87344`). It starts from the minima and puts the pixels in, one by one, to grow them until the touch (create a watershed). For more, also see the Wikipedia article: `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Watershed_%28image_processing%29`.

gal_label_indexs, above. The final labels will be written in the respective positions of labels, which must have a GAL_TYPE_INT32 type and be the same size as values.

When indexs is already sorted, this function will ignore min0_max1. To judge if the dataset is sorted or not (by the values the indices correspond to in values, not the actual indices), this function will look into the bits of indexs->flag, for the respective bit flags, see Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (gal_data_t)], page 784. If indexs is not already sorted, this function will sort it according to the values of the respective pixel in values. The increasing/decreasing order will be determined by min0_max1. Note that if this function is called on multiple threads *and* values points to a different array on each thread, this function will not return a reasonable result. In this case, please sort indexs prior to calling this function (see gal_qsort_index_multi_d in Section 12.3.18 [Qsort functions (qsort.h)], page 884).

When indexs is decreasing (increasing), or min0_max1 is 1 (0), local minima (maxima), are considered rivers (watersheds) and given a label of GAL_LABEL_RIVER (see above).

Note that rivers/watersheds will also be formed on the edges of the labeled regions or when the labeled pixels touch a blank pixel. Therefore this function will need to check for the presence of blank values. To be most efficient, it is thus recommended to use gal_blank_present (with updateflag=1) prior to calling this function (see Section 12.3.5 [Library blank values (blank.h)], page 779. Once the flag has been set, no other function (including this one) that needs special behavior for blank pixels will have to parse the dataset to see if it has blank values any more.

If you are sure your dataset does not have blank values (by the design of your software), to avoid an extra parsing of the dataset and improve performance, you can set the two bits manually (see the description of flags in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (gal_data_t)], page 784):

```
input->flag |=  GAL_DATA_FLAG_BLANK_CH; /* Set bit to 1. */
input->flag &= ~GAL_DATA_FLAG_HASBLANK; /* Set bit to 0. */
```

[Function]

```
void
gal_label_clump_significance (gal_data_t *values, gal_data_t *std,
        gal_data_t *label, gal_data_t *indexs, struct
        gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl, size_t numclumps, size_t
        minarea, int variance, int keepsmall, gal_data_t *sig,
        gal_data_t *sigind)
```

This function is usually called after gal_label_watershed, and is used as a measure to identify which over-segmented "clumps" are real and which are noise.

A measurement is done on each clump (using the values and std datasets, see below). To help in multi-threaded environments, the operation is only done on pixels which are indexed in indexs. It is expected for indexs to be sorted by their values in values. If not sorted, the measurement may not be reliable. If sorted in a decreasing order, then clump building will start from their highest value and vice-versa. See the description of gal_label_watershed for more on indexs.

Each "clump" (identified by a positive integer) is assumed to be surrounded by at least one river/watershed pixel (with a non-positive label). This function will parse the pixels identified in indexs and make a measurement on each clump and over all

the river/watershed pixels. The number of clumps (`numclumps`) must be given as an input argument and any clump that is smaller than `minarea` is ignored (because of scatter). If `variance` is non-zero, then the `std` dataset is interpreted as variance, not standard deviation.

The `values` and `std` datasets must have a `float` (32-bit floating point) type. Also, `label` and `indexs` must respectively have `int32` and `size_t` types. `values` and `label` must have the same size, but `std` can have three possible sizes: 1) a single element (which will be used for the whole dataset, 2) the same size as `values` (so a different error can be assigned to every pixel), 3) a single value for each tile, based on the `tl` tessellation (see Section 12.3.15.2 [Tile grid], page 874). In the last case, a tile/value will be associated to each clump based on its flux-weighted (only positive values) center.

The main output is an internally allocated, 1-dimensional array with one value per label. The array information (length, type, etc.) will be written into the `sig` generic data container. Therefore `sig->array` must be `NULL` when this function is called. After this function, the details of the array (number of elements, type and size, etc) will be written in to the various components of `sig`, see the definition of `gal_data_t` in Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. Therefore `sig` must already be allocated before calling this function.

Optionally (when `sigind!=NULL`, similar to `sig`) the clump labels of each measurement in `sig` will be written in `sigind->array`. If `keepsmall` zero, small clumps (where no measurement is made) will not be included in the output table.

This function is initially intended for a multi-threaded environment. In such cases, you will be writing arrays of clump measures from different regions in parallel into an array of `gal_data_t`s. You can simply allocate (and initialize), such an array with the `gal_data_array_calloc` function in Section 12.3.6.3 [Arrays of datasets], page 789. For example, if the `gal_data_t` array is called `array`, you can pass `&array[i]` as `sig`.

Along with some other functions in `label.h`, this function was initially written for Section 7.3 [Segment], page 571. The description of the parameter used to measure a clump's significance is fully given in Akhlaghi 2019 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1909.11230`).

`void` [Function]
`gal_label_grow_indexs (gal_data_t *labels, gal_data_t *indexs, int withrivers, int connectivity)`

Grow the (positive) labels of `labels` over the pixels in `indexs` (see description of `gal_label_indexs`). The pixels (position in `indexs`, values in `labels`) that must be "grown" must have a value of `GAL_LABEL_INIT` in `labels` before calling this function. For a demonstration see Columns 2 and 3 of Figure 10 in Akhlaghi and Ichikawa 2015 (`http://arxiv.org/abs/1505.01664`).

In many aspects, this function is very similar to over-segmentation (watershed algorithm, `gal_label_watershed`). The big difference is that in over-segmentation local maximums (that are not touching any already labeled pixel) get a separate label. However, here the final number of labels will not change. All pixels that are not directly touching a labeled pixel just get pushed back to the start of the loop, and

the loop iterates until its size does not change any more. This is because in a generic scenario some of the indexed pixels might not be reachable through other indexed pixels.

The next major difference with over-segmentation is that when there is only one label in growth region(s), it is not mandatory for `indexs` to be sorted by values. If there are multiple labeled regions in growth region(s), then values are important and you can use `qsort` with `gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_d` to sort the indices by values in a separate array (see Section 12.3.18 [Qsort functions (`qsort.h`)], page 884).

This function looks for positive-valued neighbors of each pixel in `indexs` and will label a pixel if it touches one. Therefore, it is very important that only pixels/labels that are intended for growth have positive values in `labels` before calling this function. Any non-positive (zero or negative) value will be ignored as a label by this function. Thus, it is recommended that while filling in the `indexs` array values, you initialize all the pixels that are in `indexs` with `GAL_LABEL_INIT`, and set non-labeled pixels that you do not want to grow to `0`.

This function will write into both the input datasets. After this function, some of the non-positive `labels` pixels will have a new positivelabel and the number of useful elements in `indexs` will have decreased. The index of those pixels that could not be labeled will remain inside `indexs`. If `withrivers` is non-zero, then pixels that are immediately touching more than one positive value will be given a `GAL_LABEL_RIVER` label.

Note that the `indexs->array` is not re-allocated to its new size at the end[32]. But since `indexs->dsize[0]` and `indexs->size` have new values after this function is returned, the extra elements just will not be used until they are ultimately freed by `gal_data_free`.

Connectivity is a value between `1` (fewest number of neighbors) and the number of dimensions in the input (most number of neighbors). For example, in a 2D dataset, a connectivity of `1` and `2` corresponds to 4-connected and 8-connected neighbors.

12.3.26 Convolution functions (`convolve.h`)

Convolution is a very common operation during data analysis and is thoroughly described as part of Gnuastro's Section 6.3 [Convolve], page 479, program which is fully devoted to this job. Because of the complete introduction that was presented there, we will directly skip onto the currently available convolution functions in Gnuastro's library.

As of this version, only spatial domain convolution is available in Gnuastro's libraries. We have not had the time to liberate the frequency domain function convolution and deconvolution functions that are available in the Convolve program[33].

[32] Note that according to the GNU C Library, even a `realloc` to a smaller size can also cause a re-write of the whole array, which is not a cheap operation.

[33] Hence any help would be greatly appreciated.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_convolve_spatial (gal_data_t *tiles, gal_data_t *kernel, size_t numthreads, int edgecorrection, int convoverch, int conv_on_blank)`

Convolve the given `tiles` dataset (possibly a list of tiles, see Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812, and Section 12.3.15 [Tessellation library (`tile.h`)], page 867) with `kernel` on `numthreads` threads. When `edgecorrection` is non-zero, it will correct for the edge dimming effects as discussed in Section 6.3.1.2 [Edges in the spatial domain], page 481. When `conv_on_blank` is non-zero, this function will also attempt convolution over the blank pixels (and therefore give values to the blank pixels that are near non-blank pixels).

`tiles` can be a single/complete dataset, but in that case the speed will be very slow. Therefore, for larger images, it is recommended to give a list of tiles covering a dataset. To create a tessellation that fully covers an input image, you may use `gal_tile_full`, or `gal_tile_full_two_layers` to also define channels over your input dataset. These functions are discussed in Section 12.3.15.2 [Tile grid], page 874. You may then pass the list of tiles to this function. This is the recommended way to call this function because spatial domain convolution is slow and breaking the job into many small tiles and working on simultaneously on several threads can greatly speed up the processing.

If the tiles are defined within a channel (a larger tile), by default convolution will be done within the channel, so pixels on the edge of a channel will not be affected by their neighbors that are in another channel. See Section 4.8 [Tessellation], page 290, for the necessity of channels in astronomical data analysis. This behavior may be disabled when `convoverch` is non-zero. In this case, it will ignore channel borders (if they exist) and mix all pixels that cover the kernel within the dataset.

`void` [Function]
`gal_convolve_spatial_correct_ch_edge (gal_data_t *tiles, gal_data_t *kernel, size_t numthreads, int edgecorrection, int conv_on_blank, gal_data_t *tocorrect)`

Correct the edges of channels in an already convolved image when it was initially convolved with `gal_convolve_spatial` and `convoverch==0`. In that case, strong boundaries might exist on the channel edges. So if you later need to remove those boundaries at later steps of your processing, you can call this function. It will only do convolution on the tiles that are near the edge and were effected by the channel borders. Other pixels in the image will not be touched. Hence, it is much faster. When `conv_on_blank` is non-zero, this function will also attempt convolution over the blank pixels (and therefore give values to the blank pixels that are near non-blank pixels).

12.3.27 Pooling functions (`pool.h`)

Pooling is the process of reducing the complexity of the input image (its size and variation of pixel values). Its underlying concepts, and an analysis of its usefulness, is fully described in Section 6.2.4.9 [Pooling operators], page 434. The following functions are available pooling in Gnuastro. Just note that unlike the Arithmetic operators, the output of these functions should contain a correct WCS in their output.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_pool_max (gal_data_t *input, size_t psize, size_t numthreads)`
Return the max-pool of `input`, assuming a pool size of `psize` pixels. The number of threads to use can be set with `numthreads`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_pool_min (gal_data_t *input, size_t psize, size_t numthreads)`
Return the min-pool of `input`, assuming a pool size of `psize` pixels. The number of threads to use can be set with `numthreads`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_pool_sum (gal_data_t *input, size_t psize, size_t numthreads)`
Return the sum-pool of `input`, assuming a pool size of `psize` pixels. The number of threads to use can be set with `numthreads`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_pool_mean (gal_data_t *input, size_t psize, size_t numthreads)`
Return the mean-pool of `input`, assuming a pool size of `psize` pixels. The number of threads to use can be set with `numthreads`.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_pool_median (gal_data_t *input, size_t psize, size_t numthreads)`
Return the median-pool of `input`, assuming a pool size of `psize` pixels. The number of threads to use can be set with `numthreads`.

12.3.28 Interpolation (`interpolate.h`)

During data analysis, it happens that parts of the data cannot be given a value, but one is necessary for the higher-level analysis. For example, a very bright star saturated part of your image and you need to fill in the saturated pixels with some values. Another common usage case are masked sky-lines in 1D spectra that similarly need to be assigned a value for higher-level analysis. In other situations, you might want a value in an arbitrary point: between the elements/pixels where you have data. The functions described in this section are for such operations.

The parametric interpolations discussed below are wrappers around the interpolation functions of the GNU Scientific Library (or GSL, see Section 3.1.1.1 [GNU Scientific Library], page 213). To identify the different GSL interpolation types, Gnuastro's `gnuastro/interpolate.h` header file contains macros that are discussed below. The GSL wrappers provided here are not yet complete because we are too busy. If you need them, please consider helping us in adding them to Gnuastro's library. Your contributions would be very welcome and appreciated.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_METRIC_RADIAL` [Macro]
`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_METRIC_MANHATTAN` [Macro]
`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_METRIC_INVALID` [Macro]
The metric used to find distance for nearest neighbor interpolation. A radial metric uses the simple Euclidean function to find the distance between two pixels. A manhattan metric will always be an integer and is like steps (but is also much faster to calculate than radial metric because it does not need a square root calculation).

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MIN` [Macro]
`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MAX` [Macro]
`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MEAN` [Macro]
`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MEDIAN` [Macro]
`GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_INVALID` [Macro]

The various types of nearest-neighbor interpolation functions for `gal_interpolate_neighbors`. The names are descriptive for the operation they do, so we will not go into much more detail here. The median operator will be one of the most used, but operators like the maximum are good to fill the center of saturated stars.

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_interpolate_neighbors (gal_data_t *input, struct gal_tile_two_layer_params *tl, uint8_t metric, size_t numneighbors, size_t numthreads, int onlyblank, int aslinkedlist, int function)`

Interpolate the values in the input dataset using a calculated statistics from the distribution of their `numneighbors` closest neighbors. The desired statistics is determined from the `func` argument, which takes any of the `GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_` macros (see above). This function is non-parametric and thus agnostic to the input's number of dimension or shape of the distribution.

Distance can be defined on different metrics that are identified through `metric` (taking values determined by the `GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_METRIC_` macros described above). If `onlyblank` is non-zero, then only blank elements will be interpolated and pixels that already have a value will be left untouched. This function is multi-threaded and will run on `numthreads` threads (see `gal_threads_number` in Section 12.3.2 [Multithreaded programming (`threads.h`)], page 767).

`tl` is Gnuastro's tessellation structure used to define tiles over an image and is fully described in Section 12.3.15.2 [Tile grid], page 874. When `tl!=NULL`, then it is assumed that the `input->array` contains one value per tile and interpolation will respect certain tessellation properties, for example, to not interpolate over channel borders.

If several datasets have the same set of blank values, you do not need to call this function multiple times. When `aslinkedlist` is non-zero, then `input` will be seen as a Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812. In this case, the same neighbors will be used for all the datasets in the list. Of course, the values for each dataset will be different, so a different value will be written in each dataset, but the neighbor checking that is the most CPU intensive part will only be done once.

This is a non-parametric and robust function for interpolation. The interpolated values are also always within the range of the non-blank values and strong outliers do not get created. However, this type of interpolation must be used with care when there are gradients. This is because it is non-parametric and if there are not enough neighbors, step-like features can be created.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_INVALID` [Macro]

This is just a place-holder to manage errors.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_LINEAR` [Macro]

[From GSL:] Linear interpolation. This interpolation method does not require any additional memory.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_POLYNOMIAL` [Macro]
[From GSL:] Polynomial interpolation. This method should only be used for interpolating small numbers of points because polynomial interpolation introduces large oscillations, even for well-behaved datasets. The number of terms in the interpolating polynomial is equal to the number of points.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_CSPLINE` [Macro]
[From GSL:] Cubic spline with natural boundary conditions. The resulting curve is piece-wise cubic on each interval, with matching first and second derivatives at the supplied data-points. The second derivative is chosen to be zero at the first point and last point.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_CSPLINE_PERIODIC` [Macro]
[From GSL:] Cubic spline with periodic boundary conditions. The resulting curve is piece-wise cubic on each interval, with matching first and second derivatives at the supplied data-points. The derivatives at the first and last points are also matched. Note that the last point in the data must have the same y-value as the first point, otherwise the resulting periodic interpolation will have a discontinuity at the boundary.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_AKIMA` [Macro]
[From GSL:] Non-rounded Akima spline with natural boundary conditions. This method uses the non-rounded corner algorithm of Wodicka.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_AKIMA_PERIODIC` [Macro]
[From GSL:] Non-rounded Akima spline with periodic boundary conditions. This method uses the non-rounded corner algorithm of Wodicka.

`GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_STEFFEN` [Macro]
[From GSL:] Steffen's method[34] guarantees the monotonicity of the interpolating function between the given data points. Therefore, minima and maxima can only occur exactly at the data points, and there can never be spurious oscillations between data points. The interpolated function is piece-wise cubic in each interval. The resulting curve and its first derivative are guaranteed to be continuous, but the second derivative may be discontinuous.

`gsl_spline *` [Function]
`gal_interpolate_1d_make_gsl_spline (gal_data_t *X, gal_data_t *Y, int type_1d)`
Allocate and initialize a GNU Scientific Library (GSL) 1D `gsl_spline` structure using the non-blank elements of `Y`. `type_1d` identifies the interpolation scheme and must be one of the `GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_*` macros defined above.

If `X==NULL`, the X-axis is assumed to be integers starting from zero (the index of each element in `Y`). Otherwise, the values in `X` will be used to initialize the interpolation structure. Note that when given, `X` must *not* contain any blank elements and it must be sorted (in increasing order).

[34] `http://adsabs.harvard.edu/abs/1990A%26A...239..443S`

Each interpolation scheme needs a minimum number of elements to successfully operate. If the number of non-blank values in `Y` is less than this number, this function will return a `NULL` pointer.

To be as generic and modular as possible, GSL's tools are low-level. Therefore before doing the interpolation, many steps are necessary (like preparing your dataset, then allocating and initializing `gsl_spline`). The metadata available in Gnuastro's Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (gal_data_t)], page 784, make it easy to hide all those preparations within this function.

Once `gsl_spline` has been initialized by this function, the interpolation can be evaluated for any X value within the non-blank range of the input using `gsl_spline_eval` or `gsl_spline_eval_e`.

For example, in the small program below (`sample-interp.c`), we read the first two columns of the table in `table.txt` and feed them to this function to later estimate the values in the second column for three selected points. You can use Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, to compile and run this function, see Section 12.4 [Library demo programs], page 940, for more.

Contents of the `table.txt` file:

```
$ cat table.txt
0  0
1  2
3  6
4  8
6  12
8  16
9  18
```

Contents of the `sample-interp.c` file:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <gnuastro/table.h>
#include <gnuastro/interpolate.h>

int
main(void)
{
  size_t i;
  gal_data_t *X, *Y;
  gsl_spline *spline;
  gsl_interp_accel *acc;
  gal_list_str_t *cols=NULL;

  /* Change the values based on your input table. */
  double points[]={1.8, 2.5, 7};

  /* Read the first two columns from `tab.txt'.
     IMPORTANT: the list is first-in-first-out, so the output
```

```
   column order is the inverse of the input order. */
gal_list_str_add(&cols, "1", 0);
gal_list_str_add(&cols, "2", 0);
Y=gal_table_read("table.txt", NULL, NULL, cols,
                 GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_NAME, 0, 1, -1, 1, NULL);
X=Y->next;

/* Allocate the GSL interpolation accelerator and make the
   `gsl_spline' structure. */
acc=gsl_interp_accel_alloc();
spline=gal_interpolate_1d_make_gsl_spline(X, Y,
                                GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_STEFFEN);

/* Calculate the respective value for all the given points,
   if `spline' could be allocated. */
if(spline)
  for(i=0; i<(sizeof points)/(sizeof *points); ++i)
    printf("%f: %f\n", points[i],
           gsl_spline_eval(spline, points[i], acc));

/* Clean up and return. */
gal_data_free(X);
gal_data_free(Y);
gsl_spline_free(spline);
gsl_interp_accel_free(acc);
gal_list_str_free(cols, 0);
return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

Compile and run this program with Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, to see the interpolation results for the three points within the program.

```
$ astbuildprog sample-interp.c --quiet
1.800000: 3.600000
2.500000: 5.000000
7.000000: 14.000000
```

`void` [Function]
`gal_interpolate_1d_blank (gal_data_t *in, int type_1d)`

Fill the blank elements of `in` using the rest of the elements and the given interpolation. The interpolation scheme can be set through `type_1d`, which accepts any of the `GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_*` macros above. The interpolation is internally done in 64-bit floating point type (`double`). However the evaluated/interpolated values (originally blank) will be written (in `in`) with its original numeric datatype, using C's standard type conversion.

By definition, interpolation is only defined "between" valid points. Therefore, if any number of elements on the start or end of the 1D array are blank, those elements

will not be interpolated and will remain blank. To see if any blank (non-interpolated) elements remain, you can use `gal_blank_present` on `in` after this function is finished.

12.3.29 Warp library (`warp.h`)

Warping an image to a new pixel grid is commonly necessary as part of astronomical data reduction, for an introduction, see Section 6.4 [Warp], page 501. For details of how we resample the old pixel grid to the new pixel grid, see Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505. Gnuastro's Warp program uses the following functions for its default mode (when no linear warps are requested). Through the following functions, you can directly access those features in your own custom programs. The linear warping operations of the Warp program aren't yet brought into the library. If you need them please get in touch with us at `bug-gnuastro@gnu.org`. For usage examples of this library, please see Section 12.4.5 [Library demo - Warp to another image], page 951, or Section 12.4.6 [Library demo - Warp to new grid], page 954.

You are free to provide any valid WCS keywords to the functions defined in this library using the `gal_warp_wcsalign_t` data type. This might be used to align the input image to the standard WCS grid, potentially changing the pixel scale, removing any valid WCS non-linear distortion available, and projecting to any valid WCS projection type. Further details of the warp library functions and parameters are shown below:

`GAL_WARP_OUTPUT_NAME_WARPED` [Macro]
`GAL_WARP_OUTPUT_NAME_MAXFRAC` [Macro]

Names of the output datasets (in the `name` component of the output `gal_data_t`s). By default the output is only a single dataset, but when the `checkmaxfrac` component of the input is non-zero, it will contain two datasets.

`gal_warp_wcsalign_t` [Type (C `struct`)]

The main data container for inputs, output and internal variables to simplify the WCS-aligning functions. Due to the large number of input variables, this structure makes it easy to call the main functions. Similar to `gal_data_t`, the `gal_warp_wcsalign_t` is a structure `typedef`'d as a new type, see Section 12.3.6 [Data container (`data.h`)], page 783. Please note that this structure has elements that are *allocated* dynamically and must be freed after usage. `gal_warp_wcsalign_free` only frees the internal variables, so you are responsible for freeing your own inputs (`cdelt`, `input`, etc.) and the output. The internal variables are cached here to cut cpu-intensive computations. To prevent from using uninitialized variables, we recommend using the helper function `gal_warp_wcsalign_template` to get a clean structure before setting your own variables. The structure and each of its elements are defined below:

```
typedef struct
{
  /* Arguments given (and later freed) by the caller. If 'twcs' is
     given, then the "WCS To build" elements will be ignored. */
  gal_data_t       *input;
  size_t       numthreads;
  double      coveredfrac;
  size_t     edgesampling;
  gal_data_t  *widthinpix;
```

```
  uint8_t    checkmaxfrac;
  struct wcsprm     *twcs;       /* WCS Predefined. */
  gal_data_t       *ctype;       /* WCS To build.   */
  gal_data_t       *cdelt;       /* WCS To build.   */
  gal_data_t      *center;       /* WCS To build.   */

  /* Output (must be freed by caller) */
  gal_data_t      *output;

  /* Internal variables (allocated and freed internally)  */
  size_t               v0;
  size_t             nhor;
  size_t             ncrn;
  size_t             gcrn;
  int               isccw;
  gal_data_t    *vertices;
} gal_warp_wcsalign_t;
```

`gal_data_t *input`
: The input dataset. This dataset must contain both the image array of type `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64`, and `input->wcs` should not be `NULL` for the WCS-aligning operations to work, see Section 12.4.6 [Library demo - Warp to new grid], page 954.

`size_t numthreads`
: Number of threads to use during the WCS aligning operations. If the given value is `0`, the library will calculate the number of available threads at run-time. The `warp` library functions are *thread-safe* so you can freely enjoy the merits of parallel processing.

`double coveredfrac`
: Acceptable fraction of output pixel that is covered by input pixels. The value should be between 0 and 1 (inclusive). If the area of an output pixel is covered by less than this fraction, its value will be `NaN`. For more, see the description of `--coveredfrac` in Section 6.4.4 [Invoking Warp], page 506.

`size_t edgesampling`
: Set the number of extra vertices along each edge of the output pixel's polygon to account for potential curvature due to projection or distortion. A value of `0` is usually enough for this (so the pixel is only defined by a four vertice polygon. Greater values increase memory usage and program execution time. For more, please see the description of `--edgesampling` in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

`gal_data_t *widthinpix`
: Output image size (width and height) in number of pixels. If a `NULL` pointer is passed, the WCS-aligning operations will estimate the output image size internally such that it contains the full input. This dataset

should have a type of `GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T` and contain exactly two *odd* values. This ensures that the center of the central pixel lies at the requested central coordinate (note that an image with an even number of pixels doesn't have a "central" pixel!

`struct wcsprm *twcs`
: The target grid WCS which must follow the standard WCSLIB structure. You can read it from a file using `gal_wcs_read` or create an entirely new one with `gal_wcs_create` and later free it with `gal_wcs_free`, see Section 12.3.13 [World Coordinate System (`wcs.h`)], page 846. If this element is given, the `ctype`, `cdelt` and `center` elements (which are used to construct a WCS internally) are ignored.

  Please note that the `wcsprm` structure doesn't contain the image size. To set the final image size, you should use `widthinpix`.

`gal_data_t *ctype`
: The output's projection type. The dataset has to have the type `GAL_TYPE_STRING`, containing exactly two strings. Both strings will be directly passed to WCSLIB and should conform to the FITS standard's `CTYPEi` keywords, see the description of `--ctype` in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508. For example, `"RA---TAN"` and `"DEC--TAN"`, or `"RA---HPX"` and `"DEC--HPX"`.

`gal_data_t *cdelt`
: Output pixel scale (size of pixel in the WCS units: value to `CUNITi` keywords in FITS, usually degrees). The dataset should have a type of `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64` and contain exactly two values. Hint: to convert arcsec to degrees, just divide by 3600.

`gal_data_t *center`
: WCS coordinate of the center of the central pixel of the output. The units depend on the WCS, for example, if the `CUNITi` keywords are `deg`, it is in degrees. This dataset should have a type of `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64` and contain exactly two values.

`uint8_t checkmaxfrac`
: When this is non-zero, the output will be a two-element Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812. The second element shows the Moiré pattern (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Moir%C3%A9_pattern`) of the warp. For more, see Section 2.9 [Moiré pattern in coadding and its correction], page 191.

`gal_warp_wcsalign_t` [Function]
`gal_warp_wcsalign_template (void)`

A high-level helper function that returns a clean `gal_warp_wcsalign_t` struct with all values initialized This function returns a copy of a statically allocated structure. So you don't need to free the returned structure.

The Warp library decides on the program flow based on this struct. Uninitialized pointers can point to random space in RAM which can create segmentation faults, or even worse, produce unnoticed side-effects. It is therefore good practice to manually

set unused pointers to `NULL` and give blank values to numbers Since there are many variables and pointers in `gal_warp_wcsalign_t`, it is easy to forget *initializing* them. With that said, we recommend using this function to minimize human error.

`void` [Function]
`gal_warp_wcsalign (gal_warp_wcsalign_t *wa)`
A high-level function to align the input dataset's pixels to its WCS coordinates and write the result in `wa->output`. This function assumes that the input variables have already been set in the `wa` structure. The input variables are clearly shown in the definition of `gal_warp_wcsalign_t`. It will call the lower level functions below to do the job and will free the internal variables afterwards.

The following low-level functions are called from the high-level `gal_warp_wcsalign` function. They are provided here in scenarios where fine grain control over the thread workflow is necessary, see Section 12.3.2 [Multithreaded programming (`threads.h`)], page 767.

`void` [Function]
`gal_warp_wcsalign_init (gal_warp_wcsalign_t *wa)`
Low-level function to initialize all the elements inside the `wa` structure assuming that the input variables have been set. The input variables are clearly shown in the definition of `gal_warp_wcsalign_t`. This includes sanity checking the input arguments, as well as allocating the output image's empty pixels (that can be filled with `gal_warp_wcsalign_onpix`, possibly on threads).

`void` [Function]
`gal_warp_wcsalign_onpix (gal_warp_wcsalign_t *nl, size_t ind)`
Low-level function that fills pixel `ind` (counting from 0) in the already initialized output image.

`void *` [Function]
`gal_warp_wcsalign_onthread (void *inparam)`
Low-level worker function that can be passed to the high-level `gal_threads_spin_off` or the lower-level `pthread_create` with some modifications, see Section 12.3.2 [Multithreaded programming (`threads.h`)], page 767.

`void` [Function]
`gal_warp_wcsalign_free (gal_warp_wcsalign_t *wa)`
Low-level function to free the internal variables inside `wa` only. The caller must free the input pointers themselves, this function will not free them (they may be necessary in other parts of the caller's higher-level architecture).

`void` [Function]
`gal_warp_pixelarea (gal_warp_wcsalign_t *wa)`
Calculate each input pixel's area based on its WCS and save it to a copy of the input image with only one difference: the pixel values now show pixel area. For examples on its usage, see Section 5.1.1.3 [Pixel information images], page 315.

12.3.30 Color functions (`color.h`)

The available pre-defined colors in Gnuastro are shown and discussed in Section 5.2.3.3 [Vector graphics colors], page 322. This part of Gnuastro is currently in charge of mapping the color names to the color IDs and to return the red-green-blue fractions of each color. On a terminal that supports 24-bit (true color), you can see the full list of color names and a demo of each color with this command:

```
$ astconvertt --listcolors
```

For each color we have a separate macro that starts with `GAL_COLOR_`, and ends with the color name in all-caps.

`GAL_COLOR_INVALID` [Macro]
`GAL_COLOR_MEDIUMVIOLETRED` [Macro]
`GAL_COLOR_DEEPPINK` [Macro]
`GAL_COLOR_*` [Macro]
The integer identifiers for each of the named colors in Gnuastro. Except for the first one (`GAL_COLOR_INVALID`), we currently have 140 colors from the extended web colors (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_colors#Extended_colors`). The full list of colors and a demo can be visually inspected on the command-line with the `astconvertt --listcolors` command and is also shown in Section 5.2.3.3 [Vector graphics colors], page 322. The macros have the same names, just in full-caps.

The functions below can be used to interact with the pre-defined colors:

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_color_name_to_id (char *name)`
Given the name of a color, return the identifier. The name matching is not case-sensitive.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_color_id_to_name (uint8_t color)`
Given the ID of a color, return its name.

`void` [Function]
`gal_color_in_rgb (uint8_t color, float *f)`
Given the identifier of a color, write the color's red-green-blue fractions in the space that `f` points to. It is up to the caller to have the space for three 32-bit floating point numbers to be already allocated before calling this function.

12.3.31 Git wrappers (`git.h`)

Git is one of the most common tools for version control and it can often be useful during development, for example, see `COMMIT` keyword in Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293. At installation time, Gnuastro will also check for the existence of libgit2, and store the value in the `GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_LIBGIT2`, see Section 12.3.1 [Configuration information (`config.h`)], page 765, and Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215. `gnuastro/git.h` includes `gnuastro/config.h` internally, so you will not have to include both for this macro.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_git_describe ( )`

When libgit2 is present and the program is called within a directory that is version controlled, this function will return a string containing the commit description (similar to Gnuastro's unofficial version number, see Section 1.7 [Version numbering], page 11). If there are uncommitted changes in the running directory, it will add a '`-dirty`' prefix to the description. When there is no tagged point in the previous commit, this function will return a uniquely abbreviated commit object as fallback. This function is used for generating the value of the `COMMIT` keyword in Section 4.10 [Output FITS files], page 293. The output string is similar to the output of the following command:

```
$ git describe --dirty --always
```

Space for the output string is allocated within this function, so after using the value you have to `free` the output string. If libgit2 is not installed or the program calling this function is not within a version controlled directory, then the output will be the `NULL` pointer.

12.3.32 Python interface (`python.h`)

Python (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Python_(programming_language)`) is a high-level interpreted programming language that is used by some for data analysis. Python itself is written in C, which is the same language that Gnuastro is written in. Hence Gnuastro's library can be directly used in Python wrappers. The functions in this section provide some low-level features to simplify the creation of Python modules that may want to use Gnuastro's advanced and powerful features directly. To see why Gnuastro was written in C, please see Section 13.1 [Why C programming language?], page 958.

Python interface is not built by default: to have the features described in this section, Gnuastro's library needs to be built with the `--with-python` configuration option. For more, on this configuration option, see Section 3.3.1.1 [Gnuastro configure options], page 233. To see if the Gnuastro library that you are linking with has these features, you can check the value of `GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_PYTHON` macro, see Section 12.3.1 [Configuration information (`config.h`)], page 765.

The Gnuastro Python Package is built using CPython. This entails using Python wrappers around currently existing Gnuastro library functions to build Python Extension Modules (`https://docs.python.org/3/extending/extending.html#`). It also makes use of the NumPy C-API (`https://numpy.org/doc/stable/reference/c-api/index.html`) for dealing with data arrays. Writing an interface between these and Gnuastro can be simplified using the functions below. Since many of these functions depend on the Gnuastro Library itself, it is more convenient to package them with the Library to facilitate the work of Python package. These functions will be expanding as Gnuastro's own Python module (pyGnuastro) grows.

The Python interface of Gnuastro's library is built and installed by default if a Python 3.0.0 or greater with NumPy is found in `$PATH`. Users may disable this interface with the `--without-python` option to `./configure` when they installed Gnuastro, see Section 3.3.1.1 [Gnuastro configure options], page 233. If you have problems in a Python virtual env, see Section 3.1.2 [Optional dependencies], page 215.

Because Python is an optional dependency of Gnuastro, the following functions may not be available on some systems. To check if the installed Gnuastro library was compiled with the following functions, you can use the `GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_PYTHON` macro which is defined in `gnuastro/config.h`, see Section 12.3.1 [Configuration information (`config.h`)], page 765.

`int` [Function]
`gal_python_type_to_numpy (uint8_t type)`
Returns the NumPy datatype corresponding to a certain Gnuastro `type`, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771.

`uint8_t` [Function]
`gal_python_type_from_numpy (int type)`
Returns Gnuastro's numerical datatype that corresponds to the input NumPy `type`. For Gnuastro's recognized data types, see Section 12.3.3 [Library data types (`type.h`)], page 771.

12.3.33 Unit conversion library (`units.h`)

Datasets can contain values in various formats or units. The functions in this section are defined to facilitate the easy conversion between them and are declared in `units.h`. If there are certain conversions that are useful for your work, please get in touch.

`int` [Function]
`gal_units_extract_decimal (char *convert, const char *delimiter, double *args, size_t n)`
Parse the input `convert` string with a certain delimiter (for example, `01:23:45`, where the delimiter is `":"`) as multiple numbers (for example, 1,23,45) and write them as an array in the space that `args` is pointing to. The expected number of values in the string is specified by the `n` argument (3 in the example above).

If the function succeeds, it will return 1, otherwise it will return 0 and the values may not be fully written into `args`. If the number of values parsed in the string is different from `n`, this function will fail.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_ra_to_degree (char *convert)`
Convert the input Right Ascension (RA) string (in the format of hours, minutes and seconds either as `_h_m_s` or `_:_:_`) to degrees (a single floating point number).

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_dec_to_degree (char *convert)`
Convert the input Declination (Dec) string (in the format of degrees, arc-minutes and arc-seconds either as `_d_m_s` or `_:_:_`) to degrees (a single floating point number).

`char *` [Function]
`gal_units_degree_to_ra (double decimal, int usecolon)`
Convert the input Right Ascension (RA) degree (a single floating point number) to old/standard notation (in the format of hours, minutes and seconds of `_h_m_s`). If `usecolon!=0`, then the delimiters between the components will be colons: `_:_:_`.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_units_degree_to_dec (double decimal, int usecolon)`
Convert the input Declination (Dec) degree (a single floating point number) to old/standard notation (in the format of degrees, arc-minutes and arc-seconds of `_d_m_s`). If `usecolon!=0`, then the delimiters between the components will be colons: `_:_:_`.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_counts_to_mag (double counts, double zeropoint)`
Convert counts to magnitudes through the given zero point. For more on the equation, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_mag_to_counts (double mag, double zeropoint)`
Convert magnitudes to counts through the given zero point. For more on the equation, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_mag_to_luminosity (double mag, double mag_absolute_ref, double distance_modulus)`
Convert the observed magnitude of a source into its luminosity knowing the absolute magnitude of a reference object and the (corrected) distance modulus. The reference object is usually taken to be the Sun, see table 3 of Willmer 2018 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1804.07788`) for values in common filters. Regarding the distance modulus see the description of `--distancemodulus` in Section 9.1.3.2 [CosmicCalculator basic cosmology calculations], page 684. In the absence of SED-based estimages, you can use `gal_cosmology_to_absolute_mag` (which is the function behind `--absmagconv` described in that section).

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_luminosity_to_mag (double mag, double mag_absolute_ref, double distance_modulus)`
The inverse of `gal_units_mag_to_luminosity`.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_mag_to_sb (double mag, double area_arcsec2)`
Calculate the surface brightness of a given magnitude, over a certain area in units of arcsec^2. For more on the equation, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_sb_to_mag (double sb, double area_arcsec2)`
Calculate the magnitude of a given surface brightness, over a certain area in units of arcsec^2. For more on the equation, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_counts_to_sb (double counts, double zeropoint_ab, double area_arcsec2)`
Calculate the surface brightness of a given count level, over a certain area in units of arcsec^2, assuming a certain AB zero point. For more on the equation, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_sb_to_counts (double sb, double zeropoint_ab, double area_arcsec2)`
Calculate the counts corresponding to a given surface brightness, over a certain area in units of arcsec^2. For more on the equation, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_counts_to_jy (double counts, double zeropoint_ab)`
Convert counts to Janskys through an AB magnitude-based zero point. For more on the equation, see Section 7.4.2 [Brightness, Flux, Magnitude and Surface brightness], page 585.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_au_to_pc (double au)`
Convert the input value (assumed to be in Astronomical Units) to Parsecs. For the conversion equation, see the description of `au-to-pc` operator in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_zeropoint_change (double counts, double zeropoint_in, double zeropoint_out)`
Convert the zero point of `counts` (which is `zeropoint_in`) to `zeropoint_out`.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_counts_to_nanomaggy (double counts, double zeropoint_ab)`
Convert counts to Nanomaggy (with fixed zero point of 22.5) through an AB magnitude-based zero point. This is just a wrapper around `gal_units_zeropoint_change` with `zeropoint_out=22.5`.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_nanomaggy_to_counts (double counts, double zeropoint_ab)`
Convert Nanomaggy (with fixed zero point of 22.5) to counts through an AB magnitude-based zero point. This is just a wrapper around `gal_units_zeropoint_change` with `zeropoint_in=22.5`.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_pc_to_au (double pc)`
Convert the input value (assumed to be in Parsecs) to Astronomical Units (AUs). For the conversion equation, see the description of `au-to-pc` operator in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_ly_to_pc (double ly)`
Convert the input value (assumed to be in Light-years) to Parsecs. For the conversion equation, see the description of `ly-to-pc` operator in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_pc_to_ly (double pc)`
Convert the input value (assumed to be in Parsecs) to Light-years. For the conversion equation, see the description of `ly-to-pc` operator in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_ly_to_au (double ly)`
Convert the input value (assumed to be in Light-years) to Astronomical Units. For the conversion equation, see the description of `ly-to-pc` operator in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

`double` [Function]
`gal_units_au_to_ly (double au)`
Convert the input value (assumed to be in Astronomical Units) to Light-years. For the conversion equation, see the description of `ly-to-pc` operator in Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412.

12.3.34 Spectral lines library (`speclines.h`)

Gnuastro's library has the following macros and functions for dealing with spectral lines. All these functions are declared in `gnuastro/spectra.h`.

`GAL_SPECLINES_INVALID` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_VIII_770` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_VIII_780` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_epsilon` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_delta` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_gamma` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_977` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_990` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_991_51` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_991_58` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_beta` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_O_VI_1032` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_O_VI_1038` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_I_1067` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_alpha` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_N_V_1238` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_N_V_1243` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Si_II_1260` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_Si_II_1265` [Macro]
`GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_1302` [Macro]

GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_1335 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_1336 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_IV_1394 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_IV_1397 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_IV_1400 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_IV_1403 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_IV_1486 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_1548 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_1551 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_1640 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_1661 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_1666 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_1747 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_1749 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Al_III_1855 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Al_III_1863 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_III [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_1909 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_2143 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_2321 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_2324 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_2325 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XI_2649 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_2733 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_V_2783 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_II_2796 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_II_2803 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_2829 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_2836 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_2854 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_2868 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_V_2928 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_2945 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_3133 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_3188 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_3203 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_3312 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_V_3346 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_V_3426 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_3444 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_3466_50 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_3466_54 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_3488 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_3586 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_3663 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_19 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_18 [Macro]

GAL_SPECLINES_H_17 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_16 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_15 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_14 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_3726 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_3729 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_13 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_12 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_3759 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_11 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_10 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_9 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_3839 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_III_3869 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_3889 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_8 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_3891 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_3911 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_III_3967 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_epsilon [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_4026 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_4069 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_4071 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_4076 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_delta [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_4144 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4179 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_4181 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4233 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_4227 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4287 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4304 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_4317 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_gamma [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_4363 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_XIV [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_4415 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4417 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4452 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_4471 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4489 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4491 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4510 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4523 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4556 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4583 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4584 [Macro]

GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4630 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4634 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4641 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4642 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_4647 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_4650 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_5651 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_III_4658 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_4686 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_4711 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_4740 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_beta [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_4893 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_4903 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4924 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_4959 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_5007 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5018 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_III_5085 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5146 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_5159 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5169 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5176 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5198 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_5200 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5235 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_5236 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_III_5270 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5276 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_5276 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XIV [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_V [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5316_62 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5316_78 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5335 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5424 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Cl_III_5518 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Cl_III_5538 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5638 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5677 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_5698 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_5721 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_5755 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_5801 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_5812 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_5876 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_6046 [Macro]

GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_6087 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_6300 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_III_6312 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_II_6347 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_6364 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_6369 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_X [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_6516 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_6548 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_H_alpha [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_6583 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_6716 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_6731 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_7002 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_V [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_7065 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_III_7136 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_7155 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_7171 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_7172 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_7236 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_7237 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_7254 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_7263 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_7281 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_7320 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_7331 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ni_II_7378 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ni_II_7411 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_7453 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_7468 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_XII [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_III_7751 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_7816 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_I_7868 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ni_III [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XI_7892 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_8237 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_20 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_19 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_18 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_8446 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_17 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_II_8498 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_16 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_II_8542 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_15 [Macro]

GAL_SPECLINES_Cl_II [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_14 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_8617 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_II_8662 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_13 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_8680 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_8703 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_8712 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_12 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_11 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_8892 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_10 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_III_9069 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_9 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_III_9531 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_epsilon [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_I_9824 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_C_I_9850 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_VIII [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_10028 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_10031 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_delta [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_10287 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_10320 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_10336 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XIII [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_10830 [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_gamma [Macro]
GAL_SPECLINES_NUMBER [Macro]

Internal values/identifiers for recognized spectral lines as is clear from their names. They are based on the UV an optical table of galaxy emission lines of Drew Chojnowski[35].

Note the first and last macros, they can be used when parsing the lines automatically: both do not correspond to any line, but their integer values correspond to the two integers just before and after the first and last line identifier: `GAL_SPECLINES_INVALID` has a value of zero, and allows you to have a fixed integer which never corresponds to a line. `GAL_SPECLINES_INVALID_MAX` is the total number of pre-defined lines, plus one. So you can parse all the known lines with a `for` loop like this:

```
for(i=1;i<GAL_SPECLINES_INVALID_MAX;++i)
```

GAL_SPECLINES_ANGSTROM_* [Macro]

Wavelength (in Angstroms) of the named lines. The `*` can take any of the line names of the `GAL_SPECLINES_*` Macros above.

[35] `http://astronomy.nmsu.edu/drewski/tableofemissionlines.html`

`GAL_SPECLINES_NAME_*` [Macro]

Names (as literal stings without any space) that can be used to refer to the lines in your program and converted to and from line identifiers using the functions below. The `*` can take any of the line names of the `GAL_SPECLINES_*` Macros above.

`char *` [Function]
`gal_speclines_line_name (int linecode)`

Return the literal string of the given spectral line identifier Macro (for example `GAL_SPECLINES_HALPHA` or `GAL_SPECLINES_LYLIMIT`).

`int` [Function]
`gal_speclines_line_code (char *name)`

Return the spectral line identifier of the given standard name (for example `GAL_SPECLINES_NAME_HALPHA` or `GAL_SPECLINES_NAME_LYLIMIT`).

`double` [Function]
`gal_speclines_line_angstrom (int linecode)`

Return the wavelength (in Angstroms) of the given line.

`double` [Function]
`gal_speclines_line_redshift (double obsline, double restline)`

Return the redshift where the observed wavelength (`obsline`) was emitted from (if its rest frame wavelength was `restline`).

`double` [Function]
`gal_speclines_line_redshift_code (double obsline, int linecode)`

Return the redshift where the observed wavelength (`obsline`) was emitted from a pre-defined spectral line in the macros above. For example, you want the redshift where the H-alpha line falls at a wavelength of 8000 Angstroms, you can call this function like this:

```
gal_speclines_line_redshift_code(8000, GAL_SPECLINES_H_alpha);
```

12.3.35 Cosmology library (`cosmology.h`)

This library does the main cosmological calculations that are commonly necessary in extragalactic astronomical studies. The main variable in this context is the redshift (z). The cosmological input parameters in the functions below are `H0`, `o_lambda_0`, `o_matter_0`, `o_radiation_0` which respectively represent the current (at redshift 0) expansion rate (Hubble constant in units of km/sec/Mpc), cosmological constant (Λ), matter and radiation densities.

All these functions are declared in `gnuastro/cosmology.h`. For a more extended introduction/discussion of the cosmological parameters, please see Section 9.1 [CosmicCalculator], page 677.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_age (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`

Returns the age of the universe at redshift `z` in units of Giga years.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_proper_distance (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`
Returns the proper distance to an object at redshift `z` in units of Mega parsecs.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_comoving_volume (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`
Returns the comoving volume over 4pi stradian to `z` in units of Mega parsecs cube.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_critical_density (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`
Returns the critical density at redshift `z` in units of g/cm^3.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_angular_distance (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`
Return the angular diameter distance to an object at redshift `z` in units of Mega parsecs.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_luminosity_distance (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`
Return the luminosity diameter distance to an object at redshift `z` in units of Mega parsecs.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_distance_modulus (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`
Return the distance modulus at redshift `z` (with no units).

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_to_absolute_mag (double z, double H0, double o_lambda_0, double o_matter_0, double o_radiation_0)`
Return the conversion from apparent to absolute magnitude for an object at redshift `z`. This value has to be added to the apparent magnitude to give the absolute magnitude of an object at redshift `z`.

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_velocity_from_z (double z)`
Return the velocity (in km/s) corresponding to the given redshift (`z`).

`double` [Function]
`gal_cosmology_z_from_velocity (double v)`
Return the redshift corresponding to the given velocity (`v` in km/s).

12.3.36 SAO DS9 library (`ds9.h`)

This library operates on the output files of SAO DS9[36]. SAO DS9 is one of the most commonly used FITS image and cube viewers today with an easy to use graphic user interface (GUI), see Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989. But besides merely opening FITS data, it can also produce certain kinds of files that can be useful in common analysis. For example, on DS9's GUI, it is very easy to define a (possibly complex) polygon as a "region". You can then save that "region" into a file and using the functions below, feed the polygon into Gnuastro's programs (or your custom programs).

`GAL_DS9_COORD_MODE_IMG` [Macro]
`GAL_DS9_COORD_MODE_WCS` [Macro]
`GAL_DS9_COORD_MODE_INVALID` [Macro]

Macros to identify the coordinate mode of the DS9 file. Their names are sufficiently descriptive. The last one (`INVALID`) is for sanity checks (for example, to know if the mode is already selected).

`gal_data_t *` [Function]
`gal_ds9_reg_read_polygon (char *filename)`

Returns an allocated generic data container (`gal_data_t`, with an array of `GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64`) containing the vertices of a polygon within the SAO DS9 region file given by `*filename`. Since SAO DS9 region files are 2 dimensional, if there are N vertices in the SAO DS9 region file, the returned dataset will have $2 \times N$ elements (first two elements belonging to first vertice, etc.).

The mode to interpret the vertice coordinates is also read from the SAO DS9 region file and written into the `status` attribute of the output `gal_data_t`. The coordinate mode can be one of the `GAL_DS9_COORD_MODE_*` macros, mentioned above.

It is assumed that the file begins with `# Region file format: DS9` and it has two more lines (at least): a line containing the mode of the coordinates (the line should only contain either `fk5` or `image`), a line with the polygon vertices following this format: `polygon(V1X,V1Y,V2X,V2Y,...)` where `V1X` and `V1Y` are the horizontal and vertical coordinates of the first vertice, and so on.

For example, here is a minimal acceptable SAO DS9 region file:

```
# Region file format: DS9
fk5
polygon(53.187414,-27.779152,53.159507,-27.759633,...)
```

12.4 Library demo programs

In this final section of Chapter 12 [Library], page 752, we give some example Gnuastro programs to demonstrate various features in the library. All these programs have been tested and once Gnuastro is installed you can compile and run them with Gnuastro's Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, program that will take care of linking issues. If you do not have any FITS file to experiment on, you can use those that are generated by Gnuastro after `make check` in the `tests/` directory, see Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1.

[36] `https://sites.google.com/cfa.harvard.edu/saoimageds9`

12.4.1 Library demo - reading a FITS image

The following simple program demonstrates how to read a FITS image into memory and use the `void *array` pointer in of Section 12.3.6.1 [Generic data container (`gal_data_t`)], page 784. For easy linking/compilation of this program along with a first run see Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, (in short: Compile, link and run 'myprogram.c' with this command: '`astbuildprog myprogram.c`). Before running, also change the `filename` and `hdu` variable values to specify an existing FITS file and/or extension/HDU.

This is just intended to demonstrate how to use the `array` pointer of `gal_data_t`. Hence it does not do important sanity checks, for example in real datasets you may also have blank pixels. In such cases, this program will return a NaN value (see Section 6.1.3 [Blank pixels], page 392). So for general statistical information of a dataset, it is much better to use Gnuastro's Section 7.1 [Statistics], page 517, program which can deal with blank pixels and many other issues in a generic dataset.

To encourage good coding practices, this script contains a copyright notice with a place holder for your name and your email (as you customize it for your own purpose). Always keep a one-line description and copyright notice like this in all your scripts, such "metadata" is very important to accompany every source file you write. Of course, when you write the source file from scratch and just learn how to use a single function from this manual, only your name/year should appear. The existing name of the original author of this example program is only for cases where you copy-paste this whole file.

```
/* Reading a FITS image into memory.
 *
 * The following simple program demonstrates how to read a FITS image
 * into memory  and use the 'void *array' pointer. This is just intended
 * to demonstrate how to use the array pointer of 'gal_data_t'.
 *
 * Copyright (C) 2025      Your Name <your@email.address>
 * Copyright (C) 2020-2025 Mohammad Akhlaghi <mohammad@akhlaghi.org>
 *
 * This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
 * it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
 * the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
 * (at your option) any later version.
 *
 * This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
 * WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
 * MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
 * General Public License for more details.
 *
 * You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
 * along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
```

```
#include <gnuastro/fits.h> /* includes gnuastro's data.h and type.h */
#include <gnuastro/statistics.h>

int
main(void)
{
  size_t i;
  float *farray;
  double sum=0.0f;
  gal_data_t *image;
  char *filename="img.fits", *hdu="1";


  /* Read `img.fits' (HDU: 1) as a float32 array. */
  image=gal_fits_img_read_to_type(filename, hdu, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32,
                                  -1, 1, NULL);


  /* Use the allocated space as a single precision floating
   * point array (recall that `image->array' has `void *'
   * type, so it is not directly usable). */
  farray=image->array;


  /* Calculate the sum of all the values. */
  for(i=0; i<image->size; ++i)
    sum += farray[i];


  /* Report the sum. */
  printf("Sum of values in %s (hdu %s) is: %f\n",
         filename, hdu, sum);


  /* Clean up and return. */
  gal_data_free(image);
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

12.4.2 Library demo - inspecting neighbors

The following simple program shows how you can inspect the neighbors of a pixel using the `GAL_DIMENSION_NEIGHBOR_OP` function-like macro that was introduced in Section 12.3.7 [Dimensions (`dimension.h`)], page 792. For easy linking/compilation of this program along with a first run see Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760. Before running, also change the file name and HDU (first and second arguments to `gal_fits_img_read_to_type`) to specify an existing FITS file and/or extension/HDU.

To encourage good coding practices, this script contains a copyright notice with a place holder for your name and your email (as you customize it for your own purpose). Always keep a one-line description and copyright notice like this in all your scripts, such "metadata" is very important to accompany every source file you write. Of course, when you write the source file from scratch and just learn how to use a single function from this manual, only your name/year should appear. The existing name of the original author of this example program is only for cases where you copy-paste this whole file.

```
/* Reading a FITS image into memory.
 *
 * The following simple program shows how you can inspect the neighbors
 * of a pixel using the GAL_DIMENSION_NEIGHBOR_OP function-like macro.
 *
 * Copyright (C) 2025      Your Name <your@email.address>
 * Copyright (C) 2020-2025 Mohammad Akhlaghi <mohammad@akhlaghi.org>
 *
 * This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
 * it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
 * the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
 * (at your option) any later version.
 *
 * This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
 * WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
 * MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
 * General Public License for more details.
 *
 * You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
 * along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <error.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

#include <gnuastro/fits.h>
#include <gnuastro/dimension.h>

int
main(void)
{
  double sum;
  float *array;
  size_t i, num, *dinc;
  gal_data_t *input=gal_fits_img_read_to_type("input.fits", "1",
                                              GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32, -1, 1,
                                              NULL);
```

```
  /* To avoid the `void *' pointer and have `dinc'. */
  array=input->array;
  dinc=gal_dimension_increment(input->ndim, input->dsize);

  /* Go over all the pixels. */
  for(i=0;i<input->size;++i)
    {
      num=0;
      sum=0.0f;
      GAL_DIMENSION_NEIGHBOR_OP( i, input->ndim, input->dsize,
                                 input->ndim, dinc,
                                 {++num; sum+=array[nind];} );
      printf("%zu: num: %zu, sum: %f\n", i, num, sum);
    }

  /* Clean up and return. */
  gal_data_free(input);
  free(dinc);
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

12.4.3 Library demo - multi-threaded operation

The following simple program shows how to use Gnuastro to simplify spinning off threads and distributing different jobs between the threads. The relevant thread-related functions are defined in Section 12.3.2.2 [Gnuastro's thread related functions], page 768. For easy linking/compilation of this program, along with a first run, see Gnuastro's Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760. Before running, also change the `filename` and `hdu` variable values to specify an existing FITS file and/or extension/HDU.

This is a very simple program to open a FITS image, distribute its pixels between different threads and print the value of each pixel and the thread it was assigned to. The actual operation is very simple (and would not usually be done with threads in a real-life program). It is intentionally chosen to put more focus on the important steps in spinning off threads and how the worker function (which is called by each thread) can identify the job-IDs it should work on.

For example, instead of an array of pixels, you can define an array of tiles or any other context-specific structures as separate targets. The important thing is that each action should have its own unique ID (counting from zero, as is done in an array in C). You can then follow the process below and use each thread to work on all the targets that are assigned to it. Recall that spinning off threads is itself an expensive process and we do not want to spin-off one thread for each target (see the description of `gal_threads_dist_in_threads` in Section 12.3.2.2 [Gnuastro's thread related functions], page 768.

There are many (more complicated, real-world) examples of using `gal_threads_spin_off` in Gnuastro's actual source code, you can see them by searching for the `gal_threads_spin_off` function from the top source (after unpacking the tarball) directory (for example, with this command):

```
$ grep -r gal_threads_spin_off ./
```

To encourage good coding practices, this script contains a copyright notice with a place holder for your name and your email (as you customize it for your own purpose). Always keep a one-line description and copyright notice like this in all your scripts, such "metadata" is very important to accompany every source file you write. Of course, when you write the source file from scratch and just learn how to use a single function from this manual, only your name/year should appear. The existing name of the original author of this example program is only for cases where you copy-paste this whole file.

The code of this demonstration program is shown below. This program was also built and run when you ran `make check` during the building of Gnuastro (`tests/lib/multithread.c`), so it is already tested for your system and you can safely use it as a guide.

```
/* Demo of Gnuastro's high-level multi-threaded interface.
 *
 * This is a very simple program to open a FITS image, distribute its
 * pixels between different threads and print the value of each pixel
 * and the thread it was assigned to.
 *
 * Copyright (C) 2025      Your Name <your@email.address>
 * Copyright (C) 2020-2025 Mohammad Akhlaghi <mohammad@akhlaghi.org>
 *
 * This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
 * it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
 * the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
 * (at your option) any later version.
 *
 * This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
 * WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
 * MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
 * General Public License for more details.
 *
 * You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
 * along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

#include <gnuastro/fits.h>
#include <gnuastro/threads.h>



/* This structure can keep all information you want to pass onto the
 * worker function on each thread. */
struct params
{
```

```
  gal_data_t *image;            /* Dataset to print values of. */
};



/* This is the main worker function which will be called by the
 * different threads. `gal_threads_params' is defined in
 * `gnuastro/threads.h' and contains the pointer to the parameter we
 * want. Note that the input argument and returned value of this
 * function always must have `void *' type. */
void *
worker_on_thread(void *in_prm)
{
  /* Low-level definitions to be done first. */
  struct gal_threads_params *tprm=(struct gal_threads_params *)in_prm;
  struct params *p=(struct params *)tprm->params;


  /* Subsequent definitions. */
  float *array=p->image->array;
  size_t i, index, *dsize=p->image->dsize;


  /* Go over all the actions (pixels in this case) that were assigned
   * to this thread. */
  for(i=0; tprm->indexs[i] != GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T; ++i)
    {
      /* For easy reading. */
      index = tprm->indexs[i];


      /* Print the information. */
      printf("(%zu, %zu) on thread %zu: %g\n", index%dsize[1]+1,
             index/dsize[1]+1, tprm->id, array[index]);
    }


  /* Wait for all the other threads to finish, then return. */
  if(tprm->b) pthread_barrier_wait(tprm->b);
  return NULL;
}




/* High-level function (called by the operating system). */
int
```

```
main(void)
{
  struct params p;
  char *filename="input.fits", *hdu="1";
  size_t numthreads=gal_threads_number();

  /* We are using * `-1' for `minmapsize' to ensure that the image is
   * read into * memory and `1' for `quietmmap' (which can also be
   * zero), see the "Memory management" section in the book. */
  int quietmmap=1;
  size_t minmapsize=-1;


  /* Read the image into memory as a float32 data type. */
  p.image=gal_fits_img_read_to_type(filename, hdu, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32,
                                    minmapsize, quietmmap, NULL);


  /* Print some basic information before the actual contents: */
  printf("Pixel values of %s (HDU: %s) on %zu threads.\n", filename,
         hdu, numthreads);
  printf("Used to check the compiled library's capability in opening "
         "a FITS file, and also spinning off threads.\n");


  /* A small sanity check: this is only intended for 2D arrays (to
   * print the coordinates of each pixel). */
  if(p.image->ndim!=2)
    {
      fprintf(stderr, "only 2D images are supported.");
      exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }


  /* Spin-off the threads and do the processing on each thread. */
  gal_threads_spin_off(worker_on_thread, &p, p.image->size, numthreads,
                       minmapsize, quietmmap);


  /* Clean up and return. */
  gal_data_free(p.image);
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

12.4.4 Library demo - reading and writing table columns

Tables are some of the most common inputs to, and outputs of programs. This section contains a small program for reading and writing tables using the constructs described in Section 12.3.10 [Table input output (`table.h`)], page 816. For easy linking/compilation of this program, along with a first run, see Gnuastro's Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760. Before running, also set the following file and column names in the first two lines of `main`. The input and output names may be `.txt` and `.fits` tables, `gal_table_read` and `gal_table_write` will be able to write to both formats. For plain text tables see Section 4.7.2 [Gnuastro text table format], page 287. If you do not have any table in text file format to use as your input, you can use the table that is generated in Section 2.4 [Sufi simulates a detection], page 123, section.

This example program reads three columns from a table. The first two columns are selected by their name (`NAME1` and `NAME2`) and the third is selected by its number: column 10 (counting from 1). Gnuastro's column selection is discussed in Section 4.7.3 [Selecting table columns], page 289. The first and second columns can be any type, but this program will convert them to `int32_t` and `float` for its internal usage respectively. However, the third column must be double for this program. So if it is not, the program will abort with an error. Having the columns in memory, it will print them out along with their sum (just a simple application, you can do what ever you want at this stage). Reading the table finishes here.

The rest of the program is a demonstration of writing a table. While parsing the rows, this program will change the first column (to be counters) and multiply the second by 10 (so the output will be different). Then it will define the order of the output columns by setting the `next` element (to create a Section 12.3.8.9 [List of `gal_data_t`], page 812). Before writing, this function will also set names for the columns (units and comments can be defined in a similar manner). Writing the columns to a file is then done through a simple call to `gal_table_write`.

The operations that are shown in this example program are not necessary all the time. For example, in many cases, you know the numerical data type of the column before writing your program (see Section 4.5 [Numeric data types], page 279), so type checking and copying to a specific type will not be necessary.

To encourage good coding practices, this script contains a copyright notice with a place holder for your name and your email (as you customize it for your own purpose). Always keep a one-line description and copyright notice like this in all your scripts, such "metadata" is very important to accompany every source file you write. Of course, when you write the source file from scratch and just learn how to use a single function from this manual, only your name/year should appear. The existing name of the original author of this example program is only for cases where you copy-paste this whole file.

```
/* Reading and writing table columns.
 *
 * This example program reads three columns from a table. Having the
 * columns in memory, it will print them out along with their sum. The
 * rest of the program is a demonstration of writing a table.
 *
 * Copyright (C) 2025      Your Name <your@@email.address>
```

```
 * Copyright (C) 2020-2025 Mohammad Akhlaghi <mohammad@@akhlaghi.org>
 *
 * This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
 * it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
 * the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
 * (at your option) any later version.
 *
 * This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
 * WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
 * MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
 * General Public License for more details.
 *
 * You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
 * along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

#include <gnuastro/table.h>

int
main(void)
{
  /* File names and column names (which may also be numbers). */
  char *c1_name="NAME1", *c2_name="NAME2", *c3_name="10";
  char *inname="input.fits", *hdu="1", *outname="out.fits";

  /* Internal parameters. */
  float *array2=NULL;
  double *array3=NULL;
  int32_t *array1=NULL;
  size_t i, counter=0;
  gal_data_t *c1=NULL;
  gal_data_t *c2=NULL;
  gal_data_t tmp, *col, *columns;
  gal_list_str_t *column_ids=NULL;

  /* Define the columns to read. */
  gal_list_str_add(&column_ids, c1_name, 0);
  gal_list_str_add(&column_ids, c2_name, 0);
  gal_list_str_add(&column_ids, c3_name, 0);

  /* The columns were added in reverse, so correct it. */
  gal_list_str_reverse(&column_ids);

  /* Read the desired columns. */
```

```
columns = gal_table_read(inname, hdu, NULL, column_ids,
                         GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_NAME, 0, 1, -1, 1, NULL);

/* Go over the columns, we will assume that you do not know their type
 * a-priori, so we will check  */
counter=1;
for(col=columns; col!=NULL; col=col->next)
  switch(counter++)
    {
    case 1:              /* First column: we want it as int32_t. */
      c1=gal_data_copy_to_new_type(col, GAL_TYPE_INT32);
      array1 = c1->array;
      break;

    case 2:              /* Second column: we want it as float.  */
      c2=gal_data_copy_to_new_type(col, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32);
      array2 = c2->array;
      break;

    case 3:              /* Third column: it MUST be double.     */
      if(col->type!=GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64)
        {
          fprintf(stderr, "Column %s must be float64 type, it is "
                  "%s", c3_name, gal_type_name(col->type, 1));
          exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
        }
      array3 = col->array;
      break;

    default:
      exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }

/* As an example application we will just print them out. In the
 * meantime (just for a simple demonstration), change the first
 * array value to the counter and multiply the second by 10. */
for(i=0;i<c1->size;++i)
  {
    printf("%zu: %d + %f + %f = %f\n", i+1, array1[i], array2[i],
           array3[i], array1[i]+array2[i]+array3[i]);
    array1[i]  = i+1;
    array2[i] *= 10;
  }

/* Link the first two columns as a list. */
c1->next = c2;
c2->next = NULL;
```

```
  /* Set names for the columns and write them out. */
  c1->name = "COUNTER";
  c2->name = "VALUE";
  gal_table_write(c1, NULL, NULL, GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_BFITS, outname,
                  "MY-COLUMNS", 0, 0);

  /* The names were not allocated, so to avoid cleaning-up problems,
   * we will set them to NULL. */
  c1->name = c2->name = NULL;

  /* Clean up and return.  */
  gal_data_free(c1);
  gal_data_free(c2);
  gal_list_data_free(columns);
  gal_list_str_free(column_ids, 0); /* strings were not allocated. */
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

12.4.5 Library demo - Warp to another image

Gnuastro's warp library (that you can access by including `gnuastro/warp.h`) allows you to resample an image from a grid to another entirely using the WCSLIB (while accounting for distortions if necessary; see Section 12.3.29 [Warp library (`warp.h`)], page 923). The Warp library uses a pixel-mixing or area-based resampling approach which is fully described in Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505. The most generic uses cases for this library are already available in the Section 6.4.4 [Invoking Warp], page 506, program. For a related demo (where the output grid and WCS are constructed from scratch), see Section 12.4.6 [Library demo - Warp to new grid], page 954.

In the example below, we are warping the `input.fits` file to the same pixel grid and WCS as `reference.fits` image (assuming it is in hdu `0`). You can download the FITS files in the Section 2.6.1 [Color channels in same pixel grid], page 152, section and use them as `input.fits` and `reference.fits` files. Feel free to change these names to your own test file names. This can be useful when you have a complex grid and WCS containing various keywords such as non-linear distortion coefficients, etc. For example datasets, see the description of the `--gridfile` option in Section 6.4.4.1 [Align pixels with WCS considering distortions], page 508.

To compile the demonstration program below, copy and paste the contents in a plain-text file (let's assume you named it `align-to-img.c`) and use Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, with this command: '`astbuildprog align-to-img.c`'. Please note that the demo program does not perform many sanity checks to avoid making it too complex and to highlight this particular feature in the library. For a robust method write programs with all the necessary sanity checks, see Gnuastro's Warp source code, see Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965.

To encourage good coding practices, this script contains a copyright notice with a place holder for your name and your email (as you customize it for your own purpose). Always keep a one-line description and copyright notice like this in all your scripts, such "metadata"

is very important to accompany every source file you write. Of course, when you write the source file from scratch and just learn how to use a single function from this manual, only your name/year should appear. The existing name of the original author of this example program is only for cases where you copy-paste this whole file.

```
/* Warp to another image.
 *
 * In the example below, we are warping the input.fits file to the same
 * pixel grid and WCS as reference.fits image.
 *
 * Copyright (C) 2025      Your Name <your@@email.address>
 * Copyright (C) 2022-2025 Pedram Ashofteh-Ardakani <pedramardakani@pm.me>
 *
 * This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
 * it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
 * the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
 * (at your option) any later version.
 *
 * This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
 * WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
 * MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
 * General Public License for more details.
 *
 * You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
 * along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

#include <gnuastro/wcs.h>       /* contains gnuastro's fits.h */
#include <gnuastro/warp.h>      /* contains gnuastro's data.h */
#include <gnuastro/array.h>     /* contains gnuastro's type.h */

int
main(void)
{
  /* Input file's name and HDU. */
  char *filename="input.fits", *hdu="1";

  /* Reference file's name and HDU. */
  char *gridfile="reference.fits", *gridhdu="0";

  /* Output file name. */
  char *outname="align-to-img.fits";

  /* Low-level variables needed to read the reference file's size. */
```

```
int nwcs;
size_t ndim, *dsize;

/* Initialize the 'wa' struct with empty values and NULL pointers. */
gal_warp_wcsalign_t wa=gal_warp_wcsalign_template();

/* Read the input image and its WCS. */
wa.input=gal_array_read_one_ch_to_type(filename, hdu, NULL,
                                       GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64, -1,  0, NULL);
wa.input->wcs=gal_wcs_read(filename, hdu, 0, 0, 0, &wa.input->nwcs,
                           NULL);

/* Prepare the warp input structure, use all threads available. */
wa.coveredfrac=1; wa.edgesampling=0; wa.numthreads=0;

/* Set the target grid to be the same as wcsref.fits file on hdu 0. */
wa.twcs=gal_wcs_read(gridfile, gridhdu, 0, 0, 0, &nwcs, NULL);
if(wa.twcs==NULL)
  {
    fprintf(stderr, "%s (hdu %s): no WCS! Can't continue\n",
            gridfile, gridhdu);
    exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
  }

/* Read the output image size (from the reference image). Note that
 * 'dsize' will be freed while freeing 'widthinpix'). */
dsize=gal_fits_img_info_dim(gridfile, gridhdu, &ndim, NULL);

/* Convert the 'dsize' to a 'gal_data_t' so the library can use it. */
wa.widthinpix=gal_data_alloc(dsize, GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T, 1, &ndim,
                             NULL, 1, -1, 0, NULL, NULL, NULL);

/* Do the warp, then convert the output to a 32-bit float (the default
 * float64 is too much for observational data and just wastes
 * storage!). But if you are warping mock data before adding noise
 * (where you do have float64 level precision), remove the type
 * conversion line. */
gal_warp_wcsalign(&wa);
wa.output=gal_data_copy_to_new_type_free(wa.output, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32);

/* WARNING: make sure there is no file with same name as 'out.fits'
 * or the result will be appended to its final HDU. */
gal_fits_img_write(wa.output, outname, NULL, 0);

/* Clean up. */
gal_data_free(wa.input);
gal_data_free(wa.output);
```

```
  gal_data_free(wa.widthinpix);

  /* Give control back to the operating system. */
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

12.4.6 Library demo - Warp to new grid

Gnuastro's warp library (that you can access by including `gnuastro/warp.h`) allows you to resample an image from a grid to another entirely using the WCSLIB (while accounting for distortions if necessary; see Section 12.3.29 [Warp library (`warp.h`)], page 923). The Warp library uses a pixel-mixing or area-based resampling approach which is fully described in Section 6.4.3 [Resampling], page 505. The most generic uses cases for this library are already available in the Section 6.4.4 [Invoking Warp], page 506, program. For a related demo (where the output grid and WCS are imported from another file), see Section 12.4.5 [Library demo - Warp to another image], page 951.

In the example below, we'll assume you have the SDSS image downloaded in Section 2.2.1 [Downloading and validating input data], page 81. After downloading the image as described there, you will have `r.fits` in your current directory. We will therefore use `r.fits` as the input to the rest program here. The image is not aligned to the celestial coordinates, so we will align the pixel and WCS coordinates, but set the center of the pixel grid to be at (RA,Dec) of (202.4173735,47.3374525). We also give it a `TAN` projection with a pixel scale of 0.27 arcsecs, a defined center pixel. However, we'll let the Warp library measure the proper output image size that will contain the aligned image.

To compile the demonstration program below, copy and paste the contents in a plain-text file (let's assume you named it `align-to-new.c`) and use Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760, with this command: '`astbuildprog align-to-new.c`'. Please note that the demo program does not perform many sanity checks to avoid making it too complex and to highlight this particular feature in the library. For a robust method write programs with all the necessary sanity checks, see Gnuastro's Warp source code, see Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965.

To encourage good coding practices, this script contains a copyright notice with a place holder for your name and your email (as you customize it for your own purpose). Always keep a one-line description and copyright notice like this in all your scripts, such "metadata" is very important to accompany every source file you write. Of course, when you write the source file from scratch and just learn how to use a single function from this manual, only your name/year should appear. The existing name of the original author of this example program is only for cases where you copy-paste this whole file.

```
/* Warp an image to a new grid.
 *
 * In the example below, We will use 'r.fits' as the input. The image is
 * not aligned to the celestial coordinates, so we will align the pixel
 * and WCS coordinates. We also give it a TAN projection. However, we'll
 * let the Warp library measure the proper output image size that will
 * contain the aligned image.
 *
 * Copyright (C) 2025      Your Name <your@@email.address>
```

```
 * Copyright (C) 2022-2025 Pedram Ashofteh-Ardakani <pedramardakani@pm.me>
 *
 * This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
 * it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
 * the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or
 * (at your option) any later version.
 *
 * This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
 * WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
 * MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
 * General Public License for more details.
 *
 * You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
 * along with this program. If not, see <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/>.
 */

#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>

#include <gnuastro/wcs.h>       /* Contains gnuastro's fits.h */
#include <gnuastro/warp.h>      /* Contains gnuastro's data.h */
#include <gnuastro/array.h>     /* Contains gnuastro's type.h */

int
main(void)
{
  /* Input file's name and HDU. */
  char *filename="r.fits", *hdu="0";

  /* Output file name. */
  char *outname="align-to-new.fits";

  /* RA/Dec of the center of the central pixel of output. Please
   * change the center based on your input. */
  double center[]={202.4173735, 47.3374525};

  /* Coordinate and Projection algorithms of output. */
  char *ctype[2]={"RA---TAN", "DEC--TAN"};

  /* Output pixel scale (in units of degrees/pixel). */
  double cdelt[]={0.27/3600, 0.27/3600};

  /* For intermediate steps. */
  size_t two=2;

  /* Initialize the 'wa' struct with empty values and NULL pointers. */
  gal_warp_wcsalign_t wa=gal_warp_wcsalign_template();
```

```
/* Set the width (and height!) of the output in pixels (as a 1D and
 * 2 element 'gal_data_t'). When it is NULL, the library will
 * calculate the appropriate width to fully fit the input image
 * after alignment. */
wa.widthinpix=NULL;

/* Set the number of threads to use. If the value is '0', the
 * library will estimate the maximum available threads at
 * run-time on the host operating system. */
wa.numthreads=0;


/* Read the input image and its WCS. */
wa.input=gal_array_read_one_ch_to_type(filename, hdu, NULL,
                                       GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64, -1, 0, NULL);
wa.input->wcs=gal_wcs_read(filename, hdu, 0, 0, 0, &wa.input->nwcs,
                           NULL);


/* Prepare the warp input structure. */
wa.coveredfrac=1; wa.edgesampling=0;
wa.ctype=gal_data_alloc(ctype, GAL_TYPE_STRING, 1, &two, NULL, 1,
                        -1, 0, NULL, NULL, NULL);
wa.cdelt=gal_data_alloc(cdelt, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64, 1, &two, NULL, 1,
                        -1, 0, NULL, NULL, NULL);
wa.center=gal_data_alloc(center, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64, 1, &two, NULL, 1,
                         -1, 0, NULL, NULL, NULL);


/* Do the warp, then convert it to a 32-bit float. */
gal_warp_wcsalign(&wa);
wa.output=gal_data_copy_to_new_type_free(wa.output, GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32);


/* WARNING: make sure there is no file with same name as 'out.fits'
 * or the result will be appended to its final HDU. */
gal_fits_img_write(wa.output, outname, NULL, 0);


/* Remove the pointers to arrays that we didn't allocate (and thus,
 * should not be freed by 'gal_data_free' below). */
wa.cdelt->array=wa.center->array=wa.ctype->array=NULL;


/* Clean up. */
gal_data_free(wa.cdelt);   gal_data_free(wa.ctype);
```

```
  gal_data_free(wa.input);   gal_data_free(wa.output);
  gal_data_free(wa.center);  gal_data_free(wa.widthinpix);

  /* Give control back to the operating system. */
  return EXIT_SUCCESS;
}
```

13 Developing

The basic idea of GNU Astronomy Utilities is for an interested astronomer to be able to easily understand the code of any of the programs or libraries, be able to modify the code if s/he feels there is an improvement and finally, to be able to add new programs or libraries for their own benefit, and the larger community if they are willing to share it. In short, we hope that at least from the software point of view, the "obscurantist faith in the expert's special skill and in his personal knowledge and authority" can be broken, see Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6. With this aim in mind, Gnuastro was designed to have a very basic, simple, and easy to understand architecture for any interested inquirer.

This chapter starts with very general design choices, in particular Section 13.1 [Why C programming language?], page 958, and Section 13.2 [Program design philosophy], page 960. It will then get a little more technical about the Gnuastro code and file/directory structure in Section 13.3 [Coding conventions], page 961, and Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965. Section 13.4.2 [The TEMPLATE program], page 968, discusses a minimal (and working) template to help in creating new programs or easier learning of a program's internal structure. Some other general issues about documentation, building and debugging are then discussed. This chapter concludes with how you can learn about the development and get involved in Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979, Section 13.11 [Developing mailing lists], page 980, and Section 13.12 [Contributing to Gnuastro], page 981.

13.1 Why C programming language?

Currently the programming languages that are commonly used in scientific applications are C++[1], Java[2]; Python[3], and Julia[4] (which is a newcomer but swiftly gaining ground). One of the main reasons behind choosing these is their high-level abstractions. However, GNU Astronomy Utilities is fully written in the C programming language[5]. The reasons can be summarized with simplicity, portability and efficiency/speed. All four are very important in a scientific software and we will discuss them below.

Simplicity can best be demonstrated in a comparison of the main books of C++ and C. The "C programming language"[6] book, written by the authors of C, is only 286 pages and covers a very good fraction of the language, it has also remained unchanged from 1988. C is the main programming language of nearly all operating systems and there is no plan of any significant update. On the other hand, the most recent "C++ programming language"[7] book, also written by its author, has 1366 pages and its fourth edition came out in 2013! As discussed in Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6, it is very important for other scientists to be able to readily read the code of a program at their will with minimum requirements.

[1] `https://isocpp.org/`

[2] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Java_(programming_language)`

[3] `https://www.python.org/`

[4] `https://julialang.org/`

[5] `https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/C_(programming_language)`

[6] Brian Kernighan, Dennis Ritchie. *The C programming language*. Prentice Hall, Inc., Second edition, 1988. It is also commonly known as K&R and is based on the ANSI C and ISO C90 standards.

[7] Bjarne Stroustrup. *The C++ programming language*. Addison-Wesley Professional; 4 edition, 2013.

In C++ or Java, inheritance in the object oriented programming paradigm and their internal functions make the code very easy to write for a programmer who is deeply invested in those objects and understands all their relations well. But it simultaneously makes reading the program for a first time reader (a curious scientist who wants to know only how a small step was done) extremely hard. Before understanding the methods, the scientist has to invest a lot of time and energy in understanding those objects and their relations. But in C, everything is done with basic language types for example `int`s or `float`s and their pointers to define arrays. So when an outside reader is only interested in one part of the program, that part is all they have to understand.

Recently it is also becoming common to write scientific software in Python, or a combination of it with C or C++. Python is a high level scripting language which does not need compilation. It is very useful when you want to do something on the go and do not want to be halted by the troubles of compiling, linking, memory checking, etc. When the datasets are small and the job is temporary, this ability of Python is great and is highly encouraged. A very good example might be plotting, in which Python is undoubtedly one of the best.

But as the data sets increase in size and the processing becomes more complicated, the speed of Python scripts significantly decrease. So when the program does not change too often and is widely used in a large community, mostly on large data sets (like astronomical images), using Python will waste a lot of valuable research-hours. It is possible to wrap C or C++ functions with Python to fix the speed issue. But this creates further complexity, because the interested scientist has to master two programming languages and their connection (which is not trivial).

Like C++, Python is object oriented, so as explained above, it needs a high level of experience with that particular program to reasonably understand its inner workings. To make things worse, since it is mainly for on-the-go programming[8], it can undergo significant changes. One recent example is how Python 2.x and Python 3.x are not compatible. Lots of research teams that invested heavily in Python 2.x cannot benefit from Python 3.x or future versions any more. Some converters are available, but since they are automatic, lots of complications might arise in the conversion[9]. If a research project begins using Python 3.x today, there is no telling how compatible their investments will be when Python 4.x or 5.x will come out.

Java is also fully object-oriented, but uses a different paradigm: its compilation generates a hardware-independent *bytecode*, and a *Java Virtual Machine* (JVM) is required for the actual execution of this bytecode on a computer. Java also evolved with time, and tried to remain backward compatible, but inevitably this evolution required discontinuities and replacements of a few Java components which were first declared as becoming *deprecated*, and removed from later versions.

This stems from the core principles of high-level languages like Python or Java: that they evolve significantly on the scale of roughly 5 to 10 years. They are therefore useful when you want to solve a short-term problem and you are ready to pay the high cost of keeping your software up to date with all the changes in the language. This is fine for private companies, but usually too expensive for scientific projects that have limited funding

[8] Note that Python is good for fast programming, not fast programs.

[9] For example see Jenness 2017 (`https://arxiv.org/abs/1712.00461`), which describes how LSST is managing the transition.

for a fixed period. As a result, the reproducibility of the result (ability to regenerate the result in the future, which is a core principal of any scientific result) and reusability of all the investments that went into the science software will be lost to future generations! Rebuilding all the dependencies of a software in an obsolete language is not easy, or even not possible. Future-proof code (as long as current operating systems will be used) is therefore written in C.

The portability of C is best demonstrated by the fact that C++, Java and Python are part of the C-family of programming languages which also include Julia, Perl, and many other languages. C libraries can be immediately included in C++, and it is easy to write wrappers for them in all C-family programming languages. This will allow other scientists to benefit from C libraries using any C-family language that they prefer. As a result, Gnuastro's library is already usable in C and C++, and wrappers will be[10] added for higher-level languages like Python, Julia and Java.

The final reason was speed. This is another very important aspect of C which is not independent of simplicity (first reason discussed above). The abstractions provided by the higher-level languages (which also makes learning them harder for a newcomer) come at the cost of speed. Since C is a low-level language[11] (closer to the hardware), it has a direct access to the CPU[12], is generally considered as being faster in its execution, and is much less complex for both the human reader *and* the computer. The benefits of simplicity for a human were discussed above. Simplicity for the computer translates into more efficient (faster) programs. This creates a much closer relation between the scientist/programmer (or their program) and the actual data and processing. The GNU coding standards[13] also encourage the use of C over all other languages when generality of usage and "high speed" is desired.

13.2 Program design philosophy

The core processing functions of each program (and all libraries) are written mostly with the basic ISO C90 standard. We do make lots of use of the GNU additions to the C language in the GNU C library[14], but these functions are mainly used in the user interface functions (reading your inputs and preparing them prior to or after the analysis). The actual algorithms, which most scientists would be more interested in, are much more closer to ISO C90. For this reason, program source files that deal with user interface issues and those doing the actual processing are clearly separated, see Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965. If anything particular to the GNU C library is used in the processing functions, it is explained in the comments in between the code.

All the Gnuastro programs provide very low level and modular operations (modeled on GNU Coreutils). Almost all the basic command-line programs like `ls`, `cp` or `rm` on

[10] `http://savannah.gnu.org/task/?13786`

[11] Low-level languages are those that directly operate the hardware like assembly languages. So C is actually a high-level language, but it can be considered one of the lowest-level languages among all high-level languages.

[12] for instance the *long double* numbers with at least 64-bit mantissa are not accessible in Python or Java.

[13] `http://www.gnu.org/prep/standards/`

[14] Gnuastro uses many GNU additions to the C library. However, thanks to the GNU Portability library (Gnulib) which is included in the Gnuastro tarball, users of non-GNU/Linux operating systems can also benefit from all these features when using Gnuastro.

GNU/Linux operating systems are part of GNU Coreutils. This enables you to use shell scripting languages (for example, GNU Bash) to operate on a large number of files or do very complex things through the creative combinations of these tools that the authors had never dreamed of. We have put a few simple examples in Chapter 2 [Tutorials], page 21.

For example, all the analysis output can be saved as ASCII tables which can be fed into your favorite plotting program to inspect visually. Python's Matplotlib is very useful for fast plotting of the tables to immediately check your results. If you want to include the plots in a document, you can use the PGFplots package within LaTeX, no attempt is made to include such operations in Gnuastro. In short, Bash can act as a glue to connect the inputs and outputs of all these various Gnuastro programs (and other programs) in any fashion. Of course, Gnuastro's programs are just front-ends to the main workhorse (Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764), allowing a user to create their own programs (for example, with Section 12.2 [BuildProgram], page 760). So once the functions within programs become mature enough, they will be moved within the libraries for even more general applications.

The advantage of this architecture is that the programs become small and transparent: the starting and finishing point of every program is clearly demarcated. For nearly all operations on a modern computer (fast file input-output) with a modest level of complexity, the read/write speed is insignificant compared to the actual processing a program does. Therefore the complexity which arises from sharing memory in a large application is simply not worth the speed gain. Gnuastro's design is heavily influenced from Eric Raymond's "The Art of Unix Programming"[15] which beautifully describes the design philosophy and practice which lead to the success of Unix-based operating systems[16].

13.3 Coding conventions

In Gnuastro, we try our best to follow the GNU coding standards. Added to those, Gnuastro defines the following conventions. It is very important for readability that the whole package follows the same convention.

- The code must be easy to read by eye. So when the order of several lines within a function does not matter (for example, when defining variables at the start of a function). You should put the lines in the order of increasing length and group the variables with similar types such that this half-pyramid of declarations becomes most visible. If the reader is interested, a simple search will show them the variable they are interested in. However, this visual aid greatly helps in general inspections of the code and help the reader get a grip of the function's processing.
- A function that cannot be fully displayed (vertically) in your monitor is probably too long and may be more useful if it is broken up into multiple functions. 40 lines is usually a good reference. When the start and end of a function are clearly visible in one glance, the function is much more easier to understand. This is most important for low-level functions (which usually define a lot of variables). Low-level functions do most of the processing, they will also be the most interesting part of a program for an inquiring astronomer. This convention is less important for higher level functions

[15] Eric S. Raymond, 2004, *The Art of Unix Programming*, Addison-Wesley Professional Computing Series.
[16] KISS principle: Keep It Simple, Stupid!

that do not define too many variables and whose only purpose is to run the lower-level functions in a specific order and with checks.

In general you can be very liberal in breaking up the functions into smaller parts, the GNU Compiler Collection (GCC) will automatically compile the functions as inline functions when the optimizations are turned on. So you do not have to worry about decreasing the speed. By default Gnuastro will compile with the `-O3` optimization flag.

- All Gnuastro hand-written text files (C source code, Texinfo documentation source, and version control commit messages) should normally be no more than **75** characters per line. Monitors today are certainly much wider, but with this limit, reading the functions becomes much more easier. Also for the developers, it allows multiple files (or multiple views of one file) to be displayed beside each other on wide monitors.

  Emacs's buffers are excellent for this capability, setting a buffer width of 80 with '`C-u 80 C-x 3`' will allow you to view and work on several files or different parts of one file using the wide monitors common today. Emacs buffers can also be used as a shell prompt and compile the program (with `M-x compile`), and 80 characters is the default width in most terminal emulators. If you use Emacs, Gnuastro sets the 75 character `fill-column` variable automatically for you, see cartouche below.

  For long comments you can use press `Alt-q` in Emacs to separate them into separate lines automatically. For long literal strings, you can use the fact that in C, two strings immediately after each other are concatenated, for example, `"The first part, " "and the second part."`. Note the space character in the end of the first part. Since they are now separated, you can easily break a long literal string into several lines and adhere to the maximum 75 character line length policy.

- The headers required by each source file (ending with `.c`) should be defined inside of it. All the headers a complete program needs should *not* be coadded in another header to include in all source files (for example `main.h`). Although most 'professional' programmers choose this single header method, Gnuastro is primarily written for professional/inquisitive astronomers (who are generally amateur programmers). The list of header files included provides valuable general information and helps the reader. `main.h` may only include the header file(s) that define types that the main program structure needs, see `main.h` in Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965. Those particular header files that are included in `main.h` can of course be ignored (not included) in separate source files.

- The headers should be classified (by an empty line) into separate groups:

  1. `#include <config.h>`: This must be the first code line (not commented or blank) in each source file *within Gnuastro*. It sets macros that the GNU Portability Library (Gnulib) will use for a unified environment (GNU C Library), even when the user is building on a system that does not use the GNU C library.
  2. The C library header files, for example, `stdio.h`, `stdlib.h`, or `math.h`.
  3. Installed library header files, including Gnuastro's installed headers (for example `cfitsio.h` or `gsl/gsl_rng.h`, or `gnuastro/fits.h`).
  4. Gnuastro's internal headers (that are not installed), for example `gnuastro-internal/options.h`.
  5. For programs, the `main.h` file (which is needed by the next group of headers).

6. That particular program's header files, for example, `mkprof.h`, or `noisechisel.h`.

As much as order does not matter when you include the header of each group, sort them by length, as described above.

- All function names, variables, etc., should be in lower case. Macros and constant global `enum`s should be in upper case.
- For the naming of exported header files, functions, variables, macros, and library functions, we adopt similar conventions to those used by the GNU Scientific Library (GSL)[17]. In particular, in order to avoid clashes with the names of functions and variables coming from other libraries the name-space '`gal_`' is prefixed to them. GAL stands for *G*NU *A*stronomy *L*ibrary.
- All installed header files should be in the `lib/gnuastro` directory (under the top Gnuastro source directory). After installation, they will be put in the `$prefix/include/gnuastro` directory (see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235, for `$prefix`). Therefore with this convention Gnuastro's headers can be included in internal (to Gnuastro) and external (a library user) source files with the same line

```
# include <gnuastro/headername.h>
```

Note that the GSL convention for header file names is `gsl_specialname.h`, so your include directive for a GSL header must be something like `#include <gsl/gsl_specialname.h>`. Gnuastro does not follow this GSL guideline because of the repeated `gsl` in the include directive. It can be confusing and cause bugs for beginners. All Gnuastro (and GSL) headers must be located within a unique directory and will not be mixed with other headers. Therefore the '`gsl_`' prefix to the header file names is redundant[18].

- All installed functions and variables should also include the base-name of the file in which they are defined as prefix, using underscores to separate words[19]. The same applies to exported macros, but in upper case. For example, in Gnuastro's top source directory, the prototype of function `gal_box_border_from_center` is in `lib/gnuastro/box.h`, and the macro `GAL_POLYGON_MAX_CORNERS` is defined in `lib/gnuastro/polygon.h`.

  This is necessary to give any user (who is not familiar with the library structure) the ability to follow the code. This convention does make the function names longer (a little harder to write), but the extra documentation it provides plays an important role in Gnuastro and is worth the cost.
- There should be no trailing white space in a line. To do this automatically every time you save a file in Emacs, add the following line to your `~/.emacs` file.

```
(add-hook 'before-save-hook 'delete-trailing-whitespace)
```

[17] `https://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/design/gsl-design.html#SEC15`

[18] For GSL, this prefix has an internal technical application: GSL's architecture mixes installed and not-installed headers in the same directory. This prefix is used to identify their installation status. Therefore this filename prefix in GSL a technical internal issue (for developers, not users).

[19] The convention to use underscores to separate words, called "snake case" (or "snake_case"). This is also recommended by the GNU coding standards.

- There should be no tabs in the indentation[20].
- Individual, contextually similar, functions in a source file are separated by 5 blank lines to be easily seen to be related in a group when parsing the source code by eye. In Emacs you can use `CTRL-u 5 CTRL-o`.
- One group of contextually similar functions in a source file is separated from another with 20 blank lines. In Emacs you can use `CTRL-u 20 CTRL-o`. Each group of functions has short descriptive title of the functions in that group. This title is surrounded by asterisks (`*`) to make it clearly distinguishable. Such contextual grouping and clear title are very important for easily understanding the code.
- Always read the comments before the patch of code under it. Similarly, try to add as many comments as you can regarding every patch of code. Effectively, we want someone to get a good feeling of the steps, without having to read the C code and only by reading the comments. This follows similar principles as Literate programming (`https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Literate_programming`).

The last two conventions are not common and might benefit from a short discussion here. With a good experience in advanced text editor operations, the last two are redundant for a professional developer. However, recall that Gnuastro aspires to be friendly to unfamiliar, and inexperienced (in programming) eyes. In other words, as discussed in Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6, we want the code to appear welcoming to someone who is completely new to coding (and text editors) and only has a scientific curiosity.

Newcomers to coding and development, who are curious enough to venture into the code, will probably not be using (or have any knowledge of) advanced text editors. They will see the raw code in the web page or on a simple text editor (like Gedit) as plain text. Trying to learn and understand a file with dense functions that are all spaced with one or two blank lines can be very taunting for a newcomer. But when they scroll through the file and see clear titles and meaningful spaces for similar functions, we are helping them find and focus on the part they are most interested in sooner and easier.

[20] If you use Emacs, Gnuastro's `.dir-locals.el` file will automatically never use tabs for indentation. To make this a default in all your Emacs sessions, you can add the following line to your `~/.emacs` file: `(setq-default indent-tabs-mode nil)`

GNU Emacs, the recommended text editor: GNU Emacs is an extensible and easily customizable text editor which many programmers rely on for developing due to its countless features. Among them, it allows specification of certain settings that are applied to a single file or to all files in a directory and its sub-directories. In order to harmonize code coming from different contributors, Gnuastro comes with a `.dir-locals.el` file which automatically configures Emacs to satisfy most of the coding conventions above when you are using it within Gnuastro's directories. Thus, Emacs users can readily start hacking into Gnuastro. If you are new to developing, we strongly recommend this editor. Emacs was the first project released by GNU and is still one of its flagship projects. Some resources can be found at:

Official manual
: At `https://www.gnu.org/software/emacs/manual/emacs.html`. This is a great and very complete manual which is being improved for over 30 years and is the best starting point to learn it. It just requires a little patience and practice, but rest assured that you will be rewarded. If you install Emacs, you also have access to this manual on the command-line with the following command (see Section 4.3.4 [Info], page 275).

```
$ info emacs
```

A guided tour of emacs
: At `https://www.gnu.org/software/emacs/tour/`. A short visual tour of Emacs, officially maintained by the Emacs developers.

Unofficial mini-manual
: At `https://tuhdo.github.io/emacs-tutor.html`. A shorter manual which contains nice animated images of using Emacs.

13.4 Program source

Besides the fact that all the programs share some functions that were explained in Chapter 12 [Library], page 752, everything else about each program is completely independent. Recall that Gnuastro is written for an active astronomer/scientist (not a passive one who just uses a software). It must thus be easily navigable. Hence there are fixed source files (that contain fixed operations) that must be present in all programs, these are discussed fully in Section 13.4.1 [Mandatory source code files], page 965. To easily understand the explanations in this section you can use Section 13.4.2 [The TEMPLATE program], page 968, which contains the bare minimum code for one working program. This template can also be used to easily add new utilities: just copy and paste the directory and change `TEMPLATE` with your program's name.

13.4.1 Mandatory source code files

Some programs might need lots of source files and if there is no fixed convention, navigating them can become very hard for a new inquirer into the code. The following source files exist in every program's source directory (which is located in `bin/progname`). For small programs, these files are enough. Larger programs will need more files and developers are

encouraged to define any number of new files. It is just important that the following list of files exist and do what is described here. When creating other source files, please choose filenames that are a complete single word: do not abbreviate (abbreviations are cryptic). For a minimal program containing all these files, see Section 13.4.2 [The TEMPLATE program], page 968.

`main.c` Each executable has a `main` function, which is located in `main.c`. Therefore this file is the starting point when reading any program's source code. No actual processing functions must be defined in this file, the function(s) in this file are only meant to connect the most high level steps of each program. Generally, `main` will first call the top user interface function to read user input and make all the preparations. Then it will pass control to the top processing function for that program. The functions to do both these jobs must be defined in other source files.

`main.h` All the major parameters which will be used in the program must be stored in a structure which is defined in `main.h`. The name of this structure is usually `prognameparams`, for example, `cropparams` or `noisechiselparams`. So `#include "main.h"` will be a staple in all the source codes of the program. It is also regularly the first (and only) argument of many of the program's functions which greatly helps in readability.

Keeping all the major parameters of a program in this structure has the major benefit that most functions will only need one argument: a pointer to this structure. This will significantly facilitate the job of the programmer, the inquirer and the computer. All the programs in Gnuastro are designed to be low-level, small and independent parts, so this structure should not get too large.

The main root structure of all programs contains at least one instance of the `gal_options_common_params` structure. This structure will keep the values to all common options in Gnuastro's programs (see Section 4.1.2 [Common options], page 253). This top root structure is conveniently called `p` (short for parameters) by all the functions in the programs and the common options parameters within it are called `cp`. With this convention any reader can immediately understand where to look for the definition of one parameter. For example, you know that `p->cp->output` is in the common parameters while `p->threshold` is in the program's parameters.

With this basic root structure, the source code of functions can potentially become full of structure de-reference operators (`->`) which can make the code very unreadable. In order to avoid this, whenever a structure element is used more than a couple of times in a function, a variable of the same type and with the same name (so it can be searched) as the desired structure element should be defined with the value of the root structure inside of it in definition time. Here is an example:

```
char *hdu=p->cp.hdu;
float threshold=p->threshold;
```

`args.h` The options particular to each program are defined in this file. Each option is defined by a block of parameters in `program_options`. These blocks are all you should modify in this file, leave the bottom group of definitions untouched.

These are fed directly into the GNU C library's Argp facilities and it is recommended to have a look at that for better understand what is going on, although this is not required here.

Each element of the block defining an option is described under `argp_option` in `bootstrapped/lib/argp.h` (from Gnuastro's top source file). Note that the last few elements of this structure are Gnuastro additions (not documented in the standard Argp manual). The values to these last elements are defined in `lib/gnuastro/type.h` and `lib/gnuastro-internal/options.h` (from Gnuastro's top source directory).

`ui.h` Besides declaring the exported functions of `ui.c`, this header also keeps the "key"s to every program-specific option. The first class of keys for the options that have a short-option version (single letter, see Section 4.1.1.2 [Options], page 251). The character that is defined here is the option's short option name. The list of available alphabet characters can be seen in the comments. Recall that some common options also take some characters, for those, see `lib/gnuastro-internal/options.h`.

The second group of options are those that do not have a short option alternative. Only the first in this group needs a value (`1000`), the rest will be given a value by C's `enum` definition, so the actual value is irrelevant and must never be used, always use the name.

`ui.c` Everything related to reading the user input arguments and options, checking the configuration files and checking the consistency of the input parameters before the actual processing is run should be done in this file. Since most functions are the same, with only the internal checks and structure parameters differing. We recommend going through the `ui.c` of Section 13.4.2 [The TEMPLATE program], page 968, or several other programs for a better understanding.

The most high-level function in `ui.c` is named `ui_read_check_inputs_setup`. It accepts the raw command-line inputs and a pointer to the root structure for that program (see the explanation for `main.h`). This is the function that `main` calls. The basic idea of the functions in this file is that the processing functions should need a minimum number of such checks. With this convention an inquirer who only wants to understand only one part (mostly the processing part and not user input details and sanity checks) of the code can easily do so in the later files. It also makes all the errors related to input appear before the processing begins which is more convenient for the user.

`progname.c, progname.h`
The high-level processing functions in each program are in a file named `progname.c`, for example, `crop.c` or `noisechisel.c`. The function within these files which `main` calls is also named after the program, for example:

```
void
crop(struct cropparams *p)
```

or

```
void
noisechisel(struct noisechiselparams *p)
```

In this manner, if an inquirer is interested in the processing steps, they can immediately come and check this file for the first processing step without having to go through `main.c` and `ui.c` first. In most situations, any failure in any step of the programs will result in an informative error message and an immediate abort in the program. So there is usually no need for return values. Under more complicated situations where a return value might be necessary, `void` will be replaced with an `int` in the examples above. This value must be directly returned by `main`, so it has to be an `int`.

`authors-cite.h`
: This header file keeps the global variable for the program authors and its BibTeX record for citation. They are used in the outputs of the common options `--version` and `--cite`, see Section 4.1.2.3 [Operating mode options], page 259.

`progname-complete.bash`
: This shell script is used for implementing auto-completion features when running Gnuastro's programs within GNU Bash. For more on the concept of shell auto-completion and how it is managed in Gnuastro, see Section 13.8 [Bash programmable completion], page 973.

  These files assume a set of common shell functions that have the prefix `_gnuastro_autocomplete_` in their name and are defined in `bin/complete.bash.in` (of the source directory, and under version control) and `bin/complete.bash.built` (built during the building of Gnuastro in the build directory). During Gnuastro's build, all these Bash completion files are merged into one file that is installed and the user can `source` them into their Bash startup file, for example, see Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1.

13.4.2 The TEMPLATE program

The extra creativity offered by libraries comes at a cost: you have to actually write your `main` function and get your hands dirty in managing user inputs: are all the necessary parameters given a value? is the input in the correct format? do the options and the inputs correspond? and many other similar checks. So when an operation has well-defined inputs and outputs and is commonly needed, it is much more worthwhile to simply do use all the great features that Gnuastro has already defined for such operations.

To make it easier to learn/apply the internal program infrastructure discussed in Section 13.4.1 [Mandatory source code files], page 965, in the Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228, Gnuastro ships with a template program. This template program is not available in the Gnuastro tarball so it does not confuse people using the tarball. The `bin/TEMPLATE` directory in Gnuastro's Git repository contains the bare minimum files necessary to define a new program and all the basic/necessary files/functions are pre-defined there.

Below you can see a list of initial steps to take for customizing this template. We just assume that after cloning Gnuastro's history, you have already bootstrapped Gnuastro, if not, please see Section 3.2.2.1 [Bootstrapping], page 229.

1. Select a name for your new program (for example, `myprog`).
2. Copy the `TEMPLATE` directory to a directory with your program's name:

```
$ cp -R bin/TEMPLATE bin/myprog
```

3. As with all source files in Gnuastro, all the files in template also have a copyright notice at their top. Open all the files and correct these notices: 1) The first line contains a single-line description of the program. 2) In the second line only the name or your program needs to be fixed and 3) Add your name and email as a "Contributing author". As your program grows, you will need to add new files, do not forget to add this notice in those new files too, just put your name and email under "Original author" and correct the copyright years.
4. Open `configure.ac` in the top Gnuastro source. This file manages the operations that are done when a user runs `./configure`. Going down the file, you will notice repetitive parts for each program. You will notice that the program names follow an alphabetic ordering in each part. There is also a commented line/patch for the `TEMPLATE` program in each part. You can copy one line/patch (from the program above or below your desired name for example) and paste it in the proper place for your new program. Then correct the names of the copied program to your new program name. There are multiple places where this has to be done, so be patient and go down to the bottom of the file. Ultimately add `bin/myprog/Makefile` to `AC_CONFIG_FILES`, only here the ordering depends on the length of the name (it is not alphabetical).
5. Open `Makefile.am` in the top Gnuastro source. Similar to the previous step, add your new program similar to all the other programs. Here there are only two places: 1) at the top where we define the conditionals (three lines per program), and 2) immediately under it as part of the value for `SUBDIRS`.
6. Open `doc/Makefile.am` and similar to `Makefile.am` (above), add the proper entries for the man page of your program to be created (here, the variable that keeps all the man pages to be created is `dist_man_MANS`). Then scroll down and add a rule to build the man page similar to the other existing rules (in alphabetical order). Do not forget to add a short one-line description here, it will be displayed on top of the man page.
7. Change `TEMPLATE.c` and `TEMPLATE.h` to `myprog.c` and `myprog.h` in the file names:

```
$ cd bin/myprog
$ mv TEMPLATE.c myprog.c
$ mv TEMPLATE.h myprog.h
```

8. Correct all occurrences of `TEMPLATE` in the input files to `myprog` (in short or long format). You can get a list of all occurrences with the following command. If you use Emacs, it will be able to parse the Grep output and open the proper file and line automatically. So this step can be very easy.

```
$ grep --color -nHi -e template *
```

9. Run the following commands to rebuild the configuration and build system, and then to configure and build Gnuastro (which now includes your exciting new program).

```
$ autoreconf -f
$ ./configure
$ make
```

10. You are done! You can now start customizing your new program to do your special processing. When it is complete, just do not forget to add checks also, so it can be tested at least once on a user's system with `make check`, see Section 13.7 [Test scripts], page 972. Finally, if you would like to share it with all Gnuastro users, inform us so we merge it into Gnuastro's main history.

13.5 Documentation

Documentation (this book) is an integral part of Gnuastro (see Section 1.3 [Gnuastro manifesto: Science and its tools], page 6). Documentation is not considered a separate project and must be written by its developers. Users can make edits/corrections, but the initial writing must be by the developer. So, no change is considered valid for implementation unless the respective parts of the book have also been updated. The following procedure can be a good suggestion to take when you have a new idea and are about to start implementing it.

The steps below are not a requirement, the important thing is that when you send your work to be included in Gnuastro, the book and the code have to both be fully up-to-date and compatible, with the purpose of the update very clearly explained. You can follow any strategy you like, the following strategy was what we have found to be most useful until now.

1. Edit the book and fully explain your desired change, such that your idea is completely embedded in the general context of the book with no sense of discontinuity for a first time reader. This will allow you to plan the idea much more accurately and in the general context of Gnuastro (a particular program or library). Later on, when you are coding, this general context will significantly help you as a road-map.

   A very important part of this process is the program/library introduction. These first few paragraphs explain the purposes of the program or library and are fundamental to Gnuastro. Before actually starting to code, explain your idea's purpose thoroughly in the start of the respective/new section you wish to work on. While actually writing its purpose for a new reader, you will probably get some valuable and interesting ideas that you had not thought of before. This has occurred several times during the creation of Gnuastro.

   If an introduction already exists, embed or blend your idea's purpose with the existing introduction. We emphasize that doing this is equally useful for you (as the programmer) as it is useful for the user (reader). Recall that the purpose of a program is very important, see Section 13.2 [Program design philosophy], page 960.

   As you have already noticed for every program/library, it is very important that the basics of the science and technique be explained in separate subsections prior to the 'Invoking Programname' subsection. If you are writing a new program or your addition to an existing program involves a new concept, also include such subsections and explain the concepts so a person completely unfamiliar with the concepts can get a general initial understanding. You do not have to go deep into the details, just enough to get an interested person (with absolutely no background) started with some good pointers/links to where they can continue studying if they are more interested. If you feel you cannot do that, then you have probably not understood the concept yourself. If you feel you do not have the time, then think about yourself as the reader in one year: you will forget almost all the details, so now that you have done all the theoretical preparations, add a few more hours and document it. Therefore in one year, when you find a bug or want to add a new feature, you do not have to prepare as much. Have in mind that your only limitation in length is the fatigue of the reader after reading a long text, nothing else. So as long as you keep it relevant/interesting for the reader, there is no page number limit/cost.

It might also help if you start discussing the usage of your idea in the 'Invoking ProgramName' subsection (explaining the options and arguments you have in mind) at this stage too. Actually starting to write it here will really help you later when you are coding.

2. After you have finished adding your initial intended plan to the book, then start coding your change or new program within the Gnuastro source files. While you are coding, you will notice that somethings should be different from what you wrote in the book (your initial plan). So correct them as you are actually coding, but do not worry too much about missing a few things (see the next step).
3. After your work has been fully implemented, read the section documentation from the start and check if you did not miss any change in the coding. Also, ensure that the context is fairly continuous for a first-time reader (who has not seen the book or has known Gnuastro before you made your change).
4. If the change is notable, also update the `NEWS` file.

13.6 Building and debugging

To build the various programs and libraries in Gnuastro, the GNU build system is used which defines the steps in Section 1.1 [Quick start], page 1. It consists of GNU Autoconf, GNU Automake and GNU Libtool which are collectively known as GNU Autotools. They provide a very portable system to check the hosts environment and compile Gnuastro based on that. They also make installing everything in their standard places very easy for the programmer. Most of the small caps files that you see in the top source directory of the tarball are created by these three tools (see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228). To facilitate the building and testing of your work during development, Gnuastro comes with two useful scripts:

`developer-build`
: This is more fully described in Section 3.3.1.4 [Configure and build in RAM], page 241. During development, you will usually run this command only once (at the start of your work).

`tests/during-dev.sh`
: This script is designed to be run each time you make a change and want to test your work (with some possible input and output). The script itself is heavily commented and thoroughly describes the best way to use it, so we will not repeat it here. For a usage example, see Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985.

  As a short summary: you specify the build directory, an output directory (for the built program to be run in, and also contains the inputs), the program's short name and the arguments and options that it should be run with. This script will then build Gnuastro, go to the output directory and run the built executable from there. One option for the output directory might be your desktop, so you can easily see the output files and delete them when you are finished. The main purpose of these scripts is to keep your source directory clean and facilitate your development.

By default all the programs are compiled with optimization flags for increased speed. A side effect of optimization is that valuable debugging information is lost. All the libraries are also linked as shared libraries by default. Shared libraries further complicate the debugging process and significantly slow down the compilation (the `make` command). So during development it is recommended to configure Gnuastro as follows:

```
$ ./configure --enable-debug
```

In `developer-build` you can ask for this behavior through the `--debug` option, see Section 3.3.2 [Separate build and source directories], page 242.

In order to understand the building process, you can go through the Autoconf, Automake and Libtool manuals, like all GNU manuals they provide both a great tutorial and technical documentation. The "A small Hello World" section in Automake's manual (in chapter 2) can be a good starting guide after you have read the separate introductions.

13.7 Test scripts

As explained in Section 3.3.3 [Tests], page 245, for every program some simple tests are written to check the various independent features of the program. All the tests are placed in the `tests/` directory. The `tests/prepconf.sh` script is the first 'test' that will be run. It will copy all the configuration files from the various directories to a `tests/.gnuastro` directory (which it will make) so the various tests can set the default values. This script will also make sure the programs do not go searching for user and system wide configuration files to avoid the mixing of values with different Gnuastro version on the system.

For each program, the tests are placed inside directories with the program name. Each test is written as a shell script. The last line of this script is the test which runs the program with certain parameters. The return value of this script determines the fate of the test, see the "Support for test suites" chapter of the Automake manual for a very nice and complete explanation. In every script, two variables are defined at first: `prog` and `execname`. The first specifies the program name and the second the location of the executable.

The most important thing to have in mind about all the test scripts is that they are run from inside the `tests/` directory in the "build tree". Which can be different from the directory they are stored in (known as the "source tree")[21]. This distinction is made by GNU Autoconf and Automake (which configure, build and install Gnuastro) so that you can install the program even if you do not have write access to the directory keeping the source files. See the "Parallel build trees (a.k.a VPATH builds)" in the Automake manual for a nice explanation.

Because of this, any necessary inputs that are distributed in the tarball[22], for example, the catalogs necessary for checks in MakeProfiles and Crop, must be identified with the `$topsrc` prefix instead of `../` (for the top source directory that is unpacked). This `$topsrc` variable points to the source tree where the script can find the source data (it is defined in `tests/Makefile.am`). The executables and other test products were built in the build tree (where they are being run), so they do not need to be prefixed with that variable. This is also true for images or files that were produced by other tests.

[21] The `developer-build` script also uses this feature to keep the source and build directories separate (see Section 3.3.2 [Separate build and source directories], page 242).

[22] In many cases, the inputs of a test are outputs of previous tests, this does not apply to this class of inputs. Because all outputs of previous tests are in the "build tree".

13.8 Bash programmable completion

Under development: While work on TAB completion is ongoing, it is not yet fully ready, please see the notice at the start of Section 4.1.3 [Shell TAB completion (highly customized)], page 264.

Gnuastro provides Programmable completion facilities in Bash. This greatly helps users reach their desired result with minimal keystrokes, and helps them spend less time on figuring out the option names and values their acceptable values. Gnuastro's completion script not only completes the half-written commands, but also prints suggestions based on previous arguments.

Imagine a scenario where we need to download three columns containing the right ascension, declination, and parallax from the GAIA DR3 dataset. We have to make sure how these columns are abbreviated or spelled. So we can call the command below, and store the column names in a file such as `gaia-dr3-columns.txt`.

```
$ astquery gaia --information > gaia-dr3-columns.txt
```

Then we need to memorize or copy the column names of interest, and specify an output fits file name such as `gaia.fits`:

```
$ astquery gaia --dataset=dr3 --output=gaia.fits \
                --column=ra,dec,parallax
```

However, this is much easier using the auto-completion feature:

```
$ astquery gaia --dataset=dr3 --output=gaia.fits --column=[TAB]
```

After pressing `[TAB]`, a full list of gaia dr3 dataset column names will be displayed. Typing the first key of the desired column and pressing `[TAB]` again will limit the displayed list to only the matching ones until the desired column is found.

13.8.1 Bash TAB completion tutorial

When a user presses the `[TAB]` key while typing commands, Bash will inspect the input to find a relevant "completion specification", or `compspec`. If available, the `compspec` will generate a list of possible suggestions to complete the current word. A custom `compsec` can be generated for any command using *bash completion builtins*[23] and the bash variables that start with the `COMP` keyword[24].

First, let's see a quick example of how you can make a completion script in just one line of code. With the command below, we are asking Bash to give us three suggestions for `echo`: `foo`, `bar` and `bAr`. Please run it in your terminal for the next steps.

```
$ complete -W "foo bar bAr" echo
```

The possible completion suggestions are fed into `complete` using the `-W` option followed by a list of space delimited words. Let's see it in action:

```
$ echo [TAB][TAB]
bar  bAr  foo
```

[23] `https://www.gnu.org/software/bash/manual/html_node/Programmable-Completion-Builtins.html`

[24] `https://www.gnu.org/software/bash/manual/html_node/Bash-Variables.html`

Nicely done! Just note that the strings are sorted alphabetically, not in the original order. Also, an arbitrary number of space characters are printed between them (based on the number of suggestions and terminal size, etc.). Now, if you type '`f`' and press `[TAB]`, bash will automatically figure out that you wanted `foo` and it be completed right away:

```
$ myprogram f[TAB]
$ myprogram foo
```

However, nothing will happen if you type '`b`' and press `[TAB]` only *once*. This is because of the ambiguity: there is not enough information to figure out which suggestion you want: `bar` or `bAr`? So, if you press `[TAB]` twice, it will print out all the options that start with '`b`':

```
$ echo b[TAB][TAB]
bar  bAr
$ echo ba[TAB]
$ echo bar
```

Not bad for a simple program. But what if you need more control? By passing the `-F` option to `complete` instead of `-W`, it will run a *function* for generating the suggestions, instead of using a static string. For example, let's assume that the expected value after `foo` is the number of files in the current directory. Since the logic is getting more complex, let's write and save the commands below into a shell script with an arbitrary name such as `completion-tutorial.sh`:

```
$ cat completion-tutorial.sh
_echo(){
    if [ "$3" == "foo" ]; then
      COMPREPLY=( $(ls | wc -l) )
    else
      COMPREPLY=( $(compgen -W "foo bar bAr" -- "$2") )
    fi
}
complete -F _echo echo
```

We will look at it in detail soon. But for now, let's `source` the file into your current terminal and check if it works as expected:

```
$ source completion-tutorial.sh
$ echo [TAB][TAB]
foo bar bAr
$ echo foo [TAB]
$ touch empty.txt
$ echo foo [TAB]
```

Success! As you see, this allows for setting up highly customized completion scripts. Now let's have a closer look at the `completion-tutorial.sh` completion script from above. First, the '`-F`' option in front the `complete` command indicates that we want shell to execute the `_echo` function whenever `echo` is called. As a convention, the function name should be the same as the program name, but prefixed with an underscore ('`_`').

Within the `_echo` function, we're checking if `$3` is equal to `foo`. In Bash's auto-complete, `$3` means the word **before** current cursor position. In fact, these are the arguments that the `_echo` function is receiving:

`$1` The name of the command, here it is '`echo`'.

`$2` The current word being completed (empty unless we are in the middle of typing a word).

`$3` The word before the word being completed.

To tell the completion script what to reply with, we use the `COMPREPLY` array. This array holds all the suggestions that `complete` will show for the user in the end. In the example above, we simply give it the string output of '`ls | wc -l`'.

Finally, we have the `compgen` command. According to bash programmable completion builtins manual, the command `compgen [OPTION] [WORD]` generates possible completion matches for `[WORD]` according to `[OPTIONS]`. Using the '`-W`' option asks `compgen` to generate a list of words from an input string. This is known as *Word Splitting*[25]. `compgen` will automatically use the `$IFS` variable to split the string into a list of words. You can check the default delimiters by calling:

```
$ printf %q "$IFS"
```

The default value of `$IFS` might be '` \t\n`'. This means the SPACE, TAB, and New-line characters. Finally, notice the '`-- "$2"`' in this command:

```
COMPREPLY=( $(compgen -W "foo bar bAr" -- "$2") )
```

Here, the '`--`' instructs `compgen` to only reply with a list of words that match `$2`, i.e. the current word being completed. That is why when you type the letter '`b`', `complete` will reply only with its matches ('`bar`' and '`bAr`'), and will exclude '`foo`'.

Let's get a little more realistic, and develop a very basic completion script for one of Gnuastro's programs. Since the `--help` option will list all the options available in Gnuastro's programs, we are going to use its output and create a very basic TAB completion for it. Note that the actual TAB completion in Gnuastro is a little more complex than this and fully described in Section 13.8.2 [Implementing TAB completion in Gnuastro], page 977. But this is a good exercise to get started.

We will use `asttable` as the demo, and the goal is to suggest all options that this program has to offer. You can print all of them (with a lot of extra information) with this command:

```
$ asttable --help
```

Let's write an `awk` script that prints all of the long options. When printing the option names we can safely ignore the short options because if a user knows about the short options, s/he already knows exactly what they want! Also, due to their single-character length, they will be too cryptic without their descriptions.

One way to catch the long options is through `awk` as shown below. We only keep the lines that 1) starting with an empty space, 2) their first no-white character is '`-`' and that have the format of '`--`' followed by any number of numbers or characters. Within those lines, if the first word ends in a comma ('`,`'), the first word is the short option, so we want the second word (which is the long option). Otherwise, the first word is the long option. But for options that take a value, this will also include the format of the value (for example,

[25] `https://www.gnu.org/software/bash/manual/html_node/Word-Splitting.html`

`--column=STR`). So with a `sed` command, we remove everything that is after the equal sign, but keep the equal sign itself (to highlight to the user that this option should have a value).

```
$ asttable --help \
           | awk '/^  / && $1 ~ /^-/ && /--+[a-zA-Z0-9]*/ { \
                    if($1 ~ /,$/) name=$2; \
                    else          name=$1; \
                    print name}' \
           | sed -e's|=.*|=|'
```

If we wanted to show all the options to the user, we could simply feed the values of the command above to `compgen` and `COMPREPLY` subsequently. But, we need *smarter* completions: we want to offer suggestions based on the previous options that have already been typed in. Just Beware! Sometimes the program might not be acting as you expected. In that case, using debug messages can clear things up. You can add a `echo` command before the completion function ends, and check all current variables. This can save a lot of headaches, since things can get complex.

Take the option `--wcsfile=` for example. This option accepts a FITS file. Usually, the user is trying to feed a FITS file from the current directory. So it would be nice if we could help them and print only a list of FITS files sitting in the current directory – or whatever directory they have typed-in so far.

But there's a catch. When splitting the user's input line, Bash will consider '`=`' as a separate word. To avoid getting caught in changing the `IFS` or `WORDBREAKS` values, we will simply check for '`=`' and act accordingly. That is, if the previous word is a '`=`', we will ignore it and take the word before that as the previous word. Also, if the current word is a '`=`', ignore it completely. Taking all of that into consideration, the code below might serve well:

```
_asttable(){
    if [ "$2" = "=" ]; then word=""
    else                    word="$2"
    fi

    if [ "$3" = "=" ]; then prev="${COMP_WORDS[COMP_CWORD-2]}"
    else                    prev="${COMP_WORDS[COMP_CWORD-1]}"
    fi

    case "$prev" in
      --wcsfile)
        COMPREPLY=( $(compgen -f -X "!*.[fF][iI][tT][sS]" -- "$word") )
      ;;
    esac
}
complete -o nospace -F _asttable asttable
```

To test the code above, write it into `asttable-tutorial.sh`, and load it into your running terminal with this command:

```
$ source asttable-tutorial.sh
```

If you then go to a directory that has at least one FITS file (with a `.fits` suffix, among other files), you can checkout the function by typing the following command. You will see that only files ending in `.fits` are shown, not any other file.

```
asttable --wcsfile=[TAB][TAB]
```

The code above first identifies the current and previous words. It then checks if the previous word is equal to `--wcsfile` and if so, fills `COMPREPLY` array with the necessary suggestions. We are using `case` here (instead of `if`) because in a real scenario, we need to check many more values and `case` is far better suited for such cases (cleaner and more efficient code).

The `-f` option in `compgen` indicates we're looking for a file. The `-X` option *filters out* the filenames that match the next regular expression pattern. Therefore we should start the regular expression with '`!`' if we want the files matching the regular expression. The `-- "$word"` component collects only filenames that match the current word being typed. And last but not least, the '`-o nospace`' option in the `complete` command instructs the completion script to *not* append a white space after each suggestion. That is important because the long format of an option, its value is more clear when it sticks to the option name with a '`=`' sign.

You have now written a very basic and working TAB completion script that can easily be generalized to include more options (and be good for a single/simple program). However, Gnuastro has many programs that share many similar things and the options are not independent. Also, complex situations do often come up: for example, some people use a `.fit` suffix for FITS files and others do not even use a suffix at all! So in practice, things need to get a little more complicated, but the core concept is what you learnt in this section. We just modularize the process (breaking logically independent steps into separate functions to use in different situations). In Section 13.8.2 [Implementing TAB completion in Gnuastro], page 977, we will review the generalities of Gnuastro's implementation of Bash TAB completion.

13.8.2 Implementing TAB completion in Gnuastro

The basics of Bash auto-completion was reviewed in Section 13.8.1 [Bash TAB completion tutorial], page 973. Gnuastro is a very complex package of many programs, that have many similar features, so implementing those principles in an easy to maintain manner requires a modular solution. As a result, Bash's TAB completion is implemented as multiple files in Gnuastro:

`bin/completion.bash.built` (in build directory, automatically created)

This file contains the values of all Gnuastro options or arguments that take fixed strings as values (not file names). For example, the names of Arithmetic's operators (see Section 6.2.4 [Arithmetic operators], page 412), or spectral line names (like `--obsline` in Section 9.1.3.1 [CosmicCalculator input options], page 683).

This file is created automatically during the building of Gnuastro. The recipe to build it is available in Gnuastro's top-level `Makefile.am` (under the target `bin/completion.bash`). It parses the respective Gnuastro source file that contains the necessary user-specified strings. All the acceptable values values are then stored as shell variables (within a function).

`bin/completion.bash.in` (in source directory, under version control)
: All the low-level completion functions that are common to all programs are stored here. It thus contains functions that will parse the command-line or files, or suggest the completion replies.

`PROGNAME-complete.bash` (in source directory, under version control)
: All Gnuastro programs contain a `PROGNAME-complete.bash` script within their source (for more on the fixed files of each program, see Section 13.4 [Program source], page 965). This file contains the very high-level (program-specific) Bash programmable completion features that are almost always defined in Gnuastro-generic Bash completion file (`bin/completion.bash.in`).

  The top-level function that is called by Bash should be called `_gnuastro_autocomplete_PROGNAME` and its last line should be the `complete` command of Bash which calls this function. The contents of `_gnuastro_autocomplete_PROGNAME` are almost identical for all the programs, it is just a very high-level function that either calls `_gnuastro_autocomplete_PROGNAME_arguments` to manage suggestions for the program's arguments or `_gnuastro_autocomplete_PROGNAME_option_value` to manage suggestions for the program's option values.

The scripts above follow the following conventions. After reviewing the list, please also look into the functions for examples of each point.

- No global shell variables in any completion script: the contents of the files above are directly loaded into the user's environment. So to keep the user's environment clean and avoid annoyance to the users, everything should be defined as shell functions, and any variable within the functions should be set as `local`.
- All the function names should start with '`_gnuastro_autocomplete_`', again to avoid populating the user's function name-space with possibly conflicting names.
- Outputs of functions should be written in the `local` variables of the higher-level functions that called them.

13.9 Developer's checklist

This is a checklist of things to do after applying your changes/additions in Gnuastro:

1. If the change is non-trivial, write test(s) in the `tests/progname/` directory to test the change(s)/addition(s) you have made. Then add their file names to `tests/Makefile.am`.
2. If your change involves a change in command-line behavior of a Gnuastro program or script (for example, adding a new option or argument), create or update the respective `bin/PROGNAME/completion.sh` file described under the Section 13.8 [Bash programmable completion], page 973, section.
3. Run `$ make check` to make sure everything is working correctly.
4. Make sure the documentation (this book) is completely up to date with your changes, see Section 13.5 [Documentation], page 970.
5. Commit the change to your issue branch (see Section 13.12.3 [Production workflow], page 984, and Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985). Afterwards, run Autoreconf to generate the appropriate version number:

```
$ autoreconf -f
```

6. Finally, to make sure everything will be built, installed and checked correctly run the following command (after re-configuring, and rebuilding). To greatly speed up the process, use multiple threads (8 in the example below, change it appropriately)

   ```
   $ make distcheck -j8
   ```

   This command will create a distribution file (ending with `.tar.gz`) and try to compile it in the most general cases, then it will run the tests on what it has built in its own mini-environment. If `$ make distcheck` finishes successfully, then you are safe to send your changes to us to implement or for your own purposes. See Section 13.12.3 [Production workflow], page 984, and Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985.

13.10 Gnuastro project webpage

Gnuastro's central management hub (`https://savannah.gnu.org/projects/gnuastro/`)[26] is located on GNU Savannah (`https://savannah.gnu.org/`)[27]. Savannah is the central software development management system for many GNU projects. Through this central hub, you can view the list of activities that the developers are engaged in, their activity on the version controlled source, and other things. Each defined activity in the development cycle is known as an 'issue' (or 'item'). An issue can be a bug (see Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15), or a suggested feature (see Section 1.10 [Suggest new feature], page 17) or an enhancement or generally any *one* job that is to be done. In Savannah, issues are classified into three categories or 'tracker's:

Support
: This tracker is a way that (possibly anonymous) users can get in touch with the Gnuastro developers. It is a complement to the bug-gnuastro mailing list (see Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15). Anyone can post an issue to this tracker. The developers will not submit an issue to this list. They will only reassign the issues in this list to the other two trackers if they are valid[28]. Ideally (when the developers have time to put on Gnuastro, please do not forget that Gnuastro is a volunteer effort), there should be no open items in this tracker.

Bugs
: This tracker contains all the known bugs in Gnuastro (problems with the existing tools).

Tasks
: The items in this tracker contain the future plans (or new features/capabilities) that are to be added to Gnuastro.

All the trackers can be browsed by a (possibly anonymous) visitor, but to edit and comment on the Bugs and Tasks trackers, you have to be a registered on Savannah. When posting an issue to a tracker, it is very important to choose the 'Category' and 'Item Group' options accurately. The first contains a list of all Gnuastro's programs along with 'Installation', 'New program' and 'Webpage'. The "Item Group" contains the nature of the issue, for example, if it is a 'Crash' in the software (a bug), or a problem in the documentation (also a bug) or a feature request or an enhancement.

[26] `https://savannah.gnu.org/projects/gnuastro/`

[27] `https://savannah.gnu.org/`

[28] Some of the issues registered here might be due to a mistake on the user's side, not an actual bug in the program.

The set of horizontal links on the top of the page (Starting with 'Main' and 'Homepage' and finishing with 'News') are the easiest way to access these trackers (and other major aspects of the project) from any part of the project web page. Hovering your mouse over them will open a drop down menu that will link you to the different things you can do on each tracker (for example, 'Submit new' or 'Browse'). When you browse each tracker, you can use the "Display Criteria" link above the list to limit the displayed issues to what you are interested in. The 'Category' and 'Group Item' (explained above) are a good starting point.

Any new issue that is submitted to any of the trackers, or any comments that are posted for an issue, is directly forwarded to the gnuastro-devel mailing list (`https://lists.gnu.org/mailman/listinfo/gnuastro-devel`, see Section 13.11 [Developing mailing lists], page 980, for more). This will allow anyone interested to be up to date on the over-all development activity in Gnuastro and will also provide an alternative (to Savannah) archiving for the development discussions. Therefore, it is not recommended to directly post an email to this mailing list, but do all the activities (for example add new issues, or comment on existing ones) on Savannah.

Do I need to be a member in Savannah to contribute to Gnuastro? No.

The full version controlled history of Gnuastro is available for anonymous download or cloning. See Section 13.12.3 [Production workflow], page 984, for a description of Gnuastro's Integration-Manager Workflow. In short, you can either send in patches, or make your own fork. If you choose the latter, you can push your changes to your own fork and inform us. We will then pull your changes and merge them into the main project. Please see Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985, for a tutorial.

13.11 Developing mailing lists

To keep the developers and interested users up to date with the activity and discussions within Gnuastro, there are two mailing lists which you can subscribe to:

`gnuastro-devel@gnu.org`
(at `https://lists.gnu.org/mailman/listinfo/gnuastro-devel`)

All the posts made in the support, bugs and tasks discussions of Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979, are also sent to this mailing address and archived. By subscribing to this list you can stay up to date with the discussions that are going on between the developers before, during and (possibly) after working on an issue. All discussions are either in the context of bugs or tasks which are done on Savannah and circulated to all interested people through this mailing list. Therefore it is not recommended to post anything directly to this mailing list. Any mail that is sent to it from Savannah to this list has a link under the title "Reply to this item at:". That link will take you directly to the issue discussion page, where you can read the discussion history or join it.

While you are posting comments on the Savannah issues, be sure to update the meta-data. For example, if the task/bug is not assigned to anyone and you would like to take it, change the "Assigned to" box, or if you want to report

that it has been applied, change the status and so on. All these changes will also be circulated with the email very clearly.

`gnuastro-commits@gnu.org`
(at `https://lists.gnu.org/mailman/listinfo/gnuastro-commits`)
This mailing list is defined to circulate all commits that are done in Gnuastro's version controlled source, see Section 3.2.2 [Version controlled source], page 228. If you have any ideas, or suggestions on the commits, please use the bug and task trackers on Savannah to followup the discussion, do not post to this list. All the commits that are made for an already defined issue or task will state the respective ID so you can find it easily.

13.12 Contributing to Gnuastro

You have this great idea or have found a good fix to a problem which you would like to implement in Gnuastro. You have also become familiar with the general design of Gnuastro in the previous sections of this chapter (see Chapter 13 [Developing], page 958) and want to start working on and sharing your new addition/change with the whole community as part of the official release. This is great and your contribution is most welcome. This section and the next (see Section 13.9 [Developer's checklist], page 978) are written in the hope of making it as easy as possible for you to share your great idea with the community.

In this section we discuss the final steps you have to take: legal and technical. From the legal perspective, the copyright of any work you do on Gnuastro has to be assigned to the Free Software Foundation (FSF) and the GNU operating system, or you have to sign a disclaimer. We do this to ensure that Gnuastro can remain free in the future, see Section 13.12.1 [Copyright assignment], page 981. From the technical point of view, in this section we also discuss commit guidelines (Section 13.12.2 [Commit guidelines], page 982) and the general version control workflow of Gnuastro in Section 13.12.3 [Production workflow], page 984, along with a tutorial in Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985.

Recall that before starting the work on your idea, be sure to checkout the bugs and tasks trackers in Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979, and announce your work there so you do not end up spending time on something others have already worked on, and also to attract similarly interested developers to help you.

13.12.1 Copyright assignment

Gnuastro's copyright is owned by the Free Software Foundation (FSF) to ensure that Gnuastro always remains free. The FSF has also provided a Contributor FAQ (`https://www.fsf.org/licensing/contributor-faq`) to further clarify the reasons, so we encourage you to read it. Professor Eben Moglen, of the Columbia University Law School has given a nice summary of the reasons for this at `https://www.gnu.org/licenses/why-assign`. Below we are copying it verbatim for self consistency (in case you are offline or reading in print).

> Under US copyright law, which is the law under which most free software programs have historically been first published, there are very substantial procedural advantages to registration of copyright. And despite the broad right of distribution conveyed by the GPL, enforcement of copyright is generally not possible for distributors: only the copyright holder or someone having assignment of the copyright can enforce the license. If there are multiple authors of

> a copyrighted work, successful enforcement depends on having the cooperation of all authors.
>
> In order to make sure that all of our copyrights can meet the record keeping and other requirements of registration, and in order to be able to enforce the GPL most effectively, FSF requires that each author of code incorporated in FSF projects provide a copyright assignment, and, where appropriate, a disclaimer of any work-for-hire ownership claims by the programmer's employer. That way we can be sure that all the code in FSF projects is free code, whose freedom we can most effectively protect, and therefore on which other developers can completely rely.

Please get in touch with the Gnuastro maintainer (currently Mohammad Akhlaghi, mohammad -at- akhlaghi -dot- org) to follow the procedures. It is possible to do this for each change (good for a single contribution), and also more generally for all the changes/additions you do in the future within Gnuastro. So if you have already assigned the copyright of your work on another GNU software to the FSF, it should be done again for Gnuastro. The FSF has staff working on these legal issues and the maintainer will get you in touch with them to do the paperwork. The maintainer will just be informed in the end so your contributions can be merged within the Gnuastro source code.

Gnuastro will gratefully acknowledge (see Section 1.13 [Acknowledgments], page 19) all the people who have assigned their copyright to the FSF and have thus helped to guarantee the freedom and reliability of Gnuastro. The Free Software Foundation will also acknowledge your copyright contributions in the Free Software Supporter: `https://www.fsf.org/free-software-supporter` which will circulate to a very large community (225,910 people in July 2021). See the archives for some examples and subscribe to receive interesting updates. The very active code contributors (or developers) will also be recognized as project members on the Gnuastro project web page (see Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979) and can be given a `gnu.org` email address. So your very valuable contribution and copyright assignment will not be forgotten and is highly appreciated by a very large community. If you are reluctant to sign an assignment, a disclaimer is also acceptable.

Do I need a disclaimer from my university or employer? It depends on the contract with your university or employer. From the FSF's `/gd/gnuorg/conditions.text`: "If you are employed to do programming, or have made an agreement with your employer that says it owns programs you write, we need a signed piece of paper from your employer disclaiming rights to" Gnuastro. The FSF's copyright clerk will kindly help you decide, please consult the following email address: "assign -at- gnu -dot- org".

13.12.2 Commit guidelines

To be able to cleanly integrate your work with the other developers, **never commit on the `master` branch** (see Section 13.12.3 [Production workflow], page 984, for a complete discussion and Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985, for a cookbook example). In short, leave `master` only for changes you fetch, or pull from the official repository (see Section 3.2.2.2 [Synchronizing], page 231).

In the Gnuastro commit messages, we strive to follow these standards. Note that in the early phases of Gnuastro's development, we are experimenting and so if you notice

earlier commits do not satisfy some of the guidelines below, it is because they predate that guideline.

Commit title

The commits have to start with one short descriptive title. The title is separated from the body with one blank line. Run `git log` to see some of the most recent commit messages as an example. In general, the title should satisfy the following conditions:

- It is best for the title to be short, about 60 (or even 50) characters. Most emulated command-line terminals are about 80 characters wide. However, we should also allow for the commit hashes which are printed in `git log --oneline`, and also branch names or the graph structure outputs of `git log` which are also commonly used.
- The title should not finish with any full-stops or periods (‘`.`’).

Commit body

The body of the commit message is separated from the title by one empty line. Recall that anyone who has subscribed to `gnuastro-commits` mailing list will get the commit in their email after it has been pushed to `master`. People will also read them when they synchronize with the main Gnuastro repository (see Section 3.2.2.2 [Synchronizing], page 231). Finally, the commit messages will later be used to update the `NEWS` file on each release. Therefore the commit message body plays a very important role in the development of Gnuastro, so please adhere to the following guidelines.

- The body should be very descriptive. Start the commit message body by explaining what changes your commit makes from a user's perspective (added, changed, or removed options, or arguments to programs or libraries, or modified algorithms, or new installation step, etc.).
- Try to explain the committed contents as best as you can. Recall that the readers of your commit message do not necessarily have your current background. After some time you will also forget the context, so this request is not just for others[29]. Therefore be very descriptive and explain as much as possible: what the bug/task was, justify the way you fixed it and discuss other possible solutions that you might not have included. For the last item, it is best to discuss them thoroughly as comments in the appropriate section of the code, but only give a short summary in the commit message. Note that all added and removed source code lines will also be circulated in the `gnuastro-commits` mailing list.
- Like all other Gnuastro's text files, the lines in the commit body should not be longer than 75 characters, see Section 13.3 [Coding conventions], page 961. This is to ensure that on standard terminal emulators (with 80 character width), the `git log` output can be cleanly displayed (note that the commit message is indented in the output of `git log`). If you use Emacs, Gnuastro's `.dir-locals.el` file will ensure that your commits satisfy this condition (using `M-q`).

[29] `http://catb.org/esr/writings/unix-koans/prodigy.html`

- When the commit is related to a task or a bug, please include the respective ID (in the format of `bug/task #ID`, note the space) in the commit message (from Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979) for interested people to be able to followup the discussion that took place there. If the commit fixes a bug or finishes a task, the recommended way is to add a line after the body with '`This fixes bug #ID.`', or '`This finishes task #ID.`'. Do not assume that the reader has internet access to check the bug's full description when reading the commit message, so give a short introduction too.

Below you can see a good commit message example (do not forget to read it, it has tips for you). After reading this, please run `git log` on the `master` branch and read some of the recent commits for more realistic examples.

```
The first line should be the title of the commit

An empty line is necessary after the title so Git does not confuse
lines.  This top paragraph of the body of the commit usually describes
the reason this commit was done.  Therefore it usually starts with
"Until now ...".  It is very useful to explain the reason behind the
change, things that are not immediately obvious when looking into the
code.  You do not need to list the names of the files, or what lines
have been changed, do not forget that the code changes are fully stored
within Git :-).

In the second paragraph (or any later paragraph!) of the body, we
describe the solution and why (not "how"!) the particular solution was
implemented.  So we usually start this part of the commit body with
"With this commit ...".  Again, you do not need to go into the details
that can be seen from the 'git diff' command (like the file names that
have been changed or the code that has been implemented).  The important
thing here is the things that are not immediately obvious from looking
into the code.

You can continue the explanation and it is encouraged to be very
explicit about the "human factor" of the change as much as possible, not
technical details.
```

13.12.3 Production workflow

Fortunately 'Pro Git' has done a wonderful job in explaining the different workflows in Chapter 5[30] and in particular the "Integration-Manager Workflow" explained there. The implementation of this workflow is nicely explained in Section 5.2[31] under "Forked-Public-Project". We have also prepared a short tutorial in Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985. Anything on the master branch should always be tested and ready to be built and used. As described in 'Pro Git', there are two methods for you to contribute to Gnuastro in the Integration-Manager Workflow:

[30] `http://git-scm.com/book/en/v2/Distributed-Git-Distributed-Workflows`

[31] `http://git-scm.com/book/en/v2/Distributed-Git-Contributing-to-a-Project`

1. You can send commit patches by email as fully explained in 'Pro Git'. This is good for your first few contributions. Just note that raw patches (containing only the diff) do not have any meta-data (author name, date, etc.). Therefore they will not allow us to fully acknowledge your contributions as an author in Gnuastro: in the `AUTHORS` file and at the start of the PDF book. These author lists are created automatically from the version controlled source.

   To receive full acknowledgment when submitting a patch, is thus advised to use Git's `format-patch` tool. See Pro Git's Public project over email (`https://git-scm.com/book/en/v2/Distributed-Git-Contributing-to-a-Project#Public-Project-over-Email`) section for a nice explanation. If you would like to get more heavily involved in Gnuastro's development, then you can try the next solution.
2. You can have your own forked copy of Gnuastro on any hosting site you like (Codeberg, Gitlab, GitHub, BitBucket, etc.) and inform us when your changes are ready so we merge them in Gnuastro. This is more suited for people who commonly contribute to the code (see Section 13.12.4 [Forking tutorial], page 985).

In both cases, your commits (with your name and information) will be preserved and your contributions will thus be fully recorded in the history of Gnuastro and in the `AUTHORS` file and this book (second page in the PDF format) once they have been incorporated into the official repository. Needless to say that in such cases, be sure to follow the bug or task trackers (or subscribe to the `gnuastro-devel` mailing list) and contact us beforehand so you do not do something that someone else is already working on. In that case, you can get in touch with them and help the job go on faster, see Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979. This workflow is currently mostly borrowed from the general recommendations of Git[32] and GitHub. But since Gnuastro is currently under heavy development, these might change and evolve to better suit our needs.

13.12.4 Forking tutorial

This is a tutorial on the second suggested method (commonly known as forking) that you can submit your modifications in Gnuastro (see Section 13.12.3 [Production workflow], page 984).

To start, please create an *empty* repository on your hosting service web page (we recommend Codeberg since it is fully free software[33]). By empty, we mean that you don't let the web service fill your new repository with a `README.md` file (they usually have a check-box for this). Also, since Gnuastro is a public repository, it is much easier if you define your project as a public repository (not a private one).

If this is your first hosted repository on the web page, you also have to upload your public SSH key[34] for the `git push` command below to work. Here we will assume you use the name `janedoe` to refer to yourself everywhere and that you choose `gnuastro` as the name of your Gnuastro fork. Any online hosting service will give you an address (similar to

[32] `https://github.com/git/git/blob/master/Documentation/SubmittingPatches`

[33] See `https://www.gnu.org/software/repo-criteria-evaluation.html` for an evaluation of the major existing repositories. Gnuastro uses GNU Savannah (which also has the highest ranking in the evaluation), but for starters, Codeberg may be easier (it is fully free software).

[34] for example, see this explanation provided by Codeberg: `https://docs.codeberg.org/security/ssh-key`.

the '`git@codeberg.org:...`' below) of the empty repository you have created using their web page, use that address in the third line below.

```
$ git clone git://git.sv.gnu.org/gnuastro.git
$ cd gnuastro
$ git remote add janedoe git@codeberg.org:janedoe/gnuastro.git
$ git push janedoe master
```

The full Gnuastro history is now pushed onto your hosting service and the `janedoe` remote is now also following your `master` branch. If you run `git remote show REMOTENAME` for the `origin` and `janedoe` remotes, you will see their difference: the first has pull access and the second does not. This nicely summarizes the main idea behind this workflow: you push to your remote repository, we pull from it and merge it into `master`, then you finalize it by pulling from the main repository.

To test (compile) your changes during your work, you will need to bootstrap the version controlled source, see Section 3.2.2.1 [Bootstrapping], page 229, for a full description. The cloning process above is only necessary for your first time setup, you do not need to repeat it. However, please repeat the steps below for each independent issue you intend to work on.

Let's assume you have found a bug in `lib/statistics.c`'s median calculating function. Before actually doing anything, please announce it (see Section 1.9 [Report a bug], page 15) so everyone knows you are working on it, or to confirm if others are not already working on it. With the commands below, you make a branch, checkout to it, correct the bug and check if it is indeed fixed. But before all of this, make sure that you are on the `master` branch and that your `master` branch is up to date with the main Gnuastro repository with the first two commands.

```
$ git checkout master
$ git pull
$ git checkout -b bug-median-stats      # Choose a descriptive name
$ emacs lib/statistics.c
```

With the commands above, you have opened your favorite text editor (if it is not Emacs, feel free to use any other!) and are starting to make changes. Making changes will usually involve checking the compilation and outputs of the parts you have changed. Gnuastro already has some facilities to help you in your checks during/after development.

`developer-build`

This script does a full build (from the configuration phase to producing the final distribution tarball). During the process, if there is any error or crash, it will abort. This allows you to find problems that you hadn't predicted while modifying the files. This script is described more completely in Section 3.3.2 [Separate build and source directories], page 242. Here is an example of running this script from scratch (the `junk` is just a place-holder for a URL):

```
$ ./developer-build -p junk
```

If you just want a fast build to start your developing, the recommended way is to run it in debugging mode like below:

```
$ ./developer-build -d
```

Without debugging mode, building Gnuastro can take several minutes due to the highly optimizable code structure of Gnuastro (which significantly improves

the run-time of the programs, but is slower in the compilation phase). During development, you rarely need high speed at *run-time*. This is because once you find the bug, you can decrease the size of the dataset to be very small and not be affected by run-time optimizations. However, during development, you do need a high speed at *build-time* to see the changes fast and also need debugging flags (for example to run with Valgrind). Debugging flags are lost in the default highly-optimized build.

`tests/during-dev.sh`
: This script is most commonly used during the development of a new feature within the library or programs (it is also mentioned in Section 13.6 [Building and debugging], page 971). It assumes that you have built Gnuastro with the `./developer-build` script (usually in debugging mode). In other words, it assumes that all the built products are in the `build` directory.

  It has internal variables to set the name of the program you are testing, the name of its arguments and options, as well as the location that the built program should be run in. It is heavily commented, so we recommend reading those comments and will not go into more detail here.

`make pdf`
: When making changes in the book, you can run this in the `build` directory to see your changes in the final PDF before committing. Furthermore, if you add or update an example code block of the book, you should copy-paste it into a text editor and check that it runs correctly (typos are very common and can be very annoying for first-time readers). If there are no problems, you can add your modification and commit it.

Once you have implemented your bug fix and made sure that it works, through the checks above, you are ready to stage, commit and push your changes with the commands below. Since Gnuastro is a large project, commit messages have to follow certain standards that you should follow, they are described in Section 13.12.2 [Commit guidelines], page 982. Please read that section carefully, and view previous commits (with `git log`) before writing the commit message:

```
$ git add lib/statistics.c
$ git commit
$ git push janedoe bug-median-stats
```

Your new branch is now on your hosted repository. Through the respective tacker on Savannah (see Section 13.10 [Gnuastro project webpage], page 979) you can then let the other developers know that your `bug-median-stats` branch is ready. They will pull your work, test it themselves and if it is ready to be merged into the main Gnuastro history, they will merge it into the `master` branch. After that is done, you can simply checkout your local `master` branch and pull all the changes from the main repository. After the pull you can run '`git log`' as shown below, to see how `bug-median-stats` is merged with master. To finalize, you can push all the changes to your hosted repository and delete the branch:

```
$ git checkout master
$ git pull
$ git log --oneline --graph --decorate --all
$ git push janedoe master
$ git branch -d bug-median-stats                # delete local branch
```

```
$ git push janedoe --delete bug-median-stats    # delete remote branch
```

Just as a reminder, always keep your work on each issue in a separate local and remote branch so work can progress on them independently. After you make your announcement, other people might contribute to the branch before merging it in to `master`, so this is very important. As a final reminder: before starting each issue branch from `master`, be sure to run `git pull` in `master` as shown above. This will enable you to start your branch (work) from the most recent commit and thus simplify the final merging of your work.

Appendix A Other useful software

In this appendix the installation of programs and libraries that are not direct Gnuastro dependencies are discussed. However they can be useful for working with Gnuastro.

A.1 SAO DS9

SAO DS9 (`http://ds9.si.edu`) is not a requirement of Gnuastro, it is a FITS image viewer. It is therefore a useful tool to visually inspect the images/cubes of your Gnuastro inputs or outputs (for tables, see Section A.2 [TOPCAT], page 990). In Gnuastro we have an installed script to run DS9 or TOPCAT on any number of FITS files (depending on it being an image or table), see Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705, (which also includes a `.desktop` file for GUI integration). After installing DS9, you can easily use that script to open any FITS file (table, image or cube).

Like the other packages, it might already be available in your distribution's repositories; but these may be outdated. DS9 is also already pre-compiled for many common operating systems in the download section of its own web page:

1. Find your operating system in `https://ds9.si.edu/download`. Here are some tips when trying to find the proper directory:
   - Many GNU/Linux operating systems are compatible with Debian or Fedora, so if you don't find your operating system's name, probably the latest Debian or Fedora will also work for you.
   - macOS uses the low-level "Darwin" kernel. Therefore, if you have a macOS, also consider those directories that start with `darwin`.
   - The CPU architectures (as suffixes) at the end of the directory names can be classified like this:

     `x86` Intel CPUs.

     `arm64` Apple's M1 CPUs.
2. With the operating system directories, you will find a compressed tarball that you need to download (choose the latest one).
3. Unpack the tarball with a command like below:

   ```
   $ tar -xf ds9.XXXXXXX.X.X.X.tar.gz
   ```
4. This should produce a simple `ds9` file. Before installing, it is good to actually test it like below:

   ```
   $ ./ds9
   ```
5. If the command above opened DS9 with no error, you can safely install it with this command:

   ```
   $ rm ds9*.tar.gz
   $ sudo mv ds9* /usr/local/bin
   ```
6. Go to your home directory and try running DS9 with the two commands below. If it doesn't find it, then you need to add `/usr/local/bin` to your `PATH`, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

   ```
   $ cd
   $ ds9
   ```

Install without root permissions: If you do not have root permissions, you can simply replace `/usr/local/bin` in the command above with `$HOME/.local/bin`. If this directory is not in your `PATH`, you can simply add it with the command below (in your startup file, e.g., `~/.bashrc`). For more on `PATH` and the startup files, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

```
export PATH="$HOME/.local/bin:$PATH"
```

Below you can see a list of known issues in some operating systems that we have found so far. You should be able to identify any potential error when running DS9 from the command-line like above.

- There might be a complaint about the Xss library, which you can find in your distribution package management system.
- You might also get an `XPA` related error. In this case, you have to add the following line to your `~/.bashrc` and `~/.profile` file (you will have to log out and back in again for the latter):

  ```
  export XPA_METHOD=local
  ```

- Your system may not have the SSL library in its standard library path, in this case, put this command in your startup file (for example, `~/.bashrc`):

  ```
  export LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$LD_LIBRARY_PATH:/usr/local/ssl/lib"
  ```

A.2 TOPCAT

TOPCAT (`http://www.star.bris.ac.uk/~mbt/topcat`) is not a requirement of Gnuastro, it is a table viewer and plotter (in many input formats, including FITS, VOTable, and others). TOPCAT is therefore a useful tool to visually inspect the tables of your Gnuastro inputs or outputs (for images, see Section A.1 [SAO DS9], page 989). In Gnuastro we have an installed script to run DS9 or TOPCAT on any number of FITS files (depending on it being an image or table), see Section 10.4 [Viewing FITS file contents with DS9 or TOPCAT], page 705, (which also includes a `.desktop` file for GUI integration). After installing DS9, you can easily use that script to open any FITS file (table, image or cube).

TOPCAT is a very large package with many capabilities to visualize tables (as plots). It also has an extensive documentation (`http://www.star.bris.ac.uk/~mbt/topcat/#docs`) that you can read for optimally using it. TOPCAT is written in Java, so it just needs a relatively recent (in the last decade) Java Virtual Machine (JVM) and Java Runtime Environment (JRE). Your operating system already has a relatively recent Java installation in its package manager, and there is a large chance that it is already installed. So before trying to install Java, try running TOPCAT. If it complains about not finding a suitable Java environment, then proceed to search your operating system's package manager.

To install TOPCAT, you just need to run the following two commands. The first `.jar` file is the main TOPCAT Java ARchive (JAR). JAR is a compressed package of Java files and definitions that should be run with a special Java command. But to avoid bothering users with details of how to call Java, TOPCAT also provides a simple shell script (the second downloaded file below) that is easier to call and will do all the internal checks and call Java properly.

```
$ wget http://www.star.bris.ac.uk/~mbt/topcat/topcat-full.jar
$ wget http://www.star.bris.ac.uk/~mbt/topcat/topcat
$ chmod +x topcat
$ ./topcat           # Just for a check to see if everything works!
$ sudo mv topcat-full.jar topcat /usr/local/bin/
```

Once the two TOPCAT files are copied in the system-wide directory, you can easily open tables with a command like below from anywhere in your operating system.

```
$ topcat table.fits
```

Install without root permissions: If you do not have root permissions, you can simply replace `/usr/local/bin` in the command above with `$HOME/.local/bin`. If this directory is not in your `PATH`, you can simply add it with the command below (in your startup file, e.g., `~/.bashrc`). For more on `PATH` and the startup files, see Section 3.3.1.2 [Installation directory], page 235.

```
export PATH="$HOME/.local/bin:$PATH"
```

A.3 PGPLOT

PGPLOT is a package for making plots in C. It is not directly needed by Gnuastro, but can be used by WCSLIB, see Section 3.1.1.3 [WCSLIB], page 214. As explained in Section 3.1.1.3 [WCSLIB], page 214, you can install WCSLIB without it too. It is very old (the most recent version was released early 2001!), but remains one of the main packages for plotting directly in C. WCSLIB uses this package to make plots if you want it to make plots. If you are interested you can also use it for your own purposes.

If you want your plotting codes in between your C program, PGPLOT is currently one of your best options. The recommended alternative to this method is to get the raw data for the plots in text files and input them into any of the various more modern and capable plotting tools separately, for example, the Matplotlib library in Python or PGFplots in LaTeX. This will also significantly help code readability. Let's get back to PGPLOT for the sake of WCSLIB. Installing it is a little tricky (mainly because it is so old!).

You can download the most recent version from the FTP link in its web page[1]. You can unpack it with the `tar -xf` command. Let's assume the directory you have unpacked it to is `PGPLOT`, most probably it is: `/home/username/Downloads/pgplot/`. Open the `drivers.list` file:

```
$ gedit drivers.list
```

Remove the `!` for the following lines and save the file in the end:

```
PSDRIV 1 /PS
PSDRIV 2 /VPS
PSDRIV 3 /CPS
PSDRIV 4 /VCPS
XWDRIV 1 /XWINDOW
XWDRIV 2 /XSERVE
```

[1] `http://www.astro.caltech.edu/~tjp/pgplot/`

Do not choose GIF or VGIF, there is a problem in their codes.

Open the `PGPLOT/sys_linux/g77_gcc.conf` file:

```
$ gedit PGPLOT/sys_linux/g77_gcc.conf
```

change the line saying: `FCOMPL="g77"` to `FCOMPL="gfortran"`, and save it. This is a very important step during the compilation of the code if you are in GNU/Linux. You now have to create a folder in `/usr/local`, do not forget to replace `PGPLOT` with your unpacked address:

```
$ su
# mkdir /usr/local/pgplot
# cd /usr/local/pgplot
# cp PGPLOT/drivers.list ./
```

To make the Makefile, type the following command:

```
# PGPLOT/makemake PGPLOT linux g77_gcc
```

It should finish by saying: `Determining object file dependencies`. You have done the hard part! The rest is easy: run these three commands in order:

```
# make
# make clean
# make cpg
```

Finally you have to place the position of this directory you just made into the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable and define the environment variable `PGPLOT_DIR`. To do that, you have to edit your `.bashrc` file:

```
$ cd ~
$ gedit .bashrc
```

Copy these lines into the text editor and save it:

```
PGPLOT_DIR="/usr/local/pgplot/"; export PGPLOT_DIR
LD_LIBRARY_PATH=$LD_LIBRARY_PATH:/usr/local/pgplot/
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH
```

You need to log out and log back in again so these definitions take effect. After you logged back in, you want to see the result of all this labor, right? Tim Pearson has done that for you, create a temporary folder in your home directory and copy all the demonstration files in it:

```
$ cd ~
$ mkdir temp
$ cd temp
$ cp /usr/local/pgplot/pgdemo* ./
$ ls
```

You will see a lot of pgdemoXX files, where XX is a number. In order to execute them type the following command and drink your coffee while looking at all the beautiful plots! You are now ready to create your own.

```
$ ./pgdemoXX
```

Appendix B GNU Free Doc. License

Version 1.3, 3 November 2008

0. PREAMBLE

The purpose of this License is to make a manual, textbook, or other functional and useful document *free* in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the effective freedom to copy and redistribute it, with or without modifying it, either commercially or non-commercially. Secondarily, this License preserves for the author and publisher a way to get credit for their work, while not being considered responsible for modifications made by others.

This License is a kind of "copyleft", which means that derivative works of the document must themselves be free in the same sense. It complements the GNU General Public License, which is a copyleft license designed for free software.

We have designed this License in order to use it for manuals for free software, because free software needs free documentation: a free program should come with manuals providing the same freedoms that the software does. But this License is not limited to software manuals; it can be used for any textual work, regardless of subject matter or whether it is published as a printed book. We recommend this License principally for works whose purpose is instruction or reference.

1. APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

This License applies to any manual or other work, in any medium, that contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it can be distributed under the terms of this License. Such a notice grants a world-wide, royalty-free license, unlimited in duration, to use that work under the conditions stated herein. The "Document", below, refers to any such manual or work. Any member of the public is a licensee, and is addressed as "you". You accept the license if you copy, modify or distribute the work in a way requiring permission under copyright law.

A "Modified Version" of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, or with modifications and/or translated into another language.

A "Secondary Section" is a named appendix or a front-matter section of the Document that deals exclusively with the relationship of the publishers or authors of the Document to the Document's overall subject (or to related matters) and contains nothing that could fall directly within that overall subject. (Thus, if the Document is in part a textbook of mathematics, a Secondary Section may not explain any mathematics.) The relationship could be a matter of historical connection with the subject or with related matters, or of legal, commercial, philosophical, ethical or political position regarding them.

The "Invariant Sections" are certain Secondary Sections whose titles are designated, as being those of Invariant Sections, in the notice that says that the Document is released

under this License. If a section does not fit the above definition of Secondary then it is not allowed to be designated as Invariant. The Document may contain zero Invariant Sections. If the Document does not identify any Invariant Sections then there are none.

The "Cover Texts" are certain short passages of text that are listed, as Front-Cover Texts or Back-Cover Texts, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License. A Front-Cover Text may be at most 5 words, and a Back-Cover Text may be at most 25 words.

A "Transparent" copy of the Document means a machine-readable copy, represented in a format whose specification is available to the general public, that is suitable for revising the document straightforwardly with generic text editors or (for images composed of pixels) generic paint programs or (for drawings) some widely available drawing editor, and that is suitable for input to text formatters or for automatic translation to a variety of formats suitable for input to text formatters. A copy made in an otherwise Transparent file format whose markup, or absence of markup, has been arranged to thwart or discourage subsequent modification by readers is not Transparent. An image format is not Transparent if used for any substantial amount of text. A copy that is not "Transparent" is called "Opaque".

Examples of suitable formats for Transparent copies include plain ASCII without markup, Texinfo input format, LaTeX input format, SGML or XML using a publicly available DTD, and standard-conforming simple HTML, PostScript or PDF designed for human modification. Examples of transparent image formats include PNG, XCF and JPG. Opaque formats include proprietary formats that can be read and edited only by proprietary word processors, SGML or XML for which the DTD and/or processing tools are not generally available, and the machine-generated HTML, PostScript or PDF produced by some word processors for output purposes only.

The "Title Page" means, for a printed book, the title page itself, plus such following pages as are needed to hold, legibly, the material this License requires to appear in the title page. For works in formats which do not have any title page as such, "Title Page" means the text near the most prominent appearance of the work's title, preceding the beginning of the body of the text.

The "publisher" means any person or entity that distributes copies of the Document to the public.

A section "Entitled XYZ" means a named subunit of the Document whose title either is precisely XYZ or contains XYZ in parentheses following text that translates XYZ in another language. (Here XYZ stands for a specific section name mentioned below, such as "Acknowledgements", "Dedications", "Endorsements", or "History".) To "Preserve the Title" of such a section when you modify the Document means that it remains a section "Entitled XYZ" according to this definition.

The Document may include Warranty Disclaimers next to the notice which states that this License applies to the Document. These Warranty Disclaimers are considered to be included by reference in this License, but only as regards disclaiming warranties: any other implication that these Warranty Disclaimers may have is void and has no effect on the meaning of this License.

2. VERBATIM COPYING

You may copy and distribute the Document in any medium, either commercially or noncommercially, provided that this License, the copyright notices, and the license notice saying this License applies to the Document are reproduced in all copies, and that you add no other conditions whatsoever to those of this License. You may not use technical measures to obstruct or control the reading or further copying of the copies you make or distribute. However, you may accept compensation in exchange for copies. If you distribute a large enough number of copies you must also follow the conditions in section 3.

You may also lend copies, under the same conditions stated above, and you may publicly display copies.

3. COPYING IN QUANTITY

   If you publish printed copies (or copies in media that commonly have printed covers) of the Document, numbering more than 100, and the Document's license notice requires Cover Texts, you must enclose the copies in covers that carry, clearly and legibly, all these Cover Texts: Front-Cover Texts on the front cover, and Back-Cover Texts on the back cover. Both covers must also clearly and legibly identify you as the publisher of these copies. The front cover must present the full title with all words of the title equally prominent and visible. You may add other material on the covers in addition. Copying with changes limited to the covers, as long as they preserve the title of the Document and satisfy these conditions, can be treated as verbatim copying in other respects.

   If the required texts for either cover are too voluminous to fit legibly, you should put the first ones listed (as many as fit reasonably) on the actual cover, and continue the rest onto adjacent pages.

   If you publish or distribute Opaque copies of the Document numbering more than 100, you must either include a machine-readable Transparent copy along with each Opaque copy, or state in or with each Opaque copy a computer-network location from which the general network-using public has access to download using public-standard network protocols a complete Transparent copy of the Document, free of added material. If you use the latter option, you must take reasonably prudent steps, when you begin distribution of Opaque copies in quantity, to ensure that this Transparent copy will remain thus accessible at the stated location until at least one year after the last time you distribute an Opaque copy (directly or through your agents or retailers) of that edition to the public.

   It is requested, but not required, that you contact the authors of the Document well before redistributing any large number of copies, to give them a chance to provide you with an updated version of the Document.

4. MODIFICATIONS

   You may copy and distribute a Modified Version of the Document under the conditions of sections 2 and 3 above, provided that you release the Modified Version under precisely this License, with the Modified Version filling the role of the Document, thus licensing distribution and modification of the Modified Version to whoever possesses a copy of it. In addition, you must do these things in the Modified Version:

   A. Use in the Title Page (and on the covers, if any) a title distinct from that of the Document, and from those of previous versions (which should, if there were any,

be listed in the History section of the Document). You may use the same title as a previous version if the original publisher of that version gives permission.

B. List on the Title Page, as authors, one or more persons or entities responsible for authorship of the modifications in the Modified Version, together with at least five of the principal authors of the Document (all of its principal authors, if it has fewer than five), unless they release you from this requirement.

C. State on the Title page the name of the publisher of the Modified Version, as the publisher.

D. Preserve all the copyright notices of the Document.

E. Add an appropriate copyright notice for your modifications adjacent to the other copyright notices.

F. Include, immediately after the copyright notices, a license notice giving the public permission to use the Modified Version under the terms of this License, in the form shown in the Addendum below.

G. Preserve in that license notice the full lists of Invariant Sections and required Cover Texts given in the Document's license notice.

H. Include an unaltered copy of this License.

I. Preserve the section Entitled "History", Preserve its Title, and add to it an item stating at least the title, year, new authors, and publisher of the Modified Version as given on the Title Page. If there is no section Entitled "History" in the Document, create one stating the title, year, authors, and publisher of the Document as given on its Title Page, then add an item describing the Modified Version as stated in the previous sentence.

J. Preserve the network location, if any, given in the Document for public access to a Transparent copy of the Document, and likewise the network locations given in the Document for previous versions it was based on. These may be placed in the "History" section. You may omit a network location for a work that was published at least four years before the Document itself, or if the original publisher of the version it refers to gives permission.

K. For any section Entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", Preserve the Title of the section, and preserve in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements and/or dedications given therein.

L. Preserve all the Invariant Sections of the Document, unaltered in their text and in their titles. Section numbers or the equivalent are not considered part of the section titles.

M. Delete any section Entitled "Endorsements". Such a section may not be included in the Modified Version.

N. Do not retitle any existing section to be Entitled "Endorsements" or to conflict in title with any Invariant Section.

O. Preserve any Warranty Disclaimers.

If the Modified Version includes new front-matter sections or appendices that qualify as Secondary Sections and contain no material copied from the Document, you may at your option designate some or all of these sections as invariant. To do this, add their

titles to the list of Invariant Sections in the Modified Version's license notice. These titles must be distinct from any other section titles.

You may add a section Entitled "Endorsements", provided it contains nothing but endorsements of your Modified Version by various parties—for example, statements of peer review or that the text has been approved by an organization as the authoritative definition of a standard.

You may add a passage of up to five words as a Front-Cover Text, and a passage of up to 25 words as a Back-Cover Text, to the end of the list of Cover Texts in the Modified Version. Only one passage of Front-Cover Text and one of Back-Cover Text may be added by (or through arrangements made by) any one entity. If the Document already includes a cover text for the same cover, previously added by you or by arrangement made by the same entity you are acting on behalf of, you may not add another; but you may replace the old one, on explicit permission from the previous publisher that added the old one.

The author(s) and publisher(s) of the Document do not by this License give permission to use their names for publicity for or to assert or imply endorsement of any Modified Version.

5. COMBINING DOCUMENTS

   You may combine the Document with other documents released under this License, under the terms defined in section 4 above for modified versions, provided that you include in the combination all of the Invariant Sections of all of the original documents, unmodified, and list them all as Invariant Sections of your combined work in its license notice, and that you preserve all their Warranty Disclaimers.

   The combined work need only contain one copy of this License, and multiple identical Invariant Sections may be replaced with a single copy. If there are multiple Invariant Sections with the same name but different contents, make the title of each such section unique by adding at the end of it, in parentheses, the name of the original author or publisher of that section if known, or else a unique number. Make the same adjustment to the section titles in the list of Invariant Sections in the license notice of the combined work.

   In the combination, you must combine any sections Entitled "History" in the various original documents, forming one section Entitled "History"; likewise combine any sections Entitled "Acknowledgements", and any sections Entitled "Dedications". You must delete all sections Entitled "Endorsements."

6. COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS

   You may make a collection consisting of the Document and other documents released under this License, and replace the individual copies of this License in the various documents with a single copy that is included in the collection, provided that you follow the rules of this License for verbatim copying of each of the documents in all other respects.

   You may extract a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided you insert a copy of this License into the extracted document, and follow this License in all other respects regarding verbatim copying of that document.

7. AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS

   A compilation of the Document or its derivatives with other separate and independent documents or works, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the copyright resulting from the compilation is not used to limit the legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. When the Document is included in an aggregate, this License does not apply to the other works in the aggregate which are not themselves derivative works of the Document.

   If the Cover Text requirement of section 3 is applicable to these copies of the Document, then if the Document is less than one half of the entire aggregate, the Document's Cover Texts may be placed on covers that bracket the Document within the aggregate, or the electronic equivalent of covers if the Document is in electronic form. Otherwise they must appear on printed covers that bracket the whole aggregate.

8. TRANSLATION

   Translation is considered a kind of modification, so you may distribute translations of the Document under the terms of section 4. Replacing Invariant Sections with translations requires special permission from their copyright holders, but you may include translations of some or all Invariant Sections in addition to the original versions of these Invariant Sections. You may include a translation of this License, and all the license notices in the Document, and any Warranty Disclaimers, provided that you also include the original English version of this License and the original versions of those notices and disclaimers. In case of a disagreement between the translation and the original version of this License or a notice or disclaimer, the original version will prevail.

   If a section in the Document is Entitled "Acknowledgements", "Dedications", or "History", the requirement (section 4) to Preserve its Title (section 1) will typically require changing the actual title.

9. TERMINATION

   You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Document except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License.

   However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

   Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

   Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, receipt of a copy of some or all of the same material does not give you any rights to use it.

10. FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE

    The Free Software Foundation may publish new, revised versions of the GNU Free Documentation License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. See `https://www.gnu.org/licenses/`.

    Each version of the License is given a distinguishing version number. If the Document specifies that a particular numbered version of this License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that specified version or of any later version that has been published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of this License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Document.

11. RELICENSING

    "Massive Multiauthor Collaboration Site" (or "MMC Site") means any World Wide Web server that publishes copyrightable works and also provides prominent facilities for anybody to edit those works. A public wiki that anybody can edit is an example of such a server. A "Massive Multiauthor Collaboration" (or "MMC") contained in the site means any set of copyrightable works thus published on the MMC site.

    "CC-BY-SA" means the Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 license published by Creative Commons Corporation, a not-for-profit corporation with a principal place of business in San Francisco, California, as well as future copyleft versions of that license published by that same organization.

    "Incorporate" means to publish or republish a Document, in whole or in part, as part of another Document.

    An MMC is "eligible for relicensing" if it is licensed under this License, and if all works that were first published under this License somewhere other than this MMC, and subsequently incorporated in whole or in part into the MMC, (1) had no cover texts or invariant sections, and (2) were thus incorporated prior to November 1, 2008.

    The operator of an MMC Site may republish an MMC contained in the site under CC-BY-SA on the same site at any time before August 1, 2009, provided the MMC is eligible for relicensing.

ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents

To use this License in a document you have written, include a copy of the License in the document and put the following copyright and license notices just after the title page:

```
Copyright (C)  year  your name.
Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document
under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.3
or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation;
with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and no Back-Cover
Texts.  A copy of the license is included in the section entitled ``GNU
Free Documentation License''.
```

If you have Invariant Sections, Front-Cover Texts and Back-Cover Texts, replace the "with. . . Texts." line with this:

```
with the Invariant Sections being list their titles, with
the Front-Cover Texts being list, and with the Back-Cover Texts
being list.
```

If you have Invariant Sections without Cover Texts, or some other combination of the three, merge those two alternatives to suit the situation.

If your document contains nontrivial examples of program code, we recommend releasing these examples in parallel under your choice of free software license, such as the GNU General Public License, to permit their use in free software.

Appendix C GNU Gen. Pub. License v3

Version 3, 29 June 2007

Preamble

The GNU General Public License is a free, copyleft license for software and other kinds of works.

The licenses for most software and other practical works are designed to take away your freedom to share and change the works. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change all versions of a program—to make sure it remains free software for all its users. We, the Free Software Foundation, use the GNU General Public License for most of our software; it applies also to any other work released this way by its authors. You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for them if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs, and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to prevent others from denying you these rights or asking you to surrender the rights. Therefore, you have certain responsibilities if you distribute copies of the software, or if you modify it: responsibilities to respect the freedom of others.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must pass on to the recipients the same freedoms that you received. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

Developers that use the GNU GPL protect your rights with two steps: (1) assert copyright on the software, and (2) offer you this License giving you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify it.

For the developers' and authors' protection, the GPL clearly explains that there is no warranty for this free software. For both users' and authors' sake, the GPL requires that modified versions be marked as changed, so that their problems will not be attributed erroneously to authors of previous versions.

Some devices are designed to deny users access to install or run modified versions of the software inside them, although the manufacturer can do so. This is fundamentally incompatible with the aim of protecting users' freedom to change the software. The systematic pattern of such abuse occurs in the area of products for individuals to use, which is precisely where it is most unacceptable. Therefore, we have designed this version of the GPL to prohibit the practice for those products. If such problems arise substantially in other domains, we stand ready to extend this provision to those domains in future versions of the GPL, as needed to protect the freedom of users.

Finally, every program is threatened constantly by software patents. States should not allow patents to restrict development and use of software on general-purpose computers, but in those that do, we wish to avoid the special danger that patents applied to a free program could make it effectively proprietary. To prevent this, the GPL assures that patents cannot be used to render the program non-free.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

0. Definitions.

   "This License" refers to version 3 of the GNU General Public License.

   "Copyright" also means copyright-like laws that apply to other kinds of works, such as semiconductor masks.

   "The Program" refers to any copyrightable work licensed under this License. Each licensee is addressed as "you". "Licensees" and "recipients" may be individuals or organizations.

   To "modify" a work means to copy from or adapt all or part of the work in a fashion requiring copyright permission, other than the making of an exact copy. The resulting work is called a "modified version" of the earlier work or a work "based on" the earlier work.

   A "covered work" means either the unmodified Program or a work based on the Program.

   To "propagate" a work means to do anything with it that, without permission, would make you directly or secondarily liable for infringement under applicable copyright law, except executing it on a computer or modifying a private copy. Propagation includes copying, distribution (with or without modification), making available to the public, and in some countries other activities as well.

   To "convey" a work means any kind of propagation that enables other parties to make or receive copies. Mere interaction with a user through a computer network, with no transfer of a copy, is not conveying.

   An interactive user interface displays "Appropriate Legal Notices" to the extent that it includes a convenient and prominently visible feature that (1) displays an appropriate copyright notice, and (2) tells the user that there is no warranty for the work (except to the extent that warranties are provided), that licensees may convey the work under this License, and how to view a copy of this License. If the interface presents a list of user commands or options, such as a menu, a prominent item in the list meets this criterion.

1. Source Code.

   The "source code" for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. "Object code" means any non-source form of a work.

   A "Standard Interface" means an interface that either is an official standard defined by a recognized standards body, or, in the case of interfaces specified for a particular programming language, one that is widely used among developers working in that language.

The "System Libraries" of an executable work include anything, other than the work as a whole, that (a) is included in the normal form of packaging a Major Component, but which is not part of that Major Component, and (b) serves only to enable use of the work with that Major Component, or to implement a Standard Interface for which an implementation is available to the public in source code form. A "Major Component", in this context, means a major essential component (kernel, window system, and so on) of the specific operating system (if any) on which the executable work runs, or a compiler used to produce the work, or an object code interpreter used to run it.

The "Corresponding Source" for a work in object code form means all the source code needed to generate, install, and (for an executable work) run the object code and to modify the work, including scripts to control those activities. However, it does not include the work's System Libraries, or general-purpose tools or generally available free programs which are used unmodified in performing those activities but which are not part of the work. For example, Corresponding Source includes interface definition files associated with source files for the work, and the source code for shared libraries and dynamically linked subprograms that the work is specifically designed to require, such as by intimate data communication or control flow between those subprograms and other parts of the work.

The Corresponding Source need not include anything that users can regenerate automatically from other parts of the Corresponding Source.

The Corresponding Source for a work in source code form is that same work.

2. Basic Permissions.

All rights granted under this License are granted for the term of copyright on the Program, and are irrevocable provided the stated conditions are met. This License explicitly affirms your unlimited permission to run the unmodified Program. The output from running a covered work is covered by this License only if the output, given its content, constitutes a covered work. This License acknowledges your rights of fair use or other equivalent, as provided by copyright law.

You may make, run and propagate covered works that you do not convey, without conditions so long as your license otherwise remains in force. You may convey covered works to others for the sole purpose of having them make modifications exclusively for you, or provide you with facilities for running those works, provided that you comply with the terms of this License in conveying all material for which you do not control copyright. Those thus making or running the covered works for you must do so exclusively on your behalf, under your direction and control, on terms that prohibit them from making any copies of your copyrighted material outside their relationship with you.

Conveying under any other circumstances is permitted solely under the conditions stated below. Sublicensing is not allowed; section 10 makes it unnecessary.

3. Protecting Users' Legal Rights From Anti-Circumvention Law.

No covered work shall be deemed part of an effective technological measure under any applicable law fulfilling obligations under article 11 of the WIPO copyright treaty adopted on 20 December 1996, or similar laws prohibiting or restricting circumvention of such measures.

When you convey a covered work, you waive any legal power to forbid circumvention of technological measures to the extent such circumvention is effected by exercising rights under this License with respect to the covered work, and you disclaim any intention to limit operation or modification of the work as a means of enforcing, against the work's users, your or third parties' legal rights to forbid circumvention of technological measures.

4. Conveying Verbatim Copies.

   You may convey verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice; keep intact all notices stating that this License and any non-permissive terms added in accord with section 7 apply to the code; keep intact all notices of the absence of any warranty; and give all recipients a copy of this License along with the Program.

   You may charge any price or no price for each copy that you convey, and you may offer support or warranty protection for a fee.

5. Conveying Modified Source Versions.

   You may convey a work based on the Program, or the modifications to produce it from the Program, in the form of source code under the terms of section 4, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

   a. The work must carry prominent notices stating that you modified it, and giving a relevant date.

   b. The work must carry prominent notices stating that it is released under this License and any conditions added under section 7. This requirement modifies the requirement in section 4 to "keep intact all notices".

   c. You must license the entire work, as a whole, under this License to anyone who comes into possession of a copy. This License will therefore apply, along with any applicable section 7 additional terms, to the whole of the work, and all its parts, regardless of how they are packaged. This License gives no permission to license the work in any other way, but it does not invalidate such permission if you have separately received it.

   d. If the work has interactive user interfaces, each must display Appropriate Legal Notices; however, if the Program has interactive interfaces that do not display Appropriate Legal Notices, your work need not make them do so.

   A compilation of a covered work with other separate and independent works, which are not by their nature extensions of the covered work, and which are not combined with it such as to form a larger program, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, is called an "aggregate" if the compilation and its resulting copyright are not used to limit the access or legal rights of the compilation's users beyond what the individual works permit. Inclusion of a covered work in an aggregate does not cause this License to apply to the other parts of the aggregate.

6. Conveying Non-Source Forms.

   You may convey a covered work in object code form under the terms of sections 4 and 5, provided that you also convey the machine-readable Corresponding Source under the terms of this License, in one of these ways:

a. Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by the Corresponding Source fixed on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange.

b. Convey the object code in, or embodied in, a physical product (including a physical distribution medium), accompanied by a written offer, valid for at least three years and valid for as long as you offer spare parts or customer support for that product model, to give anyone who possesses the object code either (1) a copy of the Corresponding Source for all the software in the product that is covered by this License, on a durable physical medium customarily used for software interchange, for a price no more than your reasonable cost of physically performing this conveying of source, or (2) access to copy the Corresponding Source from a network server at no charge.

c. Convey individual copies of the object code with a copy of the written offer to provide the Corresponding Source. This alternative is allowed only occasionally and noncommercially, and only if you received the object code with such an offer, in accord with subsection 6b.

d. Convey the object code by offering access from a designated place (gratis or for a charge), and offer equivalent access to the Corresponding Source in the same way through the same place at no further charge. You need not require recipients to copy the Corresponding Source along with the object code. If the place to copy the object code is a network server, the Corresponding Source may be on a different server (operated by you or a third party) that supports equivalent copying facilities, provided you maintain clear directions next to the object code saying where to find the Corresponding Source. Regardless of what server hosts the Corresponding Source, you remain obligated to ensure that it is available for as long as needed to satisfy these requirements.

e. Convey the object code using peer-to-peer transmission, provided you inform other peers where the object code and Corresponding Source of the work are being offered to the general public at no charge under subsection 6d.

A separable portion of the object code, whose source code is excluded from the Corresponding Source as a System Library, need not be included in conveying the object code work.

A "User Product" is either (1) a "consumer product", which means any tangible personal property which is normally used for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) anything designed or sold for incorporation into a dwelling. In determining whether a product is a consumer product, doubtful cases shall be resolved in favor of coverage. For a particular product received by a particular user, "normally used" refers to a typical or common use of that class of product, regardless of the status of the particular user or of the way in which the particular user actually uses, or expects or is expected to use, the product. A product is a consumer product regardless of whether the product has substantial commercial, industrial or non-consumer uses, unless such uses represent the only significant mode of use of the product.

"Installation Information" for a User Product means any methods, procedures, authorization keys, or other information required to install and execute modified versions of a covered work in that User Product from a modified version of its Corresponding Source.

The information must suffice to ensure that the continued functioning of the modified object code is in no case prevented or interfered with solely because modification has been made.

If you convey an object code work under this section in, or with, or specifically for use in, a User Product, and the conveying occurs as part of a transaction in which the right of possession and use of the User Product is transferred to the recipient in perpetuity or for a fixed term (regardless of how the transaction is characterized), the Corresponding Source conveyed under this section must be accompanied by the Installation Information. But this requirement does not apply if neither you nor any third party retains the ability to install modified object code on the User Product (for example, the work has been installed in ROM).

The requirement to provide Installation Information does not include a requirement to continue to provide support service, warranty, or updates for a work that has been modified or installed by the recipient, or for the User Product in which it has been modified or installed. Access to a network may be denied when the modification itself materially and adversely affects the operation of the network or violates the rules and protocols for communication across the network.

Corresponding Source conveyed, and Installation Information provided, in accord with this section must be in a format that is publicly documented (and with an implementation available to the public in source code form), and must require no special password or key for unpacking, reading or copying.

7. Additional Terms.

"Additional permissions" are terms that supplement the terms of this License by making exceptions from one or more of its conditions. Additional permissions that are applicable to the entire Program shall be treated as though they were included in this License, to the extent that they are valid under applicable law. If additional permissions apply only to part of the Program, that part may be used separately under those permissions, but the entire Program remains governed by this License without regard to the additional permissions.

When you convey a copy of a covered work, you may at your option remove any additional permissions from that copy, or from any part of it. (Additional permissions may be written to require their own removal in certain cases when you modify the work.) You may place additional permissions on material, added by you to a covered work, for which you have or can give appropriate copyright permission.

Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, for material you add to a covered work, you may (if authorized by the copyright holders of that material) supplement the terms of this License with terms:

a. Disclaiming warranty or limiting liability differently from the terms of sections 15 and 16 of this License; or

b. Requiring preservation of specified reasonable legal notices or author attributions in that material or in the Appropriate Legal Notices displayed by works containing it; or

c. Prohibiting misrepresentation of the origin of that material, or requiring that modified versions of such material be marked in reasonable ways as different from the original version; or

d. Limiting the use for publicity purposes of names of licensors or authors of the material; or

e. Declining to grant rights under trademark law for use of some trade names, trademarks, or service marks; or

f. Requiring indemnification of licensors and authors of that material by anyone who conveys the material (or modified versions of it) with contractual assumptions of liability to the recipient, for any liability that these contractual assumptions directly impose on those licensors and authors.

All other non-permissive additional terms are considered "further restrictions" within the meaning of section 10. If the Program as you received it, or any part of it, contains a notice stating that it is governed by this License along with a term that is a further restriction, you may remove that term. If a license document contains a further restriction but permits relicensing or conveying under this License, you may add to a covered work material governed by the terms of that license document, provided that the further restriction does not survive such relicensing or conveying.

If you add terms to a covered work in accord with this section, you must place, in the relevant source files, a statement of the additional terms that apply to those files, or a notice indicating where to find the applicable terms.

Additional terms, permissive or non-permissive, may be stated in the form of a separately written license, or stated as exceptions; the above requirements apply either way.

8. Termination.

You may not propagate or modify a covered work except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to propagate or modify it is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License (including any patent licenses granted under the third paragraph of section 11).

However, if you cease all violation of this License, then your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated (a) provisionally, unless and until the copyright holder explicitly and finally terminates your license, and (b) permanently, if the copyright holder fails to notify you of the violation by some reasonable means prior to 60 days after the cessation.

Moreover, your license from a particular copyright holder is reinstated permanently if the copyright holder notifies you of the violation by some reasonable means, this is the first time you have received notice of violation of this License (for any work) from that copyright holder, and you cure the violation prior to 30 days after your receipt of the notice.

Termination of your rights under this section does not terminate the licenses of parties who have received copies or rights from you under this License. If your rights have been terminated and not permanently reinstated, you do not qualify to receive new licenses for the same material under section 10.

9. Acceptance Not Required for Having Copies.

You are not required to accept this License in order to receive or run a copy of the Program. Ancillary propagation of a covered work occurring solely as a consequence of using peer-to-peer transmission to receive a copy likewise does not require acceptance.

However, nothing other than this License grants you permission to propagate or modify any covered work. These actions infringe copyright if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or propagating a covered work, you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so.

10. Automatic Licensing of Downstream Recipients.

    Each time you convey a covered work, the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensors, to run, modify and propagate that work, subject to this License. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties with this License.

    An "entity transaction" is a transaction transferring control of an organization, or substantially all assets of one, or subdividing an organization, or merging organizations. If propagation of a covered work results from an entity transaction, each party to that transaction who receives a copy of the work also receives whatever licenses to the work the party's predecessor in interest had or could give under the previous paragraph, plus a right to possession of the Corresponding Source of the work from the predecessor in interest, if the predecessor has it or can get it with reasonable efforts.

    You may not impose any further restrictions on the exercise of the rights granted or affirmed under this License. For example, you may not impose a license fee, royalty, or other charge for exercise of rights granted under this License, and you may not initiate litigation (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that any patent claim is infringed by making, using, selling, offering for sale, or importing the Program or any portion of it.

11. Patents.

    A "contributor" is a copyright holder who authorizes use under this License of the Program or a work on which the Program is based. The work thus licensed is called the contributor's "contributor version".

    A contributor's "essential patent claims" are all patent claims owned or controlled by the contributor, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by some manner, permitted by this License, of making, using, or selling its contributor version, but do not include claims that would be infringed only as a consequence of further modification of the contributor version. For purposes of this definition, "control" includes the right to grant patent sublicenses in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License.

    Each contributor grants you a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under the contributor's essential patent claims, to make, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise run, modify and propagate the contents of its contributor version.

    In the following three paragraphs, a "patent license" is any express agreement or commitment, however denominated, not to enforce a patent (such as an express permission to practice a patent or covenant not to sue for patent infringement). To "grant" such a patent license to a party means to make such an agreement or commitment not to enforce a patent against the party.

    If you convey a covered work, knowingly relying on a patent license, and the Corresponding Source of the work is not available for anyone to copy, free of charge and under the terms of this License, through a publicly available network server or other readily accessible means, then you must either (1) cause the Corresponding Source to be so

available, or (2) arrange to deprive yourself of the benefit of the patent license for this particular work, or (3) arrange, in a manner consistent with the requirements of this License, to extend the patent license to downstream recipients. "Knowingly relying" means you have actual knowledge that, but for the patent license, your conveying the covered work in a country, or your recipient's use of the covered work in a country, would infringe one or more identifiable patents in that country that you have reason to believe are valid.

If, pursuant to or in connection with a single transaction or arrangement, you convey, or propagate by procuring conveyance of, a covered work, and grant a patent license to some of the parties receiving the covered work authorizing them to use, propagate, modify or convey a specific copy of the covered work, then the patent license you grant is automatically extended to all recipients of the covered work and works based on it.

A patent license is "discriminatory" if it does not include within the scope of its coverage, prohibits the exercise of, or is conditioned on the non-exercise of one or more of the rights that are specifically granted under this License. You may not convey a covered work if you are a party to an arrangement with a third party that is in the business of distributing software, under which you make payment to the third party based on the extent of your activity of conveying the work, and under which the third party grants, to any of the parties who would receive the covered work from you, a discriminatory patent license (a) in connection with copies of the covered work conveyed by you (or copies made from those copies), or (b) primarily for and in connection with specific products or compilations that contain the covered work, unless you entered into that arrangement, or that patent license was granted, prior to 28 March 2007.

Nothing in this License shall be construed as excluding or limiting any implied license or other defenses to infringement that may otherwise be available to you under applicable patent law.

12. No Surrender of Others' Freedom.

    If conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot convey a covered work so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not convey it at all. For example, if you agree to terms that obligate you to collect a royalty for further conveying from those to whom you convey the Program, the only way you could satisfy both those terms and this License would be to refrain entirely from conveying the Program.

13. Use with the GNU Affero General Public License.

    Notwithstanding any other provision of this License, you have permission to link or combine any covered work with a work licensed under version 3 of the GNU Affero General Public License into a single combined work, and to convey the resulting work. The terms of this License will continue to apply to the part which is the covered work, but the special requirements of the GNU Affero General Public License, section 13, concerning interaction through a network will apply to the combination as such.

14. Revised Versions of this License.

The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the GNU General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies that a certain numbered version of the GNU General Public License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that numbered version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of the GNU General Public License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

If the Program specifies that a proxy can decide which future versions of the GNU General Public License can be used, that proxy's public statement of acceptance of a version permanently authorizes you to choose that version for the Program.

Later license versions may give you additional or different permissions. However, no additional obligations are imposed on any author or copyright holder as a result of your choosing to follow a later version.

15. Disclaimer of Warranty.

    THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

16. Limitation of Liability.

    IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MODIFIES AND/OR CONVEYS THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

17. Interpretation of Sections 15 and 16.

    If the disclaimer of warranty and limitation of liability provided above cannot be given local legal effect according to their terms, reviewing courts shall apply local law that most closely approximates an absolute waiver of all civil liability in connection with the Program, unless a warranty or assumption of liability accompanies a copy of the Program in return for a fee.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively state the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

```
one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.
Copyright (C) year name of author

This program is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify
it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or (at
your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but
WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.  See the GNU
General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License
along with this program.  If not, see https://www.gnu.org/licenses/.
```

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program does terminal interaction, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

```
program Copyright (C) year name of author
This program comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type ‘show w’.
This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it
under certain conditions; type ‘show c’ for details.
```

The hypothetical commands ‘`show w`’ and ‘`show c`’ should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, your program's commands might be different; for a GUI interface, you would use an "about box".

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. For more information on this, and how to apply and follow the GNU GPL, see `https://www.gnu.org/licenses/`.

The GNU General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Lesser General Public License instead of this License. But first, please read `https://www.gnu.org/licenses/why-not-lgpl.html`.

Index: Macros, structures and functions

All Gnuastro library's exported macros start with `GAL_`, and its exported structures and functions start with `gal_`. This abbreviation stands for *G*NU *A*stronomy *L*ibrary. The next element in the name is the name of the header which declares or defines them, so to use the `gal_array_fset_const` function, you have to `#include <gnuastro/array.h>`. See Section 12.3 [Gnuastro library], page 764, for more. The `pthread_barrier` constructs are our implementation and are only available on systems that do not have them, see Section 12.3.2.1 [Implementation of `pthread_barrier`], page 768.

G

`gal_arithmetic` 865
`gal_arithmetic_load_col` 867
`gal_arithmetic_operator_string` 867
`gal_arithmetic_set_operator` 867
`gal_array_file_recognized` 814
`gal_array_name_recognized` 814
`gal_array_name_recognized_multiext` 814
`gal_array_read` 815
`gal_array_read_one_ch` 815
`gal_array_read_one_ch_to_type` 816
`gal_array_read_to_type` 815
`gal_binary_connected_adjacency_list` 911
`gal_binary_connected_adjacency_matrix` 910
`gal_binary_connected_components` 910
`gal_binary_connected_indexs(gal_data_t` ... 910
`gal_binary_dilate` 909
`gal_binary_erode` 909
`gal_binary_holes_fill` 912
`gal_binary_holes_label` 911
`gal_binary_number_neighbors` 909
`gal_binary_open` 909
`gal_blank_alloc_write` 780
`gal_blank_as_string` 781
`gal_blank_flag` 781
`gal_blank_flag_apply` 782
`gal_blank_flag_not` 782
`gal_blank_flag_remove` 782
`gal_blank_initialize` 780
`gal_blank_initialize_array` 780
`gal_blank_is` 781
`gal_blank_not_minmax_coords` 782
`gal_blank_number` 781
`gal_blank_present` 781
`gal_blank_remove` 782
`gal_blank_remove_realloc` 783
`gal_blank_remove_rows` 783
`gal_blank_trim` 782
`gal_blank_write` 780
`gal_box_border_from_center` 880
`gal_box_border_rotate_around_center` 880
`gal_box_bound_ellipse` 879
`gal_box_bound_ellipse_extent` 879
`gal_box_bound_ellipsoid` 879
`gal_box_bound_ellipsoid_extent` 879
`gal_box_overlap` 880
`gal_color_id_to_name` 927
`gal_color_in_rgb` 927
`gal_color_name_to_id` 927
`gal_convolve_spatial` 917
`gal_convolve_spatial_correct_ch_edge` 917
`gal_cosmology_age` 938
`gal_cosmology_angular_distance` 939
`gal_cosmology_comoving_volume` 939
`gal_cosmology_critical_density` 939
`gal_cosmology_distance_modulus` 939
`gal_cosmology_luminosity_distance` 939
`gal_cosmology_proper_distance` 939
`gal_cosmology_to_absolute_mag` 939
`gal_cosmology_velocity_from_z` 939
`gal_cosmology_z_from_velocity` 939
`gal_data_alloc` 788
`gal_data_alloc_empty` 789
`gal_data_append_second_array_to_first_free` 792
`gal_data_array_calloc` 790
`gal_data_array_free` 790
`gal_data_array_ptr_calloc` 790
`gal_data_array_ptr_free` 790
`gal_data_copy` 791
`gal_data_copy_string_to_number` 791
`gal_data_copy_to_allocated` 791
`gal_data_copy_to_new_type` 791
`gal_data_copy_to_new_type_free` 791
`gal_data_free` 789
`gal_data_free_contents` 789
`gal_data_initialize` 789
`gal_dimension_add_coords` 793
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_mad` 797
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_mean` ... 798
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_median` . 798
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_number` . 798
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_fill_std` 797
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_mad` 797
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_mean` 797
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_median` 798
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_number` 798
`gal_dimension_collapse_mclip_std` 796
`gal_dimension_collapse_mean` 794
`gal_dimension_collapse_median` 794

gal_dimension_collapse_minmax 794
gal_dimension_collapse_number 794
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_mad 795
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_mean ... 796
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_median . 796
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_number . 796
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_fill_std 795
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_mad 795
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_mean 795
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_median 796
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_number 796
gal_dimension_collapse_sclip_std 795
gal_dimension_collapse_sum 794
gal_dimension_coord_to_index 793
gal_dimension_dist_elliptical 793
gal_dimension_dist_manhattan 793
gal_dimension_dist_radial 793
gal_dimension_increment 792
gal_dimension_index_to_coord 793
gal_dimension_is_different 792
gal_dimension_num_neighbors 792
gal_dimension_remove_extra 799
gal_dimension_total_size 792
gal_ds9_reg_read_polygon 940
gal_eps_name_is_eps 843
gal_eps_shape_id_to_name 844
gal_eps_shape_name_to_id 844
gal_eps_suffix_is_eps 843
gal_eps_to_pt 843
gal_eps_write 844
gal_fit_1d_linear 905
gal_fit_1d_linear_estimate 906
gal_fit_1d_linear_no_constant 906
gal_fit_1d_polynomial 907
gal_fit_1d_polynomial_estimate 907
gal_fit_1d_polynomial_robust 907
gal_fit_name_from_id 905
gal_fit_name_robust_from_id 905
gal_fit_name_robust_to_id 905
gal_fit_name_to_id 905
gal_fits_bitpix_to_type 823
gal_fits_datatype_to_type 823
gal_fits_file_recognized 822
gal_fits_hdu_datasum 824
gal_fits_hdu_datasum_encoded 824
gal_fits_hdu_datasum_ptr 824
gal_fits_hdu_format 824
gal_fits_hdu_is_healpix 824
gal_fits_hdu_num 824
gal_fits_hdu_open 825
gal_fits_hdu_open_format 825
gal_fits_img_info 833
gal_fits_img_info_dim 833
gal_fits_img_read 833
gal_fits_img_read_kernel 834
gal_fits_img_read_to_type 834
gal_fits_img_write 834
gal_fits_img_write_corr_wcs_str 835
gal_fits_img_write_to_ptr 834
gal_fits_img_write_to_type 835
gal_fits_io_error 822
gal_fits_key_clean_str_value 826
gal_fits_key_date_to_seconds 827
gal_fits_key_date_to_struct_tm 827
gal_fits_key_exists_fptr 826
gal_fits_key_img_blank 826
gal_fits_key_list_add 829
gal_fits_key_list_add_date 830
gal_fits_key_list_add_end 829
gal_fits_key_list_add_git_commit 831
gal_fits_key_list_add_software_versions . 830
gal_fits_key_list_fullcomment_add 830
gal_fits_key_list_fullcomment_add_end 830
gal_fits_key_list_reverse 831
gal_fits_key_list_title_add 830
gal_fits_key_list_title_add_end 830
gal_fits_key_read 829
gal_fits_key_read_from_ptr 828
gal_fits_key_write 832
gal_fits_key_write_filename 831
gal_fits_key_write_in_ptr 832
gal_fits_key_write_title_in_ptr 831
gal_fits_key_write_wcsstr 831
gal_fits_name_is_fits 822
gal_fits_name_save_as_string 822
gal_fits_open_to_write 824
gal_fits_suffix_is_fits 822
gal_fits_tab_format 836
gal_fits_tab_info 836
gal_fits_tab_read 836
gal_fits_tab_size 835
gal_fits_tab_write 837
gal_fits_type_to_bin_tform 823
gal_fits_type_to_bitpix 823
gal_fits_type_to_datatype 823
gal_fits_unique_keyvalues 833
gal_fits_with_keyvalue 832
gal_git_describe 928
gal_interpolate_1d_blank 922
gal_interpolate_1d_make_gsl_spline 920
gal_interpolate_neighbors 919
gal_jpeg_name_is_jpeg 842
gal_jpeg_read 842
gal_jpeg_suffix_is_jpeg 842
gal_jpeg_write 842
gal_kdtree_create 887
gal_kdtree_nearest_neighbour 889
gal_label_clump_significance 914
gal_label_grow_indexs 915
gal_label_indexs 913
gal_label_watershed 913
gal_list_data_add 812
gal_list_data_add_alloc 813
gal_list_data_free 814
gal_list_data_last 814
gal_list_data_number 814

gal_list_data_pop ... 813
gal_list_data_remove ... 813
gal_list_data_reverse ... 814
gal_list_data_select_by_id ... 813
gal_list_data_select_by_name ... 813
gal_list_data_to_array_ptr ... 814
gal_list_dosizet_add ... 812
gal_list_dosizet_free ... 812
gal_list_dosizet_pop_smallest ... 812
gal_list_dosizet_print ... 812
gal_list_dosizet_to_sizet ... 812
gal_list_f32_add ... 806
gal_list_f32_free ... 807
gal_list_f32_last ... 807
gal_list_f32_number ... 806
gal_list_f32_pop ... 806
gal_list_f32_print ... 807
gal_list_f32_reverse ... 807
gal_list_f32_to_array ... 807
gal_list_f64_add ... 808
gal_list_f64_free ... 809
gal_list_f64_last ... 808
gal_list_f64_number ... 808
gal_list_f64_pop ... 808
gal_list_f64_print ... 808
gal_list_f64_reverse ... 808
gal_list_f64_to_array ... 809
gal_list_f64_to_data ... 809
gal_list_i32_add ... 803
gal_list_i32_free ... 804
gal_list_i32_last ... 803
gal_list_i32_number ... 803
gal_list_i32_pop ... 803
gal_list_i32_print ... 803
gal_list_i32_reverse ... 804
gal_list_i32_to_array ... 804
gal_list_osizet_add ... 811
gal_list_osizet_pop ... 811
gal_list_osizet_to_sizet_free ... 811
gal_list_sizet_add ... 805
gal_list_sizet_free ... 806
gal_list_sizet_last ... 805
gal_list_sizet_number ... 805
gal_list_sizet_pop ... 805
gal_list_sizet_print ... 805
gal_list_sizet_reverse ... 805
gal_list_sizet_to_array ... 806
gal_list_str_add ... 801
gal_list_str_cat ... 802
gal_list_str_extract ... 802
gal_list_str_free ... 802
gal_list_str_last ... 802
gal_list_str_number ... 802
gal_list_str_pop ... 802
gal_list_str_print ... 802
gal_list_str_reverse ... 802
gal_list_void_add ... 809
gal_list_void_free ... 810
gal_list_void_last ... 810
gal_list_void_number ... 810
gal_list_void_pop ... 810
gal_list_void_reverse ... 810
gal_match_kdtree ... 894
gal_match_sort_based ... 893
gal_pdf_name_is_pdf ... 845
gal_pdf_suffix_is_pdf ... 845
gal_pdf_write ... 845
gal_permutation_apply ... 891
gal_permutation_apply_inverse ... 891
gal_permutation_apply_onlydim0 ... 878
gal_permutation_check ... 891
gal_permutation_transpose_2d ... 892
gal_pointer_allocate ... 777
gal_pointer_allocate_ram_or_mmap ... 778
gal_pointer_increment ... 777
gal_pointer_mmap_allocate ... 778
gal_pointer_mmap_free ... 778
gal_pointer_num_between ... 777
gal_polygon_area_flat ... 882
gal_polygon_area_sky ... 882
gal_polygon_clip ... 883
gal_polygon_is_convex ... 881
gal_polygon_is_counterclockwise ... 883
gal_polygon_is_inside ... 882
gal_polygon_is_inside_convex ... 882
gal_polygon_ppropin ... 883
gal_polygon_to_counterclockwise ... 883
gal_polygon_vertices_sort ... 884
gal_polygon_vertices_sort_convex ... 881
gal_pool_max ... 918
gal_pool_mean ... 918
gal_pool_median ... 918
gal_pool_min ... 918
gal_pool_sum ... 918
gal_python_type_from_numpy ... 929
gal_python_type_to_numpy ... 929
gal_qsort_index_multi_d ... 886
gal_qsort_index_multi_i ... 886
gal_qsort_index_single ... 885
gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_d ... 885
gal_qsort_index_single_TYPE_i ... 886
gal_qsort_TYPE_d ... 885
gal_qsort_TYPE_i ... 885
gal_speclines_line_angstrom ... 938
gal_speclines_line_code ... 938
gal_speclines_line_name ... 938
gal_speclines_line_redshift ... 938
gal_speclines_line_redshift_code ... 938
gal_statistics_cfp ... 901
gal_statistics_clip_mad ... 902
gal_statistics_clip_sigma ... 901
gal_statistics_concentration ... 901
gal_statistics_has_negative ... 898
gal_statistics_histogram ... 900
gal_statistics_histogram2d ... 900
gal_statistics_is_sorted ... 898

gal_statistics_mad ... 896
gal_statistics_maximum ... 895
gal_statistics_mean ... 896
gal_statistics_mean_std ... 896
gal_statistics_median ... 896
gal_statistics_median_mad ... 897
gal_statistics_minimum ... 895
gal_statistics_mode ... 898
gal_statistics_mode_mirror_plots ... 898
gal_statistics_no_blank_sorted ... 899
gal_statistics_number ... 895
gal_statistics_outlier_bydistance ... 902
gal_statistics_outlier_flat_cfp ... 903
gal_statistics_quantile ... 897
gal_statistics_quantile_function ... 897
gal_statistics_quantile_function_index ... 897
gal_statistics_quantile_index ... 897
gal_statistics_range_double ... 895
gal_statistics_regular_bins ... 899
gal_statistics_sort_decreasing ... 899
gal_statistics_sort_increasing ... 899
gal_statistics_std ... 896
gal_statistics_std_from_sums ... 896
gal_statistics_sum ... 895
gal_statistics_unique ... 897
gal_table_col_vector_extract ... 821
gal_table_cols_to_vector ... 821
gal_table_comments_add_intro ... 820
gal_table_displayflt_from_str ... 817
gal_table_displayflt_to_str ... 817
gal_table_info ... 818
gal_table_list_of_indexs ... 820
gal_table_print_info ... 819
gal_table_read ... 819
gal_table_sort ... 821
gal_table_write ... 820
gal_table_write_log ... 821
gal_threads_attr_barrier_init ... 770
gal_threads_dist_in_threads ... 770
gal_threads_number ... 769
gal_threads_spin_off ... 769
gal_tiff_dir_string_read ... 841
gal_tiff_name_is_tiff ... 841
gal_tiff_read ... 841
gal_tiff_suffix_is_tiff ... 841
gal_tiff_write ... 841
gal_tile_block ... 870
gal_tile_block_blank_flag ... 872
gal_tile_block_check_tiles ... 871
gal_tile_block_increment ... 870
gal_tile_block_relative_to_other ... 871
gal_tile_block_write_const_value ... 871
gal_tile_full ... 875
gal_tile_full_free_contents ... 878
gal_tile_full_id_from_coord ... 878
gal_tile_full_permutation ... 877
gal_tile_full_sanity_check ... 876
gal_tile_full_two_layers ... 876
gal_tile_full_values_smooth ... 878
gal_tile_full_values_write ... 878
gal_tile_per_label ... 869
gal_tile_series_from_minmax ... 869
gal_tile_start_coord ... 868
gal_tile_start_end_coord ... 869
gal_tile_start_end_ind_inclusive ... 869
gal_txt_contains_string ... 838
gal_txt_image_read ... 839
gal_txt_line_stat ... 838
gal_txt_read_to_list ... 840
gal_txt_stdin_read ... 839
gal_txt_table_info ... 838
gal_txt_table_read ... 839
gal_txt_trim_space ... 838
gal_txt_write ... 840
gal_type_bit_string ... 774
gal_type_from_name ... 773
gal_type_from_string ... 775
gal_type_is_int ... 774
gal_type_is_list ... 774
gal_type_max ... 774
gal_type_min ... 774
gal_type_name ... 773
gal_type_out ... 774
gal_type_sizeof ... 773
gal_type_string_to_number ... 776
gal_type_to_string ... 775
gal_units_au_to_ly ... 932
gal_units_au_to_pc ... 931
gal_units_counts_to_jy ... 931
gal_units_counts_to_mag ... 930
gal_units_counts_to_nanomaggy ... 931
gal_units_counts_to_sb ... 931
gal_units_dec_to_degree ... 929
gal_units_degree_to_dec ... 930
gal_units_degree_to_ra ... 929
gal_units_extract_decimal ... 929
gal_units_luminosity_to_mag ... 930
gal_units_ly_to_au ... 932
gal_units_ly_to_pc ... 932
gal_units_mag_to_counts ... 930
gal_units_mag_to_luminosity ... 930
gal_units_mag_to_sb ... 930
gal_units_nanomaggy_to_counts ... 931
gal_units_pc_to_au ... 931
gal_units_pc_to_ly ... 932
gal_units_ra_to_degree ... 929
gal_units_sb_to_counts ... 931
gal_units_sb_to_mag ... 930
gal_units_zeropoint_change ... 931
gal_warp_pixelarea ... 926
gal_warp_wcsalign ... 926
gal_warp_wcsalign_free ... 926
gal_warp_wcsalign_init ... 926
gal_warp_wcsalign_onpix ... 926
gal_warp_wcsalign_onthread ... 926
gal_warp_wcsalign_template ... 925

gal_wcs_angular_distance_deg 854
gal_wcs_box_vertices_from_center 854
gal_wcs_clean_small_errors 852
gal_wcs_coordsys_convert 853
gal_wcs_coordsys_convert_points 853
gal_wcs_coordsys_identify 852
gal_wcs_coordsys_name_to_id 848
gal_wcs_coordsys_sys1_ref_in_sys2 853
gal_wcs_copy 851
gal_wcs_copy_new_crval 851
gal_wcs_coverage 855
gal_wcs_create 848
gal_wcs_decompose_pc_cdelt 852
gal_wcs_dimension_name 850
gal_wcs_distortion_convert(struct 853
gal_wcs_distortion_identify 853
gal_wcs_distortion_name_from_id 848
gal_wcs_distortion_name_to_id 847, 848
gal_wcs_free 850
gal_wcs_img_to_world 856
gal_wcs_on_tile 851
gal_wcs_pixel_area_arcsec2 855
gal_wcs_pixel_scale 855
gal_wcs_projection_name_from_id 848
gal_wcs_projection_name_to_id 848
gal_wcs_read 850
gal_wcs_read_fitsptr 849
gal_wcs_remove_dimension 851
gal_wcs_to_cd 852
gal_wcs_warp_matrix 852
gal_wcs_world_to_img 855
gal_wcs_write 851
gal_wcs_write_in_fitsptr 851
gal_wcs_write_wcsstr 850
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_ENVSEED 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_FREE 856
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_INPLACE 856
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_NUMOK 856
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAG_QUIET 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_FLAGS_BASIC 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ABS 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ACOS 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ACOSH 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AND 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ASIN 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ASINH 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ATAN 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ATAN2 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ATANH 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AU 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AU_TO_LY 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AU_TO_PC 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_AVOGADRO 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITAND 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITLSH 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITNOT 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITOR 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITRSH 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BITXOR 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BOX_AROUND_ELLIPSE 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_BOX_VERTICES_ON_SPHERE 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_C 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COS 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COSH 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTER 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTERONLY 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTS_TO_JY 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTS_TO_MAG 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_COUNTS_TO_SB 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DEC_TO_DEGREE 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DEGREE_TO_DEC 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DEGREE_TO_RA 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_DIVIDE 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_E 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_ECJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_EQB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_EQJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_GALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECB1950_TO_
SUPERGALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_ECB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_EQB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_EQJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_GALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ECJ2000_TO_
SUPERGALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQ 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_ECB1950 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_ECJ2000 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_EQJ2000 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_GALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQB1950_TO_
SUPERGALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_ECB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_ECJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_EQB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_GALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_EQJ2000_TO_
SUPERGALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_FINESTRUCTURE 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_G 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_ECB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_ECJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_EQB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_EQJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GALACTIC_TO_
SUPERGALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GE 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_GT 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_H 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_INDEX 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_INDEXONLY 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_ISBLANK 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_JY_TO_COUNTS 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_JY_TO_MAG 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LE 857

GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LOG 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LOG10 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LT 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LY 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LY_TO_AU 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_LY_TO_PC 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_COUNTS 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_JY 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_NANOMAGGY 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAG_TO_SB 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAKENEW 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAX 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MAXVAL 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEAN 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEANVAL 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEDIAN 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MEDIANVAL 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MIN 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MINUS 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MINVAL 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MKNOISE_POISSON 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MKNOISE_SIGMA 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MKNOISE_UNIFORM 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MODULO 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_MULTIPLY 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NANOMAGGY_TO_MAG 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NE 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NOBLANK 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NOT 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NUMBER 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_NUMBERVAL 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_OR 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PC_TO_AU 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PC_TO_LY 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PI 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_PLUS 857
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_POW 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_QUANTILE 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_RA_TO_DEGREE 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_RANDOM_FROM_HIST 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_RANDOM_FROM_HIST_RAW ... 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SB_TO_COUNTS 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SB_TO_MAG 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_MEAN 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_MEDIAN 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_NUMBER 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIGCLIP_STD 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIN 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SINH 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SIZE 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SQRT 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_STD 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_STDVAL 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_STITCH 862
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUM 861
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUMVAL 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_
ECB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_
ECJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_
EQB1950 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_
EQJ2000 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SUPERGALACTIC_TO_
GALACTIC 865
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_SWAP 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TAN 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TANH 859
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_FLOAT32 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_FLOAT64 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT16 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT32 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT64 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_INT8 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT16 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT32 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT64 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_TO_UINT8 863
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_UNIQUE 860
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OP_WHERE 858
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_FILE 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_FILE_LEN 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_HDU 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_HDU_LEN 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_PREFIX 864
GAL_ARITHMETIC_OPSTR_LOADCOL_PREFIX_LEN . 864
GAL_BINARY_TMP_VALUE 908
GAL_BLANK_FLOAT32 780
GAL_BLANK_FLOAT64 780
GAL_BLANK_INT 780
GAL_BLANK_INT16 779
GAL_BLANK_INT32 779
GAL_BLANK_INT64 779
GAL_BLANK_INT8 779
GAL_BLANK_LONG 780
GAL_BLANK_SIZE_T 780
GAL_BLANK_STRING 780
GAL_BLANK_UINT 780
GAL_BLANK_UINT16 779
GAL_BLANK_UINT32 779
GAL_BLANK_UINT64 779
GAL_BLANK_UINT8 779
GAL_BLANK_ULONG 780
GAL_COLOR_* 927
GAL_COLOR_DEEPPINK 927
GAL_COLOR_INVALID 927
GAL_COLOR_MEDIUMVIOLETRED 927
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_FITS_IS_REENTRANT 765
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_GNUMAKE_H 767
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_GSL_INTERP_STEFFEN 765
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_LIBGIT2 766
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_PTHREAD_BARRIER 766
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_PYTHON 766
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_DIS_H 766
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_MJDREF 766

GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_OBSFIX 766
GAL_CONFIG_HAVE_WCSLIB_VERSION 766
GAL_CONFIG_SIZEOF_LONG 766
GAL_CONFIG_SIZEOF_SIZE_T 766
GAL_CONFIG_VERSION 765
GAL_DIMENSION_FLT_TO_INT 792
GAL_DIMENSION_NEIGHBOR_OP 799
GAL_DS9_COORD_MODE_IMG 940
GAL_DS9_COORD_MODE_INVALID 940
GAL_DS9_COORD_MODE_WCS 940
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_COLOR 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_FONT 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_FONTSIZE 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_LINEWIDTH 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_ROTATE 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_SHAPE 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_SIZE1 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_SIZE2 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_TEXT 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_XPIX 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_COLNAME_YPIX 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_COLOR 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_FONT 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_FONTSIZE 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_LINEWIDTH 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_ROTATE 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SHAPE 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SIZE1 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SIZE2 843
GAL_EPS_MARK_DEFAULT_SIZE2_ELLIPSE 843
GAL_FIT_INVALID 904
GAL_FIT_LINEAR 904
GAL_FIT_LINEAR_NO_CONSTANT 904
GAL_FIT_LINEAR_NO_CONSTANT_WEIGHTED 904
GAL_FIT_LINEAR_WEIGHTED 904
GAL_FIT_POLYNOMIAL 904
GAL_FIT_POLYNOMIAL_NUMBER 904
GAL_FIT_POLYNOMIAL_WEIGHTED 904
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_BISQUARE 904
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_CAUCHY 904
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_DEFAULT 904
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_FAIR 904
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_HUBER 905
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_INVALID 904
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_NUMBER 905
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_OLS 905
GAL_FIT_ROBUST_WELSCH 905
GAL_FITS_MAX_NDIM 822
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_AKIMA 920
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_AKIMA_PERIODIC 920
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_CSPLINE 920
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_CSPLINE_PERIODIC 920
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_INVALID 919
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_LINEAR 919
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_POLYNOMIAL 920
GAL_INTERPOLATE_1D_STEFFEN 920
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_INVALID ... 919
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MAX 919
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MEAN 919
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MEDIAN 919
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_FUNC_MIN 919
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_METRIC_INVALID . 918
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_METRIC_
MANHATTAN 918
GAL_INTERPOLATE_NEIGHBORS_METRIC_RADIAL . 918
GAL_LABEL_INIT 912
GAL_LABEL_RIVER 912
GAL_LABEL_TMPCHECK 912
GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_FULL 893
GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_INNER 893
GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_INVALID 893
GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_OUTER 893
GAL_MATCH_ARRANGE_OUTERWITHINAPERTURE 893
GAL_POLYGON_MAX_CORNERS 880
GAL_POLYGON_ROUND_ERR 881
GAL_SPECLINES_Al_III_1855 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Al_III_1863 933
GAL_SPECLINES_ANGSTROM_* 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_I_1067 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_I_7868 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_III_7136 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_III_7751 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_2854 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_2868 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_4711 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_4740 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_7171 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_7237 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_IV_7263 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_V 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ar_XIV 934
GAL_SPECLINES_C_I_9824 937
GAL_SPECLINES_C_I_9850 937
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_1335 932
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_1336 933
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_2324 933
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_2325 933
GAL_SPECLINES_C_II_7236 936
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_1909 933
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_4647 935
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_4650 935
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_5651 935
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_5698 935
GAL_SPECLINES_C_III_977 932
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_1548 933
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_1551 933
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_5801 935
GAL_SPECLINES_C_IV_5812 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_II_8498 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_II_8542 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_II_8662 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Ca_V 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Cl_II 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Cl_III_5518 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Cl_III_5538 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4179 934

GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4233 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4287 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4304 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4417 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4452 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4489 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4491 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4523 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4556 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4583 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4584 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4630 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_4924 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5018 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5169 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5198 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5235 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5276 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5316_62 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_5316_78 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_6369 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_6516 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_7155 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_7172 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_7453 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_8617 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_II_8892 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_III_4658 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_III_5085 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_III_5270 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_2829 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_2836 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_4903 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_IV_5236 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_3839 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_3891 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_3911 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_4071 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_4181 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_V_4227 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_3663 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5146 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5176 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5335 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5424 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5638 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VI_5677 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_3586 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_3759 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_4893 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_5159 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_5276 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_5721 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_VII_6087 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_X ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XI_2649 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XI_7892 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XIII ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Fe_XIV ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_H_10 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_11 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_12 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_13 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_14 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_15 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_16 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_17 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_H_18 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_H_19 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_H_8 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_9 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_alpha ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_H_beta ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_H_delta ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_epsilon ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_H_gamma ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_10028 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_10031 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_10830 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_2945 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_3188 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_3488 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_3889 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_4026 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_4144 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_4471 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_5876 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_7065 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_7281 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_He_I_7816 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_1640 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_2733 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_3203 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_4686 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_He_II_8237 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_INVALID ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_alpha ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_beta ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_delta ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_epsilon ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ly_gamma ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_II_2796 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_II_2803 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_V_2783 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Mg_V_2928 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_3466_50 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_3466_54 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_5200 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_7468 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_8680 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_8703 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_N_I_8712 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_2143 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_5755 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_6548 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_N_II_6583 ... 936

GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_1747 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_1749 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4510 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4634 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4641 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_4642 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_990 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_991_51 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_N_III_991_58 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_N_IV_1486 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_N_V_1238 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_N_V_1243 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_NAME_* ... 938
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_III_3869 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_III_3967 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_V_3346 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_V_3426 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_VIII_770 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ne_VIII_780 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Ni_II_7378 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ni_II_7411 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Ni_III ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_NUMBER ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_1302 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_6046 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_6300 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_6364 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_7002 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_7254 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_O_I_8446 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_3726 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_3729 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_4317 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_4415 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_7320 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_O_II_7331 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_1661 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_1666 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_2321 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_3133 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_3312 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_3444 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_4363 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_4959 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_O_III_5007 ... 935
GAL_SPECLINES_O_IV_1397 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_IV_1400 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_O_VI_1032 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_O_VI_1038 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_10 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_11 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_12 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_13 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_14 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_15 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_16 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_17 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_18 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_19 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_20 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_9 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_delta ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_epsilon ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_Pa_gamma ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_10287 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_10320 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_10336 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_4069 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_4076 ... 934
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_6716 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_S_II_6731 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_S_III_6312 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_S_III_9069 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_S_III_9531 ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_S_VIII ... 937
GAL_SPECLINES_S_XII ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_II_1260 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_II_1265 ... 932
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_II_6347 ... 936
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_III ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_IV_1394 ... 933
GAL_SPECLINES_Si_IV_1403 ... 933
GAL_STATISTICS_BINS_INVALID ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_BINS_IRREGULAR ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_BINS_REGULAR ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MAD ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MEAN ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_MEDIAN ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_NUMBER_CLIPS ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_NUMBER_USED ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_MAD ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_MEAN ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_OPTIONAL_STD ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_CLIP_OUTCOL_STD ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_MODE_GOOD_SYM ... 895
GAL_STATISTICS_SIG_CLIP_MAX_CONVERGE ... 894
GAL_TABLE_DEF_PRECISION_DBL ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DEF_PRECISION_FLT ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DEF_PRECISION_INT ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_DBL ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_FLT ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_INT ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_LINT ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DEF_WIDTH_STR ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_DECIMAL ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_EXP ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_FIXED ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_GENERAL ... 817
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_HEX ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_OCTAL ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_STRING ... 816
GAL_TABLE_DISPLAY_FMT_UDECIMAL ... 816
GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_AFITS ... 817
GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_BFITS ... 817
GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_INVALID ... 817
GAL_TABLE_FORMAT_TXT ... 817

GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_COMMENT ... 817
GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_INVALID ... 817
GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_NAME ... 817
GAL_TABLE_SEARCH_UNIT ... 817
GAL_TILE_PARSE_OPERATE ... 872
GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_BLANK ... 837
GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_COMMENT ... 837
GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_DATAROW ... 838
GAL_TXT_LINESTAT_INVALID ... 837
GAL_TYPE_BIT ... 772
GAL_TYPE_COMPLEX32 ... 773
GAL_TYPE_COMPLEX64 ... 773
GAL_TYPE_FLOAT32 ... 773
GAL_TYPE_FLOAT64 ... 773
GAL_TYPE_INT ... 772
GAL_TYPE_INT16 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_INT32 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_INT64 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_INT8 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_INVALID ... 772
GAL_TYPE_LONG ... 773
GAL_TYPE_SIZE_T ... 773
GAL_TYPE_STRING ... 773
GAL_TYPE_STRLL ... 773
GAL_TYPE_UINT ... 772
GAL_TYPE_UINT16 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_UINT32 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_UINT64 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_UINT8 ... 772
GAL_TYPE_ULONG ... 772
GAL_WARP_OUTPUT_NAME_MAXFRAC ... 923
GAL_WARP_OUTPUT_NAME_WARPED ... 923
GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_ECB1950 ... 846
GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_ECJ2000 ... 846
GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_EQB1950 ... 846
GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_EQJ2000 ... 846
GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_GALACTIC ... 846
GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_INVALID ... 846
GAL_WCS_COORDSYS_SUPERGALACTIC ... 846
GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_DSS ... 846
GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_INVALID ... 846
GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_SIP ... 846
GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_TPD ... 846
GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_TPV ... 846
GAL_WCS_DISTORTION_WAT ... 846
GAL_WCS_FLTERROR ... 847
GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_CD ... 847
GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_INVALID ... 847
GAL_WCS_LINEAR_MATRIX_PC ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_AIR ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_AIT ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_ARC ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_AZP ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_BON ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CAR ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CEA ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COD ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COE ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COO ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_COP ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CSC ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_CYP ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_HPX ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_MER ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_MOL ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_PAR ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_PCO ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_QSC ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_SFL ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_SIN ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_STG ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_SZP ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_TAN ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_TSC ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_XPH ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_ZEA ... 847
GAL_WCS_PROJECTION_ZPN ... 847

P

pthread_barrier_destroy ... 768
pthread_barrier_init ... 768
pthread_barrier_t ... 768
pthread_barrier_wait ... 768
pthread_barrierattr_t ... 768

Index

$

$HOME 272
$HOME/.local/etc/gnuastro 272

—

-- 259
--checkconfig 261
--cite 260
--config-prefix=STR 261
--config=STR 261
--disable-guide-message 234
--disable-progname 234
--dontdelete 255
--enable-check-with-valgrind 233
--enable-debug 233
--enable-gnulibcheck 234, 246
--enable-guide-message=no 234
--enable-progname 234
--enable-progname=no 234
--enable-reentrant 213
--hdu=STR/INT 254
--help 250, 260, 274
--help output customization 275
--ignorecase 255
--keepinputdir 256, 292
--lastconfig 263
--log 264
--numthreads 270, 276
--numthreads=INT 264
--onlyversion=STR 263
--outfitsnocommit 257
--outfitsnoconfig 257
--outfitsnodate 257
--outfitsnoversions 257
--output 270
--output=STR 255
--prefix 235
--printparams 252, 261
--program-prefix 241
--program-suffix 241
--program-transform-name 241
--quiet 260
--searchin=STR 255
--setdirconf 262, 272
--setusrconf 263, 272
--stdintimeout 254
--tableformat=STR 256
--type=STR 255
--usage 250, 260, 273
--version 260
--wcslinearmatrix=STR 256
--with-python 235
--without-libgit2 234
--without-libjpeg 235
--without-libtiff 235
--without-pgplot 215
-? 260
-D 255
-h STR/INT 254
-I 255
-K 256
-mecube (DS9) 706
-N INT 264
-o STR 255
-P 261
-q 260
-s STR 255
-S 262
-t STR 256
-T STR 255
-U 263
-V 260

.

./.gnuastro/ 272
./configure 232, 236
./configure options 233
.bashrc 275, 411

2

24-bit terminal 322
2D histogram 59, 518, 900
2MASS All-Sky Catalog 382

3

32-bit 766
3D data cube 134
3D data-cubes 443, 613

4

4K monitors 709

6

64-bit 766

A

A4 paper size . . . 245
A4 print book . . . 245
AAVSO Photometric All Sky Survey, DR9 . . . 382
AB Magnitude . . . 931
AB magnitude . . . 422, 588
Abd al-rahman Sufi . . . 123
Abell 370 galaxy cluster . . . 134
Abraham de Moivre . . . 484
Absolute magnitude . . . 686
Absolute magnitude of Sun . . . 421
ACIS . . . 134
ACS . . . 502
ACS camera . . . 616
Adding Ghostscript fonts . . . 343
Additions to Gnuastro . . . 17
Adjacency matrix . . . 910
Adobe systems . . . 319
ADQL (Astronomical Data Query Language) . . . 378
ADU . . . 410
ADU (Analog-to-digital unit) . . . 585
Advanced camera for surveys . . . 502
Advanced Camera for Surveys . . . 503
Advanced Packaging Tool (APT, Debian) . . . 223
Affine Transformation . . . 504
Airy projection . . . 511
AKARI/FIS All-Sky Survey . . . 382
Akima spline interpolation . . . 920
al-Shirazi, Qutb al-Din . . . 483
Albert. A. Michelson . . . 9
Algorithm: watershed . . . 913
Alias (shell) . . . 556
Alias, shell . . . 660
Align . . . 510, 923
Align pixel and WCS coordinates . . . 508
Aligning an image . . . 509
All-sky Survey of GALEX DR5 . . . 382
AllWISE Data Release . . . 382
Almagest . . . 123
Amplifier . . . 291
Analog-to-digital unit (ADU) . . . 585
Angular coverage . . . 589
Annotation of images for paper . . . 322
Announcements . . . 18
Anonymous bug submission . . . 16
Anscombe F. J. . . . 6
Anscombe's quartet . . . 6
ANSI C . . . 958
Apparent Mangitude to Luminosity . . . 420
`apt-get` . . . 223
Arch GNU/Linux . . . 225
Area of pixel on sky . . . 315
Area resampling . . . 315
Area, ellipse . . . 608
Argp argument parser . . . 275, 966
`ARGP_HELP_FMT` . . . 275
`args.h` . . . 966
Argument list too long . . . 305, 475
Arguments to programs . . . 250
Aristarchus of Samos . . . 483
Array . . . 800
ASCII plot . . . 535
ASCII table, FITS . . . 285
ASCII85 encoding . . . 334, 844
`astprogname` . . . 11
Astrometry . . . 709
Astronomical data format . . . 317
Astronomical Data Query Language (ADQL) . . . 378
Astronomical Magnitude system . . . 586
Astronomical Unit (AU) . . . 417
Astronomical Units (AU) . . . 425, 931
ASTRON . . . 380
Asynchronous thread allocation . . . 394
Atmosphere . . . 479
Atmosphere emission lines . . . 139
AU (Astronomical Unit) . . . 417
`authors-cite.h` . . . 968
Auto-complete in the shell . . . 240
Autocomplete (in the shell/Bash) . . . 265, 968, 973
Automatic configuration file writing . . . 270
Automatic output file names . . . 292
Automatically created build files . . . 229
Available number of threads . . . 276
Average . . . 896
Average, weighted . . . 479
Avogradro's number . . . 417
AWK . . . 100, 266, 344, 365, 479, 536, 819
Axis ratio . . . 652, 793
Azimuthal range (radial profile) . . . 699
Azophi . . . 123

B

Background flux . . . 408, 529
Background pixels . . . 561
Backup . . . 241
Bad pixels . . . 189
Baffle . . . 189
Balmer limit . . . 932
Band-merged unWISE Catalog . . . 382
Base of natural logarithm (e) . . . 417
Bash auto-complete . . . 265, 968, 973
Bash programmable completion . . . 265, 968, 973
Best use of CPU threads . . . 277
Bi-linear interpolation . . . 505
Bias current . . . 291
Bias level in detectors . . . 409
Bicubic interpolation . . . 505, 533
Bimodal histogram . . . 201
Bin width, histogram . . . 517
Binary datasets . . . 908
Binary image . . . 318, 561
Binary table, FITS . . . 286
Bisquare function of Tukey . . . 548
Bit . . . 279
bit-32 . . . 766

bit-64 ... 766
Bitwise operators ... 450
Bitwise Or ... 857
Biweight function of Tukey ... 548
Black and white image ... 318
`blank` color channel ... 319
Blank data ... 786
Blank pixel ... 392, 446
Blank values ... 158
Blur image ... 479, 654
Bolometric luminosity ... 586, 686
Bonne projection ... 512
Book formats ... 273
Bootstrapping ... 229
Border on an image ... 338
Brahe, Tycho ... 8
Breadth first search ... 653, 910
`brew` ... 224
Brightness ... 585, 656
Buffers (Emacs) ... 962
Bug ... 15, 979
Bug reporting ... 15
Bug tracker ... 17
`bug-gnuastro@gnu.org` ... 16
Build ... 1
Build individual profiles ... 674
Build tree ... 972
Building from source ... 222
Butterfly projection ... 512
Byte ... 279
Bzip2 ... 82

C

C compiler ... 762
C preprocessor ... 762
C programming language ... 958
C++ programming language ... 958
C, plotting ... 991
C: `restrict` ... 785
C99 ... 777
Cache, system ... 277
Calendar ... 691
Calibration ... 709
Camera ... 505
CANDELS survey ... 395, 616
Carbon footprint ... 268
Caspar Wessel ... 484
Catalog, Gaia ... 380
Catalog, Vizier ... 381
CatWISE 2020 catalog ... 382
Cauchy's function (robust weight) ... 548
`CC` ... 764
CCD ... 291, 502
`CDELT` ... 28, 193, 256
CDELTi ... 510
CDS, VizieR ... 381
Celestial sphere ... 187, 589
centimeter–gram–second (cgs) units ... 585
CentOS ... 224
Central management ... 979
CFITSIO ... 213, 309, 765, 821
CFITSIO version on outputs ... 293
cgs units (centimeter–gram–second) ... 585
Change converted pixel values ... 336
Channel ... 291, 815
Channel (color) ... 320
Channel, color ... 320
Charge-coupled device ... 502
Check ... 1
Check center of crop ... 402
Checking detection algorithms ... 652
Checking tests ... 245
Checksum ... 81
`CHECKSUM`: FITS keyword ... 309
Chi-squared ... 905
CIII doublet ... 932
Circle (great) ... 465
Circle (small) ... 465
Cirrus (Galactic) ... 629
Citation information ... 968
Claudius Ptolemy ... 123
CLI: command-line user interface ... 13
CLI: repeating operations ... 14
Clipping of outliers ... 196
Clump ... 914
Clump magnitude limit ... 615
CMYK ... 320
Coadding ... 193, 428, 455, 509
Coadding through sigma-clipping ... 430
Coaddition ... 193, 428, 509
Coadds ... 455
COBE spherical cube projection ... 512
Color ... 320
Color channel ... 320, 815
Color in macOS terminals ... 342
Color-magnitude diagram ... 59, 521
Colorbar ... 336
Colormap ... 320
Colormap, gray-scale ... 321
Colormap, HSV ... 321
Colormap: SLS ... 335
Colormap: SLS-inverse ... 335
Colormap: Viridis ... 335
Colors ... 927
Colors (web) ... 322
Colors, broad-band photometry ... 22
Colorspace, gray-scale ... 335
Colorspace, HSV ... 335
Columns (Vector) ... 346
Command-line arguments ... 250
Command-line help ... 273
Command-line options ... 250
Command-line scroll ... 274
Command-line searching text ... 274
Command-line user interface ... 13

Command-line, long outputs 274
Command-line, viewing full book 275
Comments 133
Commutative property 504
Comoving distance 681
Compare Moffat and Gaussian 655
Compare Poisson and Gaussian 408
Compile 1
Compiled PostScript 319
Compiler, C 762
Compiling from source 222
Completeness 101, 622
Completion in the shell 265, 968, 973
Complex numbers 500
Compression 571, 582
Compression quality in JPEG 334
Concave polygons 398, 880
Configuration file directories 271
Configuration file format 270
Configuration file precedence 271
Configuration file suffix 270
Configuration files 253, 270
Configuration files, system wide 272
Configuration files, writing 270
Configuration, not finding library 246
Configure options 232
Configure options particular to Gnuastro 233
Configuring 232
Confusion limit 619
Conic equal area projection 512
Conic equidistant projection 512
Conic orthomorphic projection 512
Conic perspective projection 512
Connected component labeling 571, 910
Connected components 449
Connectivity 908
Continuum subtraction 139
Contour 549
Convenient book formats 273
Convention for program source 965
Converting data formats 316
Converting image formats 316
ConvertType (`astconvertt`) 316
Convex Hull 881
Convex polygons 398, 880
Convolution 479, 480, 532, 654
Convolution kernel 834
Convolutional Neural Networks 434
Cookbook 21
Coordinate matching 892
Coordinate scales 28
Coordinate system: Ecliptic 313, 846
Coordinate system: Equatorial 313, 846
Coordinate system: Galactic 313, 846
Coordinate system: Supergalactic 313, 846
Coordinate transformation 502
Coordinates, homogeneou 503
Copyright 10
Correlated noise 41, 50, 605, 617, 621
Correlation 480
Cosmic ray removal 529
Cosmic rays 479, 502, 529, 532
COSMOS survey 389
Cotes, Roger 484
Counting error 408
Counting from zero 253
Counts 410, 585
Covariance matrix 905
Coverage of image over sky 302
`CPPFLAGS` 247, 755, 764
CPU threads 276
CPU threads, number 270
CPU threads, set number 264
CPU, using all threads 276
CRLF line terminator 837
Crop (`astcrop`) 389
Crop a given section of image 392
Crop part of image 389
Crop section format 392
CRVALi 509
CTYPEi 510
Cube (3D) spectra 134
Cubes (3D data) 443, 613
Cubic spline interpolation 920
Cumulative Frequency Plot 517
cURL (downloading tool) 217
Customize `--help` output 275
Customize executable names 240
Customizing installation 232
Cylindrical equal area projection 511
Cylindrical perspective projection 511

D

Dark Energy Survey data release 1 382
Dark level in detectors 409
Dark night 456
Dash shell 269
Data 531
Data cubes 443
Data format conversion 316
Data structures 754
Data type 785
Database, Gaia 380
Database, VizieR 381
Dataset: binary 908
`DATASUM`: FITS keyword 303, 309, 824
Date: FITS format 827
de Moivre, Abraham 408, 484
de Vaucouleur profile 656
Debian 223
Debug 242, 261, 763
Debugging 233, 972
Decimal digits 345
Decimal separator 295
Declination 187, 356, 859, 929, 930

Default executable search directory ... 236
Default library search directory ... 238
Default option values ... 253, 270
Define section to crop ... 392
Dependencies, Gnuastro ... 213
Depth of data ... 172, 615, 715
Detached threads ... 770
Detection ... 479, 552
Detection limit (magnitude limit) ... 618
Detections false ... 622
Detector ... 505
`developer-build` ... 971, 972
Development packages ... 246
Diagram, Color-magnitude ... 521
Diffraction limited ... 654
Dilation ... 448, 909
Dilation (image processing) ... 85
Directory, install ... 238
Discrete Fourier transform ... 500
Distance modulus ... 421, 686
Distance, elliptical/ellipsoidal ... 793
Distance, Manhattan ... 793
Distortion ... 315
Distortion, optical ... 502
Distortion, WCS ... 314, 846, 853
Distribution mode ... 530
Distributions, GNU/Linux ... 222
Dithering ... 177
`dnf` ... 224
Doppler effect ... 140
Doublet: CIII ... 932
Doublet: MgII ... 932
Doublet: NII ... 932
Doublet: OII ... 932
Doublet: OIII ... 932
Doublet: SII ... 932
Douglas Rushkoff ... 7
Drizzle ... 506
DS9 ... 64, 99, 335, 580
DSS WCS distortion ... 846
Dynamic libraries ... 238
Dynamic linking ... 756
Dynamic range ... 152

E

e (base of natural logarithm) ... 417
Ecliptic coordinate system ... 313, 417, 846
Edges, image ... 505
Effective radius ... 608, 656
Efficient use of CPU threads ... 277
Ellipse ... 652, 793
Ellipse area ... 608
Ellipsoid ... 653, 793
Ellipsoidal distance ... 793
Elliptical distance ... 653, 793
Emacs buffers ... 962
Encapsulated PostScript ... 318
Environment ... 236
Environment variable, `HOME` ... 236
Environment variables ... 236, 411
Epoch time, Unix ... 827
Epoch, Unix time ... 313, 356, 691
EPS ... 318, 337, 844, 845
Equatorial coordinate system ... 313, 417, 846
Erosion ... 448, 552, 563, 909
Erosion (image processing) ... 85
Error in surface brightness ... 603
Error, floating point round-off ... 500
`etc` ... 270
Euler angles ... 653, 879
Euler's number (e) ... 417
Euler, Leonhard ... 484
`eval` to evaluate string as command ... 268
Evaluate string as command (`eval`) ... 268
Exact area resampling ... 506
Executable names ... 240
Exposure map ... 715
Extinction (Galactic) ... 640
eXtreme Deep Field (XDF) survey ... 23, 616

F

Fair function (robust weight) ... 548
False color ... 320
False detections ... 622
Feature request ... 979
Feature requests ... 17
Fedora ... 224
File flags ... 74
File I/O ... 241
File operations ... 297
File system Hierarchy Standard ... 270
file systems, tmpfs ... 241
Filename suffix ... 251
Filter ... 320
Filter transmission curve ... 167
Fine structure constant ... 417
first-in-first-out ... 800, 825, 921
FITS ... 293, 821
FITS filename suffixes ... 251
FITS image viewer ... 989
`FITS` or `FITS/TXT` ... 252
FITS standard ... 213, 514, 785
FITS Tables ... 285
Fitting ... 652, 904
Fitting (least squares) ... 523
Fitting (polynomial) ... 907
FK5 ... 313
Flag (mask) images ... 450
Flags, file ... 74
Flat field ... 180
Flattening (CNNs) ... 439
Flip coordinates ... 502
Floating point error ... 610
Floating point numbers ... 345

Floating point round-off error 500
FLT 252
Flux 585
Flux density (spectral) 586
Flux density (wavelength) 423
Flux to magnitude conversion 586
Fonts 343
Foreground pixels 561
FORTRAN 785
Fourier spectrum 500
Free software 10
Free Software Foundation 981
Frequency Flux Density 586
FSF 981
Full Width at Half Maximum 654
Function gradient over pixel area 656
Function groups 964
Functions for user interface 967
FWHM 42, 607, 654

G

g (gravitational constant) 417
Gaia catalog 380
GAIA Data Release (2 or 3) 382
Gain 410, 585
Galactic coordinate system 313, 417, 846
Galactic extinction 640
Galaxy kinematics 140
Galaxy profiles 656
Galileo, Galilei 8
Gaussian 555, 573, 625
Gaussian distribution 531, 654
Gaussian FWHM 655
Gaussian noise 524
GCC 764
GCC: GNU Compiler Collection . 13, 759, 762, 763, 962
Gedit 133
General file operations 297
Generalized de Vaucouleur profile 656
Gérard de Vaucouleurs 656
Ghostscript fonts 343
Git 217, 228, 234, 820, 927
Global warming 268
GNOME 569
GNOME 3 13
Gnomonic (tangential) projection 511
Gnomonic projection (TAN in WCS) 181
GNU Astronomy Utilities (Gnuastro) 1
GNU Autoconf 219, 230, 231, 233, 971
GNU Autoconf Archive 220, 229
GNU Automake 219, 230, 971
GNU Autoreconf 243
GNU AWK 30, 61, 63, 100, 266, 344, 365, 479, 536, 539, 690, 691, 819
GNU Bash 14, 73, 237, 690, 961, 968
GNU Binutils 756
GNU build system . 213, 230, 238, 241, 242, 755, 971
GNU C library ... 13, 218, 230, 234, 241, 276, 623, 757, 916, 962, 966
GNU C Library 313
GNU coding standards 1, 961, 963
GNU Compiler Collection (GCC) 13, 759, 762, 763, 962
GNU Coreutils 276, 373, 960
GNU CPP 762
GNU Debugger 233
GNU Debugger (GDB) 243
GNU Emacs 14, 133, 276, 963, 964, 965
GNU free documentation license 8
GNU Free Documentation License 10, 993
GNU General Public License (GPL) ... 8, 10, 1001
GNU Grep 274, 307, 685, 969
GNU Gzip 571, 582
GNU help2man 220
GNU Info 23, 275
GNU Libtool 216, 220, 230, 247, 756, 758, 760, 762, 971
GNU Make 64, 216, 279, 742, 762
GNU Parallel 278
GNU Portability Library (Gnulib) .. 218, 229, 234, 246, 962
GNU Savannah 979
GNU Scientific Library . 213, 411, 523, 891, 918, 920
GNU Sed 691
GNU SED 690
GNU software documentation 275
GNU style options 251
GNU Tar 1
GNU Texinfo 10, 220, 230, 246, 247
GNU Wget 81
GNU/Linux 13
Gnuastro coding convention 961
Gnuastro common options 253
Gnuastro major version number 12
Gnuastro program structure convention 965
Gnuastro project page 16
Gnuastro test scripts 972
Gnulib 960
Gnulib: GNU Portability Library ... 218, 229, 234, 246, 962
GPL 1001
GPL Ghostscript 215, 217, 247, 319
Gradient over pixel area 656
Graphic user interface 13
Graphics (raster) 316
Graphics (vector) 316
Gravitational constant (g) 417
Gravitational lensing 501
Gray night 456
Grayscale 321
Great circle 465
Groups of similar functions 964
GSL 523
GUI: graphic user interface 13

GUI: repeating operations 14
Gzip 1, 228

H

h (Plank's constant) 417
H-alpha 136, 932
H-beta 138, 932
H-delta 932
H-epsilon 932
H-gamma 932
Halted program 15
Hammer-Aitoff projection 512
Hashbang 74
HDD 241
HDU 250, 254, 299
Header data unit 250, 254
Header file 962
HEALPix 299, 824
HEALPix polar projection 512
HEALPix projection 512
Help 273
help-gnuastro mailing list 276
`help-gnuastro@gnu.org` 276
Hexadecimal encoding 334, 844
Hipparchus of Nicaea 586
Histogram 517, 530, 900
Histogram, 2D 59, 518, 900
`history` 73
Homebrew 224
`HOME` 236
`HOME/.local/` 236
Homogeneous coordinates 503
Homography 504
Hook (programming) 185, 189
HSV: Hue Saturation Value 321, 335
Hubble Space Telescope (HST) .. 22, 291, 389, 502, 503
Huber function (robust weight) 548
Hue, saturation, value 335
Hyper Suprime-Cam 291
Hyperbolic functions 416
Hyperspectral imaging 134

I

IAU, international astronomical union 297
ICRS 418
Identifying outliers 533
IEEE 754 ..... 376, 377
IEEE 754 (floating point) 345
IFU 134
IFU: Integral Field Unit 443, 607, 613
Image 320
Image annotation 322
Image blurring 654
Image edges 505
Image format conversion 316
Image mosaic 389, 501
Image noise 407
Image tiles 389
Image transformations 652
Image's sky coverage 302
ImageMagick 222
Imaging surveys 389
Immediate neighbors 908
Inconsistent results 15
Individual profiles 674
`info-gnuastro@gnu.org` 231
`INFOPATH` 238
Input/Output, file 241
Inside-out construction 653, 657
Install directory 238
Install with no superuser access 235
Installation 212
Installation, customizing 232
Installed help methods 273
Instrumental noise 410
Integer overflow 407
Integer, Signed 279
Integral field unit 134
Integral Field Unit 607
Integral field unit (IFU) 443, 613
Integration over pixel 656
Integration to infinity 658
Inter-stellar medium (ISM) 587, 687
Internal default value 270
Internally stored option value 276
Interpolation 505, 918
Interpolation, bi-linear 505
Interpolation, bicubic 505, 533
Interpolation, nearest-neighbor 533
Interpolation: Akima spline 920
Interpolation: monotonic 920
Interpolation: Polynomial 920
Interpolation: Spline 920
Interpolation: Steffen 920
Interstellar dust filaments 629
Intervals, histogram 517
`INT` 252
IRAF 317
ISM (inter-stellar medium) 587, 687
ISO C90 958
Issue 979
iTerm 342
IVOA 378

J

Jansky (Jy) 423, 586, 931
Java programming language 958
Java Virtual Machine (JVM) 959
Jaynes E. T. 9
Johnson filters 167
Johnson vs. SDSS filters 167
Join (SQL) 640

JPEG compression quality 334, 842
JPEG format 217, 235, 317, 842
JVM: Java virtual machine 959

K

k-d tree matching 894
K-Correction 421
K-d tree 886
Ken Thomson 9
Kernel, convolution 479, 834
Kernel, Linux 284
Kernighan, Brian 958
Kinematics (galaxies) 140

L

Labeling 552
Language of command-line 295
Large astronomical images 389
last-in-first-out 800, 825
LaTeX 220, 318, 961
Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory 767
`LC_ALL` 295
`LC_NUMERIC` 295
`LD_LIBRARY_PATH` 238, 247, 992
`LDFLAGS` 246, 764
Learning GNU Info 275
Least squares fitting 523, 904
Lensing simulations 652
Leonhard Euler 484
`less` 274
`libgit2` 217, 234, 927
`libjpeg` 217, 235
Library search directory 238
Library: shared 756
`libtiff` 217, 235
Light year 417
Light-year 425, 932
Limit, confusion 619
Limit, object/clump magnitude 615
Limit, surface brightness 92, 616
Limit: detection (magnitude) 618
Limit: magnitude (noise-based) 618
Limit: surface brightness limit 615
Line terminator, CRLF 837
Linear spatial filtering 480
Linked list 800, 825
Linking 756
Linking: Dynamic 756
Linking: dynamic 756
Linking: Static 756
Linux 13
Linux kernel 241, 284
Linux Mint 223
Locale 295
Long option abbreviation 252
Long outputs 274
Lord Kelvin 9
Lorentzian function (robust weight) 548
Low level programming 960
LSST 620
Luminosity 585
Luminosity to Apparent Magnitude 420
Lyman limit 932
Lyman-alpha 932
Lzip 1, 228

M

M51 80
macOS 224
macOS terminal 24-bit color 342
MacPorts 224
Macro 754
MAD (Median absolute deviation) 896
MAD (median absolute deviation) 206
Magnitude 930
Magnitude (absolute) 686
Magnitude (nanomaggy) 931
Magnitude limit 622
Magnitude limit (noise-based) 618
Magnitude zero point 587
Magnitude, AB 422, 588, 931
Magnitude, object/clump detection limit 615
Magnitude, upper limit 605
Magnitudes from flux 586
Mailing list archives 16, 276
Mailing list: bug-gnuastro 16, 979
Mailing list: gnuastro-commits 981, 983, 984
Mailing list: gnuastro-devel 980
Mailing list: help-gnuastro 276
Mailing list: info-gnuastro 11, 18, 231
`main` function 966
Main parameters C structure 966
`main.c` 966
`main.h` 966
Major version number 11
Make 278, 742
`make check` 245
`Makefile` 64
MakeProfiles (`astmkprof`) 652
Making a distribution package 979
Making profiles pixel by pixel 653
Man pages 275
Management hub 979
Mandatory arguments 250, 273
Manhattan distance 793
Manhattan metric 259
`MANPATH` 238
Mask (flag) images 450
Matching 892
Matching by k-d tree 894
Mathematical morphology 448, 909
matplotlib 335
Matplotlib 323

Matplotlib, Python 961, 991
Matrix 502
Matrix (covariance) 905
Matrix multiplication 504
Matrix, adjacency 910
Maximum 895
Mean 531, 896
Median 531, 896
Median absolute deviation (MAD) 206, 896
Memory management 281, 770
Memory, non-volatile 281
Memory, volatile 282
Memory-mapped file 282
Mercator projection 511
Meridian 465
Meta image 315
Meta-data 298
Metacharacters on the command-line In case your arguments or option values contain any of the shell's meta-characters, you have to quote them. 250
Metadata 126
Metric: Manhattan, Taxicab, Radial 259
MgII doublet 932
Michelson, Albert. A. 9
Minimum 895
Minor version number 11
Mixing pixel values 479, 505
Möbius, August. F. 503
`mock.fits` 245
Mode of a distribution 530
Modeling 652
Modeling stars 656
Modifying print book 245
Modularity 752
Moffat beta 655
Moffat function 655
Moffat FWHM 655
Moiré pattern or fringes 191
Mollweide projection 511
Moments 610
Monte carlo integration 657
Mosaicing 389, 501
Multi-Extension FITS 705
Multi-threaded operation 885
Multi-threaded programs 276
Multi-value columns (vector) 346
Multiple file opening, reentrancy 213
Multiplication, Matrix 502
Multiplication, matrix 504
Multithreaded programming 767
MUSE 134, 347

N

Names of executables 240
Names, customize 240
Names, programs 11
Nanomaggy 94, 422, 423, 931
NaN 288, 429, 516, 545, 561, 779, 780, 834, 884
NaN (Not a Number) 158
Narrow-band image 443
NASA/IPAC Extragalactic Database (NED) .. 381
Naval Observatory Merged Astrometric Dataset 382
Navigating source files 965
Nearest-neighbor interpolation 533
Necessary parameters 270
NED (NASA/IPAC Extragalactic Database) .. 381
Neighborhood 479
Neighbors, immediate 908
NGC5195 80
Nights (dark or gray) 456
NII doublet 137, 932
No access to superuser install 235
Noise 407, 531
Noise (correlated) 50
Noise (Gaussian) 524
Noise simulation 409
Noise, correlated 41, 617, 621
Noise, instrumental 410
Non-commutative operations 504
Non-linear distortion 508, 923
Non-linearity (CCDs) 116
Non-volatile memory 281
Normalizing histogram 517
Not a Number (NaN) 158
`nproc` 276
Number 895
Number count 53
Number of CPU threads to use 264, 270
Number of threads available 276
Number, version 11
Numbers, complex 500
Numbers, psuedo-random 411
Numbers, random 410
Numpy 217

O

O-H lines (from atmosphere) 138
Object magnitude limit 615
Object oriented programming 958
Observatory: Vera C. Rubin 620
Observing strategy 177
Offset (in observing strategy) 177
OII doublet 932
OIII doublet 932
On/Off options 252
Online help 273
Opening 97
Opening (Mathematical morphology) 909

Opening multi-extension FITS 705
OpenMP 767
openSUSE 226
Operations on files 297
Operations, non-commutative 504
Operator, structure de-reference 966
Optical distortion 502
Optimization 763, 972
Optimization flag 962
Option values 252
Optional and mandatory tokens 273
Options 478
Options common to all programs 253
Options to programs 250
Options, abbreviation 252
Options, GNU style 251
Options, on/off 252
Options, repeated 252
Options, short (-) and long (--) 251
Order in search directory 239
Orthographic/synthesis projection 511
Outlier 196, 539
Outliers 533
Output file names, automatic 292
Output FITS headers 293
Output, wrong 15
Overflow, integer 407
Oversample 129
Oversampling 657

P

`p` 966
Package managers 222
`pacman` 225
Pan-STARRS Data Release 1 382
Paper size, A4 245
Paper size, US letter 245
Parabolic projection 511
Parametric PSFs 654
Parsecs 425, 931
`PATH` 236
PDF 319, 337, 844, 845
Permutation 892
permutation 891
PGFPlots 323
PGFPlots (LaTeX package) 60, 522
PGFplots in TeX or LaTeX 961, 991
PGPLOT 991
Phase angle 500
photo-electrons 530
Photoelectrons 505
Photon counting noise 408
Photon-starved images 455
Pi 416, 417
Picture element 505
Pipe 274
Pixel 134, 505
Pixel by pixel making of profiles 653
Pixel mixing 315, 479, 505, 506
Pixel scale 193, 510, 616
Pixelated graphics 317
Pixels 320
Plain text 319
Plank's constant (h) 417
Plate carree projection 511
Plot, scatter 59
Plot: contour 549
Plotting directly in C 991
Plugin 756
PNG standard 321
Point (Vector graphics; PostScript) 72, 338
Point pixels 505
Point source 654
Point spread function 21, 654
Pointers 777
Pointing 193, 715
Pointings 177
Poisson distribution 408
Poisson noise 184, 455
Poisson, Siméon Denis 408
Polyconic projection 512
Polygon 464
Polygons, Concave 398, 880
Polygons, Convex 398, 880
Polynomial fit 907
Polynomial fit (robust) 547
Polynomial interpolation 920
Pooling 434
Portable Document format 319
Portable script 269
Portable shell 690
Position angle 612, 652, 793
POSIX threads 768
POSIX Threads 768
POSIX threads library 767
Post-fix notation 404
Postage stamp images 389
PostScript 318, 337, 844, 845
PostScript point 338
PostScript vs. PDF 319
Pre-Processor 753
Pre-processor macros 754
Precedence, configuration files 271
Precision of floats 345
`prefix/etc/gnuastro/` 272
Primary colors 320
`printf` 816
Printing floating point numbers 345
Prior WCS distortion 846
Probability density function 408, 517, 530
Profile, profile 694
Profiles, galaxies 656
`progname-complete.bash` 968
`progname.c, progname.h` 967
`prognameparams` 966

Program crashing 15
Program names 11
Program structure convention 965
Programming, low level 960
`ProgramName` 11
Projections (world coordinate system) 511
Projective transformation 504
Proper distance 680
Provenance 369, 470
Pseudo color 320
PSF 21, 124, 639, 654
PSF image size 654
PSF over-sample 658
PSF width 654
PSF, Moffat compared Gaussian 655
Psuedo-random numbers 411
pthread 276
pthread_barrier 768
Ptolemy, Claudius 123
Public domain 10
Purity 101, 622
Puzzle solving scientist 9
PyPI 217, 235
Python 235
Python Matplotlib 961, 991
Python programming language 958
Python3 217

Q

`qsort` 884
Quadrilateralized spherical cube projection 512
Quality of compression in JPEG 334
Quantile 91, 531, 536, 561, 897
Quantile of the mean 538
Query 378
Qutb al-Din al-Shirazi 483

R

Radial metric 259
Radial profile 347, 523, 694
Radial profile on ellipse 653
Radio astronomy 380
Radius, effective 656
RAM 282, 747, 770, 911
RAM usage (maximum) 749
Random number generation 96
Random number generator, Seed 411, 412, 631, 657, 664
Random numbers 410
Random row selection 373
Raster graphics 316, 317
Readout noise 410
Red Hat 224
Redirection 127
Redirection in shell 73
Redirection of output 274
Reentrancy, multiple file opening 213
Region file (SAO DS9) 397, 940
Remembering options 273
Remote operation 15
Removing `ast` from executables 241
Repeated options 252
Report a bug 979
Reproducibility 374, 629, 749, 959
Reproducible bug reports 16
Reproducible results 14
Resampling 505, 508, 510, 923
Resampling by area 315
Resource heavy operations 15
Rest frame wavelength 688
Rest-frame 938
Rest-frame wavelength 684
`restrict` 785
Results, wrong 15
Reverse Polish Notation 404
RGB 320
RHEL 224
Right Ascension 187, 356, 859, 929
Ritchie, Dennis 958
river 572
Robust polynomial fit 547
Robust Polynomial fit 907
Roger Cotes 484
Root access, not possible 235
Root parameter structure 966
Rotation of coordinates 502
Round-off error 500, 881
Row selection, by random 373
Rubin (Vera C.) Observatory 620

S

Sampling 505, 656
Sampling theorem 505
Sanson-Flamsteed projection 511
SAO DS9 ..... 64, 99, 335, 580, 940, 989
SAO DS9 region file 397, 940
Saturated pixels 438
Saturated stars 919
Saturation (CCDs) 116
Save output to file 274
Saving binary image 318
SBL: surface brightness limit 615
Scales, coordinate 28
Scaling 502
Scatter plot 59
Scientific Linux 224
Scientist, puzzle solver 9
Script, shell 73
Scripts, startup 237
Scroll command-line 274
SDSS 94, 166, 422
SDSS DR12 380
SDSS Photometric Catalogue, Release 12 382

SDSS vs. Johnson filters 167
SDSS, Sloan Digital Sky Survey 80
Search directory for executables 236
Search directory order 239
Searching text 274
Second moment 610
Section of an image 389
Secure shell 15
SED, stream editor 241
Seed, random number generator 96
Seed, Random number generator 411, 412, 631, 657, 664
Seeing 715
Segmentation 552, 553
sequent WCS distortion 846
Sérsic index 656
Sérsic profile 608, 656
Sérsic, J. L. 656
Setting output file names automatically 292
Setting `PATH` 236
Sexagesimal 356, 396, 859
SHA-1 checksum 81
Shapes for marks (vector graphics) 340
Shared library 756
Shared library versioning 758
Shear 503
Shebang 74
Shell 13, 250
Shell alias 556, 660
Shell auto-complete 240
Shell history 73
Shell redirection 73
Shell script 73
Shell startup 556, 660
Shell variables 236
Shell, portable 690
`Shift + PageUP` and `Shift + PageDown` 274
SI (International System of Units) 589
Sigma-clipping 430, 531, 903
Signal 531
Signal to noise ratio 501, 505
Signal-to-noise ratio 531
Signed integer 279
SII doublet 932
Simulating noise 409
Simultaneous multithreading 276
Single channel CMYK 321
SIP distortion 508
SIP WCS distortion 314, 846, 853
`size_t` 810, 811
Skewed Poisson distribution 408
Skewness 89, 532, 606, 619
Sky 139, 528
Sky emission-lines 138
Sky line 918
Sky value 180, 408, 529
Slant zenithal projection 511
Sloan Digital Sky Survey, SDSS 80
SLS Color 335
Small circle 465
Software bug 15
Source code building 222
Source code compilation 222
Source file navigation 965
Source tree 972
Source, uncompress 1
Spectral Flux Density 586
Spectrum 134, 347, 613
Spectrum (of astronomical source) 613
Spectrum, Fourier 500
Speed of light 417
Spline (Akima) interpolation 920
Spline (cubic) interpolation 920
Spread of a point source 654
SQL 640
SSD 241
SSH 15
Standard deviation 610, 896
Standard error of mean 593
Standard input ... 254, 266, 268, 292, 332, 534, 839
Standard output 127, 369
Standard output stream 266
Standard, FITS 785
Star formation main sequence 523
Stars, modeling 656
Startup scripts 237, 411
Startup, shell 556, 660
Static document description format 319
Static linking 756
Statistical analysis 6
Steffen interpolation 920
Steradian 589
Stereographic projection 511
Stitch multiple images 389
Stream editor, SED 241
Stream: standard input 266
Stream: standard output 266
Stride 435
Stroustrup, Bjarne 9, 958
Structure de-reference operator 966
Structures 754
`STR` 252
Subaru Telescope 291
Submit new tracker item 16
Suffix (filename) 251
Suffixes, EPS format 318
Suffixes, JPEG images 318
Suffixes, PDF format 319
Suffixes, plain text 319
Sufi, Abd al-rahman 123
Sum 895
Sum for total flux 658
Sun's absolute magnitude 421
Supergalactic coordinate system 313, 846
Superuser, not possible 235
Support request manager 16

Surface Brightness 66, 860, 930
Surface brightness 99, 589
Surface brightness error 603
Surface brightness limit 92, 615, 616
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 226
SVO database (filter transmission curve) 167
Symbolic link 240
System Cache 277
System wide configuration files 272

T

Table viewer 990
Tables FITS 285
Tabs are evil 964
`TAN` in WCS (Gnomonic projection) 181
Tangential spherical cube projection 512
TAP (Table Access Protocol) 378
Task tracker 17
Taxicab metric 259
Terminal (true color, 24 bit) 322
Test 1
Test scripts 972
Tests, error in converting images 247
Tests, only one passes 247
Tests, running 245
`tests/during-dev.sh` 971
TEX 247, 318
TEX Live 220
Thread safety 846, 885
Thresholding 908
TIFF format 217, 235, 318, 841
TiKZ 323
Tilde expansion as option values 253
Time zone 693
Time, Unix epoch 313, 356, 691
Timeout 254
tmpfs file system 241
Tokens 348
Top processing source file 967
Top root structure 966
TPD WCS distortion 846
TPV distortion 508
TPV WCS distortion 314, 846, 853
Tracker 17, 979
Trailing space 963
Transform image 652
Transformation, affine 504
Transformation, projective 504
Transmission curve of filters 167
Trigonometry 416
True color terminal 322
Truncation radius 658
Tukey's biweight (bisquare) function 548
Turn over point (angular diameter distance) 32
Tutorial 21
Type 279

U

U.S. Naval Observatory CCD Astrograph Catalog 382
Ubuntu 223
`ui.c` 967
`ui.h` 967
Uncompress source 1
Undetected objects 408
Universal time coordinate (UTC) 693
Unix epoch time 313, 356, 691, 827
Unsigned integer 279
Upper limit magnitude 605
Upper-limit 50
US letter paper size 245
Usage pattern 273
User interface functions 967
Using CPU threads 276
Using multiple CPU cores 276
Using multiple threads 277
UTC (Universal time coordinate) 693

V

Valgrind 233, 243, 244
Values to options 252
Variance 610
Variance-covariance matrix 905
Vatican library 297
Vector columns 346
Vector graphics 316, 318
Vector graphics point 338
Vera C. Rubin Observatory 620
Verification, checksum 81
Version control 15, 228
Version control systems 217, 234
Version number 11
Versioning: Shared library 758
Vertices on sphere (sky) 464
Viewing trackers 17
Vignetting 189, 715
Viridis: Colormap 335
Virtual console 14
Visualization 321
VizieR 381
`void *` 784
Volatile memory 282
VOTable 381, 990
Voxel 134

W

Wall-clock time 277
Warp 923
Wassel, Caspar 484
WAT WCS distortion 846
Watershed algorithm 572, 913
Wavelength Flux Density 586
Wavelength flux density 423
Wavelength, rest-frame 684
WCS 214
WCS distortion 314, 508, 846, 853, 923
WCS Projections 511
WCS: World Coordinate System 352
WCSLIB 214, 509, 516
WCSLIB thread safety 846
Web colors 322
Wedge (radial profile) 699
Weight (in fitting) 905, 906
Weighted average 479
Welsch function (robust weight) 548
WFC3 502
White space character 270
Whole-Sky USNO-B1.0 Catalog 382
Wide Field Camera 3 ..... 502, 503
William Thomson 9
Window Subsystem for Linux 13
WISE All-Sky data Release 382
World Coordinate System 214, 516
World Coordinate System (WCS) 352, 443, 617
Writing configuration files 270
Wrong output 15
Wrong results 15

X

`xargs` (extended arguments) 268
XDF survey 23, 616

Y

`yum` 224

Z

Zenithal/azimuthal equal area projection 511
Zenithal/azimuthal equidistant projection 511
Zenithal/azimuthal polynomial projection 511
Zenithal/azimuthal projection 511
Zero as blank/NaN 158
Zero point 128, 709
Zero point change 422, 931
Zero point magnitude 94, 587
Zsh shell 269
`zypper`, OpenSUSE package manager 226